User's Manual

RENESAS

Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP) v1.0.0

User's Manual

Renesas RA Family

Renesas Electronics
www.renesas.com

Revision 1.00 Mar.25.20

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1 Overview

This manual describes how to use the Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP) for writing applications for the RA microcontroller series.

1.2 How to Read this Manual

For help getting started with the FSP, see:

- Starting Development

To learn about the FSP architecture and about board and chip-level support included in the FSP, see:

- FSP Architecture
- MCU Board Support Package

For user guides describing the FSP modules, see:

- Modules

For shared interface API documentation, see:

- Interfaces

1.3 Documentation Standard

Each module user guide outlines the following:

- Features: A bullet list of high level features provided by the module.
- Configuration: A description of module specific configurations available in the configuration tool.
- Usage Notes: Module specific documentation and limitations.
- Examples: Example code provided to help the user get started.
- API Reference: Usage notes for each API in the module, including the function prototype and hyperlinks to the interface documentation for parameter definitions.

Interface documentation includes typed enumerations and structures–including a structure of function pointers that defines the API–that are shared by all modules that implement the interface.

Introduction to FSP

Purpose

The Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP) is an optimized software package designed to provide easy to use, scalable, high quality software for embedded system design. The primary goal is to provide lightweight, efficient drivers that meet common use cases in embedded systems.

Quality

FSP code quality is enforced by peer reviews, automated requirements-based testing, and automated static analysis.

Ease of Use

The FSP provides uniform and intuitive APIs that are well documented. Each module is supported with detailed user documentation including example code.

Scalability

FSP modules can be used on any MCU in the RA family, provided the MCU has any peripherals required by the module.

FSP modules also have build time configurations that can be used to optimize the size of the module for the feature set required by the application.

Chapter 2 Starting Development

2.1 Starting Development Introduction

The Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP) provides a host of efficiency enhancing tools for developing projects targeting the Renesas RA series of MCU devices. e2 studio provides a familiar development cockpit from which the key steps of project creation, module selection and configuration, code development, code generation, and debugging are all managed. FSP runs within e2 studio and enables the module selection, configuration, and code generation steps. FSP uses a Graphical User Interface (GUI) to simplify the selection, configuration, code generation and code development of high level modules and their associated Application Program Interfaces (APIs) to dramatically accelerate the development process.

The wealth of resources available to learn about and use e2 studio and FSP can be overwhelming on first inspection, so the following section provides a Getting Started Guide with a list of the most important first steps. Following these highly recommended first 10 steps will bring you up to speed on the development environment in record time. Even experienced developers can benefit from the use of this guide, to learn the terminology that might be unfamiliar or different from previous environments.

2.1.1 Getting Started with e2 studio and FSP

This section describes how to use Renesas e2 studio to develop applications with the Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP). Here is the recommended sequence for quickly Getting Started with using e2 when developing with the RA MCU Family:

1. Read over the section What is e2 studio?, up to but not including e2 studio Prerequisites. This will provide a description of the various windows and views to use e2 to create a project, add modules and threads, configure module properties, add code, and debug a project. It also describes how to use key coding 'accelerators' like Developer Assist (to drag and drop parameter populated API function calls right into your code), a context aware Autocomplete (to easily find and select from suggested enumerations, functions, types, and many other coding elements), and many other similar productivity enhancers.
2. Read over the FSP Architecture sections FSP Architecture, FSP Modules and FSP Stacks. These provide the basic background on how FSP modules and stacks are used to construct your application. Understanding their definitions and the theory behind how they combine will make it easier to develop with FSP.
3. Read over a few "Module User Guide" sections to see how to use API function calls, structures, enumerations, types and callbacks. These user guides provide the information you will use to implement your project code. (Much of the details are provided with Developer Assistance, covered in step 5, below.
4. If you don't have a kit. you can order one using the link included in the e2 studio Prerequisites section. Then, if you haven't yet downloaded and installed e2 studio and FSP, use the link included in the e2 studio Prerequisites section to download the tools. Then you can build and debug a simple project to prove out you installation, tool flow, and the kit. The simple "Blinky" project, that blinks an LED on and off, is located in the Tutorial: Your First RA MCU Project - Blinky section. Follow the instructions for importing and running this project. It will use some of the key steps for managing projects within e2 and is a good way to learn the basics.

5. Once you have successfully run Blinky you have a good starting point for using FSP for more complex projects. The Watchdog Timer hands-on lab, available in the Tutorial: Using HAL Drivers - Programming the WDT section, shows how to create a project from scratch and use FSP API functions, and demonstrates the use of some of the coding efficiency tools like Developer Assistance and Autocomplete. Run through this lab to establish a good starting point for developing custom projects.
6. The balance of the FSP Architecture sections, those not called out in step 2 above, contain additional reference material that may be helpful in the future. Scan them over so you know what they contain, in case you need them.
7. The balance of the e2 studio User Guide, starting with the What is a Project? section up to Writing the Application section, provides a detailed description of each of the key steps, windows, and entries used to create, manage, configure, build and debug a project. Most of this will be familiar after doing the Blinky and WDT exercises from steps 4 and 5 above. Skim over these references so you know to come back to them when questions come up. Make sure you have a good grasp of what each of the configuration tabs are used for since that is where the bulk of the project preparation work takes place prior to writing code.
8. Read over the Writing the Application section to get a short introduction to the steps used when creating application code with FSP. It covers both RTOS-independent and RTOS-dependent applications. The Tutorial: Using HAL Drivers - Programming the WDT section is a good introduction to the key steps for an RTOS-independent application. Make sure you have run through it at least once before doing a custom project.
9. Scan the Debugging the Project section to see the steps required to download and start a debug session.
10. Explore the additional material available on the following web pages and bookmark the resources that look most valuable to you:
    a. RA Landing Page: https://www.renesas.com/ra
    b. FSP Landing Page: https://www.renesas.com/fsp

2.2 e2 studio User Guide

2.2.1 What is e2 studio?

Renesas e2 studio is a development tool encompassing code development, build, and debug. e2 studio is based on the open-source Eclipse IDE and the associated C/C++ Development Tooling (CDT).

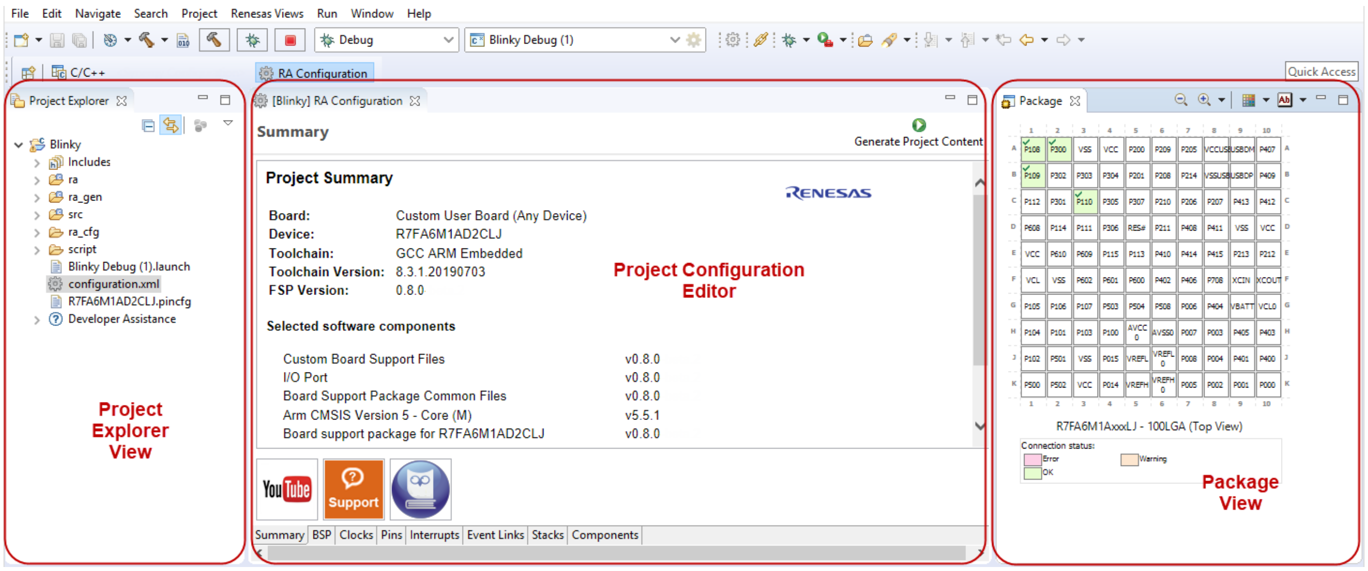
When developing for RA MCUs, e2 studio hosts the Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP). FSP provides a wide range of time saving tools to simplify the selection, configuration, and management of modules and threads, to easily implement complex applications. The time saving tools available in e2 studio and FSP include the following:

- A Graphical User Interface (GUI) (see Adding Threads and Drivers) with numerous wizards for configuring and auto-generating code
- A context sensitive Autocomplete (see Tutorial: Using HAL Drivers - Programming the WDT) feature that provides intelligent options for completing a programming element
- A Developer Assistance) tool for selection of and drag and drop placement of API functions directly in application code
- A Smart Manual provides driver and device documentation in the form of tooltips right in the code
- An Edit Hover feature to show detailed descriptions of code elements while editing
- A Welcome Window with links to example projects, application notes and a variety of other self-help support resources
- An Information Icon, from each module, is provided in the graphic configuration viewer that links to specific design resources, including code 'cheat sheets' that provide useful starting

points for common application implementations.

Figure 1: e2 studio Splash Screen

e2 studio organizes project work based on Perspectives, Views, Windows, Panes, and Pages (sometimes called Tabs). A window is a section of the e2 studio GUI that presents information on a key topic. Windows often use tabs to select sub-topics. For example, an editor window might have a tab available for each open file, so it is easy to switch back and forth between them. A window Pane is a section of a window. Within a window, multiple Panes can be opened and viewed simultaneously, as opposed to a tabbed window, where only individual content is displayed. A memory-display Window, for example, might have multiple Panes that allow the data to be displayed in different formats, simultaneously. A Perspective is a collection of Views and Windows typical for a specific stage of development. The default perspectives are a C/C++ Perspective, an FSP Configuration Perspective and a Debug Perspective. These provide specific Views, Windows, Tabs, and Panes tailored for the common tasks needed during the specific development stage. These three default perspectives are each illustrated in the below screen shots, along with graphic indicators helpful in identifying example Views, Windows, Tabs and Panes.



Project Summary

Board:	Custom User Board (Any Device)
Device:	R7FA6M1AD2CLJ
Toolchain:	GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain Version:	8.3.1.20190703
FSP Version:	0.8.0

Selected software components

Custom Board Support Files	v0.8.0
I/O Port	v0.8.0
Board Support Package Common Files	v0.8.0
Arm CMSIS Version 5 - Core (M)	v5.5.1
Board support package for R7FA6M1AD2CLJ	v0.8.0

Figure 2: Default Perspective

In addition to managing project development, selecting modules, configuring them and simplifying code development, e2 studio also hosts the engine for automatically generating code based on module selections and configurations. The engine continually checks for dependencies and automatically adds any needed lower level modules to the module stack. It also identifies any lower level modules that require configuration (for example, an interrupt that needs to have a priority assigned). It also provides a guide for selecting between multiple choices or options to make it easy to complete a fully functional module stack.

The Generate Project Content function takes the selected and configured modules and automatically generates the complete and correct configuration code. The code is added to the folders visible in the **Project Explorer** window in e2 studio. The configuration.xml file in the project folder holds all the generated configuration settings. This file can be opened in the GUI-based configuration editor to make further edits and changes. Once a project has been generated, you can go back and reconfigure any of the modules and settings if required using this editor.

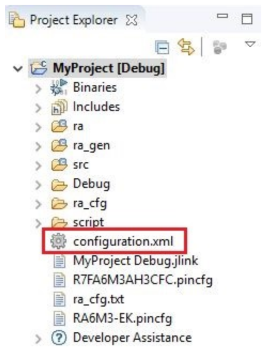


Figure 3: Project Explorer Window showing generated folders and configuration.xml file

2.2.2 e2 studio Prerequisites

2.2.2.1 Obtaining an RA MCU Kit

To develop applications with FSP, start with one of the Renesas RA MCU Evaluation Kits. The Renesas RA MCU Evaluation Kits are designed to seamlessly integrate with the e2 studio.

Ordering information, Quick Start Guides, User Manuals, and other related documents for all RA MCU Evaluation Kits are available at https://www.renesas.com/ra.

2.2.2.2 PC Requirements

The following are the minimum PC requirements to use e2 studio:

- Windows 10 with Intel i5 or i7, or AMD A10-7850K or FX
- Memory: 8-GB DDR3 or DDR4 DRAM (16-GB DDR4/2400-MHz RAM is preferred)
- Minimum 250-GB hard disk

2.2.2.3 Installing e2 studio, platform installer and the FSP package

Detailed installation instructions for the e2 studio and the FSP are available on the Renesas website https://www.renesas.com/fsp. Review the release notes for e2 studio to ensure that the e2 studio version supports the selected FSP version. The starting version of the installer includes all features of the RA MCUs.

2.2.2.4 Choosing a Toolchain

e2 studio can work with several toolchains and toolchain versions such as the GNU ARM compiler, AC6. A version of the GNU ARM compiler is included in the e2 studio installer and has been verified to run with the FSP version.

2.2.2.5 Licensing

FSP licensing includes full source code, limited to Renesas hardware only.

2.2.3 What is a Project?

In e2 studio, all FSP applications are organized in RA MCU projects. Setting up an RA MCU project involves:

1. Creating a Project
2. Configuring a Project

These steps are described in detail in the next two sections. When you have existing projects already, after you launch e2 studio and select a workspace, all projects previously saved in the selected workspace are loaded and displayed in the **Project Explorer** window. Each project has an associated configuration file named configuration.xml, which is located in the project's root directory.

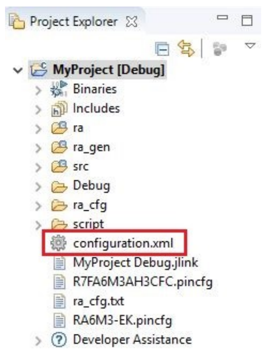


Figure 4: e2 studio Project Configuration file

Double-click on the configuration.xml file to open the RA MCU Project Editor. To edit the project configuration, make sure that the **RA Configuration** perspective is selected in the upper right hand corner of the e2 studio window. Once selected, you can use the editor to view or modify the configuration settings associated with this project.

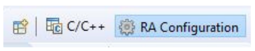
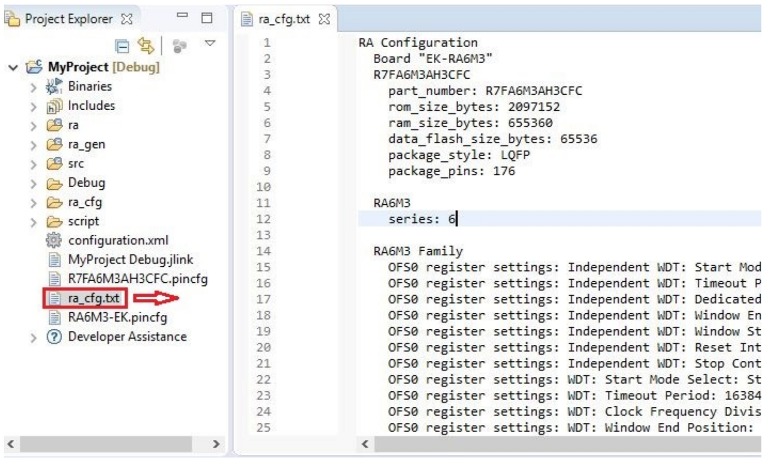


Figure 5: e2 studio RA Configuration Perspective

Note

> *Whenever the RA project configuration (that is, the configuration.xml file) is saved, a verbose RA Project Report file (ra_cfg.txt) with all the project settings is generated. The format allows differences to be easily viewed using a text comparison tool. The generated file is located in the project root directory.*



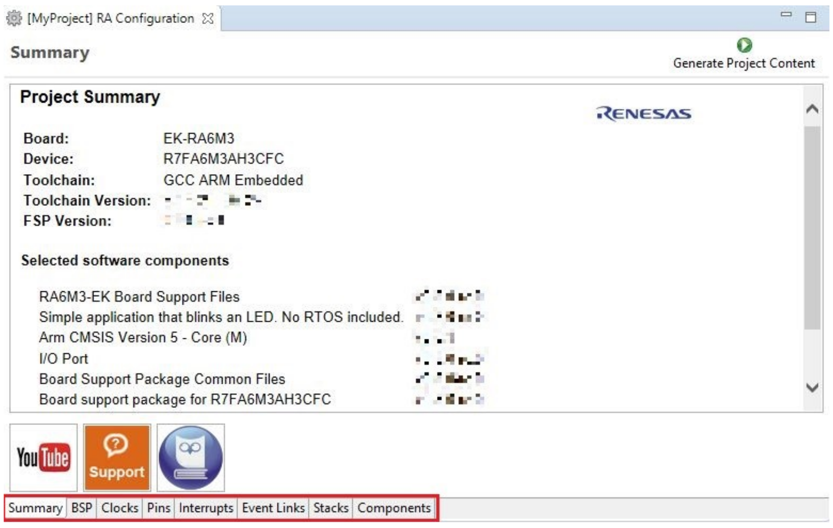
```
RA Configuration
  Board "EK-RA6M3"
  R7FA6M3AH3CFC
    part_number: R7FA6M3AH3CFC
    rom_size_bytes: 2097152
    ram_size_bytes: 655360
    data_flash_size_bytes: 65536
    package_style: LQFP
    package_pins: 176

  RA6M3
    series: 6

  RA6M3 Family
    OFS0 register settings: Independent WDT: Start Mod
    OFS0 register settings: Independent WDT: Timeout P
    OFS0 register settings: Independent WDT: Dedicated
    OFS0 register settings: Independent WDT: Window En
    OFS0 register settings: Independent WDT: Window St
    OFS0 register settings: Independent WDT: Reset Int
    OFS0 register settings: Independent WDT: Stop Cont
    OFS0 register settings: WDT: Start Mode Select: St
    OFS0 register settings: WDT: Timeout Period: 16384
    OFS0 register settings: WDT: Clock Frequency Divis
    OFS0 register settings: WDT: Window End Position:
```

Figure 6: RA Project Report

The RA Project Editor has a number of tabs. The configuration steps and options for individual tabs are discussed in the following sections.

Note

The tabs available in the RA Project Editor depend on the e2 studio version.



Project Summary

Board:	EK-RA6M3
Device:	R7FA6M3AH3CFC
Toolchain:	GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain Version:	[illegible]
FSP Version:	[illegible]

Selected software components

RA6M3-EK Board Support Files	[illegible]
Simple application that blinks an LED. No RTOS included.	[illegible]
Arm CMSIS Version 5 - Core (M)	[illegible]
I/O Port	[illegible]
Board Support Package Common Files	[illegible]
Board support package for R7FA6M3AH3CFC	[illegible]

Figure 7: RA Project Summary tabs

- Click on the YouTube icon to visit the Renesas FSP playlist on YouTube
- Click on the Support icon to visit RA support pages at Renesas.com
- Click on the user manual (owl) icon to open the RA software package User's Manual

2.2.4 Creating a Project

During project creation, you specify the type of project, give it a project name and location, and configure the project settings for version, target board, whether an RTOS is included, the toolchain version, and the beginning template. This section includes easy-to-follow step-by-step instructions for all of the project creation tasks. Once you have created the project, you can move to configuring the project hardware (clocks, pins, interrupts) and the parameters of all the modules that are part of your application.

2.2.4.1 Creating a New Project

For RA MCU applications, generate a new project using the following steps:

1. Click on **File > New > RA C/C++ Project**.

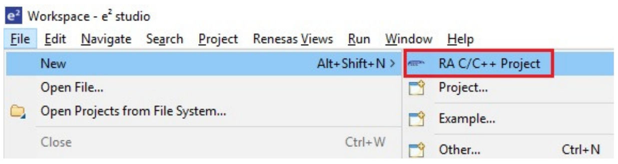
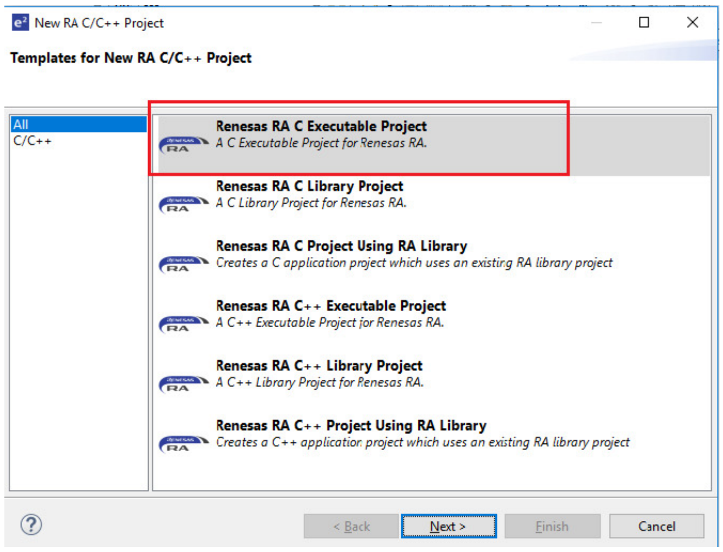


Figure 8: New RA MCU Project

Then click on the type of template for the type of project you are creating.



Renesas RA C Executable Project
A C Executable Project for Renesas RA.

Renesas RA C Library Project
A C Library Project for Renesas RA.

Renesas RA C Project Using RA Library
Creates a C application project which uses an existing RA library project

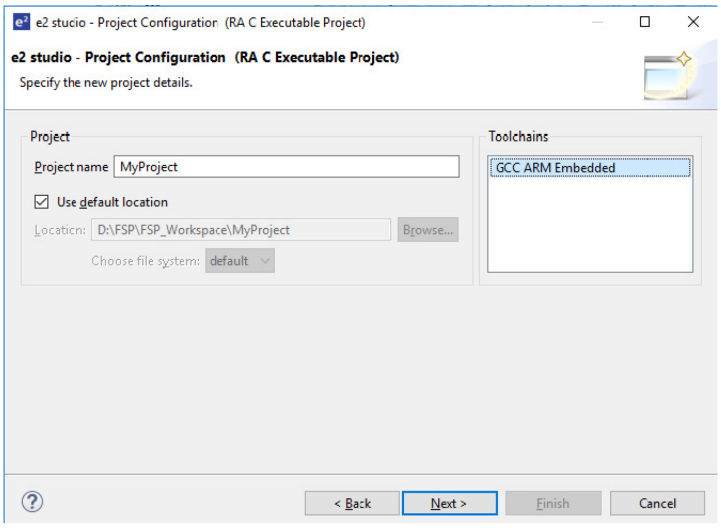
Renesas RA C++ Executable Project
A C++ Executable Project for Renesas RA.

Renesas RA C++ Library Project
A C++ Library Project for Renesas RA.

Renesas RA C++ Project Using RA Library
Creates a C++ application project which uses an existing RA library project

Figure 9: New Project Templates

2. Select a project name and location.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Specify the new project details.

Project
Project name: MyProject
☑ Use default location
Location: D:\FSP\FSP_Workspace\MyProject
Choose file system: default

Toolchains
GCC ARM Embedded

Figure 10: RA MCU Project Generator (Screen 1)

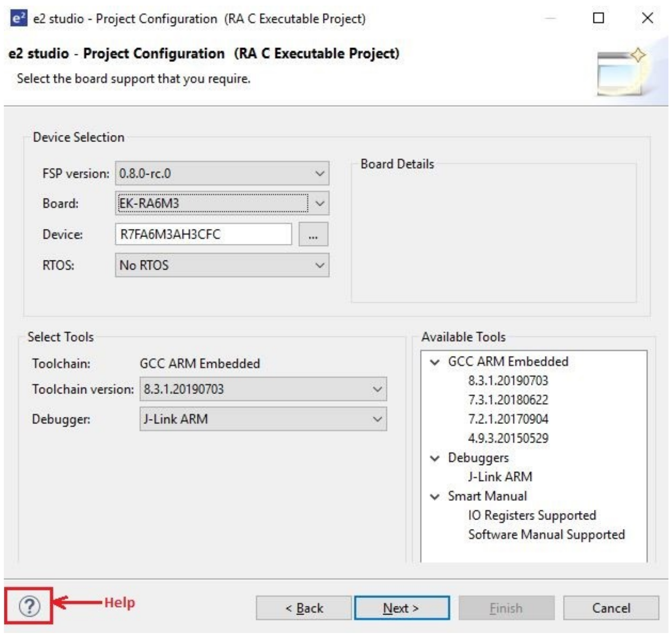
3. Click **Next**.

2.2.4.2 Selecting a Board and Toolchain

In the **Project Configuration** window select the hardware and software environment:

1. Select the **FSP version**.
2. Select the **Board** for your application. You can select an existing RA MCU Evaluation Kit or select **Custom User Board** for any of the RA MCU devices with your own BSP definition.
3. Select the **Device**. The **Device** is automatically populated based on the **Board** selection. Only change the **Device** when using the **Custom User Board (Any Device)** board selection.
4. To add threads, select **RTOS**, or **No RTOS** if an RTOS is not being used.
5. The **Toolchain** selection defaults to **GCC ARM Embedded**.
6. Select the **Toolchain version**. This should default to the installed toolchain version.
7. Select the **Debugger**. The J-Link ARM Debugger is preselected.

8. Click **Next**.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Select the board support that you require.

Device Selection
FSP version: 0.8.0-rc.0
Board: EK-RA6M3
Device: R7FA6M3AH3CFC
RTOS: No RTOS

Board Details

Select Tools
Toolchain: GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain version: 8.3.1.20190703
Debugger: J-Link ARM

Available Tools
- GCC ARM Embedded
  - 8.3.1.20190703
  - 7.3.1.20180622
  - 7.2.1.20170904
  - 4.9.3.20150529
- Debuggers
  - J-Link ARM
- Smart Manual
  - IO Registers Supported
  - Software Manual Supported

Figure 11: RA MCU Project Generator (Screen 2)

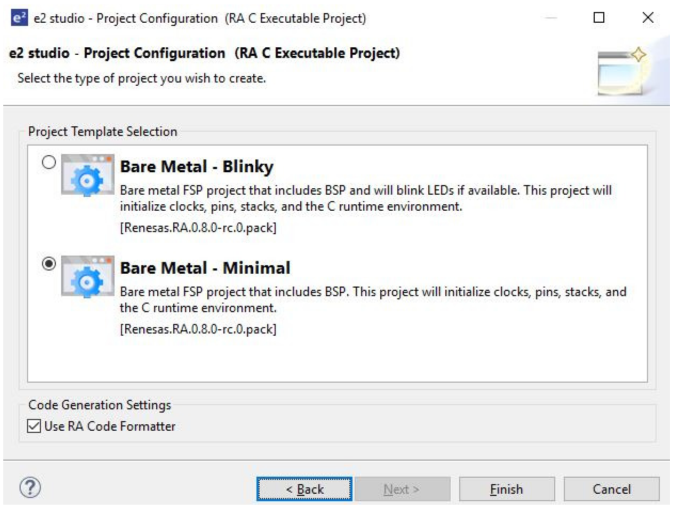
Click on the **Help** icon (?) for user guides, RA contents, and other documents.

2.2.4.3 Selecting a Project Template

In the next window, select a project template from the list of available templates. By default, this screen shows the templates that are included in your current RA MCU pack. Once you have selected the appropriate template, click **Finish**.

Note

If you want to develop your own application, select the basic template for your board, ***Bare Metal - Minimal****.*


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Select the type of project you wish to create.

Project Template Selection

Bare Metal - Blinky
Bare metal FSP project that includes BSP and will blink LEDs if available. This project will initialize clocks, pins, stacks, and the C runtime environment.
[Renesas.RA.0.8.0-rc.0.pack]

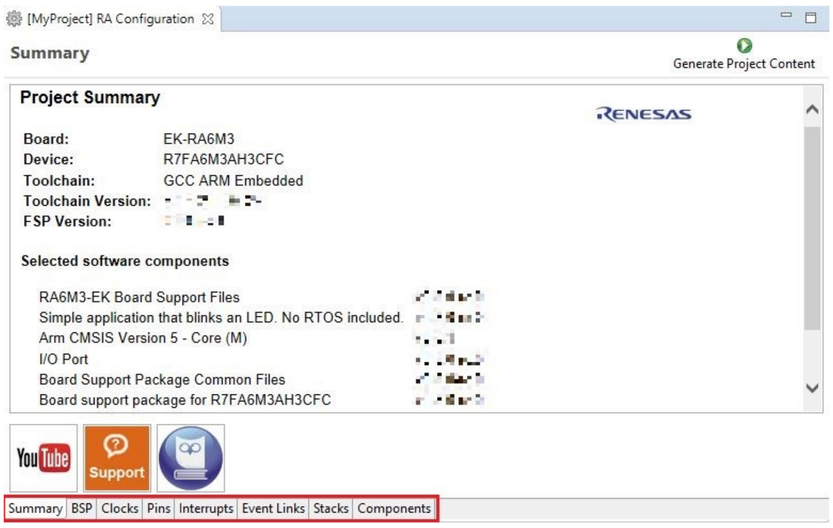
[✓] **Bare Metal - Minimal**
Bare metal FSP project that includes BSP. This project will initialize clocks, pins, stacks, and the C runtime environment.
[Renesas.RA.0.8.0-rc.0.pack]

Code Generation Settings
[✓] Use RA Code Formatter

Figure 12: RA MCU Project Generator (Screen 3)

When the project is created, e2 studio displays a summary of the current project configuration in the

RA MCU Project Editor.



Project Summary

Board:	EK-RA6M3
Device:	R7FA6M3AH3CFC
Toolchain:	GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain Version:	[redacted]
FSP Version:	[redacted]

Selected software components

RA6M3-EK Board Support Files	[redacted]
Simple application that blinks an LED. No RTOS included.	[redacted]
Arm CMSIS Version 5 - Core (M)	[redacted]
I/O Port	[redacted]
Board Support Package Common Files	[redacted]
Board support package for R7FA6M3AH3CFC	[redacted]

Figure 13: RA MCU Project Editor and available editor tabs

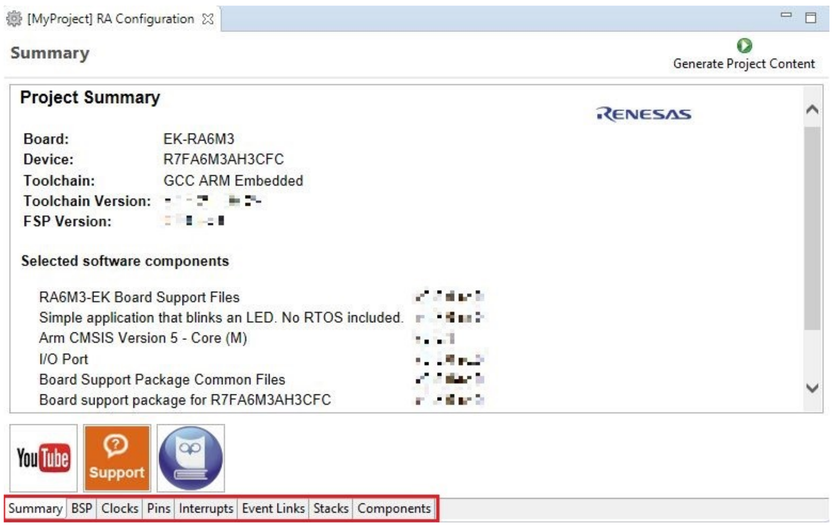
On the bottom of the RA MCU Project Editor view, you can find the tabs for configuring multiple aspects of your project:

- With the **BSP** tab, you can change board specific parameters from the initial project selection.
- With the **Clocks** tab, you can configure the MCU clock settings for your project.
- With the **Pins** tab, you can configure the electrical characteristics and functions of each port pin.
- With the **Stacks** tab, you can add FSP modules for non-RTOS applications and configure the modules. For each module selected in this tab, the **Properties** window provides access to the configuration parameters, interrupt priorities, and pin selections.
- With the **Interrupt** tab, you can add new user events/interrupts.
- With the **Event Links** tab, you can configure events used by the Event Link Controller.
- The **Components** tab provides an overview of the selected modules. You can also add drivers for specific FSP releases and application sample code here.

The functions and use of each of these tabs is explained in detail in the next section.

2.2.5 Configuring a Project

Each of the configurable elements in an FSP project can be edited using the appropriate tab in the configuration editor window. Importantly, the initial configuration of the MCU after reset and before any user code is executed is set by the configuration settings in the **BSP**, **Clocks** and **Pins** tabs. When you select a project template during project creation, e2 studio configures default values that are appropriate for the associated board. You can change those default values as needed. The following sections detail the process of configuring each of the project elements for each of the associated tabs.


[MyProject] RA Configuration
Summary
Generate Project Content
RENESAS
Support
Summary | BSP | Clocks | Pins | Interrupts | Event Links | Stacks | Components

Project Summary

Board:	EK-RA6M3
Device:	R7FA6M3AH3CFC
Toolchain:	GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain Version:	[redacted]
FSP Version:	[redacted]

Selected software components

RA6M3-EK Board Support Files	[redacted]
Simple application that blinks an LED. No RTOS included.	[redacted]
Arm CMSIS Version 5 - Core (M)	[redacted]
I/O Port	[redacted]
Board Support Package Common Files	[redacted]
Board support package for R7FA6M3AH3CFC	[redacted]

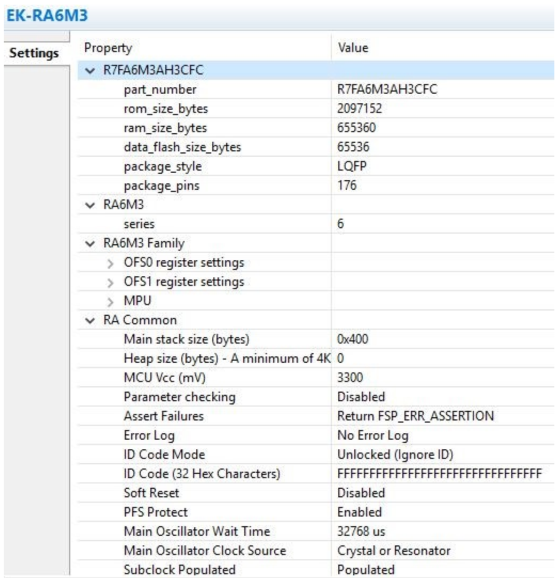
Figure 14: RA MCU Project Editor and available editor tabs

2.2.5.1 Configuring the BSP with e2 studio

The **BSP** tab shows the currently selected board (if any) and device. The Properties view is located in the lower left of the Project Configurations view as shown below.

Note

*If the Properties view is not visible, click **Window** > **Show View** > **Properties** in the top menu bar.*



Property	Value
⌄ R7FA6M3AH3CFC	
part_number	R7FA6M3AH3CFC
rom_size_bytes	2097152
ram_size_bytes	655360
data_flash_size_bytes	65536
package_style	LQFP
package_pins	176
⌄ RA6M3	
series	6
⌄ RA6M3 Family	
› OFS0 register settings	
› OFS1 register settings	
› MPU	
⌄ RA Common	
Main stack size (bytes)	0x400
Heap size (bytes) - A minimum of 4K	0
MCU Vcc (mV)	3300
Parameter checking	Disabled
Assert Failures	Return FSP_ERR_ASSERTION
Error Log	No Error Log
ID Code Mode	Unlocked (Ignore ID)
ID Code (32 Hex Characters)	FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF
Soft Reset	Disabled
PFS Protect	Enabled
Main Oscillator Wait Time	32768 us
Main Oscillator Clock Source	Crystal or Resonator
Subclock Populated	Populated

Figure 15: Configuration BSP tab

The **Properties** view shows the configurable options available for the BSP. These can be changed as required. The BSP is the FSP layer above the MCU hardware. e2 studio checks the entry fields to flag invalid entries. For example, only valid numeric values can be entered for the stack size.

When you click the **Generate Project Content** button, the BSP configuration contents are written to ra_cfg/fsp_cfg/bsp/bsp_cfg.h

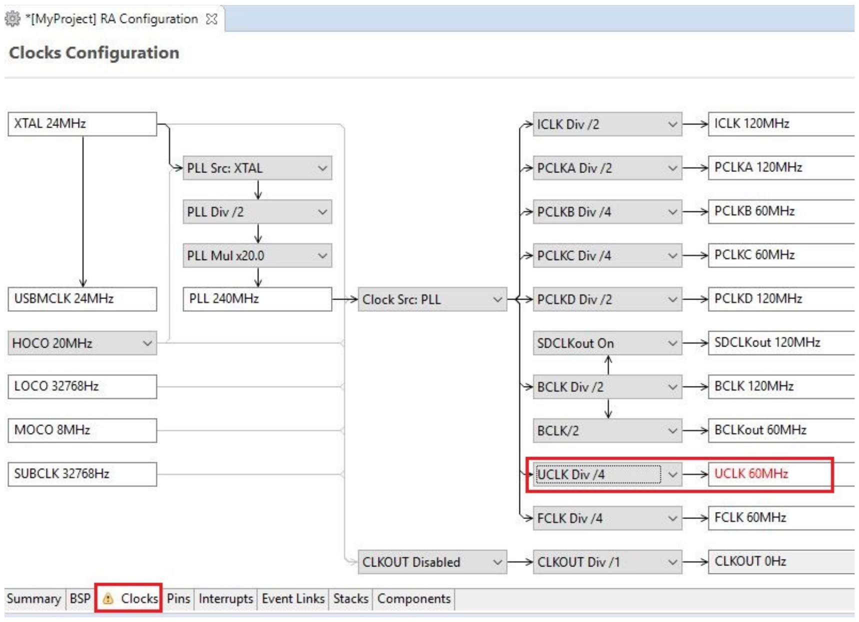
This file is created if it does not already exist.

Warning

Do not edit this file as it is overwritten whenever the **Generate Project Content** button is clicked.

2.2.5.2 Configuring Clocks

The **Clocks** tab presents a graphical view of the MCU's clock tree, allowing the various clock dividers and sources to be modified. If a clock setting is invalid, the offending clock value is highlighted in red. It is still possible to generate code with this setting, but correct operation cannot be guaranteed. In the figure below, the USB clock HOCO has been changed so the resulting clock frequency is 24 MHz instead of the required 48 MHz. This parameter is colored red.



XTAL 24MHz
PLL Src: XTAL
PLL Div /2
PLL Mul x20.0
PLL 240MHz
USBMCLK 24MHz
HOCO 20MHz
LOCO 32768Hz
MOCO 8MHz
SUBCLK 32768Hz
Clock Src: PLL
CLKOUT Disabled
ICLK Div /2 → ICLK 120MHz
PCLKA Div /2 → PCLKA 120MHz
PCLKB Div /4 → PCLKB 60MHz
PCLKC Div /4 → PCLKC 60MHz
PCLKD Div /2 → PCLKD 120MHz
SDCLKout On → SDCLKout 120MHz
BCLK Div /2 → BCLK 120MHz
BCLK/2 → BCLKout 60MHz
UCLK Div /4 → UCLK 60MHz
FCLK Div /4 → FCLK 60MHz
CLKOUT Div /1 → CLKOUT 0Hz

Figure 16: Configuration Clocks tab

When you click the **Generate Project Content** button, the clock configuration contents are written to: ra_gen/bsp_clock_cfg.h

This file will be created if it does not already exist.

Warning

Do not edit this file as it is overwritten whenever the **Generate Project Content** button is clicked.

2.2.5.3 Configuring Pins

The **Pins** tab provides flexible configuration of the MCU's pins. As many pins are able to provide multiple functions, they can be configured on a peripheral basis. For example, selecting a serial channel via the SCI peripheral offers multiple options for the location of the receive and transmit pins for that module and channel. Once a pin is configured, it is shown as green in the **Package** view.

Note

*If the **Package** view window is not open in e2 studio, select **Window** > **Show View** > **Pin Configurator** > **Package*** *from the top menu bar to open it.*

The **Pins** tab simplifies the configuration of large packages with highly multiplexed pins by highlighting errors and presenting the options for each pin or for each peripheral. If you selected a project template for a specific board such as the RA6M3, some peripherals connected on the board are preselected.

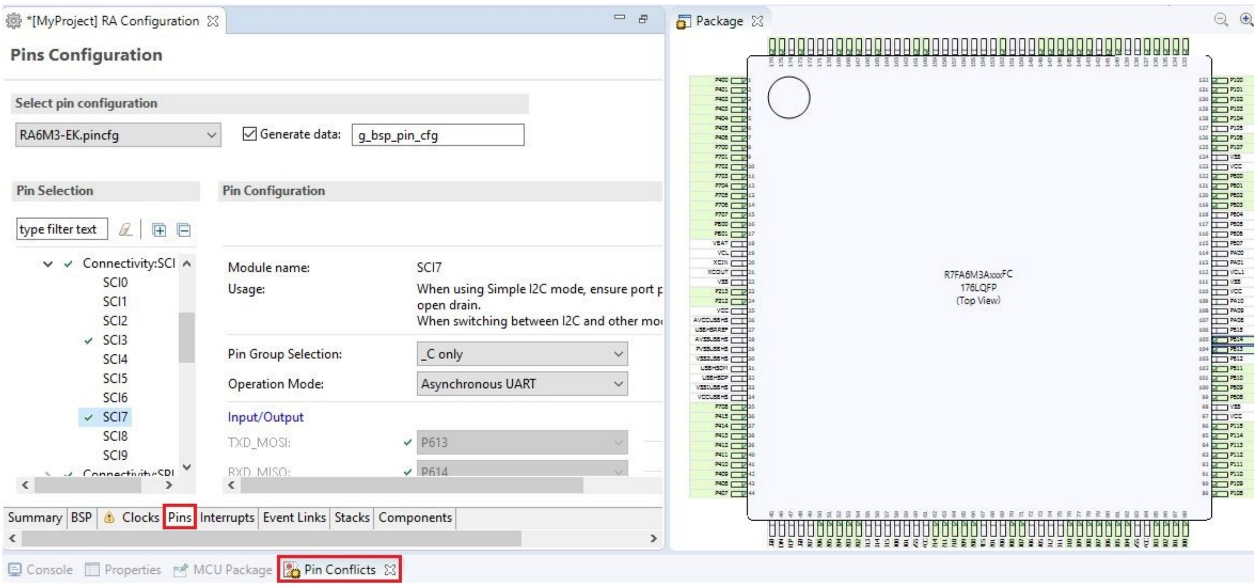
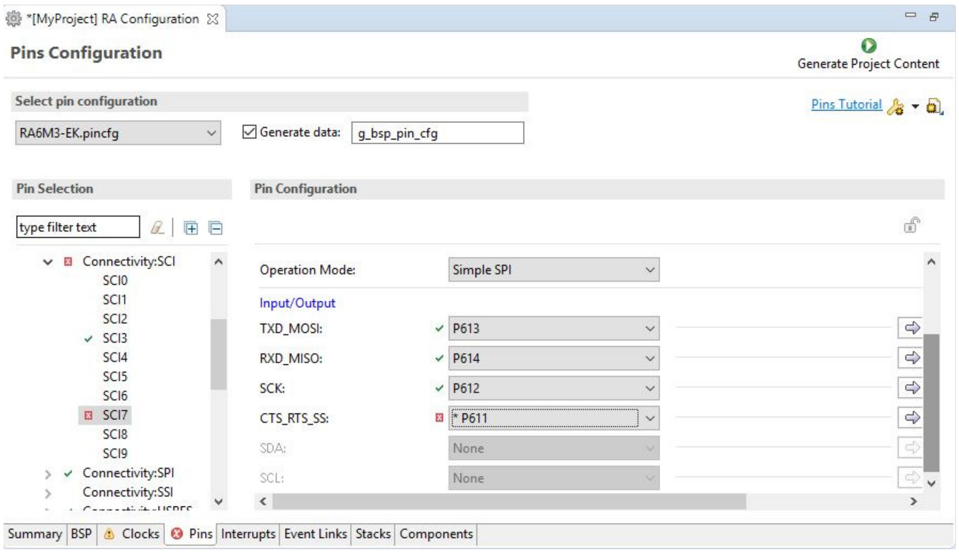

*[MyProject] RA Configuration
Pins Configuration
Select pin configuration
RA6M3-EK.pincfg
Generate data: g_bsp_pin_cfg
Pin Selection
type filter text
Connectivity:SCI
SCI0
SCI1
SCI2
✓ SCI3
SCI4
SCI5
SCI6
✓ SCI7
SCI8
SCI9
Pin Configuration
Module name: SCI7
Usage: When using Simple I2C mode, ensure port p
open drain.
When switching between I2C and other mo
Pin Group Selection: _C only
Operation Mode: Asynchronous UART
Input/Output
TXD_MOSI: ✓ P613
RXD_MISO: ✓ P614
Summary | BSP | Clocks | Pins | Interrupts | Event Links | Stacks | Components
Console | Properties | MCU Package | Pin Conflicts
Package
R7FA6M3AxxxFC
176LQFP
(Top View)

Figure 17: Pins Configuration

The pin configurator includes a built-in conflict checker, so if the same pin is allocated to another peripheral or I/O function the pin will be shown as red in the package view and also with white cross in a red square in the **Pin Selection** pane and **Pin Configuration** pane in the main **Pins** tab. The **Pin Conflicts** view provides a list of conflicts, so conflicts can be quickly identified and fixed.

In the example shown below, port P611 is already used by the CAC, and the attempt to connect this port to the Serial Communications Interface (SCI) results in a dangling connection error. To fix this error, select another port from the pin drop-down list or disable the CAC in the **Pin Selection** pane on the left side of the tab.


*[MyProject] RA Configuration

Pins Configuration

Generate Project Content

Select pin configuration

RA6M3-EK.pincfg

☑ Generate data: g_bsp_pin_cfg

Pins Tutorial

Pin Selection

type filter text

- Connectivity:SCI
  - SCI0
  - SCI1
  - SCI2
  - ✓ SCI3
  - SCI4
  - SCI5
  - SCI6
  - SCI7
  - SCI8
  - SCI9
- ✓ Connectivity:SPI
- Connectivity:SSI

Pin Configuration

Operation Mode: Simple SPI

Input/Output

TXD_MOSI: ✓	P613
RXD_MISO: ✓	P614
SCK: ✓	P612
CTS_RTS_SS:	* P611
SDA:	None
SCL:	None

Summary | BSP | Clocks | Pins | Interrupts | Event Links | Stacks | Components

Figure 18: e2 studio Pin configurator

The pin configurator also shows a package view and the selected electrical or functional characteristics of each pin.

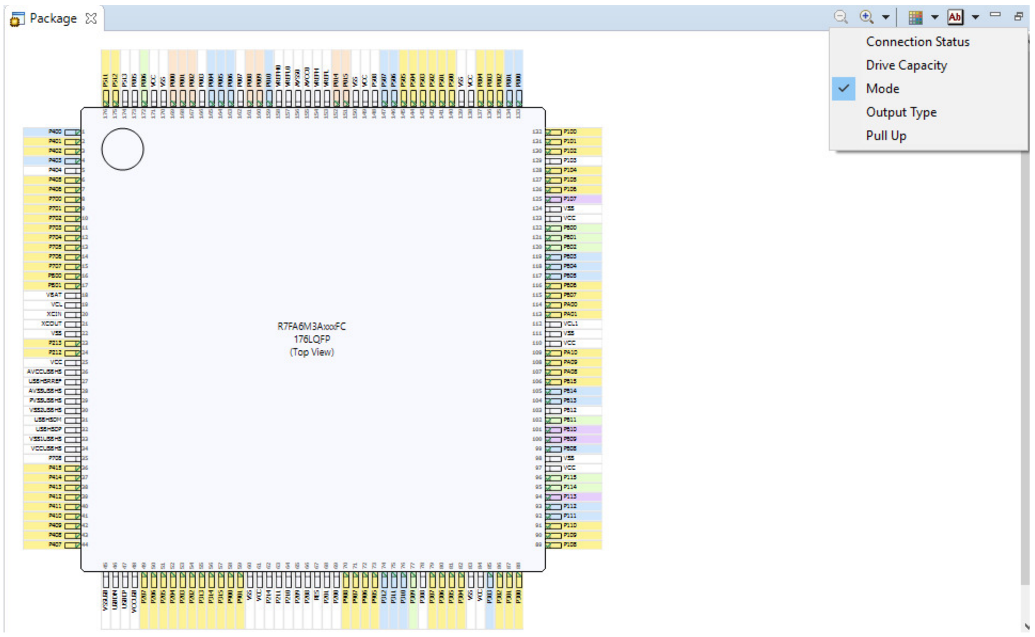


Figure 19: e2 studio Pin configurator package view

When you click the **Generate Project Content** button, the pin configuration contents are written to: ra_gen\bsp_pin_cfg.h

This file will be created if it does not already exist.

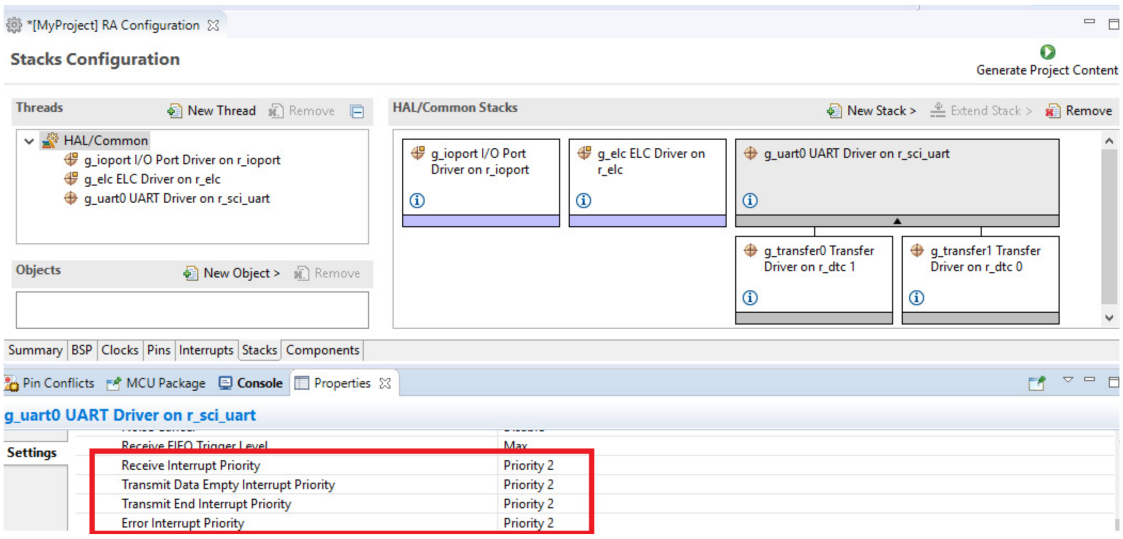
Warning

Do not edit this file as it is overwritten whenever the **Generate Project Content** button is clicked.

To make it easy to share pinning information for your project, e2 studio exports your pin configuration settings to a csv format and copies the csv file to ra_gen/<MCU package>.csv.

2.2.5.4 Configuring Interrupts

You can use the **Properties** view in the **Stacks** tab to enable interrupts by setting the interrupt priority. Select the driver in the **Stacks** pane to view and edit its properties.

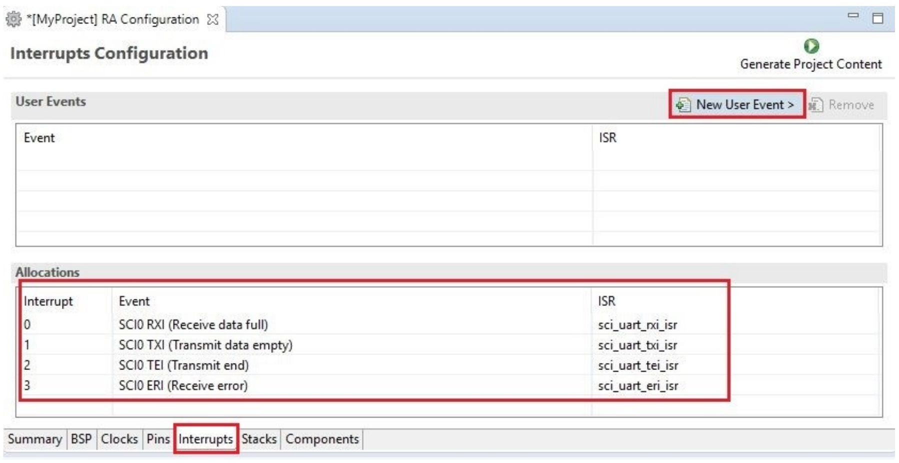

*[MyProject] RA Configuration
Stacks Configuration
Generate Project Content
Threads
New Thread
Remove
HAL/Common
g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
g_elc ELC Driver on r_elc
g_uart0 UART Driver on r_sci_uart
Objects
New Object >
HAL/Common Stacks
New Stack >
Extend Stack >
g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
g_elc ELC Driver on r_elc
g_uart0 UART Driver on r_sci_uart
g_transfer0 Transfer Driver on r_dtc 1
g_transfer1 Transfer Driver on r_dtc 0
Summary
BSP
Clocks
Pins
Interrupts
Stacks
Components
Pin Conflicts
MCU Package
Console
Properties
g_uart0 UART Driver on r_sci_uart
Settings

Receive FIFO Trigger Level	Max
Receive Interrupt Priority	Priority 2
Transmit Data Empty Interrupt Priority	Priority 2
Transmit End Interrupt Priority	Priority 2
Error Interrupt Priority	Priority 2

Figure 20: Configuring Interrupt on the Stacks tab

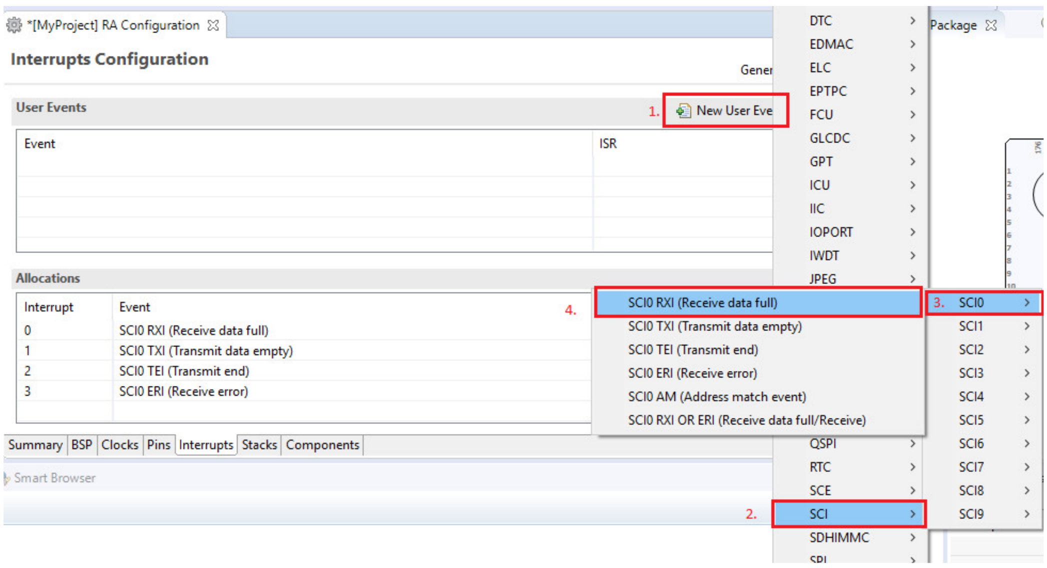
Interrupts

In the **Interrupt** tab, the user can bypass a peripheral interrupt and have user-defined ISRs for the peripheral interrupt. This can be done by adding a new event with the user define tab (**New User Event**).



Interrupt	Event	ISR
0	SCI0 RXI (Receive data full)	sci_uart_rxi_isr
1	SCI0 TXI (Transmit data empty)	sci_uart_txi_isr
2	SCI0 TEI (Transmit end)	sci_uart_tei_isr
3	SCI0 ERI (Receive error)	sci_uart_eri_isr

Figure 21: Configuring interrupt in Interrupt Tab

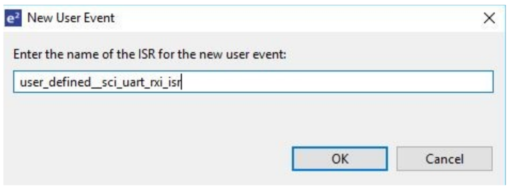


Event	ISR

Interrupt	Event
0	SCI0 RXI (Receive data full)
1	SCI0 TXI (Transmit data empty)
2	SCI0 TEI (Transmit end)
3	SCI0 ERI (Receive error)

Figure 22: Adding user-defined event

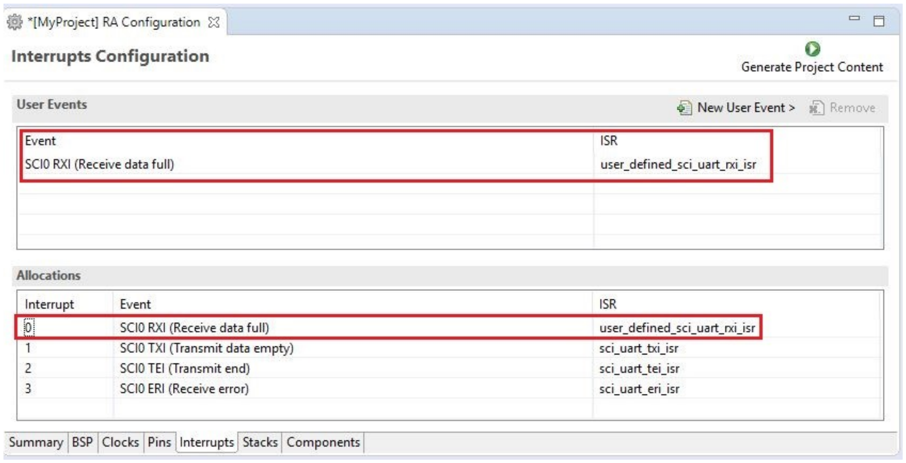
Enter the name of ISR for the new user event.



Enter the name of the ISR for the new user event:

user_defined_sci_uart_rxi_isr

Figure 23: User-defined event ISR



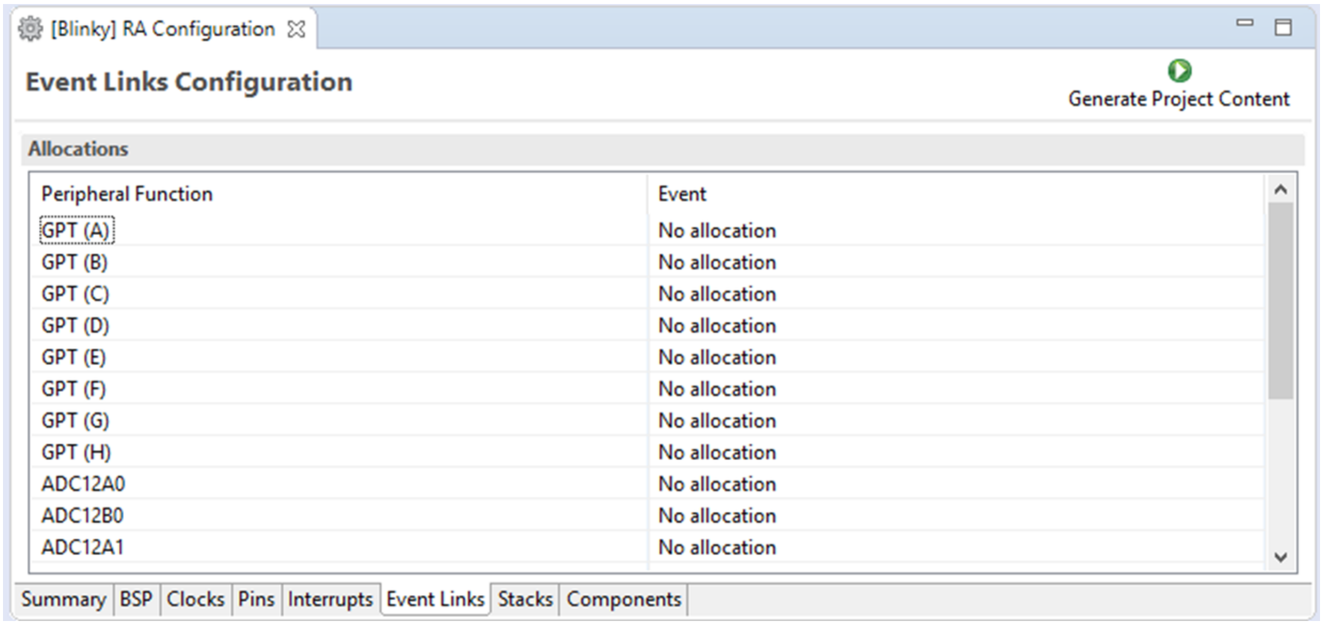
Event	ISR
SCI0 RXI (Receive data full)	user_defined_sci_uart_rxi_isr

Interrupt	Event	ISR
0	SCI0 RXI (Receive data full)	user_defined_sci_uart_rxi_isr
1	SCI0 TXI (Transmit data empty)	sci_uart_txi_isr
2	SCI0 TEI (Transmit end)	sci_uart_tei_isr
3	SCI0 ERI (Receive error)	sci_uart_eri_isr

Figure 24: Using a user-defined event

2.2.5.5 Viewing Event Links

The Event Links tab can be used to view the Event Link Controller events. The events are sorted by peripheral to make it easy to find and verify them.



Peripheral Function	Event
GPT (A)	No allocation
GPT (B)	No allocation
GPT (C)	No allocation
GPT (D)	No allocation
GPT (E)	No allocation
GPT (F)	No allocation
GPT (G)	No allocation
GPT (H)	No allocation
ADC12A0	No allocation
ADC12B0	No allocation
ADC12A1	No allocation

Figure 25: Viewing Event Links

Like the Interrupts tab, user-defined event sources and destinations (producers and consumers) can be defined by clicking the relevant **New User Event** button.

Note

When selecting an ELC event to receive for a module (or when manually defining an event link), only the events that are made available by the modules configured in the project will be shown.

2.2.6 Adding Threads and Drivers

Every FreeRTOS-based RA Project includes at least one RTOS Thread and a stack of FSP modules running in that thread. The **Stacks** tab is a graphical user interface which helps you to add the right modules to a thread and configure the properties of both the threads and the modules associated with each thread. Once you have configured the thread, e2 studio automatically generates the code reflecting your configuration choices.

For any driver, or, more generally, any module that you add to a thread, e2 studio automatically resolves all dependencies with other modules and creates the appropriate stack. This stack is displayed in the Stacks pane, which e2 studio populates with the selected modules and module options for the selected thread.

The default view of the **Stacks** tab includes a Common Thread called **HAL/Common**. This thread includes the driver for I/O control (IOPORT). The default stack is shown in the **HAL/Common Stacks** pane. The default modules added to the HAL/Common driver are special in that the FSP only requires a single instance of each, which e2 studio then includes in every user-defined thread by default.

In applications that do not use an RTOS or run outside of the RTOS, the HAL/Common thread becomes the default location where you can add additional drivers to your application.

For a detailed description on how to add and configure modules and stacks, see the following sections:

- Adding and Configuring HAL Drivers

- Adding Drivers to a Thread and Configuring the Drivers

Once you have added a module either to HAL/Common or to a new thread, you can access the driver's configuration options in the **Properties** view. If you added thread objects, you can access the objects configuration options in the **Properties** view in the same way.

You can find details about how to configure threads here: Configuring Threads

Note

Driver and module selections and configuration options are defined in the FSP pack and can therefore change when the FSP version changes.

2.2.6.1 Adding and Configuring HAL Drivers

For applications that run outside or without the RTOS, you can add additional HAL drivers to your application using the HAL/Common thread. To add drivers, follow these steps:

1. Click on the HAL/Common icon in the **Stacks** pane. The Modules pane changes to **HAL/Common Stacks**.

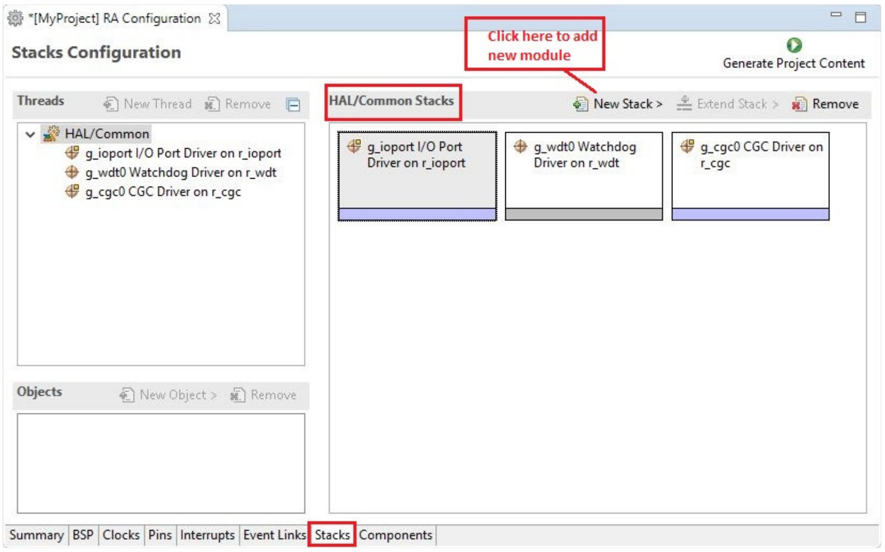

*[MyProject] RA Configuration
Stacks Configuration
Click here to add new module
Generate Project Content
Threads
New Thread
Remove
HAL/Common Stacks
New Stack >
Extend Stack >
Remove
HAL/Common
g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
g_wdt0 Watchdog Driver on r_wdt
g_cgc0 CGC Driver on r_cgc
g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
g_wdt0 Watchdog Driver on r_wdt
g_cgc0 CGC Driver on r_cgc
Objects
New Object >
Remove
Summary
BSP
Clocks
Pins
Interrupts
Event Links
Stacks
Components

Figure 26: e2 studio Project configurator - Adding drivers

2. Click **New Stack** to see a drop-down list of HAL level drivers available in the FSP.

3. Select a driver from the menu **New Stack > Driver**.

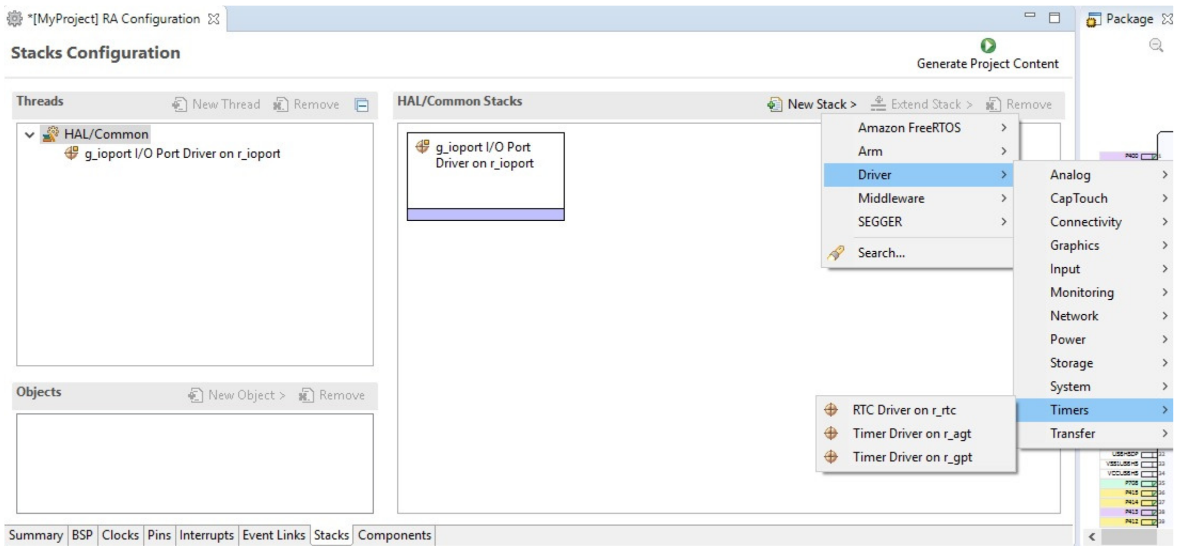


Figure 27: Select a driver

4. Select the driver module in the **HAL/Common Modules** pane and configure the driver properties in the **Properties** view.

e2 studio adds the following files when you click the **Generate Project Content** button:

- The selected driver module and its files to the ra/fsp directory
- The main() function and configuration structures and header files for your application as shown in the table below.

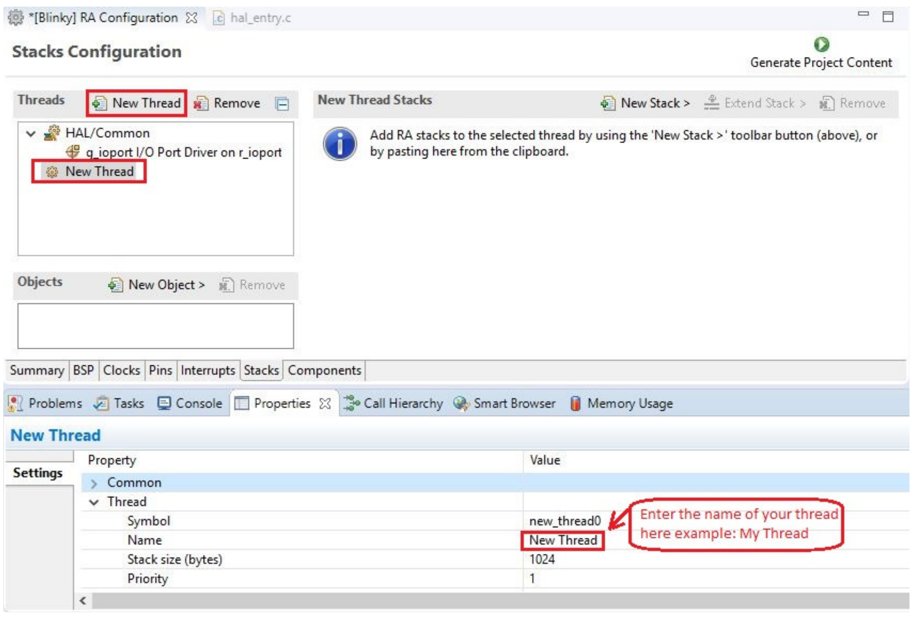
File	Contents	Overwritten by Generate Project Content?
ra_gen/main.c	Contains main() calling generated and user code. When called, the BSP already has Initialized the MCU.	Yes
ra_gen/hal_data.c	Configuration structures for HAL Driver only modules.	Yes
ra_gen/hal_data.h	Header file for HAL driver only modules.	Yes
src/hal_entry.c	User entry point for HAL Driver only code. Add your code here.	No

The configuration header files for all included modules are created or overwritten in this folder: ra_cfg/fsp_cfg

2.2.6.2 Adding Drivers to a Thread and Configuring the Drivers

For an application that uses the RTOS, you can add one or more threads, and for each thread at least one module that runs in the thread. You can select modules from the Driver dropdown menu. To add modules to a thread, follow these steps:

1. In the **Threads** pane, click **New Thread** to add a Thread.



Property	Value
> Common	
∨ Thread	
Symbol	new_thread0
Name	New Thread
Stack size (bytes)	1024
Priority	1

Figure 28: Adding a new RTOS Thread on the Stacks tab

2. In the **Properties** view, click on the **Name** and **Symbol** entries and enter a distinctive name and symbol for the new thread.

   Note

   *e2 studio updates the name of the thread stacks pane to **My Thread Stacks**.*

3. In the **My Thread Stacks** pane, click on **New Stack** to see a list of modules and drivers. HAL-level drivers can be added here.

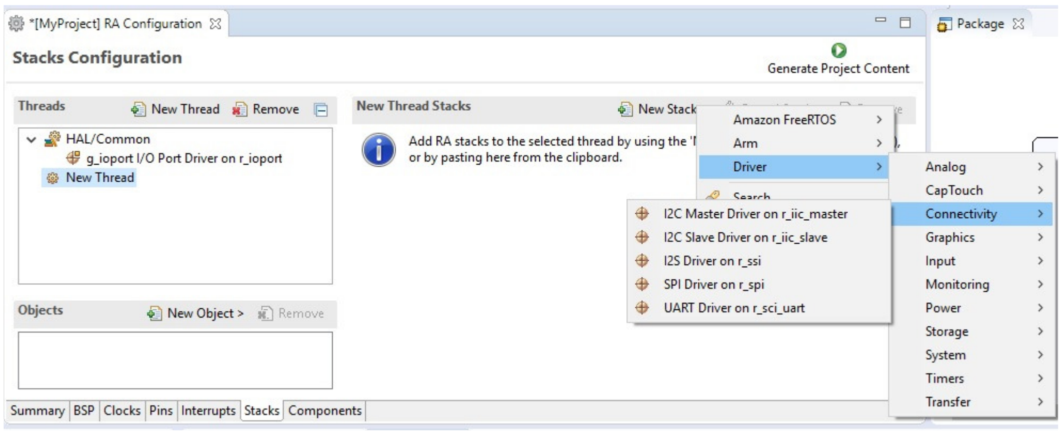
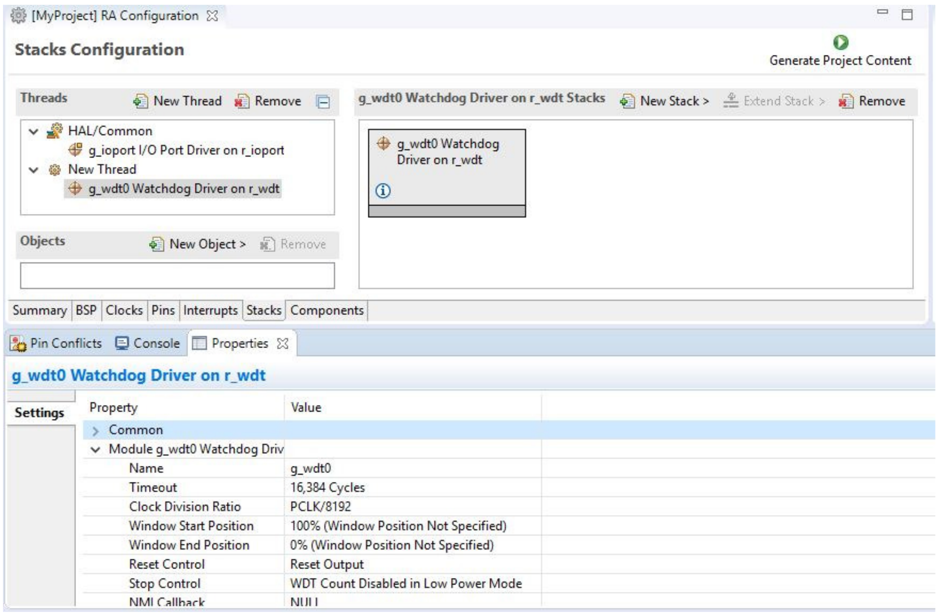


Figure 29: Adding Modules and Drivers to a thread

4. Select a module or driver from the list.

5. Click on the added driver and configure the driver as required by the application by updating the configuration parameters in the **Properties** view. To see the selected module or driver and be able to edit its properties, make sure the Thread containing the driver is

highlighted in the **Threads** pane.



Property	Value
Name	g_wdt0
Timeout	16,384 Cycles
Clock Division Ratio	PCLK/8192
Window Start Position	100% (Window Position Not Specified)
Window End Position	0% (Window Position Not Specified)
Reset Control	Reset Output
Stop Control	WDT Count Disabled in Low Power Mode
NMI Callback	NULL

Figure 30: Configuring Module or Driver properties

6. If needed, add another thread by clicking **New Thread** in the **Threads** pane.

When you press the **Generate Project Content** button for the example above, e2 studio creates the files as shown in the following table:

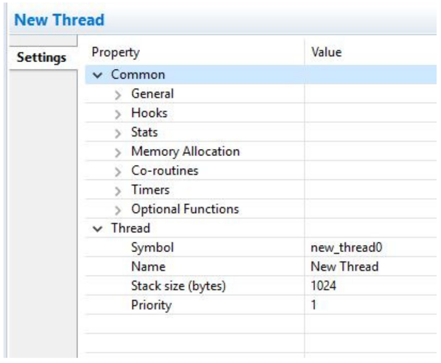
File	Contents	Overwritten by Generate Project Content?
ra_gen/main.c	Contains main() calling generated and user code. When called the BSP will have initialized the MCU.	Yes
ra_gen/my_thread.c	Generated thread "my_thread" and configuration structures for modules added to this thread.	Yes
ra_gen/my_thread.h	Header file for thread "my_thread"	Yes
ra_gen/hal_data.c	Configuration structures for HAL Driver only modules.	Yes
ra_gen/hal_data.h	Header file for HAL Driver only modules.	Yes
src/hal_entry.c	User entry point for HAL Driver only code. Add your code here.	No
src/my_thread_entry.c	User entry point for thread "my_thread". Add your code here.	No

The configuration header files for all included modules and drivers are created or overwritten in the following folders: ra_cfg/fsp_cfg/<header files>

2.2.6.3 Configuring Threads

If the application uses the FreeRTOS, the **Stacks** tab can be used to simplify the creation of FreeRTOS threads, semaphores, mutexes, and event flags.

The components of each thread can be configured from the **Properties** view as shown below.



New Thread

Settings

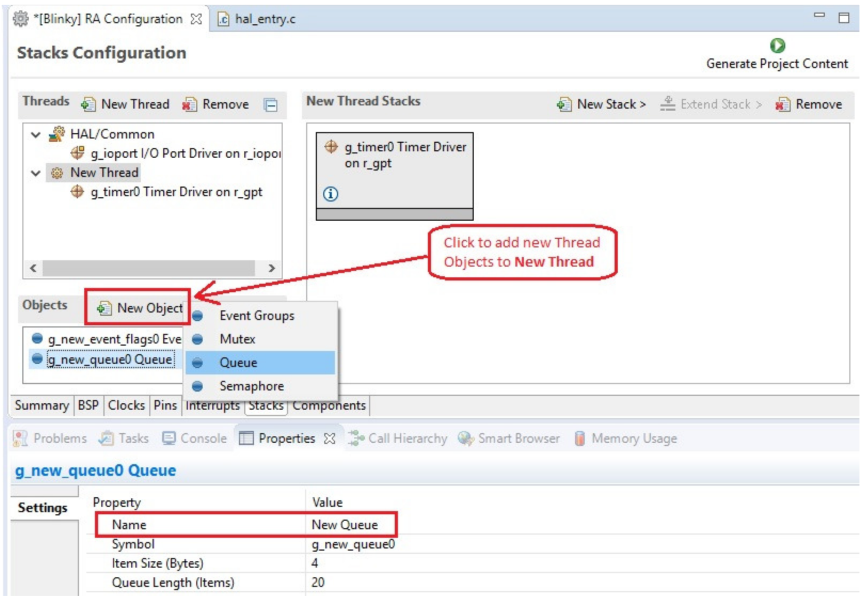
Property	Value
Common	
General	
Hooks	
Stats	
Memory Allocation	
Co-routines	
Timers	
Optional Functions	
Thread	
Symbol	new_thread0
Name	New Thread
Stack size (bytes)	1024
Priority	1

Figure 31: New Thread Properties

The **Properties** view contains settings common for all Threads (**Common**) and settings for this particular thread (**Thread**).

For this thread instance, the thread's name and properties (such as priority level or stack size) can be easily configured. e2 studio checks that the entries in the property field are valid. For example, it will verify that the field **Priority**, which requires an integer value, only contains numeric values between 0 and 9.

To add FreeRTOS resources to a Thread, select a thread and click on **New Object** in the Thread Objects pane. The pane takes on the name of the selected thread, in this case **My Thread Objects**.



g_new_queue0 Queue

Settings

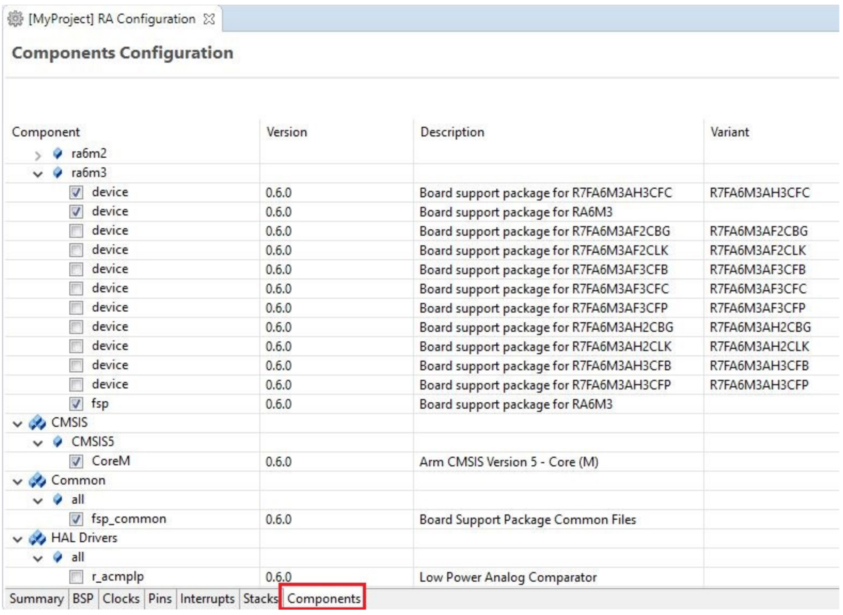
Property	Value
Name	New Queue
Symbol	g_new_queue0
Item Size (Bytes)	4
Queue Length (Items)	20

Figure 32: Configuring Thread Object Properties

Make sure to give each thread object a unique name and symbol by updating the **Name** and **Symbol** entries in the **Properties** view.

2.2.7 Reviewing and Adding Components

The **Components** tab enables the individual modules required by the application to be included or excluded. Modules common to all RA MCU projects are preselected (for example: **BSP > BSP > Board-specific BSP** and **HAL Drivers > all > r_cgc**). All modules that are necessary for the modules selected in the **Stacks** tab are included automatically. You can include or exclude additional modules by ticking the box next to the required component.



[MyProject] RA Configuration

Components Configuration

Component	Version	Description	Variant
ra6m2			
ra6m3			
✓ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AH3CFC	R7FA6M3AH3CFC
✓ device	0.6.0	Board support package for RA6M3	
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AF2CBG	R7FA6M3AF2CBG
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AF2CLK	R7FA6M3AF2CLK
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AF3CFB	R7FA6M3AF3CFB
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AF3CFC	R7FA6M3AF3CFC
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AF3CFP	R7FA6M3AF3CFP
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AH2CBG	R7FA6M3AH2CBG
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AH2CLK	R7FA6M3AH2CLK
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AH3CFB	R7FA6M3AH3CFB
☐ device	0.6.0	Board support package for R7FA6M3AH3CFP	R7FA6M3AH3CFP
✓ fsp	0.6.0	Board support package for RA6M3	
CMSIS			
CMSIS5			
✓ CoreM	0.6.0	Arm CMSIS Version 5 - Core (M)	
Common			
all			
✓ fsp_common	0.6.0	Board Support Package Common Files	
HAL Drivers			
all			
☐ r_acmplp	0.6.0	Low Power Analog Comparator	

Figure 33: Components Tab

While the components tab selects modules for a project, you must configure the modules themselves in the other tabs. clicking the **Generate Project Content** button copies the .c and .h files for each component for a Pack file into the following folders:

- ra/fsp/inc/api
- ra/fsp/inc/instances
- ra/fsp/src/bsp
- ra/fsp/src/<Driver_Name>

e2 studio also creates configuration files in the ra_cfg/fsp_cfg folder with configuration options included from the remaining **Stacks** tabs.

2.2.8 Writing the Application

Once you have added Modules and drivers and set their configuration parameters in the **Stacks** tab, you can add the application code that calls the Modules and drivers.

Note

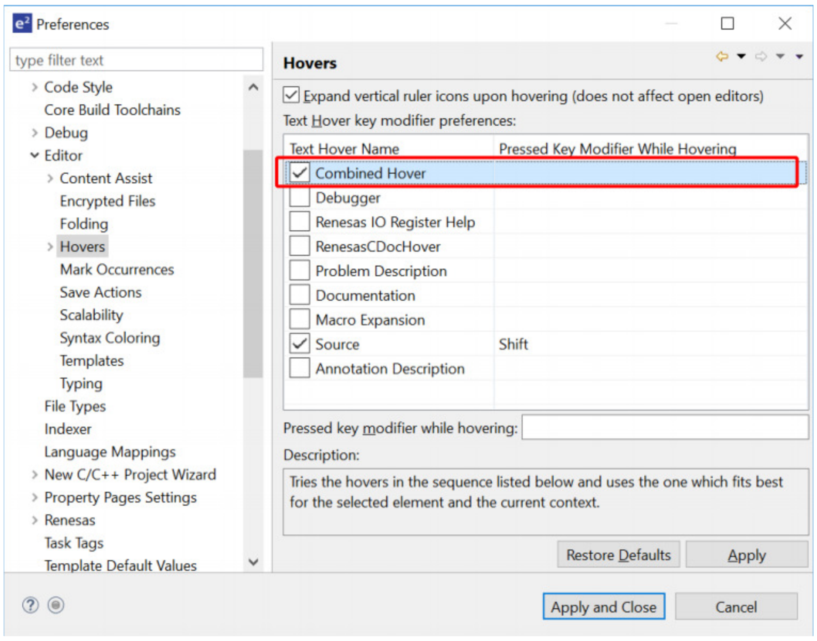
To check your configuration, build the project once without errors before adding any of your own application code.

2.2.8.1 Coding Features

e2 studio provides several efficiency improving features that help write code. Review these features prior to digging into the code development step-by-step sections that follow.

Edit Hover

e2 studio supports hovers in the textual editor. This function can be enabled or disabled via **Window > Preferences > C/C++ > Editor > Hovers**.



Preferences

Hovers

☑ Expand vertical ruler icons upon hovering (does not affect open editors)

Text Hover key modifier preferences:

Text Hover Name	Pressed Key Modifier While Hovering
☑ Combined Hover	
☐ Debugger	
☐ Renesas IO Register Help	
☐ RenesasCDocHover	
☐ Problem Description	
☐ Documentation	
☐ Macro Expansion	
☑ Source	Shift
☐ Annotation Description	

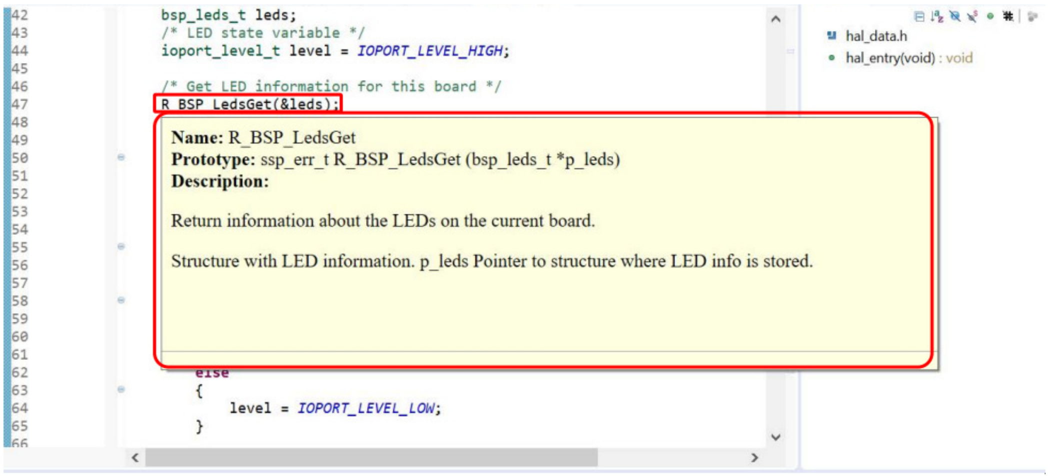
Pressed key modifier while hovering:

Description:

Tries the hovers in the sequence listed below and uses the one which fits best for the selected element and the current context.

Figure 34: Hover preference

To enable hover, check **Combined Hover** box. To disable it, uncheck this box. By default, it is enabled. The Hover function allows a user to view detailed information about any identifiers in the source code by hovering the mouse over an identifier and checking the pop-up.



```
    bsp_leds_t leds;
    /* LED state variable */
    ioport_level_t level = IOPORT_LEVEL_HIGH;

    /* Get LED information for this board */
    R_BSP_LedsGet(&leds);
```

Name: R_BSP_LedsGet
Prototype: ssp_err_t R_BSP_LedsGet (bsp_leds_t *p_leds)
Description:

Return information about the LEDs on the current board.

Structure with LED information. p_leds Pointer to structure where LED info is stored.

```
        else
        {
            level = IOPORT_LEVEL_LOW;
        }
```

Figure 35: Hover Example

Welcome Window

The e2 studio Welcome window displays useful information and common links to assist in development. Check out these resources to see what is available. They are updated with each release, so check back to see what has been added after a new release.

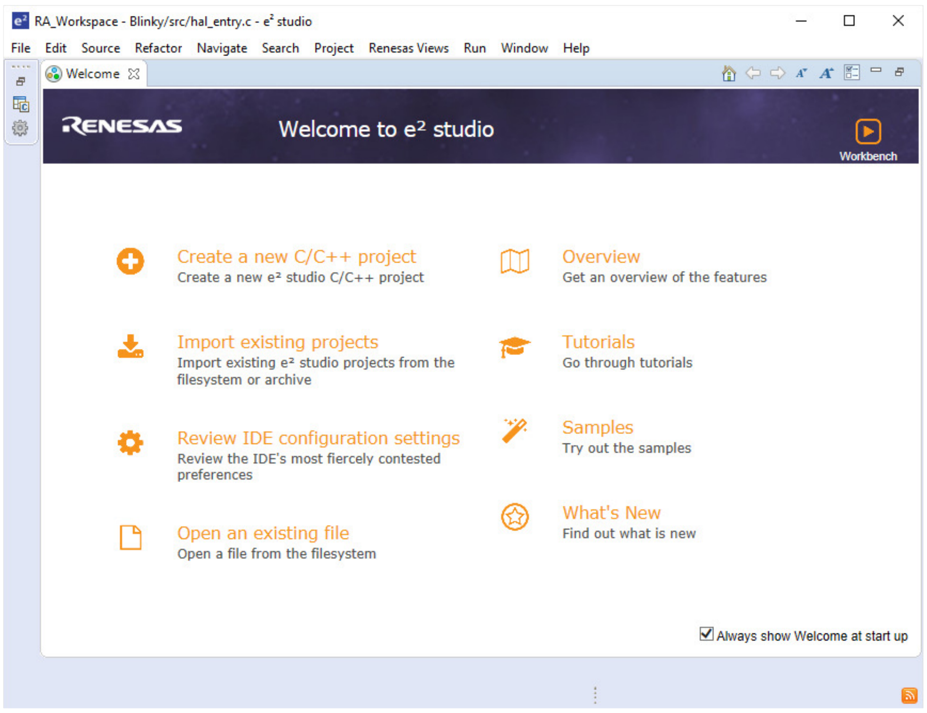

RA_Workspace - Blinky/src/hal_entry.c - e² studio
File Edit Source Refactor Navigate Search Project Renesas Views Run Window Help
Welcome
RENESAS
Welcome to e² studio
Workbench
Create a new C/C++ project
Create a new e² studio C/C++ project
Import existing projects
Import existing e² studio projects from the filesystem or archive
Review IDE configuration settings
Review the IDE's most fiercely contested preferences
Open an existing file
Open a file from the filesystem
Overview
Get an overview of the features
Tutorials
Go through tutorials
Samples
Try out the samples
What's New
Find out what is new
Always show Welcome at start up

Figure 36: Welcome window

Cheat Sheets

Cheat sheets are macro driven illustrations of some common tasks. They show, step-by-step, what commands and menus are used. These will be populated with more examples on each release. Cheat Sheets are available from the **Help** menu.

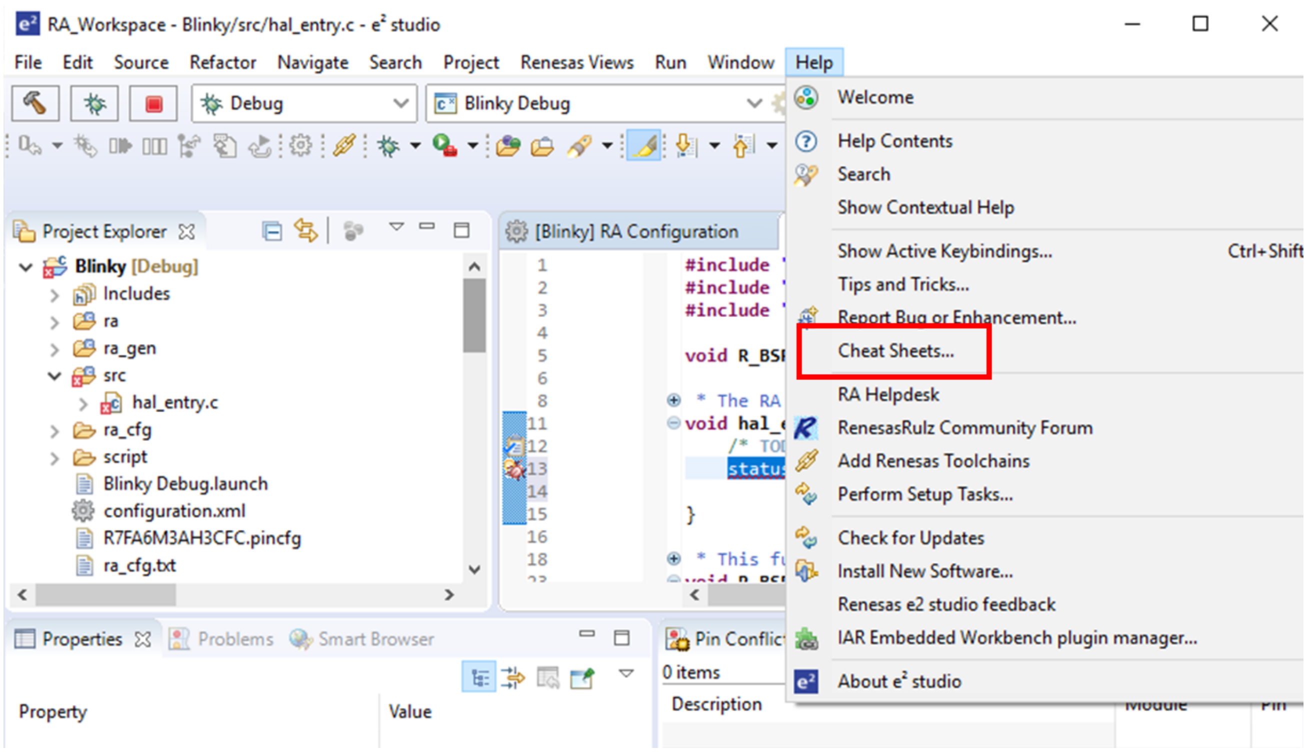
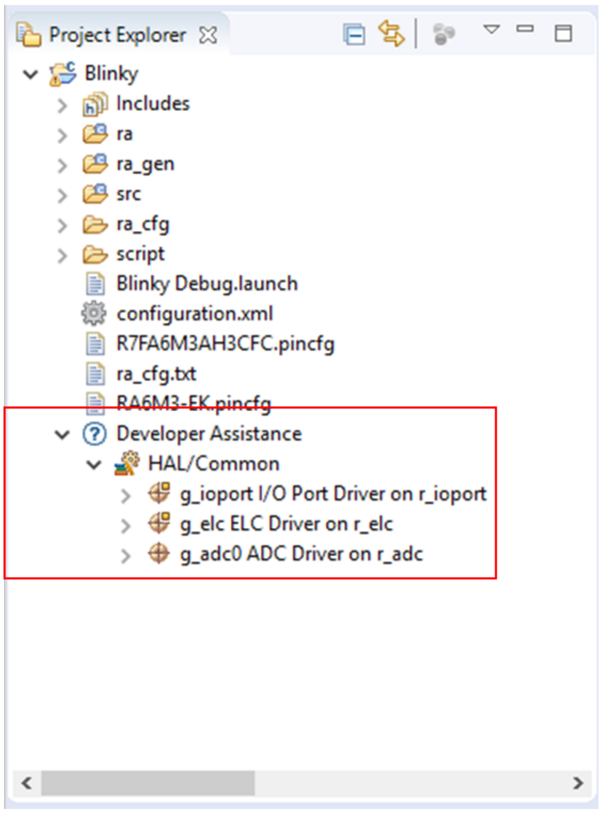

RA_Workspace - Blinky/src/hal_entry.c - e² studio
File Edit Source Refactor Navigate Search Project Renesas Views Run Window Help
Welcome
Help Contents
Search
Show Contextual Help
Show Active Keybindings... Ctrl+Shift
Tips and Tricks...
Report Bug or Enhancement...
Cheat Sheets...
RA Helpdesk
RenesasRulz Community Forum
Add Renesas Toolchains
Perform Setup Tasks...
Check for Updates
Install New Software...
Renesas e2 studio feedback
IAR Embedded Workbench plugin manager...
About e² studio

Figure 37: Cheat Sheets

Developer Assistance

FSP Developer Assistance provides developers with module and Application Programming Interface (API) reference documentation in e2 studio. After configuring the threads and software stacks for an FSP project with the Configuration Editor, Developer Assistance quickly helps you get started writing C/C++ application code for the project using the configured stack modules.

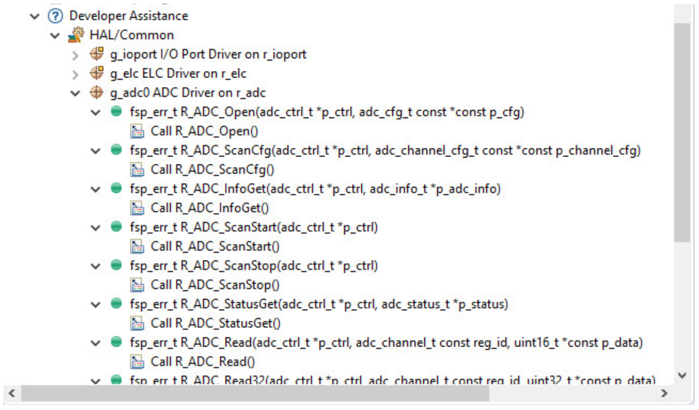
1. Expand the project explorer to view Developer Assistance



```
Project Explorer
v Blinky
  > Includes
  > ra
  > ra_gen
  > src
  > ra_cfg
  > script
    Blinky Debug.launch
    configuration.xml
    R7FA6M3AH3CFC.pincfg
    ra_cfg.txt
    RA6M3-EK.pincfg
  v Developer Assistance
    v HAL/Common
      > g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
      > g_elc ELC Driver on r_elc
      > g_adc0 ADC Driver on r_adc
```

Figure 38: Developer Assistance

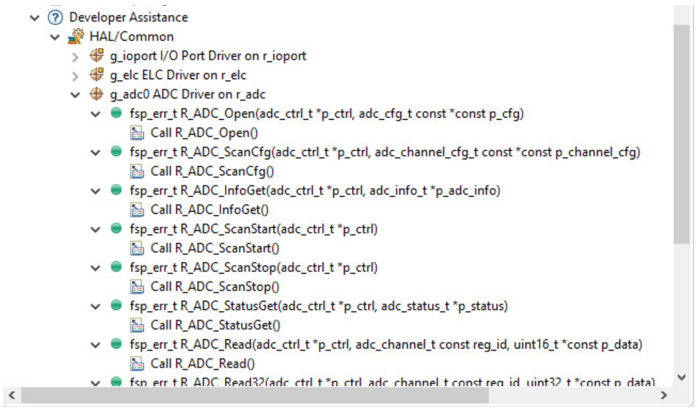
2. Expand a stack module to show its APIs



```
v Developer Assistance
  v HAL/Common
    > g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
    > g_elc ELC Driver on r_elc
    v g_adc0 ADC Driver on r_adc
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_Open(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
          Call R_ADC_Open()
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanCfg(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_cfg_t const *const p_channel_cfg)
          Call R_ADC_ScanCfg()
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_InfoGet(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_info_t *p_adc_info)
          Call R_ADC_InfoGet()
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanStart(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
          Call R_ADC_ScanStart()
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanStop(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
          Call R_ADC_ScanStop()
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_StatusGet(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_status_t *p_status)
          Call R_ADC_StatusGet()
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_Read(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint16_t *const p_data)
          Call R_ADC_Read()
      v fsp_err_t R_ADC_Read32(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint32_t *const p_data)
```

Figure 39: Developer Assistance APIs

3. Dragging and dropping an API from Develop Assistance to a source file helps to write source code quickly.



```
Developer Assistance
  HAL/Common
    g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
    g_elc ELC Driver on r_elc
    g_adc0 ADC Driver on r_adc
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_Open(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
        Call R_ADC_Open()
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanCfg(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_cfg_t const *const p_channel_cfg)
        Call R_ADC_ScanCfg()
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_InfoGet(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_info_t *p_adc_info)
        Call R_ADC_InfoGet()
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanStart(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
        Call R_ADC_ScanStart()
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanStop(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
        Call R_ADC_ScanStop()
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_StatusGet(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_status_t *p_status)
        Call R_ADC_StatusGet()
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_Read(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint16_t *const p_data)
        Call R_ADC_Read()
      fsp_err_t R_ADC_Read32(adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint32_t *const p_data)
```

Figure 40: Dragging and Dropping an API in Developer Assistance

Information Icon

Information icons are available on each module in the thread stack. Clicking on these icons opens a module folder on GitHub that contains additional information on the module. An example information Icon is shown below:

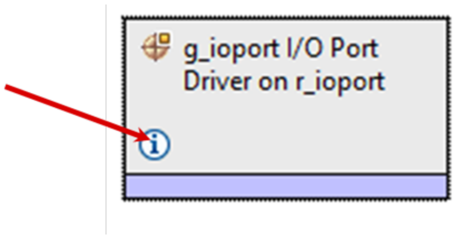


Figure 41: Information icon

Smart Manual

Smart Manual is the view that displays information (register information/search results by keyword) extracted from the hardware user's manual. Smart Manual provides search capability of hardware manual information (register information search and keyword search result) and provides a view displaying result.

You can open Smart Manual view by selecting the menu: **Renesas Views > Solution Toolkit > Smart Manual**. Register search and Keyword search are both available by selecting the appropriate tab.

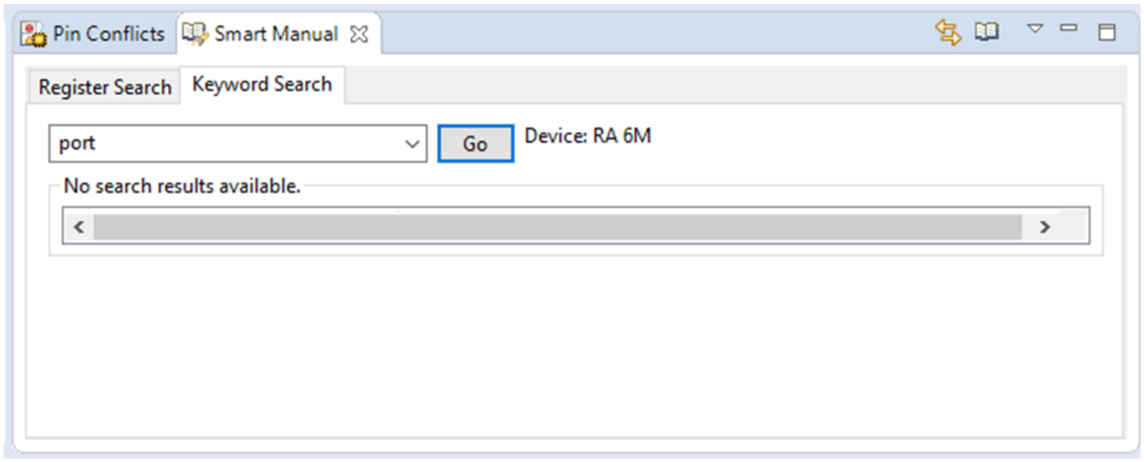


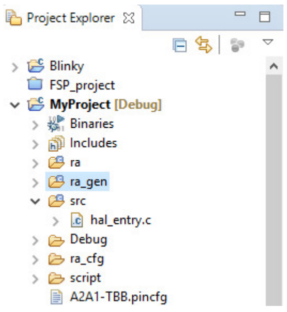
Figure 42: Smart Manual

2.2.8.2 RTOS-independent Applications

To write application code:

1. Add all drivers and modules in the **Stacks** tab and resolve all dependencies flagged by e2 studio such as missing interrupts or drivers.
2. Configure the drivers in the **Properties** view.
3. In the Project Configuration view, click the **Generate Project Content** button.

4. In the **Project Explorer** view, double-click on the src/hal_entry.c file to edit the source file.



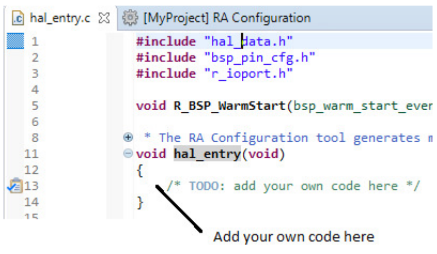
Note

All configuration structures necessary for the driver to be called in the application are initialized in ra_gen/hal_data.c.

Warning

Do not modify the files in the directory ra_gen. These files are overwritten every time you push the **Generate Project Content** button.

5. Add your application code here:



```
#include "hal_data.h"
#include "bsp_pin_cfg.h"
#include "r_ioport.h"

void R_BSP_WarmStart(bsp_warm_start_ever

 * The RA Configuration tool generates m
void hal_entry(void)
{
    /* TODO: add your own code here */
}
```

Figure 43: Adding user code to hal_entry.c

6. Build the project without errors by clicking on **Project > Build Project**.

The following tutorial shows how execute the steps above and add application code: Tutorial: Using HAL Drivers - Programming the WDT.

The WDT example is a HAL level application which does not use an RTOS. The user guides for each module also include basic application code that you can add to hal_entry.c.

2.2.8.3 RTOS Applications

To write RTOS-aware application code using FreeRTOS, follow these steps:

1. Add a thread using the **Stacks** tab.
2. Provide a unique name for the thread in the **Properties** view for this thread.
3. Configure all drivers and resources for this thread and resolve all dependencies flagged by e2 studio such as missing interrupts or drivers.
4. Configure the thread objects.
5. Provide unique names for each thread object in the **Properties** view for each object.
6. Add more threads if needed and repeat steps 1 to 5.
7. In the **RA Project Editor**, click the **Generate Project Content** button.

8. In the **Project Explorer** view, double-click on the src/my_thread_1_entry.c file to edit the source file.

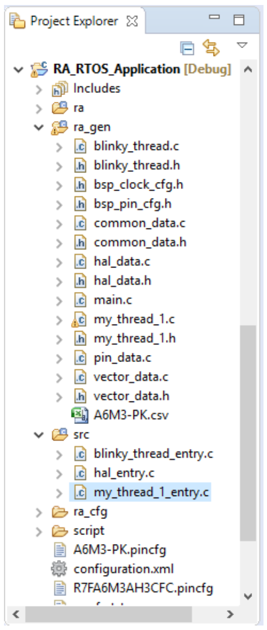


Figure 44: Generated files for an RTOS application

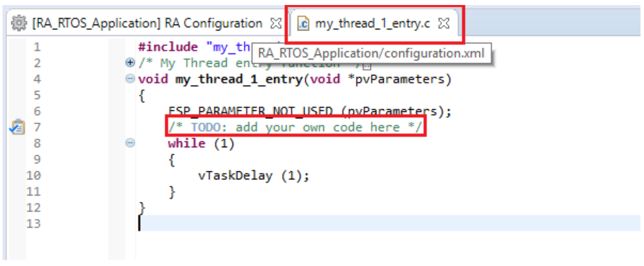
Note

All configuration structures necessary for the driver to be called in the application are initialized in ra_gen/my_thread_1.c and my_thread_2.c

Warning

Do not modify the files in the directory ra_gen. These files are overwritten every time you push the **Generate Project Content** button.

9. Add your application code here:


[RA_RTOS_Application] RA Configuration
my_thread_1_entry.c
RA_RTOS_Application/configuration.xml

```
#include "my_th
/* My Thread en
void my_thread_1_entry(void *pvParameters)
{
    FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED (pvParameters);
    /* TODO: add your own code here */
    while (1)
    {
        vTaskDelay (1);
    }
}
```

Figure 45: Adding user code to my_thread_1.entry

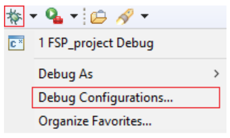
10. Repeat steps 1 to 9 for the next thread.
11. Build your project without errors by clicking on **Project > Build Project**.

2.2.9 Debugging the Project

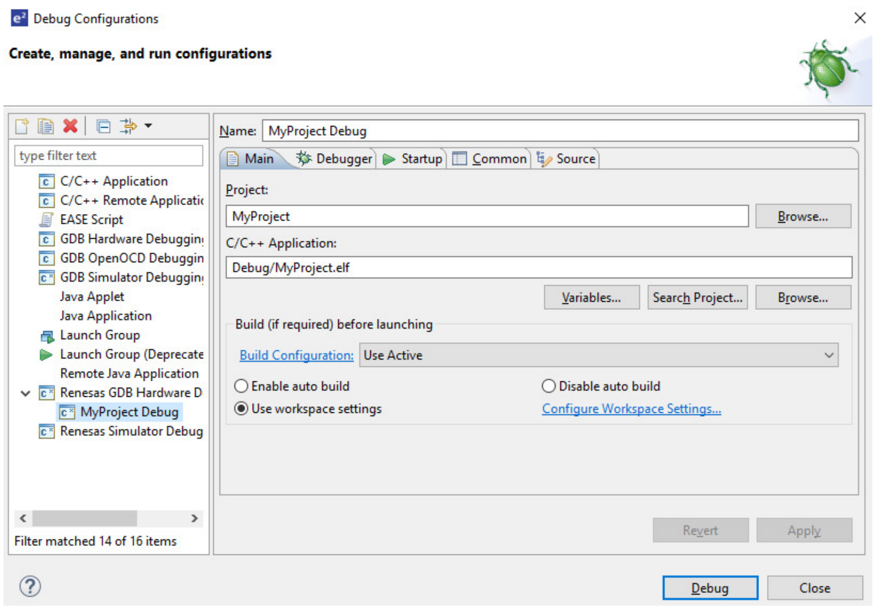
Once your project builds without errors, you can use the Debugger to download your application to the board and execute it.

To debug an application follow these steps:

1. On the drop-down list next to the debug icon, select **Debug Configurations**.



2. In the **Debug Configurations** view, click on your project listed as **MyProject Debug**.


Debug Configurations

Create, manage, and run configurations

Name: MyProject Debug

Main | Debugger | Startup | Common | Source

Project: MyProject

C/C++ Application: Debug/MyProject.elf

Build (if required) before launching

Build Configuration: Use Active

( ) Enable auto build ( ) Disable auto build

(●) Use workspace settings — Configure Workspace Settings...

Configuration list: C/C++ Application, C/C++ Remote Application, EASE Script, GDB Hardware Debugging, GDB OpenOCD Debugging, GDB Simulator Debugging, Java Applet, Java Application, Launch Group, Launch Group (Deprecated), Remote Java Application, Renesas GDB Hardware Debugging > MyProject Debug, Renesas Simulator Debugging

Filter matched 14 of 16 items

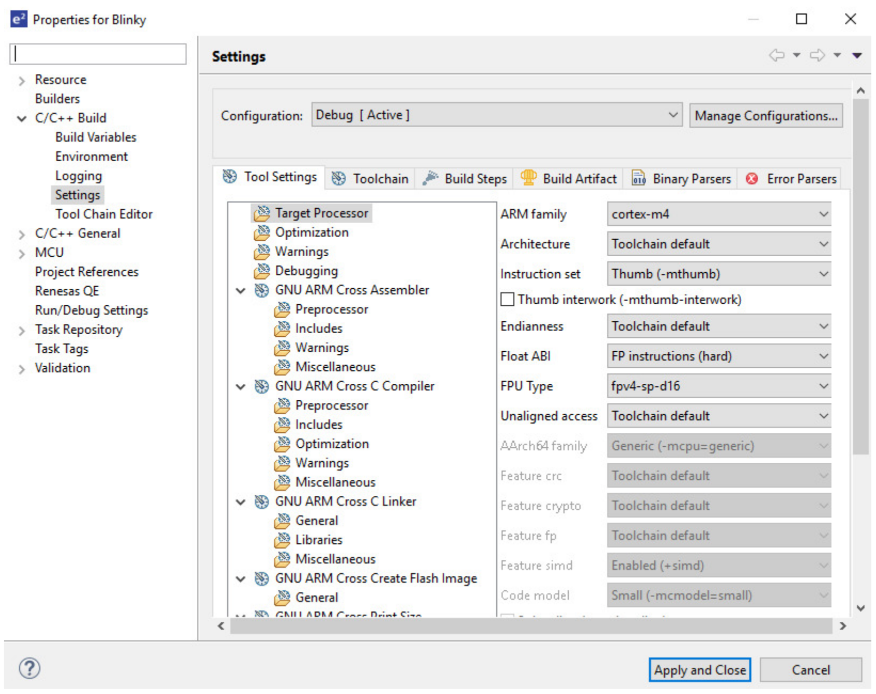
3. Connect the board to your PC via either a standalone Segger J-Link debugger or a Segger J-Link On-Board (included on all RA EKs) and click **Debug**.

Note

For details on using J-Link and connecting the board to the PC, see the Quick Start Guide included in the RA MCU Kit.

2.2.10 Modifying Toolchain Settings

There are instances where it may be necessary to make changes to the toolchain being used (for example, to change optimization level of the compiler or add a library to the linker). Such modifications can be made from within e2 studio through the menu **Project > Properties > Settings** when the project is selected. The following screenshot shows the settings dialog for the GNU ARM toolchain. This dialog will look slightly different depending upon the toolchain being used.



Configuration: Debug [Active]

ARM family: cortex-m4
Architecture: Toolchain default
Instruction set: Thumb (-mthumb)
☐ Thumb interwork (-mthumb-interwork)
Endianness: Toolchain default
Float ABI: FP instructions (hard)
FPU Type: fpv4-sp-d16
Unaligned access: Toolchain default
AArch64 family: Generic (-mcpu=generic)
Feature crc: Toolchain default
Feature crypto: Toolchain default
Feature fp: Toolchain default
Feature simd: Enabled (+simd)
Code model: Small (-mcmodel=small)

Figure 46: e2 studio Project toolchain settings

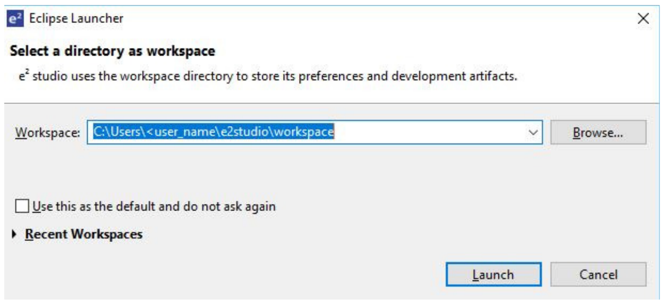
The scope for the settings is project scope which means that the settings are valid only for the project being modified.

The settings for the linker which control the location of the various memory sections are contained in a script file specific for the device being used. This script file is included in the project when it is created and is found in the script folder (for example, /script/a6m3.ld).

2.2.11 Importing an Existing Project into e2 studio

1. Start by opening e2 studio.
2. Open an existing Workspace to import the project and skip to step d. If the workspace doesn't exist, proceed with the following steps:

   a. At the end of e2 studio startup, you will see the Workspace Launcher Dialog box as shown in the following figure.



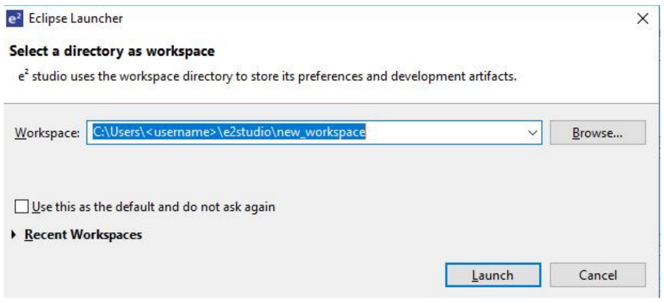
Select a directory as workspace
e² studio uses the workspace directory to store its preferences and development artifacts.

Workspace: C:\Users\<user_name\e2studio\workspace

☐ Use this as the default and do not ask again

Figure 47: Workspace Launcher Dialog

b. Enter a new workspace name in the Workspace Launcher Dialog as shown in the following figure. e2 studio creates a new workspace with this name.


Eclipse Launcher
Select a directory as workspace
e² studio uses the workspace directory to store its preferences and development artifacts.
Workspace:
Browse...
Use this as the default and do not ask again
Recent Workspaces
Launch
Cancel

C:\Users\<username>\e2studio\new_workspace

Figure 48: Workspace Launcher dialog - Select Workspace

c. Click **Launch**.

d. When the workspace is opened, you may see the Welcome Window. Click on the **Workbench** arrow button to proceed past the Welcome Screen as seen in the following figure.

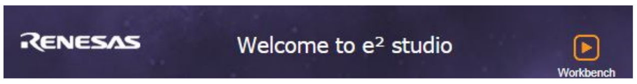
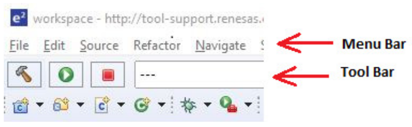


Figure 49: Workbench arrow button

3. You are now in the workspace that you want to import the project into. Click the **File** menu in the menu bar, as shown in the following figure.


workspace - http://tool-support.renesas.
File Edit Source Refactor Navigate

Menu Bar
Tool Bar

Figure 50: Menu and tool bar

4. Click **Import** on the **File** menu or in the menu bar, as shown in the following figure.

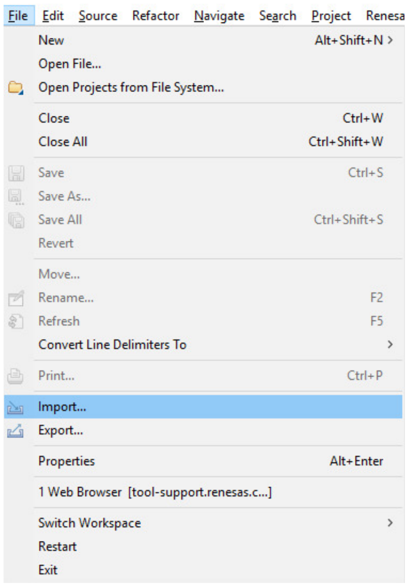


Figure 51: File drop-down menu

5. In the **Import** dialog box, as shown in the following figure, choose the **General** option, then **Existing Projects into Workspace**, to import the project into the current workspace.

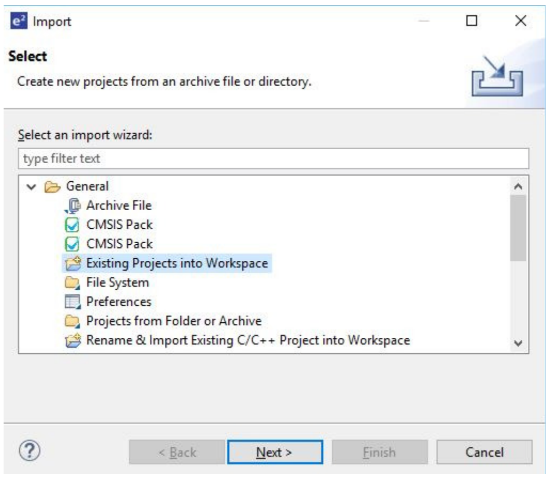

Import
Select
Create new projects from an archive file or directory.
Select an import wizard:
type filter text
General
Archive File
CMSIS Pack
CMSIS Pack
Existing Projects into Workspace
File System
Preferences
Projects from Folder or Archive
Rename & Import Existing C/C++ Project into Workspace
< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel

Figure 52: Project Import dialog with

Existing Projects into Workspace" option selected"

6. Click **Next**.
7. To import the project, use either **Select archive file** or **Select root directory**.

   a. Click **Select archive file** as shown in the following figure.

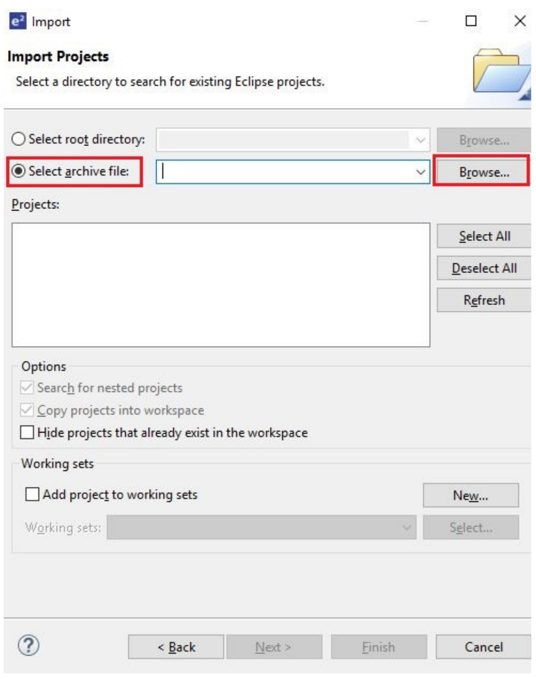


Figure 53: Import Existing Project dialog 1 - Select archive file

b. Click **Select root directory** as shown in the following figure.

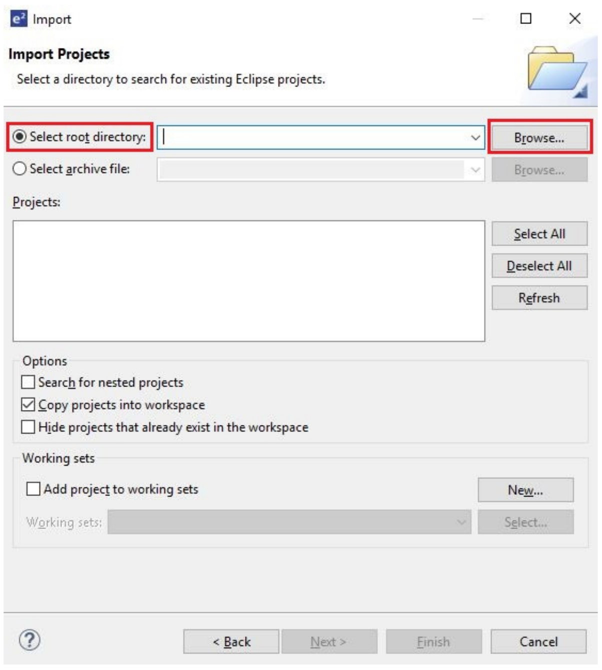


Figure 54: Import Existing Project dialog 1 - Select root directory

8. Click **Browse**.
9. For **Select archive file**, browse to the folder where the zip file for the project you want to import is located. For **Select root directory**, browse to the project folder that you want to import.
10. Select the file for import. In our example, it is CAN_HAL_MG_AP.zip or CAN_HAL_MG_AP.

11. Click **Open**.

12. Select the project to import from the list of **Projects**, as shown in the following figure.

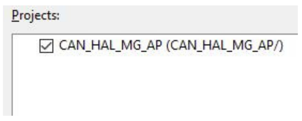


Figure 55: Import Existing Project dialog 2

13. Click **Finish** to import the project.

2.3 Tutorial: Your First RA MCU Project - Blinky

2.3.1 Tutorial Blinky

The goal of this tutorial is to quickly get acquainted with the Flexible Platform by moving through the steps of creating a simple application using e2 studio and running that application on an RA MCU board.

2.3.2 What Does Blinky Do?

The application used in this tutorial is Blinky, traditionally the first program run in a new embedded development environment.

Blinky is the "Hello World" of microcontrollers. If the LED blinks you know that:

- The toolchain is setup correctly and builds a working executable image for your chip.
- The debugger has installed with working drivers and is properly connected to the board.
- The board is powered up and its jumper and switch settings are probably correct.
- The microcontroller is alive, the clocks are running, and the memory is initialized.

The Blinky example application used in this tutorial is designed to run the same way on all boards offered by Renesas that hold the RA microcontroller. The code in Blinky is completely board independent. It does the work by calling into the BSP (board support package) for the particular board it is running on. This works because:

- Every board has at least one LED connected to a GPIO pin.
- That one LED is always labeled LED1 on the silk screen.
- Every BSP supports an API that returns a list of LEDs on a board, and their port and pin assignments.

2.3.3 Prerequisites

To follow this tutorial, you need:

- Windows based PC
- e2 studio
- Flexible Software Package
- An RA MCU board kit

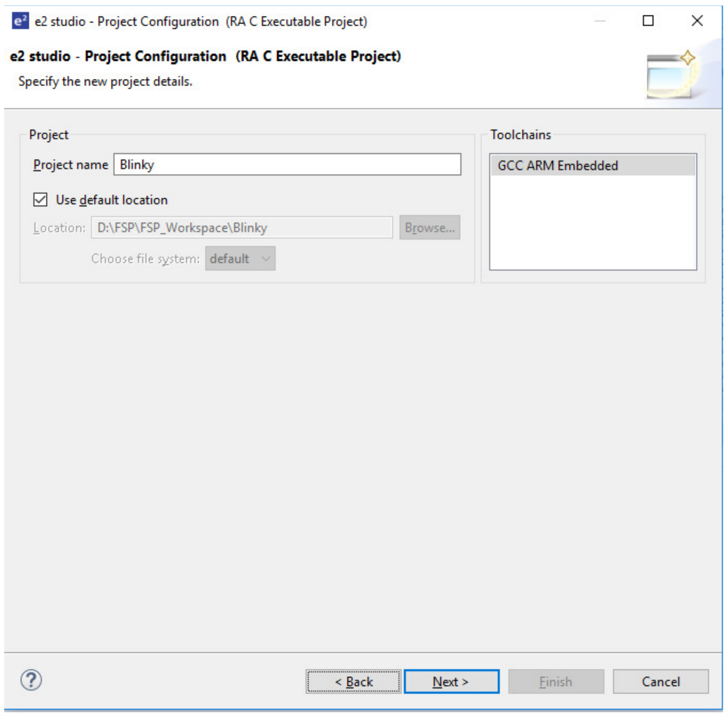
2.3.4 Create a New Project for Blinky

The creation and configuration of an RA MCU project is the first step in the creation of an application. The base RA MCU pack includes a pre-written Blinky example application that is simple and works on all Renesas RA MCU boards.

Follow these steps to create an RA MCU project:

1. In e2 studio, click **File > New > RA Project** and select **Renesas RA C Executable Project**.
2. Assign a name to this new project. Blinky is a good name to use for this tutorial.

3. Click **Next**. The **Project Configuration** window shows your selection.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

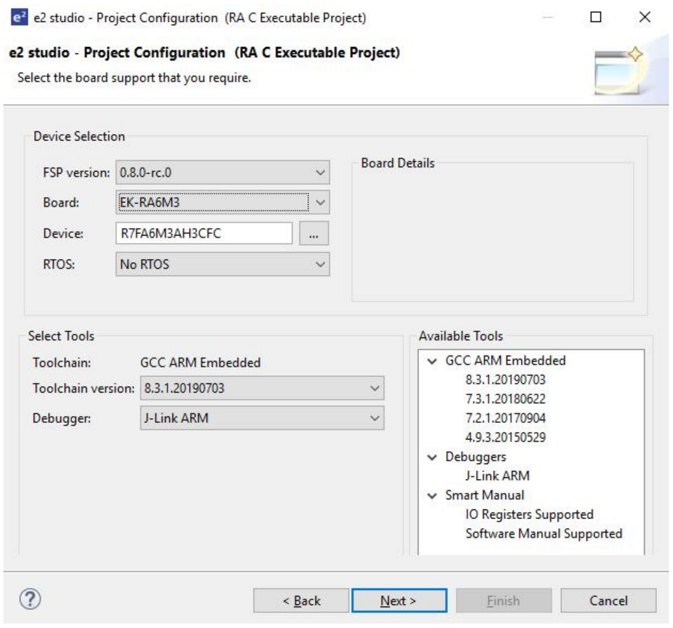
e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Specify the new project details.

Project
Project name: Blinky
☑ Use default location
Location: D:\FSP\FSP_Workspace\Blinky
Choose file system: default

Toolchains
GCC ARM Embedded

Figure 56: e2 studio Project Configuration window (part 1)

4. Select the board support package by selecting the name of your board from the **Device Selection** drop-down list and click **Next**.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Select the board support that you require.

Device Selection
FSP version: 0.8.0-rc.0
Board: EK-RA6M3
Device: R7FA6M3AH3CFC
RTOS: No RTOS

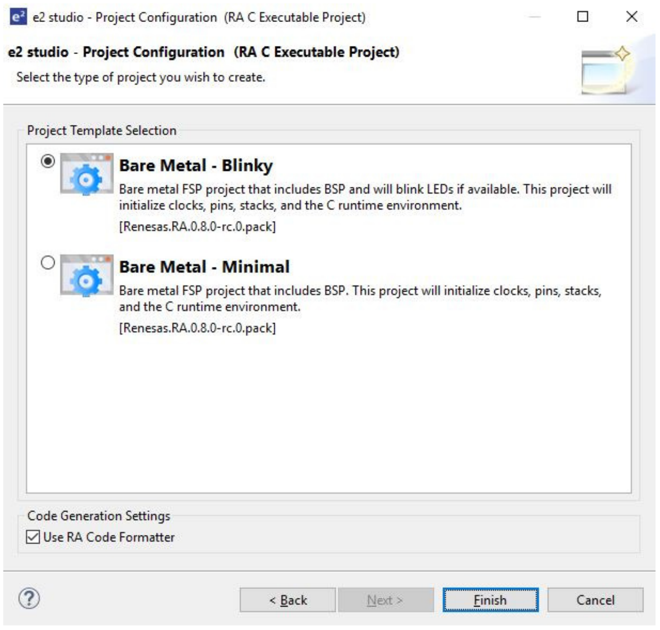
Board Details

Select Tools
Toolchain: GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain version: 8.3.1.20190703
Debugger: J-Link ARM

Available Tools
- GCC ARM Embedded
  - 8.3.1.20190703
  - 7.3.1.20180622
  - 7.2.1.20170904
  - 4.9.3.20150529
- Debuggers
  - J-Link ARM
- Smart Manual
  - IO Registers Supported
  - Software Manual Supported

Figure 57: e2 studio Project Configuration window (part 2)

5. Select the Blinky template for your board and click **Finish**.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Select the type of project you wish to create.

Project Template Selection

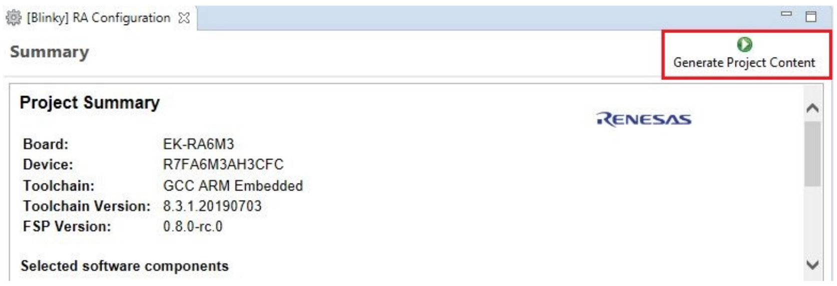
● **Bare Metal - Blinky**
Bare metal FSP project that includes BSP and will blink LEDs if available. This project will initialize clocks, pins, stacks, and the C runtime environment.
[Renesas.RA.0.8.0-rc.0.pack]

○ **Bare Metal - Minimal**
Bare metal FSP project that includes BSP. This project will initialize clocks, pins, stacks, and the C runtime environment.
[Renesas.RA.0.8.0-rc.0.pack]

Code Generation Settings
☑ Use RA Code Formatter

Figure 58: e2 studio Project Configuration window (part 3)

Once the project has been created, the name of the project will show up in the **Project Explorer** window of e2 studio. Now click the **Generate Project Content** button in the top right corner of the **Project Configuration** window to generate your board specific files.



Board: EK-RA6M3
Device: R7FA6M3AH3CFC
Toolchain: GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain Version: 8.3.1.20190703
FSP Version: 0.8.0-rc.0

Selected software components

Figure 59: e2 studio Project Configuration tab

Your new project is now created, configured, and ready to build.

2.3.4.1 Details about the Blinky Configuration

The **Generate Project Content** button creates configuration header files, copies source files from templates, and generally configures the project based on the state of the **Project Configuration** screen.

For example, if you check a box next to a module in the **Components** tab and click the **Generate Project Content** button, all the files necessary for the inclusion of that module into the project will be copied or created. If that same check box is then unchecked those files will be deleted.

2.3.4.2 Configuring the Blinky Clocks

By selecting the Blinky template, the clocks are configured by e2 studio for the Blinky application. The clock configuration tab (see Configuring Clocks) shows the Blinky clock configuration. The Blinky clock configuration is stored in the BSP clock configuration file (see BSP Clock Configuration).

2.3.4.3 Configuring the Blinky Pins

By selecting the Blinky template, the GPIO pins used to toggle the LED1 are configured by e2 studio for the Blinky application. The pin configuration tab shows the pin configuration for the Blinky application (see Configuring Pins). The Blinky pin configuration is stored in the BSP configuration file (see BSP Pin Configuration).

2.3.4.4 Configuring the Parameters for Blinky Components

The Blinky project automatically selects the following HAL components in the Components tab:

- r_ioport

To see the configuration parameters for any of the components, check the **Properties** tab in the HAL window for the respective driver (see Adding and Configuring HAL Drivers).

2.3.4.5 Where is main()?

The main function is located in < project >/ra_gen/main.c. It is one of the files that are generated during the project creation stage and only contains a call to hal_entry(). For more information on generated files, see Adding and Configuring HAL Drivers.

2.3.4.6 Blinky Example Code

The blinky application is stored in the hal_entry.c file. This file is generated by e2 studio when you select the Blinky Project template and is located in the project's src/ folder.

The application performs the following steps:

1. Get the LED information for the selected board by bsp_leds_t structure.
2. Define the output level HIGH for the GPIO pins controlling the LEDs for the selected board.
3. Get the selected system clock speed and scale down the clock, so the LED toggling can be observed.
4. Toggle the LED by writing to the GPIO pin with R_BSP_PinWrite((bsp_io_port_pin_t) pin, pin_level);

2.3.5 Build the Blinky Project

Highlight the new project in the **Project Explorer** window by clicking on it and build it.

There are three ways to build a project:

a. Click on **Project** in the menu bar and select **Build Project**.

b. Click on the hammer icon.

c. Right-click on the project and select **Build Project**.

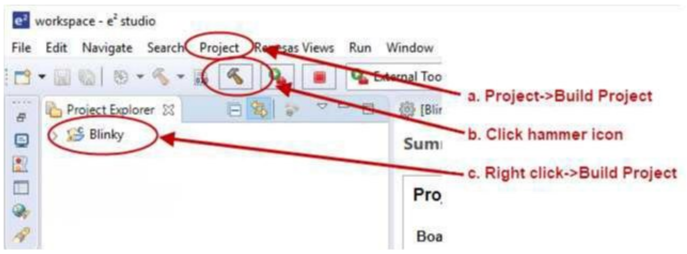
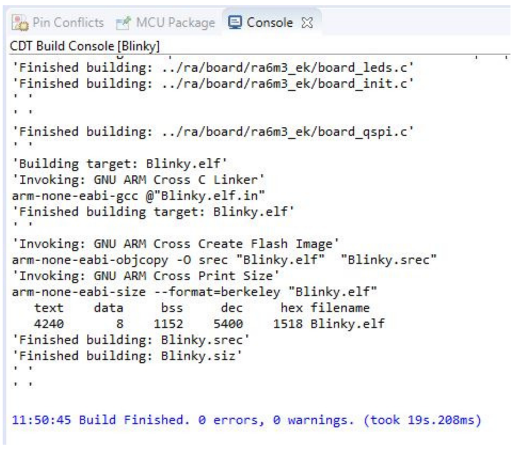

workspace - e² studio
File Edit Navigate Search Project Renesas Views Run Window
External Too
Project Explorer
Blinky
a. Project->Build Project
b. Click hammer icon
c. Right click->Build Project
Sum
Pro
Boa

Figure 60: e2 studio Project Explorer window

Once the build is complete a message is displayed in the build **Console** window that displays the final image file name and section sizes in that image.



```
'Finished building: ../ra/board/ra6m3_ek/board_leds.c'
'Finished building: ../ra/board/ra6m3_ek/board_init.c'
' '
' '
'Finished building: ../ra/board/ra6m3_ek/board_qspi.c'
' '
'Building target: Blinky.elf'
'Invoking: GNU ARM Cross C Linker'
arm-none-eabi-gcc @"Blinky.elf.in"
'Finished building target: Blinky.elf'
' '
'Invoking: GNU ARM Cross Create Flash Image'
arm-none-eabi-objcopy -O srec "Blinky.elf"  "Blinky.srec"
'Invoking: GNU ARM Cross Print Size'
arm-none-eabi-size --format=berkeley "Blinky.elf"
   text    data     bss     dec     hex filename
   4240       8    1152    5400    1518 Blinky.elf
'Finished building: Blinky.srec'
'Finished building: Blinky.siz'
' '
' '

11:50:45 Build Finished. 0 errors, 0 warnings. (took 19s.208ms)
```

Figure 61: e2 studio Project Build console

2.3.6 Debug the Blinky Project

2.3.6.1 Debug prerequisites

To debug the project on a board, you need

- The board to be connected to e2 studio
- The debugger to be configured to talk to the board
- The application to be programmed to the microcontroller

Applications run from the internal flash of your microcontroller. To run or debug the application, the application must first be programmed to the microcontroller's flash. There are two ways to do this:

- JTAG debugger
- Built-in boot-loader via UART or USB

Some boards have an on-board JTAG debugger and others require an external JTAG debugger connected to a header on the board.

Refer to your board's user manual to learn how to connect the JTAG debugger to e2 studio.

2.3.6.2 Debug steps

To debug the Blinky application, follow these steps:

1. Configure the debugger for your project by clicking **Run > Debugger Configurations ...**

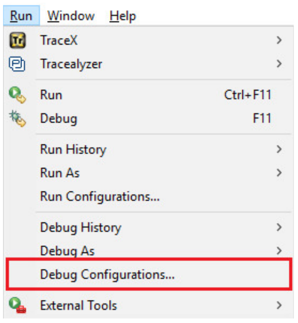


Figure 62: e2 studio Debug icon

or by selecting the drop-down menu next to the bug icon and selecting **Debugger Configurations ...**

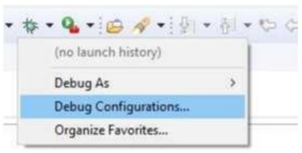
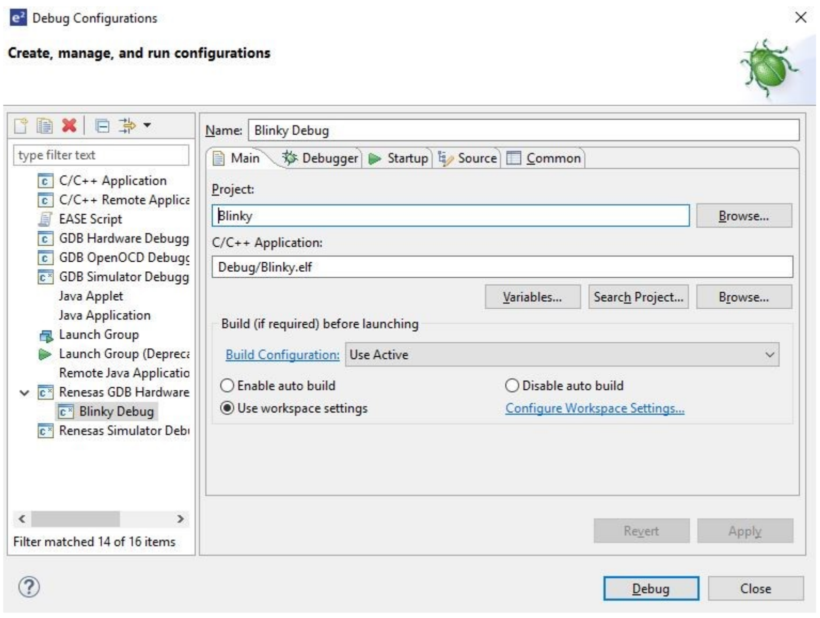


Figure 63: e2 studio Debugger Configurations selection option

2. Select your debugger configuration in the window. If it is not visible then it must be created

by clicking the **New** icon in the top left corner of the window. Once selected, the **Debug Configuration** window displays the Debug configuration for your Blinky project.

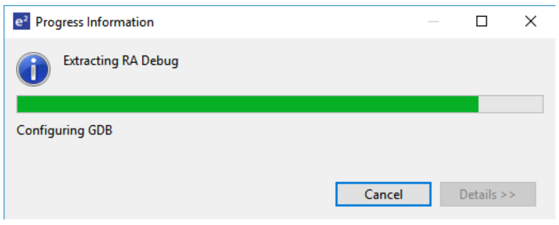


Name: Blinky Debug
Project: Blinky
C/C++ Application: Debug/Blinky.elf
Build Configuration: Use Active
(● Use workspace settings)

Figure 64: e2 studio Debugger Configurations window with Blinky project

3. Click **Debug** to begin debugging the application.

4. Extracting RA Debug.

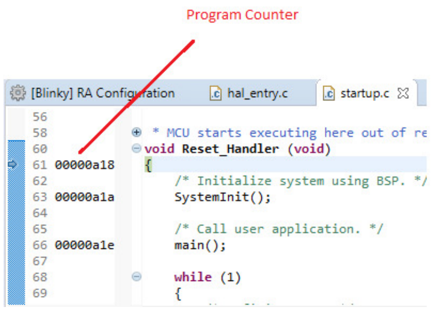


Extracting RA Debug
Configuring GDB

2.3.6.3 Details about the Debug Process

In debug mode, e2 studio executes the following tasks:

1. Downloading the application image to the microcontroller and programming the image to the internal flash memory.
2. Setting a breakpoint at main().
3. Setting the stack pointer register to the stack.
4. Loading the program counter register with the address of the reset vector.
5. Displaying the startup code where the program counter points to.



```
                 * MCU starts executing here out of re
                void Reset_Handler (void)
   00000a18     {
                    /* Initialize system using BSP. */
   00000a1a         SystemInit();

                    /* Call user application. */
   00000a1e         main();

                    while (1)
                    {
```

Figure 65: e2 studio Debugger memory window

2.3.7 Run the Blinky Project

While in Debug mode, click **Run > Resume** or click on the **Play** icon twice.

Figure 66: e2 studio Debugger Play icon

The LEDs on the board marked LED1, LED2, and LED3 should now be blinking.

2.4 Tutorial: Using HAL Drivers - Programming the WDT

2.4.1 Application WDT

This application uses the WDT Interface implemented by the WDT HAL Driver WDT. This document describes how to use e2 studio and FSP to create an application for the RA MCU Watchdog Timer (WDT) peripheral. This application makes use of the following FSP modules:

- MCU Board Support Package
- Watchdog Timer (r_wdt)
- I/O Ports (r_ioport)

2.4.2 Creating a WDT Application Using the RA MCU FSP and e2 studio

2.4.2.1 Using the FSP and e2 studio

The Flexible Software Package (FSP) from Renesas provides a complete driver library for developing RA MCU applications. The FSP provides Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) drivers, Board Support Package (BSP) drivers for the developer to use to create applications. The FSP is integrated into Renesas e2 studio based on eclipse providing build (editor, compiler and linker) and debug phases with an extended GNU Debug (GDB) interface.

2.4.2.2 The WDT Application

The flowchart for the WDT application is shown below.

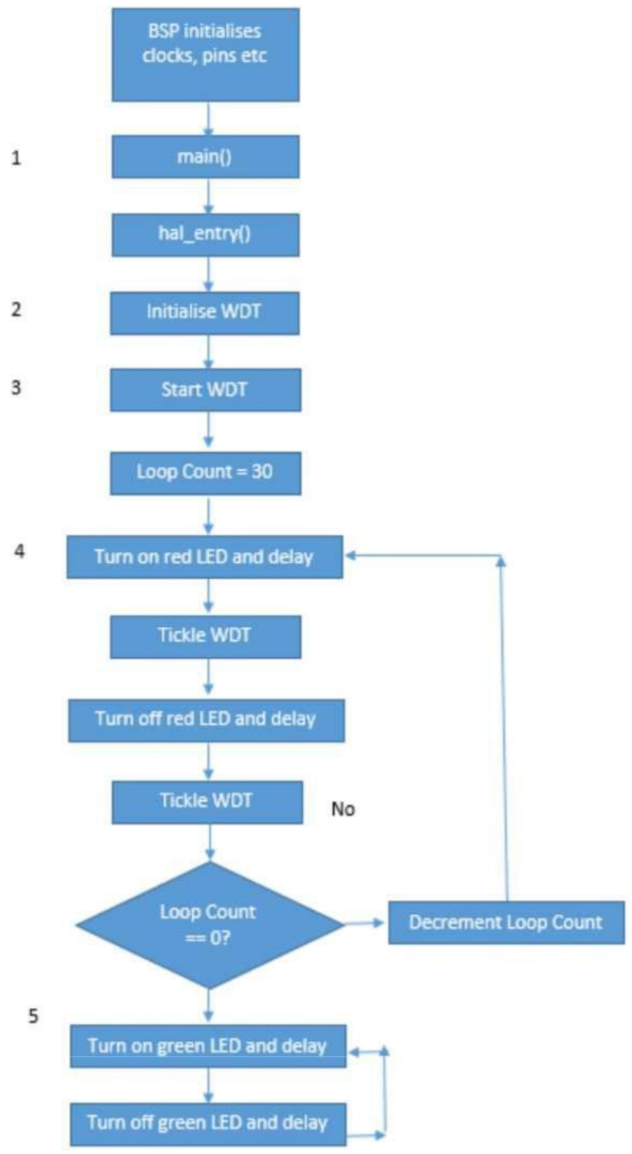

BSP initialises clocks, pins etc
1
main()
hal_entry()
2
Initialise WDT
3
Start WDT
Loop Count = 30
4
Turn on red LED and delay
Tickle WDT
Turn off red LED and delay
Tickle WDT
No
Loop Count == 0?
Decrement Loop Count
5
Turn on green LED and delay
Turn off green LED and delay

Figure 67: WDT Application flow diagram

2.4.2.3 WDT Application flow

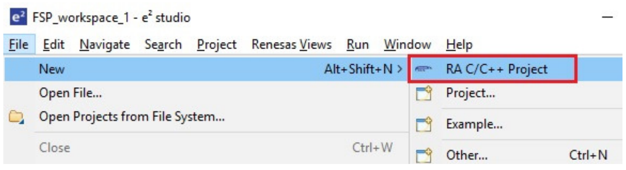
These are the main parts of the WDT application:

1. main() calls hal_entry(). The function hal_entry() is created by the FSP with a placeholder for user code. The code for the WDT will be added to this function.
2. Initialize the WDT, but do not start it.
3. Start the WDT by refreshing it.
4. The red LED is flashed 30 times and refreshes the watchdog each time the LED state is changed.
5. Flash the green LED but DO NOT refresh the watchdog. After the timeout period of the watchdog the device will reset which can be observed by the flashing red LED again as the sequence repeats.

2.4.3 Creating the Project with e2 studio

Start e2 studio and choose a workspace folder in the Workspace Launcher. Configure a new RA MCU project as follows.

1. Select **File > New > RA C/C++ Project**. Then select the template for the project.



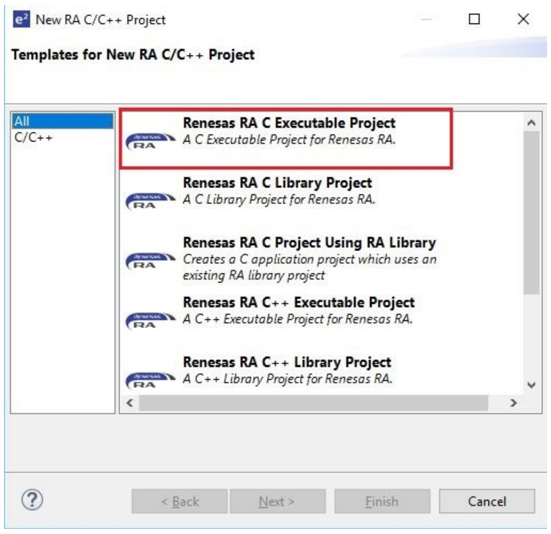
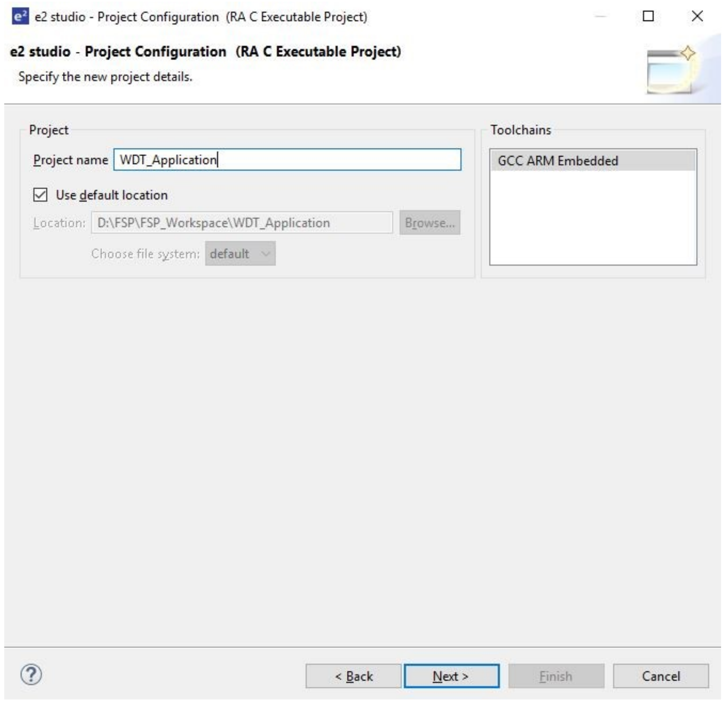

New RA C/C++ Project
Templates for New RA C/C++ Project
All
C/C++
Renesas RA C Executable Project
A C Executable Project for Renesas RA.
Renesas RA C Library Project
A C Library Project for Renesas RA.
Renesas RA C Project Using RA Library
Creates a C application project which uses an existing RA library project
Renesas RA C++ Executable Project
A C++ Executable Project for Renesas RA.
Renesas RA C++ Library Project
A C++ Library Project for Renesas RA.
< Back
Next >
Finish
Cancel

Figure 68: Creating a new project

2. In e2 studio Project **Configuration (RA Project)** window enter a project name, for example, WDT_Application. In addition select the toolchain. If you want to choose new locations for the project unselect **Use default location**. Click **Next**.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Specify the new project details.

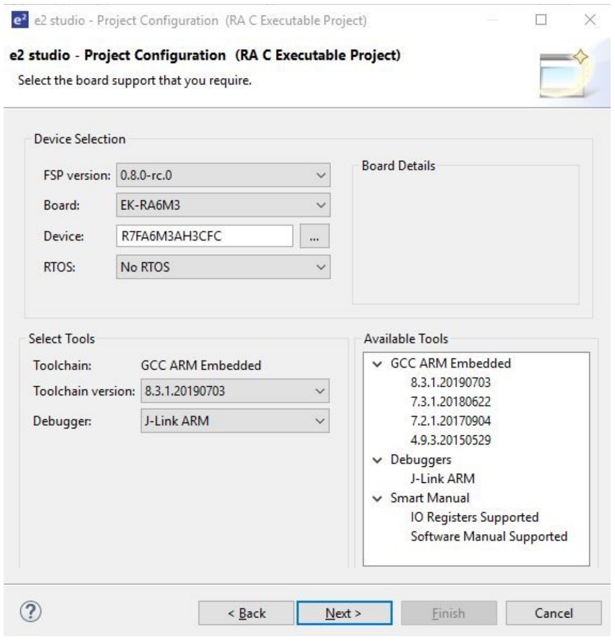
Project
Project name: WDT_Application
☑ Use default location
Location: D:\FSP\FSP_Workspace\WDT_Application
Choose file system: default

Toolchains
GCC ARM Embedded

Figure 69: Project configuration (part 1)

3. This application runs on the RA6M3 board. So, for the **Board** select **EK-RA6M3**.

   This will automatically populate the **Device** drop-down with the correct device used on this board. Select the **Toolchain** version. Select **J-Link ARM** as the **Debugger**. Click **Next** to configure the project.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)
Select the board support that you require.

Device Selection
FSP version: 0.8.0-rc.0
Board: EK-RA6M3
Device: R7FA6M3AH3CFC
RTOS: No RTOS

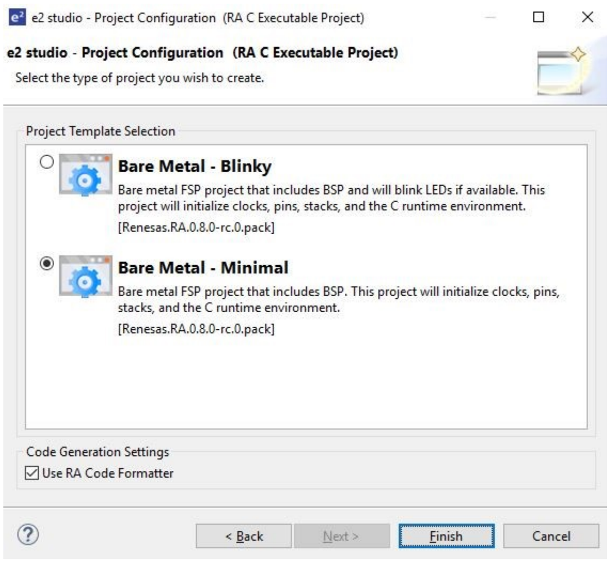
Board Details

Select Tools
Toolchain: GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain version: 8.3.1.20190703
Debugger: J-Link ARM

Available Tools
- GCC ARM Embedded
  - 8.3.1.20190703
  - 7.3.1.20180622
  - 7.2.1.20170904
  - 4.9.3.20150529
- Debuggers
  - J-Link ARM
- Smart Manual
  - IO Registers Supported
  - Software Manual Supported

Figure 70: Project configuration (part 2)

The project template is now selected. As no RTOS is required select **Bare Metal - Blinky**.


e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

e2 studio - Project Configuration (RA C Executable Project)

Select the type of project you wish to create.

Project Template Selection

( ) **Bare Metal - Blinky**
Bare metal FSP project that includes BSP and will blink LEDs if available. This project will initialize clocks, pins, stacks, and the C runtime environment.
[Renesas.RA.0.8.0-rc.0.pack]

(●) **Bare Metal - Minimal**
Bare metal FSP project that includes BSP. This project will initialize clocks, pins, stacks, and the C runtime environment.
[Renesas.RA.0.8.0-rc.0.pack]

Code Generation Settings

☑ Use RA Code Formatter

Figure 71: Project configuration (part 3)

4. Click **Finish**.

   e2 studio creates the project and opens the **Project Explorer** and **Project Configuration Settings** views with the **Summary** page showing a summary of the project configuration.

2.4.4 Configuring the Project with e2 studio

e2 studio simplifies and accelerates the project configuration process by providing a GUI interface for selecting the options to configure the project.

e2 studio offers a selection of perspectives presenting different windows to the user depending on the operation in progress. The default perspectives are **C/C++**, **RA Configuration** and **Debug**. The perspective can be changed by selecting a new one from the buttons at the top right.

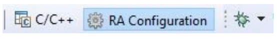
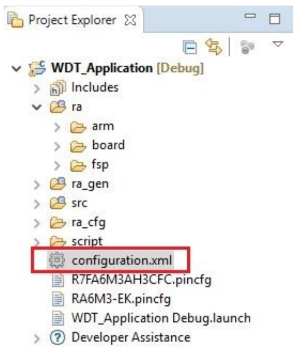


Figure 72: Selecting a perspective

The **C/C++** perspective provides a layout selected for code editing. The **RA Configuration** perspective provides elements for configuring a RA MCU project, and the **Debug** perspective provides a view suited for debugging.

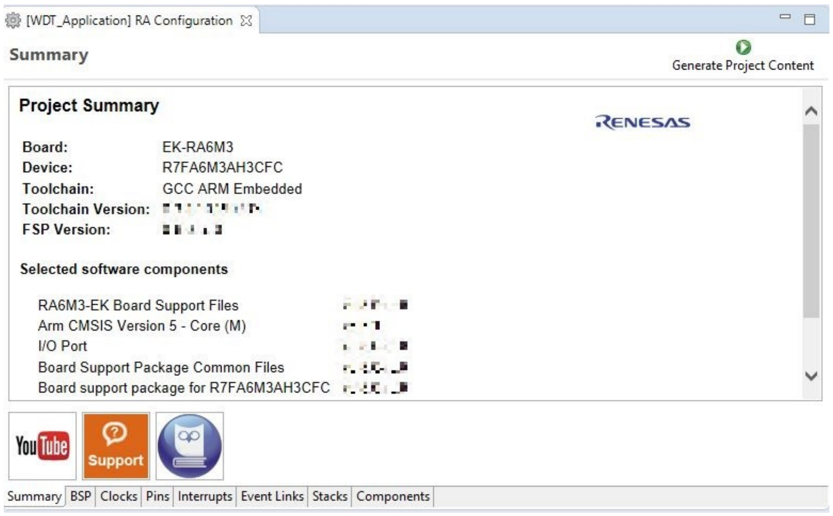
1. In order to configure the project settings ensure the **RA Configuration** perspective is selected.
2. Ensure the **Project Configuration [WDT Application]** is open. It is already open if the Summary information is visible. To open the Project Configuration now or at any time make sure the **RA Configuration** perspective is selected and double-click on the configuration.xml file in the Project Explorer pane on the right side of e2 studio.



```
WDT_Application [Debug]
  Includes
  ra
    arm
    board
    fsp
  ra_gen
  src
  ra_cfg
  script
  configuration.xml
  R7FA6M3AH3CFC.pincfg
  RA6M3-EK.pincfg
  WDT_Application Debug.launch
  Developer Assistance
```

Figure 73: RA MCU Project Configuration Settings

At the base of the Project Configuration view there are several tabs for configuring the project. A project may require changes to some or all of these tabs. The tabs are shown below.



Project Summary

Board:	EK-RA6M3
Device:	R7FA6M3AH3CFC
Toolchain:	GCC ARM Embedded
Toolchain Version:	[redacted]
FSP Version:	[redacted]

Selected software components

RA6M3-EK Board Support Files	[redacted]
Arm CMSIS Version 5 - Core (M)	[redacted]
I/O Port	[redacted]
Board Support Package Common Files	[redacted]
Board support package for R7FA6M3AH3CFC	[redacted]

Figure 74: Project Configuration Tabs

2.4.4.1 BSP Tab

The **BSP** tab allows the Board Support Package (BSP) options to be modified from their defaults. For this particular WDT project no changes are required. However, if you want to use the WDT in auto-start mode, you can configure the settings of the OFS0 (Option Function Select Register 0) register in the **BSP** tab. See the RA Hardware User's Manual for details on the WDT autostart mode.

2.4.4.2 Clocks Tab

The **Clocks** tab presents a graphical view of the clock tree of the device. The drop-down boxes in the GUI enables configuration of the various clocks. The WDT uses PCLCKB. The default output frequency for this clock is 60 MHz. Ensure this clock is outputting this value.

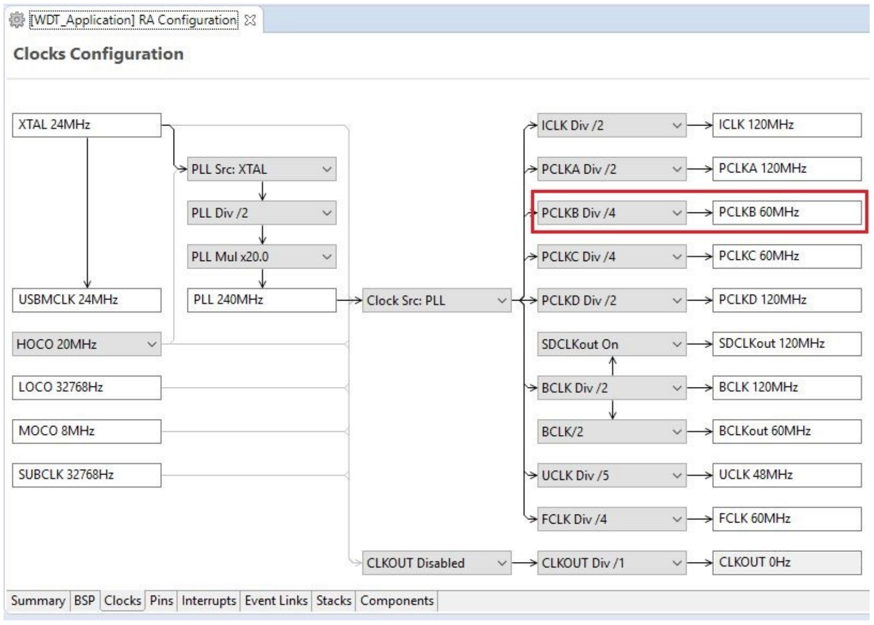


Figure 75: Clock configuration

2.4.4.3 Pins Tab

The **Pins** tab provides a graphical tool for configuring the functionality of the pins of the device. For the WDT project no pin configuration is required. Although the project uses two LEDs connected to pins on the device, these pins are pre-configured as output GPIO pins by the BSP.

2.4.4.4 Stacks Tab

You can add any driver to the project using the **Stacks** tab. The HAL driver IO port pins are added automatically by e2 studio when the project is configured. The WDT application uses no RTOS Resources, so you only need to add the HAL WDT driver.

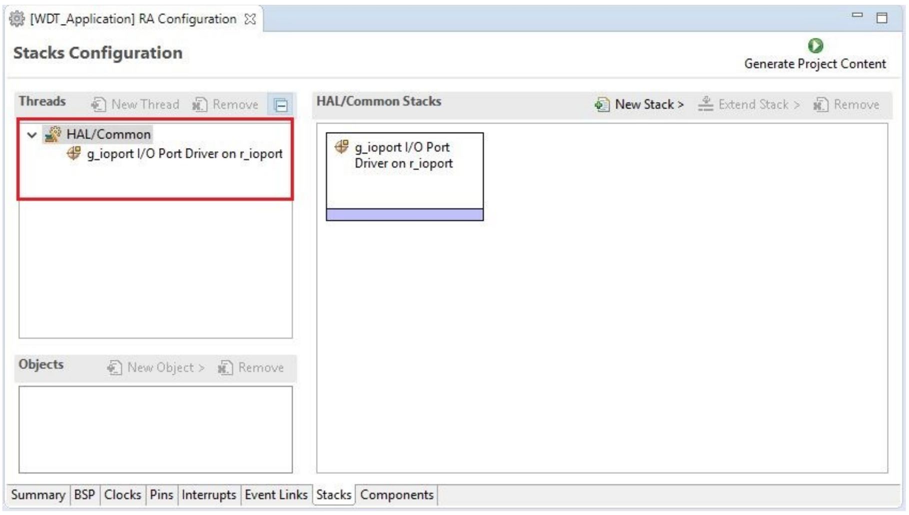

[WDT_Application] RA Configuration
Stacks Configuration
Generate Project Content
Threads
New Thread
Remove
HAL/Common
g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
HAL/Common Stacks
New Stack >
Extend Stack >
Remove
g_ioport I/O Port Driver on r_ioport
Objects
New Object >
Remove
Summary BSP Clocks Pins Interrupts Event Links Stacks Components

Figure 76: Stacks tab

1. Click on the **HAL/Common Panel** in the Threads Window as indicated in the figure above.

The Stacks Panel becomes a **HAL/Common Stacks** panel and is populated with the modules preselected by e2 studio.

2. Click on **New Stack** to find a pop-up window with the available HAL level drivers.
3. Select **WATCHDOG Driver on r_wdt**.

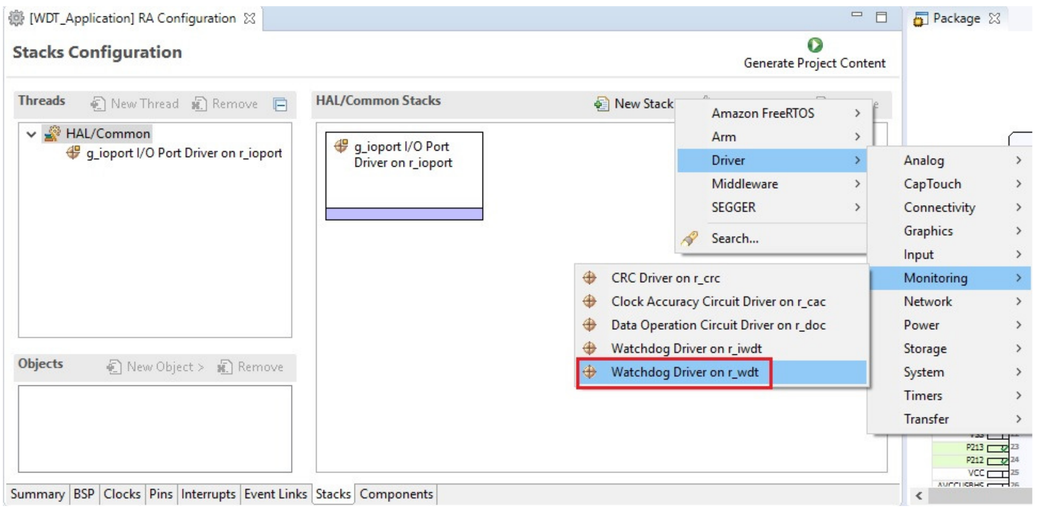
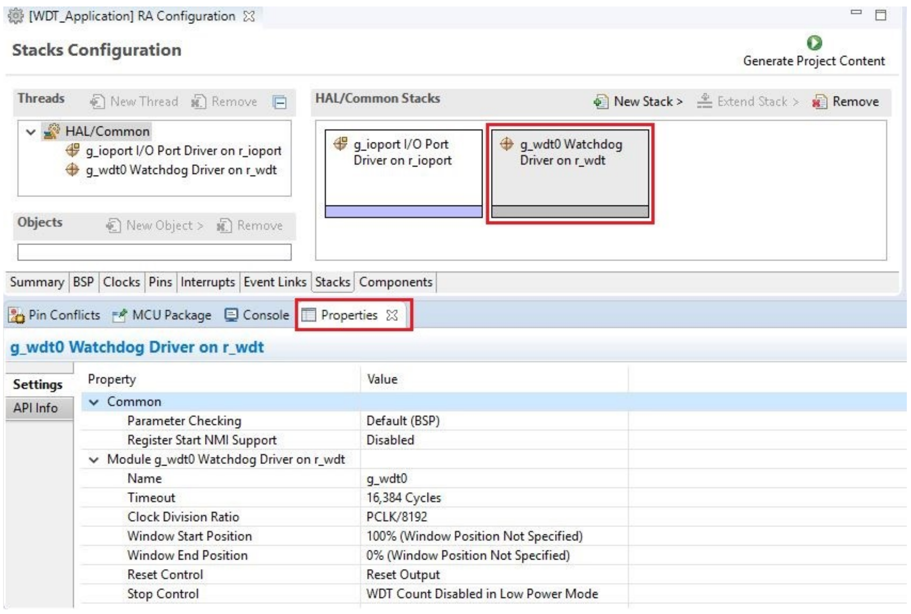


Figure 77: Module Selection

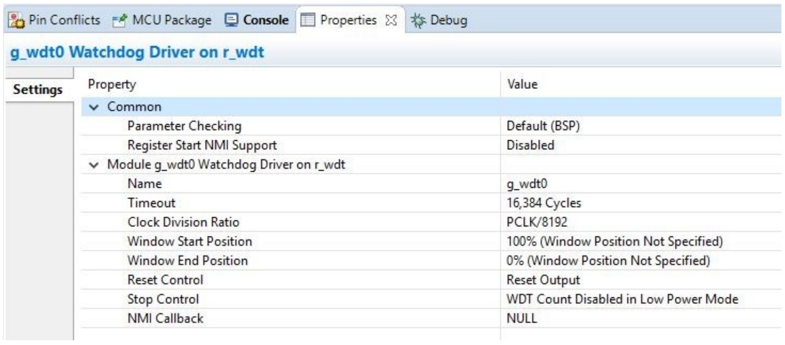
The selected HAL WDT driver is added to the **HAL/Common Stacks** Panel and the **Property** Window shows all configuration options for the selected module. The **Property** tab for the WDT should be visible at the bottom left of the screen. If it is not visible, check that the **RA Configuration** perspective is selected.



Property	Value
Common	
Parameter Checking	Default (BSP)
Register Start NMI Support	Disabled
Module g_wdt0 Watchdog Driver on r_wdt	
Name	g_wdt0
Timeout	16,384 Cycles
Clock Division Ratio	PCLK/8192
Window Start Position	100% (Window Position Not Specified)
Window End Position	0% (Window Position Not Specified)
Reset Control	Reset Output
Stop Control	WDT Count Disabled in Low Power Mode

Figure 78: Module Properties

All parameters can be left with their default values.



Property	Value
Common	
Parameter Checking	Default (BSP)
Register Start NMI Support	Disabled
Module g_wdt0 Watchdog Driver on r_wdt	
Name	g_wdt0
Timeout	16,384 Cycles
Clock Division Ratio	PCLK/8192
Window Start Position	100% (Window Position Not Specified)
Window End Position	0% (Window Position Not Specified)
Reset Control	Reset Output
Stop Control	WDT Count Disabled in Low Power Mode
NMI Callback	NULL

Figure 79: g_wdt WATCHDOG Driver on WDT properties

With PCLKB running at 60 MHz the WDT will reset the device 2.23 seconds after the last refresh.

WDT clock = 60 MHz / 8192 = 7.32 kHz

Cycle time = 1 / 7.324 kHz = 136.53 us

Timeout = 136.53 us x 16384 = 2.23 seconds

Save the **Project Configuration** file and click the **Generate Project Content** button in the top right corner of the **Project Configuration** pane.

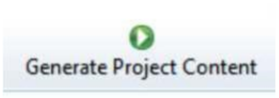


Figure 80: Generate Project Content button

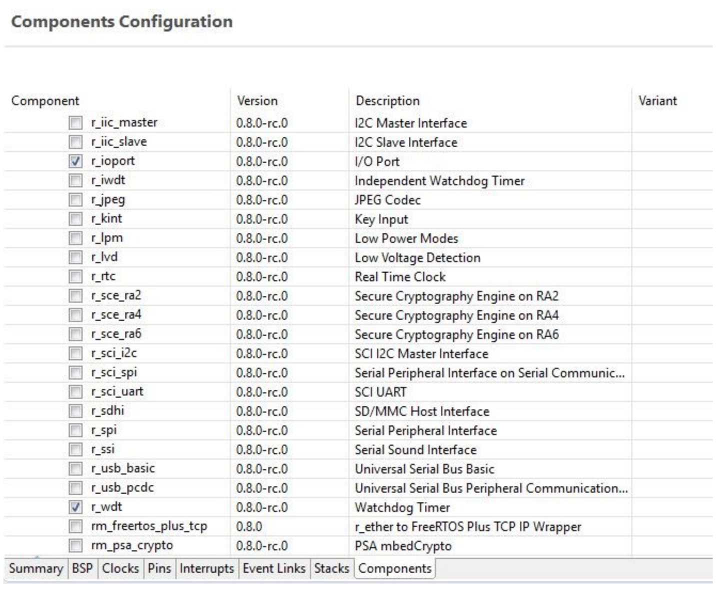
e2 studio generates the project files.

2.4.4.5 Components Tab

The components tab is included for reference to see which modules are included in the project. Modules are selected automatically in the Components view after they are added in the Stacks Tab.

For the WDT project ensure that the following modules are selected:

1. HAL_Drivers -> r_ioport
2. HAL_Drivers -> r_wdt



Components Configuration

Component	Version	Description	Variant
☐ r_iic_master	0.8.0-rc.0	I2C Master Interface	
☐ r_iic_slave	0.8.0-rc.0	I2C Slave Interface	
☑ r_ioport	0.8.0-rc.0	I/O Port	
☐ r_iwdt	0.8.0-rc.0	Independent Watchdog Timer	
☐ r_jpeg	0.8.0-rc.0	JPEG Codec	
☐ r_kint	0.8.0-rc.0	Key Input	
☐ r_lpm	0.8.0-rc.0	Low Power Modes	
☐ r_lvd	0.8.0-rc.0	Low Voltage Detection	
☐ r_rtc	0.8.0-rc.0	Real Time Clock	
☐ r_sce_ra2	0.8.0-rc.0	Secure Cryptography Engine on RA2	
☐ r_sce_ra4	0.8.0-rc.0	Secure Cryptography Engine on RA4	
☐ r_sce_ra6	0.8.0-rc.0	Secure Cryptography Engine on RA6	
☐ r_sci_i2c	0.8.0-rc.0	SCI I2C Master Interface	
☐ r_sci_spi	0.8.0-rc.0	Serial Peripheral Interface on Serial Communic...	
☐ r_sci_uart	0.8.0-rc.0	SCI UART	
☐ r_sdhi	0.8.0-rc.0	SD/MMC Host Interface	
☐ r_spi	0.8.0-rc.0	Serial Peripheral Interface	
☐ r_ssi	0.8.0-rc.0	Serial Sound Interface	
☐ r_usb_basic	0.8.0-rc.0	Universal Serial Bus Basic	
☐ r_usb_pcdc	0.8.0-rc.0	Universal Serial Bus Peripheral Communication...	
☑ r_wdt	0.8.0-rc.0	Watchdog Timer	
☐ rm_freertos_plus_tcp	0.8.0	r_ether to FreeRTOS Plus TCP IP Wrapper	
☐ rm_psa_crypto	0.8.0-rc.0	PSA mbedCrypto	

Figure 81: Component Selection

Note

The list of modules displayed in the Components tab depends on the installed FSP version.

2.4.5 WDT Generated Project Files

Clicking the Generate Project Content button performs the following tasks.

- r_wdt folder and WDT driver contents created at:

  ra/fsp/src

- r_wdt_api.h created in:

  ra/fsp/inc/api

- r_wdt.h created in:

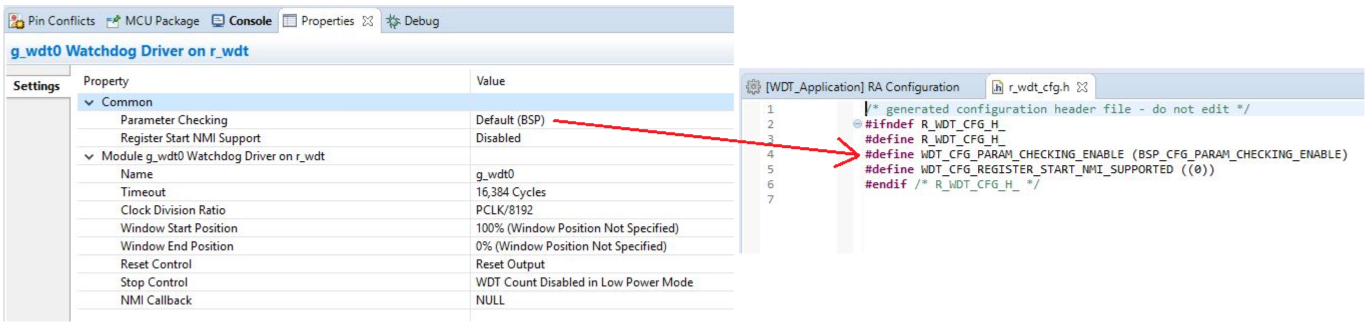
  ra/fsp/inc/instance

The above files are the standard files for the WDT HAL module. They contain no specific project contents. They are the driver files for the WDT. Further information on the contents of these files can be found in the documentation for the WDT HAL module.

Configuration information for the WDT HAL module in the WDT project is found in:

ra_cfg/fsp_cfg/r_wdt_cfg.h

The above file's contents are based upon the **Common** settings in the **g_wdt WATCHDOG Driver on WDT Properties** pane.



g_wdt0 Watchdog Driver on r_wdt

Property	Value
Common	
Parameter Checking	Default (BSP)
Register Start NMI Support	Disabled
Module g_wdt0 Watchdog Driver on r_wdt	
Name	g_wdt0
Timeout	16,384 Cycles
Clock Division Ratio	PCLK/8192
Window Start Position	100% (Window Position Not Specified)
Window End Position	0% (Window Position Not Specified)
Reset Control	Reset Output
Stop Control	WDT Count Disabled in Low Power Mode
NMI Callback	NULL

```
/* generated configuration header file - do not edit */
#ifndef R_WDT_CFG_H_
#define R_WDT_CFG_H_
#define WDT_CFG_PARAM_CHECKING_ENABLE (BSP_CFG_PARAM_CHECKING_ENABLE)
#define WDT_CFG_REGISTER_START_NMI_SUPPORTED ((0))
#endif /* R_WDT_CFG_H_ */
```

Figure 82: r_wdt_cfg.h contents

Warning

Do not edit any of these files as they are recreated every time the Generate Project Content button is clicked and so any changes will be overwritten.

The r_ioport folder is not created at ra/fsp/src as this module is required by the BSP and so already exists. It is included in the WDT project in order to include the correct header file in ra_gen/hal_data.c–see later in this document for further details. For the same reason the other IOPORT header files– ra/fsp/inc/api/r_ioport_api.handra/fsp/inc/instances/r_ioport.h–are not created as they already exist.

In addition to generating the HAL driver files for the WDT and IOPORT files e2 studio also generates files containing configuration data for the WDT and a file where user code can safely be added. These files are shown below.

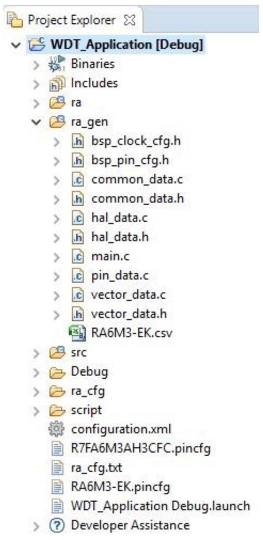

```
Project Explorer
WDT_Application [Debug]
    Binaries
    Includes
    ra
    ra_gen
        bsp_clock_cfg.h
        bsp_pin_cfg.h
        common_data.c
        common_data.h
        hal_data.c
        hal_data.h
        main.c
        pin_data.c
        vector_data.c
        vector_data.h
        RA6M3-EK.csv
    src
    Debug
    ra_cfg
    script
    configuration.xml
    R7FA6M3AH3CFC.pincfg
    ra_cfg.txt
    RA6M3-EK.pincfg
    WDT_Application Debug.launch
    Developer Assistance
```

Figure 83: WDT project files

2.4.5.1 WDT hal_data.h

The contents of hal_data.h are shown below.

```
/* generated HAL header file - do not edit */
#ifndef HAL_DATA_H_
```

```
 #define HAL_DATA_H_
 #include <stdint.h>
 #include "bsp_api.h"
 #include "common_data.h"
 #include "r_wdt.h"
 #include "r_wdt_api.h"
 #ifdef __cplusplus
extern "C"
{
 #endif
extern const wdt_instance_t g_wdt0;
 #ifndef NULL
void NULL(wdt_callback_args_t * p_args);
 #endif
extern wdt_instance_ctrl_t g_wdt0_ctrl;
extern const wdt_cfg_t g_wdt0_cfg;
void hal_entry(void);
void g_hal_init(void);
 #ifdef __cplusplus
} /* extern "C" */
 #endif
#endif  /* HAL_DATA_H_ */
```

hal_data.h contains the header files required by the generated project. In addition this file includes external references to the **g_wdt** instance structure which contains pointers to the configuration, control, api structures used for WDT HAL driver.

Warning

This file is regenerated each time Generate Project Content is clicked and must not be edited.

2.4.5.2 WDT hal_data.c

The contents of hal_data.c are shown below.

```
/* generated HAL source file - do not edit */
#include "hal_data.h"
wdt_instance_ctrl_t g_wdt0_ctrl;
```

```
const wdt_cfg_t g_wdt0_cfg =
{
    .timeout        = WDT_TIMEOUT_16384,
    .clock_division = WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_8192,
    .window_start    = WDT_WINDOW_START_100,
    .window_end     = WDT_WINDOW_END_0,
    .reset_control = WDT_RESET_CONTROL_RESET,
    .stop_control    = WDT_STOP_CONTROL_ENABLE,
    .p_callback     = NULL,
};
/* Instance structure to use this module. */
const wdt_instance_t g_wdt0 =
{.p_ctrl = &g_wdt0_ctrl, .p_cfg = &g_wdt0_cfg, .p_api = &g_wdt_on_wdt};
void g_hal_init (void)
{
    g_common_init();
}
```

hal_data.c contains g_wdt_ctrl which is the control structure for this instance of the WDT HAL driver. This structure should not be initialized as this is done by the driver when it is opened.

The contents of g_wdt_cfg are populated in this file using the **g_wdt WATCHDOG Driver on WDT Properties** pane in the **e2 studio Project Configuration HAL** tab. If the contents of this structure do not reflect the settings made in e2 studio, ensure the **Project Configuration** settings are saved before clicking the **Generate Project Content** button.

Warning

This file is regenerated each time Generate Project Content is clicked and so should not be edited.

2.4.5.3 WDT main.c

Contains main() called by the BSP start-up code. main() calls hal_entry() which contains user developed code (see next file). Here are the contents of main.c.

```
/* generated main source file - do not edit*/
#include "hal_data.h"
int main (void)
{
    hal_entry();
```

```
 return 0;
}
```

Warning

This file is regenerated each time Generate Project Content is clicked and so should not be edited.

2.4.5.4 WDT hal_entry.c

This file contains the function hal_entry() called from main(). User developed code should be placed in this file and function.

For the WDT project edit the contents of this file to contain the code below. This code implements the flowchart in overview section of this document.

```
#include "hal_data.h"
#include "bsp_pin_cfg.h"
#include "r_ioport.h"
#define RED_LED_NO_OF_FLASHES 30
#define RED_LED_PIN BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_00
#define GREEN_LED_PIN BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_00
#define RED_LED_DELAY_COUNT 1500000
#define GRN_LED_DELAY_COUNT 1200000
volatile uint32_t delay_counter;
volatile uint16_t loop_counter;
void R_BSP_WarmStart(bsp_warm_start_event_t event);
/* global variable to access board LEDs */
extern bsp_leds_t g_bsp_leds;
/*******************************************************************************************
*******************************/
void hal_entry (void) {
 /* Open the WDT */
 R_WDT_Open(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &g_wdt0_cfg);
 /* Start the WDT by refreshing it */
 R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
 /* Flash the red LED and tickle the WDT for a few seconds */
 for (loop_counter = 0; loop_counter < RED_LED_NO_OF_FLASHES; loop_counter++)
    {
```

```
/* Turn red LED on */
R_IOPORT_PinWrite(&g_ioport_ctrl, RED_LED_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
/* Delay */
for (delay_counter = 0; delay_counter < RED_LED_DELAY_COUNT; delay_counter++)
     {
/* Do nothing. */
      }
/* Refresh WDT */
R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
R_IOPORT_PinWrite(&g_ioport_ctrl, RED_LED_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
/* Delay */
for (delay_counter = 0; delay_counter < RED_LED_DELAY_COUNT; delay_counter++)
     {
/* Do nothing. */
      }
/* Refresh WDT */
R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
   }
/* Flash green LED but STOP tickling the WDT. WDT should reset the
 * device */
while (1)
   {
/* Turn green LED on */
R_IOPORT_PinWrite(&g_ioport_ctrl, GREEN_LED_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
/* Delay */
for (delay_counter = 0; delay_counter < GRN_LED_DELAY_COUNT; delay_counter++)
     {
/* Do nothing. */
      }
/* Turn green off */
R_IOPORT_PinWrite(&g_ioport_ctrl, GREEN_LED_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
/* Delay */
for (delay_counter = 0; delay_counter < GRN_LED_DELAY_COUNT; delay_counter++)
     {
```

```
 /* Do nothing. */
       }
    }
}
/*******************************************************************************************
*******************************/
void R_BSP_WarmStart (bsp_warm_start_event_t event)
{
 if (BSP_WARM_START_RESET == event)
    {
#if BSP_FEATURE_FLASH_LP_VERSION != 0
 /* Enable reading from data flash. */
       R_FACI_LP->DFLCTL = 1U;
 /* Would normally have to wait for tDSTOP(6us) for data flash recovery. Placing the
enable here, before clock and
  * C runtime initialization, should negate the need for a delay since the
initialization will typically take more than 6us. */
#endif
    }
 if (BSP_WARM_START_POST_C == event)
    {
 /* C runtime environment and system clocks are setup. */
 /* Configure pins. */
 R_IOPORT_Open(&g_ioport_ctrl, &g_bsp_pin_cfg);
    }
}
```

The WDT HAL driver is called through the interface **g_wdt_on_wdt** defined in **r_wdt.h**. The WDT HAL driver is opened through the open API call using the instance defined in r_wdt_api.h:

```
 /* Open the WDT */
 R_WDT_Open(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &g_wdt0_cfg);
```

The first passed parameter is the pointer to the control structure g_wdt_ctrl instantiated inhal_data.c. The second parameter is the pointer to the configuration data g_wdt_cfg instantiated in the same hal_data.c file.

The WDT is started and refreshed through the API call:

```
/* Start the WDT by refreshing it */

R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
```

Again the first (and only in this case) parameter passed to this API is the pointer to the control structure of this instance of the driver.

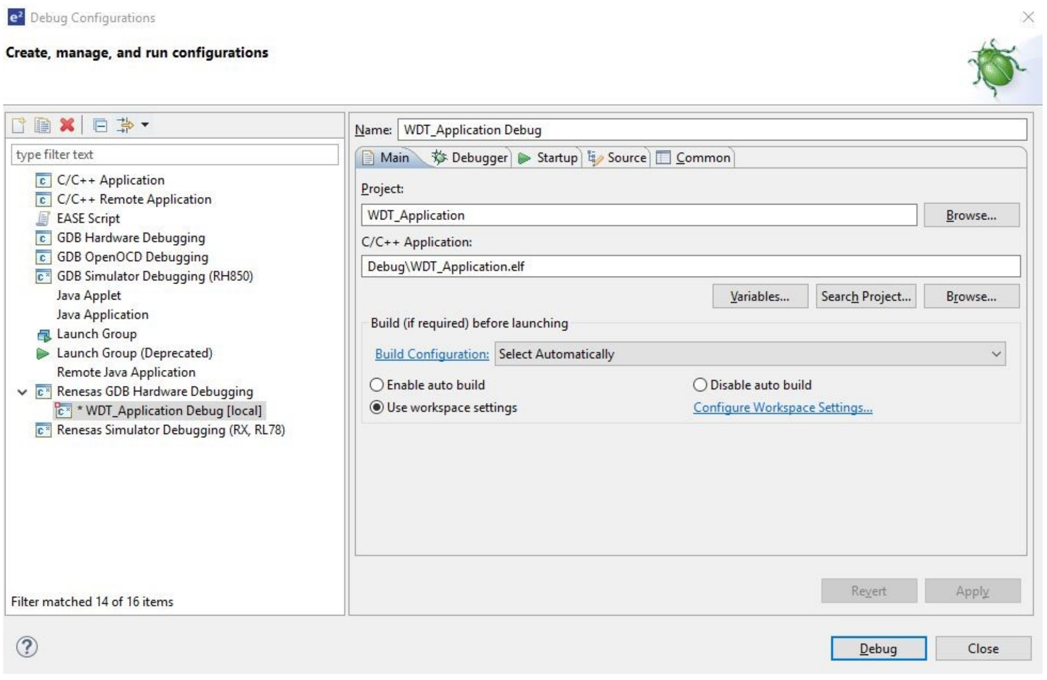
2.4.6 Building and Testing the Project

Build the project by clicking **Build > Build Project**. The project should build without errors.

To debug the project

1. Connect the JLink debugger between the target board and host PC. Apply power to the board.
2. In the **Project Explorer** pane on the right side of e2 studio right-click on the WDT project **WDT_Application** and select **Debug As > Debug Configurations**.

3. Under **Renesas GDB Hardware Debugging** select **WDT_Application Debug** as shown below.



Name: WDT_Application Debug

Project: WDT_Application

C/C++ Application: Debug\WDT_Application.elf

Build (if required) before launching

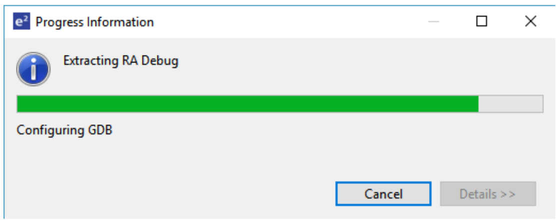
Build Configuration: Select Automatically

Enable auto build [✓ Use workspace settings] Disable auto build

Configure Workspace Settings...

Figure 84: Debug configuration

4. Click the **Debug** button. Click Yes to the debug perspective if asked.



5. The code should run the Reset_Handler() function.
6. Resume execution via **Run > Resume**. Execution will stop in main() at the call to hal_entry().
7. Resume execution again.

The red LED should start flashing. After 30 flashes the green LED will start flashing and the red LED will stop flashing.

While the green LED is flashing the WDT will underflow and reset the device resulting in the red LED to flash again as the sequence repeats. However, this sequence does not occur when using the debugger because the WDT does not run when connected to the debugger.

1. Stop the debugger in e2 studio via **Run > Terminate**.
2. Click the reset button on the target board. The LEDs begin flashing.

2.5 RA SC User Guide for MDK and IAR

2.5.1 What is RA SC?

The Renesas RA Smart Configurator (RA SC) is a desktop application designed to configure device hardware such as clock set up and pin assignment as well as initialization of FSP software components for a Renesas RA microcontroller project when using a 3rd-party IDE and toolchain.

The RA Smart Configurator can currently be used with

1. Keil MDK and the ARM compiler toolchain.
2. IAR EWARM with IAR toolchain for ARM

Projects can be configured and the project content generated in the same way as in e2 studio. Please refer to Configuring a Project section for more details.

2.5.2 Using RA Smart Configurator with Keil MDK

2.5.2.1 Prerequisites

- Keil MDK and ARM compiler are installed and licensed. Please refer to the Release notes for the version to be installed.
- Import the RA device pack. Download the RA device pack archive file (ex: MDK_Device_Packs_x.x.x.zip) from the FSP GitHub release page. Extract the archive file to locate the RA device pack. To import the RA device pack, launch the PackInstaller.exe from "<keil_mdk_install_dir>\UV4". Select the menu item "File|Import..." and browse to the extracted .pack file.
- Verify that the latest updates for RA devices are included in Keil MDK. To verify, select the

menu "Packs" in Pack Installer and verify that the menu item "Check for Updates on Launch" is selected. If not, select "Check for Updates on Launch" and relaunch Pack Installer.

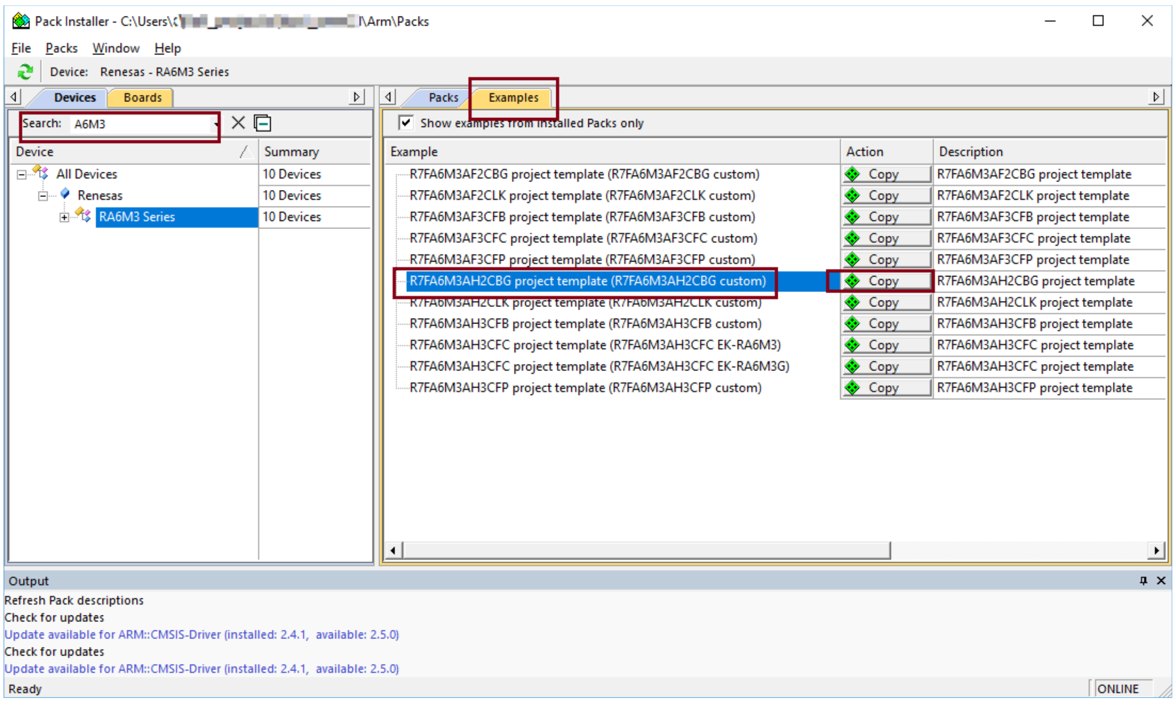
- For flashing and debugging, the latest Segger J-Link DLL is installed into Keil MDK.
- Install RA SC and FSP using the Platform Installer from the GitHub release page.

2.5.2.2 Create new RA project

The following steps are required to create an RA project using Keil MDK, RA SC and FSP:

1. To create an RA project in Keil MDK, an example template needs to be copied from the Pack Installer. The Pack Installer can be launched by running PackInstaller.exe from "<keil_mdk_install_dir>\UV4".

2. Select the device family or a device in the left pane of pack installer to filter the example templates in Examples tab in the right pane. The search bar in left pane helps to easily find a device. It is important to select the correct device and package type as this will be used by RA SC to configure pins.



Pack Installer - C:\Users\[redacted]\Arm\Packs
File
Packs
Window
Help
Device: Renesas - RA6M3 Series
Devices
Boards
Search: A6M3
Packs
Examples
Show examples from installed Packs only

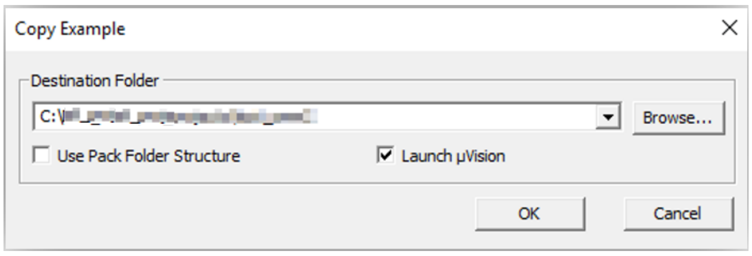
Device	Summary
All Devices	10 Devices
Renesas	10 Devices
RA6M3 Series	10 Devices

Example	Action	Description
R7FA6M3AF2CBG project template (R7FA6M3AF2CBG custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AF2CBG project template
R7FA6M3AF2CLK project template (R7FA6M3AF2CLK custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AF2CLK project template
R7FA6M3AF3CFB project template (R7FA6M3AF3CFB custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AF3CFB project template
R7FA6M3AF3CFC project template (R7FA6M3AF3CFC custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AF3CFC project template
R7FA6M3AF3CFP project template (R7FA6M3AF3CFP custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AF3CFP project template
R7FA6M3AH2CBG project template (R7FA6M3AH2CBG custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AH2CBG project template
R7FA6M3AH2CLK project template (R7FA6M3AH2CLK custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AH2CLK project template
R7FA6M3AH3CFB project template (R7FA6M3AH3CFB custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AH3CFB project template
R7FA6M3AH3CFC project template (R7FA6M3AH3CFC EK-RA6M3)	Copy	R7FA6M3AH3CFC project template
R7FA6M3AH3CFC project template (R7FA6M3AH3CFC EK-RA6M3G)	Copy	R7FA6M3AH3CFC project template
R7FA6M3AH3CFP project template (R7FA6M3AH3CFP custom)	Copy	R7FA6M3AH3CFP project template

```
Output
Refresh Pack descriptions
Check for updates
Update available for ARM::CMSIS-Driver (installed: 2.4.1,  available: 2.5.0)
Check for updates
Update available for ARM::CMSIS-Driver (installed: 2.4.1,  available: 2.5.0)
Ready                                                                ONLINE
```

Figure 85: PackInstaller device example template

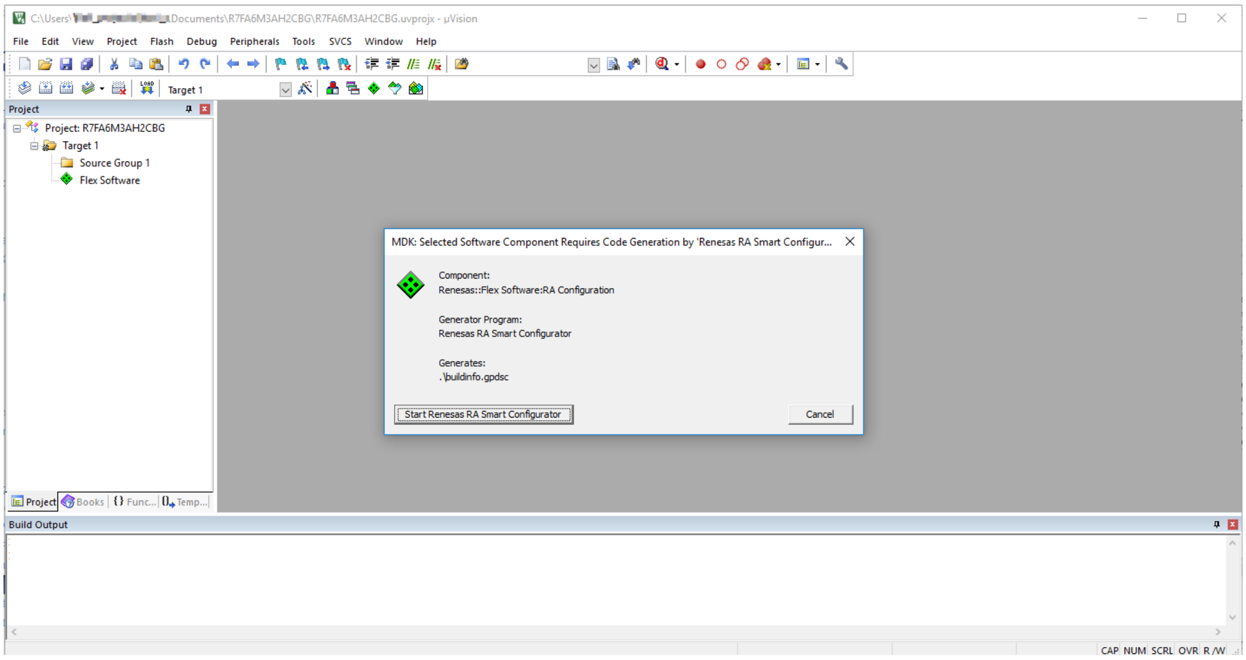
3. Click the "Copy" button for the example template to launch a dialog box and select where to copy the example project. The default project name will be the target device name.



Destination Folder: C:\[redacted]
☐ Use Pack Folder Structure
☑ Launch µVision

Figure 86: Copy Example dialog

Click "OK" to launch Keil uVision with the new project.



MDK: Selected Software Component Requires Code Generation by 'Renesas RA Smart Configur...

Component:
Renesas::Flex Software:RA Configuration

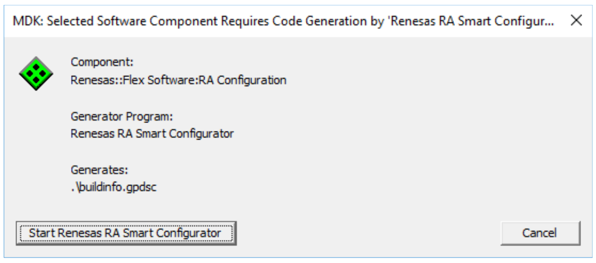
Generator Program:
Renesas RA Smart Configurator

Generates:
.\buildinfo.gpdsc

Figure 87: uVision

If the project name needs to be changed then deselect "Launch uVision" in Copy Example dialog and click "OK". Follow project rename instructions here: http://www.keil.com/support/docs/3579.htm Once renamed, open the project using menu item "Project|Open Project..." in uVision and continue with steps in Modify existing RA project.

4. uVision offers to start RA Smart Configurator(RA SC). Click "Start Renesas RA Smart Configurator" to launch the RA smart configurator.



MDK: Selected Software Component Requires Code Generation by 'Renesas RA Smart Configur...

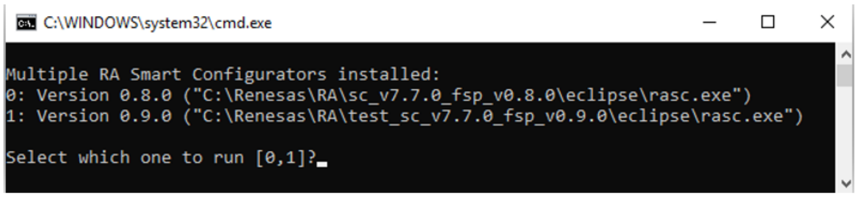
Component:
Renesas::Flex Software:RA Configuration

Generator Program:
Renesas RA Smart Configurator

Generates:
.\buildinfo.gpdsc

Figure 88: Launch RA SC confirmation dialog

5. If multiple versions of RA SC are installed, select the appropriate version of RA SC to run.

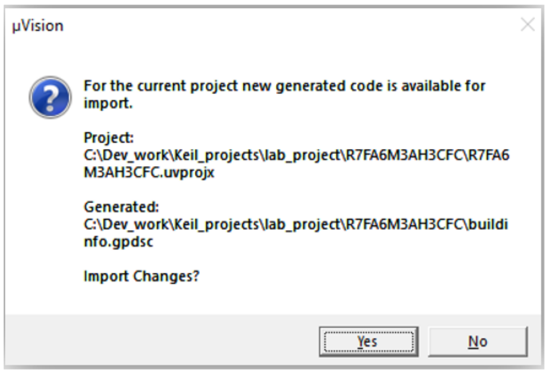


```
Multiple RA Smart Configurators installed:
0: Version 0.8.0 ("C:\Renesas\RA\sc_v7.7.0_fsp_v0.8.0\eclipse\rasc.exe")
1: Version 0.9.0 ("C:\Renesas\RA\test_sc_v7.7.0_fsp_v0.9.0\eclipse\rasc.exe")

Select which one to run [0,1]?_
```

Figure 89: RA SC version selection

6. RA SC will be launched with project generator wizard.
7. The configuration window opens once the project wizard is closed. Refer to Configuring a Project for more details on how to configure the project.

8. After clicking "Generate Project Content" in the RA Smart Configurator, return to uVision. uVision offers a dialog to import the changes and updates to the project made in RA SC. Select "Yes" to import the updated project and the project is ready to build.



For the current project new generated code is available for import.

Project:
C:\Dev_work\Keil_projects\lab_project\R7FA6M3AH3CFC\R7FA6M3AH3CFC.uvprojx

Generated:
C:\Dev_work\Keil_projects\lab_project\R7FA6M3AH3CFC\buildinfo.gpdsc

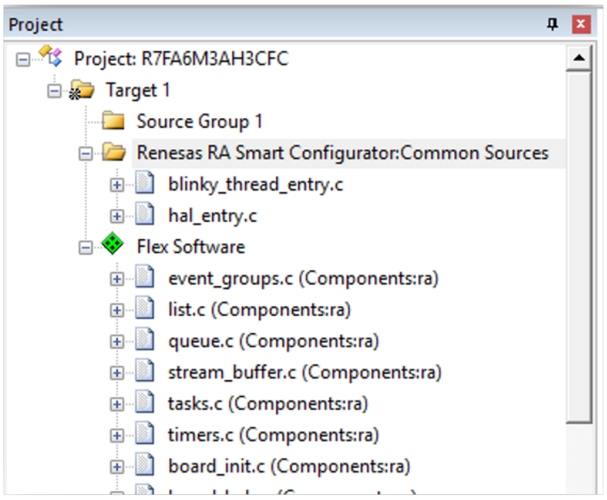
Import Changes?

Figure 90: Import project data

RA SC will place the necessary FSP source code and header files into the project workspace. The folder structure is defined as below.

- Source Group 1 User source code should be added to the project in this folder
- Renesas RA Smart Configurator: Common Sources These source files are generated by RA Smart Configurator and can be edited as necessary

- Flex Software These are the source files from FSP and can be modified if needed. However, it is recommended NOT to edit these files as this may impact dependencies or functionality.



```
Project: R7FA6M3AH3CFC
  Target 1
    Source Group 1
    Renesas RA Smart Configurator:Common Sources
      blinky_thread_entry.c
      hal_entry.c
    Flex Software
      event_groups.c (Components:ra)
      list.c (Components:ra)
      queue.c (Components:ra)
      stream_buffer.c (Components:ra)
      tasks.c (Components:ra)
      timers.c (Components:ra)
      board_init.c (Components:ra)
```

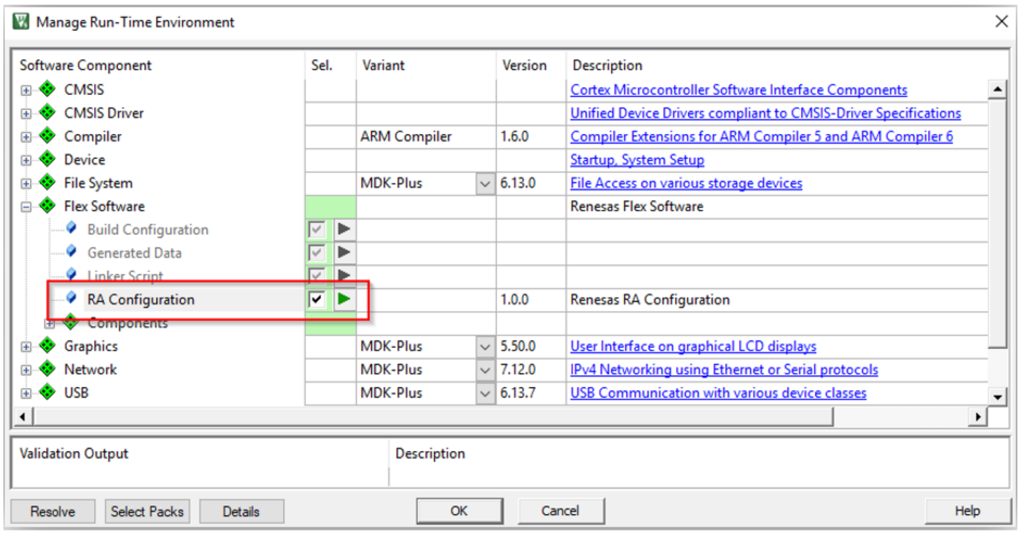
Figure 91: uVision project workspace with imported project data

2.5.2.3 Modify existing RA project

Once an initial project has been generated and configured, it is also possible to make changes using RA SC as follows:

1. If the desired project is not already open in uVision, the project can be opened using menu item "Project|Open project..." or selecting from the list of previous projects.
2. Select menu item "Project|Manage|Run-time Environment..." or tool bar button "Manage Run-Time Environment".

3. Expand the "Flex Software" tree item in the dialog shown and click the green run button next to "RA Configuration". This launches RA SC and the FSP project configuration can be modified and updated.



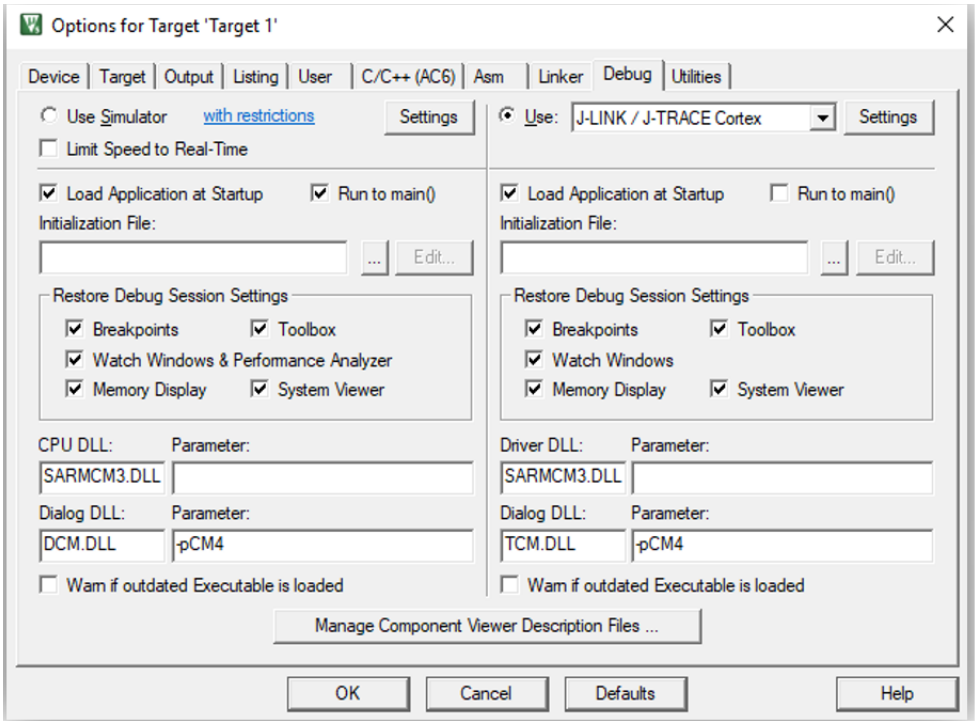
Software Component	Sel.	Variant	Version	Description
CMSIS				Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Components
CMSIS Driver				Unified Device Drivers compliant to CMSIS-Driver Specifications
Compiler		ARM Compiler	1.6.0	Compiler Extensions for ARM Compiler 5 and ARM Compiler 6
Device				Startup, System Setup
File System		MDK-Plus	6.13.0	File Access on various storage devices
Flex Software				Renesas Flex Software
Build Configuration	✓			
Generated Data	✓			
Linker Script	✓			
RA Configuration	✓		1.0.0	Renesas RA Configuration
Components				
Graphics		MDK-Plus	5.50.0	User Interface on graphical LCD displays
Network		MDK-Plus	7.12.0	IPv4 Networking using Ethernet or Serial protocols
USB		MDK-Plus	6.13.7	USB Communication with various device classes

Figure 92: Manage run-time environment

2.5.2.4 Build and Debug RA project

The project can be built by selecting the menu item "Project|Build Target" or tool bar item "Rebuild" or the keyboard shortcut F7.

Assembler, Compiler, Linker and Debugger settings can be changed in "Options for Target" dialog, which can be launched using the menu item "Project|Options for Target", the tool bar item "Options for Target" or the keyboard shortcut Alt+F7.


Options for Target 'Target 1'

Device | Target | Output | Listing | User | C/C++ (AC6) | Asm | Linker | Debug | Utilities

Use Simulator — with restrictions — Settings
☐ Limit Speed to Real-Time
☑ Load Application at Startup ☑ Run to main()
Initialization File:
Restore Debug Session Settings
☑ Breakpoints ☑ Toolbox
☑ Watch Windows & Performance Analyzer
☑ Memory Display ☑ System Viewer
CPU DLL: SARMCM3.DLL Parameter:
Dialog DLL: DCM.DLL Parameter: -pCM4
☐ Warn if outdated Executable is loaded

● Use: J-LINK / J-TRACE Cortex — Settings
☑ Load Application at Startup ☐ Run to main()
Initialization File:
Restore Debug Session Settings
☑ Breakpoints ☑ Toolbox
☑ Watch Windows
☑ Memory Display ☑ System Viewer
Driver DLL: SARMCM3.DLL Parameter:
Dialog DLL: TCM.DLL Parameter: -pCM4
☐ Warn if outdated Executable is loaded

Manage Component Viewer Description Files ...

OK | Cancel | Defaults | Help

Figure 93: Options for Target

RA SC will set up the uVision project to debug the selected device using J-Link or J-Link OB debugger by default.

A Debug session can be started or stopped by selecting the menu item "Debug|Start/Stop Debug Session" or keyboard shortcut CTRL+F5. When debugging for the first time, J-Link firmware update may be needed if requested by the tool.

Refer to the documentation from Keil to get more information on the debug features in uVision. Note that not all features supported by uVision debugger are implemented in the J-Link interface. Consult SEGGER J-Link documentation for more information.

2.5.2.5 Notes and Restrictions

1. When creating a new RA project, do not create a new project directly inside uVision. Follow the steps as mentioned in Create new RA project
2. RA FSP contains a full set of drivers and middleware and may not be compatible with other CMSIS packs from Keil, Arm or third parties.
3. Flash programming is currently only supported through the debugger connection.

2.5.3 Using RA Smart Configurator with IAR EWARM

IAR Systems Embedded Workbench for Arm (EWARM) includes support for Renesas RA devices.

These can be set up as bare metal designs within EWARM. However, most RA developers will want to integrate RA FSP drivers and middleware into their designs. RA SC will facilitate this.

RA SC generates a "Project Connection" file that can be loaded directly into EWARM to update project files.

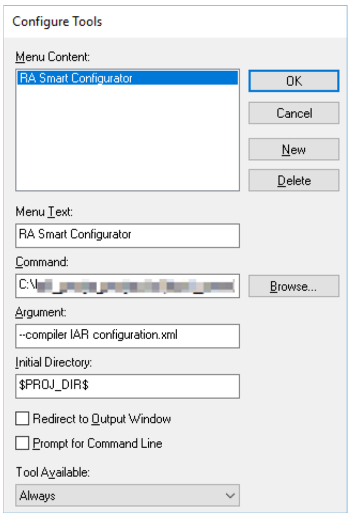
2.5.3.1 Prerequisites

- IAR EWARM installed and licensed. Pleae refer to the Release notes for the version to be installed.
- RA SC and FSP Installed

2.5.3.2 Create new RA project

The following steps are required to create an RA project using IAR EWARM, RA SC and FSP:

1. To Use RA SC with EWARM, RA SC needs to configured as a tool in EWARM by selecting the menu item "Tools|Configure Tools...". Select "New" to create a new tool in the dialog shown and add the following information:
   - Menu Text: RA Smart Configurator
   - Command: Select Browse... and navigate to rasc.exe in the installed RA SC
   - Argument: –compiler IAR configuration.xml
   - Initial Directory: $PROJ_DIR$
   - Tool Available: Always


Configure Tools

Menu Content: RA Smart Configurator

Menu Text: RA Smart Configurator

Command: C:\[redacted]

Argument: --compiler IAR configuration.xml

Initial Directory: $PROJ_DIR$

☐ Redirect to Output Window

☐ Prompt for Command Line

Tool Available: Always

Figure 94: Tool_setup

2. A new EWARM project can be created using the menu item "Project|Create New Project..." and selecting the "Empty Project" and toolchain as ARM. Save the project to an empty folder.

3. RA SC can now be launched from EWARM using the menu item "Tools|RA Smart Configurator".

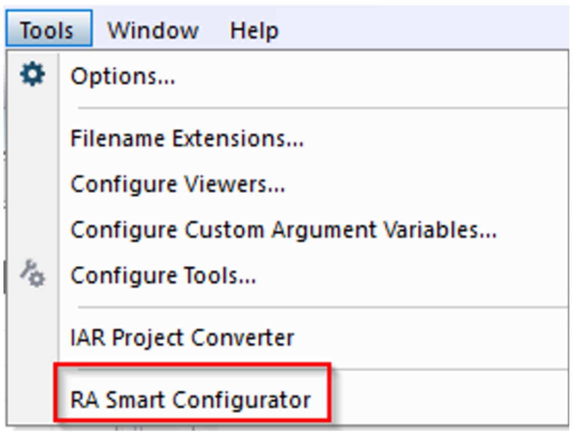


Figure 95: RA SC Menu Item

RA SC will be launched with project generator wizard. The configuration window opens once the project wizard is closed. Refer to Configuring a Project for more details on how to configure the project. After configuring the project, click "Generate Project Content". Changes to the RA configuration will be reflected in the EWARM project.

4. A Project connection needs to be set up in EWARM to build the project. Select "Project|Add Project Connection" in EWARM and select "IAR Project Connection". Navigate to the project folder and select buildinfo.ipcf and click open. The project can now build in EWARM.

Chapter 3 FSP Architecture

3.1 FSP Architecture Overview

This guide describes the Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP) architecture and how to use the FSP Application Programming Interface (API).

3.1.1 C99 Use

The FSP uses the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 (C99) C programming language standard. Specific features introduced in C99 that are used include standard integer types (stdint.h), booleans (stdbool.h), designated initializers, and the ability to intermingle declarations and code.

3.1.2 Doxygen

Doxygen is the default documentation tool used by FSP. You can find Doxygen comments throughout the FSP source.

3.1.3 Weak Symbols

Weak symbols are used occasionally in the FSP. They are used to ensure that a project builds even when the user has not defined an optional function.

3.1.4 Memory Allocation

Dynamic memory allocation through use of the malloc() and free() functions are not used in FSP modules; all memory required by FSP modules is allocated in the application and passed to the module in a pointer. Exceptions are considered only for ports of 3rd party code that require dynamic memory.

3.1.5 FSP Terms

Term	Description	Reference
BSP	Short for Board Support Package. In the FSP the BSP provides just enough foundation to allow other FSP modules to work together without issue.	MCU Board Support Package

Module	Modules can be peripheral drivers, purely software, or anything in between. Each module consists of a folder with source code, documentation, and anything else that the customer needs to use the code effectively. Modules are independent units, but they may depend on other modules. Applications can be built by combining multiple modules to provide the user with the features they need.	FSP Modules
Driver	A driver is a specific kind of module that directly modifies registers on the MCU.	-
Interface	An interface contains API definitions that can be shared by modules with similar features. Interfaces are definitions only and do not add to code size.	FSP Interfaces
Stacks	The FSP architecture is designed such that modules work together to form a stack. A stack consists of a top level module and all its dependencies.	FSP Stacks
Module Instance	Single and independent instantiation of a module. An application may require two GPT timers. Each of these timers is a module instance of the r_gpt module.	-
Application	Code that is owned and maintained by the user. Application code may be based on sample application code provided by Renesas, but it is the responsibility of the user to maintain as necessary.	-

Callback Function	This term refers to a function that is called when an event occurs. As an example, suppose the user would like to be notified every second based on the RTC. As part of the RTC configuration, a callback function can be supplied that will be jumped to during each RTC interrupt. When a single callback services multiple events, the arguments contain the triggering event. Callback functions for interrupts should be kept short and handled carefully because when they are called the MCU is still inside of an interrupt, delaying any pending interrupts.	-

3.2 FSP Modules

Modules are the core building block of FSP. Modules can do many different things, but all modules share the basic concept of providing functionality upwards and requiring functionality from below.

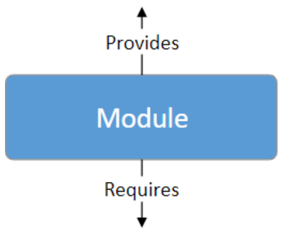


Figure 96: Modules

The amount of functionality provided by a module is determined based on functional use cases. Common functionality required by multiple modules is often placed into a self-contained submodule so it can be reused. Code size, speed and complexity are also considered when defining a module.

The simplest FSP application consists of one module with the Board Support Package (BSP) and the user application on top.

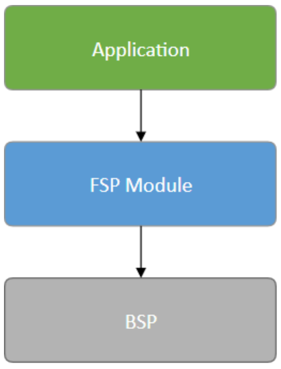


Figure 97: Module with application

The Board Support Package (BSP) is the foundation for FSP modules, providing functionality to determine the MCU used as well as configuring clocks, interrupts and pins. For the sake of clarity, the BSP will be omitted from further diagrams.

3.3 FSP Stacks

When modules are layered atop one another, an FSP stack is formed. The stacking process is performed by matching what one module provides with what another module requires. For example, the SPI module (Serial Peripheral Interface (r_spi)) requires a module that provides the transfer interface (Transfer Interface) to send or receive data without a CPU interrupt. The transfer interface requirement can be fulfilled by the DTC driver module (Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc)).

Through this methodology the same code can be shared by several modules simultaneously. The example below illustrates how the same DTC module can be used with SPI (Serial Peripheral Interface (r_spi)), UART (Serial Communications Interface (SCI) UART (r_sci_uart)) and SDHI (SD/MMC Host Interface (r_sdhi)).

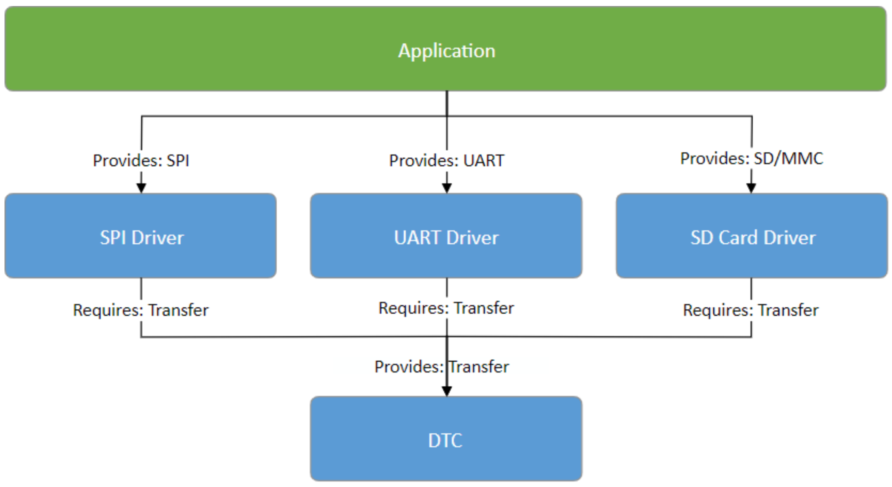


Figure 98: Stacks -- Shared DTC Module

The ability to stack modules ensures the flexibility of the architecture as a whole. If multiple modules include the same functionality issues arise when application features must work across different user designs. To ensure that modules are reusable, any dependent modules must be capable of being swapped out for other modules that provide the same features. The FSP architecture provides this flexibility to swap modules in and out through the use of FSP interfaces.

3.4 FSP Interfaces

At the architecture level, interfaces are the way that modules provide common features. This commonality allows modules that adhere to the same interface to be used interchangeably. Interfaces can be thought of as a contract between two modules - the modules agree to work together using the information that was established in the contract.

On RA hardware there is occasionally an overlap of features between different peripherals. For example, I2C communications can be achieved through use of the IIC peripheral or the SCI peripheral. However, there is a difference in the level of features provided by both peripherals; in I2C mode the SCI peripheral will only support a subset of the capabilities of the fully-featured IIC.

Interfaces aim to provide support for the common features that most users would expect. This means that some of the advanced features of a peripheral (such as IIC) might not be available in the interface. In most cases these features are still available through interface extensions.

In FSP design, interfaces are defined in header files. All interface header files are located in the folder ra/fsp/inc/api and end with *_api.h. Interface extensions are defined in header files in the folder ra/fsp/inc/instances. The following sections detail what makes up an interface.

3.4.1 FSP Interface Enumerations

Whenever possible, interfaces use typed enumerations for function parameters and structure members.

```
typedef enum e_i2c_master_addr_mode

{

    I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_7BIT = 1,    ///< Use 7-bit addressing mode

    I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_10BIT = 2,    ///< Use 10-bit addressing mode

} i2c_master_addr_mode_t;
```

Enumerations remove uncertainty when deciding what values are available for a parameter. FSP enumeration options follow a strict naming convention where the name of the type is prefixed on the available options. Combining the naming convention with the autocomplete feature available in e^2 studio (Ctrl + Space) provides the benefits of rapid coding while maintaining high readability.

3.4.2 FSP Interface Callback Functions

Callback functions allow modules to asynchronously alert the user application when an event has occurred, such as when a byte has been received over a UART channel or an IRQ pin is toggled. FSP driver modules define and handle the interrupt service routines for RA MCU peripherals to ensure any required hardware procedures are implemented. The interrupt service routines in FSP modules then call the user-defined callbacks to allow the application to respond.

Callback functions must be defined in the user application. They always return void and take a structure for their one parameter. The structure is defined in the interface for the module and is named <interface>_callback_args_t. The contents of the structure may vary depending on the interface, but two members are common: event and p_context.

The event member is an enumeration defined in the interface used by the application to determine why the callback was called. Using the UART example, the callback could be triggered for many different reasons, including when a byte is received, all bytes have been transmitted, or a framing error has occurred. The event member allows the application to determine which of these three events has occurred and handle it appropriately.

The p_context member is used for providing user-specified data to the callback function. In many cases a callback function is shared between multiple channels or module instances; when the callback occurs, the code handling the callback needs context information so that it can determine which module instance the callback is for. For example, if the callback wanted to make an FSP API call in the callback, then at a minimum the callback will need a reference to the relevant control structure. To make this easy, the user can provide a pointer to the control structure as the p_context. When the callback occurs, the control structure is passed in the p_context element of the callback structure.

Callback functions are called from within an interrupt service routine. For this reason callback functions should be kept as short as possible so they do not affect the real time performance of the user's system. An example skeleton function for the flash interface callback is shown below.

```
void flash_callback (flash_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 /* See what event caused this callback. */
 switch (p_args->event)
    {
 case FLASH_EVENT_ERASE_COMPLETE:
      {
 /* Handle event. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE:
      {
 /* Handle event. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_BLANK:
      {
 /* Handle event. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_NOT_BLANK:
      {
 /* Handle event. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_ERR_DF_ACCESS:
      {
 /* Handle error. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_ERR_CF_ACCESS:
      {
 /* Handle error. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_ERR_CMD_LOCKED:
      {
 /* Handle error. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_ERR_FAILURE:
      {
 /* Handle error. */
 break;
       }
 case FLASH_EVENT_ERR_ONE_BIT:
      {
 /* Handle error. */
 break;
       }
    }
}
```

When a module is not directly used in the user application (that is, it is not the top layer of the stack), its callback function will be handled by the module above. For example, if a module requires a UART interface module the upper layer module will control and use the UART's callback function. In this case the user would not need to create a callback function for the UART module in their application code.

3.4.3 FSP Interface Data Structures

At a minimum, all FSP interfaces include three data structures: a configuration structure, an API structure, and an instance structure.

3.4.3.1 FSP Interface Configuration Structure

The configuration structure is used for the initial configuration of a module during the <MODULE>_Open() call. The structure consists of members such as channel number, bitrate, and operating mode.

The configuration structure is used purely as an input into the module. It may be stored and referenced by the module, so the configuration structure and anything it references must persist as long as the module is open.

The configuration structure is allocated for each module instance in files generated by the RA configuration tool.

When FSP stacks are used, it is also important to understand that configuration structures only have members that apply to the current interface. If multiple layers in the same stack define the same configuration parameters then it becomes difficult to know where to modify the option. For example, the baud rate for a UART is only defined in the UART module instance. Any modules that use the UART interface rely on the baud rate being provided in the UART module instance and do not offer it in their own configuration structures.

3.4.3.2 FSP Interface API Structure

All interfaces include an API structure which contains function pointers for all the supported interface functions. An example structure for the Digital to Analog Converter (r_dac) is shown below.

```
typedef struct st_dac_api
{
    /** Initial configuration.
    * @par Implemented as
    * - @ref R_DAC_Open()
    * - @ref R_DAC8_Open()
    *
    * @param[in] p_ctrl Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements
set here.
    * @param[in] p_cfg Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this
structure must be set by user.
    */
    fsp_err_t (* open)(dac_ctrl_t * const p_ctrl, dac_cfg_t const * const p_cfg);
    /** Close the D/A Converter.
    * @par Implemented as
    * - @ref R_DAC_Close()
    * - @ref R_DAC8_Close()
    *
    * @param[in] p_ctrl Control block set in @ref dac_api_t::open call for this
timer.
    */
    fsp_err_t (* close)(dac_ctrl_t * const p_ctrl);
    /** Write sample value to the D/A Converter.
    * @par Implemented as
    * - @ref R_DAC_Write()
    * - @ref R_DAC8_Write()
    *
    * @param[in] p_ctrl Control block set in @ref dac_api_t::open call for this
timer.
    * @param[in] value Sample value to be written to the D/A Converter.
    */
    fsp_err_t (* write)(dac_ctrl_t * const p_ctrl, uint16_t value);
    /** Start the D/A Converter if it has not been started yet.
    * @par Implemented as
    * - @ref R_DAC_Start()
    * - @ref R_DAC8_Start()
    *
    * @param[in] p_ctrl Control block set in @ref dac_api_t::open call for this
timer.
    */
    fsp_err_t (* start)(dac_ctrl_t * const p_ctrl);
    /** Stop the D/A Converter if the converter is running.
    * @par Implemented as
    * - @ref R_DAC_Stop()
    * - @ref R_DAC8_Stop()
    *
    * @param[in] p_ctrl Control block set in @ref dac_api_t::open call for this
```

```
timer.
    */
    fsp_err_t (* stop)(dac_ctrl_t * const p_ctrl);
    /** Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.
    * @par Implemented as
    * - @ref R_DAC_VersionGet()
    * - @ref R_DAC8_VersionGet()
    *
    * @param[out] p_version Code and API version used.
    */
    fsp_err_t (* versionGet)(fsp_version_t * p_version);
} dac_api_t;
```

The API structure is what allows for modules to easily be swapped in and out for other modules that are instances of the same interface. Let's look at an example application using the DAC interface above.

RA MCUs have an internal DAC peripheral. If the DAC API structure in the DAC interface is not used the application can make calls directly into the module. In the example below the application is making calls to the R_DAC_Write() function which is provided in the r_dac module.

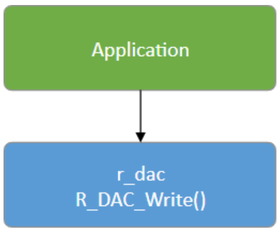


Figure 99: DAC Write example

Now let's assume that the user needs more DAC channels than are available on the MCU and decides to add an external DAC module named dac_external using I2C for communications. The application must now distinguish between the two modules, adding complexity and further dependencies to the application.

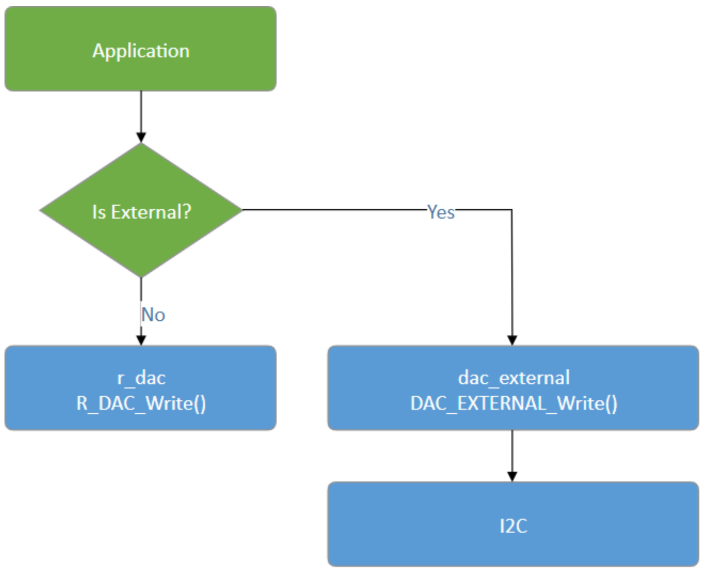


Figure 100: DAC Write with two write modules

The use of interfaces and the API structure allows for the use of an abstracted DAC. This means that no extra logic is needed if the user's dac_external module implements the FSP DAC interface, so the application no longer depends upon hard-coded module function names. Instead the application now depends on the DAC interface API which can be implemented by any number of modules.

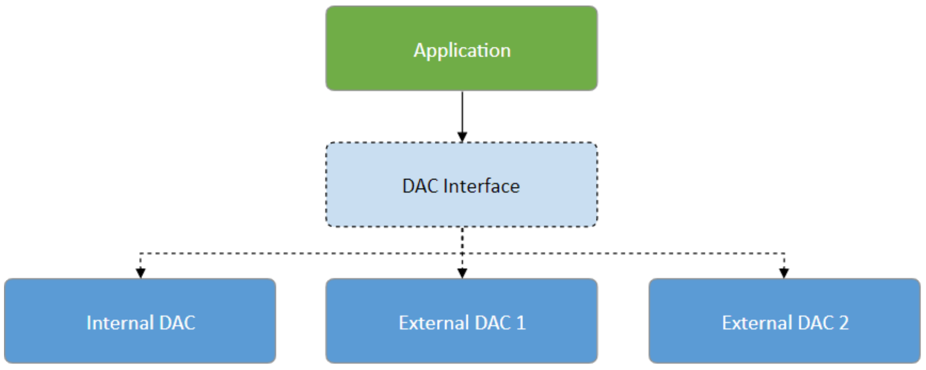


Figure 101: DAC Interface

3.4.3.3 FSP Interface Instance Structure

Every FSP interface also has an instance structure. The instance structure encapsulates everything required to use the module:

- A pointer to the instance API structure (FSP Instance API)
- A pointer to the configuration structure
- A pointer to the control structure

The instance structure is not required at the application layer. It is used to connect modules to their dependencies (other than the BSP).

Instance structures have a standardized name of <interface>_instance_t. An example from the Transfer Interface is shown below.

```
typedef struct st_transfer_instance
{
  transfer_ctrl_t     * p_ctrl; ///< Pointer to the control structure for this
instance
    transfer_cfg_t const * p_cfg;      ///< Pointer to the configuration structure
for this instance
    transfer_api_t const * p_api;      ///< Pointer to the API structure for this
instance
} transfer_instance_t;
```

Note that when an instance structure variable is declared, the API is the only thing that is instance specific, not *module instance* specific. This is because all module instances of the same module share the same underlying module source code. If SPI is being used on SCI channels 0 and 2 then both module instances use the same API while the configuration and control structures are typically different.

3.5 FSP Instances

While interfaces dictate the features that are provided, instances actually implement those features. Each instance is tied to a specific interface. Instances use the enumerations, data structures, and API prototypes from the interface. This allows an application that uses an interface to swap out the instance when needed.

On RA MCUs some peripherals are used to implement multiple interfaces. In the example below the IIC and SPI peripherals map to only one interface each while the SCI peripheral implements three interfaces.

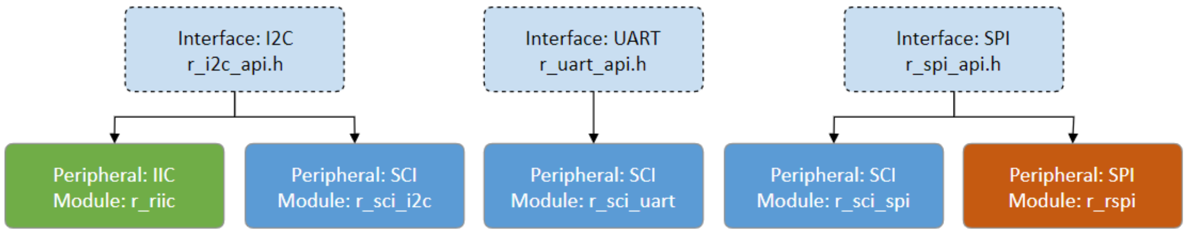


Figure 102: Instances

In FSP design, instances consist of the interface extension and API defined in the instance header file located in the folder ra/fsp/inc/instances and the module source ra/fsp/src/<module>.

3.5.1 FSP Instance Control Structure

The control structure is used as a unique identifier for the module instance and contains memory required by the module. Elements in the control structure are owned by the module and *must not be modified* by the application. The user allocates storage for a control structure, often as a global variable, then sends a pointer to it into the <MODULE>_Open() call for a module. At this point, the module initializes the structure as needed. The user must then send in a pointer to the control structure for all subsequent module calls.

3.5.2 FSP Interface Extensions

In some cases, instances require more information than is provided in the interface. This situation can occur in the following cases:

- An instance offers extra features that are not common to most instances of the interface. An example of this is the start source selection of the GPT (General PWM Timer (r_gpt)). The GPT can be configured to start based on hardware events such as a falling edge on a trigger pin. This feature is not common to all timers, so it is included in the GPT instance.
- An interface must be very generic out of necessity. As an interface becomes more generic, the number of possible instances increases. An example of an interface that must be generic is a block media interface that abstracts functions required by a file system. Possible instances include SD card, SPI Flash, SDRAM, USB, and many more.

The p_extend member provides this extension function.

Use of interface extensions is not always necessary. Some instances do not offer an extension since all functionality is provided in the interface. In these cases the p_extend member can be set to NULL. The documentation for each instance indicates whether an interface extension is available and whether it is mandatory or optional.

3.5.2.1 FSP Extended Configuration Structure

When extended configuration is required it can be supplied through the p_extend parameter of the interface configuration structure.

The extended configuration structure is part of the instance, but it is also still considered to be part of the configuration structure. All usage notes about the configuration structure described in FSP Interface Configuration Structure apply to the extended configuration structure as well.

The extended configuration structure and all typed structures and enumerations required to define it make up the interface extension.

3.5.3 FSP Instance API

Each instance includes a constant global variable tying the interface API functions to the functions provided by the module. The name of this structure is standardized as g_<interface>_on_<instance>. Examples include g_spi_on_spi, g_transfer_on_dtc, and g_adc_on_adc. This structure is available to be used through an extern in the instance header file (r_spi.h, r_dtc.h, and r_adc.h respectively).

3.6 FSP API Standards

3.6.1 FSP Function Names

FSP functions start with the uppercase module name (<MODULE>). All modules have <MODULE>_Open() and <MODULE>_Close() functions. The <MODULE>_Open() function must be called before any of the other functions. The only exception is the <MODULE>_VersionGet() function which is not dependent upon any user provided information.

Other functions that will commonly be found are <MODULE>_Read(), <MODULE>_Write(),

<MODULE>_InfoGet(), and <MODULE>_StatusGet(). The <MODULE>_StatusGet() function provides a status that could change asynchronously, while <MODULE>_InfoGet() provides information that cannot change after open or can only be updated by API calls. Example function names include:

- R_SPI_Read(), R_SPI_Write(), R_SPI_WriteRead()
- R_SDHI_StatusGet()
- R_RTC_CalendarAlarmSet(), R_RTC_CalendarAlarmGet()
- R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowSet(), R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowClear()

3.6.2 Use of const in API parameters

The const qualifier is used with API parameters whenever possible. An example case is shown below.

```
fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_Open(flash_ctrl_t * const p_api_ctrl, flash_cfg_t const * const
p_cfg);
```

In this example, flash_cfg_t is a structure of configuration parameters for the r_flash_hp module. The parameter p_cfg is a pointer to this structure. The first const qualifier on p_cfg ensures the flash_cfg_t structure cannot be modified by R_FLASH_HP_Open(). This allows the structure to be allocated as a const variable and stored in ROM instead of RAM.

The const qualifier after the pointer star for both p_ctrl and p_cfg ensures the FSP function does not modify the input pointer addresses. While not fool-proof by any means this does provide some extra checking inside the FSP code to ensure that arguments that should not be altered are treated as such.

3.6.3 FSP Version Information

All instances supply a <MODULE>_VersionGet() function which fills in a structure of type fsp_version_t. This structure is made up of two version numbers: one for the interface (the API) and one for the underlying instance that is currently being used.

```
typedef union st_fsp_version
{
    /** Version id */
    uint32_t version_id;
    /** Code version parameters */
    struct
    {
       uint8_t code_version_minor;    ///< Code minor version
       uint8_t code_version_major;    ///< Code major version
       uint8_t api_version_minor;    ///< API minor version
       uint8_t api_version_major;    ///< API major version
    };
} fsp_version_t;
```

The API version ideally never changes, and only rarely if it does. A change to the API may require users to go back and modify their code. The code version (the version of the current instance) may be updated more frequently due to bug fixes, enhancements, and additional features. Changes to the code version typically do not require changes to user code.

3.7 FSP Build Time Configurations

All modules have a build-time configuration header file. Most configuration options are supplied at run time, though options that are rarely used or apply to all instances of a module may be moved to build time. The advantage of using a build-time configuration option is to potentially reduce code size reduction by removing an unused feature.

All modules have a build time option to enable or disable parameter checking for the module. FSP modules check function arguments for validity when possible, though this feature is disabled by default to reduce code size. Enabling it can help catch parameter errors during development and debugging. By default, each module's parameter checking configuration inherits the BSP parameter checking setting (set on the BSP tab of the RA configuration tool). Leaving each module's parameter checking configuration set to Default (BSP) allows parameter checking to be enabled or disabled globally in all FSP code through the parameter checking setting on the BSP tab.

If an error condition can reasonably be avoided it is only checked in a section of code that can be disabled by disabling parameter checking. Most FSP APIs can only return FSP_SUCCESS if parameter checking is disabled. An example of an error that cannot be reasonably avoided is the "bus busy" error that occurs when another master is using an I2C bus. This type of error can be returned even if parameter checking is disabled.

3.8 FSP File Structure

The high-level file structure of an FSP project is shown below.

```
ra_gen
ra
+---fsp
    +---inc
    |   +---api
    |   \---instances
    \---src
       +---bsp
       \---r_module
ra_cfg
+---fsp_cfg
    +---bsp
    +---driver
```

Directly underneath the base ra folder the folders are split into the source and include folders. Include folders are kept separate from the source for easy browsing and easy setup of include paths.

The ra_gen folder contains code generated by the RA configuration tool. This includes global variables for the control structure and configuration structure for each module.

The ra_cfg folder is where configuration header files are stored for each module. See FSP Build Time Configurations for information on what is provided in these header files.

3.9 FSP Architecture in Practice

3.9.1 FSP Connecting Layers

FSP modules are meant to be both reusable and stackable. It is important to remember that modules are not dependent upon other modules, but upon other interfaces. The user is then free to fulfill the interface using the instance that best fits their needs.

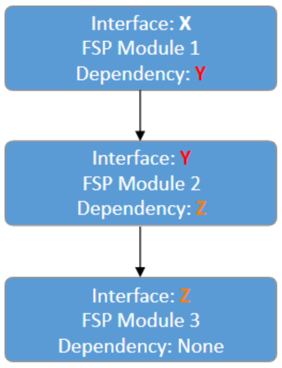


Figure 103: Connecting layers

In the image above interface Y is a dependency of interface X and has its own dependency on interface Z. Interface X only has a dependency on interface Y. Interface X has no knowledge of interface Z. This is a requirement for ensuring that layers can easily be swapped out.

3.9.2 Using FSP Modules in an Application

The typical use of an FSP module involves generating required module data then using the API in the application.

3.9.2.1 Create a Module Instance in the RA Configuration Tool

The RA configuration tool in the Renesas e^2 studio IDE provides a graphical user interface for setting the parameters of the interface and instance configuration structures. e^2 studio also automatically includes those structures (once they are configured in the GUI) in application-specific header files that can be included in application code.

The RA configuration tool allocates storage for the control structures, all required configuration structures, and the instance structure in generated files in the ra_gen folder. Use the e^2 studio **Properties** view to set the values for the members of the configuration structures as needed. Refer to the Configuration section of the module usage notes for documentation about the configuration options.

If the interface has a callback function option then the application must declare and define the function. The return value is always of type void and the parameter to the function is a typed structure of name <interface>_callback_args_t. Once the function has been defined, assign its name to the p_callback member of the configuration structure. Callback function names can be assigned through the e^2 studio **Properties** window for the selected module.

3.9.2.2 Use the Instance API in the Application

Call the module's <MODULE>_Open() function. Pass pointers to the generated control structure and configuration structure. The names of these structures are based on the 'Name' field provided in the RA configuration tool. The control structure is <Name>_ctrl and the configuration structure is <Name>_cfg. An example <MODULE>_Open() call for an r_rtc module instance named g_clock is:

```
R_RTC_Open(&g_clock_ctrl, &g_clock_cfg);
```

Note

> *Each layer in the FSP Stack is responsible for calling the API functions of its dependencies. This means that users are only responsible for calling the API functions at the layer at which they are interfacing. Using the example above of a SPI module with a DTC dependency, the application uses only SPI APIs. The application starts by calling R_SPI_Open(). Internally, the SPI module opens the DTC. It locates R_DTC_Open() by accessing the dependent transfer interface function pointers from the pointers DTC instances (spi_cfg_t::p_transfer_tx and spi_cfg_t::p_transfer_rx) to open the DTC.*

Refer to the module usage notes for example code to help get started with any particular module.

Chapter 4 Copyright

Chapter 5 API Reference

This section includes the FSP API Reference for the Module and Interface level functions.

►BSP	Common code shared by FSP drivers
►Modules	Modules are the smallest unit of software available in the FSP. Each module implements one interface
►Interfaces	The FSP interfaces provide APIs for common functionality. They can be implemented by one or more modules. Modules can use other modules as dependencies using this interface layer

5.1 BSP

Detailed Description

Common code shared by FSP drivers.

Modules

	Common Error Codes
	MCU Board Support Package The BSP is responsible for getting the MCU from reset to the user's application. Before reaching the user's application, the BSP sets up the stacks, heap, clocks, interrupts, C runtime environment, and stack monitor.
	BSP I/O access This module provides basic read/write access to port pins.

5.1.1 Common Error Codes

BSP

Detailed Description

All FSP modules share these common error codes.

Data Structures

union	fsp_version_t
struct	fsp_version_t.__unnamed__

Macros

#define	FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p)
#define	FSP_CPP_HEADER
#define	FSP_HEADER

Enumerations

enum	fsp_err_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ fsp_version_t

union fsp_version_t

Common version structure

Data Fields		
uint32_t	version_id	Version id
struct fsp_version_t	__unnamed__	Code version parameters

◆ fsp_version_t.__unnamed__

struct fsp_version_t.__unnamed__

Code version parameters

Data Fields		
uint8_t	code_version_minor	Code minor version.
uint8_t	code_version_major	Code major version.
uint8_t	api_version_minor	API minor version.
uint8_t	api_version_major	API major version.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED

#define FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED (p)
This macro is used to suppress compiler messages about a parameter not being used in a function. The nice thing about using this implementation is that it does not take any extra RAM or ROM.

◆ FSP_CPP_HEADER

#define FSP_CPP_HEADER
Determine if a C++ compiler is being used. If so, ensure that standard C is used to process the API information.

◆ FSP_HEADER

#define FSP_HEADER
FSP Header and Footer definitions

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ fsp_err_t

enum fsp_err_t

Common error codes

Enumerator	
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A critical assertion has failed.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_POINTER	Pointer points to invalid memory location.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid input parameter.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CHANNEL	Selected channel does not exist.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	Unsupported or incorrect mode.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Selected mode not supported by this API.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Requested channel is not configured or API not open.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Channel/peripheral is running/busy.
FSP_ERR_OUT_OF_MEMORY	Allocate more memory in the driver's cfg.h.

FSP_ERR_HW_LOCKED	Hardware is locked.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	IRQ not enabled in BSP.
FSP_ERR_OVERFLOW	Hardware overflow.
FSP_ERR_UNDERFLOW	Hardware underflow.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Requested channel is already open in a different configuration.
FSP_ERR_APPROXIMATION	Could not set value to exact result.
FSP_ERR_CLAMPED	Value had to be limited for some reason.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_RATE	Selected rate could not be met.
FSP_ERR_ABORTED	An operation was aborted.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ENABLED	Requested operation is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timeout error.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_BLOCKS	Invalid number of blocks supplied.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid address supplied.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	Invalid size/length supplied for operation.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Write operation failed.
FSP_ERR_ERASE_FAILED	Erase operation failed.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CALL	Invalid function call is made.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_HW_CONDITION	Detected hardware is in invalid condition.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_FACTORY_FLASH	Factory flash is not available on this MCU.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_STATE	API or command not valid in the current state.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ERASED	Erase verification failed.
FSP_ERR_SECTOR_RELEASE_FAILED	Sector release failed.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Required initialization not complete.
FSP_ERR_INTERNAL	Internal error.

FSP_ERR_WAIT_ABORTED	Wait aborted.
FSP_ERR_FRAMING	Framing error occurs.
FSP_ERR_BREAK_DETECT	Break signal detects.
FSP_ERR_PARITY	Parity error occurs.
FSP_ERR_RXBUF_OVERFLOW	Receive queue overflow.
FSP_ERR_QUEUE_UNAVAILABLE	Can't open s/w queue.
FSP_ERR_INSUFFICIENT_SPACE	Not enough space in transmission circular buffer.
FSP_ERR_INSUFFICIENT_DATA	Not enough data in receive circular buffer.
FSP_ERR_TRANSFER_ABORTED	The data transfer was aborted.
FSP_ERR_MODE_FAULT	Mode fault error.
FSP_ERR_READ_OVERFLOW	Read overflow.
FSP_ERR_SPI_PARITY	Parity error.
FSP_ERR_OVERRUN	Overrun error.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_INACTIVE	Inactive clock specified as system clock.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_ACTIVE	Active clock source cannot be modified without stopping first.
FSP_ERR_NOT_STABILIZED	Clock has not stabilized after its been turned on/off.
FSP_ERR_PLL_SRC_INACTIVE	PLL initialization attempted when PLL source is turned off.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_DET_ENABLED	Illegal attempt to stop LOCO when Oscillation stop is enabled.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_DETECTED	The Oscillation stop detection status flag is set.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_CLOCK_ACTIVE	Attempt to clear Oscillation Stop Detect Status with PLL/MAIN_OSC active.
FSP_ERR_CLKOUT_EXCEEDED	Output on target output clock pin exceeds maximum supported limit.

FSP_ERR_USB_MODULE_ENABLED	USB clock configure request with USB Module enabled.
FSP_ERR_HARDWARE_TIMEOUT	A register read or write timed out.
FSP_ERR_LOW_VOLTAGE_MODE	Invalid clock setting attempted in low voltage mode.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Unable to enter Programming mode.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	Peripheral in command locked state.
FSP_ERR_FCLK	FCLK must be >= 4 MHz.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_LINKED_ADDRESS	Function or data are linked at an invalid region of memory.
FSP_ERR_BLANK_CHECK_FAILED	Blank check operation failed.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CAC_REF_CLOCK	Measured clock rate < reference clock rate.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_GENERATION	Clock cannot be specified as system clock.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_TIMING_SETTING	Invalid timing parameter.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_LAYER_SETTING	Invalid layer parameter.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	Invalid memory alignment found.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_GAMMA_SETTING	Invalid gamma correction parameter.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_LAYER_FORMAT	Invalid color format in layer.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_UPDATE_TIMING	Invalid timing for register update.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CLUT_ACCESS	Invalid access to CLUT entry.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_FADE_SETTING	Invalid fade-in/fade-out setting.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_BRIGHTNESS_SETTING	Invalid gamma correction parameter.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_ERR	JPEG error.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_SOI_NOT_DETECTED	SOI not detected until EOI detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_SOF1_TO_SOFF_DETECTED	SOF1 to SOFF detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_UNSUPPORTED_PIXEL_FORMAT	Unprovided pixel format detected.

FSP_ERR_JPEG_SOF_ACCURACY_ERROR	SOF accuracy error: other than 8 detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_DQT_ACCURACY_ERROR	DQT accuracy error: other than 0 detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_COMPONENT_ERROR1	Component error1: the number of SOF0 header components detected is other than 1,3,or 4.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_COMPONENT_ERROR2	Component error2: the number of components differs between SOF0 header and SOS.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_SOF0_DQT_DHT_NOT_DETECTED	SOF0, DQT, and DHT not detected when SOS detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_SOS_NOT_DETECTED	SOS not detected: SOS not detected until EOI detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_EOI_NOT_DETECTED	EOI not detected (default)
FSP_ERR_JPEG_RESTART_INTERVAL_DATA_NUMBER_ERROR	Restart interval data number error detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_IMAGE_SIZE_ERROR	Image size error detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_LAST_MCU_DATA_NUMBER_ERROR	Last MCU data number error detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_BLOCK_DATA_NUMBER_ERROR	Block data number error detected.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_BUFFERSIZE_NOT_ENOUGH	User provided buffer size not enough.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_UNSUPPORTED_IMAGE_SIZE	JPEG Image size is not aligned with MCU.
FSP_ERR_CALIBRATE_FAILED	Calibration failed.
FSP_ERR_IP_HARDWARE_NOT_PRESENT	Requested IP does not exist on this device.
FSP_ERR_IP_UNIT_NOT_PRESENT	Requested unit does not exist on this device.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	Requested channel does not exist on this device.
FSP_ERR_NO_MORE_BUFFER	No more buffer found in the memory block pool.
FSP_ERR_ILLEGAL_BUFFER_ADDRESS	Buffer address is out of block memory pool.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_WORKBUFFER_SIZE	Work buffer size is invalid.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MSG_BUFFER_SIZE	Message buffer size is invalid.

FSP_ERR_TOO_MANY_BUFFERS	Number of buffer is too many.
FSP_ERR_NO_SUBSCRIBER_FOUND	No message subscriber found.
FSP_ERR_MESSAGE_QUEUE_EMPTY	No message found in the message queue.
FSP_ERR_MESSAGE_QUEUE_FULL	No room for new message in the message queue.
FSP_ERR_ILLEGAL_SUBSCRIBER_LISTS	Message subscriber lists is illegal.
FSP_ERR_BUFFER_RELEASED	Buffer has been released.
FSP_ERR_D2D_ERROR_INIT	Dave/2d has an error in the initialization.
FSP_ERR_D2D_ERROR_DEINIT	Dave/2d has an error in the initialization.
FSP_ERR_D2D_ERROR_RENDERING	Dave/2d has an error in the rendering.
FSP_ERR_D2D_ERROR_SIZE	Dave/2d has an error in the rendering.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_NO_DATA	No Data in Receive buffer.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_LINK	ETHERC/EDMAC has an error in the Auto-negotiation.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_MAGIC_PACKET_MODE	As a Magic Packet is being detected, and transmission/reception is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_TRANSMIT_BUFFER_FULL	Transmit buffer is not empty.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_FILTERING	Detect multicast frame when multicast frame filtering enable.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_PHY_COMMUNICATION	ETHERC/EDMAC has an error in the phy communication.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_ERROR_LINK	PHY is not link up.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_NOT_READY	PHY has an error in the Auto-negotiation.
FSP_ERR_QUEUE_FULL	Queue is full, cannot queue another data.
FSP_ERR_QUEUE_EMPTY	Queue is empty, no data to dequeue.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_SCANNING	Scanning.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_NOT_GET_DATA	Not processed previous scan data.

FSP_ERR_CTSU_INCOMPLETE_TUNING	Incomplete initial offset tuning.
FSP_ERR_CARD_INIT_FAILED	SD card or eMMC device failed to initialize.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INSERTED	SD card not installed.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Device is holding DAT0 low or another operation is ongoing.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	SD card was removed.
FSP_ERR_CARD_WRITE_PROTECTED	Media is write protected.
FSP_ERR_TRANSFER_BUSY	Transfer in progress.
FSP_ERR_RESPONSE	Card did not respond or responded with an error.
FSP_ERR_MEDIA_FORMAT_FAILED	Media format failed.
FSP_ERR_MEDIA_OPEN_FAILED	Media open failed.
FSP_ERR_CAN_DATA_UNAVAILABLE	No data available.
FSP_ERR_CAN_MODE_SWITCH_FAILED	Switching operation modes failed.
FSP_ERR_CAN_INIT_FAILED	Hardware initialization failed.
FSP_ERR_CAN_TRANSMIT_NOT_READY	Transmit in progress.
FSP_ERR_CAN_RECEIVE_MAILBOX	Mailbox is setup as a receive mailbox.
FSP_ERR_CAN_TRANSMIT_MAILBOX	Mailbox is setup as a transmit mailbox.
FSP_ERR_CAN_MESSAGE_LOST	Receive message has been overwritten or overrun.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_CONFIG_FAILED	WiFi module Configuration failed.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_INIT_FAILED	WiFi module initialization failed.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_TRANSMIT_FAILED	Transmission failed.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_INVALID_MODE	API called when provisioned in client mode.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	WiFi Failed.
FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_CONFIG_FAILED	Cellular module Configuration failed.

FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_INIT_FAILED	Cellular module initialization failed.
FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_TRANSMIT_FAILED	Transmission failed.
FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_FW_UPTODATE	Firmware is uptodate.
FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_FW_UPGRADE_FAILED	Firmware upgrade failed.
FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_FAILED	Cellular Failed.
FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_INVALID_STATE	API Called in invalid state.
FSP_ERR_CELLULAR_REGISTRATION_FAILED	Cellular Network registration failed.
FSP_ERR_BLE_FAILED	BLE operation failed.
FSP_ERR_BLE_INIT_FAILED	BLE device initialization failed.
FSP_ERR_BLE_CONFIG_FAILED	BLE device configuration failed.
FSP_ERR_BLE_PRF_ALREADY_ENABLED	BLE device Profile already enabled.
FSP_ERR_BLE_PRF_NOT_ENABLED	BLE device not enabled.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_CONTINUE	Continue executing function.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_SCE_RESOURCE_CONFLICT	Hardware resource busy.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_SCE_FAIL	Internal I/O buffer is not empty.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_SCE_HRK_INVALID_INDEX	Invalid index.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_SCE_RETRY	Retry.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_SCE_VERIFY_FAIL	Verify is failed.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_SCE_ALREADY_OPEN	HW SCE module is already opened.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_NOT_OPEN	Hardware module is not initialized.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_UNKNOWN	Some unknown error occurred.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_NULL_POINTER	Null pointer input as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_NOT_IMPLEMENTED	Algorithm/size not implemented.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_RNG_INVALID_PARAM	An invalid parameter is specified.

FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_RNG_FATAL_ERROR	A fatal error occurred.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_INVALID_SIZE	Size specified is invalid.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_INVALID_STATE	Function used in an valid state.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_ALREADY_OPEN	control block is already opened
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_INSTALL_KEY_FAILED	Specified input key is invalid.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_AUTHENTICATION_FAILED	Authentication failed.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_COMMON_NOT_OPENED	Crypto Framework Common is not opened.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_HAL_ERROR	Cryoto HAL module returned an error.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_KEY_BUF_NOT_ENOUGH	Key buffer size is not enough to generate a key.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_BUF_OVERFLOW	Attempt to write data larger than what the buffer can hold.
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_INVALID_OPERATION_MODE	Invalid operation mode.
FSP_ERR_MESSAGE_TOO_LONG	Message for RSA encryption is too long.
FSP_ERR_RSA_DECRYPTION_ERROR	RSA Decryption error.

5.1.2 MCU Board Support Package

BSP

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_FSP_VersionGet (fsp_pack_version_t *const p_version)
void	Reset_Handler (void)
void	Default_Handler (void)
void	SystemInit (void)
void	R_BSP_WarmStart (bsp_warm_start_event_t event)
fsp_err_t	R_BSP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)

void	R_BSP_SoftwareDelay (uint32_t delay, bsp_delay_units_t units)
fsp_err_t	R_BSP_GroupIrqWrite (bsp_grp_irq_t irq, void(*p_callback)(bsp_grp_irq_t irq))
void	NMI_Handler (void)
void	R_BSP_RegisterProtectEnable (bsp_reg_protect_t regs_to_protect)
void	R_BSP_RegisterProtectDisable (bsp_reg_protect_t regs_to_unprotect)

Detailed Description

The BSP is responsible for getting the MCU from reset to the user's application. Before reaching the user's application, the BSP sets up the stacks, heap, clocks, interrupts, C runtime environment, and stack monitor.

Overview

BSP Features

BSP Clock Configuration

All system clocks are set up during BSP initialization based on the settings in bsp_clock_cfg.h. These settings are derived from clock configuration information provided from the RA Configuration tool **Clocks** tab setting.

- Clock configuration is performed prior to initializing the C runtime environment to speed up the startup process, as it is possible to start up on a relatively slow (that is, 32 kHz) clock.
- The BSP implements the required delays to allow the selected clock to stabilize.
- The BSP will configure the CMSIS SystemCoreClock variable after clock initialization with the current system clock frequency.

System Interrupts

As RA MCUs are based on the Cortex-M ARM architecture, the NVIC Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC) handles exceptions and interrupt configuration, prioritization and interrupt masking. In the ARM architecture, the NVIC handles exceptions. Some exceptions are known as System Exceptions. System exceptions are statically located at the "top" of the vector table and occupy vector numbers 1 to 15. Vector zero is reserved for the MSP Main Stack Pointer (MSP). The remaining 15 system exceptions are shown below:

- Reset
- NMI
- Cortex-M4 Hard Fault Handler
- Cortex-M4 MPU Fault Handler
- Cortex-M4 Bus Fault Handler
- Cortex-M4 Usage Fault Handler
- Reserved
- Reserved
- Reserved
- Reserved
- Cortex-M4 SVCall Handler
- Cortex-M4 Debug Monitor Handler
- Reserved
- Cortex-M4 PendSV Handler
- Cortex-M4 SysTick Handler

NMI and Hard Fault exceptions are enabled out of reset and have fixed priorities. Other exceptions have configurable priorities and some can be disabled.

Group Interrupts

Group interrupt is the term used to describe the 12 sources that can trigger the Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI). When an NMI occurs the NMI Handler examines the NMISR (status register) to determine the source of the interrupt. NMI interrupts take precedence over all interrupts, are usable only as CPU interrupts, and cannot activate the RA peripherals Data Transfer Controller (DTC) or Direct Memory Access Controller (DMAC).

Possible group interrupt sources include:

- IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error
- WDT Underflow/Refresh Error
- Voltage-Monitoring 1 Interrupt
- Voltage-Monitoring 2 Interrupt
- VBATT monitor Interrupt
- Oscillation Stop is detected
- NMI pin
- RAM Parity Error
- RAM ECC Error
- MPU Bus Slave Error
- MPU Bus Master Error
- MPU Stack Error

A user may enable notification for one or more group interrupts by registering a callback using the BSP API function R_BSP_GroupIrqWrite(). When an NMI interrupt occurs, the NMI handler checks to see if there is a callback registered for the cause of the interrupt and if so calls the registered callback function.

External and Peripheral Interrupts

User configurable interrupts begin with slot 16. These may be external, or peripheral generated interrupts.

Although the number of available slots for the NVIC interrupt vector table may seem small, the BSP defines up to 512 events that are capable of generating an interrupt. By using Event Mapping, the BSP maps user-enabled events to NVIC interrupts. For an RA6M3 MCU, only 96 of these events may be active at any one time, but the user has flexibility by choosing which events generate the active event.

By allowing the user to select only the events they are interested in as interrupt sources, we are able to provide an interrupt service routine that is fast and event specific.

For example, on other microcontrollers a standard NVIC interrupt vector table might contain a single vector entry for the SCI0 (Serial Communications Interface) peripheral. The interrupt service routine for this would have to check a status register for the 'real' source of the interrupt. In the RA implementation there is a vector entry for each of the SCI0 events that we are interested in.

BSP Weak Symbols

You might wonder how the BSP is able to place ISR addresses in the NVIC table without the user having explicitly defined one. All that is required by the BSP is that the interrupt event be given a priority.

This is accomplished through the use of the 'weak' attribute. The weak attribute causes the declaration to be emitted as a weak symbol rather than a global. A weak symbol is one that can be overridden by an accompanying strong reference with the same name. When the BSP declares a function as weak, user code can define the same function and it will be used in place of the BSP function. By defining all possible interrupt sources as weak, the vector table can be built at compile time and any user declarations (strong references) will be used at runtime.

Weak symbols are supported for ELF targets and also for a.out targets when using the GNU assembler and linker.

Note that in CMSIS system.c, there is also a weak definition (and a function body) for the Warm Start callback function R_BSP_WarmStart(). Because this function is defined in the same file as the weak declaration, it will be called as the 'default' implementation. The function may be overridden by the user by copying the body into their user application and modifying it as necessary. The linker identifies this as the 'strong' reference and uses it.

Warm Start Callbacks

As the BSP is in the process of bringing up the board out of reset, there are three points where the user can request a callback. These are defined as the 'Pre Clock Init', 'Post Clock Init' and 'Post C' warm start callbacks.

As described above, this function is already weakly defined as R_BSP_WarmStart(), so it is a simple matter of redefining the function or copying the existing body from CMSIS system.c into the application code to get a callback. R_BSP_WarmStart() takes an event parameter of type bsp_warm_start_event_t which describes the type of warm start callback being made.

This function is not enabled/disabled and is always called for both events as part of the BSP startup. Therefore it needs a function body, which will not be called if the user is overriding it. The function body is located in system.c. To use this function just copy this function into your own code and modify it to meet your needs.

Heap Allocation

The relatively low amount of on-chip SRAM available and lack of memory protection in an MCU means that heap use must be very carefully controlled to avoid memory leaks, overruns and attempted overallocation. Further, many RTOSes provide their own dynamic memory allocation system. For these reasons the default heap size is set at 0 bytes, effectively disabling dynamic memory. If it is required for an application setting a positive value to the "Heap size (bytes)" option in the RA Common configurations on the BSP tab will allocate a heap.

Note

When using printf/sprintf (and other variants) to output floating point numbers a heap is required. A minimum size of 0x1000 (4096) bytes is recommended when starting development in this case.

Error Logging

When error logging is enabled, the error logging function can be redefined on the command line by defining FSP_ERROR_LOG(err) to the desired function call. The default function implementation is FSP_ERROR_LOG(err)=fsp_error_log(err, **FILE**, **LINE**). This implementation uses the predefined macros **FILE** and **LINE** to help identify the location where the error occurred. Removing the line from the function call can reduce code size when error logging is enabled. Some compilers may support other predefined macros like **FUNCTION**, which could be helpful for customizing the error logger.

Register Protection

The BSP register protection functions utilize reference counters to ensure that an application which has specified a certain register and subsequently calls another function doesn't have its register protection settings inadvertently modified.

Each time RegisterProtectDisable() is called, the respective reference counter is incremented.

Each time RegisterProtectEnable() is called, the respective reference counter is decremented.

Both functions will only modify the protection state if their reference counter is zero.

```
/* Enable writing to protected CGC registers */
R_BSP_RegisterProtectDisable(BSP_REG_PROTECT_CGC);
/* Insert code to modify protected CGC registers. */
/* Disable writing to protected CGC registers */
R_BSP_RegisterProtectEnable(BSP_REG_PROTECT_CGC);
```

ID Codes

The ID code is 16 byte value that can be used to protect the MCU from being connected to a debugger or from connecting in Serial Boot Mode. There are different settings that can be set for the ID code; please refer to the hardware manual for your device for available options.

Software Delay

Implements a blocking software delay. A delay can be specified in microseconds, milliseconds or seconds. The delay is implemented based on the system clock rate.

```
 /* Delay at least 1 second. Depending on the number of wait states required for the
region of memory
  * that the software_delay_loop has been linked in this could take longer. The
default is 4 cycles per loop.
  * This can be modified by redefining DELAY_LOOP_CYCLES. BSP_DELAY_UNITS_SECONDS,
BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS,
  * and BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS can all be used with R_BSP_SoftwareDelay. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_SECONDS);
```

Critical Section Macors

Implements a critical section. Some MCUs (MCUs with the BASEPRI register) support allowing high priority interrupts to execute during critical sections. On these MCUs, interrupts with priority less than or equal to BSP_CFG_IRQ_MASK_LEVEL_FOR_CRITICAL_SECTION are not serviced in critical sections. Interrupts with higher priority than BSP_CFG_IRQ_MASK_LEVEL_FOR_CRITICAL_SECTION still execute in critical sections.

```
    FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_DEFINE;
 /* Store the current interrupt posture. */
 FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_ENTER;
 /* Interrupts cannot run in this section unless their priority is less than
BSP_CFG_IRQ_MASK_LEVEL_FOR_CRITICAL_SECTION. */
 /* Restore saved interrupt posture. */
 FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_EXIT;
```

Board Specific Features

The BSP will call the board's initialization function (bsp_init) which can initialize board specific features. Possible board features are listed below.

Board Feature	Description
SDRAM Support	The BSP will initialize SDRAM if the board supports it
QSPI Support	The BSP will initialize QSPI if the board supports it and put it into ROM mode. Use the R_QSPI module to write and erase the QSPI chip.

Configuration

The BSP is heavily data driven with most features and functionality being configured based on the content from configuration files. Configuration files represent the settings specified by the user and are generated by the RA Configuration tool when the Generate Project Content button is clicked.

Build Time Configurations for fsp_common

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/bsp/bsp_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Main stack size (bytes)	Value must be an integer multiple of 8 and between 8 and 0xFFFFFFFF	0x400	Set the size of the main program stack. NOTE: This entry is for the main stack. When using an RTOS, thread stacks can be configured in the properties for each thread.
Heap size (bytes)	Value must be 0 or an integer multiple of 8 between 8 and 0xFFFFFFFF.	0	The main heap is disabled by default. Set the heap size to a positive integer divisible by 8 to enable it. A minimum of 4K (0x1000) is recommended if standard library functions are to be used.
MCU Vcc (mV)	Value must between 0 and 5500 (5.5V)	3300	Some peripherals require different settings based on the supplied voltage. Entering Vcc here (in mV) allows the relevant driver modules to configure the associated peripherals accordingly.
Parameter checking	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	When enabled, parameter checking for the BSP is turned on. In addition, any modules whose parameter checking configuration is set to 'Default (BSP)' will perform parameter checking as well.

Assert Failures	• Return FSP_ERR_ASSERTION • Call fsp_error_log then Return FSP_ERR_ASSERTION • Use assert() to Halt Execution • Disable checks that would return FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Return FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Define the behavior of the FSP_ASSERT() macro.
Error Log	• No Error Log • Errors Logged via fsp_error_log	No Error Log	Specify error logging behavior.
ID Code Mode	• Unlocked (Ignore ID) • Locked with All Erase support • Locked	Unlocked (Ignore ID)	When set to 'Locked with All Erase support', the ID Code must be set in the debugger to read or write data to the MCU, but the All Erase command is still accepted regardless. When set to 'Locked', all erase/download/debug access is disabled unless the ID Code is provided.
ID Code (32 Hex Characters)	Value must be a 32 character long hex string	FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF	Set the ID Code for locking debug access. This setting is only used when the ID Code Mode is not set to Unlocked.
Soft Reset	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	Support for soft reset. If disabled, registers are assumed to be set to their default value during startup.
Main Oscillator Populated	• Populated • Not Populated	Populated	Select whether or not there is a main oscillator (XTAL) on the board. This setting can be overridden in board_cfg.h.
PFS Protect	• Disabled • Enabled	Enabled	Keep the PFS registers locked when they are not being modified. If

			disabled they will be unlocked during startup.
Main Oscillator Wait Time	• 0.25 us • 128 us • 256 us • 512 us • 1024 us • 2048 us • 4096 us • 8192 us • 16384 us • 32768 us	32768 us	Number of cycles to wait for the main oscillator clock to stabilize. This setting can be overridden in board_cfg.h
Main Oscillator Clock Source	• External Oscillator • Crystal or Resonator	Crystal or Resonator	Select the main oscillator clock source. This setting can be overridden in board_cfg.h
Subclock Populated	• Populated • Not Populated	Populated	Select whether or not there is a subclock crystal on the board. This setting can be overridden in board_cfg.h.
Subclock Drive	• Middle (4.4pf) • Standard (12.5pf)	Standard (12.5pf)	Select the subclock oscillator drive capacitance. This setting can be overridden in board_cfg.h
Subclock Stabilization Time (ms)	Value must between 0 and 10000	1000	Select the subclock oscillator stabilization time. This is only used in the startup code if the subclock is selected as the system clock on the Clocks tab. This setting can be overridden in board_cfg.h

Modules

	RA2A1
	RA4M1
	RA6M1
	RA6M2

	RA6M3

Macros

#define	BSP_IRQ_DISABLED
#define	FSP_RETURN(err)
#define	FSP_ERROR_LOG(err)
#define	FSP_ASSERT(a)
#define	FSP_ERROR_RETURN(a, err)
#define	FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_ENTER
#define	FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_EXIT
#define	FSP_INVALID_VECTOR
#define	BSP_STACK_ALIGNMENT
#define	R_BSP_MODULE_START(ip, channel)
#define	R_BSP_MODULE_STOP(ip, channel)

Enumerations

enum	fsp_ip_t
enum	fsp_signal_t
enum	bsp_warm_start_event_t
enum	bsp_delay_units_t
enum	bsp_grp_irq_t
enum	bsp_reg_protect_t

Variables

uint32_t	SystemCoreClock
const fsp_version_t	g_bsp_version Default initialization function. More...

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ BSP_IRQ_DISABLED

#define BSP_IRQ_DISABLED
Used to signify that an ELC event is not able to be used as an interrupt.

◆ FSP_RETURN

#define FSP_RETURN (err)
Macro to log and return error without an assertion.

◆ FSP_ERROR_LOG

#define FSP_ERROR_LOG (err)
This function is called before returning an error code. To stop on a runtime error, define fsp_error_log in user code and do required debugging (breakpoints, stack dump, etc) in this function.

◆ FSP_ASSERT

#define FSP_ASSERT (a)
Default assertion calls FSP_ERROR_RETURN if condition "a" is false. Used to identify incorrect use of API's in FSP functions.

◆ FSP_ERROR_RETURN

#define FSP_ERROR_RETURN (a, err)
All FSP error codes are returned using this macro. Calls FSP_ERROR_LOG function if condition "a" is false. Used to identify runtime errors in FSP functions.

◆ FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_ENTER

#define FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_ENTER
This macro temporarily saves the current interrupt state and disables interrupts.

◆ FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_EXIT

#define FSP_CRITICAL_SECTION_EXIT
This macro restores the previously saved interrupt state, reenabling interrupts.

◆ FSP_INVALID_VECTOR

```
#define FSP_INVALID_VECTOR
```

Used to signify that the requested IRQ vector is not defined in this system.

◆ BSP_STACK_ALIGNMENT

```
#define BSP_STACK_ALIGNMENT
```

Stacks (and heap) must be sized and aligned to an integer multiple of this number.

◆ R_BSP_MODULE_START

```
#define R_BSP_MODULE_START ( ip, channel  )
```

Cancels the module stop state.

Parameters

ip	fsp_ip_t enum value for the module to be stopped
channel	The channel. Use channel 0 for modules without channels.

◆ R_BSP_MODULE_STOP

```
#define R_BSP_MODULE_STOP ( ip, channel  )
```

Enables the module stop state.

Parameters

ip	fsp_ip_t enum value for the module to be stopped
channel	The channel. Use channel 0 for modules without channels.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ fsp_ip_t

enum fsp_ip_t	
Available modules.	
Enumerator	
FSP_IP_CFLASH	Code Flash.
FSP_IP_DFLASH	Data Flash.
FSP_IP_RAM	RAM.
FSP_IP_LVD	Low Voltage Detection.
FSP_IP_CGC	Clock Generation Circuit.
FSP_IP_LPM	Low Power Modes.
FSP_IP_FCU	Flash Control Unit.
FSP_IP_ICU	Interrupt Control Unit.
FSP_IP_DMAC	DMA Controller.
FSP_IP_DTC	Data Transfer Controller.
FSP_IP_IOPORT	I/O Ports.
FSP_IP_PFS	Pin Function Select.
FSP_IP_ELC	Event Link Controller.
FSP_IP_MPU	Memory Protection Unit.
FSP_IP_MSTP	Module Stop.
FSP_IP_MMF	Memory Mirror Function.
FSP_IP_KEY	Key Interrupt Function.
FSP_IP_CAC	Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit.
FSP_IP_DOC	Data Operation Circuit.
FSP_IP_CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check Calculator.
FSP_IP_SCI	Serial Communications Interface.

FSP_IP_IIC	I2C Bus Interface.
FSP_IP_SPI	Serial Peripheral Interface.
FSP_IP_CTSU	Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit.
FSP_IP_SCE	Secure Cryptographic Engine.
FSP_IP_SLCDC	Segment LCD Controller.
FSP_IP_AES	Advanced Encryption Standard.
FSP_IP_TRNG	True Random Number Generator.
FSP_IP_FCACHE	Flash Cache.
FSP_IP_SRAM	SRAM.
FSP_IP_ADC	A/D Converter.
FSP_IP_DAC	12-Bit D/A Converter
FSP_IP_TSN	Temperature Sensor.
FSP_IP_DAAD	D/A A/D Synchronous Unit.
FSP_IP_ACMPHS	High Speed Analog Comparator.
FSP_IP_ACMPLP	Low Power Analog Comparator.
FSP_IP_OPAMP	Operational Amplifier.
FSP_IP_SDADC	Sigma Delta A/D Converter.
FSP_IP_RTC	Real Time Clock.
FSP_IP_WDT	Watch Dog Timer.
FSP_IP_IWDT	Independent Watch Dog Timer.
FSP_IP_GPT	General PWM Timer.
FSP_IP_POEG	Port Output Enable for GPT.
FSP_IP_OPS	Output Phase Switch.
FSP_IP_AGT	Asynchronous General-Purpose Timer.

FSP_IP_CAN	Controller Area Network.
FSP_IP_IRDA	Infrared Data Association.
FSP_IP_QSPI	Quad Serial Peripheral Interface.
FSP_IP_USBFS	USB Full Speed.
FSP_IP_SDHI	SD/MMC Host Interface.
FSP_IP_SRC	Sampling Rate Converter.
FSP_IP_SSI	Serial Sound Interface.
FSP_IP_DALI	Digital Addressable Lighting Interface.
FSP_IP_ETHER	Ethernet MAC Controller.
FSP_IP_EDMAC	Ethernet DMA Controller.
FSP_IP_EPTPC	Ethernet PTP Controller.
FSP_IP_PDC	Parallel Data Capture Unit.
FSP_IP_GLCDC	Graphics LCD Controller.
FSP_IP_DRW	2D Drawing Engine
FSP_IP_JPEG	JPEG.
FSP_IP_DAC8	8-Bit D/A Converter
FSP_IP_USBHS	USB High Speed.

◆ fsp_signal_t

enum fsp_signal_t

Signals that can be mapped to an interrupt.

Enumerator	
FSP_SIGNAL_ADC_COMPARE_MATCH	ADC COMPARE MATCH.
FSP_SIGNAL_ADC_COMPARE_MISMATCH	ADC COMPARE MISMATCH.
FSP_SIGNAL_ADC_SCAN_END	ADC SCAN END.
FSP_SIGNAL_ADC_SCAN_END_B	ADC SCAN END B.
FSP_SIGNAL_ADC_WINDOW_A	ADC WINDOW A.
FSP_SIGNAL_ADC_WINDOW_B	ADC WINDOW B.
FSP_SIGNAL_AES_RDREQ	AES RDREQ.
FSP_SIGNAL_AES_WRREQ	AES WRREQ.
FSP_SIGNAL_AGT_COMPARE_A	AGT COMPARE A.
FSP_SIGNAL_AGT_COMPARE_B	AGT COMPARE B.
FSP_SIGNAL_AGT_INT	AGT INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAC_FREQUENCY_ERROR	CAC FREQUENCY ERROR.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAC_MEASUREMENT_END	CAC MEASUREMENT END.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAC_OVERFLOW	CAC OVERFLOW.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAN_ERROR	CAN ERROR.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAN_FIFO_RX	CAN FIFO RX.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAN_FIFO_TX	CAN FIFO TX.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAN_MAILBOX_RX	CAN MAILBOX RX.
FSP_SIGNAL_CAN_MAILBOX_TX	CAN MAILBOX TX.
FSP_SIGNAL_CGC_MOSC_STOP	CGC MOSC STOP.
FSP_SIGNAL_LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST	LPM SNOOZE REQUEST.

FSP_SIGNAL_LVD_LVD1	LVD LVD1.
FSP_SIGNAL_LVD_LVD2	LVD LVD2.
FSP_SIGNAL_VBATT_LVD	VBATT LVD.
FSP_SIGNAL_LVD_VBATT	LVD VBATT.
FSP_SIGNAL_ACMPHS_INT	ACMPHS INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_ACMPLP_INT	ACMPLP INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_CTSU_END	CTSU END.
FSP_SIGNAL_CTSU_READ	CTSU READ.
FSP_SIGNAL_CTSU_WRITE	CTSU WRITE.
FSP_SIGNAL_DALI_DEI	DALI DEI.
FSP_SIGNAL_DALI_CLI	DALI CLI.
FSP_SIGNAL_DALI_SDI	DALI SDI.
FSP_SIGNAL_DALI_BPI	DALI BPI.
FSP_SIGNAL_DALI_FEI	DALI FEI.
FSP_SIGNAL_DALI_SDI_OR_BPI	DALI SDI OR BPI.
FSP_SIGNAL_DMAC_INT	DMAC INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_DOC_INT	DOC INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_DRW_INT	DRW INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_DTC_COMPLETE	DTC COMPLETE.
FSP_SIGNAL_DTC_END	DTC END.
FSP_SIGNAL_EDMAC_EINT	EDMAC EINT.
FSP_SIGNAL_ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_0	ELC SOFTWARE EVENT 0.
FSP_SIGNAL_ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_1	ELC SOFTWARE EVENT 1.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_IPLS	EPTPC IPLS.

FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_MINT	EPTPC MINT.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_PINT	EPTPC PINT.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER0_FALL	EPTPC TIMER0 FALL.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER0_RISE	EPTPC TIMER0 RISE.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER1_FALL	EPTPC TIMER1 FALL.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER1_RISE	EPTPC TIMER1 RISE.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER2_FALL	EPTPC TIMER2 FALL.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER2_RISE	EPTPC TIMER2 RISE.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER3_FALL	EPTPC TIMER3 FALL.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER3_RISE	EPTPC TIMER3 RISE.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER4_FALL	EPTPC TIMER4 FALL.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER4_RISE	EPTPC TIMER4 RISE.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER5_FALL	EPTPC TIMER5 FALL.
FSP_SIGNAL_EPTPC_TIMER5_RISE	EPTPC TIMER5 RISE.
FSP_SIGNAL_FCU_FIFERR	FCU FIFERR.
FSP_SIGNAL_FCU_FRDYI	FCU FRDYI.
FSP_SIGNAL_GLCDC_LINE_DETECT	GLCDC LINE DETECT.
FSP_SIGNAL_GLCDC_UNDERFLOW_1	GLCDC UNDERFLOW 1.
FSP_SIGNAL_GLCDC_UNDERFLOW_2	GLCDC UNDERFLOW 2.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_CAPTURE_COMPARE_A	GPT CAPTURE COMPARE A.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_CAPTURE_COMPARE_B	GPT CAPTURE COMPARE B.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_COMPARE_C	GPT COMPARE C.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_COMPARE_D	GPT COMPARE D.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_COMPARE_E	GPT COMPARE E.

FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_COMPARE_F	GPT COMPARE F.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_COUNTER_OVERFLOW	GPT COUNTER OVERFLOW.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_COUNTER_UNDERFLOW	GPT COUNTER UNDERFLOW.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_AD_TRIG_A	GPT AD TRIG A.
FSP_SIGNAL_GPT_AD_TRIG_B	GPT AD TRIG B.
FSP_SIGNAL_OPS_UVW_EDGE	OPS UVW EDGE.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ0	ICU IRQ0.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ1	ICU IRQ1.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ2	ICU IRQ2.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ3	ICU IRQ3.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ4	ICU IRQ4.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ5	ICU IRQ5.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ6	ICU IRQ6.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ7	ICU IRQ7.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ8	ICU IRQ8.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ9	ICU IRQ9.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ10	ICU IRQ10.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ11	ICU IRQ11.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ12	ICU IRQ12.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ13	ICU IRQ13.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ14	ICU IRQ14.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_IRQ15	ICU IRQ15.
FSP_SIGNAL_ICU_SNOOZE_CANCEL	ICU SNOOZE CANCEL.
FSP_SIGNAL_IIC_ERI	IIC ERI.

FSP_SIGNAL_IIC_RXI	IIC RXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_IIC_TEI	IIC TEI.
FSP_SIGNAL_IIC_TXI	IIC TXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_IIC_WUI	IIC WUI.
FSP_SIGNAL_IOPORT_EVENT_1	IOPORT EVENT 1.
FSP_SIGNAL_IOPORT_EVENT_2	IOPORT EVENT 2.
FSP_SIGNAL_IOPORT_EVENT_3	IOPORT EVENT 3.
FSP_SIGNAL_IOPORT_EVENT_4	IOPORT EVENT 4.
FSP_SIGNAL_IWDT_UNDERFLOW	IWDT UNDERFLOW.
FSP_SIGNAL_JPEG_JDTI	JPEG JDTI.
FSP_SIGNAL_JPEG_JEDI	JPEG JEDI.
FSP_SIGNAL_KEY_INT	KEY INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_PDC_FRAME_END	PDC FRAME END.
FSP_SIGNAL_PDC_INT	PDC INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_PDC_RECEIVE_DATA_READY	PDC RECEIVE DATA READY.
FSP_SIGNAL_POEG_EVENT	POEG EVENT.
FSP_SIGNAL_QSPI_INT	QSPI INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_RTC_ALARM	RTC ALARM.
FSP_SIGNAL_RTC_PERIOD	RTC PERIOD.
FSP_SIGNAL_RTC_CARRY	RTC CARRY.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_INTEGRATE_RDRDY	SCE INTEGRATE RDRDY.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_INTEGRATE_WRRDY	SCE INTEGRATE WRRDY.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_LONG_PLG	SCE LONG PLG.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_PROC_BUSY	SCE PROC BUSY.

FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_RDRDY_0	SCE RDRDY 0.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_RDRDY_1	SCE RDRDY 1.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_ROMOK	SCE ROMOK.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_TEST_BUSY	SCE TEST BUSY.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_WRRDY_0	SCE WRRDY 0.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_WRRDY_1	SCE WRRDY 1.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCE_WRRDY_4	SCE WRRDY 4.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCI_AM	SCI AM.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCI_ERI	SCI ERI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCI_RXI	SCI RXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCI_RXI_OR_ERI	SCI RXI OR ERI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCI_TEI	SCI TEI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SCI_TXI	SCI TXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SDADC_ADI	SDADC ADI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SDADC_SCANEND	SDADC SCANEND.
FSP_SIGNAL_SDADC_CALIEND	SDADC CALIEND.
FSP_SIGNAL_SDHIMMC_ACCS	SDHIMMC ACCS.
FSP_SIGNAL_SDHIMMC_CARD	SDHIMMC CARD.
FSP_SIGNAL_SDHIMMC_DMA_REQ	SDHIMMC DMA REQ.
FSP_SIGNAL_SDHIMMC_SDIO	SDHIMMC SDIO.
FSP_SIGNAL_SPI_ERI	SPI ERI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SPI_IDLE	SPI IDLE.
FSP_SIGNAL_SPI_RXI	SPI RXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SPI_TEI	SPI TEI.

FSP_SIGNAL_SPI_TXI	SPI TXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SRC_CONVERSION_END	SRC CONVERSION END.
FSP_SIGNAL_SRC_INPUT_FIFO_EMPTY	SRC INPUT FIFO EMPTY.
FSP_SIGNAL_SRC_OUTPUT_FIFO_FULL	SRC OUTPUT FIFO FULL.
FSP_SIGNAL_SRC_OUTPUT_FIFO_OVERFLOW	SRC OUTPUT FIFO OVERFLOW.
FSP_SIGNAL_SRC_OUTPUT_FIFO_UNDERFLOW	SRC OUTPUT FIFO UNDERFLOW.
FSP_SIGNAL_SSI_INT	SSI INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_SSI_RXI	SSI RXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SSI_TXI	SSI TXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_SSI_TXI_RXI	SSI TXI RXI.
FSP_SIGNAL_TRNG_RDREQ	TRNG RDREQ.
FSP_SIGNAL_USB_FIFO_0	USB FIFO 0.
FSP_SIGNAL_USB_FIFO_1	USB FIFO 1.
FSP_SIGNAL_USB_INT	USB INT.
FSP_SIGNAL_USB_RESUME	USB RESUME.
FSP_SIGNAL_USB_USB_INT_RESUME	USB USB INT RESUME.
FSP_SIGNAL_WDT_UNDERFLOW	WDT UNDERFLOW.

◆ bsp_warm_start_event_t

enum bsp_warm_start_event_t

Different warm start entry locations in the BSP.

Enumerator	
BSP_WARM_START_RESET	Called almost immediately after reset. No C runtime environment, clocks, or IRQs.
BSP_WARM_START_POST_CLOCK	Called after clock initialization. No C runtime environment, or IRQs.
BSP_WARM_START_POST_C	Called after clocks and C runtime environment have been setup.

◆ bsp_delay_units_t

enum bsp_delay_units_t

Available delay units for R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(). These are ultimately used to calculate a total # of microseconds

Enumerator	
BSP_DELAY_UNITS_SECONDS	Requested delay amount is in seconds.
BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS	Requested delay amount is in milliseconds.
BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS	Requested delay amount is in microseconds.

◆ bsp_grp_irq_t

enum bsp_grp_irq_t	
Which interrupts can have callbacks registered.	
Enumerator	
BSP_GRP_IRQ_IWDT_ERROR	IWDT underflow/refresh error has occurred.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_WDT_ERROR	WDT underflow/refresh error has occurred.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_LVD1	Voltage monitoring 1 interrupt.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_LVD2	Voltage monitoring 2 interrupt.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_VBATT	VBATT monitor interrupt.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_OSC_STOP_DETECT	Oscillation stop is detected.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_NMI_PIN	NMI Pin interrupt.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_RAM_PARITY	RAM Parity Error.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_RAM_ECC	RAM ECC Error.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_MPU_BUS_SLAVE	MPU Bus Slave Error.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_MPU_BUS_MASTER	MPU Bus Master Error.
BSP_GRP_IRQ_MPU_STACK	MPU Stack Error.

◆ bsp_reg_protect_t

enum bsp_reg_protect_t

The different types of registers that can be protected.

Enumerator	
BSP_REG_PROTECT_CGC	Enables writing to the registers related to the clock generation circuit.
BSP_REG_PROTECT_OM_LPC_BATT	Enables writing to the registers related to operating modes, low power consumption, and battery backup function.
BSP_REG_PROTECT_LVD	Enables writing to the registers related to the LVD:LVCMPCR, LVDLVLR, LVD1CR0, LVD1CR1, LVD1SR, LVD2CR0, LVD2CR1, LVD2SR.

Function Documentation

◆ R_FSP_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_FSP_VersionGet (fsp_pack_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get the FSP version based on compile time macros.

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Memory address to return version information to.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information stored.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

◆ Reset_Handler()

void Reset_Handler (void)

MCU starts executing here out of reset. Main stack pointer is setup already.

◆ Default_Handler()

void Default_Handler (void)

Default exception handler.

◆ SystemInit()

void SystemInit (void)

Initialize the MCU and the runtime environment.

◆ R_BSP_WarmStart()

void R_BSP_WarmStart (bsp_warm_start_event_t *event*)

This function is called at various points during the startup process. This function is declared as a weak symbol higher up in this file because it is meant to be overridden by a user implemented version. One of the main uses for this function is to call functional safety code during the startup process. To use this function just copy this function into your own code and modify it to meet your needs.

Parameters

[in]	event	Where at in the start up process the code is currently at

◆ R_BSP_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_BSP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Get the BSP version based on compile time macros.

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Memory address to return version information to.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information stored.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

◆ R_BSP_SoftwareDelay()

void R_BSP_SoftwareDelay (uint32_t *delay*, bsp_delay_units_t *units*)

Delay the at least specified duration in units and return.

Parameters

[in]	delay	The number of 'units' to delay.
[in]	units	The 'base' (bsp_delay_units_t) for the units specified. Valid values are: BSP_DELAY_UNITS_SECONDS, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS. For example: At 1 MHz one cycle takes 1 microsecond (.000001 seconds). At 12 MHz one cycle takes 1/12 microsecond or 83 nanoseconds. Therefore one run through bsp_prv_software_delay_loop() takes: ~ (83 * BSP_DELAY_LOOP_CYCLES) or 332 ns. A delay of 2 us therefore requires 2000ns/332ns or 6 loops.

The 'theoretical' maximum delay that may be obtained is determined by a full 32 bit loop count and the system clock rate. @120MHz: ((0xFFFFFFFF loops * 4 cycles /loop) / 120000000) = 143 seconds. @32MHz: ((0xFFFFFFFF loops * 4 cycles /loop) / 32000000) = 536 seconds

Note that requests for very large delays will be affected by rounding in the calculations and the actual delay achieved may be slightly longer. @32 MHz, for example, a request for 532 seconds will be closer to 536 seconds.

Note also that if the calculations result in a loop_cnt of zero, the bsp_prv_software_delay_loop() function is not called at all. In this case the requested delay is too small (nanoseconds) to be carried out by the loop itself, and the overhead associated with executing the code to just get to this point has certainly satisfied the requested delay.

Note

This function calls bsp_cpu_clock_get() which ultimately calls R_CGC_SystemClockFreqGet() and therefore requires that the BSP has already initialized the CGC (which it does as part of the Sysinit). Care should be taken to ensure this remains the case if in the future this function were to be called as part of the BSP initialization.

◆ R_BSP_GroupIrqWrite()

fsp_err_t R_BSP_GroupIrqWrite (bsp_grp_irq_t *irq*, void(*)(bsp_grp_irq_t irq) *p_callback*)

Register a callback function for supported interrupts. If NULL is passed for the callback argument then any previously registered callbacks are unregistered.

Parameters

[in]	irq	Interrupt for which to register a callback.
[in]	p_callback	Pointer to function to call when interrupt occurs.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Callback registered
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Callback pointer is NULL

◆ NMI_Handler()

void NMI_Handler (void)

Non-maskable interrupt handler. This exception is defined by the BSP, unlike other system exceptions, because there are many sources that map to the NMI exception.

◆ R_BSP_RegisterProtectEnable()

void R_BSP_RegisterProtectEnable (bsp_reg_protect_t *regs_to_protect*)

Enable register protection. Registers that are protected cannot be written to. Register protection is enabled by using the Protect Register (PRCR) and the MPC's Write-Protect Register (PWPR).

Parameters

[in]	regs_to_protect	Registers which have write protection enabled.

◆ R_BSP_RegisterProtectDisable()

void R_BSP_RegisterProtectDisable (bsp_reg_protect_t *regs_to_unprotect*)

Disable register protection. Registers that are protected cannot be written to. Register protection is disabled by using the Protect Register (PRCR) and the MPC's Write-Protect Register (PWPR).

Parameters

[in]	regs_to_unprotect	Registers which have write protection disabled.

Variable Documentation

◆ SystemCoreClock

uint32_t SystemCoreClock

System Clock Frequency (Core Clock)

◆ g_bsp_version

const fsp_version_t g_bsp_version

Default initialization function.

Version data structure used by error logger macro.

5.1.2.1 RA2A1

BSP » MCU Board Support Package

Detailed Description

Build Time Configurations for ra2a1_fsp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/bsp/bsp_mcu_family_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Start Mode	• IWDT is Disabled • IWDT is automatically	IWDT is Disabled	

	activated after a reset (Autostart mode)	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Timeout Period	• 128 cycles • 512 cycles • 1024 cycles • 2048 cycles	2048 cycles
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Dedicated Clock Frequency Divisor	• 1 • 16 • 32 • 64 • 128 • 256	128
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Reset Interrupt Request Select	• NMI request or interrupt request is enabled • Reset is enabled	Reset is enabled
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues • Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby	Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Start Mode Select	• Automatically activate WDT after a reset (auto-start mode) • Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)	Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Timeout Period	• 1024 cycles • 4096 cycles • 8192 cycles • 16384 cycles	16384 cycles

OFS0 register settings > WDT > Clock Frequency Division Ratio	• 4 • 64 • 128 • 512 • 2048 • 8192	128	
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)	
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)	
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Reset Interrupt Request	• NMI • Reset	Reset	
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues • Stop counting when entering Sleep mode	Stop counting when entering Sleep mode	
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start	• Voltage monitor 0 reset is enabled after reset • Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset	
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Level	• 3.84 V • 2.82 V • 2.51 V • 1.90 V • 1.70 V	1.90 V	
OFS1 register settings > HOCO Oscillation Enable	HOCO oscillation is enabled after reset	HOCO oscillation is enabled after reset	HOCO must be enabled out of reset because the MCU starts up in low voltage mode and the HOCO must be operating in low voltage mode.
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > PC0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and	0x000FFFFC	

	0x000FFFFC (ROM) or between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC (RAM)	
MPU > PC0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x000FFFFF (ROM) or between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF (RAM)	0x000FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > PC1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x000FFFFC (ROM) or between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC (RAM)	0x000FFFFC
MPU > PC1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x000FFFFF (ROM) or between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF (RAM)	0x000FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x000FFFFC	0x000FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x000FFFFF	0x000FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC	0x200FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF	0x200FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 2	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region	Value must be an	0x407FFFFC

2 Start	integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC		
MPU > Memory Region 2 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x407FFFFF	
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 3	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > Memory Region 3 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x400DFFFC	
MPU > Memory Region 3 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x400DFFFF	
Use Low Voltage Mode	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Use the low voltage mode. This limits the ICLK operating frequency to 4 MHz and requires all clock dividers to be at least 4 when oscillation stop detection is used.

Enumerations

enum	elc_event_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ elc_event_t

enum elc_event_t

Sources of event signals to be linked to other peripherals or the CPU

Note

This list may change based on based on the device.

5.1.2.2 RA4M1

BSP » MCU Board Support Package

Detailed Description

Build Time Configurations for ra4m1_fsp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/bsp/bsp_mcu_family_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Start Mode	• IWDT is Disabled • IWDT is automatically activated after a reset (Autostart mode)	IWDT is Disabled	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Timeout Period	• 128 cycles • 512 cycles • 1024 cycles • 2048 cycles	2048 cycles	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Dedicated Clock Frequency Divisor	• 1 • 16 • 32 • 64 • 128 • 256	128	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Reset Interrupt Request Select	• NMI request or interrupt request is enabled • Reset is enabled	Reset is enabled	

OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues • Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby	Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Start Mode Select	• Automatically activate WDT after a reset (auto-start mode) • Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)	Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Timeout Period	• 1024 cycles • 4096 cycles • 8192 cycles • 16384 cycles	16384 cycles
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Clock Frequency Division Ratio	• 4 • 64 • 128 • 512 • 2048 • 8192	128
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Reset Interrupt Request	• NMI • Reset	Reset
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues • Stop counting when entering Sleep mode	Stop counting when entering Sleep mode
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start	• Voltage monitor 0 reset is enabled after reset • Voltage monitor 0 reset is	Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset

	disabled after reset		
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Level	• 3.84 V • 2.82 V • 2.51 V • 1.90 V • 1.70 V	1.90 V	
OFS1 register settings > HOCO Oscillation Enable	HOCO oscillation is enabled after reset	HOCO oscillation is enabled after reset	HOCO must be enabled out of reset because the MCU starts up in low voltage mode and the HOCO must be operating in low voltage mode.
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > PC0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x00FFFFFC (ROM) or between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC (RAM)	0x00FFFFFC	
MPU > PC0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x00FFFFFF (ROM) or between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF (RAM)	0x00FFFFFF	
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > PC1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x00FFFFFC (ROM) or between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC (RAM)	0x00FFFFFC	
MPU > PC1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x00FFFFFF (ROM) or between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF (RAM)	0x00FFFFFF	
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > Memory Region 0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x00FFFFFC	0x00FFFFFC	
MPU > Memory Region 0 End	Value must be an integer between	0x00FFFFFF	

	0x00000003 and 0x00FFFFFF		
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > Memory Region 1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC	0x200FFFFC	
MPU > Memory Region 1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF	0x200FFFFF	
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 2	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > Memory Region 2 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x407FFFFC	
MPU > Memory Region 2 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x407FFFFF	
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 3	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	
MPU > Memory Region 3 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x400DFFFC	
MPU > Memory Region 3 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x400DFFFF	
Use Low Voltage Mode	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Use the low voltage mode. This limits the ICLK operating frequency to 4 MHz and requires all clock dividers to be at least

4.

Enumerations

enum	elc_event_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ elc_event_t

enum elc_event_t

Sources of event signals to be linked to other peripherals or the CPU

Note

This list may change based on based on the device.

5.1.2.3 RA6M1

BSP » MCU Board Support Package

Detailed Description

Build Time Configurations for ra6m1_fsp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/bsp/bsp_mcu_family_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Start Mode	• IWDT is Disabled • IWDT is automatically activated after a reset (Autostart mode)	IWDT is Disabled	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Timeout Period	• 128 cycles • 512 cycles • 1024 cycles • 2048 cycles	2048 cycles	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Dedicated Clock Frequency Divisor	• 1 • 16 • 32 • 64 • 128 • 256	128	

OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Reset Interrupt Request Select	• NMI request or interrupt request is enabled • Reset is enabled	Reset is enabled
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues (Note: Device will not enter Deep Standby Mode when selected. Device will enter Software Standby Mode) • Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby	Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Start Mode Select	• Automatically activate WDT after a reset (auto-start mode) • Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)	Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Timeout Period	• 1024 cycles • 4096 cycles • 8192 cycles • 16384 cycles	16384 cycles
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Clock Frequency Division Ratio	• 4 • 64 • 128 • 512 • 2048 • 8192	128
OFS0 register settings	• 75%	0% (no window end

> WDT > Window End Position	• 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Reset Interrupt Request	• NMI • Reset	Reset
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues • Stop counting when entering Sleep mode	Stop counting when entering Sleep mode
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start	• Voltage monitor 0 reset is enabled after reset • Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Level	• 2.94 V • 2.87 V • 2.80 V	2.80 V
OFS1 register settings > HOCO Oscillation Enable	• HOCO oscillation is enabled after reset • HOCO oscillation is disabled after reset	HOCO oscillation is disabled after reset
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > PC0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0xFFFFFFFC	0xFFFFFFFC
MPU > PC0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled

MPU > PC1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0xFFFFFFFC	0xFFFFFFFC
MPU > PC1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x00FFFFFC	0x00FFFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x00FFFFFF	0x00FFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC	0x200FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF	0x200FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 2	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 2 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x407FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 2 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x407FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 3	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region	Value must be an	0x400DFFFC

3 Start	integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC		
MPU > Memory Region 3 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x400DFFFF	

Enumerations

enum	elc_event_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ elc_event_t

enum elc_event_t

Sources of event signals to be linked to other peripherals or the CPU

Note

This list may change based on based on the device.

5.1.2.4 RA6M2

BSP » MCU Board Support Package

Detailed Description

Build Time Configurations for ra6m2_fsp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/bsp/bsp_mcu_family_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Start Mode	• IWDT is Disabled • IWDT is automatically activated after a reset (Autostart mode)	IWDT is Disabled	

OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Timeout Period	• 128 cycles • 512 cycles • 1024 cycles • 2048 cycles	2048 cycles
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Dedicated Clock Frequency Divisor	• 1 • 16 • 32 • 64 • 128 • 256	128
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Reset Interrupt Request Select	• NMI request or interrupt request is enabled • Reset is enabled	Reset is enabled
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues (Note: Device will not enter Deep Standby Mode when selected. Device will enter Software Standby Mode) • Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby	Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Start Mode Select	• Automatically activate WDT after a reset (auto-start mode) • Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)	Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)
OFS0 register settings	• 1024 cycles	16384 cycles

> WDT > Timeout Period	• 4096 cycles • 8192 cycles • 16384 cycles	
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Clock Frequency Division Ratio	• 4 • 64 • 128 • 512 • 2048 • 8192	128
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Reset Interrupt Request	• NMI • Reset	Reset
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues • Stop counting when entering Sleep mode	Stop counting when entering Sleep mode
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start	• Voltage monitor 0 reset is enabled after reset • Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Level	• 2.94 V • 2.87 V • 2.80 V	2.80 V
OFS1 register settings > HOCO Oscillation Enable	• HOCO oscillation is enabled after reset • HOCO oscillation is disabled after reset	HOCO oscillation is disabled after reset
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled

MPU > PC0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0xFFFFFFFC	0xFFFFFFFC
MPU > PC0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > PC1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0xFFFFFFFC	0xFFFFFFFC
MPU > PC1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x00FFFFFC	0x00FFFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x00FFFFFF	0x00FFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC	0x200FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF	0x200FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 2	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 2 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x407FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region	Value must be an	0x407FFFFF

2 End	integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 3	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 3 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x400DFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 3 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x400DFFFF

Enumerations

enum	elc_event_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ elc_event_t

enum elc_event_t

Sources of event signals to be linked to other peripherals or the CPU

Note

This list may change based on based on the device.

5.1.2.5 RA6M3

BSP » MCU Board Support Package

Detailed Description

Build Time Configurations for ra6m3_fsp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/bsp/bsp_mcu_family_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Start Mode	• IWDT is Disabled • IWDT is automatically activated after a reset (Autostart mode)	IWDT is Disabled	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Timeout Period	• 128 cycles • 512 cycles • 1024 cycles • 2048 cycles	2048 cycles	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Dedicated Clock Frequency Divisor	• 1 • 16 • 32 • 64 • 128 • 256	128	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Reset Interrupt Request Select	• NMI request or interrupt request is enabled • Reset is enabled	Reset is enabled	
OFS0 register settings > Independent WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues (Note: Device will not enter Deep Standby Mode when selected. Device will enter Software Standby Mode) • Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby	Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze mode, or Software Standby	

OFS0 register settings > WDT > Start Mode Select	• Automatically activate WDT after a reset (auto-start mode) • Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)	Stop WDT after a reset (register-start mode)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Timeout Period	• 1024 cycles • 4096 cycles • 8192 cycles • 16384 cycles	16384 cycles
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Clock Frequency Division Ratio	• 4 • 64 • 128 • 512 • 2048 • 8192	128
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window End Position	• 75% • 50% • 25% • 0% (no window end position)	0% (no window end position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Window Start Position	• 25% • 50% • 75% • 100% (no window start position)	100% (no window start position)
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Reset Interrupt Request	• NMI • Reset	Reset
OFS0 register settings > WDT > Stop Control	• Counting continues • Stop counting when entering Sleep mode	Stop counting when entering Sleep mode
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start	• Voltage monitor 0 reset is enabled after reset • Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset is disabled after reset
OFS1 register settings > Voltage Detection 0 Level	• 2.94 V • 2.87 V • 2.80 V	2.80 V
OFS1 register settings	• HOCO	HOCO oscillation is

> HOCO Oscillation Enable	oscillation is enabled after reset • HOCO oscillation is disabled after reset	disabled after reset
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > PC0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0xFFFFFFFC	0xFFFFFFFC
MPU > PC0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable PC Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > PC1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0xFFFFFFFC	0xFFFFFFFC
MPU > PC1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 0	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 0 Start	Value must be an integer between 0 and 0x00FFFFFC	0x00FFFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 0 End	Value must be an integer between 0x00000003 and 0x00FFFFFF	0x00FFFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 1	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 1 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00000 and 0x200FFFFC	0x200FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 1 End	Value must be an integer between 0x1FF00003 and 0x200FFFFF	0x200FFFFF
MPU > Enable or	• Enabled	Disabled

disable Memory Region 2	• Disabled	
MPU > Memory Region 2 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x407FFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 2 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x407FFFFF
MPU > Enable or disable Memory Region 3	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled
MPU > Memory Region 3 Start	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0000 and 0x400DFFFC or between 0x40100000 and 0x407FFFFC	0x400DFFFC
MPU > Memory Region 3 End	Value must be an integer between 0x400C0003 and 0x400DFFFF or between 0x40100003 and 0x407FFFFF	0x400DFFFF

Enumerations

enum	elc_event_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ elc_event_t

enum elc_event_t

Sources of event signals to be linked to other peripherals or the CPU

Note
This list may change based on based on the device.

5.1.3 BSP I/O access

BSP

Functions

__STATIC_INLINE uint32_t	R_BSP_PinRead (bsp_io_port_pin_t pin)
__STATIC_INLINE void	R_BSP_PinWrite (bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t level)
__STATIC_INLINE void	R_BSP_PinAccessEnable (void)
__STATIC_INLINE void	R_BSP_PinAccessDisable (void)

Detailed Description

This module provides basic read/write access to port pins.

Enumerations

enum	bsp_io_level_t
enum	bsp_io_direction_t
enum	bsp_io_port_t
enum	bsp_io_port_pin_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ bsp_io_level_t

enum bsp_io_level_t

Levels that can be set and read for individual pins

Enumerator	
BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW	Low.
BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH	High.

◆ bsp_io_direction_t

enum bsp_io_direction_t

Direction of individual pins

Enumerator	
BSP_IO_DIRECTION_INPUT	Input.
BSP_IO_DIRECTION_OUTPUT	Output.

◆ bsp_io_port_t

enum bsp_io_port_t

Superset list of all possible IO ports.

Enumerator	
BSP_IO_PORT_00	IO port 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_01	IO port 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_02	IO port 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_03	IO port 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_04	IO port 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_05	IO port 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_06	IO port 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_07	IO port 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_08	IO port 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_09	IO port 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_10	IO port 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_11	IO port 11.

◆ bsp_io_port_pin_t

enum bsp_io_port_pin_t

Superset list of all possible IO port pins.

Enumerator	
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_00	IO port 0 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_01	IO port 0 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_02	IO port 0 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_03	IO port 0 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_04	IO port 0 pin 4.

BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_05	IO port 0 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_06	IO port 0 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_07	IO port 0 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_08	IO port 0 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_09	IO port 0 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_10	IO port 0 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_11	IO port 0 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_12	IO port 0 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_13	IO port 0 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_14	IO port 0 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_00_PIN_15	IO port 0 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_00	IO port 1 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_01	IO port 1 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_02	IO port 1 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_03	IO port 1 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_04	IO port 1 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_05	IO port 1 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_06	IO port 1 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_07	IO port 1 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_08	IO port 1 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_09	IO port 1 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_10	IO port 1 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_11	IO port 1 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_12	IO port 1 pin 12.

BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_13	IO port 1 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_14	IO port 1 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_01_PIN_15	IO port 1 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_00	IO port 2 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_01	IO port 2 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_02	IO port 2 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_03	IO port 2 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_04	IO port 2 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_05	IO port 2 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_06	IO port 2 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_07	IO port 2 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_08	IO port 2 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_09	IO port 2 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_10	IO port 2 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_11	IO port 2 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_12	IO port 2 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_13	IO port 2 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_14	IO port 2 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_15	IO port 2 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_00	IO port 3 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_01	IO port 3 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_02	IO port 3 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_03	IO port 3 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_04	IO port 3 pin 4.

BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_05	IO port 3 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_06	IO port 3 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_07	IO port 3 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_08	IO port 3 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_09	IO port 3 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_10	IO port 3 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_11	IO port 3 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_12	IO port 3 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_13	IO port 3 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_14	IO port 3 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_03_PIN_15	IO port 3 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_00	IO port 4 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_01	IO port 4 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_02	IO port 4 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_03	IO port 4 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_04	IO port 4 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_05	IO port 4 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_06	IO port 4 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_07	IO port 4 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_08	IO port 4 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_09	IO port 4 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_10	IO port 4 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_11	IO port 4 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_12	IO port 4 pin 12.

BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_13	IO port 4 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_14	IO port 4 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_15	IO port 4 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_00	IO port 5 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_01	IO port 5 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_02	IO port 5 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_03	IO port 5 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_04	IO port 5 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_05	IO port 5 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_06	IO port 5 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_07	IO port 5 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_08	IO port 5 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_09	IO port 5 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_10	IO port 5 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_11	IO port 5 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_12	IO port 5 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_13	IO port 5 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_14	IO port 5 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_15	IO port 5 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_00	IO port 6 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_01	IO port 6 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_02	IO port 6 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_03	IO port 6 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_04	IO port 6 pin 4.

BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_05	IO port 6 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_06	IO port 6 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_07	IO port 6 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_08	IO port 6 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_09	IO port 6 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_10	IO port 6 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_11	IO port 6 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_12	IO port 6 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_13	IO port 6 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_14	IO port 6 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_15	IO port 6 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_00	IO port 7 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_01	IO port 7 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_02	IO port 7 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_03	IO port 7 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_04	IO port 7 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_05	IO port 7 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_06	IO port 7 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_07	IO port 7 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_08	IO port 7 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_09	IO port 7 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_10	IO port 7 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_11	IO port 7 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_12	IO port 7 pin 12.

BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_13	IO port 7 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_14	IO port 7 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_07_PIN_15	IO port 7 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_00	IO port 8 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_01	IO port 8 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_02	IO port 8 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_03	IO port 8 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_04	IO port 8 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_05	IO port 8 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_06	IO port 8 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_07	IO port 8 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_08	IO port 8 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_09	IO port 8 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_10	IO port 8 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_11	IO port 8 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_12	IO port 8 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_13	IO port 8 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_14	IO port 8 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_08_PIN_15	IO port 8 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_00	IO port 9 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_01	IO port 9 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_02	IO port 9 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_03	IO port 9 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_04	IO port 9 pin 4.

BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_05	IO port 9 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_06	IO port 9 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_07	IO port 9 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_08	IO port 9 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_09	IO port 9 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_10	IO port 9 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_11	IO port 9 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_12	IO port 9 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_13	IO port 9 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_14	IO port 9 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_09_PIN_15	IO port 9 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_00	IO port 10 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_01	IO port 10 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_02	IO port 10 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_03	IO port 10 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_04	IO port 10 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_05	IO port 10 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_06	IO port 10 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_07	IO port 10 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_08	IO port 10 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_09	IO port 10 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_10	IO port 10 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_11	IO port 10 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_12	IO port 10 pin 12.

BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_13	IO port 10 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_14	IO port 10 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_10_PIN_15	IO port 10 pin 15.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_00	IO port 11 pin 0.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_01	IO port 11 pin 1.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_02	IO port 11 pin 2.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_03	IO port 11 pin 3.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_04	IO port 11 pin 4.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_05	IO port 11 pin 5.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_06	IO port 11 pin 6.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_07	IO port 11 pin 7.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_08	IO port 11 pin 8.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_09	IO port 11 pin 9.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_10	IO port 11 pin 10.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_11	IO port 11 pin 11.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_12	IO port 11 pin 12.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_13	IO port 11 pin 13.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_14	IO port 11 pin 14.
BSP_IO_PORT_11_PIN_15	IO port 11 pin 15.

Function Documentation

◆ R_BSP_PinRead()

__STATIC_INLINE uint32_t R_BSP_PinRead (bsp_io_port_pin_t *pin*)

Read the current input level of the pin.

Parameters

[in]	pin	The pin

Return values

Current	input level

◆ R_BSP_PinWrite()

__STATIC_INLINE void R_BSP_PinWrite (bsp_io_port_pin_t *pin*, bsp_io_level_t *level*)

Set a pin to output and set the output level to the level provided

Parameters

[in]	pin	The pin
[in]	level	The level

◆ R_BSP_PinAccessEnable()

__STATIC_INLINE void R_BSP_PinAccessEnable (void)

Enable access to the PFS registers. Uses a reference counter to protect against interrupts that could occur via multiple threads or an ISR re-entering this code.

◆ R_BSP_PinAccessDisable()

__STATIC_INLINE void R_BSP_PinAccessDisable (void)

Disable access to the PFS registers. Uses a reference counter to protect against interrupts that could occur via multiple threads or an ISR re-entering this code.

5.2 Modules

Detailed Description

Modules are the smallest unit of software available in the FSP. Each module implements one interface.

Modules

	High-Speed Analog Comparator (r_acmphs) Driver for the ACMPHS peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Comparator Interface.
	Low-Power Analog Comparator (r_acmplp) Driver for the ACMPLP peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Comparator Interface.
	Analog to Digital Converter (r_adc) Driver for the ADC12, ADC14, and ADC16 peripherals on RA MCUs. This module implements the ADC Interface.
	Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (r_agt) Driver for the AGT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Timer Interface.
	Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (r_cac) Driver for the CAC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CAC Interface.
	Controller Area Network (r_can) Driver for the CAN peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CAN Interface.
	Clock Generation Circuit (r_cgc) Driver for the CGC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CGC Interface.
	Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) Calculator (r_crc) Driver for the CRC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CRC Interface.
	Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (r_ctsu) This HAL driver supports the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (CTSU). It implements the CTSU Interface.

	Digital to Analog Converter (r_dac) Driver for the DAC12 peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the DAC Interface.
	Digital to Analog Converter (r_dac8) Driver for the DAC8 peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the DAC Interface.
	Direct Memory Access Controller (r_dmac) Driver for the DMAC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Transfer Interface.
	Data Operation Circuit (r_doc) Driver for the DOC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the DOC Interface.
	D/AVE 2D Port Interface (r_drw) Driver for the DRW peripheral on RA MCUs. This module is a port of D/AVE 2D.
	Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc) Driver for the DTC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Transfer Interface.
	Event Link Controller (r_elc) Driver for the ELC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the ELC Interface.
	Ethernet (r_ether) Driver for the Ethernet peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Ethernet Interface.
	Ethernet PHY (r_ether_phy) The Ethernet PHY module (r_ether_phy) provides an API for standard Ethernet PHY communications applications that use the ETHERC peripheral. It implements the Ethernet PHY Interface.
	High-Performance Flash Driver (r_flash_hp)

Driver for the flash memory on RA high-performance MCUs. This module implements the Flash Interface.

Low-Power Flash Driver (r_flash_lp)

Driver for the flash memory on RA low-power MCUs. This module implements the Flash Interface.

Graphics LCD Controller (r_glcdc)

Driver for the GLCDC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Display Interface.

General PWM Timer (r_gpt)

Driver for the GPT32 and GPT16 peripherals on RA MCUs. This module implements the Timer Interface.

General PWM Timer Three-Phase Motor Control Driver (r_gpt_three_phase)

Driver for 3-phase motor control using the GPT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Three-Phase Interface.

Interrupt Controller Unit (r_icu)

Driver for the ICU peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the External IRQ Interface.

I2C Master on IIC (r_iic_master)

Driver for the IIC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2C Master Interface.

I2C Slave on IIC (r_iic_slave)

Driver for the IIC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2C Slave Interface.

I/O Ports (r_ioport)

Driver for the I/O Ports peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I/O Port Interface.

Independent Watchdog Timer (r_iwdt)

Driver for the IWDT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the WDT Interface.

JPEG Codec (r_jpeg)

Driver for the JPEG peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the JPEG Codec Interface.

Key Interrupt (r_kint)

Driver for the KINT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Key Matrix Interface.

Low Power Modes (r_lpm)

Driver for the LPM peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Low Power Modes Interface.

Low Voltage Detection (r_lvd)

Driver for the LVD peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Low Voltage Detection Interface.

Operational Amplifier (r_opamp)

Driver for the OPAMP peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the OPAMP Interface.

Port Output Enable for GPT (r_poeg)

Driver for the POEG peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the POEG Interface.

Quad Serial Peripheral Interface Flash (r_qspi)

Driver for the QSPI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SPI Flash Interface.

Realtime Clock (r_rtc)

Driver for the RTC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the RTC Interface.

Serial Communications Interface (SCI) I2C (r_sci_i2c)

Driver for the SCI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2C Master Interface.

	Serial Communications Interface (SCI) SPI (r_sci_spi) Driver for the SCI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SPI Interface.
	Serial Communications Interface (SCI) UART (r_sci_uart) Driver for the SCI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the UART Interface.
	Sigma Delta Analog to Digital Converter (r_sdadc) Driver for the SDADC24 peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the ADC Interface.
	SD/MMC Host Interface (r_sdhi) Driver for the SD/MMC Host Interface (SDHI) peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SD/MMC Interface.
	Segment LCD Controller (r_slcdc) Driver for the SLCDC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SLCDC Interface.
	Serial Peripheral Interface (r_spi) Driver for the SPI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SPI Interface.
	Serial Sound Interface (r_ssi) Driver for the SSIE peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2S Interface.
	USB (r_usb_basic) The USB module (r_usb_basic) provides an API to perform H / W control of USB communication. It implements the USB Interface.
	USB Host Communications Device Class Driver (r_usb_hcdc) This module is USB Host Communication Device Class Driver (HCDC). It implements the USB HCDC Interface. This module works in combination with (r_usb_basic module).

	USB Host Mass Storage Class Driver (r_usb_hmsc) The USB module (r_usb_hmsc) provides an API to perform hardware control of USB communications. It implements the USB HMSC Interface.
	USB Peripheral Communication Device Class (r_usb_pcdc) This module is USB Peripheral Communication Device Class Driver (PCDC). It implements the USB PCDC Interface. This module works in combination with (r_usb_basic module).
	USB Peripheral Mass Storage Class (r_usb_pmsc) This module is USB Peripheral Mass Storage Class Driver (PMSC). It implements the USB PMSC Interface. This module works in combination with (r_usb_basic module).
	Watchdog Timer (r_wdt) Driver for the WDT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the WDT Interface.
	SD/MMC Block Media Implementation (rm_block_media_sdmmc) Middleware to implement the block media interface on SD cards. This module implements the Block Media Interface.
	USB HMSC Block Media Implementation (rm_block_media_usb) Middleware to implement the block media interface on USB mass storage devices. This module implements the Block Media Interface.
	SEGGER emWin Port (rm_emwin_port) SEGGER emWin port for RA MCUs.
	FreeRTOS+FAT Port (rm_freertos_plus_fat) Middleware for the Fat File System control on RA MCUs.
	FreeRTOS Plus TCP (rm_freertos_plus_tcp) Middleware for using TCP on RA MCUs.
	FreeRTOS Port (rm_freertos_port)

	FreeRTOS port for RA MCUs.
	LittleFS Flash Port (rm_littlefs_flash) Middleware for the LittleFS File System control on RA MCUs.
	Crypto Middleware (rm_psa_crypto) Hardware acceleration for the mbedCrypto implementation of the ARM PSA Crypto API.
	Capacitive Touch Middleware (rm_touch) This module supports the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (CTSU). It implements the Touch Middleware Interface.
	AWS Device Provisioning AWS Device Provisioning example software.
	AWS MQTT This module provides the AWS MQTT integration documentation.
	Wifi Middleware (rm_wifi_onchip_silex) Wifi and Socket implementation using the Silex SX-ULPGN WiFi module on RA MCUs.
	AWS Secure Sockets This module provides the AWS Secure Sockets implementation.

5.2.1 High-Speed Analog Comparator (r_acmphs)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_ACMPHS_Open (comparator_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, comparator_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPHS_OutputEnable (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

fsp_err_t	R_ACMPHS_InfoGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPHS_StatusGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPHS_Close (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPHS_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the ACMPHS peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Comparator Interface.

Overview

Features

The ACMPHS HAL module supports the following features:

- Callback on rising edge, falling edge or both
- Configurable debounce filter
- Option for comparator output on VCOUT pin
- ELC event output

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_acmphs

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_acmphs_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > Comparator Driver on r_acmphs

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > Comparator Driver on r_acmphs:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_comparator0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be a non-	0	Select the hardware

	negative integer		channel.
Trigger Edge Selector	• Rising • Falling • Both Edge	Both Edge	The trigger specifies when a comparator callback event should occur. Unused if the interrupt priority is disabled or the callback is NULL.
Noise Filter	• No Filter • 8 • 16 • 32	No Filter	Select the PCLK divisor for the hardware digital debounce filter. Larger divisors provide a longer debounce and take longer for the output to update.
Maximum status retries (CMPMON)	Must be a valid non-negative integer between 2 and 32-bit maximum value	1024	Maximum number of status retries.
Output Polarity	• Not Inverted • Inverted	Not Inverted	When enabled comparator output is inverted. This affects the output read from R_ACMPHS_StatusGet() , the pin output level, and the edge trigger.
Pin Output(VCOUT)	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	Turn this on to include the output from this comparator on VCOUT. The comparator output on VCOUT is OR'd with output from all other ACMPHS and ACMPLP comparators.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	Define this function in the application. It is called when the Trigger event occurs.
Comparator Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for the comparator interrupt.
Analog Input Voltage Source (IVCMP)	MCU Specific Options		Select the Analog input voltage source. Channel mentioned in the options represents channel in ACMPHS
Reference Voltage Input Source (IVREF)	MCU Specific Options		Select the Analog reference voltage source. Channel

mentioned in the
options represents
channel in ACMPHS

Clock Configuration

The ACMPHS peripheral is clocked from PCLKB. You can set the PCLKB frequency using the clock configurator in e2 studio or using the CGC Interface at run-time.

Pin Configuration

Comparator output can be enabled or disabled on each channel individually. The VCOUT pin is a logical OR of all comparator outputs.

The IVCMPn pins are used as comparator inputs. The IVREFn pins are used as comparator reference values.

Usage Notes

Noise Filter

When the noise filter is enabled, the ACMPHP0/ACMPHP1 signal is sampled three times based on the sampling clock selected. The filter clock frequency is determined by PCLKB and the comparator_filter_t setting.

Output Polarity

If output polarity is configured as "Inverted" then the VCOUT signal will be inverted and the R_ACMPHS_StatusGet() will return an inverted status.

Limitations

- Once the analog comparator is configured, the program must wait for the stabilization time to elapse before using the comparator.
- When the noise filter is not enabled the hardware requires software debouncing of the output (two consecutive equal values). This is automatically managed in R_ACMPHS_StatusGet but may result in delay or an API error in rare edge cases.
- Constraints apply on the simultaneous use of ACMPHS analog input and ADC analog input. Refer to the "Usage Notes" section in your MCU's User's Manual for the ADC unit(s) for more details.
- To allow ACMPHS0 to cancel Software Standby mode or enter Snooze, set the CSTEN bit to 1 and the CDFS bits to 00 in the CMPCTL0 register.

Examples

Basic Example

The following is a basic example of minimal use of the ACMPHS. The comparator is configured to trigger a callback when the input rises above the internal reference voltage (VREF). A GPIO output acts as the comparator input and is externally connected to the IVCMP input of the ACMPHS.

```
/* Connect this control pin to the VCMP input of the comparator. This can be any GPIO
pin
```

```
 * that is not input only. */
#define ACMPHS_EXAMPLE_CONTROL_PIN (BSP_IO_PORT_05_PIN_03)
#define ADC_PGA_BYPASS_VALUE (0x9999)
volatile uint32_t g_comparator_events = 0U;
/* This callback is called when a comparator event occurs. */
void acmphs_example_callback (comparator_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
    g_comparator_events++;
}
void acmphs_example ()
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Disable pin register write protection, if enabled */
 R_BSP_PinAccessEnable();
 /* Start with the VCMP pin low. This example assumes the comparator is configured to
trigger
  * when VCMP rises above VREF. */
    (void) R_BSP_PinWrite(ACMPHS_EXAMPLE_CONTROL_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
 /* Initialize the ACMPHS module */
    err = R_ACMPHS_Open(&g_comparator_ctrl, &g_comparator_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Bypass PGA on ADC unit 0.
  * (See Table 50.2 "Input source configuration of the ACMPHS" in the RA6M3 User's
Manual (R01UH0886EJ0100)) */
 R_BSP_MODULE_START(FSP_IP_ADC, 0);
    R_ADC0->ADPGACR   = ADC_PGA_BYPASS_VALUE;
    R_ADC0->ADPGADCR0 = 0;
 /* Wait for the minimum stabilization wait time before enabling output. */
 comparator_info_t info;
 R_ACMPHS_InfoGet(&g_comparator_ctrl, &info);
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(info.min_stabilization_wait_us, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
 /* Enable the comparator output */
```

```
    (void) R_ACMPHS_OutputEnable(&g_comparator_ctrl);
 /* Set the VCMP pin high. */
    (void) R_BSP_PinWrite(ACMPHS_EXAMPLE_CONTROL_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 while (0 == g_comparator_events)
    {
 /* Wait for interrupt. */
    }
 comparator_status_t status;
 /* Check status of comparator, Status will be COMPARATOR_STATE_OUTPUT_HIGH */
    (void) R_ACMPHS_StatusGet(&g_comparator_ctrl, &status);
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ R_ACMPHS_Open()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPHS_Open (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, comparator_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configures the comparator and starts operation. Callbacks and pin output are not active until outputEnable() is called. comparator_api_t::outputEnable() should be called after the output has stabilized. Implements comparator_api_t::open().

Comparator inputs must be configured in the application code prior to calling this function.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Open successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer is NULL
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	An argument is invalid. Window mode (COMPARATOR_MODE_WINDOW) and filter of 1 (COMPARATOR_FILTER_1) are not supported in this implementation.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The control block is already open or the hardware lock is taken.

◆ R_ACMPHS_OutputEnable()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPHS_OutputEnable (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Enables the comparator output, which can be polled using comparator_api_t::statusGet(). Also enables pin output and interrupts as configured during comparator_api_t::open(). Implements comparator_api_t::outputEnable().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Comparator output is enabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_ACMPHS_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPHS_InfoGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, comparator_info_t *const *p_info*)

Provides the minimum stabilization wait time in microseconds. Implements comparator_api_t::infoGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored in p_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_ACMPHS_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPHS_StatusGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, comparator_status_t *const *p_status*)

Provides the operating status of the comparator. Implements comparator_api_t::statusGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operating status of the comparator is provided in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	The debounce filter is off and 2 consecutive matching values were not read within 1024 attempts.

◆ R_ACMPHS_Close()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPHS_Close (comparator_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Stops the comparator. Implements comparator_api_t::close().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Instance control block closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_ACMPHS_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPHS_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Gets the API and code version. Implements comparator_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information available in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

5.2.2 Low-Power Analog Comparator (r_acmplp)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_ACMPLP_Open (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPLP_OutputEnable (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPLP_InfoGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPLP_StatusGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPLP_Close (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ACMPLP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the ACMPLP peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Comparator Interface.

Overview

Features

The ACMPLP HAL module supports the following features:

- Normal mode or window mode
- Callback on rising edge, falling edge or both
- Configurable debounce filter
- Option for comparator output on VCOUT pin
- ELC event output

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_acmplp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_acmplp_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Reference Voltage Selection (ACMPLP1)	• IVREF0 • IVREF1	IVREF1	Reference Voltage Selection for ACMPLP1. When set to IVREF0, configure the reference for ACMPLP channel 1 (if used) to one of the channel 0 sources.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > Comparator Driver on r_acmplp

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > Comparator Driver on r_acmplp:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_comparator0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Select the hardware channel.

Mode	• Standard • Window	Standard	In standard mode, comparator output is high if VCMP > VREF. In window mode, comparator output is high if VCMP is outside the range of VREF0 to VREF1.
Trigger	• Rising • Falling • Both Edge	Both Edge	The trigger specifies when a comparator callback event should occur. Unused if the interrupt priority is disabled or the callback is NULL.
Filter	• No sampling (bypass) • Sampling at PCLKB • Sampling at PCLKB/8 • Sampling at PCLKB/32	No sampling (bypass)	Select the PCLK divisor for the hardware digital debounce filter. Larger divisors provide a longer debounce and take longer for the output to update.
Output Polarity	• Not Inverted • Inverted	Not Inverted	When enabled comparator output is inverted. This affects the output read from R_ACMPLP_StatusGet(), the pin output level, and the edge trigger.
Pin Output (VCOUT)	• Off • On	Off	Turn this on to include the output from this comparator on VCOUT. The comparator output on VCOUT is OR'd with output from all other ACMPHS and ACMPLP comparators.
Vref (Standard mode only)	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If reference voltage selection is enabled then internal reference voltage is used as comparator input
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	Define this function in the application. It is called when the Trigger event occurs.
Comparator Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for the comparator interrupt.

Analog Input Voltage Source (IVCMP)	MCU Specific Options	Select the comparator input source. Only options for the configured channel are valid.
Reference Voltage Input Source (IVREF)	MCU Specific Options	Select the comparator reference voltage source. If channel 1 is seleected and the 'Reference Voltage Selection (ACMPLP1)' config option is set to IVREF0, select one of the Channel 0 options. In all other cases, only options for the configured channel are valid.

Clock Configuration

The ACMPLP peripheral is clocked from PCLKB. You can set the PCLKB frequency using the clock configurator in e2 studio or using the CGC Interface at run-time.

Pin Configuration

Comparator output can be enabled or disabled on each channel individually. The VCOUT pin is a logical OR of all comparator outputs.

The CMPINn pins are used as comparator inputs. The CMPREFn pins are used as comparator reference values.

Usage Notes

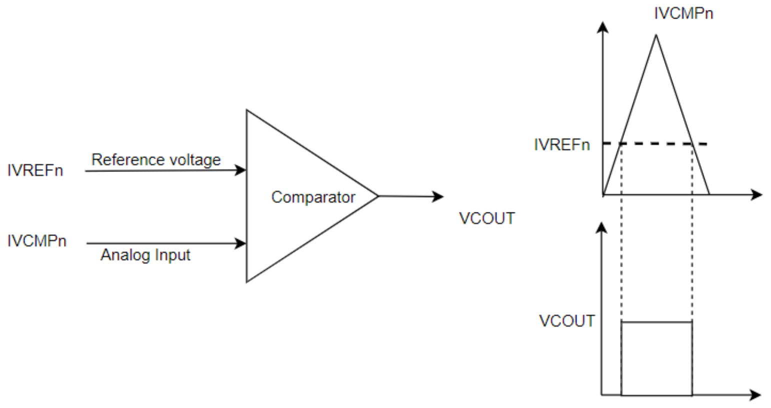


Figure 104: ACMPLP Standard Mode Operation

Noise Filter

When the noise filter is enabled, the ACMPLP0/ACMPLP1 signal is sampled three times based on the sampling clock selected. The filter clock frequency is determined by PCLKB and the comparator_filter_t setting.

Output Polarity

If output polarity is configured as "Inverted" then the VCOUT signal will be inverted and the R_ACMPLP_StatusGet() will return an inverted status.

Window Mode

In window mode, the comparator indicates if the analog input voltage falls within the window (low and high reference voltage) or is outside the window.

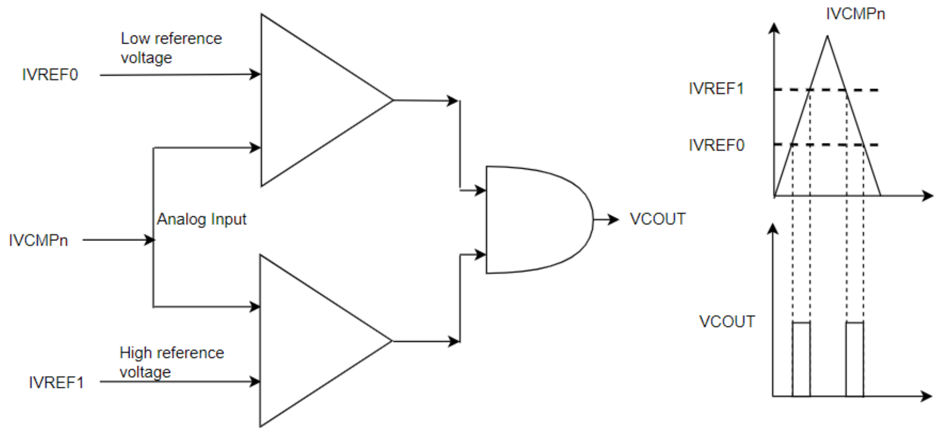


Figure 105: ACMPLP Window Mode Operation

Limitations

- Once the analog comparator is configured, the program must wait for the stabilization time to elapse before using the comparator.
- Low speed is not supported by the ACMPLP driver.

Examples

Basic Example

The following is a basic example of minimal use of the ACMPLP. The comparator is configured to trigger a callback when the input rises above the internal reference voltage (VREF). A GPIO output acts as the comparator input and is externally connected to the CMPIN input of the ACMPLP.

```
/* Connect this control pin to the VCMP input of the comparator. This can be any GPIO
pin
 * that is not input only. */
#define ACMPLP_EXAMPLE_CONTROL_PIN (BSP_IO_PORT_04_PIN_08)
volatile uint32_t g_comparator_events = 0U;
/* This callback is called when a comparator event occurs. */
```

```
void acmplp_example_callback (comparator_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
    g_comparator_events++;
}
void acmplp_example ()
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Disable pin register write protection, if enabled */
 R_BSP_PinAccessEnable();
 /* Start with the VCMP pin low. This example assumes the comparator is configured to
trigger
  * when VCMP rises above VREF. */
    (void) R_BSP_PinWrite(ACMPLP_EXAMPLE_CONTROL_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
 /* Initialize the ACMPLP module */
    err = R_ACMPLP_Open(&g_comparator_ctrl, &g_comparator_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for the minimum stabilization wait time before enabling output. */
 comparator_info_t info;
 R_ACMPLP_InfoGet(&g_comparator_ctrl, &info);
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(info.min_stabilization_wait_us, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
 /* Enable the comparator output */
    (void) R_ACMPLP_OutputEnable(&g_comparator_ctrl);
 /* Set VCMP low. */
    (void) R_BSP_PinWrite(ACMPLP_EXAMPLE_CONTROL_PIN, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 while (0 == g_comparator_events)
    {
 /* Wait for interrupt. */
    }
 comparator_status_t status;
 /* Check status of comparator, Status will be COMPARATOR_STATE_OUTPUT_HIGH */
    (void) R_ACMPLP_StatusGet(&g_comparator_ctrl, &status);
}
```

Enumerations

enum	acmplp_input_t
enum	acmplp_reference_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ acmplp_input_t

enum acmplp_input_t

Enumerator	
ACMPLP_INPUT_AMPO	Only available on ra2a1.
ACMPLP_INPUT_CMPIN_1	Only available on ra4m1.

◆ acmplp_reference_t

enum acmplp_reference_t

Enumerator	
ACMPLP_REFERENCE_CMPREF_1	Only available on ra4m1.
ACMPLP_REFERENCE_IVREF0	Only available for Channel 1.

Function Documentation

◆ R_ACMPLP_Open()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPLP_Open (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, comparator_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configures the comparator and starts operation. Callbacks and pin output are not active until outputEnable() is called. comparator_api_t::outputEnable() should be called after the output has stabilized. Implements comparator_api_t::open().

Comparator inputs must be configured in the application code prior to calling this function.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Open successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer is NULL
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	An argument is invalid. Window mode (COMPARATOR_MODE_WINDOW) and filter of 1 (COMPARATOR_FILTER_1) are not supported in this implementation. p_cfg->p_callback is not NULL, but ISR is not enabled. ISR must be enabled to use callback function.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The control block is already open or the hardware lock is taken.

◆ R_ACMPLP_OutputEnable()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPLP_OutputEnable (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Enables the comparator output, which can be polled using comparator_api_t::statusGet(). Also enables pin output and interrupts as configured during comparator_api_t::open(). Implements comparator_api_t::outputEnable().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Comparator output is enabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_ACMPLP_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPLP_InfoGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, comparator_info_t *const *p_info*)

Provides the minimum stabilization wait time in microseconds. Implements comparator_api_t::infoGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored in p_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_ACMPLP_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPLP_StatusGet (comparator_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, comparator_status_t *const *p_status*)

Provides the operating status of the comparator. Implements comparator_api_t::statusGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operating status of the comparator is provided in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_ACMPLP_Close()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPLP_Close (comparator_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Stops the comparator. Implements comparator_api_t::close().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Instance control block closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_ACMPLP_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_ACMPLP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Gets the API and code version. Implements comparator_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information available in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

5.2.3 Analog to Digital Converter (r_adc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_ADC_Open (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_ScanCfg (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, void const *const p_extend)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_InfoGet (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_info_t *p_adc_info)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_ScanStart (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_ScanStop (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_StatusGet (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_status_t *p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_Read (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint16_t *const p_data)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_Read32 (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint32_t *const p_data)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_SampleStateCountSet (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_sample_state_t *p_sample)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_Close (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_OffsetSet (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, int32_t offset)
fsp_err_t	R_ADC_Calibrate (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_extend)

fsp_err_t	R_ADC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the ADC12, ADC14, and ADC16 peripherals on RA MCUs. This module implements the ADC Interface.

Overview

Features

The ADC module supports the following features:

- 12, 14, or 16 bit maximum resolution depending on the MCU
- Configure scans to include:
  - Multiple analog channels
  - Temperature sensor channel
  - Voltage sensor channel
- Configurable scan start trigger:
  - Software scan triggers
  - Hardware scan triggers (timer expiration, for example)
  - External scan triggers from the ADTRGn port pins
- Configurable scan mode:
  - Single scan mode, where each trigger starts a single scan
  - Continuous scan mode, where all channels are scanned continuously
  - Group scan mode, where channels are grouped into group A and group B. The groups can be assigned different start triggers, and group A can be given priority over group B. When group A has priority over group B, a group A trigger suspends an ongoing group B scan.
- Supports adding and averaging converted samples
- Optional callback when scan completes
- Supports reading converted data
- Sample and hold support
- Double-trigger support

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_adc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_adc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > ADC Driver on r_adc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > ADC Driver on r_adc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_adc0	Module name
General > Unit	Unit must be a non-negative integer	0	Specifies the ADC Unit to be used.
General > Resolution	MCU Specific Options		Specifies the conversion resolution for this unit.
General > Alignment	• Right • Left	Right	Specifies the conversion result alignment.
General > Clear after read	• Off • On	On	Specifies if the result register will be automatically cleared after the conversion result is read.
General > Mode	• Single Scan • Continuous Scan • Group Scan	Single Scan	Specifies the mode that this ADC unit is used in.
General > Double-trigger	• Disabled • Enabled • Enabled (extended mode)	Disabled	When enabled, the scan-end interrupt for Group A is only thrown on every second scan. Extended double-trigger mode (single-scan only) triggers on both ELC events, allowing (for example) a scan on two different timer compare match values. In group mode Group B is unaffected.
Input > Sample and Hold > Sample and Hold Channels (Available only on selected MCUs)	• Channel 0 • Channel 1 • Channel 2		Specifies if this channel is included in the Sample and Hold Mask.
Input > Sample and Hold > Sample Hold States (Applies only to channels 0, 1, 2)	Must be a valid non-negative integer with configurable value 4 to 255	24	Specifies the updated sample-and-hold count for the channel dedicated sample-and-hold circuit

Input > Channel Scan Mask (channel availability varies by MCU)	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.		In Normal mode of operation, this bitmask field specifies the channels that are enabled in that ADC unit. In group mode, this field specifies which channels belong to group A.
Input > Group B Scan Mask (channel availability varies by MCU)	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.		In group mode, this field specifies which channels belong to group B.
Input > Add/Average Count	• Disabled • Add two samples • Add three samples • Add four samples • Add sixteen samples • Average two samples • Average four samples	Disabled	Specifies if addition or averaging needs to be done for any of the channels in this unit.
Input > Reference Voltage control	MCU Specific Options		Specify VREFH/VREFADC output voltage control.
Input > Addition/Averaging Mask (channel availability varies by MCU and unit)	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.		Select channels to include in the Addition/Averaging Mask
Interrupts > Normal/Group A Trigger	MCU Specific Options		Specifies the trigger type to be used for this unit.
Interrupts > Group B Trigger	MCU Specific Options		Specifies the trigger for Group B scanning in group scanning mode. This event is also used to trigger Group A in extended double-trigger mode.
Interrupts > Group Priority (Valid only in Group Scan Mode)	• Group A cannot interrupt Group B • Group A can interrupt Group B; Group B scan restarts at next	Group A cannot interrupt Group B	Determines whether an ongoing group B scan can be interrupted by a group A trigger, whether it should abort on a group A trigger, or if it should pause to

	trigger • Group A can interrupt Group B; Group B scan restarts immediately • Group A can interrupt Group B; Group B scan restarts immediately and scans continuously		allow group A scan and restart immediately after group A scan is complete.
Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function. If this callback function is provided, it is called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time the ADC scan completes.
Interrupts > Scan End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select scan end interrupt priority.
Interrupts > Scan End Group B Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select group B scan end interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The ADC clock is PCLKC if the MCU has PCLKC, or PCLKD otherwise.

The ADC clock must be at least 1 MHz when the ADC is used. Many MCUs also have PCLK ratio restrictions when the ADC is used. For details on PCLK ratio restrictions, reference the footnotes in the second table of the Clock Generation Circuit chapter of the MCU User's Manual (for example, Table 9.2 "Specifications of the clock generation circuit for the internal clocks" in the RA6M3 manual R01UH0886EJ0100).

Pin Configuration

The ANxxx pins are analog input channels that can be used with the ADC.

ADTRG0 and ADTRG1 can be used to start scans with an external trigger for unit 0 and 1 respectively. When external triggers are used, ADC scans begin on the falling edge of the ADTRG pin.

Usage Notes

Sample Hold

Enabling the sample and hold functionality reduces the maximum scan frequency because the sample and hold time is added to each scan. Refer to the hardware manual for details on the sample and hold time.

ADC Operational Modes

The driver supports three operation modes: single-scan, continuous-scan, and group-scan modes. In each mode, analog channels are converted in ascending order of channel number, followed by scans of the temperature sensor and voltage sensor if they are included in the mask of channels to scan.

Single-scan Mode

In single scan mode, one or more specified channels are scanned once per trigger.

Continuous-scan Mode

In continuous scan mode, a single trigger is required to start the scan. Scans continue until R_ADC_ScanStop() is called.

Group-scan Mode

Group-scan mode allows the application to allocate channels to one of two groups (A and B). Conversion begins when the specified ELC start trigger for that group is received.

With the priority configuration parameter, you can optionally give group A priority over group B. If group A has priority over group B, a group B scan is interrupted when a group A scan trigger occurs. The following options exist for group B when group A has priority:

- To restart the interrupted group B scan after the group A scan completes.
- To wait for another group B trigger and forget the interrupted scan.
- To continuously scan group B and suspend scanning group B only when a group A trigger is received.
  Note
  If this option is selected, group B scanning begins immediately after R_ADC_ScanCfg(). Group A scan triggers must be enabled by R_ADC_ScanStart() and can be disabled by R_ADC_ScanStop(). Group B scans can only be disabled by reconfiguring the group A priority to a different mode.

Double-triggering

When double-triggering is enabled a single channel is selected to be scanned twice before an interrupt is thrown. The first scan result when using double-triggering is always saved to the selected channel's data register. The second result is saved to the data duplexing register (ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX).

Double-triggering uses Group A; only one channel can be selected when enabled. No other scanning is possible on Group A while double-trigger mode is selected. In addition, any special ADC channels (such as temperature sensors or voltage references) are not valid double-trigger channels.

When extended double-triggering is enabled both ADC input events are routed to Group A. The interrupt is still thrown after every two scans regardless of the triggering event(s). While the first and second scan are saved to the selected ADC data register and the ADC duplexing register as before, scans associated with event A and B are additionally copied into duplexing register A and B, respectively (ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX_A and ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX_B).

When Interrupts Are Not Enabled

If interrupts are not enabled, the R_ADC_StatusGet API can be used to poll the ADC to determine when the scan has completed. The read API function is used to access the converted ADC result. This applies to both normal scans and calibration scans for MCUs that support calibration.

Sample-State Count Setting

The application program can modify the setting of the sample-state count for analog channels by calling the R_ADC_SampleStateCountSet() API function. The application program only needs to modify the sample-state count settings from their default values to increase the sampling time. This can be either because the impedance of the input signal is too high to secure sufficient sampling time under the default setting or if the ADCLK is too slow. To modify the sample-state count for a given channel, set the channel number and the number of states when calling the R_ADC_SampleStateCountSet() API function. Valid sample state counts are 7-255.

Note

> *Although the hardware supports a minimum number of sample states of 5, some MCUs require 7 states, so the minimum is set to 7. At the lowest supported ADC conversion clock rate (1 MHz), these extra states will lead to, at worst case, a 2 microsecond increase in conversion time. At 60 MHz the extra states will add 33.4 ns to the conversion time.*

If the sample state count needs to be changed for multiple channels, the application program must call the R_ADC_SampleStateCountSet() API function repeatedly, with appropriately modified arguments for each channel.

If the ADCLK frequency changes, the sample states may need to be updated.

Sample States for Temperature Sensor and Internal Voltage Reference

Sample states for the temperature sensor and the internal reference voltage are calculated during R_ADC_ScanCfg() based on the ADCLK frequency at the time. The sample states for the temperature sensor and internal voltage reference cannot be updated with R_ADC_SampleStateCountSet(). If the ADCLK frequency changes, call R_ADC_ScanCfg() before using the temperature sensor or internal reference voltage again to ensure the sampling time for the temperature sensor and internal voltage reference is optimal.

Selecting Reference Voltage

The ADC16 can select VREFH0 or VREFADC as the high-potential reference voltage on selected MCU's. When using VREFADC stabilization time of 1500us is required after call for R_ADC_Open().

Using the Temperature Sensor with the ADC

The ADC HAL module supports reading the data from the on-chip temperature sensor. The value returned from the sensor can be converted into degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit in the application program using the following formula, T = (Vs - V1)/slope + T1, where:

- T: Measured temperature (degrees C)
- Vs: Voltage output by the temperature sensor at the time of temperature measurement (Volts)
- T1: Temperature experimentally measured at one point (degrees C)
- V1: Voltage output by the temperature sensor at the time of measurement of T1 (Volts)
- T2: Temperature at the experimental measurement of another point (degrees C)
- V2: Voltage output by the temperature sensor at the time of measurement of T2 (Volts)
- Slope: Temperature gradient of the temperature sensor (V/degrees C); slope = (V2 - V1)/(T2 - T1)

Note

The slope value can be obtained from the hardware manual for each device in the Electrical Characteristics Chapter - TSN Characteristics Table, Temperature slope entry.

Usage Notes for ADC16

Calibration

Calibration is required to use the ADC16 peripheral. When using this driver on an MCU that has ADC16, call R_ADC_Calibrate() after open, and prior to any other function.

Range of ADC16 Results

The range of the ADC16 is from 0 (lowest) to 0x7FFF (highest) when used in single-ended mode. This driver only supports single ended mode.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the ADC in an application.

```
/* A channel configuration is generated by the configurator based on the options
selected. If additional
 * configurations are desired additional adc_channel_cfg_t elements can be defined
and passed to R_ADC_ScanCfg. */
const adc_channel_cfg_t g_adc0_channel_cfg =
{
    .scan_mask          = ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_0 | ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_1,
    .scan_mask_group_b = 0,
    .priority_group_a   = (adc_group_a_t) 0,
    .add_mask          = 0,
    .sample_hold_mask   = 0,
    .sample_hold_states = 0,
};
void adc_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_ADC_Open(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable channels. */
```

```
    err = R_ADC_ScanCfg(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_channel_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* In software trigger mode, start a scan by calling R_ADC_ScanStart(). In other
modes, enable external
  * triggers by calling R_ADC_ScanStart(). */
    (void) R_ADC_ScanStart(&g_adc0_ctrl);
 /* Wait for conversion to complete. */
 adc_status_t status;
    status.state = ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS;
 while (ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS == status.state)
    {
       (void) R_ADC_StatusGet(&g_adc0_ctrl, &status);
    }
 /* Read converted data. */
    uint16_t channel1_conversion_result;
    err = R_ADC_Read(&g_adc0_ctrl, ADC_CHANNEL_1, &channel1_conversion_result);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Temperature Sensor Example

This example shows how to calculate the MCU temperature using the ADC and the temperature sensor.

```
#define ADC_EXAMPLE_CALIBRATION_DATA_RA6M1 (0x7D5)
#define ADC_EXAMPLE_VCC_MICROVOLT (3300000)
#define ADC_EXAMPLE_TEMPERATURE_RESOLUTION (12U)
#define ADC_EXAMPLE_REFERENCE_CALIBRATION_TEMPERATURE (127)
void adc_temperature_example (void)
{
 /* The following example calculates the temperature on an RA6M1 device using the
data provided in the section
  * 44.3.1 "Preparation for Using the Temperature Sensor" of the RA6M1 manual
R01UH0884EJ0100. */
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_ADC_Open(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable temperature sensor. */
    err = R_ADC_ScanCfg(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_channel_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* In software trigger mode, start a scan by calling R_ADC_ScanStart(). In other
modes, enable external
  * triggers by calling R_ADC_ScanStart(). */
    (void) R_ADC_ScanStart(&g_adc0_ctrl);
 /* Wait for conversion to complete. */
 adc_status_t status;
    status.state = ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS;
 while (ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS == status.state)
    {
       (void) R_ADC_StatusGet(&g_adc0_ctrl, &status);
    }
 /* Read converted data. */
    uint16_t temperature_conversion_result;
    err = R_ADC_Read(&g_adc0_ctrl, ADC_CHANNEL_TEMPERATURE,
&temperature_conversion_result);
    handle_error(err);
#if BSP_FEATURE_ADC_TSN_CALIBRATION_AVAILABLE
 /* Get Calibration data from the MCU. */
    int32_t    reference_calibration_data;
 adc_info_t adc_info;
    (void) R_ADC_InfoGet(&g_adc0_ctrl, &adc_info);
    reference_calibration_data = (int32_t) adc_info.calibration_data;
#else
 /* If the MCU does not provide calibration data, use the value in the hardware
manual or determine it
  * experimentally. */
    int32_t reference_calibration_data = ADC_EXAMPLE_CALIBRATION_DATA_RA6M1;
```

```
#endif
 /* NOTE: The slope of the temperature sensor varies from sensor to sensor. Renesas
recommends calculating
  * the slope of the temperature sensor experimentally.
  *
  * This example uses the typical slope provided in Table 52.38 "TSN characteristics"
in the RA6M1 manual
  * R01UM0011EU0050. */
    int32_t slope_uv_per_c = BSP_FEATURE_ADC_TSN_SLOPE;
 /* Formula for calculating temperature copied from section 44.3.1 "Preparation for
Using the Temperature Sensor"
  * of the RA6M1 manual R01UH0884EJ0100:
  *
  * In this MCU, the TSCDR register stores the temperature value (CAL127) of the
temperature sensor measured
  * under the condition Ta = Tj = 127 C and AVCC0 = 3.3 V. By using this value as the
sample measurement result
  * at the first point, preparation before using the temperature sensor can be
omitted.
  *
  * If V1 is calculated from CAL127,
  * V1 = 3.3 * CAL127 / 4096 [V]
  *
  * Using this, the measured temperature can be calculated according to the following
formula.
  *
  * T = (Vs - V1) / Slope + 127 [C]
  * T: Measured temperature (C)
  * Vs: Voltage output by the temperature sensor when the temperature is measured (V)
  * V1: Voltage output by the temperature sensor when Ta = Tj = 127 C and AVCC0 = 3.3
V (V)
  * Slope: Temperature slope given in Table 52.38 / 1000 (V/C)
  */
    int32_t v1_uv = (ADC_EXAMPLE_VCC_MICROVOLT >> ADC_EXAMPLE_TEMPERATURE_RESOLUTION)
```

```
*
                   reference_calibration_data;
    int32_t vs_uv = (ADC_EXAMPLE_VCC_MICROVOLT >> ADC_EXAMPLE_TEMPERATURE_RESOLUTION)
*
                   temperature_conversion_result;
    int32_t temperature_c = (vs_uv - v1_uv) / slope_uv_per_c +
ADC_EXAMPLE_REFERENCE_CALIBRATION_TEMPERATURE;
 /* Expect room temperature, break if temperature is outside the range of 20 C to 25
C. */
 if ((temperature_c < 20) || (temperature_c > 25))
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
}
```

Double-Trigger Example

This example demonstrates reading data from a double-trigger scan. A flag is used to wait for a callback event. Two scans must occur before the callback is called. These results are read via R_ADC_Read using the selected channel enum value as well as ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX.

```
volatile bool scan_complete_flag = false;
void adc_callback (adc_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
    scan_complete_flag = true;
}
void adc_double_trigger_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the module. */
    err = R_ADC_Open(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable double-trigger channel. */
    err = R_ADC_ScanCfg(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_channel_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable scan triggering from ELC events. */
    (void) R_ADC_ScanStart(&g_adc0_ctrl);
 /* Wait for conversion to complete. Two scans must be triggered before a callback
occurs. */
    scan_complete_flag = false;
 while (!scan_complete_flag)
    {
 /* Wait for callback to set flag. */
    }
 /* Read converted data from both scans. */
    uint16_t channel1_conversion_result_0;
    uint16_t channel1_conversion_result_1;
    err = R_ADC_Read(&g_adc0_ctrl, ADC_CHANNEL_1, &channel1_conversion_result_0);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_ADC_Read(&g_adc0_ctrl, ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX,
&channel1_conversion_result_1);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	adc_sample_state_t
struct	adc_extended_cfg_t
struct	adc_channel_cfg_t
struct	adc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	adc_mask_t
enum	adc_add_t
enum	adc_clear_t
enum	adc_vref_control_t
enum	adc_sample_state_reg_t

enum	adc_group_a_t
enum	adc_double_trigger_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ adc_sample_state_t

struct adc_sample_state_t

ADC sample state configuration

Data Fields

adc_sample_state_reg_t	reg_id	Sample state register ID.
uint8_t	num_states	Number of sampling states for conversion. Ch16-20/21 use the same value.

◆ adc_extended_cfg_t

struct adc_extended_cfg_t

Extended configuration structure for ADC.

Data Fields

adc_add_t	add_average_count	Add or average samples.
adc_clear_t	clearing	Clear after read.
adc_trigger_t	trigger_group_b	Group B trigger source; valid only for group mode.
adc_double_trigger_t	double_trigger_mode	Double-trigger mode setting.
adc_vref_control_t	adc_vref_control	VREFADC output voltage control.

◆ adc_channel_cfg_t

struct adc_channel_cfg_t

ADC channel(s) configuration

Data Fields

uint32_t	scan_mask	Channels/bits: bit 0 is ch0; bit 15 is ch15.
uint32_t	scan_mask_group_b	Valid for group modes.
uint32_t	add_mask	Valid if add enabled in Open().
adc_group_a_t	priority_group_a	Valid for group modes.
uint8_t	sample_hold_mask	Channels/bits 0-2.
uint8_t	sample_hold_states	Number of states to be used for sample and hold. Affects

		channels 0-2.

◆ adc_instance_ctrl_t

struct adc_instance_ctrl_t
ADC instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialized in adc_api_t::open().

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ adc_mask_t

enum adc_mask_t	
For ADC Scan configuration adc_channel_cfg_t::scan_mask, adc_channel_cfg_t::scan_mask_group_b , adc_channel_cfg_t::add_mask and adc_channel_cfg_t::sample_hold_mask. Use bitwise OR to combine these masks for desired channels and sensors.	
Enumerator	
ADC_MASK_OFF	No channels selected.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_0	Channel 0 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_1	Channel 1 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_2	Channel 2 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_3	Channel 3 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_4	Channel 4 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_5	Channel 5 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_6	Channel 6 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_7	Channel 7 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_8	Channel 8 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_9	Channel 9 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_10	Channel 10 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_11	Channel 11 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_12	Channel 12 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_13	Channel 13 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_14	

	Channel 14 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_15	Channel 15 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_16	Channel 16 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_17	Channel 17 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_18	Channel 18 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_19	Channel 19 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_20	Channel 20 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_21	Channel 21 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_22	Channel 22 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_23	Channel 23 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_24	Channel 24 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_25	Channel 25 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_26	Channel 26 mask.
ADC_MASK_CHANNEL_27	Channel 27 mask.
ADC_MASK_TEMPERATURE	Temperature sensor channel mask.
ADC_MASK_VOLT	Voltage reference channel mask.
ADC_MASK_SENSORS	All sensor channel mask.

◆ adc_add_t

enum adc_add_t	
ADC data sample addition and averaging options	
Enumerator	
ADC_ADD_OFF	Addition turned off for channels/sensors.
ADC_ADD_TWO	Add two samples.
ADC_ADD_THREE	Add three samples.
ADC_ADD_FOUR	Add four samples.
ADC_ADD_SIXTEEN	Add sixteen samples.
ADC_ADD_AVERAGE_TWO	Average two samples.
ADC_ADD_AVERAGE_FOUR	Average four samples.
ADC_ADD_AVERAGE_EIGHT	Average eight samples.
ADC_ADD_AVERAGE_SIXTEEN	Add sixteen samples.

◆ adc_clear_t

enum adc_clear_t	
ADC clear after read definitions	
Enumerator	
ADC_CLEAR_AFTER_READ_OFF	Clear after read off.
ADC_CLEAR_AFTER_READ_ON	Clear after read on.

◆ adc_vref_control_t

enum adc_vref_control_t	
ADC VREFAMPCNT config options Reference Table 32.12 "VREFADC output voltage control list" in the RA2A1 manual R01UH0888EJ0100.	
Enumerator	
ADC_VREF_CONTROL_VREFH	VREFAMPCNT reset value. VREFADC Output voltage is Hi-Z.
ADC_VREF_CONTROL_1_5V_OUTPUT	BGR turn ON. VREFADC Output voltage is 1.5 V.
ADC_VREF_CONTROL_2_0V_OUTPUT	BGR turn ON. VREFADC Output voltage is 2.0 V.
ADC_VREF_CONTROL_2_5V_OUTPUT	BGR turn ON. VREFADC Output voltage is 2.5 V.

◆ adc_sample_state_reg_t

enum adc_sample_state_reg_t	
ADC sample state registers	
Enumerator	
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_0	Sample state register channel 0.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_1	Sample state register channel 1.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_2	Sample state register channel 2.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_3	Sample state register channel 3.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_4	Sample state register channel 4.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_5	Sample state register channel 5.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_6	Sample state register channel 6.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_7	Sample state register channel 7.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_8	Sample state register channel 8.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_9	Sample state register channel 9.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_10	Sample state register channel 10.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_11	Sample state register channel 11.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_12	Sample state register channel 12.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_13	Sample state register channel 13.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_14	Sample state register channel 14.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_15	Sample state register channel 15.
ADC_SAMPLE_STATE_CHANNEL_16_TO_31	Sample state register channel 16 to 31.

◆ adc_group_a_t

enum adc_group_a_t	
ADC action for group A interrupts group B scan. This enumeration is used to specify the priority between Group A and B in group mode.	
Enumerator	
ADC_GROUP_A_PRIORITY_OFF	Group A ignored and does not interrupt ongoing group B scan.
ADC_GROUP_A_GROUP_B_WAIT_FOR_TRIGGER	Group A interrupts Group B(single scan) which restarts at next Group B trigger.
ADC_GROUP_A_GROUP_B_RESTART_SCAN	Group A interrupts Group B(single scan) which restarts immediately after Group A scan is complete.
ADC_GROUP_A_GROUP_B_CONTINUOUS_SCAN	Group A interrupts Group B(continuous scan) which continues scanning without a new Group B trigger.

◆ adc_double_trigger_t

enum adc_double_trigger_t	
ADC double-trigger mode definitions	
Enumerator	
ADC_DOUBLE_TRIGGER_DISABLED	Double-triggering disabled.
ADC_DOUBLE_TRIGGER_ENABLED	Double-triggering enabled.
ADC_DOUBLE_TRIGGER_ENABLED_EXTENDED	Double-triggering enabled on both ADC ELC events.

Function Documentation

◆ R_ADC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_Open (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Sets the operational mode, trigger sources, interrupt priority, and configurations for the peripheral as a whole. If interrupt is enabled, the function registers a callback function pointer for notifying the user whenever a scan has completed.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is ready for use.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The instance control structure has already been opened.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	A callback is provided, but the interrupt is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The requested unit does not exist on this MCU.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_HW_CONDITION	The ADC clock must be at least 1 MHz

◆ R_ADC_ScanCfg()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanCfg (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, void const *const *p_extend*)

Configures the ADC scan parameters. Channel specific settings are set in this function. Pass a pointer to adc_channel_cfg_t to p_extend.

Note

This starts group B scans if adc_channel_cfg_t::priority_group_a is set to ADC_GROUP_A_GROUP_B_CONTINUOUS_SCAN.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel specific settings applied.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_InfoGet (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_info_t * *p_adc_info*)

Returns the address of the lowest number configured channel and the total number of bytes to be read in order to read the results of the configured channels and return the ELC Event name. If no channels are configured, then a length of 0 is returned.

Also provides the temperature sensor slope and the calibration data for the sensor if available on this MCU. Otherwise, invalid calibration data of 0xFFFFFFFF will be returned.

Note

In group mode, information is returned for group A only. Calculating information for group B is not currently supported.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored in p_adc_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_ScanStart()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanStart (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Starts a software scan or enables the hardware trigger for a scan depending on how the triggers were configured in the R_ADC_Open call. If the unit was configured for ELC or external hardware triggering, then this function allows the trigger signal to get to the ADC unit. The function is not able to control the generation of the trigger itself. If the unit was configured for software triggering, then this function starts the software triggered scan.

Precondition

Call R_ADC_ScanCfg after R_ADC_Open before starting a scan.
On MCUs that support calibration, call R_ADC_Calibrate and wait for calibration to complete before starting a scan.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Scan started (software trigger) or hardware triggers enabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another scan is still in progress (software trigger).

◆ R_ADC_ScanStop()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_ScanStop (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Stops the software scan or disables the unit from being triggered by the hardware trigger (ELC or external) based on what type of trigger the unit was configured for in the R_ADC_Open function. Stopping a hardware triggered scan via this function does not abort an ongoing scan, but prevents the next scan from occurring. Stopping a software triggered scan aborts an ongoing scan.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Scan stopped (software trigger) or hardware triggers disabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_StatusGet (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_status_t * *p_status*)

Provides the status of any scan process that was started, including scans started by ELC or external triggers and calibration scans on MCUs that support calibration.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module status stored in the provided pointer p_status
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_Read()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_Read (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_channel_t const *reg_id*, uint16_t *const *p_data*)

Reads conversion results from a single channel or sensor.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data read into provided p_data.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_Read32()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_Read32 (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_channel_t const *reg_id*, uint32_t *const *p_data*)

Reads conversion results from a single channel or sensor register into a 32-bit result.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data read into provided p_data.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_SampleStateCountSet()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_SampleStateCountSet (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_sample_state_t * *p_sample*)

Sets the sample state count for individual channels. This only needs to be set for special use cases. Normally, use the default values out of reset.

Note

The sample states for the temperature and voltage sensor are set in R_ADC_ScanCfg.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Sample state count updated.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_Close (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

This function ends any scan in progress, disables interrupts, and removes power to the A/D peripheral.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_OffsetSet()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_OffsetSet (adc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, adc_channel_t const *reg_id*, int32_t *offset*)

adc_api_t::offsetSet is not supported on the ADC.

Return values

FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Function not supported in this implementation.

◆ R_ADC_Calibrate()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_Calibrate (adc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, void *const *p_extend*)

Initiates calibration of the ADC on MCUs that require calibration. This function must be called before starting a scan on MCUs that require calibration.

Calibration is complete when the callback is called with ADC_EVENT_CALIBRATION_COMPLETE or when R_ADC_StatusGet returns ADC_STATUS_IDLE. Reference Figure 32.35 "Software flow and operation example of calibration operation." in the RA2A1 manual R01UH0888EJ0100.

ADC calibration time: 12 PCLKB + 774,930 ADCLK. (Reference Table 32.16 "Required calibration time (shown as the number of ADCLK and PCLKB cycles)" in the RA2A1 manual R01UH0888EJ0100. The lowest supported ADCLK is 1MHz.

Calibration will take a minimum of 24 milliseconds at 32 MHz PCLKB and ADCLK. This wait could take up to 780 milliseconds for a 1 MHz PCLKD (ADCLK).

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the instance control structure
[in]	p_extend	Unused argument. Pass NULL.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Calibration successfully initiated.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_HW_CONDITION	A scan is in progress or hardware triggers are enabled.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Calibration not supported on this MCU.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Unit is not open.

◆ R_ADC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_ADC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Retrieve the API version number.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version stored in the provided p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input argument is invalid.

5.2.4 Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (r_agt)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_AGT_Close (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_PeriodSet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const period_counts)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_DutyCycleSet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const duty_cycle_counts, uint32_t const pin)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_Reset (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_Start (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_Enable (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_Disable (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_InfoGet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_StatusGet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_Stop (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_Open (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_AGT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the AGT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Timer Interface.

Overview

Features

The AGT module has the following features:

- Supports periodic mode, one-shot mode, and PWM mode.
- Signal can be output to a pin.
- Configurable period (counts per timer cycle).
- Configurable duty cycle in PWM mode.
- Configurable clock source, including PCLKB, LOCO, SUBCLK, and external sources input to AGTIO.
- Supports runtime reconfiguration of period.
- Supports runtime reconfiguration of duty cycle in PWM mode.
- Supports counting based on an external clock input to AGTIO.
- Supports debounce filter on AGTIO pins.
- Supports measuring pulse width or pulse period.
- APIs are provided to start, stop, and reset the counter.
- APIs are provided to get the current period, source clock frequency, and count direction.
- APIs are provided to get the current timer status and counter value.

Selecting a Timer

RA MCUs have two timer peripherals: the General PWM Timer (GPT) and the Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGT). When selecting between them, consider these factors:

	GPT	AGT
Low Power Modes	The GPT can operate in sleep mode.	The AGT can operate in all low power modes (when count source is LOCO or subclock).
Available Channels	The number of GPT channels is device specific. All currently supported MCUs have at least 7 GPT channels.	All MCUs have 2 AGT channels.
Timer Resolution	All MCUs have at least one 32-bit GPT timer.	The AGT timers are 16-bit timers.
Clock Source	The GPT runs off PCLKD with a configurable divider up to 1024. It can also be configured to count ELC events or external pulses.	The AGT runs off PCLKB, LOCO, or subclock with a configurable divider up to 8 for PCLKB or up to 128 for LOCO or subclock.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_agt

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_agt_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Pin Output Support	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	If selected code for outputting a waveform to a pin is included in the build.
Pin Input Support	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	Enable input support to use pulse width measurement mode, pulse period measurement mode, or input from P402, P402, or AGTIO.

Configurations for Driver > Timers > Timer Driver on r_agt

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Timers > Timer Driver on r_agt:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_timer0	Module name.
General > Channel	Available AGT Channels are 0 and 1	0	Physical hardware channel.
General > Mode	• Periodic • One-Shot • PWM	Periodic	Mode selection. Note: One-shot mode is implemented in software. ISR's must be enabled for one shot even if callback is unused.
General > Period	Value must be non-negative	0x10000	Specify the timer period based on the selected unit. When the unit is set to 'Raw Counts', setting the period to 0x10000 results in the maximum period at the lowest divisor (fastest timer tick). Set the period to 0x10000 for a free running timer, pulse

			width measurement or pulse period measurement. Setting the period higher will automatically select a higher divider; the period can be set up to 0x80000 when counting from PCLKB or 0x800000 when counting from LOCO/subclock, which will use a divider of 8 or 128 respectively with the maximum period.
General > Period Unit	• Raw Counts • Nanoseconds • Microseconds • Milliseconds • Seconds • Hertz • Kilohertz	Raw Counts	Unit of the period specified above
General > Count Source	• PCLKB • LOCO • SUBCLOCK • AGT0 Underflow • P402 Input • P403 Input • AGTIO Input	PCLKB	AGT counter clock source. NOTE: The divisor is calculated automatically by the configurator. See agt_count_source_t documentation for details.
Output > Duty Cycle Percent (only applicable in PWM mode)	Value must be between 0 and 100	50	Specify the timer duty cycle percent. Only used in PWM mode.
Output > AGTOA Output	• Disabled • Start Level Low • Start Level High	Disabled	Configure AGTOA output.
Output > AGTOB Output	• Disabled • Start Level Low • Start Level High	Disabled	Configure AGTOB output.
Output > AGTO Output	• Disabled • Start Level Low • Start Level High	Disabled	Configure AGTO output.
Input > Measurement Mode	• Measure Disabled • Measure Low Level Pulse Width • Measure High Level Pulse	Measure Disabled	Select if the AGT should be used to measure pulse width or pulse period. In high level pulse width measurement mode, the AGT counts when

	Width • Measure Pulse Period		AGTIO is high and starts counting immediately in the middle of a pulse if AGTIO is high when R_AGT_Start() is called. In low level pulse width measurement mode, the AGT counts when AGTIO is low and could start counting in the middle of a pulse if AGTIO is low when R_AGT_Start() is called.
Input > AGTIO Filter	• No Filter • Filter sampled at PCLKB • Filter sampled at PCLKB / 8 • Filter sampled at PCLKB / 32	No Filter	Input filter, applies AGTIO in pulse period measurement, pulse width measurement, or event counter mode. The filter requires the signal to be at the same level for 3 successive reads at the specified filter frequency.
Input > Enable Pin	• Enable Pin Not Used • Enable Pin Active Low • Enable Pin Active High	Enable Pin Not Used	Select active edge for the AGTEE pin if used. Only applies if the count source is P402, P403 or AGTIO.
Input > Trigger Edge	• Trigger Edge Rising • Trigger Edge Falling • Trigger Edge Both	Trigger Edge Rising	Select the trigger edge. Applies if measurement mode is pulse period, or if the count source is P402, P403, or AGTIO. Do not select Trigger Edge Both with pulse period measurement.
Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function. If this callback function is provided, it is called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time the timer period elapses.
Interrupts > Underflow Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Timer interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The AGT clock is based on the PCLKB, LOCO, or Subclock frequency. You can set the clock frequency using the clock configurator in e2 studio or using the CGC Interface at run-time.

Pin Configuration

This module can use the AGTOA and AGTOB pins as output pins for periodic, one-shot, or PWM signals.

For input capture, the input signal must be applied to the AGTIOn pin.

For event counting, the AGTEEn enable pin is optional.

Timer Period

The RA Configuration tool will automatically calculate the period count value and source clock divider based on the selected period time, units and clock speed.

When the selected unit is "Raw counts", the maximum allowed period setting varies depending on the selected clock source:

Clock source	Maximum period (counts)
LOCO/Subclock	0x800000
PCLKB	0x80000
All other sources	0x10000

Note

Though the AGT is a 16-bit timer, because the period interrupt occurs when the counter underflows, setting the period register to 0 results in an effective period of 1 count. For this reason all user-provided raw count values reflect the actual number of period counts (not the raw register values).

Usage Notes

Starting and Stopping the AGT

After starting or stopping the timer, AGT registers cannot be accessed until the AGT state is updated after 3 AGTCLK cycles. If another AGT function is called before the 3 AGTCLK period elapses, the function spins waiting for the AGT state to update. The required wait time after starting or stopping the timer can be determined using the frequency of AGTCLK, which is derived from timer_cfg_t::source_div and agt_extended_cfg_t::count_source.

The application is responsible for ensuring required clocks are started and stable before accessing MCU peripheral registers.

Warning

The subclock can take seconds to stabilize. The RA startup code does not wait for subclock stabilization unless the subclock is the main clock source. When running AGT or RTC off the subclock, the application must ensure the subclock is stable before starting operation.

Low Power Modes

The AGT1 (channel 1 only) can be used to enter snooze mode or to wake the MCU from snooze, software standby, or deep software standby modes when a counter underflow occurs. The compare match A and B events can also be used to wake from software standby or snooze modes.

One-Shot Mode

The AGT timer does not support one-shot mode natively. One-shot mode is achieved by stopping the timer in the interrupt service routine before the callback is called. If the interrupt is not serviced before the timer period expires again, the timer generates more than one event. The callback is only called once in this case, but multiple events may be generated if the timer is linked to the Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc).

One-Shot Mode Output

The output waveform in one-shot mode is one AGT clock cycle less than the configured period. The configured period must be at least 2 counts to generate an output pulse.

Examples of one-shot signals that can be generated by this module are shown below:

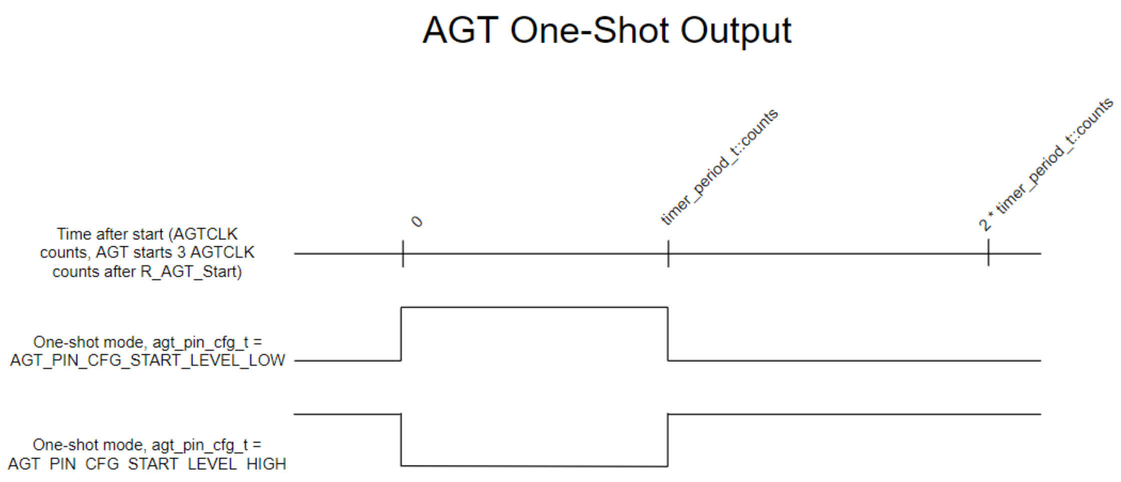

AGT One-Shot Output
0
timer_period_t::counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts
Time after start (AGTCLK counts, AGT starts 3 AGTCLK counts after R_AGT_Start)
One-shot mode, agt_pin_cfg_t = AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_LOW
One-shot mode, agt_pin_cfg_t = AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_HIGH

Figure 106: AGT One-Shot Output

Periodic Output

The AGTOA or AGTOB pin toggles twice each time the timer expires in periodic mode. This is achieved by defining a PWM wave at a 50 percent duty cycle so that the period of the resulting square (from rising edge to rising edge) matches the period of the AGT timer. Since the periodic output is actually a PWM output, the time at the stop level is one cycle shorter than the time opposite the stop level for odd period values.

Examples of periodic signals that can be generated by this module are shown below:

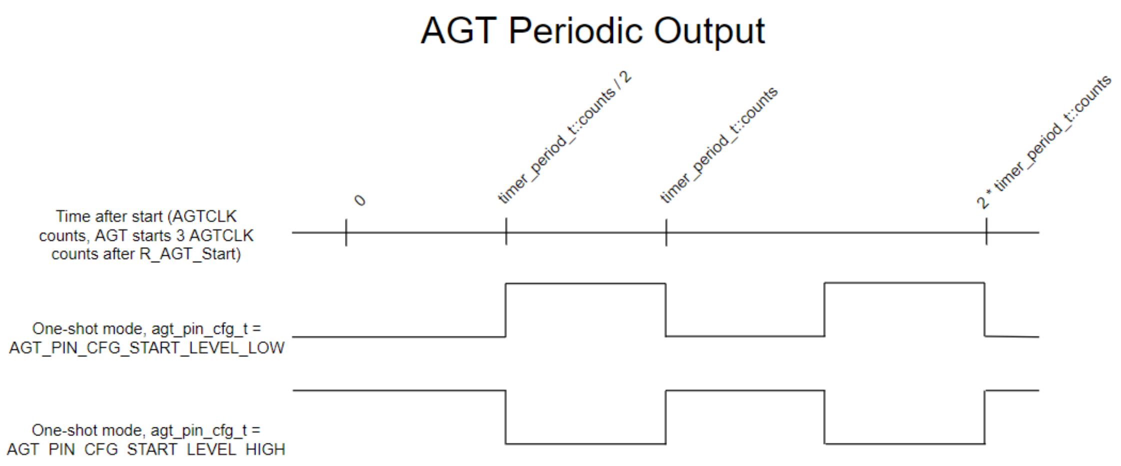

AGT Periodic Output
0
timer_period_t::counts / 2
timer_period_t::counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts
Time after start (AGTCLK counts, AGT starts 3 AGTCLK counts after R_AGT_Start)
One-shot mode, agt_pin_cfg_t = AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_LOW
One-shot mode, agt_pin_cfg_t = AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_HIGH

Figure 107: AGT Periodic Output

PWM Output

This module does not support in phase PWM output. The PWM output signal is low at the beginning of the cycle and high at the end of the cycle.

Examples of PWM signals that can be generated by this module are shown below:

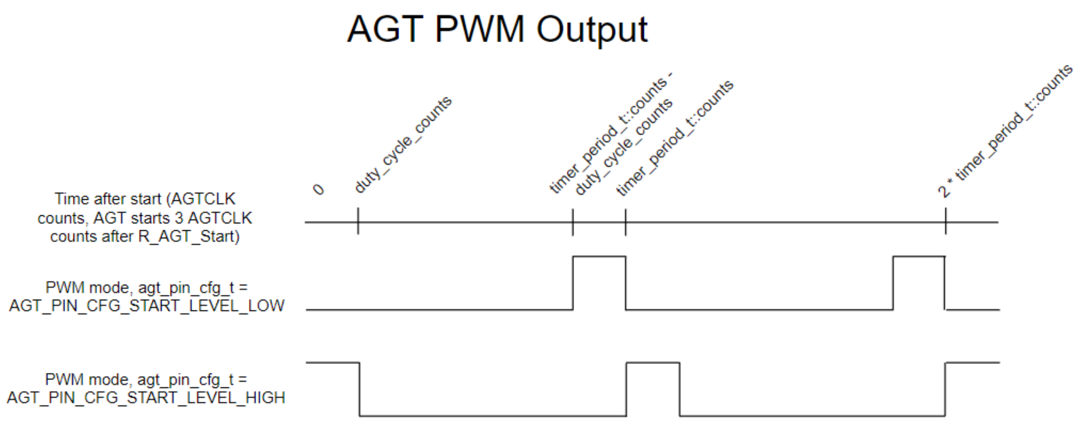

AGT PWM Output
0
duty_cycle_counts
timer_period_t::counts - duty_cycle_counts
timer_period_t::counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts
Time after start (AGTCLK counts, AGT starts 3 AGTCLK counts after R_AGT_Start)
PWM mode, agt_pin_cfg_t = AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_LOW
PWM mode, agt_pin_cfg_t = AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_HIGH

Figure 108: AGT PWM Output

Triggering ELC Events with AGT

The AGT timer can trigger the start of other peripherals. The Event Link Controller (r_elc) guide provides a list of all available peripherals.

Examples

AGT Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the AGT in an application.

```
void agt_basic_example (void)
```

```
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_AGT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
}
```

AGT Callback Example

This is an example of a timer callback.

```
/* Example callback called when timer expires. */
void timer_callback (timer_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (TIMER_EVENT_CYCLE_END == p_args->event)
    {
 /* Add application code to be called periodically here. */
    }
}
```

AGT Free Running Counter Example

To use the AGT as a free running counter, select periodic mode and set the the Period to 0xFFFF.

```
void agt_counter_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
```

```
    (void) R_AGT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* (Optional) Stop the timer. */
    (void) R_AGT_Stop(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* Read the current counter value. Counter value is in status.counter. */
 timer_status_t status;
    (void) R_AGT_StatusGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &status);
}
```

AGT Input Capture Example

This is an example of using the AGT to capture pulse width or pulse period measurements.

```
/* Example callback called when a capture occurs. */
uint64_t g_captured_time    = 0U;
uint32_t g_capture_overflows = 0U;
void timer_capture_callback (timer_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (TIMER_EVENT_CAPTURE_A == p_args->event)
    {
 /* (Optional) Get the current period if not known. */
 timer_info_t info;
       (void) R_AGT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
       uint32_t period = info.period_counts;
 /* Process capture from AGTIO. */
       g_captured_time    = ((uint64_t) period * g_capture_overflows) +
p_args->capture;
       g_capture_overflows = 0U;
    }
 if (TIMER_EVENT_CYCLE_END == p_args->event)
    {
 /* An overflow occurred during capture. This must be accounted for at the
application layer. */
       g_capture_overflows++;
    }
}
```

```
void agt_capture_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable captures. Captured values arrive in the interrupt. */
    (void) R_AGT_Enable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* (Optional) Disable captures. */
    (void) R_AGT_Disable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
}
```

AGT Period Update Example

This an example of updating the period.

```
#define AGT_EXAMPLE_MSEC_PER_SEC (1000)
#define AGT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_PERIOD_MSEC (20)
/* This example shows how to calculate a new period value at runtime. */
void agt_period_calculation_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_AGT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* Get the source clock frequency (in Hz). There are several ways to do this in FSP:
  * - If LOCO or subclock is chosen in agt_extended_cfg_t::clock_source
  * - The source clock frequency is BSP_LOCO_HZ >> timer_cfg_t::source_div
  * - If PCLKB is chosen in agt_extended_cfg_t::clock_source and the PCLKB frequency
has not changed since reset,
  * - The source clock frequency is BSP_STARTUP_PCLKB_HZ >> timer_cfg_t::source_div
  * - Use the R_AGT_InfoGet function (it accounts for the clock source and divider).
  * - Calculate the current PCLKB frequency using
R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKB) and right shift
  * by timer_cfg_t::source_div.
  *
  * This example uses the last option (R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet).
  */
    uint32_t timer_freq_hz = R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKB) >>
g_timer0_cfg.source_div;
 /* Calculate the desired period based on the current clock. Note that this
calculation could overflow if the
  * desired period is larger than UINT32_MAX / pclkb_freq_hz. A cast to uint64_t is
used to prevent this. */
    uint32_t period_counts =
       (uint32_t) (((uint64_t) timer_freq_hz * AGT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_PERIOD_MSEC) /
AGT_EXAMPLE_MSEC_PER_SEC);
 /* Set the calculated period. This will return an error if parameter checking is
enabled and the calculated
  * period is larger than UINT16_MAX. */
    err = R_AGT_PeriodSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, period_counts);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

AGT Duty Cycle Update Example

This an example of updating the duty cycle.

```
#define AGT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_DUTY_CYCLE_PERCENT (25)
#define AGT_EXAMPLE_MAX_PERCENT (100)
/* This example shows how to calculate a new duty cycle value at runtime. */
void agt_duty_cycle_calculation_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_AGT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* Get the current period setting. */
 timer_info_t info;
    (void) R_AGT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
    uint32_t current_period_counts = info.period_counts;
 /* Calculate the desired duty cycle based on the current period. */
    uint32_t duty_cycle_counts = (current_period_counts *
AGT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_DUTY_CYCLE_PERCENT) /
                                 AGT_EXAMPLE_MAX_PERCENT;
 /* Set the calculated duty cycle. */
    err = R_AGT_DutyCycleSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, duty_cycle_counts, AGT_OUTPUT_PIN_AGTOA
);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

AGT Cascaded Timers Example

This an example of using AGT0 underflow as the count source for AGT1.

```
/* This example shows how use cascaded timers. The count source for AGT channel 1 is
set to AGT0 underflow. */
void agt_cascaded_timers_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the timers in any order. */
    err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer_channel0_ctrl, &g_timer_channel0_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer_channel1_ctrl, &g_timer_channel1_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start AGT channel 1 first. */
    (void) R_AGT_Start(&g_timer_channel1_ctrl);
    (void) R_AGT_Start(&g_timer_channel0_ctrl);
 /* (Optional) Stop AGT channel 0 first. */
    (void) R_AGT_Stop(&g_timer_channel0_ctrl);
    (void) R_AGT_Stop(&g_timer_channel1_ctrl);
 /* Read the current counter value. Counter value is in status.counter. */
 timer_status_t status;
    (void) R_AGT_StatusGet(&g_timer_channel1_ctrl, &status);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	agt_instance_ctrl_t
struct	agt_extended_cfg_t

Enumerations

enum	agt_clock_t
enum	agt_measure_t
enum	agt_agtio_filter_t
enum	agt_enable_pin_t
enum	agt_trigger_edge_t
enum	agt_output_pin_t
enum	agt_pin_cfg_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ agt_instance_ctrl_t

struct agt_instance_ctrl_t

Channel control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when timer_api_t::open is called.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	open	Whether or not channel is open.
const timer_cfg_t *	p_cfg	Pointer to initial configurations.
R_AGT0_Type *	p_reg	Base register for this channel.
uint32_t	period	Current timer period (counts)

◆ agt_extended_cfg_t

struct agt_extended_cfg_t

Optional AGT extension data structure.

Data Fields		
agt_clock_t	count_source	AGT channel clock source. Valid values are: AGT_CLOCK_PCLKB, AGT_CLOCK_LOCO, AGT_CLOCK_FSUB.
union agt_extended_cfg_t	__unnamed__	
agt_pin_cfg_t	agto: 3	Configure AGTO pin,. *Note* *AGTIO polarity is opposite AGTO*
agt_measure_t	measurement_mode	Measurement mode.
agt_agtio_filter_t	agtio_filter	Input filter for AGTIO.
agt_enable_pin_t	enable_pin	Enable pin (event counting only)
agt_trigger_edge_t	trigger_edge	Trigger edge to start pulse period measurement or count external event.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ agt_clock_t

enum agt_clock_t

Count source

Enumerator	
AGT_CLOCK_PCLKB	PCLKB count source, division by 1, 2, or 8 allowed. Counter clock source is PCLKB when AGT_CLOCK_PCLKB, AGT_CLOCK_PCLKB_DIV_2, or AGT_CLOCK_PCLKB_DIV_8 is selected. The PCLKB divisor is selected automatically by the configurator as either PCLKB/1, PCLKB/2, or PCLKB/8. If the timer_cfg_t::unit is TIMER_UNIT_PERIOD_RAW_COUNTS, the timer_cfg_t::period should be the desired value in PCLKB counts, even if the value would exceed 16 bits. For example, if a period of 0x30000 counts is requested, a divisor of PCLKB/8 is be selected and the counter underflows after 0x6000 counts.
AGT_CLOCK_LOCO	LOCO count source, division by 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, or 128 allowed.
AGT_CLOCK_AGT0_UNDERFLOW	Underflow event signal from AGT0, division must be 1.
AGT_CLOCK_SUBCLOCK	Subclock count source, division by 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, or 128 allowed.
AGT_CLOCK_P402	Counts events on P402, events are counted in deep software standby mode.
AGT_CLOCK_P403	Counts events on P403, events are counted in deep software standby mode.
AGT_CLOCK_AGTIO	Counts events on AGTIOn, events are not counted in software standby modes.

◆ agt_measure_t

enum agt_measure_t

Enable pin for event counting mode.

Enumerator	
AGT_MEASURE_DISABLED	AGT used as a counter.
AGT_MEASURE_PULSE_WIDTH_LOW_LEVEL	AGT used to measure low level pulse width.
AGT_MEASURE_PULSE_WIDTH_HIGH_LEVEL	AGT used to measure high level pulse width.
AGT_MEASURE_PULSE_PERIOD	AGT used to measure pulse period.

◆ agt_agtio_filter_t

enum agt_agtio_filter_t

Input filter, applies AGTIO in pulse period measurement, pulse width measurement, or event counter mode. The filter requires the signal to be at the same level for 3 successive reads at the specified filter frequency.

Enumerator	
AGT_AGTIO_FILTER_NONE	No filter.
AGT_AGTIO_FILTER_PCLKB	Filter at PCLKB.
AGT_AGTIO_FILTER_PCLKB_DIV_8	Filter at PCLKB / 8.
AGT_AGTIO_FILTER_PCLKB_DIV_32	Filter at PCLKB / 32.

◆ agt_enable_pin_t

enum agt_enable_pin_t

Enable pin for event counting mode.

Enumerator	
AGT_ENABLE_PIN_NOT_USED	AGTEE is not used.
AGT_ENABLE_PIN_ACTIVE_LOW	Events are only counted when AGTEE is low.
AGT_ENABLE_PIN_ACTIVE_HIGH	Events are only counted when AGTEE is high.

◆ agt_trigger_edge_t

enum agt_trigger_edge_t	
Trigger edge for pulse period measurement mode and event counting mode.	
Enumerator	
AGT_TRIGGER_EDGE_RISING	Measurement starts or events are counted on rising edge.
AGT_TRIGGER_EDGE_FALLING	Measurement starts or events are counted on falling edge.
AGT_TRIGGER_EDGE_BOTH	Events are counted on both edges (n/a for pulse period mode)

◆ agt_output_pin_t

enum agt_output_pin_t	
Output pins, used to select which duty cycle to update in R_AGT_DutyCycleSet().	
Enumerator	
AGT_OUTPUT_PIN_AGTOA	GTIOCA.
AGT_OUTPUT_PIN_AGTOB	GTIOCB.

◆ agt_pin_cfg_t

enum agt_pin_cfg_t	
Level of AGT pin	
Enumerator	
AGT_PIN_CFG_DISABLED	Not used as output pin.
AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_LOW	Pin level low.
AGT_PIN_CFG_START_LEVEL_HIGH	Pin level high.

Function Documentation

◆ R_AGT_Close()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_Close (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops counter, disables interrupts, disables output pins, and clears internal driver data. Implements timer_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Timer closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_PeriodSet()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_PeriodSet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t const *period_counts*)

Updates period. The new period is updated immediately and the counter is reset to the maximum value. Implements timer_api_t::periodSet.

Warning

If periodic output is used, the duty cycle buffer registers are updated after the period buffer register. If this function is called while the timer is running and an AGT underflow occurs during processing, the duty cycle will not be the desired 50% duty cycle until the counter underflow after processing completes.
Stop the timer before calling this function if one-shot output is used.

Example:

```
 /* Get the source clock frequency (in Hz). There are several ways to do this in FSP:
  * - If LOCO or subclock is chosen in agt_extended_cfg_t::clock_source
  * - The source clock frequency is BSP_LOCO_HZ >> timer_cfg_t::source_div
  * - If PCLKB is chosen in agt_extended_cfg_t::clock_source and the PCLKB frequency
has not changed since reset,
  * - The source clock frequency is BSP_STARTUP_PCLKB_HZ >> timer_cfg_t::source_div
  * - Use the R_AGT_InfoGet function (it accounts for the clock source and divider).
  * - Calculate the current PCLKB frequency using
R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKB) and right shift
  * by timer_cfg_t::source_div.
  *
  * This example uses the last option (R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet).
  */
    uint32_t timer_freq_hz = R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKB) >>
```

```
g_timer0_cfg.source_div;
 /* Calculate the desired period based on the current clock. Note that this
calculation could overflow if the
  * desired period is larger than UINT32_MAX / pclkb_freq_hz. A cast to uint64_t is
used to prevent this. */
    uint32_t period_counts =
       (uint32_t) (((uint64_t) timer_freq_hz * AGT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_PERIOD_MSEC) /
AGT_EXAMPLE_MSEC_PER_SEC);
 /* Set the calculated period. This will return an error if parameter checking is
enabled and the calculated
  * period is larger than UINT16_MAX. */
    err = R_AGT_PeriodSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, period_counts);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Period value updated.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer was NULL, or the period was not in the valid range of 1 to 0xFFFF.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_DutyCycleSet()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_DutyCycleSet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t const *duty_cycle_counts*, uint32_t const *pin*)

Updates duty cycle. If the timer is counting, the new duty cycle is reflected after the next counter underflow. Implements timer_api_t::dutyCycleSet.

Example:

```
 /* Get the current period setting. */
 timer_info_t info;
    (void) R_AGT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
    uint32_t current_period_counts = info.period_counts;
 /* Calculate the desired duty cycle based on the current period. */
    uint32_t duty_cycle_counts = (current_period_counts *
AGT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_DUTY_CYCLE_PERCENT) /
                                 AGT_EXAMPLE_MAX_PERCENT;
 /* Set the calculated duty cycle. */
    err = R_AGT_DutyCycleSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, duty_cycle_counts, AGT_OUTPUT_PIN_AGTOA
);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Duty cycle updated.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer was NULL, or the pin was not AGT_AGTO_AGTOA or AGT_AGTO_AGTOB.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Duty cycle was not in the valid range of 0 to period (counts) - 1
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	AGT_CFG_OUTPUT_SUPPORT_ENABLE is 0.

◆ R_AGT_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_Reset (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Resets the counter value to the period minus one. Implements timer_api_t::reset.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Counter reset.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_Start()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_Start (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Starts timer. Implements timer_api_t::start.

Example:

```
/* Start the timer. */
   (void) R_AGT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Timer started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_Enable()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_Enable (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Enables external event triggers that start, stop, clear, or capture the counter. Implements timer_api_t::enable.

Example:

```
/* Enable captures. Captured values arrive in the interrupt. */
   (void) R_AGT_Enable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	External events successfully enabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_Disable()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_Disable (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disables external event triggers that start, stop, clear, or capture the counter. Implements timer_api_t::disable.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Disable captures. */
   (void) R_AGT_Disable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	External events successfully disabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_InfoGet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, timer_info_t *const *p_info*)

Gets timer information and store it in provided pointer p_info. Implements timer_api_t::infoGet.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Get the current period if not known. */
timer_info_t info;
      (void) R_AGT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
      uint32_t period = info.period_counts;
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Period, count direction, and frequency stored in p_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_StatusGet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, timer_status_t *const *p_status*)

Retrieves the current state and counter value stores them in p_status. Implements timer_api_t::statusGet.

Example:

```
/* Read the current counter value. Counter value is in status.counter. */
timer_status_t status;
   (void) R_AGT_StatusGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &status);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Current status and counter value provided in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_Stop (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops the timer. Implements timer_api_t::stop.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Stop the timer. */
   (void) R_AGT_Stop(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Timer stopped.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance control structure is not opened.

◆ R_AGT_Open()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_Open (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, timer_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initializes the AGT module instance. Implements timer_api_t::open.

The AGT hardware does not support one-shot functionality natively. The one-shot feature is therefore implemented in the AGT HAL layer. For a timer configured as a one-shot timer, the timer is stopped upon the first timer expiration.

The AGT implementation of the general timer can accept an optional agt_extended_cfg_t extension parameter. For AGT, the extension specifies the clock to be used as timer source and the output pin configurations. If the extension parameter is not specified (NULL), the default clock PCLKB is used and the output pins are disabled.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the module. */

   err = R_AGT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful and timer has started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required input pointer is NULL or the period is not in the valid range of 1 to 0xFFFF.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	R_AGT_Open has already been called for this p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	A required interrupt has not been enabled in the vector table.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	Requested channel number is not available on AGT.

◆ R_AGT_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_AGT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Sets driver version based on compile time macros. Implements timer_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

5.2.5 Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (r_cac)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_CAC_Open (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cac_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CAC_StartMeasurement (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CAC_StopMeasurement (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CAC_Read (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *const p_counter)
fsp_err_t	R_CAC_Close (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CAC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the CAC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CAC Interface.

Overview

The interface for the clock frequency accuracy measurement circuit (CAC) peripheral is used to check a system clock frequency with a reference clock signal by counting the number of measurement clock edges that occur between two edges of the reference clock.

Features

- Supports clock frequency-measurement and monitoring based on a reference signal input
- Reference can be either an externally supplied clock source or an internal clock source
- An interrupt request may optionally be generated by a completed measurement, a detected frequency error, or a counter overflow.
- A digital filter is available for an externally supplied reference clock, and dividers are available for both internally supplied measurement and reference clocks.
- Edge-detection options for the reference clock are configurable as rising, falling, or both.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_cac

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_cac_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP)	Default (BSP)	If selected code for

	• Enabled • Disabled		parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Monitoring > Clock Accuracy Circuit Driver on r_cac

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Monitoring > Clock Accuracy Circuit Driver on r_cac:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_cac0	Module name.
Reference clock divider	• 32 • 128 • 1024 • 8192	32	Reference clock divider.
Reference clock source	• Main Oscillator • Sub-clock • HOCO • MOCO • LOCO • PCLKB • IWDT • External	Main Oscillator	Reference clock source.
Reference clock digital filter	• Disabled • Sampling clock =Measuring freq • Sampling clock =Measuring freq/4 • Sampling clock =Measuring freq/16	Disabled	Reference clock digital filter.
Reference clock edge detect	• Rising • Falling • Both	Rising	Reference clock edge detection.
Measurement clock divider	• 1 • 4 • 8 • 32	1	Measurement clock divider.
Measurement clock source	• Main Oscillator • Sub-clock • HOCO • MOCO • LOCO • PCLKB • IWDT	HOCO	Measurement clock source.
Upper Limit Threshold	Value must be a non-negative integer,	0	Top end of allowable range for measurement

	between 0 to 65535		completion.
Lower Limit Threshold	Value must be a non-negative integer, between 0 to 65535	0	Bottom end of allowable range for measurement completion.
Frequency Error Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		CAC frequency error interrupt priority.
Measurement End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		CAC measurement end interrupt priority.
Overflow Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		CAC overflow interrupt priority.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	Function name for callback

Clock Configuration

The CAC measurement clock source can be configured as the following:

1. MAIN_OSC
2. SUBCLOCK
3. HOCO
4. MOCO
5. LOCO
6. PCLKB
7. IWDT

The CAC reference clock source can be configured as the following:

1. MAIN_OSC
2. SUBCLOCK
3. HOCO
4. MOCO
5. LOCO
6. PCLKB
7. IWDT
8. External Clock Source (CACREF)

Pin Configuration

The CACREF pin can be configured to provide the reference clock for CAC measurements.

Usage Notes

Measurement Accuracy

The clock measurement result may be off by up to one pulse depending on the phase difference between the edge detection circuit, digital filter, and CACREF pin signal, if applicable.

Frequency Error Interrupt

The frequency error interrupt is only triggered at the end of a CAC measurement. This means that there will be a measurement complete interrupt in addition to the frequency error interrupt.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the CAC in an application.

```
volatile uint32_t g_callback_complete;
void cac_basic_example ()
{
    g_callback_complete = 0;
 fsp_err_t err = R_CAC_Open(&g_cac_ctrl, &g_cac_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    (void) R_CAC_StartMeasurement(&g_cac_ctrl);
 /* Wait for measurement to complete. */
 while (0 == g_callback_complete)
    {
    }
    uint16_t value;
 /* Read the CAC measurement. */
    (void) R_CAC_Read(&g_cac_ctrl, &value);
}
/* Called when measurement is completed. */
static void r_cac_callback (cac_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (CAC_EVENT_MEASUREMENT_COMPLETE == p_args->event)
    {
       g_callback_complete = 1U;
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	cac_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ **cac_instance_ctrl_t**

struct cac_instance_ctrl_t
CAC instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE.

Function Documentation

◆ R_CAC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_CAC_Open (cac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cac_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

The Open function configures the CAC based on the provided user configuration settings.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CAC is available and available for measurement(s).
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The CAC has already been opened.

Note

There is only a single CAC peripheral.

◆ R_CAC_StartMeasurement()

fsp_err_t R_CAC_StartMeasurement (cac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Start the CAC measurement process.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CAC measurement started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_instance_ctrl or p_cfg.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	R_CAC_Open() has not been successfully called.

◆ R_CAC_StopMeasurement()

fsp_err_t R_CAC_StopMeasurement (cac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stop the CAC measurement process.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CAC measuring has been stopped.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_instance_ctrl or p_cfg.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	R_CAC_Open() has not been successfully called.

◆ R_CAC_Read()

fsp_err_t R_CAC_Read (cac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint16_t *const *p_counter*)

Read and return the CAC status and counter registers.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CAC read successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An argument is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	R_CAC_Open() has not been successfully called.

◆ R_CAC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_CAC_Close (cac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Release any resources that were allocated by the Open() or any subsequent CAC operations.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_instance_ctrl or p_cfg.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	R_CAC_Open() has not been successfully called.

◆ R_CAC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_CAC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get the API and code version information.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version info returned.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An argument is NULL.

5.2.6 Controller Area Network (r_can)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_CAN_Open (can_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, can_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CAN_Close (can_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CAN_Write (can_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const mailbox, can_frame_t *const p_frame)
fsp_err_t	R_CAN_ModeTransition (can_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, can_operation_mode_t operation_mode, can_test_mode_t test_mode)
fsp_err_t	R_CAN_InfoGet (can_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, can_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_CAN_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the CAN peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CAN Interface.

Overview

The Controller Area network (CAN) HAL module provides a high-level API for CAN applications and supports the CAN peripherals available on RA microcontroller hardware. A user-callback function must be defined that the driver will invoke when transmit, receive or error interrupts are received. The callback is passed a parameter which indicates the channel, mailbox and event as well as the received data (if available).

Features

- Supports both standard (11-bit) and extended (29-bit) messaging formats
- Supports speeds upto 1 Mbps
- Support for bit timing configuration as defined in the CAN specification
- Supports up to 32 transmit or receive mailboxes with standard or extended ID frames
- Receive mailboxes can be configured to capture either data or remote CAN Frames
- Receive mailboxes can be configured to receive a range of IDs using mailbox masks
- Mailboxes can be configured with Overwrite or Overrun mode
- Supports a user-callback function when transmit, receive, or error interrupts are received

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_can

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_can_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > CAN Driver on r_can

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > CAN Driver on r_can:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_can0	Module name.
General > Channel	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Specify the CAN channel to use.
General > Clock Source	• PCLKB • CANMCLK	CANMCLK	Select the CAN clock source.
General > Sample-Point (%)	Value must be a non-negative integer.	75	Sample-Point = (TSEG1 + 1) / (TSEG1 + TSEG2 + 1).
General > CAN Baud Rate (Hz)	Value must be a non-negative integer.	500000	Specify baud rate in Hz.
General > Overwrite/Overrrun Mode	• Overwrite Mode • Overrrun Mode	Overwrite Mode	Select whether receive mailbox will be overwritten or overrun if data is not read in time.
General > Standard or Extended ID Mode	• Standard ID Mode • Extended ID	Standard ID Mode	Select whether the driver will use the CAN standard or extended

	Mode		IDs.
General > Number of Mailboxes	• 4 Mailboxes • 8 Mailboxes • 16 Mailboxes • 32 Mailboxes	32 Mailboxes	Select 4, 8, 16 or 32 mailboxes.
Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	can_callback	A user callback function. If this callback function is provided, it is called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time any interrupt occurs.
Interrupts > Interrupt Priority Level	MCU Specific Options		Error/Receive/Transmit interrupt priority.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 0 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0	Select the receive ID for mailbox 0, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 1 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	1	Select the receive ID for mailbox 1, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 2 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	2	Select the receive ID for mailbox 2, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 3 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	3	Select the receive ID for mailbox 3, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.

Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 0 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Transmit Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 1 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 2 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 3 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 0 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Remote Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 1 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 2 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 3 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 0-3 Group > Mailbox 0-3 Group Mask	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0x1FFFFFFF	Select the Mask for mailboxes 0-3.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 4 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	4	Select the receive ID for mailbox 4, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended

			IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 5 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	5	Select the receive ID for mailbox 5, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 6 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	6	Select the receive ID for mailbox 6, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 7 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	7	Select the receive ID for mailbox 7, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 4 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 5 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 6 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 7 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 4 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored

			for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 5 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 6 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 7 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 4-7 Group > Mailbox 4-7 Group Mask	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0x1FFFFFFF	>Select the Mask for mailboxes 4-7.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 8 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	8	Select the receive ID for mailbox 8, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 9 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	9	Select the receive ID for mailbox 9, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 10 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	10	Select the receive ID for mailbox 10, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.

Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 11 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	11	Select the receive ID for mailbox 11, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 8 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 9 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 10 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 11 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 8 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 9 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 10 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 11 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).

Input > Mailbox 8-11 Group > Mailbox 8-11 Group Mask	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0x1FFFFFFF	Select the Mask for mailboxes 8-11.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 12 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	12	Select the receive ID for mailbox 12, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 13 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	13	Select the receive ID for mailbox 13, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 14 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	14	Select the receive ID for mailbox 14, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 15 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	15	Select the receive ID for mailbox 15, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 12 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 13 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.

Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 14 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 15 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 12 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 13 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 14 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 15 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 12-15 Group > Mailbox 12-15 Group Mask	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0x1FFFFFFF	Select the Mask for mailboxes 12-15.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 16 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	16	Select the receive ID for mailbox 16, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 17 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	17	Select the receive ID for mailbox 17, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and

			0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 18 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	18	Select the receive ID for mailbox 18, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 19 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	19	Select the receive ID for mailbox 19, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 16 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 17 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 18 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 19 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 16 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 17	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or

Frame Type			remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 18 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 19 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 16-19 Group > Mailbox 16-19 Group Mask	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0x1FFFFFFF	Select the Mask for mailboxes 16-19.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 20 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	20	Select the receive ID for mailbox 20, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 21 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	21	Select the receive ID for mailbox 21, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 22 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	22	Select the receive ID for mailbox 22, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 23 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	23	Select the receive ID for mailbox 23, between 0 and 0x7ff

			when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 20 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 21 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 22 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 23 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 20 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 21 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 22 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 23 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 20-23 Group > Mailbox 20-23	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of	0x1FFFFFFF	Select the Mask for mailboxes 20-23

Group Mask	0x1FFFFFFF or less.		
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 24 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	24	Select the receive ID for mailbox 24, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 25 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	25	Select the receive ID for mailbox 25, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 26 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	26	Select the receive ID for mailbox 26, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 27 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	27	Select the receive ID for mailbox 27, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 24 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 25 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Type	• Receive Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for

> Mailbox 26 Type	• Transmit Mailbox		receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 27 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 24 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 25 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 26 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 27 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 24-27 Group > Mailbox 24-27 Group Mask	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0x1FFFFFFF	Select the Mask for mailboxes 24-27.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 28 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	28	Select the receive ID for mailbox 28, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 29 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	29	Select the receive ID for mailbox 29, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is

			not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 30 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	30	Select the receive ID for mailbox 30, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox ID > Mailbox 31 ID	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	31	Select the receive ID for mailbox 31, between 0 and 0x7ff when using standard IDs, between 0 and 0x1FFFFFFF when using extended IDs. Value is not used when the mailbox is set as transmit type.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 28 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 29 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 30 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Type > Mailbox 31 Type	• Receive Mailbox • Transmit Mailbox	Receive Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used for receive or transmit.
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 28 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 29 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit

			mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 30 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox Frame Type > Mailbox 31 Frame Type	• Data Mailbox • Remote Mailbox	Data Mailbox	Select whether the mailbox is used to capture data frames or remote frames (ignored for transmit mailboxes).
Input > Mailbox 28-31 Group > Mailbox 28-31 Group Mask	Value must be decimal or HEX integer of 0x1FFFFFFF or less.	0x1FFFFFFF	Select the Mask for mailboxes 28-31.

Clock Configuration

The CAN peripheral uses the CANMCLK (main-clock oscillator) or PCLKB as its clock source (fCAN, CAN System Clock.) Using the PCLKB with the default of 60 MHz and the default CAN configuration will provide a CAN bit rate of 500 Kbit. To set the PCLKB frequency, use the clock configurator in e2 studio. To change the clock frequency at run-time, use the CGC Interface. Refer to the CGC module guide for more information on configuring clocks.

- The user application must start the main-clock oscillator (CANMCLK or XTAL) at run-time using the CGC Interface if it has not already started (for example, if it is not used as the MCU clock source.)
- For RA6, RA4 and RA2 MCUs, the following clock restriction must be satisfied for the CAN HAL module when the clock source is the main-clock oscillator (CANMCLK):
    - fPCLKB >= fCANCLK (fCANCLK = XTAL / Baud Rate Prescaler)
- For RA6 and RA4 MCUs, the source of the peripheral module clocks must be PLL for the CAN HAL module when the clock source is PCLKB.
- For RA4 MCUs, the clock frequency ratio of PCLKA and PCLKB must be 2:1 when using the CAN HAL module. Operation is not guaranteed for other settings.
- For RA2 MCUs, the clock frequency ratio of ICLK and PCLKB must be 2:1 when using the CAN HAL module. Operation is not guaranteed for other settings.

Pin Configuration

The CAN peripheral module uses pins on the MCU to communicate to external devices. I/O pins must be selected and configured as required by the external device. A CAN channel would consist of two pins - CRX and CTX for data transmission/reception.

Usage Notes

Bit Rate Calculation

The baudrate of the CAN peripheral is automatically set through the FSP configurator in e2 studio. For more details on how the baudrate is set refer to section 37.4 "Data Transfer Rate Configuration" of the RA6M3 User's Manual (R01UH0886EJ0100).

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the CAN in an application.

```
can_frame_t g_can_tx_frame;
can_frame_t g_can_rx_frame;
volatile bool     g_rx_flag = false;
volatile bool     g_tx_flag = false;
volatile bool     g_err_flag = false;
volatile uint32_t g_rx_id;
void can_callback (can_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 switch (p_args->event)
    {
 case CAN_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE:    /* Receive complete event. */
      {
            g_rx_flag = true;
            g_rx_id   = p_args->p_frame->id;
 /* Read received frame */
            memcpy(&g_can_rx_frame, p_args->p_frame, sizeof(can_frame_t));
 break;
       }
 case CAN_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE:    /* Transmit complete event. */
      {
            g_tx_flag = true;
 break;
       }
 case CAN_EVENT_ERR_BUS_OFF:          /* Bus error event. (bus off) */
 case CAN_EVENT_ERR_PASSIVE:          /* Bus error event. (error passive) */
 case CAN_EVENT_ERR_WARNING:          /* Bus error event. (error warning) */
 case CAN_EVENT_BUS_RECOVERY:         /* Bus error event. (bus recovery) */
 case CAN_EVENT_MAILBOX_MESSAGE_LOST: /* Overwrite/overrun error */
      {
 /* Set error flag */
```

```
            g_err_flag = true;
 break;
      }
 default:
     {
 break;
      }
    }
}
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
    uint32_t i;
    uint32_t timeout_ms = CAN_BUSY_DELAY;
 /* Initialize the CAN module */
    err = R_CAN_Open(&g_can0_ctrl, &g_can0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    g_can_tx_frame.id               = CAN_DESTINATION_DEVICE_MAILBOX_NUMBER; /* CAN
Destination Device ID */
    g_can_tx_frame.type             = CAN_FRAME_TYPE_DATA;
    g_can_tx_frame.data_length_code = CAN_FRAME_TRANSMIT_DATA_BYTES;
 /* Write some data to the transmit frame */
 for (i = 0; i < sizeof(g_can_tx_frame.data); i++)
    {
       g_can_tx_frame.data[i] = (uint8_t) i;
    }
 /* Send data on the bus */
    g_tx_flag = false;
    g_err_flag = false;
    err = R_CAN_Write(&g_can0_ctrl, CAN_MAILBOX_NUMBER_31, &g_can_tx_frame);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers*/
 while ((true != g_tx_flag) && timeout_ms)
```

```
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
       timeout_ms--;
    }
 if (true == g_err_flag)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
}
```

External Loop-back Test

This example requires a 120 Ohm resistor connected across channel 0 CAN pins. The mailbox numbers are arbitrarily chosen.

```
void can_external_loopback_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t            err;
    uint32_t             timeout_ms    = CAN_BUSY_DELAY;
 can_operation_mode_t operation_mode = CAN_OPERATION_MODE_NORMAL;
 can_test_mode_t      test_mode      = CAN_TEST_MODE_LOOPBACK_EXTERNAL;
 int      diff = 0;
    uint32_t i    = 0;
    err = R_CAN_Open(&g_can0_ctrl, &g_can0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_CAN_ModeTransition(&g_can0_ctrl, operation_mode, test_mode);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Clear the data part of receive frame */
    memset(g_can_rx_frame.data, 0, CAN_FRAME_TRANSMIT_DATA_BYTES);
 /* CAN Destination Device ID, in this case it is the same device with another
mailbox */
    g_can_tx_frame.id               = CAN_MAILBOX_NUMBER_4;
    g_can_tx_frame.type             = CAN_FRAME_TYPE_DATA;
    g_can_tx_frame.data_length_code = CAN_FRAME_TRANSMIT_DATA_BYTES;
 /* Write some data to the transmit frame */
 for (i = 0; i < sizeof(g_can_tx_frame.data); i++)
    {
       g_can_tx_frame.data[i] = (uint8_t) i;
    }
 /* Send data on the bus */
    g_rx_flag = false;
    g_err_flag = false;
    err = R_CAN_Write(&g_can0_ctrl, CAN_MAILBOX_NUMBER_31, &g_can_tx_frame);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers*/
 while ((true != g_rx_flag) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
       timeout_ms--;
    }
 if (true == g_err_flag)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Verify received data */
    diff = memcmp(&g_can_rx_frame.data[0], &g_can_tx_frame.data[0],
CAN_FRAME_TRANSMIT_DATA_BYTES);
 if (0 != diff)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ R_CAN_Open()

fsp_err_t R_CAN_Open (can_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, can_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Open and configure the CAN channel for operation.

Example:

```
/* Initialize the CAN module */
    err = R_CAN_Open(&g_can0_ctrl, &g_can0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel opened successfully
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Driver already open.
FSP_ERR_CAN_INIT_FAILED	Channel failed to initialize.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer presented.

◆ R_CAN_Close()

fsp_err_t R_CAN_Close (can_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Close the CAN channel.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Control block not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer presented.

◆ R_CAN_Write()

fsp_err_t R_CAN_Write (can_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t *mailbox*, can_frame_t *const *p_frame*)

Write data to the CAN channel. Write up to eight bytes to the channel mailbox.

Example:

```
    err = R_CAN_Write(&g_can0_ctrl, CAN_MAILBOX_NUMBER_31, &g_can_tx_frame);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation succeeded.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Control block not open.
FSP_ERR_CAN_TRANSMIT_NOT_READY	Transmit in progress, cannot write data at this time.
FSP_ERR_CAN_RECEIVE_MAILBOX	Mailbox is setup for receive and cannot send.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Data length or frame type invalid.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer presented

◆ R_CAN_ModeTransition()

fsp_err_t R_CAN_ModeTransition (can_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, can_operation_mode_t *operation_mode*, can_test_mode_t *test_mode*)

CAN Mode Transition is used to change CAN driver state.

Example:

```
    err = R_CAN_ModeTransition(&g_can0_ctrl, operation_mode, test_mode);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation succeeded.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Control block not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer presented

◆ R_CAN_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_CAN_InfoGet (can_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, can_info_t *const *p_info*)

Get CAN state and status information for the channel.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation succeeded.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Control block not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer presented

◆ R_CAN_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_CAN_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get CAN module code and API versions.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation succeeded.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer presented note This function is reentrant.

5.2.7 Clock Generation Circuit (r_cgc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_CGC_Open (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_ClocksCfg (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clocks_cfg_t const *const p_clock_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_ClockStart (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source, cgc_pll_cfg_t const *const p_pll_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_ClockStop (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_ClockCheck (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source)

fsp_err_t	R_CGC_SystemClockSet (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source, cgc_divider_cfg_t const *const p_divider_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_SystemClockGet (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t *const p_clock_source, cgc_divider_cfg_t *const p_divider_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_OscStopDetectDisable (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_OscStopStatusClear (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_Close (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CGC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the CGC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CGC Interface.

Note

> ***This module is not required for the initial clock configuration. Initial clock settings are configurable on the Clocks tab of the configuration tool. The initial clock settings are applied by the BSP during the startup process before main.***

Overview

Features

The CGC module supports runtime modifications of clock settings. Key features include the following:

- Supports changing the system clock source to any of the following options (provided they are supported on the MCU):
  - High-speed on-chip oscillator (HOCO)
  - Middle-speed on-chip oscillator (MOCO)
  - Low-speed on-chip oscillator (LOCO)
  - Main oscillator (external resonator or external clock input frequency)
  - Sub-clock oscillator (external resonator)
  - PLL (not available on all MCUs)
- When the system core clock frequency changes, the following things are updated:
  - The CMSIS standard global variable SystemCoreClock is updated to reflect the new clock frequency.
  - Wait states for ROM and RAM are adjusted to the minimum supported value for the new clock frequency.
  - The operating power control mode is updated to the minimum supported value for the new clock settings.

- Supports starting or stopping any of the system clock sources

- Supports changing dividers for the internal clocks
- Supports the oscillation stop detection feature

Internal Clocks

The RA microcontrollers have up to seven internal clocks. Not all internal clocks exist on all MCUs. Each clock domain has its own divider that can be updated in R_CGC_SystemClockSet(). The dividers are subject to constraints described in the footnote of the table "Specifications of the Clock Generation Circuit for the internal clocks" in the hardware manual.

The internal clocks include:

- System clock (ICLK): core clock used for CPU, flash, internal SRAM, DTC, and DMAC
- PCLKA/PCLKB/PCLKC/PCLKD: Peripheral clocks, refer to the table "Specifications of the Clock Generation Circuit for the internal clocks" in the hardware manual to see which peripherals are controlled by which clocks.
- FCLK: Clock source for reading data flash and for programming/erasure of both code and data flash.
- BCLK: External bus clock

Configuration

Note

The initial clock settings are configurable on the Clocks tab of the configuration tool.
There is a configuration to enable the HOCO on reset in the OFS1 settings on the BSP tab.
The following clock related settings are configurable in the RA Common section on the BSP tab:

- *Main Oscillator Wait Time*
- *Main Oscillator Clock Source (external oscillator or crystal/resonator)*
- *Subclock Populated*
- *Subclock Drive*
- *Subclock Stabilization Time (ms)*

The default stabilization times are determined based on development boards provided by Renesas, but are generally valid for most designs. Depending on the target board hardware configuration and requirements these values may need to be adjusted for reliability or startup speed.

Build Time Configurations for r_cgc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_cgc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > System > CGC Driver on r_cgc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > System > CGC Driver on r_cgc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_cgc0	Module name.
NMI Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function must be provided if oscillation stop detection is used. If this callback function is provided, it is called from the NMI handler if the main oscillator stops.

Clock Configuration

This module is used to configure the system clocks. There are no module specific clock configurations required to use it.

Pin Configuration

The CGC module controls the output of the CLOCKOUT signal.

If an external oscillator is used the XTAL and EXTAL pins must be configured accordingly. When running from an on chip oscillator there is no requirement for the main clock external oscillator. In this case, the XTAL and EXTAL pins can be set to a different function in the configurator.

The functionality of the sub clock external oscillator pins XCIN and XCOUT is fixed.

Usage Notes

NMI Interrupt

The CGC timer uses the NMI for oscillation stop detection of the main oscillator after R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable is called. The NMI is enabled by default. No special configuration is required. When the NMI is triggered, the callback function registered during R_CGC_Open() is called.

Starting or Stopping the Subclock

If the Subclock Populated property is set to Populated on the BSP configuration tab, then the subclock is started in the BSP startup routine. Otherwise, it is stopped in the BSP startup routine. Starting and stopping the subclock at runtime is not recommended since the stabilization requirements typically negate the negligible power savings.

The application is responsible for ensuring required clocks are started and stable before accessing MCU peripheral registers.

Warning
> The subclock can take up to several seconds to stabilize. RA startup code does not wait for subclock stabilization unless the subclock is the main clock source. In this case the default wait time is 1000ms (1 second). When running AGT or RTC off the subclock, the application must ensure the subclock is stable before starting operation. Because there is no hardware stabilization status bit for the subclock R_CGC_ClockCheck cannot be used to optimize this wait.

Changing the subclock state during R_CGC_ClocksCfg() is not supported.

Low Power Operation

If "Use Low Voltage Mode" is enabled in the BSP MCU specific properties (not available on all MCUs), the MCU is always in low voltage mode and no other power modes are considered. The following conditions must be met for the MCU to run in low voltage mode:

- Requires HOCO to be running, so HOCO cannot be stopped in low voltage mode
- Requires PLL to be stopped, so PLL APIs are not available in low voltage mode
- Requires ICLK <= 4 MHz
- If oscillation stop detection is used, dividers of 1 or 2 cannot be used for any clock

If "Use Low Voltage Mode" is not enabled, the MCU applies the lowest power mode by searching through the following list in order and applying the first power mode that is supported under the current conditions:

- Subosc-speed mode (lowest power)
    - Requires system clock to be LOCO or subclock
    - Requires MOCO, HOCO, main oscillator, and PLL (if present) to be stopped
    - Requires ICLK and FCLK dividers to be 1
- Low-speed mode
    - Requires PLL to be stopped
    - Requires ICLK <= 1 MHz
    - If oscillation stop detection is used, dividers of 1, 2, 4, or 8 cannot be used for any clock
- Middle-speed mode (not supported on all MCUs)
    - Requires ICLK <= 8 MHz
- High-speed mode
    - Default mode if no other operating mode is supported

Refer to the section "Function for Lower Operating Power Consumption" in the "Low Power Modes" chapter of the hardware manual for MCU specific information about operating power control modes.

When low voltage mode is not used, the following functions adjust the operating power control mode to ensure it remains within the hardware specification and to ensure the MCU is running at the optimal operating power control mode:

- R_CGC_ClockStart()
- R_CGC_ClockStop()
- R_CGC_SystemClockSet()
- R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable()
- R_CGC_OscStopDetectDisable()

Note

FSP APIs, including these APIs, are not thread safe. These APIs and any other user code that modifies the operating power control mode must not be allowed to interrupt each other. Proper care must be taken during application design if these APIs are used in threads or interrupts to ensure this constraint is met.

No action is required by the user of these APIs. This section is provided for informational purposes only.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the CGC in an application.

```
void cgc_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the CGC module. */
    err = R_CGC_Open(&g_cgc0_ctrl, &g_cgc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Change the system clock to LOCO for power saving. */
 /* Start the LOCO. */
    err = R_CGC_ClockStart(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_LOCO, NULL);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for the LOCO stabilization wait time.
  *
  * NOTE: The MOCO, LOCO and subclock do not have stabilization status bits, so any
stabilization time must be
  * performed via a software wait when starting these oscillators. For all other
oscillators, R_CGC_ClockCheck can
  * be used to verify stabilization status.
  */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(BSP_FEATURE_CGC_LOCO_STABILIZATION_MAX_US,
BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
 /* Set divisors. Divisors for clocks that don't exist on the MCU are ignored. */
 cgc_divider_cfg_t dividers =
    {
 /* PCLKB is not used in this application, so select the maximum divisor for lowest
power. */
       .pclkb_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_64,
 /* PCLKD is not used in this application, so select the maximum divisor for lowest
power. */
       .pclkd_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_64,
 /* ICLK is the MCU clock, allow it to run as fast as the LOCO is capable. */
       .iclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
 /* These clocks do not exist on some devices. If any clocks don't exist, set the
divider to 1. */
       .pclka_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .pclkc_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .fclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .bclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
    };
 /* Switch the system clock to LOCO. */
    err = R_CGC_SystemClockSet(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_LOCO, &dividers);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Configuring Multiple Clocks

This example demonstrates switching to a new source clock and stopping the previous source clock in a single function call using R_CGC_ClocksCfg().

```
void cgc_clocks_cfg_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the CGC module. */
    err = R_CGC_Open(&g_cgc0_ctrl, &g_cgc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Change the system clock to PLL running from the main oscillator. */
 /* Assuming the system clock is MOCO, switch to HOCO. */
 cgc_clocks_cfg_t clocks_cfg;
    clocks_cfg.system_clock           = CGC_CLOCK_PLL;
    clocks_cfg.pll_state              = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
    clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.source_clock = CGC_CLOCK_MAIN_OSC; // unused
    clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.multiplier     = CGC_PLL_MUL_10_0;   // unused
    clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.divider        = CGC_PLL_DIV_2;      // unused
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.iclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclka_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkb_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkc_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkd_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.bclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.fclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.mainosc_state         = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
    clocks_cfg.hoco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_START;
    clocks_cfg.moco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_STOP;
    clocks_cfg.loco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
    err = R_CGC_ClocksCfg(&g_cgc0_ctrl, &clocks_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
#if BSP_FEATURE_CGC_HAS_PLL
 /* Assuming the system clock is HOCO, switch to PLL running from main oscillator and
stop MOCO. */
    clocks_cfg.system_clock          = CGC_CLOCK_PLL;
    clocks_cfg.pll_state             = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_START;
    clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.source_clock = CGC_CLOCK_MAIN_OSC;
    clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.multiplier    = (cgc_pll_mul_t) BSP_CFG_PLL_MUL;
    clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.divider       = (cgc_pll_div_t) BSP_CFG_PLL_DIV;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.iclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclka_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkb_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkc_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkd_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.bclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.fclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
    clocks_cfg.mainosc_state         = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_START;
    clocks_cfg.hoco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_STOP;
    clocks_cfg.moco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
    clocks_cfg.loco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
    err = R_CGC_ClocksCfg(&g_cgc0_ctrl, &clocks_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
#endif
}
```

Oscillation Stop Detection

This example demonstrates registering a callback for oscillation stop detection of the main oscillator.

```
/* Example callback called when oscillation stop is detected. */
void oscillation_stop_callback (cgc_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* (Optional) If the MCU was running on the main oscillator, the MCU is now running
on MOCO. Switch clocks if
  * desired. This example shows switching to HOCO. */
    err = R_CGC_ClockStart(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_HOCO, NULL);
    handle_error(err);
 do
    {
 /* Wait for HOCO to stabilize. */
       err = R_CGC_ClockCheck(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_HOCO);
    } while (FSP_SUCCESS != err);
 cgc_divider_cfg_t dividers =
    {
       .pclkb_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .pclkd_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .iclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .pclka_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .pclkc_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .fclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .bclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
    };
    err = R_CGC_SystemClockSet(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_HOCO, &dividers);
    handle_error(err);
#if BSP_FEATURE_CGC_HAS_PLL
 /* (Optional) If the MCU was running on the PLL, the PLL is now in free-running
mode. Switch clocks if
  * desired. This example shows switching to the PLL running on HOCO. */
    err = R_CGC_ClockStart(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_HOCO, NULL);
    handle_error(err);
 do
    {
 /* Wait for HOCO to stabilize. */
       err = R_CGC_ClockCheck(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_HOCO);
    } while (FSP_SUCCESS != err);
 cgc_pll_cfg_t pll_cfg =
    {
       .source_clock = CGC_CLOCK_HOCO,
       .multiplier   = (cgc_pll_mul_t) BSP_CFG_PLL_MUL,
       .divider      = (cgc_pll_div_t) BSP_CFG_PLL_DIV,
    };
    err = R_CGC_ClockStart(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_PLL, &pll_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 do
    {
 /* Wait for PLL to stabilize. */
       err = R_CGC_ClockCheck(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_PLL);
    } while (FSP_SUCCESS != err);
 cgc_divider_cfg_t pll_dividers =
    {
       .pclkb_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .pclkd_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .iclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .pclka_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .pclkc_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .fclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
       .bclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4,
    };
    err = R_CGC_SystemClockSet(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_PLL, &pll_dividers);
    handle_error(err);
#endif
 /* (Optional) Clear the error flag. Only clear this flag after switching the MCU
clock source away from the main
```

```
  * oscillator and if the main oscillator is stable again. */
    err = R_CGC_OscStopStatusClear(&g_cgc0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
void cgc_osc_stop_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Open the module. */
    err = R_CGC_Open(&g_cgc0_ctrl, &g_cgc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable oscillation stop detection. The main oscillator must be running at this
point. */
    err = R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable(&g_cgc0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* (Optional) Oscillation stop detection must be disabled before entering any low
power mode. */
    err = R_CGC_OscStopDetectDisable(&g_cgc0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
    __WFI();
 /* (Optional) Reenable oscillation stop detection after waking from low power mode.
*/
    err = R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable(&g_cgc0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	cgc_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ cgc_instance_ctrl_t

struct cgc_instance_ctrl_t
CGC private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_CGC_Open() is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_CGC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_Open (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cgc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initialize the CGC API. Implements cgc_api_t::open.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the CGC module. */
   err = R_CGC_Open(&g_cgc0_ctrl, &g_cgc0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CGC successfully initialized.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.

◆ R_CGC_ClocksCfg()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_ClocksCfg (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cgc_clocks_cfg_t const *const *p_clock_cfg*)

Reconfigures all main system clocks. This API can be used for any of the following purposes:

- start or stop clocks
- change the system clock source
- configure the PLL multiplication and division ratios when starting the PLL
- change the system dividers

If the requested system clock source has a stabilization flag, this function blocks waiting for the stabilization flag of the requested system clock source to be set. If the requested system clock source was just started and it has no stabilization flag, this function blocks for the stabilization time required by the requested system clock source according to the Electrical Characteristics section of the hardware manual. If the requested system clock source has no stabilization flag and it is already running, it is assumed to be stable and this function will not block. If the requested system clock is the subclock, the subclock must be stable prior to calling this function.

The internal dividers (cgc_clocks_cfg_t::divider_cfg) are subject to constraints described in footnotes of the hardware manual table detailing specifications for the clock generation circuit for the internal clocks for the MCU. For example:

- RA6M3: see footnotes of Table 9.2 "Specifications of the clock generation circuit for the internal clocks" in the RA6M3 manual R01UH0886EJ0100
- RA2A1: see footnotes of Table 9.2 "Clock generation circuit specifications for the internal clocks" in the RA2A1 manual R01UH0888EJ0100

Do not attempt to stop the requested clock source or the source of the PLL if the PLL will be running after this operation completes.

Implements cgc_api_t::clocksCfg.

Example:

```
/* Assuming the system clock is MOCO, switch to HOCO. */
cgc_clocks_cfg_t clocks_cfg;
   clocks_cfg.system_clock          = CGC_CLOCK_PLL;
   clocks_cfg.pll_state             = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
   clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.source_clock = CGC_CLOCK_MAIN_OSC; // unused
   clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.multiplier    = CGC_PLL_MUL_10_0;   // unused
   clocks_cfg.pll_cfg.divider       = CGC_PLL_DIV_2;      // unused
   clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.iclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1;
   clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclka_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
   clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkb_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
   clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkc_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
   clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.pclkd_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
   clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.bclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
   clocks_cfg.divider_cfg.fclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4;
   clocks_cfg.mainosc_state         = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
   clocks_cfg.hoco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_START;
   clocks_cfg.moco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_STOP;
   clocks_cfg.loco_state            = CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE;
   err = R_CGC_ClocksCfg(&g_cgc0_ctrl, &clocks_cfg);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Clock configuration applied successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Attempt to stop the current system clock or the PLL source clock.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_ACTIVE	PLL configuration cannot be changed while PLL is running.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_DET_ENABLED	PLL multiplier must be less than 20 if oscillation stop detect is enabled and the input frequency is less than 12.5 MHz.
FSP_ERR_NOT_STABILIZED	PLL clock source is not stable.
FSP_ERR_PLL_SRC_INACTIVE	PLL clock source is not running.

◆ R_CGC_ClockStart()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_ClockStart (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cgc_clock_t *clock_source*, cgc_pll_cfg_t const *const *p_pll_cfg*)

Start the specified clock if it is not currently active. The PLL configuration cannot be changed while the PLL is running. Implements cgc_api_t::clockStart.

The PLL source clock must be operating and stable prior to starting the PLL.

Example:

```
/* Start the LOCO. */
   err = R_CGC_ClockStart(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_LOCO, NULL);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Clock initialized successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_STABILIZED	The clock source is not stabilized after being turned off or PLL clock source is not stable.
FSP_ERR_PLL_SRC_INACTIVE	PLL clock source is not running.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_ACTIVE	PLL configuration cannot be changed while PLL is running.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_DET_ENABLED	PLL multiplier must be less than 20 if oscillation stop detect is enabled and the input frequency is less than 12.5 MHz.

◆ R_CGC_ClockStop()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_ClockStop (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cgc_clock_t *clock_source*)

Stop the specified clock if it is active. Implements cgc_api_t::clockStop.

Do not attempt to stop the current system clock source. Do not attempt to stop the source clock of the PLL if the PLL is running.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Clock stopped successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Attempt to stop the current system clock or the PLL source clock.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_DET_ENABLED	Attempt to stop MOCO when Oscillation stop is enabled.
FSP_ERR_NOT_STABILIZED	Clock not stabilized after starting.

◆ R_CGC_ClockCheck()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_ClockCheck (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cgc_clock_t *clock_source*)

Check the specified clock for stability. Implements cgc_api_t::clockCheck.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Clock is running and stable.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_STABILIZED	Clock not stabilized.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_INACTIVE	Clock not turned on.

◆ R_CGC_SystemClockSet()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_SystemClockSet (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cgc_clock_t *clock_source*, cgc_divider_cfg_t const *const *p_divider_cfg*)

Set the specified clock as the system clock and configure the internal dividers for ICLK, PCLKA, PCLKB, PCLKC, PCLKD, BCLK, and FCLK. Implements cgc_api_t::systemClockSet.

The requested clock source must be running and stable prior to calling this function. The internal dividers are subject to constraints described in the hardware manual table "Specifications of the Clock Generation Circuit for the internal clocks".

The internal dividers (p_divider_cfg) are subject to constraints described in footnotes of the hardware manual table detailing specifications for the clock generation circuit for the internal clocks for the MCU. For example:

- RA6M3: see footnotes of Table 9.2 "Specifications of the clock generation circuit for the internal clocks" in the RA6M3 manual R01UH0886EJ0100
- RA2A1: see footnotes of Table 9.2 "Clock generation circuit specifications for the internal clocks" in the RA2A1 manual R01UH0888EJ0100

This function also updates the RAM and ROM wait states, the operating power control mode, and the SystemCoreClock CMSIS global variable.

Example:

```
 /* Set divisors. Divisors for clocks that don't exist on the MCU are ignored. */
 cgc_divider_cfg_t dividers =
    {
 /* PCLKB is not used in this application, so select the maximum divisor for lowest
power. */
       .pclkb_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_64,
 /* PCLKD is not used in this application, so select the maximum divisor for lowest
power. */
       .pclkd_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_64,
 /* ICLK is the MCU clock, allow it to run as fast as the LOCO is capable. */
       .iclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
 /* These clocks do not exist on some devices. If any clocks don't exist, set the
divider to 1. */
       .pclka_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .pclkc_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .fclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
       .bclk_div = CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1,
    };
 /* Switch the system clock to LOCO. */
```

```
    err = R_CGC_SystemClockSet(&g_cgc0_ctrl, CGC_CLOCK_LOCO, &dividers);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation performed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_INACTIVE	The specified clock source is inactive.
FSP_ERR_NOT_STABILIZED	The clock source has not stabilized

◆ R_CGC_SystemClockGet()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_SystemClockGet (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, cgc_clock_t *const *p_clock_source*, cgc_divider_cfg_t *const *p_divider_cfg*)

Return the current system clock source and configuration. Implements cgc_api_t::systemClockGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Parameters returned successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Enable the oscillation stop detection for the main clock. Implements cgc_api_t::oscStopDetectEnable.

The MCU will automatically switch the system clock to MOCO when a stop is detected if Main Clock is the system clock. If the system clock is the PLL, then the clock source will not be changed and the PLL free running frequency will be the system clock frequency.

Example:

```
 /* Enable oscillation stop detection. The main oscillator must be running at this
point. */
    err = R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable(&g_cgc0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation performed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_LOW_VOLTAGE_MODE	Settings not allowed in low voltage mode.

◆ R_CGC_OscStopDetectDisable()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_OscStopDetectDisable (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disable the oscillation stop detection for the main clock. Implements cgc_api_t::oscStopDetectDisable.

Example:

```
 /* (Optional) Oscillation stop detection must be disabled before entering any low
power mode. */
    err = R_CGC_OscStopDetectDisable(&g_cgc0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
    __WFI();
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation performed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_DETECTED	The Oscillation stop detect status flag is set. Under this condition it is not possible to disable the Oscillation stop detection function.

◆ R_CGC_OscStopStatusClear()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_OscStopStatusClear (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Clear the Oscillation Stop Detection Status register. This register is not cleared automatically if the stopped clock is restarted. Implements cgc_api_t::oscStopStatusClear.

After clearing the status, oscillation stop detection is no longer enabled.

This register cannot be cleared while the main oscillator is the system clock or the PLL source clock.

Example:

```
 /* (Optional) Clear the error flag. Only clear this flag after switching the MCU
clock source away from the main
  * oscillator and if the main oscillator is stable again. */
    err = R_CGC_OscStopStatusClear(&g_cgc0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation performed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_INACTIVE	Main oscillator must be running to clear the oscillation stop detection flag.
FSP_ERR_OSC_STOP_CLOCK_ACTIVE	The Oscillation Detect Status flag cannot be cleared if the Main Osc or PLL is set as the system clock. Change the system clock before attempting to clear this bit.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_HW_CONDITION	Oscillation stop status was not cleared. Check preconditions and try again.

◆ R_CGC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_Close (cgc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Closes the CGC module. Implements cgc_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The module is successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ R_CGC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_CGC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Return the driver version. Implements cgc_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module version provided in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.

5.2.8 Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) Calculator (r_crc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_CRC_Open (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, crc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_CRC_Close (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CRC_Calculate (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, crc_input_t *const p_crc_input, uint32_t *calculatedValue)
fsp_err_t	R_CRC_CalculatedValueGet (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *calculatedValue)
fsp_err_t	R_CRC_SnoopEnable (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t crc_seed)
fsp_err_t	R_CRC_SnoopDisable (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_CRC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the CRC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the CRC Interface.

Overview

The CRC module provides a API to calculate 8, 16 and 32-bit CRC values on a block of data in memory or a stream of data over a Serial Communication Interface (SCI) channel using industry-standard polynomials.

Features

- CRC module supports the following 8 and 16 bit CRC polynomials which operates on 8-bit data in parallel
  - X^8+X^2+X+1 (CRC-8)
  - X^16+X^15+X^2+1 (CRC-16)
  - X^16+X^12+X^5+1 (CRC-CCITT)
- CRC module supports the following 32 bit CRC polynomials which operates on 32-bit data in parallel
  - X^32+X^26+X^23+X^22+X^16+X^12+X^11+X^10+X^8+X^7+X^5+X^4+X^2+X+ 1 (CRC-32)
  - X^32+ X^28+ X^27+ X^26+ X^25+ X^23+ X^22+ X^20+ X^19+ X^18+X^14+X^13+X^11+X^10+X^9+X^8+X^6+1 (CRC-32C)
- CRC module can calculate CRC with LSB first or MSB first bit order.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_crc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_crc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Monitoring > CRC Driver on r_crc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Monitoring > CRC Driver on r_crc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_crc0	Module name.
CRC Polynomial	• CRC-8 • CRC-16 • CRC-CCITT • CRC-32 • CRC-32C	CRC-32C	Select the CRC polynomial.
Bit Order	• LSB • MSB	MSB	Select the CRC bit order.
Snoop Address	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	NONE	Select the SCI register address CRC snoop

Clock Configuration

There is no clock configuration for the CRC module.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

CRC Snoop

The CRC snoop function monitors reads from and writes to a specified I/O register address and performs CRC calculation on the data read from and written to the register address automatically. Instead of calling R_CRC_Calculate on a block of data, R_CRC_SnoopEnable is called to start monitoring reads/writes and R_CRC_CalculatedValueGet is used to obtain the current CRC.

Note

Snoop mode is available for transmit/receive operations on SCI only.

Limitations

When using CRC32 polynomial functions the CRC module produces the same results as popular online CRC32 calculators, but it is important to remember a few important points.

- Online CRC32 calculators allow the input to be any number of bytes. The FSP CRC32 API function uses 32-bit words. This means the online calculations must be 'padded' to end on a 32-bit boundary.
- Online CRC32 calculators usually invert the output prior to presenting it as a result. It is up to the application program to include this step if needed.
- The seed value of 0xFFFFFFFF needs to be used by both the online calculator and the R_CRC module API (CRC32 polynomials)
- Make sure the bit orientation of the R_CRC CRC32 is set for LSB and that you have CRC32 selected and not CRC32C.
- Some online CRC tools XOR the final result with 0xFFFFFFFF.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the CRC module in an application.

```
void crc_example ()
{
    uint32_t length;
    uint32_t uint8_calculated_value;
    length = sizeof(g_data_8bit) / sizeof(g_data_8bit[0]);
 crc_input_t example_input =
    {
       .p_input_buffer = g_data_8bit,
       .num_bytes      = length,
       .crc_seed       = 0,
    };
 /* Open CRC module with 8 bit polynomial */
 R_CRC_Open(&crc_ctrl, &g_crc_test_cfg);
 /* 8-bit CRC calculation */
 R_CRC_Calculate(&crc_ctrl, &example_input, &uint8_calculated_value);
}
```

Snoop Example

This example demonstrates CRC snoop operation.

```
void crc_snoop_example ()
{
 /* Open CRC module with 8 bit polynomial */
 R_CRC_Open(&crc_ctrl, &g_crc_test_cfg);
 /* Open SCI Driver */
 /* Configure Snoop address and enable snoop mode */
 R_CRC_SnoopEnable(&crc_ctrl, 0);
 /* Perfrom SCI read/Write operation depending on the SCI snoop address configure */
 /* Read CRC value */
 R_CRC_CalculatedValueGet(&crc_ctrl, &g_crc_buff);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	crc_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ crc_instance_ctrl_t

struct crc_instance_ctrl_t
Driver instance control structure.

Function Documentation

◆ R_CRC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_CRC_Open (crc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, crc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Open the CRC driver module

Implements crc_api_t::open

Open the CRC driver module and initialize the driver control block according to the passed-in configuration structure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Configuration was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_cfg is NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module already open

◆ R_CRC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_CRC_Close (crc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Close the CRC module driver.

Implements crc_api_t::close

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Configuration was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver is not opened.

◆ R_CRC_Calculate()

fsp_err_t R_CRC_Calculate (crc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, crc_input_t *const *p_crc_input*, uint32_t * *calculatedValue*)

Perform a CRC calculation on a block of 8-bit/32-bit(for 32-bit polynomial) data.

Implements crc_api_t::calculate

This function performs a CRC calculation on an array of 8-bit/32-bit(for 32-bit polynomial) values and returns an 8-bit/32-bit(for 32-bit polynomial) calculated value

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Calculation successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Either p_ctrl, inputBuffer, or calculatedValue is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	length value is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver is not opened.

◆ R_CRC_CalculatedValueGet()

fsp_err_t R_CRC_CalculatedValueGet (crc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t * *calculatedValue*)

Return the current calculated value.

Implements crc_api_t::crcResultGet

CRC calculation operates on a running value. This function returns the current calculated value.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Return of calculated value successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Either p_ctrl or calculatedValue is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver is not opened.

◆ R_CRC_SnoopEnable()

fsp_err_t R_CRC_SnoopEnable (crc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t *crc_seed*)

Configure the snoop channel and set the CRC seed.

Implements crc_api_t::snoopEnable

The CRC calculator can operate on reads and writes over any of the first ten SCI channels. For example, if set to channel 0, transmit, every byte written out SCI channel 0 is also sent to the CRC calculator as if the value was explicitly written directly to the CRC calculator.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Snoop configured successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to control stucture is NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver is not opened.

◆ R_CRC_SnoopDisable()

fsp_err_t R_CRC_SnoopDisable (crc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disable snooping.

Implements crc_api_t::snoopDisable

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Snoop disabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver is not opened.

◆ R_CRC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_CRC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros.

Implements crc_api_t::versionGet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.9 Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (r_ctsu)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_CTSU_Open (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ctsu_cfg_t const *const p_cfg) Opens and configures the CTSU driver module. Implements ctsu_api_t::open. More...
fsp_err_t	R_CTSU_ScanStart (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) This function should be called each time a periodic timer expires. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are used to tuning for the sensors. Before starting the next scan, first get the data with R_CTSU_DataGet(). If a different control block scan should be run, check the scan is complete before executing. Implements ctsu_api_t::scanStart. More...
fsp_err_t	R_CTSU_DataGet (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *p_data) This function gets the sensor values as scanned by the CTSU. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are used to tuning for the sensors. Implements ctsu_api_t::dataGet. More...
fsp_err_t	R_CTSU_Close (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) Disables specified CTSU control block. Implements ctsu_api_t::close. More...
fsp_err_t	R_CTSU_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version) Return CTSU HAL driver version. Implements ctsu_api_t::versionGet. More...

Detailed Description

This HAL driver supports the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (CTSU). It implements the CTSU Interface .

Overview

The capacitive touch sensing unit HAL driver (r_ctsu) provides an API to control the CTSU/CTSU2 peripheral. This driver performs capacitance measurement based on various settings defined by the configuration.

Features

- Supports both Self-capacitance multi scan mode and Mutual-capacitance full scan mode
- Scans may be started by software or an external trigger
- Returns measured capacitance data on scan completion
- Optional DTC support

Configuration

Note

This module is configured via the QE for Capacitive Touch tuning tool.

Build Time Configurations for r_ctsu

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_ctsu_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Support for using DTC	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If enabled, DTC instances will be included in the build for both transmission and reception.
Interrupt priority level	MCU Specific Options		Priority level of all CTSU interrupt (CSTU_WR,CTSU_RD,CTSU_FN)

Configurations for Driver > CapTouch > CTSU Driver on r_ctsu

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > CapTouch > CTSU Driver on r_ctsu:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_ctsu0	Module name.
Scan Start Trigger	MCU Specific Options		CTSU Scan Start Trigger Select

Interrupt Configuration

The first R_CTSU_Open function call sets CTSU peripheral interrupts. The user should provide a callback function to be invoked at the end of the CTSU scan sequence. The callback argument will contain information about the scan status.

Clock Configuration

The CTSU peripheral module uses PCLKB as its clock source. You can set the PCLKB frequency using the clock configurator in e2 studio or by using the CGC Interface at run-time.

Note

The CTSU Drive pulse will be calculated and set by the tooling depending on the selected transfer rate.

Pin Configuration

The TSn pins are sensor pins for the CTSU.

The TSCAP pin is used for an internal low-pass filter and must be connected to an external decoupling capacitor.

Usage Notes

CTSU

Self-capacitance multi scan mode

In self-capacitance mode each TS pin is assigned to one touch button. Electrodes of multiple TS pins can be physically aligned to create slider or wheel interfaces.

- Scan Order
  - The hardware scans the specified pins in ascending order.
  - For example, if pins TS05, TS08, TS02, TS03, and TS06 are specified in your application, the hardware will scan them in the order TS02, TS03, TS05, TS06, TS08.
- Element
  - An element refers to the index of a pin within the scan order. Using the previous example, TS05 is element 2.
- Scan Time
  - Scanning is handled directly by the CTSU peripheral and does not utilize any main processor time.
  - It takes approximately 500us to scan a single sensor.
  - If DTC is not used additional overhead is required for the main processor to transfer data to/from registers when each sensor is scanned.

Mutual-capacitance full scan mode

In mutual-capacitance mode each TS pin acts as either a 'row' or 'column' in an array of sensors. As a result, this mode uses fewer pins when more than five sensors are configured. Mutual-capacitance mode is ideal for applications where many touch sensors are required, like keypads, button matrices and touchpads.

As an example, consider a standard phone keypad comprised of a matrix of four rows and three columns.

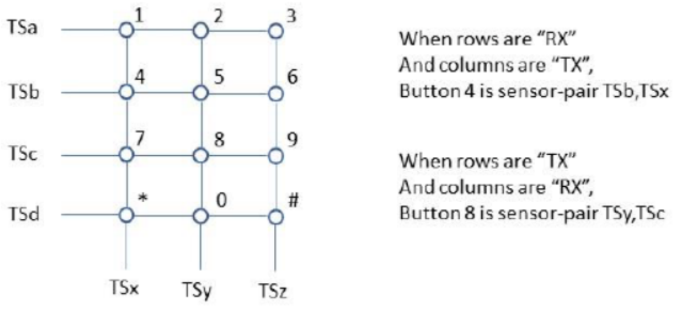


Figure 109: Mutual Button Image

In mutual capacitance mode only 7 pins are necessary to scan 12 buttons. In self mode, 12 pins would be required.

- Scan Order
  - The hardware scans the matrix by iterating over the TX pins first and the RX pins second.
  - For example, if pins TS10, TS11, and TS03 are specified as RX sensors and pins TS02, TS07, and TS04 are specified as TX sensors, the hardware will scan them in the following sensor-pair order:
    TS03-TS02, TS03-TS04, TS03-TS07, TS10-TS02, TS10-TS04, TS10-TS07,
    TS11-TS02, TS11-TS04, TS11-TS07
- Element
  - An element refers to the index of a sensor-pair within the scan order. Using the previous example, TS10-TS07 is element 5.
- Scan Time
  - Because mutual-capacitance scans two patterns for one element it takes twice as long as self-capacitance (1ms vs 0.5ms per element).

CTSU2

Note

The above notes regarding self- and mutual-capacitance modes on CTSU apply to the CTSU2 peripheral as well.

CFC mutual-capacitance multi scan mode

In CFC mutual-capacitance mode the receive lines are scanned in parallel, providing a significant speed boost. Operation is otherwise identical to normal CTSU mutual scanning.

- Scan Order
  - The hardware scans all RX pins simultaneously for each TX pin.
  - For example, if sensors TS10, TS11, and TS03 are specified as RX sensors, and sensors TS02, TS07, and TS04 are specified as TX sensors, the hardware will scan them in the following sensor-pair order:
    TS02-(TS03, TS10, TS11), TS04-(TS03, TS10, TS11), TS07-(TS03, TS10, TS11)
- Element
  - An element refers to the index of a sensor-pair within the scan order. Using the previous example, TS07-TS10 is element 7.
- Scan Time
  - Because the RX lines are scanned in parallel, CFC mutual-capacitance scan is the same amount of times faster than a basic mutual matrix scan as the number of RX lines. In other words, on a matrix with N receive lines, CFC mutual scanning is N

times faster than basic mutual scanning.

Shield Output

The CTSU2 can optionally drive a shield signal on a single TS pin comprised of all TX pulses. This signal can be used to drive a shield trace or lattice pour around touch sensors to improve the signal-to-noise ratio.

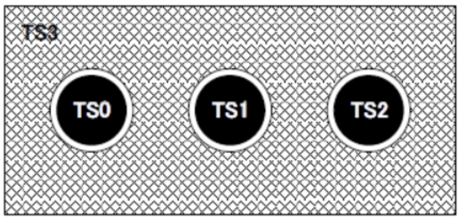


Figure 110: Shield pin Image

Note

This function is only available in self-capacitance mode.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the CTSU:

- Self-capacitance single-scan mode is not supported.
- If DTC is used, external triggers may not be used for scan trigger type.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the CTSU in an application.

```
volatile bool g_scan_flag = false;
void ctsu_callback (ctsu_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (CTSU_EVENT_SCAN_COMPLETE == p_args->event)
    {
       g_scan_flag = true;
    }
}
void ctsu_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
    uint16_t data[CTSU_CFG_NUM_SELF_ELEMENTS];
    err = R_CTSU_Open(&g_ctsu_ctrl, &g_ctsu_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
       err = R_CTSU_ScanStart(&g_ctsu_ctrl);
      handle_error(err);
 while (!g_scan_flag)
      {
 /* Wait for scan end callback */
      }
       g_scan_flag = false;
       err = R_CTSU_DataGet(&g_ctsu_ctrl, data);
 if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
      {
 /* Application specific data processing. */
      }
    }
}
```

Multi-configuration Example

This is a optional exmaple of using both Self-capacitance and Mutual-capacitance configurations in the same project.

```
void ctsu_optional_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
    uint16_t data[CTSU_CFG_NUM_SELF_ELEMENTS + (CTSU_CFG_NUM_MUTUAL_ELEMENTS * 2)];
    err = R_CTSU_Open(&g_ctsu_ctrl, &g_ctsu_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_CTSU_Open(&g_ctsu_ctrl_mutual, &g_ctsu_cfg_mutual);
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
```

```
R_CTSU_ScanStart(&g_ctsu_ctrl);
while (!g_scan_flag)
     {
/* Wait for scan end callback */
     }
      g_scan_flag = false;
R_CTSU_ScanStart(&g_ctsu_ctrl_mutual);
while (!g_scan_flag)
     {
/* Wait for scan end callback */
     }
      g_scan_flag = false;
      err = R_CTSU_DataGet(&g_ctsu_ctrl, data);
     handle_error(err);
if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
     {
/* Application specific data processing. */
     }
      err = R_CTSU_DataGet(&g_ctsu_ctrl_mutual, data);
     handle_error(err);
if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
     {
/* Application specific data processing. */
     }
   }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	ctsu_ctsuwr_t
struct	ctsu_self_buf_t
struct	ctsu_mutual_buf_t
struct	ctsu_correction_info_t
struct	ctsu_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	ctsu_state_t
enum	ctsu_tuning_t
enum	ctsu_correction_status_t
enum	ctsu_range_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ctsu_ctsuwr_t

struct ctsu_ctsuwr_t

CTSUWR write register value

Data Fields

uint16_t	ctsussc	Copy from (ssdiv << 8) by Open API.
uint16_t	ctsuso0	Copy from ((snum << 10) | so) by Open API.
uint16_t	ctsuso1	Copy from (sdpa << 8) by Open API. ICOG and RICOA is set recommend value.

◆ ctsu_self_buf_t

struct ctsu_self_buf_t

Scan buffer data formats (Self)

Data Fields

uint16_t	sen	Sensor counter data.
uint16_t	ref	Reference counter data (Not used)

◆ ctsu_mutual_buf_t

struct ctsu_mutual_buf_t

Scan buffer data formats (Mutual)

Data Fields

uint16_t	pri_sen	Primary sensor data.
uint16_t	pri_ref	Primary reference data (Not used)
uint16_t	snd_sen	Secondary sensor data.
uint16_t	snd_ref	Secondary reference data (Not

		used)

◆ ctsu_correction_info_t

struct ctsu_correction_info_t		
Correction information		
Data Fields		
ctsu_correction_status_t	status	Correction status.
ctsu_ctsuwr_t	ctsuwr	Correction scan parameter.
volatile ctsu_self_buf_t	scanbuf	Correction scan buffer.
uint16_t	first_val	1st correction value
uint16_t	second_val	2nd correction value
uint32_t	first_coefficient	1st correction coefficient
uint32_t	second_coefficient	2nd correction coefficient
uint32_t	ctsu_clock	CTSU clock [MHz].

◆ ctsu_instance_ctrl_t

struct ctsu_instance_ctrl_t	
CTSU private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_CTSU_Open() is called.	
Data Fields	
uint32_t	open
	Whether or not driver is open.
ctsu_state_t	state
	CTSU run state.
ctsu_tuning_t	tuning
	CTSU Initial offset tuning status.
uint16_t	num_elements
	Number of elements to scan.
uint16_t	wr_index
	Word index into ctsuwr register array.

uint16_t	rd_index
	Word index into scan data buffer.
uint8_t *	p_tuning_complete
	Pointer to tuning completion flag of each element. g_ctsu_tuning_complete[] is set by Open API.
int32_t *	p_tuning_diff
	Pointer to difference from base value of each element. g_ctsu_tuning_diff[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t	average
	CTSU Moving average counter.
uint16_t	num_moving_average
	Copy from config by Open API.
uint8_t	ctsucr1
	Copy from (atune1 << 3, md << 6) by Open API. CLK, ATUNE0, CSW, and PON is set by HAL driver.
ctsu_ctsuwr_t *	p_ctsuwr
	CTSUWR write register value. g_ctsu_ctsuwr[] is set by Open API.
ctsu_self_buf_t *	p_self_raw
	Pointer to Self raw data. g_ctsu_self_raw[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_self_work
	pointer to Self work buffer. g_ctsu_self_work[] is set by Open API.

uint16_t *	p_self_data
	pointer to Self moving average data. g_ctsu_self_data[] is set by Open API.
ctsu_mutual_buf_t *	p_mutual_raw
	pointer to Mutual raw data. g_ctsu_mutual_raw[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_mutual_pri_work
	pointer to Mutual primary work buffer. g_ctsu_mutual_pri_work[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_mutual_snd_work
	pointer to Mutual secondary work buffer. g_ctsu_mutual_snd_work[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_mutual_pri_data
	pointer to Mutual primary moving average data. g_ctsu_mutual_pri_data[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_mutual_snd_data
	pointer to Mutual secondary moving average data. g_ctsu_mutual_snd_data[] is set by Open API.
ctsu_correction_info_t *	p_correction_info
	pointer to correction info
ctsu_cfg_t const *	p_ctsu_cfg
	Pointer to initial configurations.
IRQn_Type	write_irq

	Copy from config by Open API. CTSU_CTSUWR interrupt vector.
IRQn_Type	read_irq
	Copy from config by Open API. CTSU_CTSURD interrupt vector.
IRQn_Type	end_irq
	Copy from config by Open API. CTSU_CTSUFN interrupt vector.
void const *	p_context
	Placeholder for user data.
void(*	p_callback)(ctsu_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback provided when a CTSUFN occurs.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ctsu_state_t

enum ctsu_state_t

CTSU run state

Enumerator	
CTSU_STATE_INIT	Not open.
CTSU_STATE_IDLE	Opened.
CTSU_STATE_SCANNING	Scanning now.
CTSU_STATE_SCANNED	Scan end.

◆ ctsu_tuning_t

enum ctsu_tuning_t

CTSU Initial offset tuning status

Enumerator	
CTSU_TUNING_INCOMPLETE	Initial offset tuning incomplete.
CTSU_TUNING_COMPLETE	Initial offset tuning complete.

◆ ctsu_correction_status_t

enum ctsu_correction_status_t

CTSU Correction status

Enumerator	
CTSU_CORRECTION_INIT	Correction initial status.
CTSU_CORRECTION_RUN	Correction scan running.
CTSU_CORRECTION_COMPLETE	Correction complete.
CTSU_CORRECTION_ERROR	Correction error.

◆ ctsu_range_t

enum ctsu_range_t

CTSU range definition

Enumerator	
CTSU_RANGE_20UA	20uA mode
CTSU_RANGE_40UA	40uA mode
CTSU_RANGE_80UA	80uA mode
CTSU_RANGE_160UA	160uA mode
CTSU_RANGE_NUM	number of range

Function Documentation

◆ R_CTSU_Open()

fsp_err_t R_CTSU_Open (ctsu_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, ctsu_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens and configures the CTSU driver module. Implements ctsu_api_t::open.

Example:

```
    err = R_CTSU_Open(&g_ctsu_ctrl, &g_ctsu_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CTSU successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer, or one or more configuration options is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open. This module can only be opened once.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Configuration parameter error.

Note

In the first Open, measurement for correction works, and it takes several tens of milliseconds.

◆ R_CTSU_ScanStart()

fsp_err_t R_CTSU_ScanStart (ctsu_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

This function should be called each time a periodic timer expires. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are used to tuning for the sensors. Before starting the next scan, first get the data with R_CTSU_DataGet(). If a different control block scan should be run, check the scan is complete before executing. Implements ctsu_api_t::scanStart.

Example:

```
while (true)
   {
      err = R_CTSU_ScanStart(&g_ctsu_ctrl);
     handle_error(err);
while (!g_scan_flag)
     {
/* Wait for scan end callback */
     }
      g_scan_flag = false;
      err = R_CTSU_DataGet(&g_ctsu_ctrl, data);
if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
     {
/* Application specific data processing. */
     }
   }
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CTSU successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_SCANNING	Scanning this instance or other.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_NOT_GET_DATA	The previous data does not been getted by DataGet.

◆ R_CTSU_DataGet()

fsp_err_t R_CTSU_DataGet (ctsu_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint16_t * *p_data*)

This function gets the sensor values as scanned by the CTSU. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are used to tuning for the sensors. Implements ctsu_api_t::dataGet.

Example:

```
while (true)
   {
      err = R_CTSU_ScanStart(&g_ctsu_ctrl);
     handle_error(err);
while (!g_scan_flag)
     {
/* Wait for scan end callback */
     }
      g_scan_flag = false;
      err = R_CTSU_DataGet(&g_ctsu_ctrl, data);
if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
     {
/* Application specific data processing. */
     }
   }
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CTSU successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_SCANNING	Scanning this instance.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_INCOMPLETE_TUNING	Incomplete initial offset tuning.

◆ R_CTSU_Close()

fsp_err_t R_CTSU_Close (ctsu_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disables specified CTSU control block. Implements ctsu_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CTSU successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ R_CTSU_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_CTSU_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Return CTSU HAL driver version. Implements ctsu_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter

5.2.10 Digital to Analog Converter (r_dac)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_DAC_Open (dac_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, dac_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC_Write (dac_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, uint16_t value)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC_Start (dac_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC_Stop (dac_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC_Close (dac_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the DAC12 peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the DAC Interface.

Overview

Features

The DAC module outputs one of 4096 voltage levels between the positive and negative reference voltages.

- Supports setting left-justified or right-justified 12-bit value format for the 16-bit input data registers
- Supports output amplifiers on selected MCUs
- Supports charge pump on selected MCUs
- Supports synchronization with the Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) module

Configuration

Note

For MCUs supporting more than one channel, the following configuration options are shared by all the DAC channels:

- *Synchronize with ADC*
- *Data Format*
- *Charge Pump*

Build Time Configurations for r_dac

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_dac_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > DAC Driver on r_dac

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > DAC Driver on r_dac:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_dac0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Specify the hardware channel.
Synchronize with ADC	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Enable DA/AD synchronization.
Data Format	• Right Justified • Left Justified	Right Justified	Specify the DAC data format.

Output Amplifier	MCU Specific Options	Enable the DAC output amplifier.
Charge Pump (Requires MOCO active)	MCU Specific Options	Enable the DAC charge pump.
ELC Trigger Source	MCU Specific Options	ELC event source that will trigger the DAC to start a conversion.

Clock Configuration

The DAC peripheral module uses PCLKB as its clock source.

Pin Configuration

The DAn pins are used as analog outputs. Each DAC channel has one output pin.

The AVCC0 and AVSS0 pins are power and ground supply pins for the DAC and ADC.

The VREFH and VREFL pins are top and ground voltage reference pins for the DAC and ADC.

Usage Notes

Charge Pump

The charge pump must be enabled when using DAC pin output while operating at $AV_{CC} < 2.7V$.

Note

The MOCO must be running to use the charge pump.
If the DAC output is to be routed to an internal signal, do not enable the charge pump.

Synchronization with ADC

When ADC synchronization is enabled and an ADC conversion is in progress, if a DAC conversion is started it will automatically be delayed until after the ADC conversion is complete.

Limitations

- For MCUs supporting ADC unit 1:
  - Once synchronization between DAC and ADC unit 1 is turned on during R_DAC_Open synchronization cannot be turned off by the driver. In order to desynchronize DAC with ADC unit 1, manually clear DAADSCR.DAADST to 0 when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0 and ADC unit 1 is halted.
  - The DAC module can only be synchronized with ADC unit 1.
  - For MCUs having more than 1 DAC channel, both channels are synchronized with ADC unit 1 if synchronization is enabled.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the R_DAC in an application. This example shows how this driver can be used for basic Digital to Analog Conversion operations.

```
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
    uint16_t value;
 /* Pin configuration: Output enable DA0 as Analog. */
 /* Initialize the DAC channel */
    err = R_DAC_Open(&g_dac_ctrl, &g_dac_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    value = (uint16_t) DAC_EXAMPLE_VALUE_ABC;
    err = R_DAC_Write(&g_dac_ctrl, value);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_DAC_Start(&g_dac_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	dac_instance_ctrl_t
struct	dac_extended_cfg_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ dac_instance_ctrl_t

struct dac_instance_ctrl_t
DAC instance control block.

◆ dac_extended_cfg_t

struct dac_extended_cfg_t

DAC extended configuration

Data Fields		
bool	enable_charge_pump	Enable DAC charge pump available on selected MCUs.
bool	output_amplifier_enabled	Output amplifier enable available on selected MCUs.
dac_data_format_t	data_format	Data format.

Function Documentation

◆ R_DAC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_DAC_Open (dac_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, dac_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Perform required initialization described in hardware manual. Implements dac_api_t::open. Configures a single DAC channel, starts the channel, and provides a handle for use with the DAC API Write and Close functions. Must be called once prior to calling any other DAC API functions. After a channel is opened, Open should not be called again for the same channel without calling Close first.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The channel was successfully opened.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter check failure due to one or more reasons below: 1. One or both of the following parameters may be NULL: p_api_ctrl or p_cfg 2. data_format value in p_cfg is out of range. 3. Extended configuration structure is set to NULL for MCU supporting charge pump.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	Channel ID requested in p_cfg may not available on the devices.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The control structure is already opened.

◆ R_DAC_Write()

fsp_err_t R_DAC_Write (dac_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, uint16_t *value*)

Write data to the D/A converter and enable the output if it has not been enabled.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data is successfully written to the D/A Converter.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_ctrl has not been opened.

◆ R_DAC_Start()

fsp_err_t R_DAC_Start (dac_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*)

Start the D/A conversion output if it has not been started.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The channel is started successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Attempt to re-start a channel.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_ctrl has not been opened.

◆ R_DAC_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_DAC_Stop (dac_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*)

Stop the D/A conversion and disable the output signal.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The control is successfully stopped.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_ctrl has not been opened.

◆ R_DAC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_DAC_Close (dac_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*)

Stop the D/A conversion, stop output, and close the DAC channel.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The channel is successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_ctrl has not been opened.

◆ R_DAC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_DAC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully retrieved version information.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.11 Digital to Analog Converter (r_dac8)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_DAC8_Open (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, dac_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC8_Close (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC8_Write (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t value)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC8_Start (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC8_Stop (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DAC8_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the DAC8 peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the DAC Interface.

Overview

Features

The DAC8 module outputs one of 256 voltage levels between the positive and negative reference voltages. DAC8 on selected MCUs have below features

- Charge pump control
- Synchronization with the Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) module
- Multiple Operation Modes
  - Normal

- Real-Time (Event Link)

Configuration

Note

For MCUs supporting more than one channel, the following configuration options are shared by all the DAC8 channels:

- *Synchronize with ADC*
- *Charge Pump*

Build Time Configurations for r_dac8

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_dac8_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > DAC8 Driver on r_dac8

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > DAC8 Driver on r_dac8:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_dac8_0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Specify the hardware channel.
D/A A/D Synchronous Conversion	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Synchronize the DAC8 update with the ADC to reduce interference with A/D conversions.
DAC Mode	• Normal Mode • Real-time (Event Link) Mode	Normal Mode	Select the DAC operating mode
Real-time Trigger Event	MCU Specific Options		Specify the event used to trigger conversion in Real-time mode. This setting is only valid when Real-time mode is enabled.
Charge Pump (Requires	• Enabled	Enabled	Enable the DAC charge

MOCO active)	• Disabled	pump.

Clock Configuration

The DAC8 peripheral module uses the PCLKB as its clock source.

Pin Configuration

The DA8_n pins are used as analog outputs. Each DAC8 channel has one output pin.

The AVCC0 and AVSS0 pins are power and ground supply and reference pins for the DAC8.

Usage Notes

Charge Pump

The charge pump must be enabled when using DAC8 pin output while operating at $AV_{CC} < 2.7V$.

Note

The MOCO must be running to use the charge pump.
If DAC8 output is to be routed to an internal signal, do not enable the charge pump.

Synchronization with ADC

When ADC synchronization is enabled and an ADC conversion is in progress, if a DAC8 conversion is started it will automatically be delayed until after the ADC conversion is complete.

Real-time Mode

When Real-time mode is selected, the DAC8 will perform a conversion each time the selected ELC event is received.

Limitations

- Synchronization between DAC8 and ADC is activated when calling R_DAC8_Open. At this point synchronization cannot be deactivated by the driver. In order to desynchronize DAC8 with ADC, manually clear DACADSCR.DACADST to 0 while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0 and the ADC is halted.
- For MCUs having more than 1 DAC8 channel, both channels are synchronized with ADC if synchronization is enabled.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the R_DAC8 in an application. This example shows how this driver can be used for basic 8 bit Digital to Analog Conversion operations.

```
dac8_instance_ctrl_t g_dac8_ctrl;
dac_cfg_t g_dac8_cfg =
{
    .channel            = 0U,
    .ad_da_synchronized = false,
    .p_extend           = &g_dac8_cfg_extend
};
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
    uint16_t value;
 /* Pin configuration: Output enable DA8_0(RA2A1) as Analog. */
 /* Initialize the DAC8 channel */
    err = R_DAC8_Open(&g_dac8_ctrl, &g_dac8_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    value = (uint8_t) DAC8_EXAMPLE_VALUE_ABC;
 /* Write value to DAC module */
    err = R_DAC8_Write(&g_dac8_ctrl, value);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start DAC8 conversion */
    err = R_DAC8_Start(&g_dac8_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	dac8_instance_ctrl_t
struct	dac8_extended_cfg_t

Enumerations

enum	dac8_mode_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ dac8_instance_ctrl_t

struct dac8_instance_ctrl_t
DAC8 instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE.

◆ dac8_extended_cfg_t

struct dac8_extended_cfg_t

DAC8 extended configuration		
Data Fields		
bool	enable_charge_pump	Enable DAC charge pump.
dac8_mode_t	dac_mode	DAC mode.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ dac8_mode_t

enum dac8_mode_t

Enumerator	
DAC8_MODE_NORMAL	DAC Normal mode.
DAC8_MODE_REAL_TIME	DAC Real-time (event link) mode.

Function Documentation

◆ R_DAC8_Open()

fsp_err_t R_DAC8_Open (dac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, dac_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Perform required initialization described in hardware manual.

Implements dac_api_t::open.

Configures a single DAC channel. Must be called once prior to calling any other DAC API functions. After a channel is opened, Open should not be called again for the same channel without calling Close first.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The channel was successfully opened.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One or both of the following parameters may be NULL: p_ctrl or p_cfg
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The instance control structure has already been opened.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	An invalid channel was requested.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ENABLED	Setting DACADSCR is not enabled when ADCSR.ADST = 0.

Note

This function is reentrant for different channels. It is not reentrant for the same channel.

◆ R_DAC8_Close()

fsp_err_t R_DAC8_Close (dac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stop the D/A conversion, stop output, and close the DAC channel.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The channel is successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_instance_ctrl has not been opened.

◆ R_DAC8_Write()

fsp_err_t R_DAC8_Write (dac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint16_t *value*)

Write data to the D/A converter.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data is successfully written to the D/A Converter.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_instance_ctrl has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_OVERFLOW	Data overflow when data value exceeds 8-bit limit.

◆ R_DAC8_Start()

fsp_err_t R_DAC8_Start (dac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Start the D/A conversion output.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The channel is started successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_instance_ctrl has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Attempt to re-start a channel.

◆ R_DAC8_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_DAC8_Stop (dac_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stop the D/A conversion and disable the output signal.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The control is successfully stopped.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Channel associated with p_instance_ctrl has not been opened.

◆ R_DAC8_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_DAC8_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully retrieved version information.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.12 Direct Memory Access Controller (r_dmac)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_Open (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_Reconfigure (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_info_t *p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_Reset (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void const *volatile p_src, void *volatile p_dest, uint16_t const num_transfers)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_SoftwareStart (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_start_mode_t mode)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_SoftwareStop (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_Enable (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_Disable (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_InfoGet (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_properties_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_Close (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DMAC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the DMAC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Transfer Interface.

Overview

The Direct Memory Access Controller (DMAC) transfers data from one memory location to another without using the CPU.

Features

- Supports multiple transfer modes
  - Normal transfer
  - Repeat transfer
  - Block transfer
- Address increment, decrement, fixed, or offset modes
- Triggered by ELC events
  - Some exceptions apply, see the Event table in the Event Numbers section of the Interrupt Controller Unit chapter of the hardware manual
- Supports 1, 2, and 4 byte data units

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_dmac

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_dmac_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Transfer > Transfer Driver on r_dmac

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Transfer > Transfer Driver on r_dmac :

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_transfer0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Specify the hardware channel.
Mode	• Normal • Repeat • Block	Normal	Select the transfer mode. Normal: One transfer per activation, transfer ends after Number of Transfers; Repeat: One transfer per activation, Repeat Area address reset after Number of Transfers, transfer ends after Number of Blocks; Block: Number of Blocks per activation, Repeat Area address reset after Number of Transfers, transfer ends after Number of Blocks.
Transfer Size	• 1 Byte • 2 Bytes • 4 Bytes	2 Bytes	Select the transfer size.
Destination Address Mode	• Fixed • Offset addition • Incremented • Decremented	Fixed	Select the address mode for the destination.
Source Address Mode	• Fixed • Offset addition • Incremented • Decremented	Fixed	Select the address mode for the source.
Repeat Area (Unused in Normal Mode)	• Destination • Source	Source	Select the repeat area. Either the source or destination address resets to its initial value after completing Number of Transfers in Repeat or Block mode.
Destination Pointer	Manual Entry	NULL	Specify the transfer destination pointer.
Source Pointer	Manual Entry	NULL	Specify the transfer source pointer.
Number of Transfers	Value must be a non-	0	Specify the number of

	negative integer		transfers.
Number of Blocks (Valid only in Repeat and Block Mode)	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Specify the number of blocks to transfer in Repeat or Block mode.
Activation Source	MCU Specific Options		Select the DMAC transfer start event. If no ELC event is chosen then software start can be used.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback that is called at the end of the transfer.
Transfer End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the transfer end interrupt priority.
Interrupt Frequency	• Interrupt after all transfers have completed • Interrupt after each block, or repeat size is transfered	Interrupt after all transfers have completed	Select to have interrupt after each transfer or after last transfer.
Offset value (Valid only when address mode is \'Offset\')	Value must be a 24 bit signed integer.	1	Offset value * transfer size is added to the address after each transfer.

Clock Configuration

The DMAC peripheral module uses ICLK as the clock source. The ICLK frequency is set by using the RA Configuration Clocks tab prior to a build, or by using the CGC module at run-time.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

Transfer Modes

The DMAC Module supports three modes of operation.

- **Normal Mode** - In normal mode, a single data unit is transfered every time the configured ELC event is received by the DMAC channel. A data unit can be 1-byte, 2-bytes, or 4-bytes. The source and destination addresses can be fixed, increment, decrement, or add an offset to the next data unit after each transfer. A 16-bit counter decrements after each transfer. When the counter reaches 0, transfers will no longer be triggered by the ELC event and the CPU can be interrupted to signal that all transfers have finished.
- **Repeat Mode** - Repeat mode works the same way as normal mode, however the length is limited to an integer in the range[1,1024]. When the transfer counter reaches 0, the counter is reset to its configured value, the repeat area(source or destination address) resets to its starting address and the block count remaining will decrement by 1. When the

block count reaches 0, transfers will no longer be triggered by the ELC event and the CPU may be interrupted to signal that all transfers have finished.
- **Block Mode** - In block mode, the amount of data units transfered by each interrupt can be set to an integer in the range [1,1024]. The number of blocks to transfer can also be configured to a 16-bit number. After each block transfer the repeat area(source or destination address) will reset to the original address and the other address will be incremented or decremented to the next block.

Selecting the DTC or DMAC

The Transfer API is implemented by both DTC and the DMAC so that applications can switch between the DTC and the DMAC. When selecting between them, consider these factors:

	DTC	DMAC
Repeat Mode	• Repeats forever • Max repeat size is 256 x 4 bytes	• Configurable number of repeats • Max repeat size is 1024 x 4 bytes
Block Mode	• Max block size is 256 x 4 bytes	• Max block size is 1024 x 4 bytes
Channels	• One instance per interrupt	• MCU specific (8 channels or less)
Chained Transfers	• Supported	• Not Supported
Software Trigger	• Must use the software ELC event	• Has support for software trigger without using software ELC event • Supports TRANSFER_START_MODE_SINGLE and TRANSFER_START_MODE_REPEAT
Offset Address Mode	• Not supported	• Supported

Interrupts

The DTC and DMAC interrupts behave differently. The DTC uses the configured IELSR event IRQ as the interrupt source whereas each DMAC channel has its own IRQ.

The transfer_info_t::irq setting also behaves a little differently depending on which mode is selected.

Normal Mode

	DTC	DMAC
TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH	Interrupt after each transfer	N/A
TRANSFER_IRQ_END	Interrupt after last transfer	Interrupt after last transfer

Repeat Mode

	DTC	DMAC
TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH	Interrupt after each transfer	Interrupt after each repeat

TRANSFER_IRQ_END	Interrupt after each repeat	Interrupt after last transfer

Block Mode

	DTC	DMAC
TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH	Interrupt after each block	Interrupt after each block
TRANSFER_IRQ_END	Interrupt after last block	Interrupt after last block

Additional Considerations

- The DTC requires a moderate amount of RAM (one transfer_info_t struct per open instance + DTC_VECTOR_TABLE_SIZE).
- The DTC stores transfer information in RAM and writes back to RAM after each transfer whereas the DMAC stores all transfer information in registers.
- When transfers are configured for more than one activation source, the DTC must fetch the transfer info from RAM on each interrupt. This can cause a higher latency between transfers.

Offset Address Mode

When the source or destination mode is configured to offset mode, a configurable offset is added to the source or destination pointer after each transfer. The offset is a signed 24 bit number.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the DMAC in an application. In this case, one or more events have been routed to the DMAC for handling so it only needs to be enabled to start accepting transfers.

```
void dmac_minimal_example (void)
{
 /* Open the transfer instance with initial configuration. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_DMAC_Open(&g_transfer_ctrl, &g_transfer_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable the DMAC so that it responds to transfer requests. */
    err = R_DMAC_Enable(&g_transfer_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

CRC32 Example

In this example the DMAC is used to feed the CRC peripheral to perform a CRC32 operation.

```
volatile bool g_transfer_complete = false;
void dmac_callback (dmac_callback_args_t * cb_data)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(cb_data);
    g_transfer_complete = true;
}
void dmac_crc_example (void)
{
    uint8_t p_src[TRANSFER_LENGTH];
 /* Initialize p_src to [ABC..OP] */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < TRANSFER_LENGTH; i++)
    {
       p_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Set transfer source address to p_src */
    g_transfer_cfg.p_info->p_src = (void *) p_src;
 /* Set transfer destination address to the CRC data input register */
    g_transfer_cfg.p_info->p_dest = (void *) &R_CRC->CRCDIR;
 /* Open the transfer instance with initial configuration. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_DMAC_Open(&g_transfer_ctrl, &g_transfer_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable DMAC transfers. */
    (void) R_DMAC_Enable(&g_transfer_ctrl);
 /* Open the CRC module. */
    err = R_CRC_Open(&g_crc_ctrl, &g_crc_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Clear the transfer complete flag. */
    g_transfer_complete = false;
 /* Trigger the transfer using software. */
    err = R_DMAC_SoftwareStart(&g_transfer_ctrl, TRANSFER_START_MODE_SINGLE);
    handle_error(err);
 while (!g_transfer_complete)
    {
```

```
/* Wait for transfer complete interrupt */
   }
/* Get CRC result and perform final XOR. */
   uint32_t crc32;
   (void) R_CRC_CalculatedValueGet(&g_crc_ctrl, &crc32);
   crc32 ^= CRC32_FINAL_XOR_VALUE;
/* Verify that the CRC32 is calculated correctly. */
/* CRC32("ABCD...NOP") = 0xE0E8FF4D. */
const uint32_t expected_crc32 = 0xE0E8FF4D;
if (expected_crc32 != crc32)
   {
/* Handle any CRC errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
      handle_crc_error();
   }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	dmac_instance_ctrl_t
struct	dmac_callback_args_t
struct	dmac_extended_cfg_t

Macros

#define	DMAC_MAX_NORMAL_TRANSFER_LENGTH
#define	DMAC_MAX_REPEAT_TRANSFER_LENGTH
#define	DMAC_MAX_BLOCK_TRANSFER_LENGTH
#define	DMAC_MAX_REPEAT_COUNT
#define	DMAC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT

Data Structure Documentation

◆ dmac_instance_ctrl_t

struct dmac_instance_ctrl_t

Control block used by driver. DO NOT INITIALIZE - this structure will be initialized in transfer_api_t::open.

◆ dmac_callback_args_t

struct dmac_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data.

Data Fields		
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in r_transfer_t::open function in transfer_cfg_t.

◆ dmac_extended_cfg_t

struct dmac_extended_cfg_t

DMAC transfer configuration extension. This extension is required.

Data Fields

uint8_t	channel
	Channel number, does not apply to all HAL drivers.
IRQn_Type	irq
	DMAC interrupt number.
uint8_t	ipl
	DMAC interrupt priority.
int32_t	offset
	Offset value used with transfer_addr_mode_t::TRANSFER_ADDR_MODE_OFFSET.
elc_event_t	activation_source
void(*	p_callback)(dmac_callback_args_t *cb_data)
void const *	p_context

Field Documentation

◆ activation_source

`elc_event_t dmac_extended_cfg_t::activation_source`

Select which event will trigger the transfer.

Note

Select ELC_EVENT_NONE for software activation in order to use softwareStart and softwareStart to trigger transfers.

◆ p_callback

`void(* dmac_extended_cfg_t::p_callback) (dmac_callback_args_t *cb_data)`

Callback for transfer end interrupt.

◆ p_context

`void const* dmac_extended_cfg_t::p_context`

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user p_callback in dmac_callback_args_t.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ DMAC_MAX_NORMAL_TRANSFER_LENGTH

`#define DMAC_MAX_NORMAL_TRANSFER_LENGTH`

Max configurable number of transfers in TRANSFER_MODE_NORMAL.

◆ DMAC_MAX_REPEAT_TRANSFER_LENGTH

`#define DMAC_MAX_REPEAT_TRANSFER_LENGTH`

Max number of transfers per repeat for TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT.

◆ DMAC_MAX_BLOCK_TRANSFER_LENGTH

`#define DMAC_MAX_BLOCK_TRANSFER_LENGTH`

Max number of transfers per block in TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK

◆ DMAC_MAX_REPEAT_COUNT

`#define DMAC_MAX_REPEAT_COUNT`

Max configurable number of repeats to trasnfer in TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT

◆ DMAC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT

#define DMAC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT
Max configurable number of blocks to transfer in TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK

Function Documentation

◆ R_DMAC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_Open (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configure a DMAC channel.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The configured channel is invalid.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	The IRQ associated with the activation source is not enabled in the BSP.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The control structure is already opened.

◆ R_DMAC_Reconfigure()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_Reconfigure (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_info_t * *p_info*)

Reconfigure the transfer with new transfer info.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfer is configured and will start when trigger occurs.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ENABLED	DMAC is not enabled. The current configuration must not be valid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DMAC_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_Reset (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void const *volatile *p_src*, void *volatile *p_dest*, uint16_t const *num_transfers*)

Reset transfer source, destination, and number of transfers.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfer reset successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ENABLED	DMAC is not enabled. The current configuration must not be valid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DMAC_SoftwareStart()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_SoftwareStart (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_start_mode_t *mode*)

If the mode is TRANSFER_START_MODE_SINGLE initiate a single transfer with software. If the mode is TRANSFER_START_MODE_REPEAT continue triggering transfers until all of the transfers are completed.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfer started written successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Handle was not configured for software activation.

◆ R_DMAC_SoftwareStop()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_SoftwareStop (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Stop software transfers if they were started with TRANSFER_START_MODE_REPEAT.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfer stopped written successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DMAC_Enable()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_Enable (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Enable transfers for the configured activation source.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Counter value written successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DMAC_Disable()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_Disable (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Disable transfers so that they are no longer triggered by the activation source.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Counter value written successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DMAC_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_InfoGet (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_properties_t *const *p_info*)

Set driver specific information in provided pointer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information has been written to p_info.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.

◆ R_DMAC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_Close (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Disable transfer and clean up internal data. Implements transfer_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DMAC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DMAC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_DMAC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Set driver version based on compile time macros.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.

5.2.13 Data Operation Circuit (r_doc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_DOC_Open (doc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, doc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_DOC_Close (doc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DOC_StatusGet (doc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, doc_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_DOC_Write (doc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t data)
fsp_err_t	R_DOC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the DOC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the DOC Interface.

Overview

Features

The DOC HAL module peripheral is used to compare, add or subtract 16-bit data and can detect the following events:

- A match or mismatch between data values
- Overflow of an addition operation
- Underflow of a subtraction operation

A user-defined callback can be created to inform the CPU when any of above events occur.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_doc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_doc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Monitoring > Data Operation Circuit Driver on r_doc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Monitoring > Data Operation Circuit Driver on r_doc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description

Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_doc0	Module name.
Event	• Comparison mismatch • Comparison match • Addition overflow • Subtraction underflow	Comparison mismatch	Select the event that will trigger the DOC interrupt.
Reference/Initial Data	Value must be a 16 bit integer between 0 and 65535	0	Enter Initial Value for Addition/Subtraction or enter reference value for comparison.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function must be provided. This will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) when the configured DOC event occurs.
DOC Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the DOC interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The DOC HAL module does not require a specific clock configuration.

Pin Configuration

The DOC HAL module does not require and specific pin configurations.

Usage Notes

DMAC/DTC Integration

DOC can be used with Direct Memory Access Controller (r_dmac) or Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc) to write to the input register without CPU intervention. DMAC is more useful for most DOC applications because it can be started directly from software. To write DOC input data with DTC/DMAC, set transfer_info_t::p_dest to R_DOC->DODIR.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the R_DOC in an application. This example shows how this driver can be used for continuous 16 bit addition operation while reading the result at every overflow event.

```
#define DOC_EXAMPLE_VALUE 0xF000
```

```
uint32_t g_callback_event_counter = 0;
/* This callback is called when DOC overflow event occurs. It is registered in
doc_cfg_t when R_DOC_Open is
 * called. */
void doc_callback (doc_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
    g_callback_event_counter++;
}
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t    err;
 doc_status_t result;
 /* Initialize the DOC module for addition with initial value specified in
doc_cfg_t::doc_data. */
    err = R_DOC_Open(&g_doc_ctrl, &g_doc_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write data to the DOC Data Input Register and read the result of addition from
status register when an
  * interrupt occurs. */
 for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
    {
       err = R_DOC_Write(&g_doc_ctrl, DOC_EXAMPLE_VALUE);
      handle_error(err);
 if (g_callback_event_counter >= 1)
      {
 /* Read the result of the operation */
            err = R_DOC_StatusGet(&g_doc_ctrl, &result);
      handle_error(err);
       }
    }
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ R_DOC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_DOC_Open (doc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, doc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens and configures the Data Operation Circuit (DOC) in comparison, addition or subtraction mode and sets initial data for addition or subtraction, or reference data for comparison.

Example:

```
 /* Initialize the DOC module for addition with initial value specified in
doc_cfg_t::doc_data. */
    err = R_DOC_Open(&g_doc_ctrl, &g_doc_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	DOC successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module already open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One or more pointers point to NULL or callback is NULL or the interrupt vector is invalid.

◆ R_DOC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_DOC_Close (doc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Closes the module driver. Enables module stop mode.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer pointing to NULL.

Note

This function will disable the DOC interrupt in the NVIC.

◆ R_DOC_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_DOC_StatusGet (doc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, doc_status_t *const *p_status*)

Returns the result of addition/subtraction.

Example:

```
/* Read the result of the operation */
           err = R_DOC_StatusGet(&g_doc_ctrl, &result);
     handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Status successfully read.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One or more pointers point to NULL.

◆ R_DOC_Write()

fsp_err_t R_DOC_Write (doc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint16_t *data*)

Writes to the DODIR - DOC Input Register.

Example:

```
      err = R_DOC_Write(&g_doc_ctrl, DOC_EXAMPLE_VALUE);
     handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Values successfully written to the registers.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One or more pointers point to NULL.

◆ R_DOC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_DOC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns DOC HAL driver version.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer pointing to NULL.

5.2.14 D/AVE 2D Port Interface (r_drw)

Modules

Driver for the DRW peripheral on RA MCUs. This module is a port of D/AVE 2D.

Overview

Note

> ***The D/AVE 2D Port Interface (D1 layer) is a HAL layer for the D/AVE D2 layer API and does not provide any interfaces to the user. Consult the TES Dave2D Driver Documentation for further information on using the D2 API.***
> *For cross-platform compatibility purposes the D1 and D2 APIs are not bound by the FSP coding guidelines for function names and general module functionality.*

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_drw

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_drw_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Allow Indirect Mode	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enable indirect mode to allow no-copy mode for d2_adddlist (see the TES Dave2D Driver Documentation for details).
Memory Allocation	• Default • Custom	Default	Set Memory Allocation to Default to use built-in dynamic memory allocation for the D2 heap. This will use an RTOS heap if configured; otherwise, standard C malloc and free will be used. Set to Custom to define your own allocation scheme for the D2 heap. In this case, the developer will need to define the following functions:

void * d1_malloc(size_t size)
void d1_free(void * ptr)

Configurations for Driver > Graphics > D/AVE 2D Port Interface on r_drw

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Graphics > D/AVE 2D Port Interface on r_drw:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
D2 Device Handle Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	d2_handle0	Set the name for the d2_device handle used when calling D2 layer functions.
DRW Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the DRW_INT (display list completion) interrupt priority.

Heap Size

The D1 port layer allows the D2 driver to allocate memory as needed. There are three ways the driver can accomplish this:

1. Allocate memory using the main heap
2. Allocate memory using a heap provided by an RTOS
3. Allocate memory via user-provided functions

When the "Memory Allocation" configuration option is set to "Default" the driver will use an RTOS implementation if available and the main heap otherwise. Setting the option to "Custom" allows the user to define their own scheme using the following prototypes:

```
void * d1_malloc(size_t size);

void d1_free(void * ptr);
```

Warning

If there is no RTOS-based allocation scheme the main heap will be used. Be sure that it is enabled by setting the "Heap size (bytes)" property under RA Common on the BSP tab of the configurator.

Note

It is recommended to add 32KB of additional heap space for the D2 driver until the actual usage can be determined in your application.

Interrupt

The D1 port includes one interrupt to handle various events like display list completion or bus error. This interrupt is managed internally by the D2 driver and no callback function is available.

Usage Notes

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the DRW engine:

- The DRW module supports two additional interrupt types - bus error and render complete. These interrupts are not needed for D2 layer operation and thus are not supported.
- If the DRW module is stopped during rendering the render will continue once the module is started again. If this behavior is undesirable in your application it is recommended to call d2_flushframe before stopping the peripheral.

5.2.15 Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_DTC_Open (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_Reconfigure (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_info_t *p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_Reset (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void const *volatile p_src, void *volatile p_dest, uint16_t const num_transfers)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_SoftwareStart (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_start_mode_t mode)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_SoftwareStop (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_Enable (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_Disable (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_InfoGet (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, transfer_properties_t *const p_properties)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_Close (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_DTC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the DTC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Transfer Interface.

Overview

The Data Transfer Controller (DTC) transfers data from one memory location to another without using the CPU.

The DTC uses a RAM based vector table. Each entry in the vector table corresponds to an entry in the ISR vector table. When the DTC is triggered by an interrupt, it reads the DTC vector table, fetches the transfer information, and then executes the transfer. After the transfer is executed, the DTC writes the updated transfer info back to the location pointed to by the DTC vector table.

Features

- Supports multiple transfer modes
  - Normal transfer
  - Repeat transfer
  - Block transfer
- Chain transfers
- Address increment, decrement or fixed modes
- Can be triggered by any event that has reserved a slot in the interrupt vector table.
  - Some exceptions apply, see the Event table in the Event Numbers section of the Interrupt Controller Unit chapter of the hardware manual
- Supports 1, 2, and 4 byte data units

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_dtc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_dtc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Linker section to keep DTC vector table	Manual Entry	.fsp_dtc_vector_table	Section to place the DTC vector table.

Configurations for Driver > Transfer > Transfer Driver on r_dtc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Transfer > Transfer Driver on r_dtc :

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_transfer0	Module name.
Mode	• Normal • Repeat • Block	Normal	Select the transfer mode. Select the transfer mode. Normal:

			One transfer per activation, transfer ends after Number of Transfers; Repeat: One transfer per activation, Repeat Area address reset after Number of Transfers, transfer repeats until stopped; Block: Number of Blocks per activation, Repeat Area address reset after Number of Transfers, transfer ends after Number of Blocks.
Transfer Size	• 1 Byte • 2 Bytes • 4 Bytes	2 Bytes	Select the transfer size.
Destination Address Mode	• Fixed • Incremented • Decremented	Fixed	Select the address mode for the destination.
Source Address Mode	• Fixed • Incremented • Decremented	Fixed	Select the address mode for the source.
Repeat Area (Unused in Normal Mode)	• Destination • Source	Source	Select the repeat area. Either the source or destination address resets to its initial value after completing Number of Transfers in Repeat or Block mode.
Interrupt Frequency	• After all transfers have completed • After each transfer	After all transfers have completed	Select to have interrupt after each transfer or after last transfer.
Number of Transfers	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Specify the number of transfers.
Number of Blocks (Valid only in Block Mode)	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 65536. Applicable only in Block Mode.	0	Specify the number of blocks to transfer in Block mode.
Activation Source	MCU Specific Options		Select the DTC transfer start event.

Clock Configuration

The DTC peripheral module uses ICLK as the clock source. The ICLK frequency is set by using the FSP configurator Clocks tab prior to a build or by using the CGC module at runtime.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

Transfer Modes

The DTC Module supports three modes of operation.

- **Normal Mode** - In normal mode, a single data unit is transfered every time an interrupt is received by the DTC. A data unit can be 1-byte, 2-bytes, or 4-bytes. The source and destination addresses can be fixed, increment or decrement to the next data unit after each transfer. A 16-bit counter(length) decrements after each transfer. When the counter reaches 0, transfers will no longer be triggered by the interrupt source and the CPU can be interrupted to signal that all transfers have finished.
- **Repeat Mode** - Repeat mode works the same way as normal mode, however the length is limited to an integer in the range[1,256]. When the tranfer counter reaches 0, the counter is reset to its configured value and the repeat area(source or destination address) resets to its starting address and transfers will still be triggered by the interrupt.
- **Block Mode** - In block mode, the amount of data units transfered by each interrupt can be set to an integer in the range [1,256]. The number of blocks to transfer can also be configured to a 16-bit number. After each block transfer the repeat area(source or destination address) will reset to the original address and the other address will be incremented or decremented to the next block.

Note

1. The source and destination address of the transfer must be aligned to the configured data unit.
2. In normal mode the length can be set to [0,65535]. When the length is set to 0, than the transaction will execute 65536 transfers not 0.
3. In block mode, num_blocks can be set to [0,65535]. When the length is set to 0, than the transaction will execute 65536 transfers not 0.

Chaining Transfers

Multiple transfers can be configured for the same interrupt source by specifying an array of transfer_info_t structs instead of just passing a pointer to one. In this configuration, every transfer_info_t struct must be configured for a chain mode except for the last one. There are two types of chain mode; CHAIN_MODE_EACH and CHAIN_MODE_END. If a transfer is configured in CHAIN_MODE_EACH then it triggers the next transfer in the chain after it completes each transfer. If a transfer is configured in CHAIN_MODE_END then it triggers the next transfer in the chain after it completes its last transfer.

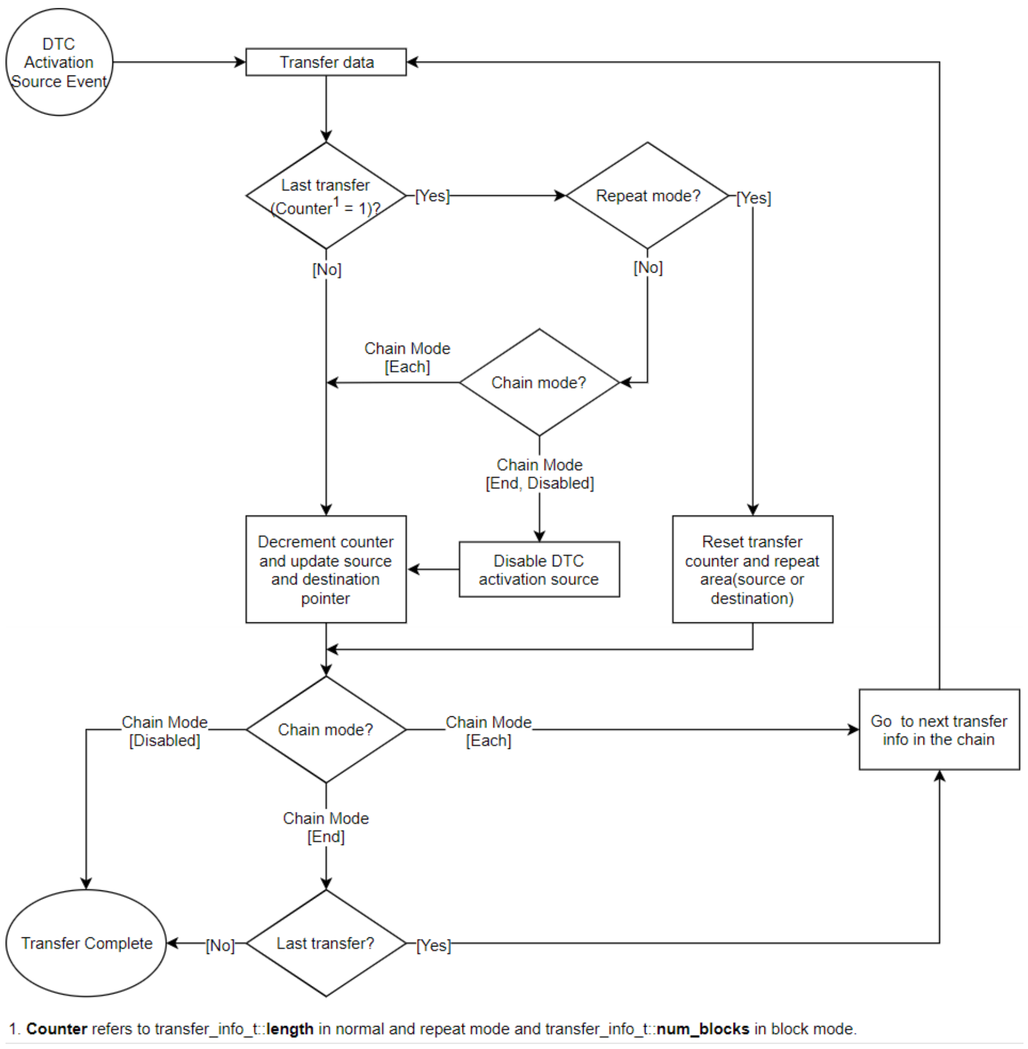

DTC Activation Source Event
Transfer data
Last transfer (Counter1 = 1)?
[Yes]
[No]
Repeat mode?
[Yes]
[No]
Chain Mode [Each]
Chain mode?
Chain Mode [End, Disabled]
Decrement counter and update source and destination pointer
Disable DTC activation source
Reset transfer counter and repeat area(source or destination)
Chain Mode [Disabled]
Chain mode?
Chain Mode [Each]
Go to next transfer info in the chain
Chain Mode [End]
Transfer Complete
[No]
Last transfer?
[Yes]
1. Counter refers to transfer_info_t::length in normal and repeat mode and transfer_info_t::num_blocks in block mode.

Figure 111: DTC Transfer Flowchart

Selecting the DTC or DMAC

The Transfer API is implemented by both DTC and the DMAC so that applications can switch between the DTC and the DMAC. When selecting between them, consider these factors:

	DTC	DMAC
Repeat Mode	• Repeats forever • Max repeat size is 256 x 4 bytes	• Configurable number of repeats • Max repeat size is 1024 x 4 bytes
Block Mode	• Max block size is 256 x 4 bytes	• Max block size is 1024 x 4 bytes
Channels	• One instance per interrupt	• MCU specific (8 channels or less)
Chained Transfers	• Supported	• Not Supported
Software Trigger	• Must use the software ELC event	• Has support for software trigger without using

		software ELC event • Supports TRANSFER_START_MODE_SINGLE and TRANSFER_START_MODE_REPEAT
Offset Address Mode	• Not supported	• Supported

Additional Considerations

- The DTC requires a moderate amount of RAM (one transfer_info_t struct per open instance + DTC_VECTOR_TABLE_SIZE).
- The DTC stores transfer information in RAM and writes back to RAM after each transfer whereas the DMAC stores all transfer information in registers.
- When transfers are configured for more than one activation source, the DTC must fetch the transfer info from RAM on each interrupt. This can cause a higher latency between transfers.
- The DTC interrupts the CPU using the activation source's IRQ. Each DMAC channel has its own IRQ.

Interrupts

The DTC and DMAC interrupts behave differently. The DTC uses the configured IELSR event IRQ as the interrupt source whereas each DMAC channel has its own IRQ.

The transfer_info_t::irq setting also behaves a little differently depending on which mode is selected.

Normal Mode

	DTC	DMAC
TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH	Interrupt after each transfer	N/A
TRANSFER_IRQ_END	Interrupt after last transfer	Interrupt after last transfer

Repeat Mode

	DTC	DMAC
TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH	Interrupt after each transfer	Interrupt after each repeat
TRANSFER_IRQ_END	Interrupt after each repeat	Interrupt after last transfer

Block Mode

	DTC	DMAC
TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH	Interrupt after each block	Interrupt after each block
TRANSFER_IRQ_END	Interrupt after last block	Interrupt after last block

Note

DTC_VECTOR_TABLE_SIZE = (ICU_NVIC_IRQ_SOURCES x 4) Bytes

Peripheral Interrupts and DTC

When an interrupt is configured to trigger DTC transfers, the peripheral ISR will trigger on the following conditions:

- Each transfer completed (transfer_info_t::irq = TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH)
- Last transfer completed (transfer_info_t::irq = TRANSFER_IRQ_END)

For example, if SCI1_RXI is configured to trigger DTC transfers and a SCI1_RXI event occurs, the interrupt will not fire until the DTC transfer is completed. If the DTC transfer_info_t::irq is configured to only interrupt on the last transfer, than no RXI interrupts will occur until the last transfer is completed.

Note

1. The DTC activation source must be enabled in the NVIC in order to trigger DTC transfers (Modules that are designed to integrate the R_DTC module will automatically handle this).
2. The DTC prioritizes activation sources by granting the smaller interrupt vector numbers higher priority. The priority of interrupts to the CPU is determined by the NVIC priority.

Low Power Modes

DTCST must be set to 0 before transitioning to any of the following:

- Module-stop state
- Software Standby mode without Snooze mode transition
- Deep Software Standby mode

Note

1. R_LPM Module stops the DTC before entering deep software standby mode and software standby without snooze mode transition.
2. For more information see 18.9 and 18.10 in the RA6M3 manual R01UH0886EJ0100.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the DTC:

- If the DTC is configured to service many different activation sources, the system could run in to performance issues due to memory contention. To address this issue, it is reccomended that the DTC vector table and transfer information be moved to their own dedicated memory area (Ex: SRAM0, SRAM1, SRAMHS). This allows memory accesses from different BUS Masters (CPU, DTC, DMAC, EDMAC and Graphics IPs) to occur in parallel.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the DTC in an application.

```
void dtc_minimal_example (void)
{
 /* Open the transfer instance with initial configuration. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_DTC_Open(&g_transfer_ctrl, &g_transfer_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
/* Enable the DTC to handle incoming transfer requests. */
    err = R_DTC_Enable(&g_transfer_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	dtc_extended_cfg_t
struct	dtc_instance_ctrl_t

Macros

#define	DTC_MAX_NORMAL_TRANSFER_LENGTH
#define	DTC_MAX_REPEAT_TRANSFER_LENGTH
#define	DTC_MAX_BLOCK_TRANSFER_LENGTH
#define	DTC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT

Data Structure Documentation

◆ dtc_extended_cfg_t

struct dtc_extended_cfg_t

DTC transfer configuration extension. This extension is required.

Data Fields		
IRQn_Type	activation_source	Select which IRQ will trigger the transfer.

◆ dtc_instance_ctrl_t

struct dtc_instance_ctrl_t

Control block used by driver. DO NOT INITIALIZE - this structure will be initialized in transfer_api_t::open.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ DTC_MAX_NORMAL_TRANSFER_LENGTH

#define DTC_MAX_NORMAL_TRANSFER_LENGTH

Max configurable number of transfers in NORMAL MODE

◆ DTC_MAX_REPEAT_TRANSFER_LENGTH

#define DTC_MAX_REPEAT_TRANSFER_LENGTH
Max number of transfers per repeat for REPEAT MODE

◆ DTC_MAX_BLOCK_TRANSFER_LENGTH

#define DTC_MAX_BLOCK_TRANSFER_LENGTH
Max number of transfers per block in BLOCK MODE

◆ DTC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT

#define DTC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT
Max configurable number of blocks to transfer in BLOCK MODE

Function Documentation

◆ R_DTC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_Open (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configure the vector table if it hasn't been configured, enable the Module and copy the pointer to the transfer info into the DTC vector table. Implements transfer_api_t::open.

Example:

```
/* Open the transfer instance with initial configuration. */
fsp_err_t err = R_DTC_Open(&g_transfer_ctrl, &g_transfer_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful open. Transfer transfer info pointer copied to DTC Vector table. Module started. DTC vector table configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Address Mode Offset is selected.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The control structure is already opened.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	The index for this IRQ in the DTC vector table is already configured.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	The IRQ associated with the activation source is not enabled in the BSP.

◆ R_DTC_Reconfigure()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_Reconfigure (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_info_t * *p_info*)

Copy pointer to transfer info into the DTC vector table and enable transfer in ICU. Implements transfer_api_t::reconfigure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfer is configured and will start when trigger occurs.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DTC_Open to initialize the control block.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ENABLED	Transfer source address is NULL or is not aligned corrrectly. Transfer destination address is NULL or is not aligned corrrectly.

Note

p_info must persist until all transfers are completed.

◆ R_DTC_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_Reset (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void const *volatile *p_src*, void *volatile *p_dest*, uint16_t const *num_transfers*)

Reset transfer source, destination, and number of transfers. Implements transfer_api_t::reset.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfer reset successfully (transfers are enabled).
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DTC_Open to initialize the control block.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ENABLED	Transfer source address is NULL or is not aligned corrrectly. Transfer destination address is NULL or is not aligned corrrectly.

◆ R_DTC_SoftwareStart()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_SoftwareStart (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_start_mode_t *mode*)

Placeholder for unsupported softwareStart function. Implements transfer_api_t::softwareStart.

Return values

FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	DTC software start is not supported.

◆ R_DTC_SoftwareStop()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_SoftwareStop (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Placeholder for unsupported softwareStop function. Implements transfer_api_t::softwareStop.

Return values

FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	DTC software stop is not supported.

◆ R_DTC_Enable()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_Enable (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Enable transfers on this activation source. Implements transfer_api_t::enable.

Example:

```
/* Enable the DTC to handle incoming transfer requests. */
   err = R_DTC_Enable(&g_transfer_ctrl);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfers will be triggered by the activation source
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Address Mode Offset is selected.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DTC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DTC_Disable()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_Disable (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Disable transfer on this activation source. Implements transfer_api_t::disable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transfers will not occur on activation events.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DTC_Open to initialize the control block.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.

◆ R_DTC_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_InfoGet (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, transfer_properties_t *const *p_properties*)

Provides information about this transfer. Implements transfer_api_t::infoGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	p_info updated with current instance information.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DTC_Open to initialize the control block.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.

◆ R_DTC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_Close (transfer_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Disables DTC activation in the ICU, then clears transfer data from the DTC vector table. Implements transfer_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_DTC_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_DTC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_DTC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros. Implements transfer_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information written to p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.

5.2.16 Event Link Controller (r_elc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_ELC_Open (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_ELC_Close (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ELC_SoftwareEventGenerate (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_software_event_t event_number)
fsp_err_t	R_ELC_LinkSet (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_peripheral_t peripheral, elc_event_t signal)
fsp_err_t	R_ELC_LinkBreak (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_peripheral_t peripheral)
fsp_err_t	R_ELC_Enable (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ELC_Disable (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ELC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the ELC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the ELC Interface.

Overview

The event link controller (ELC) uses the event requests generated by various peripheral modules as source signals to connect (link) them to different modules, allowing direct cooperation between the modules without central processing unit (CPU) intervention. The conceptual diagram below illustrates a potential setup where a pin interrupt triggers a timer which later triggers an ADC conversion and CTSU scan, while at the same time a serial communication interrupt automatically starts a data transfer. These tasks would be automatically handled without the need for polling or interrupt management.

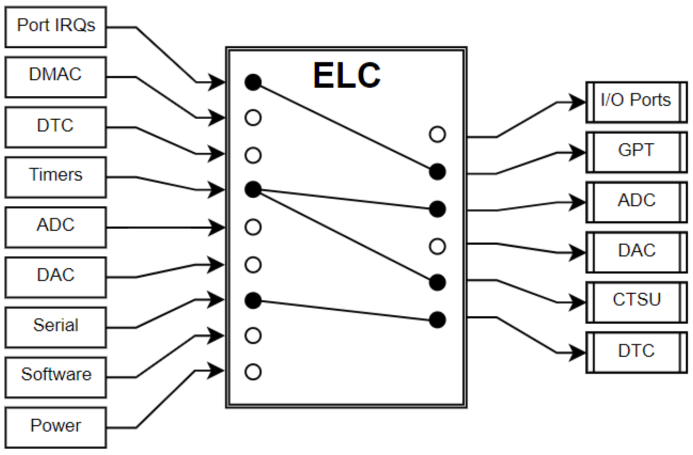


Figure 112: Event Link Controller Conceptual Diagram

In essence, the ELC is an array of multiplexers to route a wide variety of interrupt signals to a subset of peripheral functions. Events are linked by setting the multiplexer for the desired function to the desired signal (through R_ELC_LinkSet). The diagram below illustrates one peripheral output of the ELC. In this example, a conversion start is triggered for ADC0 Group A when the GPT0 counter overflows:

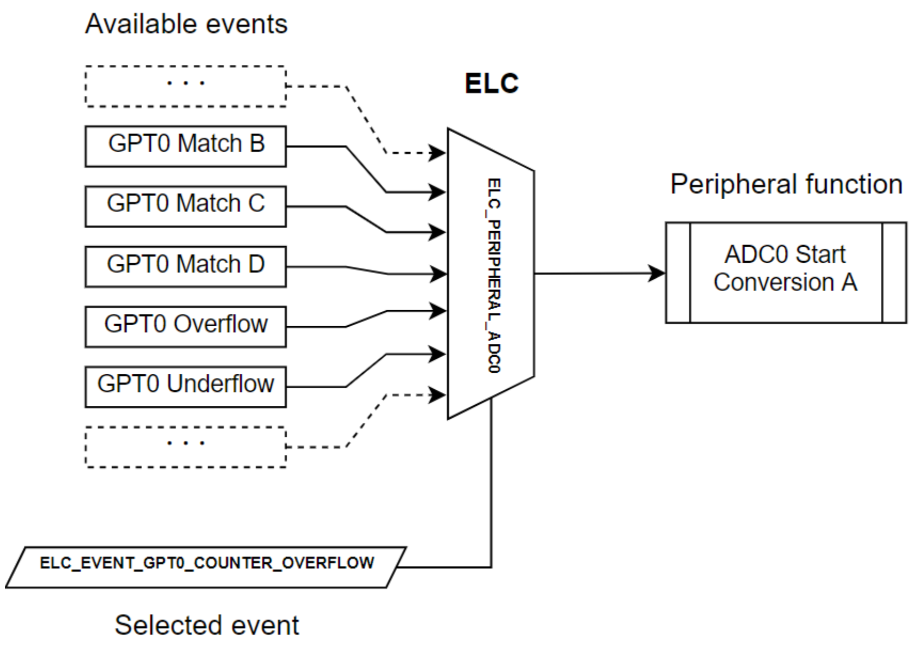


Figure 113: ELC Example

Features

The ELC HAL module can perform the following functions:

- Initialize the ELC to a pre-defined set of links
- Create an event link between two blocks
- Break an event link between two blocks
- Generate one of two software events that interrupt the CPU
- Globally enable or disable event links

A variety of functions can be activated via events, including:

- General-purpose timer (GPT) control
- ADC and DAC conversion start
- Synchronized I/O port output (ports 1-4 only)
- Capacitive touch unit (CTSU) measurement activation

Note

The available sources and peripherals may differ between devices. A full list of selectable peripherals and events is available in the User's Manual for your device.
Some peripherals have specific settings related to ELC event generation and/or reception. Details on how to enable event functionality for each peripheral are located in the usage notes for the related module(s) as well as in the User's Manual for your device.

Configuration

Note

The RA Configuration tool will automatically generate event links based on the selections made in module properties. To view the currently linked events check the Event Links tab in the configuration.
Calling R_ELC_Open followed by R_ELC_Enable will automatically link all events shown in the Event Links tab.

To manually link an event to a peripheral at runtime perform the following steps:

1. Configure the operation of the destination peripheral (including any configuration necessary to receive events)
2. Use R_ELC_LinkSet to set the desired event link to the peripheral
3. Use R_ELC_Enable to enable transmission of event signals
4. Configure the signaling module to output the desired event (typically an interrupt)

To disable the event, either use R_ELC_LinkBreak to clear the link for a specific event or R_ELC_Disable to globally disable event linking.

Note

The ELC module needs no pin, clocking or interrupt configuration; it is merely a mechanism to connect signals between peripherals. However, when linking I/O Ports via the ELC the relevant I/O pins need to be configured as inputs or outputs.

Build Time Configurations for r_elc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_elc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > System > ELC Driver on r_elc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > System > ELC Driver on r_elc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	ELC instance name must be g_elc to match elc_cfg_t data structure created in elc_data.c	g_elc	Module name.

Usage Notes

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the ELC:

- To link events it is necessary for the ELC and the related modules to be enabled. The ELC cannot operate if the related modules are in the module stop state or the MCU is in a low power consumption mode for which the module is stopped.
- If two modules are linked across clock domains there may be a 1 to 2 cycle delay between event signaling and reception. The delay timing is based on the frequency of the slowest clock.

Examples

Basic Example

Below is a basic example of minimal use of event linking in an application.

```
/* This struct is automatically generated by the RA Configuration tool based on the
events configured by peripherals. */
static const elc_cfg_t g_elc_cfg =
{
    .link[ELC_PERIPHERAL_GPT_A]   = ELC_EVENT_ICU_IRQ0,
    .link[ELC_PERIPHERAL_IOPORT1] = ELC_EVENT_GPT0_COUNTER_OVERFLOW
};
void elc_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the software and sets the links defined in the control structure. */
    err = R_ELC_Open(&g_elc_ctrl, &g_elc_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Create or modify a link between a peripheral function and an event source. */
```

```
    err = R_ELC_LinkSet(&g_elc_ctrl, ELC_PERIPHERAL_ADC0,
ELC_EVENT_GPT0_COUNTER_OVERFLOW);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Globally enable event linking in the ELC. */
    err = R_ELC_Enable(&g_elc_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Software-Generated Events

This example demonstrates how to use a software-generated event to signal a peripheral. This can be useful when the desired event source is not supported by the ELC hardware.

```
/* Interrupt handler for peripheral event not supported by the ELC */
void peripheral_isr (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Generate an event signal through software to the linked peripheral. */
    err = R_ELC_SoftwareEventGenerate(&g_elc_ctrl, ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_0);
    handle_error(err);
}
void elc_software_event (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Open the module. */
    err = R_ELC_Open(&g_elc_ctrl, &g_elc_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Link ADC0 conversion start to software event 0. */
    err = R_ELC_LinkSet(&g_elc_ctrl, ELC_PERIPHERAL_ADC0,
ELC_EVENT_ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_0);
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
 /* Application code here. */
```

```
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	elc_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ elc_instance_ctrl_t

struct elc_instance_ctrl_t
ELC private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_ELC_Open() is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_ELC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_Open (elc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, elc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initialize all the links in the Event Link Controller. Implements elc_api_t::open

The configuration structure passed in to this function includes links for every event source included in the ELC and sets them all at once. To set or clear an individual link use R_ELC_LinkSet and R_ELC_LinkBreak respectively.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the software and sets the links defined in the control structure. */
    err = R_ELC_Open(&g_elc_ctrl, &g_elc_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_cfg was NULL
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The module is currently open

◆ R_ELC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_Close (elc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Globally disable ELC linking. Implements elc_api_t::close

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The ELC was successfully disabled
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

◆ R_ELC_SoftwareEventGenerate()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_SoftwareEventGenerate (elc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, elc_software_event_t *event_number*)

Generate a software event in the Event Link Controller. Implements elc_api_t::softwareEventGenerate

Example:

```
/* Generate an event signal through software to the linked peripheral. */
   err = R_ELC_SoftwareEventGenerate(&g_elc_ctrl, ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_0);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid event number or p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

◆ R_ELC_LinkSet()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_LinkSet (elc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, elc_peripheral_t *peripheral*, elc_event_t *signal*)

Create a single event link. Implements elc_api_t::linkSet

Example:

```
 /* Create or modify a link between a peripheral function and an event source. */
    err = R_ELC_LinkSet(&g_elc_ctrl, ELC_PERIPHERAL_ADC0,
ELC_EVENT_GPT0_COUNTER_OVERFLOW);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

◆ R_ELC_LinkBreak()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_LinkBreak (elc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, elc_peripheral_t *peripheral*)

Break an event link. Implements elc_api_t::linkBreak

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Event link broken
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

◆ R_ELC_Enable()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_Enable (elc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Enable the operation of the Event Link Controller. Implements elc_api_t::enable

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	ELC enabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

◆ R_ELC_Disable()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_Disable (elc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disable the operation of the Event Link Controller. Implements elc_api_t::disable

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	ELC disabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

◆ R_ELC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_ELC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros. Implements elc_api_t::versionGet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.17 Ethernet (r_ether)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_Open (ether_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ether_cfg_t const *const p_cfg) After ETHERC, EDMAC and PHY-LSI are reset in software, an auto negotiation of PHY-LSI is begun. Afterwards, the link signal change interrupt is permitted. Implements ether_api_t::open. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_Close (ether_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) Disables interrupts. Removes power and releases hardware lock. Implements ether_api_t::close. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_Read (ether_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_buffer, uint32_t *const length_bytes)

	Receive Ethernet frame. Receives data to the location specified by the pointer to the receive buffer. In zero copy mode, the address of the receive buffer is returned. In non zero copy mode, the received data in the internal buffer is copied to the pointer passed by the argument. Implements ether_api_t::read. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_BufferRelease (ether_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) Move to the next buffer in the circular receive buffer list. Implements ether_api_t::bufferRelease. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_Write (ether_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_buffer, uint32_t const frame_length) Transmit Ethernet frame. Transmits data from the location specified by the pointer to the transmit buffer, with the data size equal to the specified frame length. In the non zero copy mode, transmits data after being copied to the internal buffer. Implements ether_api_t::write. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_LinkProcess (ether_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) The Link up processing, the Link down processing, and the magic packet detection processing are executed. Implements ether_api_t::linkProcess. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_WakeOnLANEnable (ether_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) The setting of ETHERC is changed from normal sending and receiving mode to magic packet detection mode. Implements ether_api_t::wakeOnLANEnable. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version) Provides API and code version in the user provided pointer. Implements ether_api_t::versionGet. More...

Detailed Description

Driver for the Ethernet peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Ethernet Interface.

Overview

This module performs Ethernet frame transmission and reception using an Ethernet controller and an Ethernet DMA controller.

Features

The Ethernet module supports the following features:

- Transmit/receive processing
- Optional zero-copy buffering
- Callback function with returned event code
- Magic packet detection mode support
- Auto negotiation support
- Flow control support
- Multicast filtering support
- Broadcast filtering support
- Promiscuous mode support

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_ether

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_ether_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
The polarity of the link signal output by the PHY-LSI	• Fall -> Rise • Rise -> Fall	Fall -> Rise	Specify the polarity of the link signal output by the PHY-LSI. When 0 is specified, link-up and link-down correspond respectively to the fall and rise of the LINKSTA signal. When 1 is specified, link-up and link-down correspond respectively to the rise and fall of the LINKSTA signal.
The link status is detected by LINKSTA signal	• Unused • Used	Unused	Use LINKSTA signal for detect link status changes 0 = unused (use PHY-LSI status register) 1 = use (use LINKSTA signal)

Configurations for Driver > Network > Ethernet Driver on r_ether

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Network > Ethernet Driver on r_ether:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid	g_ether0	Module name.

	C symbol		
General > Channel	0	0	Select the ether channel number.
General > MAC address	Must be a valid MAC address	00:11:22:33:44:55	MAC address of this channel.
General > Zero-copy Mode	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Enable or disable zero-copy mode.
General > Flow control functionality	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Enable or disable flow control.
Filters > Multicast Mode	• Disable • Enable	Enable	Enable or disable multicast frame reception.
Filters > Promiscuous Mode	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Enable this option to receive packets addressed to other NICs.
Filters > Broadcast filter	Must be a valid non-negative integer with maximum configurable value of 65535.	0	Limit of the number of broadcast frames received continuously
Buffers > Number of TX buffer	Must be an integer from 1 to 8	1	Number of transmit buffers
Buffers > Number of RX buffer	Must be an integer from 1 to 8	1	Number of receive buffers
Buffers > Buffer size	Must be at least 1514 which is the maximum Ethernet frame size	1514	Size of Ethernet buffer
Interrupts > Interrupt priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the EDMAC interrupt priority.
Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	Callback provided when an ISR occurs

Interrupt Configuration

The first R_ETHER_Open function call sets EINT interrupts. The user could provide callback function which would be invoked when EINT interrupt handler has been completed. The callback arguments will contain information about a channel number, the ETHERC and EDMAC status, the event code, and a pointer to the user defined context.

Callback Configuration

The user could provide callback function which would be invoked when either a magic packet or a link signal change is detected. When the callback function is called, a variable in which the channel number for which the detection occurred and a constant shown in Table 2.4 are stored is passed as an argument. If the value of this argument is to be used outside the callback function, it's value should be copied into, for example, a global variable.

Clock Configuration

The ETHER clock is derived from the following peripheral clock on each device.

MCU	Peripheral Clock
RA6M2	PCLKA
RA6M3	PCLKA

Note

1. *When using ETHERC, the PCLKA frequency is in the range 12.5 MHz <= PCLKA <= 120 MHz.*
2. *When using ETHERC, PCLKA = ICLK.*

Pin Configuration

To use the Ethernet module, input/output signals of the peripheral function have to be allocated to pins with the multi-function pin controller (MPC). Please perform the pin setting before calling the R_ETHER_Open function.

Usage Notes

Ethernet Frame Format

The Ethernet module supports the Ethernet II/IEEE 802.3 frame format.

Frame Format for Data Transmission and Reception

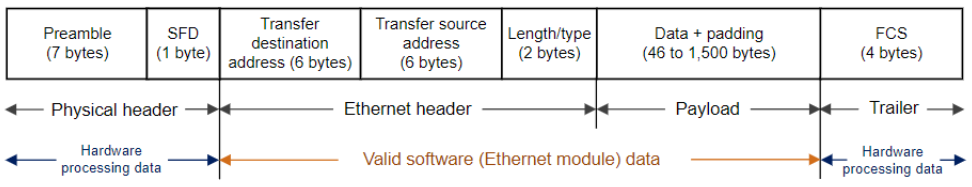


Figure 114: Frame Format Image

The preamble and SFD signal the start of an Ethernet frame. The FCS contains the CRC of the Ethernet frame and is calculated on the transmitting side. When data is received the CRC value of the frame is calculated in hardware, and the Ethernet frame is discarded if the values do not match. When the hardware determines that the data is normal, the valid range of receive data is: (transmission destination address) + (transmission source address) + (length/type) + (data).

PAUSE Frame Format

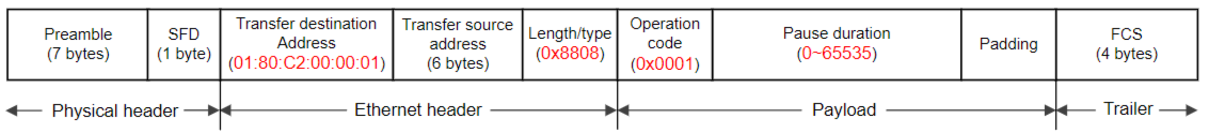


Figure 115: Pause Frame Format Image

The transmission destination address is specified as 01:80:C2:00:00:01 (a multicast address reserved for PAUSE frames). At the start of the payload the length/type is specified as 0x8808 and the operation code as 0x0001. The pause duration in the payload is specified by the value of the automatic PAUSE (AP) bits in the automatic PAUSE frame setting register (APR), or the manual PAUSE time setting (MP) bits in the manual PAUSE frame setting register (MPR).

Magic Packet Frame Format

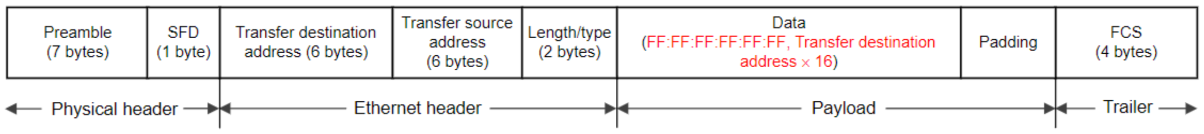

Preamble (7 bytes)
SFD (1 byte)
Transfer destination address (6 bytes)
Transfer source address (6 bytes)
Length/type (2 bytes)
Data (FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF, Transfer destination address × 16)
Padding
FCS (4 bytes)
Physical header
Ethernet header
Payload
Trailer

Figure 116: Magic Packet Frame Format Image

In a Magic Packet, the value FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF followed by the transmission destination address repeated 16 times is inserted somewhere in the Ethernet frame data.

Limitations

The Ethernet Driver has several alignment constraints:

- 16-byte alignment for the descriptor
- 32-byte aligned write buffer for R_ETHER_Write when zero copy mode is enabled

Examples

ETHER Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the ETHER in an application.

Note

In this example zero-copy mode is disabled and there are no restrictions on buffer alignment.

```
#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_MAXIMUM_ETHERNET_FRAME_SIZE (1514)

#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_TRANSMIT_ETHERNET_FRAME_SIZE (60)

#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_SOURCE_MAC_ADDRESS 0x74, 0x90, 0x50, 0x00, 0x79, 0x01

#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_DESTINATION_MAC_ADDRESS 0x74, 0x90, 0x50, 0x00, 0x79, 0x02

#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_FRAME_TYPE 0x00, 0x2E

#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_PAYLOAD 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00,
0x00, \

  0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, \

  0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, \

  0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, 0x00, \


/* Receive data buffer */
```

```
static uint8_t gp_read_buffer[ETHER_EXAMPLE_MAXIMUM_ETHERNET_FRAME_SIZE] = {0};
/* Transmit data buffer */
static uint8_t gp_send_data[ETHER_EXAMPLE_TRANSMIT_ETHERNET_FRAME_SIZE] =
{
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_DESTINATION_MAC_ADDRESS, /* Destination MAC address */
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_SOURCE_MAC_ADDRESS,      /* Source MAC address */
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_FRAME_TYPE,             /* Type field */
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_PAYLOAD                  /* Payload value (46byte) */
};
void ether_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Source MAC Address */
 static uint8_t mac_address_source[6] = {ETHER_EXAMPLE_SOURCE_MAC_ADDRESS};
    uint32_t read_data_size = 0;
    g_ether0_cfg.p_mac_address = mac_address_source;
 /* Open the ether instance with initial configuration. */
    err = R_ETHER_Open(&g_ether0_ctrl, &g_ether0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 do
    {
 /* When the Ethernet link status read from the PHY-LSI Basic Status register is link-
up,
  * Initializes the module and make auto negotiation. */
       err = R_ETHER_LinkProcess(&g_ether0_ctrl);
    } while (FSP_SUCCESS != err);
 /* Transmission is non-blocking. */
 /* User data copy to internal buffer and is transferred by DMA in the background. */
    err = R_ETHER_Write(&g_ether0_ctrl, (void *) gp_send_data, sizeof(gp_send_data));
    handle_error(err);
 /* received data copy to user buffer from internal buffer. */
    err = R_ETHER_Read(&g_ether0_ctrl, (void *) gp_read_buffer, &read_data_size);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Disable transmission and receive function and close the ether instance. */
 R_ETHER_Close(&g_ether0_ctrl);
}
```

ETHER Advanced Example

The example demonstrates using send and receive function in zero copy mode. Transmit buffers must be 32-byte aligned and the receive buffer must be released once its contents have been used.

```
#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_FLAG_ON (1U)
#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_FLAG_OFF (0U)
#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EE_FR_MASK (1UL << 18)
#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EE_TC_MASK (1UL << 21)
#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EC_MPD_MASK (1UL << 1)
#define ETHER_EXAMPLE_ALIGNMENT_32_BYTE (32)
static volatile uint32_t g_example_receive_complete = 0;
static volatile uint32_t g_example_transfer_complete = 0;
static volatile uint32_t g_example_magic_packet_done = 0;
/* The data buffer must be 32-byte aligned when using zero copy mode. */
static uint8_t gp_send_data_nocopy[ETHER_EXAMPLE_TRANSMIT_ETHERNET_FRAME_SIZE]
BSP_ALIGN_VARIABLE(32) =
{
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_DESTINATION_MAC_ADDRESS, /* Destination MAC address */
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_SOURCE_MAC_ADDRESS,      /* Source MAC address */
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_FRAME_TYPE,             /* Type field */
    ETHER_EXAMPLE_PAYLOAD                  /* Payload value (46byte) */
};
void ether_example_callback (ether_callback_args_t * p_args) {
 switch (p_args->event)
    {
 case ETHER_EVENT_INTERRUPT:
      {
 if (ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EC_MPD_MASK == (p_args->status_ecsr &
ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EC_MPD_MASK))
      {
```

```
                g_example_magic_packet_done = ETHER_EXAMPLE_FLAG_ON;
            }
 if (ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EE_TC_MASK == (p_args->status_eesr &
ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EE_TC_MASK))
      {
                g_example_transfer_complete = ETHER_EXAMPLE_FLAG_ON;
            }
 if (ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EE_FR_MASK == (p_args->status_eesr &
ETHER_EXAMPLE_ETHER_ISR_EE_FR_MASK))
      {
                g_example_receive_complete = ETHER_EXAMPLE_FLAG_ON;
            }
 break;
       }
 default:
      {
       }
    }
}
void ether_advanced_example (void) {
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Source MAC Address */
 static uint8_t mac_address_source[6] = {ETHER_EXAMPLE_SOURCE_MAC_ADDRESS};
 static uint8_t * p_read_buffer_nocopy;
    uint32_t         read_data_size = 0;
    g_ether0_cfg.p_mac_address = mac_address_source;
    g_ether0_cfg.zerocopy   = ETHER_ZEROCOPY_ENABLE;
    g_ether0_cfg.p_callback = (void (*)(ether_callback_args_t
*))ether_example_callback;
 /* Open the ether instance with initial configuration. */
    err = R_ETHER_Open(&g_ether0_ctrl, &g_ether0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 do
```

```
    {
 /* When the Ethernet link status read from the PHY-LSI Basic Status register is link-
up,
  * Initializes the module and make auto negotiation. */
       err = R_ETHER_LinkProcess(&g_ether0_ctrl);
    } while (FSP_SUCCESS != err);
 /* Set user buffer to TX descriptor and enable transmission. */
    err = R_ETHER_Write(&g_ether0_ctrl, (void *) gp_send_data_nocopy, sizeof
(gp_send_data_nocopy));
 if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
    {
 /* Wait for the transmission to complete. */
 /* Data array should not change in zero copy mode until transfer complete. */
 while (ETHER_EXAMPLE_FLAG_ON != g_example_transfer_complete)
      {
            ;
       }
    }
 /* Get receive buffer from RX descriptor. */
    err = R_ETHER_Read(&g_ether0_ctrl, (void *) &p_read_buffer_nocopy,
&read_data_size);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Process received data here */
 /* Release receive buffer to RX descriptor. */
    err = R_ETHER_BufferRelease(&g_ether0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Disable transmission and receive function and close the ether instance. */
 R_ETHER_Close(&g_ether0_ctrl);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	ether_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	ether_previous_link_status_t

enum	ether_link_change_t
enum	ether_magic_packet_t
enum	ether_link_establish_status_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ether_instance_ctrl_t

struct ether_instance_ctrl_t

ETHER control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when ether_api_t::open is called.

Data Fields

uint32_t	open	Used to determine if the channel is configured.
ether_cfg_t const *	p_ether_cfg	Pointer to initial configurations.
ether_instance_descriptor_t *	p_rx_descriptor	Pointer to the currently referenced transmit descriptor.
ether_instance_descriptor_t *	p_tx_descriptor	Pointer to the currently referenced receive descriptor.
void *	p_reg_etherc	Base register of ethernet controller for this channel.
void *	p_reg_edmac	Base register of EDMA controller for this channel.
ether_previous_link_status_t	previous_link_status	Previous link status.
ether_link_change_t	link_change	status of link change
ether_magic_packet_t	magic_packet	status of magic packet detection
ether_link_establish_status_t	link_establish_status	Current Link status.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ether_previous_link_status_t

enum ether_previous_link_status_t

Enumerator

ETHER_PREVIOUS_LINK_STATUS_DOWN	Previous link status is down.
ETHER_PREVIOUS_LINK_STATUS_UP	Previous link status is up.

◆ ether_link_change_t

enum ether_link_change_t	
Enumerator	
ETHER_LINK_CHANGE_NO_CHANGE	Link status is no change.
ETHER_LINK_CHANGE_LINK_DOWN	Link status changes to down.
ETHER_LINK_CHANGE_LINK_UP	Link status changes to up.

◆ ether_magic_packet_t

enum ether_magic_packet_t	
Enumerator	
ETHER_MAGIC_PACKET_NOT_DETECTED	Magic packet is not detected.
ETHER_MAGIC_PACKET_DETECTED	Magic packet is detected.

◆ ether_link_establish_status_t

enum ether_link_establish_status_t	
Enumerator	
ETHER_LINK_ESTABLISH_STATUS_DOWN	Link establish status is down.
ETHER_LINK_ESTABLISH_STATUS_UP	Link establish status is up.

Function Documentation

◆ R_ETHER_Open()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_Open (ether_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, ether_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

After ETHERC, EDMAC and PHY-LSI are reset in software, an auto negotiation of PHY-LSI is begun. Afterwards, the link signal change interrupt is permitted. Implements ether_api_t::open.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER control block or configuration structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Control block has already been opened or channel is being used by another instance. Call close() then open() to reconfigure.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_PHY_COMMUNICATION	Initialization of PHY-LSI failed.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CHANNEL	Invalid channel number is given.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_POINTER	Pointer to MAC address is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Interrupt is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_ERROR_LINK	Initialization of PHY-LSI failed.

◆ R_ETHER_Close()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_Close (ether_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disables interrupts. Removes power and releases hardware lock. Implements ether_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened

◆ R_ETHER_Read()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_Read (ether_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, void *const *p_buffer*, uint32_t *const *length_bytes*)

Receive Ethernet frame. Receives data to the location specified by the pointer to the receive buffer. In zero copy mode, the address of the receive buffer is returned. In non zero copy mode, the received data in the internal buffer is copied to the pointer passed by the argument. Implements ether_api_t::read.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Processing completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_NO_DATA	There is no data in receive buffer.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_LINK	Auto-negotiation is not completed, and reception is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_MAGIC_PACKET_MODE	As a Magic Packet is being detected, transmission and reception is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_FILTERING	Multicast Frame filter is enable, and Multicast Address Frame is received.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_POINTER	Value of the pointer is NULL.

◆ R_ETHER_BufferRelease()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_BufferRelease (ether_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Move to the next buffer in the circular receive buffer list. Implements ether_api_t::bufferRelease.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Processing completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_LINK	Auto-negotiation is not completed, and reception is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_MAGIC_PACKET_MODE	As a Magic Packet is being detected, transmission and reception is not enabled.

◆ R_ETHER_Write()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_Write (ether_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, void *const *p_buffer*, uint32_t const *frame_length*)

Transmit Ethernet frame. Transmits data from the location specified by the pointer to the transmit buffer, with the data size equal to the specified frame length. In the non zero copy mode, transmits data after being copied to the internal buffer. Implements ether_api_t::write.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Processing completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_LINK	Auto-negotiation is not completed, and reception is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_MAGIC_PACKET_MODE	As a Magic Packet is being detected, transmission and reception is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_TRANSMIT_BUFFER_FULL	Transmit buffer is not empty.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_POINTER	Value of the pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Value of the send frame size is out of range.

◆ R_ETHER_LinkProcess()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_LinkProcess (ether_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

The Link up processing, the Link down processing, and the magic packet detection processing are executed. Implements ether_api_t::linkProcess.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Link is up.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_LINK	Link is down.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_PHY_COMMUNICATION	When reopening the PHY interface initialization of the PHY-LSI failed.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	When reopening the PHY interface it was already opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CHANNEL	When reopening the PHY interface an invalid channel was passed.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_POINTER	When reopening the PHY interface the MAC address pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	When reopening the PHY interface the interrupt was not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_ERROR_LINK	Initialization of the PHY-LSI failed.

◆ R_ETHER_WakeOnLANEnable()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_WakeOnLANEnable (ether_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

The setting of ETHERC is changed from normal sending and receiving mode to magic packet detection mode. Implements ether_api_t::wakeOnLANEnable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Processing completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_ERROR_LINK	Auto-negotiation is not completed, and reception is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_ERROR_LINK	Initialization of PHY-LSI failed.

◆ R_ETHER_VersionGet()

__INLINE fsp_err_t R_ETHER_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Provides API and code version in the user provided pointer. Implements ether_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information stored in provided p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.18 Ethernet PHY (r_ether_phy)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_PHY_Open (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ether_phy_cfg_t const *const p_cfg) Resets Ethernet PHY device. Implements ether_phy_api_t::open. *. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_PHY_Close (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) Close Ethernet PHY device. Implements ether_phy_api_t::close. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_PHY_StartAutoNegotiate (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) Starts auto-negotiate. Implements ether_phy_api_t::startAutoNegotiate. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_PHY_LinkPartnerAbilityGet (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_line_speed_duplex, uint32_t *const p_local_pause, uint32_t *const p_partner_pause) Reports the other side's physical capability. Implements ether_phy_api_t::linkPartnerAbilityGet. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_PHY_LinkStatusGet (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) Returns the status of the physical link. Implements

	ether_phy_api_t::linkStatusGet. More...
fsp_err_t	R_ETHER_PHY_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version) Provides API and code version in the user provided pointer. Implements ether_phy_api_t::versionGet. More...

Detailed Description

The Ethernet PHY module (r_ether_phy) provides an API for standard Ethernet PHY communications applications that use the ETHERC peripheral. It implements the Ethernet PHY Interface.

Overview

The Ethernet PHY module is used to setup and manage an external Ethernet PHY device for use with the on-chip Ethernet Controller (ETHERC) peripheral. It performs auto-negotiation to determine the optimal connection parameters between link partners. Once initialized the connection between the external PHY and the onboard controller is automatically managed in hardware.

Features

The Ethernet PHY module supports the following features:

- Auto negotiation support
- Flow control support
- Link status check support

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_ether_phy

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_ether_phy_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Select PHY	• Default • Other • KSZ8091RNB • KSZ8041 • DP83620	Default	Select PHY chip to use. Selecting 'Default' will automatically choose the correct option when using a Renesas development board.
Use Reference Clock	• Default • Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Select whether to use the RMII reference clock. Selecting 'Default' will

			automatically choose the correct option when using a Renesas development board.

Configurations for Driver > Network > Ethernet Driver on r_ether_phy

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Network > Ethernet Driver on r_ether_phy:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_ether_phy0	Module name.
Channel	• 0 • 1	0	Select the Ethernet controller channel number.
PHY-LSI Address	Specify a value between 0 and 31.	0	Specify the address of the PHY-LSI used.
PHY-LSI Reset Completion Timeout	Specify a value between 1 and 0xFFFFFFFF.	0x00020000	Specify the number of times to read the PHY-LSI control register while waiting for reset completion. This value should be adjusted experimentally based on the PHY-LSI used.
MII/RMII Register Access Wait-time	Specify a value between 1 and 0x7FFFFFFF.	8	Specify the bit timing for MII/RMII register accesses during PHY initialization. This value should be adjusted experimentally based on the PHY-LSI used.
Flow Control	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Select whether to enable or disable flow control.

Usage Notes

Note

See the example below for details on how to initialize the Ethernet PHY module.

Limitations

- The r_ether_phy module may need to be customized for PHY devices other than the ones currently supported (KSZ8091RNB, KSZ8041 and DP83620). Use the existing code as a starting point for creating a custom implementation.

Examples

ETHER PHY Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the ETHER PHY in an application.

```
void ether_phy_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
    g_ether_phy0_ctrl.open   = 0U;
    g_ether_phy0_cfg.channel = 0;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_ETHER_PHY_Open(&g_ether_phy0_ctrl, &g_ether_phy0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start auto negotiation. */
    err = R_ETHER_PHY_StartAutoNegotiate(&g_ether_phy0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Polling until link is established. */
 while (FSP_SUCCESS != R_ETHER_PHY_LinkStatusGet(&g_ether_phy0_ctrl))
    {
 /* Do nothing */
    }
 /* Get link partner ability from phy interface. */
    err = R_ETHER_PHY_LinkPartnerAbilityGet(&g_ether_phy0_ctrl,
                                           &g_ether_phy0_line_speed_duplex,
                                           &g_ether_phy0_local_pause,
                                           &g_ether_phy0_partner_pause);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Check current link status. */
    err = R_ETHER_PHY_LinkStatusGet(&g_ether_phy0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	ether_phy_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ether_phy_instance_ctrl_t

struct ether_phy_instance_ctrl_t

ETHER PHY control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when ether_phy_api_t::open is called.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	open	Used to determine if the channel is configured.
ether_phy_cfg_t const *	p_ether_phy_cfg	Pointer to initial configurations.
volatile uint32_t *	p_reg_pir	Pointer to ETHERC peripheral registers.
uint32_t	local_advertise	Capabilities bitmap for local advertising.

Function Documentation

◆ R_ETHER_PHY_Open()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_PHY_Open (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, ether_phy_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Resets Ethernet PHY device. Implements ether_phy_api_t::open. *.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER_PHY control block or configuration structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Control block has already been opened or channel is being used by another instance. Call close() then open() to reconfigure.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CHANNEL	Invalid channel number is given.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_POINTER	Pointer to p_cfg is NULL.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	PHY-LSI Reset wait timeout.

◆ R_ETHER_PHY_Close()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_PHY_Close (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Close Ethernet PHY device. Implements ether_phy_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER_PHY control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened

◆ R_ETHER_PHY_StartAutoNegotiate()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_PHY_StartAutoNegotiate (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Starts auto-negotiate. Implements ether_phy_api_t::startAutoNegotiate.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	ETHER_PHY successfully starts auto-negotiate.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER_PHY control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened

◆ R_ETHER_PHY_LinkPartnerAbilityGet()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_PHY_LinkPartnerAbilityGet (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t *const *p_line_speed_duplex*, uint32_t *const *p_local_pause*, uint32_t *const *p_partner_pause*)

Reports the other side's physical capability. Implements ether_phy_api_t::linkPartnerAbilityGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	ETHER_PHY successfully get link partner ability.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER_PHY control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_POINTER	Pointer to arguments are NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_ERROR_LINK	PHY-LSI is not link up.
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_NOT_READY	The auto-negotiation isn't completed

◆ R_ETHER_PHY_LinkStatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_ETHER_PHY_LinkStatusGet (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Returns the status of the physical link. Implements ether_phy_api_t::linkStatusGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	ETHER_PHY successfully get link partner ability.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to ETHER_PHY control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ETHER_PHY_ERROR_LINK	PHY-LSI is not link up.

◆ R_ETHER_PHY_VersionGet()

__INLINE fsp_err_t R_ETHER_PHY_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Provides API and code version in the user provided pointer. Implements ether_phy_api_t::versionGet.

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Version number set here

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information stored in provided p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.19 High-Performance Flash Driver (r_flash_hp)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_Open (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_Write (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const src_address, uint32_t flash_address, uint32_t const num_bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_Erase (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const

	address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_BlankCheck (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const address, uint32_t num_bytes, flash_result_t *blank_check_result)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_Close (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_StatusGet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowSet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const start_addr, uint32_t const end_addr)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowClear (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_IdCodeSet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_id_code, flash_id_code_mode_t mode)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_Reset (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_UpdateFlashClockFreq (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_StartUpAreaSelect (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_startup_area_swap_t swap_type, bool is_temporary)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_HP_InfoGet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_info_t *const p_info)

Detailed Description

Driver for the flash memory on RA high-performance MCUs. This module implements the Flash Interface.

Overview

The Flash HAL module APIs allow an application to write, erase and blank check both the data and ROM flash areas that reside within the MCU. The amount of flash memory available varies across MCU parts.

Features

The R_FLASH_HP module has the following key features:

- Blocking and non-blocking erasing, writing and blank-checking of data flash.
- Blocking erasing, writing and blank-checking of code flash.
- Callback functions for completion of non-blocking data-flash operations.
- Access window (write protection) for ROM Flash, allowing only specified areas of code flash

to be erased or written.
- Boot block-swapping.
- ID code programming support.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_flash_hp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_flash_hp_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Code Flash Programming Enable	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Controls whether or not code-flash programming is enabled. Disabling reduces the amount of ROM and RAM used by the API.
Data Flash Programming Enable	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Controls whether or not data-flash programming is enabled. Disabling reduces the amount of ROM used by the API.

Configurations for Driver > Storage > Flash Driver on r_flash_hp

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Storage > Flash Driver on r_flash_hp:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_flash0	Module name.
Data Flash Background Operation	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enabling allows Flash API calls that reference data-flash to return immediately, with the operation continuing in the background.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be specified. Callback function called when a dataflash BGO operation completes or

		errors.
Flash Ready Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options	Select the flash ready interrupt priority.
Flash Error Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options	Select the flash error interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

Flash uses FCLK as the clock source depending on the MCU. When writing and erasing the clock source must be at least 4 MHz.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

Warning

It is highly recommended that the developer reviews sections 5 and 6 of the Flash Memory section of the target MCUs Hardware User’s Manual prior to using the r_flash_hp module. In particular, understanding ID Code and Access Window functionality can help avoid unrecoverable flash scenarios.

Data Flash Background Operation (BGO) Precautions

When using the data-flash BGO (Background Operation) mode, you can still access the user ROM, RAM and external memory. You must ensure that the data-flash is not accessed during a data-flash operation. This includes interrupts that may access the data-flash.

Code-Flash Precautions

Code flash cannot be accessed while writing, erasing or blank checking code flash. Code flash cannot be accessed while modifying the access window, selecting the startup area or setting the ID code. In order to support modifying code flash all supporting code must reside in RAM. This is only done when code flash programming is enabled. BGO mode is not supported for code flash, so a code flash operation will not return before the operation has completed. By default, the vector table resides in the code flash. If an interrupt occurs during the code flash operation, then code flash will be accessed to fetch the interrupt's starting address and an error will occur. The simplest work-around is to disable interrupts during code flash operations. Another option is to copy the vector table to RAM, update the VTOR (Vector Table Offset Register) accordingly and ensure that any interrupt service routines execute out of RAM. Similarly, you must insure that if in a multi-threaded environment, threads running from code flash cannot become active while a code flash operation is in progress.

Flash Clock (FCLK)

The flash clock source is the clock used by the Flash peripheral in performing all Flash operations. As part of the flash_api_t::open function the Flash clock source is checked will return FSP_ERR_FCLK if it is invalid. Once the Flash API has been opened, if the flash clock source frequency is changed, the flash_api_t::updateFlashClockFreq API function must be called to inform the API of the change. Failure to do so could result in flash operation failures and possibly damage the part.

Interrupts

Enable the flash ready interrupt only if you plan to use the data flash BGO. In this mode, the application can initiate a data flash operation and then be asynchronously notified of its completion, or an error, using a user supplied-callback function. The callback function is passed a structure containing event information that indicates the source of the callback event (for example, flash_api_t::FLASH_EVENT_ERASE_COMPLETE) When the FLASH FRDYI interrupt is enabled, the corresponding ISR will be defined in the flash driver. The ISR will call a user-callback function if one was registered with the flash_api_t::open API.

Note

The Flash HP supports an additional flash-error interrupt and if the BGO mode is enabled for the FLASH HP then both the Flash Ready Interrupt and Flash Error Interrupts must be enabled (assigned a priority).

Limitations

- Write operations must be aligned on page boundaries and must be a multiple of the page boundary size.
- Erase operations will erase the entire block the provided address resides in.
- Data flash is better suited for storing data as it can be erased and written to while code is still executing from code flash. Data flash is also guaranteed for a larger number of reprogramming/erasure cycles than code flash.
- Read values of erased data flash blocks are not guaranteed to be 0xFF. Blank check should be used to determine if memory has been erased but not yet programmed.

Examples

High-Performance Flash Basic Example

This is a basic example of erasing and writing to data flash and code flash.

```
#define FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0 0x40100000U /* 64 B: 0x40100000 - 0x4010003F */

#define FLASH_CF_BLOCK_8 0x00010000  /* 32 KB: 0x00010000 - 0x00017FFF */

#define FLASH_DATA_BLOCK_SIZE (1024)

#define FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE 32

uint8_t       g_dest[TRANSFER_LENGTH];

uint8_t       g_src[TRANSFER_LENGTH];

flash_result_t blank_check_result;

void r_flash_hp_basic_example (void)

{

 /* Initialize p_src to known data */

 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < TRANSFER_LENGTH; i++)

    {

       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));

    }

 /* Open the flash hp instance. */

 fsp_err_t err = R_FLASH_HP_Open(&g_flash_ctrl, &g_flash_cfg);
```

```
    handle_error(err);
 /* Erase 1 block of data flash starting at block 0. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Check if block 0 is erased. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_BlankCheck(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_DATA_BLOCK_SIZE, &blank_check_result);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Verify the previously erased area is blank */
 if (FLASH_RESULT_NOT_BLANK == blank_check_result)
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_BLANK_CHECK_FAILED);
    }
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
    handle_error(err);
 if (0 != memcmp(g_src, (uint8_t *) FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE))
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
 /* Disable interrupts to prevent vector table access while code flash is in P/E
mode. */
    __disable_irq();
 /* Erase 1 block of code flash starting at block 10. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_CF_BLOCK_8, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_CF_BLOCK_8,
FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable interrupts after code flash operations are complete. */
    __enable_irq();
 if (0 != memcmp(g_src, (uint8_t *) FLASH_CF_BLOCK_8, FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE))
```

```
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
}
```

High-Performance Flash Advanced Example

This example demonstrates using BGO to do non-blocking operations on the data flash.

```
bool interrupt_called;
flash_event_t flash_event;
static flash_cfg_t g_flash_bgo_example_cfg =
{
    .p_callback    = flash_callback,
    .p_context      = 0,
    .p_extend       = NULL,
    .data_flash_bgo = true,
    .ipl            = 5,
    .irq            = BSP_VECTOR_FLASH_HP_FRDYI_ISR,
};
void r_flash_hp_bgo_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize p_src to known data */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < TRANSFER_LENGTH; i++)
    {
       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Open the flash hp instance. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_FLASH_HP_Open(&g_flash_ctrl, &g_flash_bgo_example_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    interrupt_called = false;
 /* Erase 1 block of data flash starting at block 0. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 while (!interrupt_called)
    {
       ;
    }
 if (FLASH_EVENT_ERASE_COMPLETE != flash_event)
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_ERASE_FAILED);
    }
    interrupt_called = false;
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
    handle_error(err);
 flash_status_t status;
 /* Wait until the current flash operation completes. */
 do
    {
       err = R_FLASH_HP_StatusGet(&g_flash_ctrl, &status);
    } while ((FSP_SUCCESS == err) && (FLASH_STATUS_BUSY == status));
 /* If the interrupt wasn't called process the error. */
 if (!interrupt_called)
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
 /* If the event wasn't a write complete process the error. */
 if (FLASH_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE != flash_event)
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
 /* Verify the data was written correctly. */
 if (0 != memcmp(g_src, (uint8_t *) FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE))
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
```

```
}
void flash_callback (flash_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
    interrupt_called = true;
    flash_event      = p_args->event;
}
```

Data Structures

struct	flash_hp_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	flash_bgo_operation_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ flash_hp_instance_ctrl_t

struct flash_hp_instance_ctrl_t

Flash HP instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE.

Data Fields

uint32_t	opened
	To check whether api has been opened or not.
flash_cfg_t const *	p_cfg
	User Callback function.
flash_bgo_operation_t	current_operation
	Operation in progress, ie. FLASH_OPERATION_CF_ERASE.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ flash_bgo_operation_t

enum flash_bgo_operation_t

Possible Flash operation states

Function Documentation

◆ R_FLASH_HP_Open()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_Open (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initializes the high performance flash peripheral. Implements flash_api_t::open.

The Open function initializes the Flash.

Example:

```
/* Open the flash hp instance. */
fsp_err_t err = R_FLASH_HP_Open(&g_flash_ctrl, &g_flash_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful and timer has started.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The flash control block is already open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl or p_cfg.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	Caller is requesting BGO but the Flash interrupts are not enabled.
FSP_ERR_FCLK	FCLK must be a minimum of 4 MHz for Flash operations.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_Write()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_Write (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *src_address*, uint32_t *flash_address*, uint32_t const *num_bytes*)

Writes to the specified Code or Data Flash memory area. Implements flash_api_t::write.

Example:

```
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_HP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation successful. If BGO is enabled this means the operation was started successfully.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	The Flash peripheral is busy with a prior on-going transaction.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The Flash API is not Open.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of attempting to Write an area that is protected by an Access Window.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation. This may be returned if the requested Flash area is not blank.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for FCU operation to complete.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	Number of bytes provided was not a multiple of the programming size or exceeded the maximum range.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid address was input or address not on programming boundary.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit P/E mode.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_Erase()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_Erase (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Erases the specified Code or Data Flash blocks. Implements flash_api_t::erase by the block_erase_address.

Note

Code flash may contain blocks of different sizes. When erasing code flash it is important to take this into consideration to prevent erasing a larger address space than desired.

Example:

```
/* Erase 1 block of data flash starting at block 0. */
   err = R_FLASH_HP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, 1);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful open.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_BLOCKS	Invalid number of blocks specified
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid address specified. If the address is in code flash then code flash programming must be enabled.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Other flash operation in progress, or API not initialized
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of attempting to Erase an area that is protected by an Access Window.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The Flash API is not Open.
FSP_ERR_ERASE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Erase error.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit P/E mode.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_BlankCheck()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_BlankCheck (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *address*, uint32_t *num_bytes*, flash_result_t * *p_blank_check_result*)

Performs a blank check on the specified address area. Implements flash_api_t::blankCheck.

Example:

```
 /* Check if block 0 is erased. */
    err = R_FLASH_HP_BlankCheck(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_DATA_BLOCK_SIZE, &blank_check_result);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Blank check operation completed with result in p_blank_check_result, or blank check started and in-progess (BGO mode).
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid data flash address was input.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	'num_bytes' was either too large or not aligned for the CF/DF boundary size.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Other flash operation in progress or API not initialized.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of attempting to Erase an area that is protected by an Access Window.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The Flash API is not Open.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit P/E mode.
FSP_ERR_BLANK_CHECK_FAILED	Blank check operation failed.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_Close()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_Close (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Releases any resources that were allocated by the Open() or any subsequent Flash operations. Implements flash_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl or p_cfg.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_StatusGet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_status_t *const *p_status*)

Query the FLASH peripheral for its status. Implements flash_api_t::statusGet.

Example:

```
flash_status_t status;
/* Wait until the current flash operation completes. */
do
   {
      err = R_FLASH_HP_StatusGet(&g_flash_ctrl, &status);
   } while ((FSP_SUCCESS == err) && (FLASH_STATUS_BUSY == status));
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	FLASH peripheral is ready to use.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The Flash API is not Open.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowSet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowSet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *start_addr*, uint32_t const *end_addr*)

Configure an access window for the Code Flash memory using the provided start and end address. An access window defines a contiguous area in Code Flash for which programming/erase is enabled. This area is on block boundaries. The block containing start_addr is the first block. The block containing end_addr is the last block. The access window then becomes first block –> last block inclusive. Anything outside this range of Code Flash is then write protected.

Note

If the start address and end address are set to the same value, then the access window is effectively removed. This accomplishes the same functionality as R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowClear().

Implements flash_api_t::accessWindowSet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Access window successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid settings for start_addr and/or end_addr.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	FLASH peripheral is busy with a prior operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit Code Flash P/E mode.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of having received an illegal command.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowClear()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowClear (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Remove any access window that is currently configured in the Code Flash. Subsequent to this call all Code Flash is writable. Implements flash_api_t::accessWindowClear.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Access window successfully removed.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	FLASH peripheral is busy with a prior operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit Code Flash P/E mode.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of having received an illegal command.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_IdCodeSet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_IdCodeSet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_id_code*, flash_id_code_mode_t *mode*)

Implements flash_api_t::idCodeSet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	ID Code successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	FLASH peripheral is busy with a prior operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit Code Flash P/E mode.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of having received an illegal command.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_Reset (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Reset the FLASH peripheral. Implements flash_api_t::reset.

No attempt is made to check if the flash is busy before executing the reset since the assumption is that a reset will terminate any existing operation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Flash circuit successfully reset.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit P/E mode.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of having received an illegal command.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_UpdateFlashClockFreq()

```
fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_UpdateFlashClockFreq ( flash_ctrl_t *const  p_api_ctrl)
```

Indicate to the already open Flash API that the FCLK has changed. Implements flash_api_t::updateFlashClockFreq.

This could be the case if the application has changed the system clock, and therefore the FCLK. Failure to call this function subsequent to changing the FCLK could result in damage to the flash macro.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Start-up area successfully toggled.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Flash is busy with an on-going operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_FCLK	FCLK is not within the acceptable range.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_StartUpAreaSelect()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_StartUpAreaSelect (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_startup_area_swap_t *swap_type*, bool *is_temporary*)

Selects which block, Default (Block 0) or Alternate (Block 1), is used as the startup area block. The provided parameters determine which block will become the active startup block and whether that action will be immediate (but temporary), or permanent subsequent to the next reset. Doing a temporary switch might appear to have limited usefulness. If there is an access window in place such that Block 0 is write protected, then one could do a temporary switch, update the block and switch them back without having to touch the access window. Implements flash_api_t::startupAreaSelect.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Start-up area successfully toggled.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	FLASH peripheral is busy with a prior operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_PE_FAILURE	Failed to enter or exit Code Flash P/E mode.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.
FSP_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	FCU is in locked state, typically as a result of having received an illegal command.

◆ R_FLASH_HP_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

This function gets FLASH HAL driver version

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation performed successfully
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer

◆ R_FLASH_HP_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_HP_InfoGet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_info_t *const *p_info*)

Returns the information about the flash regions. Implements flash_api_t::infoGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful retrieved the request information.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl or p_info.

5.2.20 Low-Power Flash Driver (r_flash_lp)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_Open (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_Write (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const src_address, uint32_t flash_address, uint32_t const num_bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_Erase (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_BlankCheck (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const address, uint32_t num_bytes, flash_result_t *blank_check_result)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_Close (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_StatusGet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowSet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const start_addr, uint32_t const end_addr)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowClear (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_IdCodeSet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_id_code, flash_id_code_mode_t mode)

fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_Reset (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_StartUpAreaSelect (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_startup_area_swap_t swap_type, bool is_temporary)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_UpdateFlashClockFreq (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_FLASH_LP_InfoGet (flash_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, flash_info_t *const p_info)

Detailed Description

Driver for the flash memory on RA low-power MCUs. This module implements the Flash Interface.

Overview

The Flash HAL module APIs allow an application to write, erase and blank check both the data and code flash areas that reside within the MCU. The amount of flash memory available varies across MCU parts.

Features

The Low-Power Flash HAL module has the following key features:

- Blocking and non-blocking erasing, writing and blank-checking of data flash.
- Blocking erasing, writing and blank checking of code flash.
- Callback functions for completion of non-blocking data flash operations.
- Access window (write protection) for code flash, allowing only specified areas of code flash to be erased or written.
- Boot block-swapping.
- ID code programming support.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_flash_lp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_flash_lp_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Code Flash Programming	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Controls whether or not code-flash programming is enabled. Disabling

			reduces the amount of ROM and RAM used by the API.
Data Flash Programming	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Controls whether or not data-flash programming is enabled. Disabling reduces the amount of ROM used by the API.

Configurations for Driver > Storage > Flash Driver on r_flash_lp

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Storage > Flash Driver on r_flash_lp:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_flash0	Module name.
Data Flash Background Operation	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enabling allows Flash API calls that reference data-flash to return immediately, with the operation continuing in the background.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be specified. Callback function called when a dataflash BGO operation completes or errors.
Flash Ready Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the flash ready interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

Flash either uses FCLK or ICLK as the clock source depending on the MCU. When writing and erasing the clock source must be at least 4 MHz.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

Warning

It is highly recommended that the developer reviews sections 5 and 6 of the Flash Memory section of the target MCUs Hardware User's Manual prior to using the r_flash_lp module. In particular, understanding ID Code and Access Window functionality can help avoid unrecoverable flash scenarios.

Data Flash Background Operation (BGO) Precautions

When using the data flash BGO, the code flash, RAM and external memory can still be accessed. You must ensure that the data flash is not accessed during a data flash operation. This includes interrupts that may access the data flash.

Code Flash Precautions

Code flash cannot be accessed while writing, erasing or blank checking code flash. Code flash cannot be accessed while modifying the access window, selecting the startup area or setting the ID code. In order to support modifying code flash all supporting code must reside in RAM. This is only done when code flash programming is enabled. BGO mode is not supported for code flash, so a code flash operation will not return before the operation has completed. By default, the vector table resides in the code flash. If an interrupt occurs during the code flash operation, then code flash will be accessed to fetch the interrupt's starting address and an error will occur. The simplest work-around is to disable interrupts during code flash operations. Another option is to copy the vector table to RAM, update the VTOR (Vector Table Offset Register) accordingly and ensure that any interrupt service routines execute out of RAM. Similarly, you must insure that if in a multi-threaded environment, threads running from code flash cannot become active while a code flash operation is in progress.

Flash Clock Source

The flash clock source is the clock used by the Flash peripheral in performing all Flash operations. As part of the flash_api_t::open function the Flash clock source is checked will return FSP_ERR_FCLK if it is invalid. Once the Flash API has been opened, if the flash clock source frequency is changed, the flash_api_t::updateFlashClockFreq API function must be called to inform the API of the change. Failure to do so could result in flash operation failures and possibly damage the part.

Interrupts

Enable the flash ready interrupt only if you plan to use the data flash BGO. In this mode, the application can initiate a data flash operation and then be asynchronously notified of its completion, or an error, using a user supplied-callback function. The callback function is passed a structure containing event information that indicates the source of the callback event (for example, flash_api_t::FLASH_EVENT_ERASE_COMPLETE) When the FLASH FRDYI interrupt is enabled, the corresponding ISR will be defined in the flash driver. The ISR will call a user-callback function if one was registered with the flash_api_t::open API.

Note

The Flash HP supports an additional flash-error interrupt and if the BGO mode is enabled for the FLASH HP then both the Flash Ready Interrupt and Flash Error Interrupts must be enabled (assigned a priority).

Limitations

- Write operations must be aligned on page boundaries and must be a multiple of the page boundary size.
- Erase operations will erase the entire block the provided address resides in.
- Data flash is better suited for storing data as it can be erased and written to while code is still executing from code flash. Data flash is also guaranteed for a larger number of reprogramming/erasure cycles than code flash.
- Read values of erased blocks are not guaranteed to be 0xFF. Blank check should be used to determine if memory has been erased but not yet programmed.

Examples

Low-Power Flash Basic Example

This is a basic example of erasing and writing to data flash and code flash.

```
#define FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0 0x40100000U /* 1 KB: 0x40100000 - 0x401003FF */
#define FLASH_CF_BLOCK_10 0x00005000  /* 2 KB: 0x00005000 - 0x000057FF */
#define FLASH_DATA_BLOCK_SIZE (1024)
#define FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE 32
uint8_t       g_dest[TRANSFER_LENGTH];
uint8_t       g_src[TRANSFER_LENGTH];
flash_result_t blank_check_result;
void R_FLASH_LP_basic_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize p_src to known data */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < TRANSFER_LENGTH; i++)
    {
       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Open the flash lp instance. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_FLASH_LP_Open(&g_flash_ctrl, &g_flash_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Erase 1 block of data flash starting at block 0. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Check if block 0 is erased. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_BlankCheck(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_DATA_BLOCK_SIZE, &blank_check_result);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Verify the previously erased area is blank */
 if (FLASH_RESULT_NOT_BLANK == blank_check_result)
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_BLANK_CHECK_FAILED);
    }
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
```

```
    err = R_FLASH_LP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
    handle_error(err);
 if (0 != memcmp(g_src, (uint8_t *) FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE))
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
 /* Disable interrupts to prevent vector table access while code flash is in P/E
mode. */
    __disable_irq();
 /* Erase 1 block of code flash starting at block 10. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_CF_BLOCK_10, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_CF_BLOCK_10,
FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable interrupts after code flash operations are complete. */
    __enable_irq();
 if (0 != memcmp(g_src, (uint8_t *) FLASH_CF_BLOCK_10, FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE))
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
}
```

Low-Power Flash Advanced Example

This example demonstrates using BGO to do non-blocking operations on the data flash.

```
bool interrupt_called;
flash_event_t flash_event;
static flash_cfg_t g_flash_bgo_example_cfg =
{
    .p_callback    = flash_callback,
    .p_context      = 0,
    .p_extend       = NULL,
    .data_flash_bgo = true,
    .ipl            = 5,
    .irq            = BSP_VECTOR_FLASH_LP_FRDYI_ISR,
};
void R_FLASH_LP_bgo_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize p_src to known data */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < TRANSFER_LENGTH; i++)
    {
       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Open the flash lp instance. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_FLASH_LP_Open(&g_flash_ctrl, &g_flash_bgo_example_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    interrupt_called = false;
 /* Erase 1 block of data flash starting at block 0. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 while (!interrupt_called)
    {
       ;
    }
 if (FLASH_EVENT_ERASE_COMPLETE != flash_event)
    {
       handle_error(FSP_ERR_ERASE_FAILED);
    }
    interrupt_called = false;
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
    handle_error(err);
 flash_status_t status;
```

```
    /* Wait until the current flash operation completes. */
    do
    {
        err = R_FLASH_LP_StatusGet(&g_flash_ctrl, &status);
    } while ((FSP_SUCCESS == err) && (FLASH_STATUS_BUSY == status));
    /* If the interrupt wasn't called process the error. */
    if (!interrupt_called)
    {
        handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
    /* If the event wasn't a write complete process the error. */
    if (FLASH_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE != flash_event)
    {
        handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
    /* Verify the data was written correctly. */
    if (0 != memcmp(g_src, (uint8_t *) FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE))
    {
        handle_error(FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED);
    }
}
void flash_callback (flash_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
    interrupt_called = true;
    flash_event      = p_args->event;
}
```

Data Structures

struct	flash_lp_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ flash_lp_instance_ctrl_t

struct flash_lp_instance_ctrl_t
Flash instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when R_FLASH_LP_Open() is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_FLASH_LP_Open()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_Open (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initialize the Low Power flash peripheral. Implements flash_api_t::open.

The Open function initializes the Flash.

This function must be called once prior to calling any other FLASH API functions. If a user supplied callback function is supplied, then the Flash Ready interrupt will be configured to call the users callback routine with an Event type describing the source of the interrupt for Data Flash operations.

Example:

```
/* Open the flash lp instance. */
fsp_err_t err = R_FLASH_LP_Open(&g_flash_ctrl, &g_flash_cfg);
```

Note

Providing a callback function in the supplied p_cfg->callback field automatically configures the Flash for Data Flash to operate in non-blocking background operation (BGO) mode.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful and timer has started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl, p_cfg or p_callback if BGO is enabled.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	Caller is requesting BGO but the Flash interrupts are not enabled.
FSP_ERR_FCLK	FCLK must be a minimum of 4 MHz for Flash operations.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Flash Open() has already been called.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Failed to exit P/E mode after configuring flash.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_Write()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_Write (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *src_address*, uint32_t *flash_address*, uint32_t const *num_bytes*)

Write to the specified Code or Data Flash memory area. Implements flash_api_t::write.

Example:

```
 /* Write 32 bytes to the first block of data flash. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_Write(&g_flash_ctrl, (uint32_t) g_src, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_LP_EXAMPLE_WRITE_SIZE);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation successful. If BGO is enabled this means the operation was started successfully.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	The Flash peripheral is busy with a prior on-going transaction.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The Flash API is not Open.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation. This may be returned if the requested Flash area is not blank.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for FCU operation to complete.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	Number of bytes provided was not a multiple of the programming size or exceeded the maximum range.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid address was input or address not on programming boundary.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_Erase()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_Erase (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Erase the specified Code or Data Flash blocks. Implements flash_api_t::erase.

Example:

```
/* Erase 1 block of data flash starting at block 0. */
   err = R_FLASH_LP_Erase(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0, 1);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful open.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_BLOCKS	Invalid number of blocks specified
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid address specified
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Other flash operation in progress, or API not initialized
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The Flash API is not Open.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for FCU to be ready.
FSP_ERR_ERASE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Erase error.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_BlankCheck()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_BlankCheck (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *address*, uint32_t *num_bytes*, flash_result_t * *p_blank_check_result*)

Perform a blank check on the specified address area. Implements flash_api_t::blankCheck.

Example:

```
 /* Check if block 0 is erased. */
    err = R_FLASH_LP_BlankCheck(&g_flash_ctrl, FLASH_DF_BLOCK_0,
FLASH_DATA_BLOCK_SIZE, &blank_check_result);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Blankcheck operation completed with result in p_blank_check_result, or blankcheck started and in-progess (BGO mode).
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid data flash address was input
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	'num_bytes' was either too large or not aligned for the CF/DF boundary size.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Flash is busy with an on-going operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_BLANK_CHECK_FAILED	An error occurred during blank checking.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_Close()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_Close (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Release any resources that were allocated by the Flash API. Implements flash_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl or p_cfg.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	The flash is currently in P/E mode.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_StatusGet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_status_t *const *p_status*)

Query the FLASH for its status. Implements flash_api_t::statusGet.

Example:

```
flash_status_t status;
/* Wait until the current flash operation completes. */
do
   {
      err = R_FLASH_LP_StatusGet(&g_flash_ctrl, &status);
   } while ((FSP_SUCCESS == err) && (FLASH_STATUS_BUSY == status));
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Flash is ready and available to accept commands.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowSet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowSet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *start_addr*, uint32_t const *end_addr*)

Configure an access window for the Code Flash memory. Implements flash_api_t::accessWindowSet .

An access window defines a contiguous area in Code Flash for which programming/erase is enabled. This area is on block boundaries. The block containing start_addr is the first block. The block containing end_addr is the last block. The access window then becomes first block (inclusive) –> last block (exclusive). Anything outside this range of Code Flash is then write protected. As an example, if you wanted to place an accesswindow on Code Flash Blocks 0 and 1, such that only those two blocks were writable, you would need to specify (address in block 0, address in block 2) as the respective start and end address.

Note

If the start address and end address are set to the same value, then the access window is effectively removed. This accomplishes the same functionality as R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowClear().

The invalid address and programming boundaries supported and enforced by this function are dependent on the MCU in use as well as the part package size. Please see the User manual and/or requirements document for additional information.

Parameters

	p_api_ctrl	The p api control
[in]	start_addr	The start address
[in]	end_addr	The end address

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Access window successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ADDRESS	Invalid settings for start_addr and/or end_addr.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	FLASH peripheral is busy with a prior operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowClear()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowClear (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Remove any access window that is configured in the Code Flash. Implements flash_api_t::accessWindowClear. On successful return from this call all Code Flash is writable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Access window successfully removed.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	FLASH peripheral is busy with a prior operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_IdCodeSet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_IdCodeSet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_id_code*, flash_id_code_mode_t *mode*)

Write the ID code provided to the id code registers. Implements flash_api_t::idCodeSet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	ID code successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	FLASH peripheral is busy with a prior operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for completion of extra command.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_Reset (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Reset the FLASH peripheral. Implements flash_api_t::reset.

No attempt is made to check if the flash is busy before executing the reset since the assumption is that a reset will terminate any existing operation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Flash circuit successfully reset.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_StartUpAreaSelect()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_StartUpAreaSelect (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_startup_area_swap_t *swap_type*, bool *is_temporary*)

Select which block is used as the startup area block. Implements flash_api_t::startupAreaSelect.

Selects which block - Default (Block 0) or Alternate (Block 1) is used as the startup area block. The provided parameters determine which block will become the active startup block and whether that action will be immediate (but temporary), or permanent subsequent to the next reset. Doing a temporary switch might appear to have limited usefulness. If there is an access window in place such that Block 0 is write protected, then one could do a temporary switch, update the block and switch them back without having to touch the access window.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Start-up area successfully toggled.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Flash is busy with an on-going operation.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Status is indicating a Programming error for the requested operation.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Code Flash Programming is not enabled. Cannot set FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BTFLG when the temporary flag is false.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_UpdateFlashClockFreq()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_UpdateFlashClockFreq (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Indicate to the already open Flash API that the FCLK has changed. Implements r_flash_t::updateFlashClockFreq.

This could be the case if the application has changed the system clock, and therefore the FCLK. Failure to call this function subsequent to changing the FCLK could result in damage to the flash macro.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Start-up area successfully toggled.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Flash is busy with an on-going operation.
FSP_ERR_FCLK	Invalid flash clock source frequency.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Flash API has not yet been opened.
FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT	Timed out waiting for the FCU to become ready.

◆ R_FLASH_LP_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get Flash LP driver version.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operation performed successfully
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer

◆ R_FLASH_LP_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_FLASH_LP_InfoGet (flash_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, flash_info_t *const *p_info*)

Returns the information about the flash regions. Implements flash_api_t::infoGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful retrieved the request information.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL provided for p_ctrl or p_info.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The flash is not open.

5.2.21 Graphics LCD Controller (r_glcdc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_Open (display_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, display_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_Close (display_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_Start (display_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_Stop (display_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_LayerChange (display_ctrl_t const *const p_api_ctrl, display_runtime_cfg_t const *const p_cfg, display_frame_layer_t layer)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_BufferChange (display_ctrl_t const *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const framebuffer, display_frame_layer_t layer)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_ColorCorrection (display_ctrl_t const *const p_api_ctrl, display_correction_t const *const p_correction)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_ClutUpdate (display_ctrl_t const *const p_api_ctrl, display_clut_cfg_t const *const p_clut_cfg, display_frame_layer_t layer)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_StatusGet (display_ctrl_t const *const p_api_ctrl, display_status_t *const status)
fsp_err_t	R_GLCDC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the GLCDC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Display Interface.

Overview

The GLCDC is a multi-stage graphics output peripheral designed to automatically generate timing and data signals for LCD panels. As part of its internal pipeline the two internal graphics layers can be repositioned, alpha blended, color corrected, dithered and converted to and from a wide variety of pixel formats.

Features

The following features are available:

Feature	Options
Input color formats	ARGB8888, ARGB4444, ARGB1555, RGB888 (32-bit), RGB565, CLUT 8bpp, CLUT 4bpp, CLUT 1bpp
Output color formats	RGB888, RGB666, RGB565, Serial RGB888 (8-bit parallel)
Correction processes	Alpha blending, positioning, brightness and contrast, gamma correction, dithering
Timing signals	Dot clock, Vsync, Hsync, Vertical and horizontal data enable (DE)
Maximum resolution	Up to 1020 x 1008 pixels (dependent on sync signal width)
Maximum dot clock	60MHz for serial RGB mode, 54MHz otherwise
Internal clock divisors	1-9, 12, 16, 24, 32
Interrupts	Vsync (line detect), Layer 1 underflow, Layer 2 underflow
Other functions	Byte-order and endianness control, line repeat function

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_glcdc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_glcdc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected, code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Color Correction	• On • Off	Off	If selected, code to adjust brightness, contrast and gamma settings is included in the build. When disabled all color correction configuration options are ignored.

Configurations for Driver > Graphics > Display Driver on r_glcdc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Graphics > Display Driver on r_glcdc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_display0	Module name.
Interrupts > Callback Function	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be defined here.
Interrupts > Line Detect Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the line detect (Vsync) interrupt priority.
Interrupts > Underflow 1 Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the underflow interrupt priority for layer 1.
Interrupts > Underflow 2 Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the underflow interrupt priority for layer 2.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > General > Enabled	• Yes • No	Yes	Specify Used if the graphics layer 1 is used. If so a framebuffer will be automatically generated based on the specified height and horizontal stride.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > General > Horizontal size	Value must be between 16 and 1016	480	Specify the number of horizontal pixels.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > General > Vertical size	Value must be between 16 and 1020	272	Specify the number of vertical pixels.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > General > Horizontal position	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 4091	0	Specify the horizontal offset in pixels of the graphics layer from the background layer.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > General > Vertical position	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 4094	0	Specify the vertical offset in pixels of the graphics layer from the background layer.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > General > Color format	• ARGB8888 (32-bit) • RGB888 (32-bit) • RGB565 (16-bit) • ARGB1555 (16-bit) • ARGB4444	RGB565 (16-bit)	Specify the graphics layer Input format. If selecting CLUT formats, you must write the CLUT table data before starting output.

	(16-bit) • CLUT8 (8-bit) • CLUT4 (4-bit) • CLUT1 (1-bit)		
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > General > Line descending mode	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Select Used if the framebuffer starts from the bottom of the line.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Background Color > Alpha	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Based on the alpha value, either the graphics Layer 2 (foreground graphics layer) is blended into the graphics Layer 1 (background graphics layer) or the graphics Layer 1 is blended into the monochrome background layer.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Background Color > Red	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Red component of the background color for layer 1.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Background Color > Green	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Green component of the background color for layer 1.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Background Color > Blue	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Blue component of the background color for layer 1.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Framebuffer > Framebuffer name	This property must be a valid C symbol	fb_background	Specify the name for the framebuffer for Layer 1.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Framebuffer > Number of framebuffers	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 65535	2	Number of framebuffers allocated for Graphics Layer 1.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Framebuffer > Section for framebuffer allocation	Manual Entry	.bss	Specify the section in which to allocate the framebuffer.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Framebuffer > Horizontal stride (in pixels)	Value must be between 16 and 1016	480	Specify the memory stride for a horizontal line. This value must be specified with the number of pixels, not actual bytes. The horizontal stride multiplied by the bytes per pixel must be divisible by 64.

Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Line Repeat > Enable	• On • Off	Off	Select On if the display will be repeated from a smaller section of the framebuffer.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Line Repeat > Repeat count	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 65535 i.e (vertical size) x (lines repeat times) must be equal to the panel vertical size	0	Specify the number of times the image is repeated.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Fading > Mode	• None • Fade-in • Fade-out	None	Select the fade method.
Input > Graphics Layer 1 > Fading > Speed	Value must be between 0 and 255	0	Specify the number of frames for the fading transition to complete.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > General > Enabled	• Yes • No	No	Specify Used if the graphics layer 2 is used. If so a framebuffer will be automatically generated based on the specified height and horizontal stride.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > General > Horizontal size	Value must be between 16 and 1016	480	Specify the number of horizontal pixels.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > General > Vertical size	Value must be between 16 and 1020	272	Specify the number of vertical pixels.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > General > Horizontal position	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 4091	0	Specify the horizontal offset in pixels of the graphics layer from the background layer.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > General > Vertical position	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 4094	0	Specify the vertical offset in pixels of the graphics layer from the background layer.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > General > Color format	• ARGB8888 (32-bit) • RGB888 (32-bit) • RGB565 (16-bit) • ARGB1555 (16-bit) • ARGB4444 (16-bit) • CLUT8 (8-bit)	RGB565 (16-bit)	Specify the graphics layer Input format. If selecting CLUT formats, you must write the CLUT table data before starting output.

	• CLUT4 (4-bit) • CLUT1 (1-bit)		
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > General > Line descending mode	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Select Used if the framebuffer starts from the bottom of the line.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Background Color > Alpha	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Based on the alpha value, either the graphics Layer 2 (foreground graphics layer) is blended into the graphics Layer 1 (background graphics layer) or the graphics Layer 1 is blended into the monochrome background layer.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Background Color > Red	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Red component of the background color for layer 2.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Background Color > Green	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Green component of the background color for layer 2.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Background Color > Blue	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Blue component of the background color for layer 2.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Framebuffer > Framebuffer name	This property must be a valid C symbol	fb_foreground	Specify the name for the framebuffer for Layer 2.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Framebuffer > Number of framebuffers	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 65535	2	Number of framebuffers allocated for Graphics Layer 2.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Framebuffer > Section for framebuffer allocation	Manual Entry	.bss	Specify the section in which to allocate the framebuffer.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Framebuffer > Horizontal stride (in pixels)	Value must be between 16 and 1016	480	Specify the memory stride for a horizontal line. This value must be specified with the number of pixels, not actual bytes. The horizontal stride multiplied by the bytes per pixel must be divisible by 64.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Line Repeat >	• On • Off	Off	Select On if the display will be repeated from a

Enable			smaller section of the framebuffer.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Line Repeat > Repeat count	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 65535 i.e (vertical size) x (lines repeat times) must be equal to the panel vertical size	0	Specify the number of times the image is repeated.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Fading > Mode	• None • Fade-in • Fade-out	None	Select the fade method.
Input > Graphics Layer 2 > Fading > Speed	Value must be between 0 and 255	0	Specify the number of frames for the fading transition to complete.
Output > Timing > Horizontal total cycles	Value must be between 24 and 1024	525	Specify the total cycles in a horizontal line. Set to the number of cycles defined in the data sheet of LCD panel sheet in your system
Output > Timing > Horizontal active video cycles	Value must be between 16 and 1016	480	Specify the number of active video cycles in a horizontal line (including front and back porch). Set to the number of cycles defined in the data sheet of LCD panel sheet in your system.
Output > Timing > Horizontal back porch cycles	Value must be between 6 and 1006	40	Specify the number of back porch cycles in a horizontal line. Back porch starts from the beginning of Hsync cycles, which means back porch cycles contain Hsync cycles. Set to the number of cycles defined in the data sheet of LCD panel sheet in your system.
Output > Timing > Horizontal sync signal cycles	Value must be between 0 and 1023	1	Specify the number of Hsync signal assertion cycles. Set to the number of cycles defined in the data sheet of LCD panel sheet in your system.

Output > Timing > Horizontal sync signal polarity	• Low active • High active	Low active	Select the polarity of Hsync signal to match your system.
Output > Timing > Vertical total lines	Value must be between 20 and 1024	316	Specify number of total lines in a frame (including front and back porch).
Output > Timing > Vertical active video lines	Value must be between 16 and 1020	272	Specify the number of active video lines in a frame.
Output > Timing > Vertical back porch lines	Value must be between 3 and 1007	8	Specify the number of back porch lines in a frame. Back porch starts from the beginning of Vsync lines, which means back porch lines contain Vsync lines.
Output > Timing > Vertical sync signal lines	Value must be between 0 and 1023	1	Specify the Vsync signal assertion lines in a frame.
Output > Timing > Vertical sync signal polarity	• Low active • High active	Low active	Select the polarity of Vsync signal to match to your system.
Output > Timing > Data Enable Signal Polarity	• Low active • High active	High active	Select the polarity of Data Enable signal to match to your system.
Output > Timing > Sync edge	• Rising edge • Falling edge	Rising edge	Select the polarity of Sync signals to match to your system.
Output > Format > Color format	• 24bits RGB888 • 18bits RGB666 • 16bits RGB565 • 8bits serial	16bits RGB565	Specify the graphics layer output format to match to your LCD panel.
Output > Format > Color order	• RGB • BGR	RGB	Select data order for output signal to LCD panel.
Output > Format > Endian	• Little endian • Big endian	Little endian	Select data endianness for output signal to LCD panel.
Output > Background > Alpha	Value must be between 0 and 255	255	Alpha component of the background color.
Output > Background > Red	Value must be between 0 and 255	0	Red component of the background color.
Output > Background > Green	Value must be between 0 and 255	0	Green component of the background color.

Output > Background > Blue	Value must be between 0 and 255	0	Blue component of the background color.
CLUT > Enabled	• Yes • No	No	Specify Used if selecting CLUT formats for a graphics layer input format. If used, a buffer (CLUT_buffer) will be automatically generated based on the selected pixel width.
CLUT > Size	Must be a valid non-negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 256	256	Specify the number of entries for the CLUT source data buffer. Each entry consumes 4 bytes (1 word).
TCON > Hsync pin select	• Not used • LCD_TCON0 • LCD_TCON1 • LCD_TCON2 • LCD_TCON3	LCD_TCON0	Select the TCON pin used for the Hsync signal to match to your system.
TCON > Vsync pin select	• Not used • LCD_TCON0 • LCD_TCON1 • LCD_TCON2 • LCD_TCON3	LCD_TCON1	Select TCON pin used for Vsync signal to match to your system.
TCON > Data enable (DE) pin select	• Not used • LCD_TCON0 • LCD_TCON1 • LCD_TCON2 • LCD_TCON3	LCD_TCON2	Select TCON pin used for DataEnable signal to match to your system.
TCON > Panel clock source	• Internal clock (GLCDCLK) • External clock (LCD_EXTCLK)	Internal clock (GLCDCLK)	Choose between an internal GLCDCLK generated from PCLKA or an external clock provided to the LCD_EXTCLK pin.
TCON > Panel clock division ratio	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	1/24	Select the clock source divider value.
Color Correction > Brightness > Enabled	• Yes • No	No	Enable brightness color correction.
Color Correction > Brightness > Red channel	Value must be between 0 and 1023	512	Red component of the brightness calibration. This value is divided by 512 to determine gain.
Color Correction > Brightness > Green channel	Value must be between 0 and 1023	512	Green component of the brightness calibration. This value

			is divided by 512 to determine gain.
Color Correction > Brightness > Blue channel	Value must be between 0 and 1023	512	Blue component of the brightness calibration. This value is divided by 512 to determine gain.
Color Correction > Contrast > Enabled	• Yes • No	No	Enable contrast color correction.
Color Correction > Contrast > Red channel gain	Value must be between 0 and 255	128	Red component of the contrast calibration. This value is divided by 128 to determine gain.
Color Correction > Contrast > Green channel gain	Value must be between 0 and 255	128	Green component of the contrast calibration. This value is divided by 128 to determine gain.
Color Correction > Contrast > Blue channel gain	Value must be between 0 and 255	128	Blue component of the contrast calibration. This value is divided by 128 to determine gain.
Color Correction > Gamma > Red	• On • Off	Off	Enable gamma color correction for the red channel.
Color Correction > Gamma > Green	• On • Off	Off	Enable gamma color correction for the green channel.
Color Correction > Gamma > Blue	• On • Off	Off	Enable gamma color correction for the blue channel.
Color Correction > Process order	• Brightness/contrast first • Gamma first	Brightness/contrast first	Select the color correction processing order.
Dithering > Enabled	• Yes • No	No	Enable dithering to reduce the effect of color banding.
Dithering > Mode	• Truncate • Round off • 2x2 Pattern	Truncate	Select the dithering mode.
Dithering > Pattern A	• Pattern 00 • Pattern 01 • Pattern 10 • Pattern 11	Pattern 11	Select the dithering pattern.
Dithering > Pattern B	• Pattern 00 • Pattern 01 • Pattern 10 • Pattern 11	Pattern 11	Select the dithering pattern.

Dithering > Pattern C	• Pattern 00 • Pattern 01 • Pattern 10 • Pattern 11	Pattern 11	Select the dithering pattern.
Dithering > Pattern D	• Pattern 00 • Pattern 01 • Pattern 10 • Pattern 11	Pattern 11	Select the dithering pattern.

Clock Configuration

The peripheral clock for this module is PCLKA.

The dot clock is typically generated from the PLL with a maximum output frequency of 54 MHz in most pixel formats (60MHz for serial RGB). Optionally, a clock signal can be provided to the LCD_EXTCLK pin for finer framerate control (60MHz maximum input). With either clock source dividers of 1-9, 12, 16, 24 and 32 may be used. Clocks must be initialized and settled prior to starting this module.

Pin Configuration

This module controls a variety of pins necessary for LCD data and timing signal output:

Pin Name	Function	Notes
LCD_EXTCLK	External clock signal input	The maximum input clock frequency is 60MHz.
LCD_CLK	Dot clock output	The maximum output frequency is 54MHz (60MHz in serial RGB mode).
LCD_DATAn	Pixel data output lines	Pin assignment and color order is based on the output block configuration. See the RA6M3 User's Manual (R01UH0886EJ0100) section 58.1.4 "Output Control for Data Format" for details.
LCD_TCONn	Panel timing signal output	These pins can be configured to output vertical and horizontal synchronization and data valid signals.

Note

There are two banks of pins listed for the GLCDC in the RA6M3 User's Manual (_A and _B). In most cases the _B bank will be used as _A conflicts with SDRAM pins. In either case, it is generally recommended to only use pins from only one bank at a time as this allows for superior signal routing both inside and outside the package. If _A and _B pins must be mixed be sure to note the timing precision penalty detailed in Table 60.33 in in the RA6M3 User's Manual.

Usage Notes

Overview

The GLCDC peripheral is a combination of several sub-peripherals that form a pixel data processing pipeline. Each block passes pixel data to the next but otherwise they are disconnected from one another - in other words, changing timing block parameters does not affect the output generation block configuration and vice versa.

Initial Configuration

During R_GLCDC_Open all configured parameters are set in the GLCDC peripheral fully preparing it for operation. Once opened, calling R_GLCDC_Start is typically all that is needed for basic operation. Background generation, timing and output parameters are not configurable at runtime, though layer control and color correction options can be altered.

Framebuffer Allocation

The framebuffer should be allocated in the highest-speed region available (excluding SRAMHS) without displacing the stack, heap and other program-critical structures. While the RA6M3 does contain a relatively large 640K of on-chip SRAM, for many screen sizes and color depths SDRAM will be required. Regardless of the placement two rules must be followed to ensure correct operation of the GLCDC:

- The framebuffer must be aligned on a 64-byte boundary
- The horizontal stride of the buffer must be a multiple of 64 bytes

Note

Framebuffers allocated through the RA Configuraton tool automatically follow the alignment and size requirements.

If your framebuffer will be placed into internal SRAM please note the following best practices:

- The framebuffer should ideally not be placed in the SRAMHS block of SRAM as there is no speed advantage for doing so. In particular, it is important to ensure the framebuffer does not push the stack or any heaps outside of SRAMHS to preserve CPU performance.
- It is recommended to not cross the boundary between SRAM0 and SRAM1 with a single framebuffer for performance reasons.
- If double-buffering is desired (and possible within SRAM), place one framebuffer in SRAM0 and the other in SRAM1.

If you are using SRAM for the framebuffer, to ensure correct placement you will need to edit the linker script to add new sections. Below is an example of the required edits in the GCC and IAR formats:

GCC Linker

```
/*
  Linker File for RA6M3 MCU
*/
/* Linker script to configure memory regions. */
MEMORY
{
  FLASH (rx)         : ORIGIN = 0x00000000, LENGTH = 0x0200000 /*   2M */
  RAM (rwx)          : ORIGIN = 0x1FFE0000, LENGTH = 0x00A0000 /* 640K */
  FB0 (rwx)          : ORIGIN = 0x20000000, LENGTH = 0x0080000 /* 512K */ // Section
for framebuffer 0 (or only framebuffer)
  FB1 (rwx)          : ORIGIN = 0x20040000, LENGTH = 0x0040000 /* 256K */ // Section
for framebuffer 1
  DATA_FLASH (rx)    : ORIGIN = 0x40100000, LENGTH = 0x0010000 /* 64K */
  QSPI_FLASH (rx)    : ORIGIN = 0x60000000, LENGTH = 0x4000000 /* 64M */
  SDRAM (rwx)       : ORIGIN = 0x90000000, LENGTH = 0x2000000 /* 32M */
  ID_CODE (rx)       : ORIGIN = 0x0100A150, LENGTH = 0x10    /* 16 bytes */
}
// ...
    .noinit (NOLOAD):
    {
       . = ALIGN(4);
       __noinit_start = .;
       KEEP(*(.noinit*))
       __noinit_end = .;
    } > RAM
 /* Place framebuffer sections first, then the rest of RAM */
    .fb0 :
    {
       . = ALIGN(64);
       __fb0_start = .;
       *(.fb0*);
       __fb0_end = .;
    } > FB0
    .fb1 :
    {
       . = ALIGN(64);
       __fb1_start = .;
       *(.fb1*);
       __fb1_end = .;
    } > FB1
    .bss :
    {
       . = ALIGN(4);
       __bss_start__ = .;
       *(.bss*)
       *(COMMON)
       . = ALIGN(4);
       __bss_end__ = .;
    } > RAM
// ...
```

IAR Linker

Note

> *The IAR linker does not place items correctly when sections overlap. As a result, it is advised to place your framebuffer(s) as high as possible in the SRAM region in the linker script to maximize the RAM available for everything else. The below is a general case that should be used unedited only if RAM usage (excluding framebuffers) is less than 128K.*

```
/* ... */
/*-Memory Regions-*/
define symbol region_VECT_start    = 0x00000000;
define symbol region_VECT_end      = 0x000003FF;
define symbol region_ROMREG_start = 0x00000400;
define symbol region_ROMREG_end    = 0x000004FF;
define symbol region_FLASH_start   = 0x00000500;
define symbol region_FLASH_end    = 0x001FFFFF;
define symbol region_RAM_start    = 0x1FFE0000;
define symbol region_RAM_end       = 0x1FFFFFFF; /* RAM limited to SRAMHS */
define symbol region_FB0_start    = 0x20000000;
define symbol region_FB0_end       = 0x2003FFFF; /* SRAM0 dedicated to framebuffer 0
*/
define symbol region_FB1_start    = 0x20040000;
define symbol region_FB1_end       = 0x2007FFFF; /* SRAM1 dedicated to framebuffer 1
*/
define symbol region_DF_start      = 0x40100000;
define symbol region_DF_end       = 0x4010FFFF;
define symbol region_SDRAM_start   = 0x90000000;
define symbol region_SDRAM_end    = 0x91FFFFFF;
define symbol region_QSPI_start    = 0x60000000;
define symbol region_QSPI_end      = 0x63FFFFFF;
/* ... */
define memory mem with size    = 4G;
define region VECT_region       = mem:[from region_VECT_start    to region_VECT_end];
define region ROMREG_region    = mem:[from region_ROMREG_start to region_ROMREG_end];
define region FLASH_region      = mem:[from region_FLASH_start   to
region_FLASH_end];
define region RAM_region       = mem:[from region_RAM_start    to region_RAM_end];
define region FB0_region       = mem:[from region_FB0_start    to region_FB0_end]; /*
Define framebuffer 0 region */
define region FB1_region       = mem:[from region_FB1_start    to region_FB1_end]; /*
Define framebuffer 1 region */
define region DF_region         = mem:[from region_DF_start      to region_DF_end];
define region SDRAM_region      = mem:[from region_SDRAM_start   to
region_SDRAM_end];
define region QSPI_region       = mem:[from region_QSPI_start    to region_QSPI_end];
/* ... */
define block START_OF_RAM with fixed order { rw section .fsp_dtc_vector_table,
                                             block RAM_CODE };
place at start of RAM_region { block START_OF_RAM };
/* Place framebuffer sections first, then the rest of RAM */
place in FB0_region { rw section .fb0 };
place in FB1_region { rw section .fb1 };
place in RAM_region     { rw,
                         rw section .noinit,
                         rw section .bss,
                         rw section .data,
                         rw section HEAP,
                         rw section .stack };
```

Graphics Layers and Timing Parameters

The GLCDC synthesizes graphics data through two configurable graphics layers onto a background layer. The background is used as a solid-color canvas upon which to composite data from the graphics layers. The two graphics layers are blended on top of each other (Layer 2 above Layer 1) and overlaid on the background layer based on their individual configuration. The placement of the layers (as well as LCD timing parameters) are detailed in Figure 1. The colors of the dimensions indicate which element of the display_cfg_t struct is being referenced - for example, the width of the background layer would be **[display_cfg].output.htiming.display_cyc**.

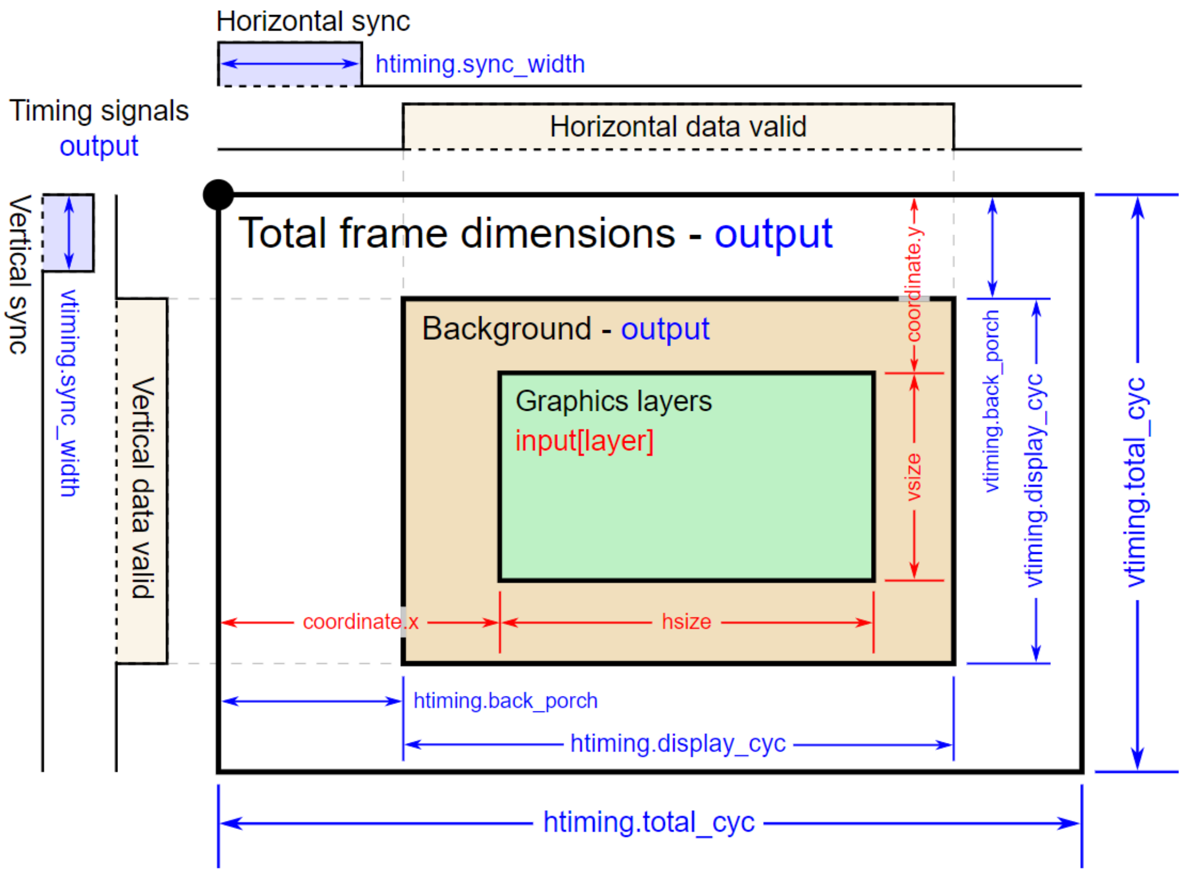


Figure 117: GLCDC layers and timing

Note

The data enable signal (if configured) is the logical AND of the horizontal and vertical data valid signals.
In the GLCDC layers and timing figure, only one graphics layer is shown for simplicity. Additionally, in most applications the graphics layer(s) will be the same dimensions as the background layer.

Runtime Configuration Options

Note

All runtime configurations detailed below are also automatically configured during R_GLCDC_Open based on the options selected in the configurator.

Blend processing

Control of layer positioning, alpha blending and fading is possible at runtime via R_GLCDC_LayerChange. This function takes a display_runtime_cfg_t parameter which contains the same input and layer elements as the display_cfg_t control block. Refer to the documentation for display_runtime_cfg_t as well as the Examples below to see what options are configurable.

Brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast correction can be controlled through R_GLCDC_ColorCorrection. The display_correction_t parameter is used to control enabling, disabling and gain values for both corrections as shown below:

```
display_correction_t correction;
/* Brightness values are 0-1023 with +512 offset being neutral */
   correction.brightness.r = 512;
   correction.brightness.g = 512;
   correction.brightness.b = 512;
/* Contrast values are 0-255 representing gain of 0-2 (128 is gain of 1) */
   correction.contrast.r = 128;
   correction.contrast.g = 128;
   correction.contrast.b = 128;
/* Brightness and contrast correction can be enabled or disabled independent of one
another */
   correction.brightness.enable = true;
   correction.contrast.enable   = true;
/* Enable correction */
R_GLCDC_ColorCorrection(&g_disp_ctrl, &correction);
```

Color Look-Up Table (CLUT) Modes

The GLCDC supports 1-, 4- and 8-bit color look-up table (CLUT) formats for input pixel data. By using these modes the framebuffer size in memory can be reduced significantly, allowing even high-resolution displays to be buffered in on-chip SRAM. To enable CLUT modes for a layer the color format must be set to a CLUT mode (either at startup or through R_GLCDC_LayerChange) in addition to filling the CLUT as appropriate via R_GLCDC_ClutUpdate as shown below:

```
/* Basic 4-bit (16-color) CLUT definition */
   uint32_t clut_4[16] =
   {
      0xFF000000,                  // Black
      0xFFFFFFFF,                  // White
      0xFF0000FF,                  // Blue
      0xFF0080FF,                  // Turquoise
      0xFF00FFFF,                  // Cyan
      0xFF00FF80,                    // Mint Green
      0xFF00FF00,                    // Green
      0xFF80FF00,                    // Lime Green
      0xFFFFFF00,                    // Yellow
      0xFFFF8000,                    // Orange
      0xFFFF0000,                    // Red
      0xFFFF0080,                    // Pink
      0xFFFF00FF,                    // Magenta
      0xFF8000FF,                    // Purple
      0xFF808080,                    // Gray
      0x00000000                      // Transparent
   };
/* Define the CLUT configuration */
display_clut_cfg_t clut_cfg =
   {
      .start = 0,
      .size   = 16,
      .p_base = clut_4
   };
/* Update the CLUT in the GLCDC */
R_GLCDC_ClutUpdate(&g_disp_ctrl, &clut_cfg, DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_1);
```

Other Configuration Options

Gamma correction

Gamma correction is performed based on a gain curved defined in the configurator. Each point on the curve is defined by a threshold and a gain value - each gain value represents a multiplier from 0x-2x (set as 0-2047) that sets the Y-value of the slope of the gain curve, while each threshold interval sets the X-value respectively. For a more detailed explanation refer to the RA6M3 User's Manual (R01UH0886EJ0100) Figure 58.12 "Calculation of gamma correction value" and the related description above it.

When setting threshold values three rules must be followed:

- Each threshold value must be greater than the previous value
- Threshold values must be greater than zero and less than 1024
- Threshold values can equal the previous value only if they are 1023 (maximum)

Note

Gamma correction can only be applied via R_GLCDC_Open.

Dithering

Dithering is a method of pixel blending that allows for smoother transitions between colors when using a limited palette. A full description of dithering is outside the scope of this document. For more information on the pattern settings and how to configure them refer to the RA6M3 User's Manual (R01UH0886EJ0100) Figure 58.13 "Configuration of dither correction block" and Figure 58.14 "Addition value selection method for 2x2 pattern dither".

Bus Utilization

Note

The data provided in this section consists of estimates only. Experimentation is necessary to obtain real-world performance data on any platform.

While the GLCDC is very flexible in size and color depth of displays there are considerations to be made in the tradeoff between color depth, framerate and bus utilization. Below is a table showing estimates of the load at various resolutions, framerates and color depths based on a PLL frequency of 120MHz (default) and an effective SDRAM throughput of 60 MB/sec. Bus utilization percentages are provided for the following use cases:

- Static image display (**GLCDC only**): One read
- Redrawing one framebuffer every display frame (**minimal redraw**): One write, one read
- Blitting one buffer to another then redrawing the entire buffer every display frame (**worst case**): Two writes, three reads

Name	Width	Height	Input color depth (bits)	Framerate (FPS)	Buffer size (bytes)	SRAM use	SRAM bus (GLCDC only)	SDRAM bus (GLCDC only)	SRAM bus (minimal redraw)	SDRAM bus (minimal redraw)	SRAM bus (worst case)	SDRAM bus (worst case)
HQVGA	240	160	8	60	38400	6%	1%	4%	2%	8%	5%	19%
HQVGA	240	160	16	60	76800	12%	2%	8%	4%	15%	10%	38%
QVGA	320	240	16	60	153600	23%	4%	15%	8%	31%	19%	77%
WQVGA	400	240	8	60	96000	15%	2%	10%	5%	19%	12%	48%
WQVGA	400	240	16	60	192000	29%	5%	19%	10%	38%	24%	96%
HVGA	480	320	16	60	307200	47%	8%	31%	15%	61%	38%	154%
VGA	640	480	16	30	614400	—	—	31%	—	61%	—	154%
WVGA	800	480	8	60	384000	59%	10%	38%	19%	77%	48%	192%

WVGA	800	480	16	30	768000	—	—	38%	—	77%	—	192%
WVGA	800	480	32	15	1536000	—	—	38%	—	77%	—	192%
FWVGA	960	480	8	30	460800	70%	6%	23%	12%	46%	29%	115%
FWVGA	960	480	16	30	921600	—	—	46%	—	92%	—	230%
qHD	960	540	8	30	518400	79%	6%	26%	13%	52%	32%	130%

Note

Bus utilization values over 100% indicate that the bandwidth for that bus is exceeded in that scenario and GLCDC underflow and/or dropped frames may result depending on the bus priority setting. ***It is recommended to avoid these scenarios if at all possible by reducing the buffer drawing rate, number of draw/copy operations or the input color depth.*** *Relaxing vertical timing (increasing total line count) or increasing the clock divider are the easiest ways to increase the time per frame.*

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the GLCDC API:

- Due to a limitation of the GLCDC hardware, if the horizontal back porch is less than the number of pixels in a graphics burst read (64 bytes) for a layer and the layer is positioned at a negative X-value then the layer X-position will be locked to the nearest 64-byte boundary, rounded toward zero.
- The GLCDC peripheral offers a chroma-key function that can be used to perform a green-screen-like color replacement. This functionality is not exposed through the GLCDC API. See the descriptions for GRn.AB7 through .AB9 in the RA6M3 User's Manual for further details.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example showing the minimum code required to initialize and start the GLCDC module. If the entire display can be drawn within the vertical blanking period no further code may be necessary.

```
void glcdc_init (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 // Open the GLCDC driver
    err = R_GLCDC_Open(&g_disp_ctrl, &g_disp_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 // Start display output
```

```
    err = R_GLCDC_Start(&g_disp_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Layer Transitions

This example demonstrates how to set up and execute both a sliding and fading layer transition. This is most useful in static image transition scenarios as switching between two actively-drawing graphics layers may require up to four framebuffers to eliminate tearing.

```
volatile uint32_t g_vsync_count = 0;
/* Callback function for GLCDC interrupts */
static void glcdc_callback (display_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (p_args->event == DISPLAY_EVENT_LINE_DETECTION)
    {
       g_vsync_count++;
    }
}
/* Simple wait that returns 1 if no Vsync happened within the timeout period */
uint8_t vsync_wait (void)
{
    uint32_t timeout_timer = GLCDC_VSYNC_TIMEOUT;
    g_vsync_count = 0;
 while (!g_vsync_count && timeout_timer--)
    {
 /* Spin here until DISPLAY_EVENT_LINE_DETECTION callback or timeout */
    }
 return timeout_timer ? 0 : 1;
}
/* Initiate a fade on Layer 2
 *
 * Parameters:
 * direction True for fade in, false for fade out
 * speed number of frames over which to fade
 */
```

```
void glcdc_layer_transition_fade (display_runtime_cfg_t * disp_rt_cfg, bool
direction, uint16_t speed)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 if (direction)
    {
 /* Set the runtime struct to the desired buffer */
       disp_rt_cfg->input.p_base       = (uint32_t *) g_framebuffer_1;
       disp_rt_cfg->layer.fade_control = DISPLAY_FADE_CONTROL_FADEIN;
    }
 else
    {
       disp_rt_cfg->layer.fade_control = DISPLAY_FADE_CONTROL_FADEOUT;
    }
 /* Ensure speed is at least 1 frame */
 if (!speed)
    {
       speed = 1;
    }
 /* Set the fade speed to the desired change in alpha per frame */
    disp_rt_cfg->layer.fade_speed = UINT8_MAX / speed;
 /* Initiate the fade (will start on the next Vsync) */
    err = R_GLCDC_LayerChange(&g_disp_ctrl, disp_rt_cfg, DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_2);
    handle_error(err);
}
/* Slide Layer 1 out to the left while sliding Layer 2 in from the right */
void glcdc_layer_transition_sliding (display_runtime_cfg_t * disp_rt_cfg_in,
display_runtime_cfg_t * disp_rt_cfg_out)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Set the config for the incoming layer to be just out of bounds on the right side
*/
    disp_rt_cfg_in->input.p_base       = (uint32_t *) g_framebuffer_1;
    disp_rt_cfg_in->layer.coordinate.x = DISPLAY_WIDTH;
 /* Move layer 1 out and layer 2 in at a fixed rate of 4 pixels per frame */
 for (int32_t x = disp_rt_cfg_in->layer.coordinate.x; x >= 0; x -= 4)
    {
 /* Wait for a Vsync before starting */
       vsync_wait();
 /* Set the X-coordinate of both layers then update them */
       disp_rt_cfg_out->layer.coordinate.x = (int16_t) (x - DISPLAY_WIDTH);
       disp_rt_cfg_in->layer.coordinate.x = (int16_t) x;
       err = R_GLCDC_LayerChange(&g_disp_ctrl, disp_rt_cfg_out, DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_1
);
      handle_error(err);
       err = R_GLCDC_LayerChange(&g_disp_ctrl, disp_rt_cfg_in, DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_2
);
      handle_error(err);
    }
}
```

Double-Buffering

Using a double-buffer allows one to be output to the LCD while the other is being drawn to memory, eliminating tearing and in some cases reducing bus load. The following is a basic example showing integration of the line detect (Vsync) interrupt to set the timing for buffer swapping and drawing.

```
/* User-defined function to draw the current display to a framebuffer */
void display_draw (uint8_t * framebuffer)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(framebuffer);
 /* Draw buffer here */
}
/* This function is an example of a basic double-buffered display thread */
void display_thread (void)
{
    uint8_t * p_framebuffer = NULL;
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Initialize and start the R_GLCDC module */
    glcdc_init();
 while (1)
    {
 /* Swap the active framebuffer */
       p_framebuffer = (p_framebuffer == g_framebuffer_0) ? g_framebuffer_1 :
g_framebuffer_0;
 /* Draw the new framebuffer now */
       display_draw(p_framebuffer);
 /* Now that the framebuffer is ready, update the GLCDC buffer pointer on the next
Vsync */
       err = R_GLCDC_BufferChange(&g_disp_ctrl, p_framebuffer, DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_1
);
      handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for a Vsync event */
       vsync_wait();
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	glcdc_instance_ctrl_t
struct	glcdc_extended_cfg_t

Enumerations

enum	glcdc_clk_src_t
enum	glcdc_panel_clk_div_t
enum	glcdc_tcon_pin_t
enum	glcdc_bus_arbitration_t
enum	glcdc_correction_proc_order_t
enum	glcdc_tcon_signal_select_t
enum	glcdc_clut_plane_t
enum	glcdc_dithering_mode_t
enum	glcdc_dithering_pattern_t

enum	glcdc_input_interface_format_t
enum	glcdc_output_interface_format_t
enum	glcdc_dithering_output_format_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ glcdc_instance_ctrl_t

struct glcdc_instance_ctrl_t

Display control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE.

◆ glcdc_extended_cfg_t

struct glcdc_extended_cfg_t

GLCDC hardware specific configuration

Data Fields		
glcdc_tcon_pin_t	tcon_hsync	GLCDC TCON output pin select.
glcdc_tcon_pin_t	tcon_vsync	GLCDC TCON output pin select.
glcdc_tcon_pin_t	tcon_de	GLCDC TCON output pin select.
glcdc_correction_proc_order_t	correction_proc_order	Correction control route select.
glcdc_clk_src_t	clksrc	Clock Source selection.
glcdc_panel_clk_div_t	clock_div_ratio	Clock divide ratio for dot clock.
glcdc_dithering_mode_t	dithering_mode	Dithering mode.
glcdc_dithering_pattern_t	dithering_pattern_A	Dithering pattern A.
glcdc_dithering_pattern_t	dithering_pattern_B	Dithering pattern B.
glcdc_dithering_pattern_t	dithering_pattern_C	Dithering pattern C.
glcdc_dithering_pattern_t	dithering_pattern_D	Dithering pattern D.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ glcdc_clk_src_t

enum glcdc_clk_src_t

Clock source select

Enumerator	
GLCDC_CLK_SRC_INTERNAL	Internal.
GLCDC_CLK_SRC_EXTERNAL	External.

◆ glcdc_panel_clk_div_t

enum glcdc_panel_clk_div_t	
Clock frequency division ratio	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_1	Division Ratio 1/1.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_2	Division Ratio 1/2.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_3	Division Ratio 1/3.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_4	Division Ratio 1/4.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_5	Division Ratio 1/5.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_6	Division Ratio 1/6.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_7	Division Ratio 1/7.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_8	Division Ratio 1/8.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_9	Division Ratio 1/9.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_12	Division Ratio 1/12.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_16	Division Ratio 1/16.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_24	Division Ratio 1/24.
GLCDC_PANEL_CLK_DIVISOR_32	Division Ratio 1/32.

◆ glcdc_tcon_pin_t

enum glcdc_tcon_pin_t	
LCD TCON output pin select	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_TCON_PIN_NONE	No output.
GLCDC_TCON_PIN_0	LCD_TCON0.
GLCDC_TCON_PIN_1	LCD_TCON1.
GLCDC_TCON_PIN_2	LCD_TCON2.
GLCDC_TCON_PIN_3	LCD_TCON3.

◆ glcdc_bus_arbitration_t

enum glcdc_bus_arbitration_t	
Bus Arbitration setting	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_BUS_ARBITRATION_ROUNDROBIN	Round robin.
GLCDC_BUS_ARBITRATION_FIX_PRIORITY	Fixed.

◆ glcdc_correction_proc_order_t

enum glcdc_correction_proc_order_t	
Correction circuit sequence control	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_CORRECTION_PROC_ORDER_BRIGHTNESS_CONTRAST2GAMMA	Brightness -> contrast -> gamma correction.
GLCDC_CORRECTION_PROC_ORDER_GAMMA2BRIGHTNESS_CONTRAST	Gamma correction -> brightness -> contrast.

◆ glcdc_tcon_signal_select_t

enum glcdc_tcon_signal_select_t	
Timing signals for driving the LCD panel	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_TCON_SIGNAL_SELECT_STVA_VS	STVA/VS.
GLCDC_TCON_SIGNAL_SELECT_STVB_VE	STVB/VE.
GLCDC_TCON_SIGNAL_SELECT_STHA_HS	STH/SP/HS.
GLCDC_TCON_SIGNAL_SELECT_STHB_HE	STB/LP/HE.
GLCDC_TCON_SIGNAL_SELECT_DE	DE.

◆ glcdc_clut_plane_t

enum glcdc_clut_plane_t	
Clock phase adjustment for serial RGB output	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_CLUT_PLANE_0	GLCDC CLUT plane 0.
GLCDC_CLUT_PLANE_1	GLCDC CLUT plane 1.

◆ glcdc_dithering_mode_t

enum glcdc_dithering_mode_t	
Dithering mode	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_DITHERING_MODE_TRUNCATE	No dithering (truncate)
GLCDC_DITHERING_MODE_ROUND_OFF	Dithering with round off.
GLCDC_DITHERING_MODE_2X2PATTERN	Dithering with 2x2 pattern.

◆ glcdc_dithering_pattern_t

enum glcdc_dithering_pattern_t

Dithering mode

Enumerator	
GLCDC_DITHERING_PATTERN_00	2x2 pattern '00'
GLCDC_DITHERING_PATTERN_01	2x2 pattern '01'
GLCDC_DITHERING_PATTERN_10	2x2 pattern '10'
GLCDC_DITHERING_PATTERN_11	2x2 pattern '11'

◆ glcdc_input_interface_format_t

enum glcdc_input_interface_format_t

Output interface format

Enumerator	
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_RGB565	Input interface format RGB565.
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_RGB888	Input interface format RGB888.
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_ARGB1555	Input interface format ARGB1555.
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_ARGB4444	Input interface format ARGB4444.
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_ARGB8888	Input interface format ARGB8888.
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_CLUT8	Input interface format CLUT8.
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_CLUT4	Input interface format CLUT4.
GLCDC_INPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_CLUT1	Input interface format CLUT1.

◆ glcdc_output_interface_format_t

enum glcdc_output_interface_format_t	
Output interface format	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_OUTPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_RGB888	Output interface format RGB888.
GLCDC_OUTPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_RGB666	Output interface format RGB666.
GLCDC_OUTPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_RGB565	Output interface format RGB565.
GLCDC_OUTPUT_INTERFACE_FORMAT_SERIAL_RGB	Output interface format Serial RGB.

◆ glcdc_dithering_output_format_t

enum glcdc_dithering_output_format_t	
Dithering output format	
Enumerator	
GLCDC_DITHERING_OUTPUT_FORMAT_RGB888	Dithering output format RGB888.
GLCDC_DITHERING_OUTPUT_FORMAT_RGB666	Dithering output format RGB666.
GLCDC_DITHERING_OUTPUT_FORMAT_RGB565	Dithering output format RGB565.

Function Documentation

◆ R_GLCDC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_Open (display_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, display_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Open GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::open.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Device was already open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or the configuration structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_CLOCK_GENERATION	Dot clock cannot be generated from clock source.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_TIMING_SETTING	Invalid panel timing parameter.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_LAYER_SETTING	Invalid layer setting found.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	Input buffer alignment invalid.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_GAMMA_SETTING	Invalid gamma correction setting found
FSP_ERR_INVALID_BRIGHTNESS_SETTING	Invalid brightness correction setting found

Note

PCLKA must be supplied to Graphics LCD Controller (GLCDC) and GLCDC pins must be set in IOPORT before calling this API.

◆ R_GLCDC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_Close (display_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Close GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The function call is performed when the driver state is not equal to DISPLAY_STATE_CLOSED.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_UPDATE_TIMING	A function call is performed when the GLCDC is updating register values internally.

Note

This API can be called when the driver is not in DISPLAY_STATE_CLOSED state. It returns an error if the register update operation for the background screen generation block is being held.

◆ R_GLCDC_Start()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_Start (display_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Start GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::start.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was started successfully.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	GLCDC module has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL.

Note

This API can be called when the driver is not in DISPLAY_STATE_OPENED status.

◆ R_GLCDC_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_Stop (display_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Stop GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::stop.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was stopped successfully
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	Function call is performed when the driver state is not DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_UPDATE_TIMING	The function call is performed while the GLCDC is updating register values internally.

Note

This API can be called when the driver is in the DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING state. It returns an error if the register update operation for the background screen generation blocks, the graphics data I/F blocks, or the output control block is being held.

◆ R_GLCDC_LayerChange()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_LayerChange (display_ctrl_t const *const *p_api_ctrl*, display_runtime_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*, display_frame_layer_t *layer*)

Change layer parameters of GLCDC module at runtime. Implements display_api_t::layerChange.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Changed layer parameters of GLCDC module successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or the configuration structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	A function call is performed when the driver state is not DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_UPDATE_TIMING	A function call is performed while the GLCDC is updating register values internally.

Note

This API can be called when the driver is in DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING state. It returns an error if the register update operation for the background screen generation blocks or the graphics data I/F block is being held.

◆ R_GLCDC_BufferChange()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_BufferChange (display_ctrl_t const *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *framebuffer*, display_frame_layer_t *layer*)

Change the framebuffer pointer for a layer. Implements display_api_t::bufferChange.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Changed layer parameters of GLCDC module successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	A function call is performed when the driver state is not DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	The framebuffer pointer is not 64-byte aligned.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_UPDATE_TIMING	A function call is performed while the GLCDC is updating register values internally.

Note

This API can be called when the driver is in DISPLAY_STATE_OPENED state or higher. It returns an error if the register update operation for the background screen generation blocks or the graphics data I/F block is being held.

◆ R_GLCDC_ColorCorrection()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_ColorCorrection (display_ctrl_t const *const *p_api_ctrl*, display_correction_t const *const *p_correction*)

Perform color correction through the GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::correction.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Color correction by GLCDC module was performed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or the display correction structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	Function call is performed when the driver state is not DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_UPDATE_TIMING	A function call is performed while the GLCDC is updating registers internally.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_BRIGHTNESS_SETTING	Invalid brightness correction setting found

Note

This API can be called when the driver is in the DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING state. It returns an error if the register update operation for the background screen generation blocks or the output control block is being held.

◆ R_GLCDC_ClutUpdate()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_ClutUpdate (display_ctrl_t const *const *p_api_ctrl*, display_clut_cfg_t const *const *p_clut_cfg*, display_frame_layer_t *layer*)

Update a color look-up table (CLUT) in the GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::clut.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	CLUT updated successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or CLUT source data is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CLUT_ACCESS	Illegal CLUT entry or size is specified.

Note

This API can be called any time.

◆ R_GLCDC_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_StatusGet (display_ctrl_t const *const *p_api_ctrl*, display_status_t *const *p_status*)

Get status of GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::statusGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Got status successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or the status structure is NULL.

Note

The GLCDC hardware starts the fading processing at the first Vsync after the previous LayerChange() call is held. Due to this behavior of the hardware, this API may not return DISPLAY_FADE_STATUS_FADING_UNDERWAY as the fading status, if it is called before the first Vsync after LayerChange() is called. In this case, the API returns DISPLAY_FADE_STATUS_PENDING, instead of DISPLAY_FADE_STATUS_NOT_UNDERWAY.

◆ R_GLCDC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_GLCDC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Get version of R_GLCDC module. Implements display_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Got version information successfully.

Note

This function is re-entrant.

5.2.22 General PWM Timer (r_gpt)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_GPT_Open (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_Stop (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_Start (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_Reset (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

fsp_err_t	R_GPT_Enable (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_Disable (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_PeriodSet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const period_counts)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_DutyCycleSet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const duty_cycle_counts, uint32_t const pin)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_InfoGet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_StatusGet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_CounterSet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t counter)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_OutputEnable (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, gpt_io_pin_t pin)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_OutputDisable (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, gpt_io_pin_t pin)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_AdcTriggerSet (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, gpt_adc_compare_match_t which_compare_match, uint32_t compare_match_value)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_Close (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the GPT32 and GPT16 peripherals on RA MCUs. This module implements the Timer Interface.

Overview

The GPT module can be used to count events, measure external input signals, generate a periodic interrupt, or output a periodic or PWM signal to a GTIOC pin.

This module supports the GPT peripherals GPT32EH, GPT32E, GPT32, and GPT16. GPT16 is a 16-bit timer. The other peripherals (GPT32EH, GPT32E, and GPT32) are 32-bit timers. The 32-bit timers are all treated the same in this module from the API perspective.

Features

The GPT module has the following features:

- Supports periodic mode, one-shot mode, and PWM mode.
- Supports count source of PCLK, GTETRG pins, GTIOC pins, or ELC events.

- Supports debounce filter on GTIOC pins.
- Signal can be output to a pin.
- Configurable period (counts per timer cycle).
- Configurable duty cycle in PWM mode.
- Supports runtime reconfiguration of period.
- Supports runtime reconfiguration of duty cycle in PWM mode.
- APIs are provided to start, stop, and reset the counter.
- APIs are provided to get the current period, source clock frequency, and count direction.
- APIs are provided to get the current timer status and counter value.
- Supports start, stop, clear, count up, count down, and capture by external sources from GTETRG pins, GTIOC pins, or ELC events.
- Supports symmetric and asymmetric PWM waveform generation.
- Supports automatic addition of dead time.
- Supports generating ELC events to start an ADC scan at a compare match value (see Event Link Controller (r_elc)) and updating the compare match value.
- Supports linking with a POEG channel to automatically disable GPT output when an error condition is detected.
- Supports setting the counter value while the timer is stopped.
- Supports enabling and disabling output pins.
- Supports skipping up to seven overflow/underflow (crest/trough) interrupts at a time

Selecting a Timer

RA MCUs have two timer peripherals: the General PWM Timer (GPT) and the Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGT). When selecting between them, consider these factors:

	GPT	AGT
Low Power Modes	The GPT can operate in sleep mode.	The AGT can operate in all low power modes.
Available Channels	The number of GPT channels is device specific. All currently supported MCUs have at least 7 GPT channels.	All MCUs have 2 AGT channels.
Timer Resolution	All MCUs have at least one 32-bit GPT timer.	The AGT timers are 16-bit timers.
Clock Source	The GPT runs off PCLKD with a configurable divider up to 1024. It can also be configured to count ELC events or external pulses.	The AGT runs off PCLKB, LOCO, or subclock.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_gpt

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_gpt_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description

Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Pin Output Support	• Disabled • Enabled • Enabled with Extra Features	Disabled	If selected code for outputting a waveform to a pin is included in the build.
Write Protect Enable	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If selected write protection is applied to all GPT channels.

Configurations for Driver > Timers > Timer Driver on r_gpt

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Timers > Timer Driver on r_gpt:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_timer0	Module name.
General > Channel	Channel number must exist on this MCU	0	Specify the hardware channel.
General > Mode	• Periodic • One-Shot • PWM • Triangle-Wave Symmetric PWM • Triangle-Wave Asymmetric PWM	Periodic	Mode selection. Periodic: Generates periodic interrupts or square waves. One-shot: Generate a single interrupt or a pulse wave. Note: One-shot mode is implemented in software. ISRs must be enabled for one-shot even if callback is unused. PWM: Generates basic PWM waveforms. Triangle-Wave Symmetric PWM: Generates symmetric PWM waveforms with duty cycle determined by compare match set during a crest interrupt and updated at the next trough. Triangle-Wave Asymmetric PWM: Generates asymmetric PWM waveforms with duty cycle determined by compare match set

			during a crest/trough interrupt and updated at the next trough/crest.
General > Period	Value must be a non-negative integer less than or equal to 0x40000000000	0x100000000	Specify the timer period in units selected below. Setting the period to 0x100000000 raw counts results in the maximum period. Set the period to 0x100000000 raw counts for a free running timer or an input capture configuration. The period can be set up to 0x40000000000, which will use a divider of 1024 with the maximum period.
General > Period Unit	• Raw Counts • Nanoseconds • Microseconds • Milliseconds • Seconds • Hertz • Kilohertz	Raw Counts	Unit of the period specified above
Output > Duty Cycle Percent (only applicable in PWM mode)	Value must be between 0 and 100	50	Specify the timer duty cycle percent. Only used in PWM mode.
Output > Duty Cycle Range (only applicable in PWM mode)	• Shortest: 2 PCLK, Longest: (Period - 1) PCLK • Shortest: 1 PCLK, Longest: (Period - 2) PCLK	Shortest: 2 PCLK, Longest: (Period - 1) PCLK	Select the duty cycle range. Due to hardware limitations, one PCLK cycle is added before the output pin toggles after the duty cycle is reached. This extra clock cycle is added to the ON time (if Shortest: 2 PCLK is selected) or the OFF time (if Shortest: 1 PCLK is selected) based on this configuration.
Output > GTIOCA Output Enabled	• True • False	False	Enable the output of GTIOCA on a pin.
Output > GTIOCA Stop Level	• Pin Level Low • Pin Level High • Pin Level	Pin Level Low	Select the behavior of the output pin when the timer is stopped.

	Retained		
Output > GTIOCB Output Enabled	• True • False	False	Enable the output of GTIOCB on a pin.
Output > GTIOCB Stop Level	• Pin Level Low • Pin Level High • Pin Level Retained	Pin Level Low	Select the behavior of the output pin when the timer is stopped.
Input > Count Up Source	MCU Specific Options		Select external source that will increment the counter. If any count up source is selected, the timer will count the external sources only. It will not count PCLKD cycles.
Input > Count Down Source	MCU Specific Options		Select external source that will decrement the counter. If any count down source is selected, the timer will count the external sources only. It will not count PCLKD cycles.
Input > Start Source	MCU Specific Options		Select external source that will start the timer. For pulse width measurement, set the Start Source and the Clear Source to the trigger edge (the edge to start the measurement), and set the Stop Source and Capture Source (either A or B) to the opposite edge (the edge to stop the measurement). For pulse period measurement, set the Start Source, the Clear Source, and the Capture Source (either A or B) to the trigger edge (the edge to start the measurement).
Input > Stop Source	MCU Specific Options		Select external source that will stop the timer.
Input > Clear Source	MCU Specific Options		Select external source that will clear the

			timer.
Input > Capture A Source	MCU Specific Options		Select external source that will trigger a capture A event.
Input > Capture B Source	MCU Specific Options		Select external source that will trigger a capture B event.
Input > GTIOCA Input Filter	• No Filter • Filter PCLKD / 1 • Filter PCLKD / 4 • Filter PCLKD / 16 • Filter PCLKD / 64	No Filter	Select the input filter for GTIOCA.
Input > GTIOCB Input Filter	• No Filter • Filter PCLKD / 1 • Filter PCLKD / 4 • Filter PCLKD / 16 • Filter PCLKD / 64	No Filter	Select the input filter for GTIOCB.
Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be specified here. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time the timer period elapses
Interrupts > Overflow/Crest Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the overflow interrupt priority. This is the crest interrupt for triangle-wave PWM.
Interrupts > Capture A Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for capture A.
Interrupts > Capture B Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for capture B.
Interrupts > Trough Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for the trough interrupt (triangle-wave PWM only).
Extra Features > Output Disable > POEG Link	• POEG Channel 0 • POEG Channel 1 • POEG Channel 2	POEG Channel 0	Select which POEG to link this GPT channel to.

	• POEG Channel 3		
Extra Features > Output Disable > Output Disable POEG Trigger	• Dead Time Error • GTIOCA and GTIOCB High Level • GTIOCA and GTIOCB Low Level		Select which errors send an output disable trigger to POEG. Dead time error is only available on GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > Output Disable > GTIOCA Disable Setting	• Disable Prohibited • Set Hi Z • Level Low • Level High	Disable Prohibited	Select the disable setting for GTIOCA.
Extra Features > Output Disable > GTIOCB Disable Setting	• Disable Prohibited • Set Hi Z • Level Low • Level High	Disable Prohibited	Select the disable setting for GTIOCB.
Extra Features > ADC Trigger > Start Event Trigger (GPTE/GPTEH only)	• Trigger Event A/D Converter Start Request A During Up Counting • Trigger Event A/D Converter Start Request A During Down Counting • Trigger Event A/D Converter Start Request B During Up Counting • Trigger Event A/D Converter Start Request B During Down Counting		Select which A/D converter start request interrupts to generate and at which point in the cycle to generate them. This value only applies to the GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > Dead Time > Dead Time Count Up (Raw Counts)	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Select the dead time to apply during up counting. This value also applies during down counting for the GPT32 and GPT16 variants.
Extra Features > Dead Time > Dead Time Count Down (Raw Counts) (GPTE/GPTEH	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Select the dead time to apply during down counting. This value only applies to the

only)			GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > ADC Trigger (GPTE/GPTEH only) > ADC A Compare Match (Raw Counts)	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Select the compare match value that generates a GPTn AD TRIG A event. This value only applies to the GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > ADC Trigger (GPTE/GPTEH only) > ADC B Compare Match (Raw Counts)	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Select the compare match value that generates a GPTn AD TRIG B event. This value only applies to the GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > Interrupt Skipping (GPTE/GPTEH only) > Interrupt to Count	• None • Overflow and Underflow (sawtooth) • Crest (triangle) • Trough (triangle)	None	Select the count source for interrupt skipping. The interrupt skip counter increments after each source event. All crest/overflow and trough/underflow interrupts are skipped when the interrupt skip counter is non-zero. This value only applies to the GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > Interrupt Skipping (GPTE/GPTEH only) > Interrupt Skip Count	• 0 • 1 • 2 • 3 • 4 • 5 • 6 • 7	0	Select the number of interrupts to skip. This value only applies to the GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > Interrupt Skipping (GPTE/GPTEH only) > Skip ADC Events	• None • ADC A Compare Match • ADC B Compare Match • ADC A and B Compare Match	module.driver.timer.interrupt_skip.adc.none	Select ADC events to suppress when the interrupt skip count is not zero. This value only applies to the GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.
Extra Features > Enable Extra Features	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Select whether to enable extra features on this channel.

Clock Configuration

The GPT clock is based on the PCLKD frequency. You can set the PCLKD frequency using the clock configurator in e2 studio or using the CGC Interface at run-time.

Pin Configuration

This module can use GTETRGA, GTETRGB, GTETRGC, GTETRGD, GTIOCA and GTIOCB pins as count sources.

This module can use GTIOCA and GTIOCB pins as output pins for periodic or PWM signals.

This module can use GTIOCA and GTIOCB as input pins to measure input signals.

Usage Notes

Maximum Period for GPT32

The RA Configuration tool will automatically calculate the period count value and source clock divider based on the selected period time, units and clock speed.

When the selected period unit is "Raw counts", the maximum period setting is 0x40000000000 on a 32-bit timer or 0x0x4000000 on a 16-bit timer. This will configure the timer with the maximum period and a count clock divisor of 128.

Note

When manually changing the timer period counts the maximum value for a 32-bit GPT is 0x100000000. This number overflows the 32-bit value for timer_cfg_t::period_counts. To configure the timer for the maximum period, set timer_cfg_t::period_counts to 0.

Updating Period and Duty Cycle

The period and duty cycle are updated after the next counter overflow after calling R_GPT_PeriodSet() or R_GPT_DutyCycleSet(). To force them to update before the next counter overflow, call R_GPT_Reset() while the counter is running.

One-Shot Mode

The GPT timer does not support one-shot mode natively. One-shot mode is achieved by stopping the timer in the interrupt service routine before the callback is called. If the interrupt is not serviced before the timer period expires again, the timer generates more than one event. The callback is only called once in this case, but multiple events may be generated if the timer is linked to the Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc).

One-Shot Mode Output

The output waveform in one-shot mode is one PCLKD cycle less than the configured period. The configured period must be at least 2 counts to generate an output pulse.

Examples of one-shot signals that can be generated by this module are shown below:

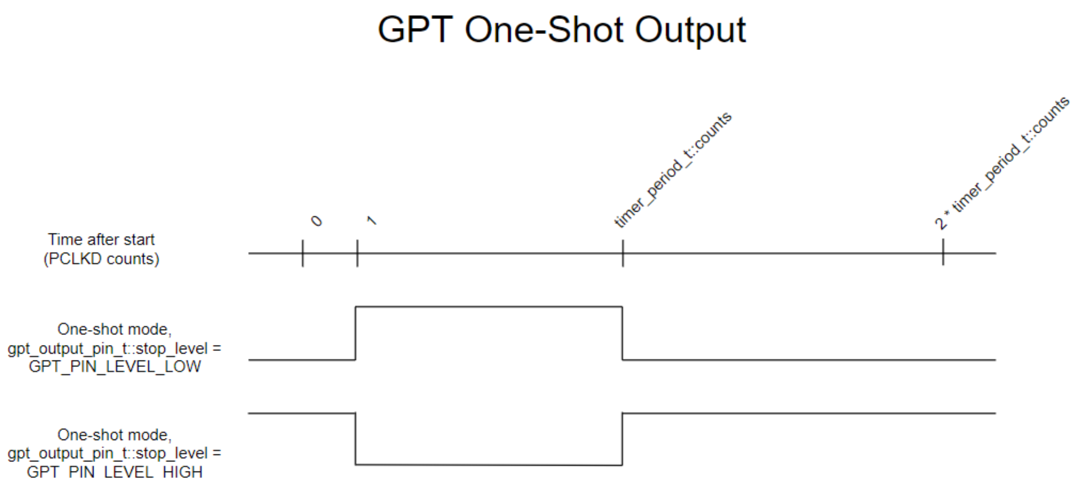

GPT One-Shot Output
Time after start (PCLKD counts)
0
1
timer_period_t::counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts
One-shot mode, gpt_output_pin_t::stop_level = GPT_PIN_LEVEL_LOW
One-shot mode, gpt_output_pin_t::stop_level = GPT_PIN_LEVEL_HIGH

Figure 118: GPT One-Shot Output

Periodic Output

The GTIOC pin toggles twice each time the timer expires in periodic mode. This is achieved by defining a PWM wave at a 50 percent duty cycle so that the period of the resulting square wave (from rising edge to rising edge) matches the period of the GPT timer. Since the periodic output is actually a PWM output, the time at the stop level is one cycle shorter than the time opposite the stop level for odd period values.

Examples of periodic signals that can be generated by this module are shown below:

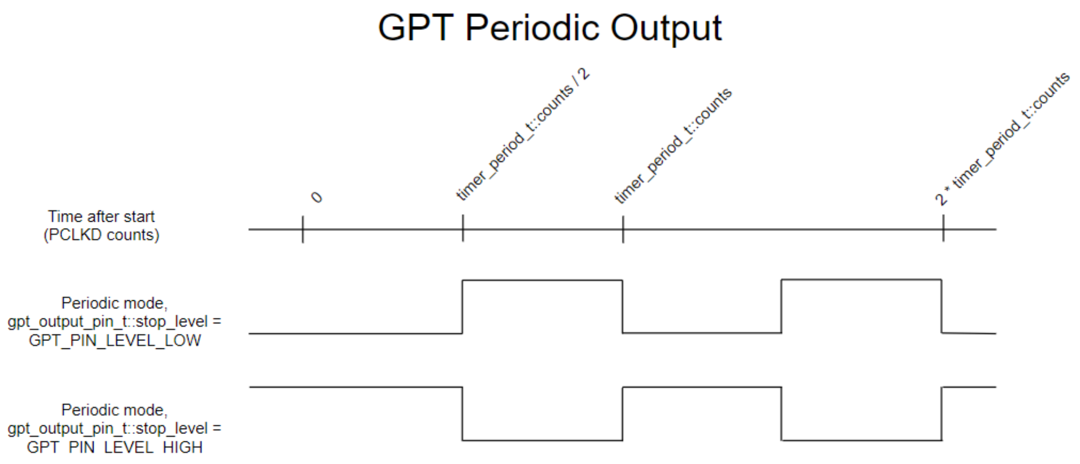

GPT Periodic Output
Time after start (PCLKD counts)
0
timer_period_t::counts / 2
timer_period_t::counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts
Periodic mode, gpt_output_pin_t::stop_level = GPT_PIN_LEVEL_LOW
Periodic mode, gpt_output_pin_t::stop_level = GPT_PIN_LEVEL_HIGH

Figure 119: GPT Periodic Output

PWM Output

The PWM output signal is high at the beginning of the cycle and low at the end of the cycle. If gpt_extended_cfg_t::shortest_pwm_signal is set to GPT_SHORTEST_LEVEL_ON, the PWM output signal is low at the beginning of the cycle and high at the end of the cycle.

Examples of PWM signals that can be generated by this module are shown below:

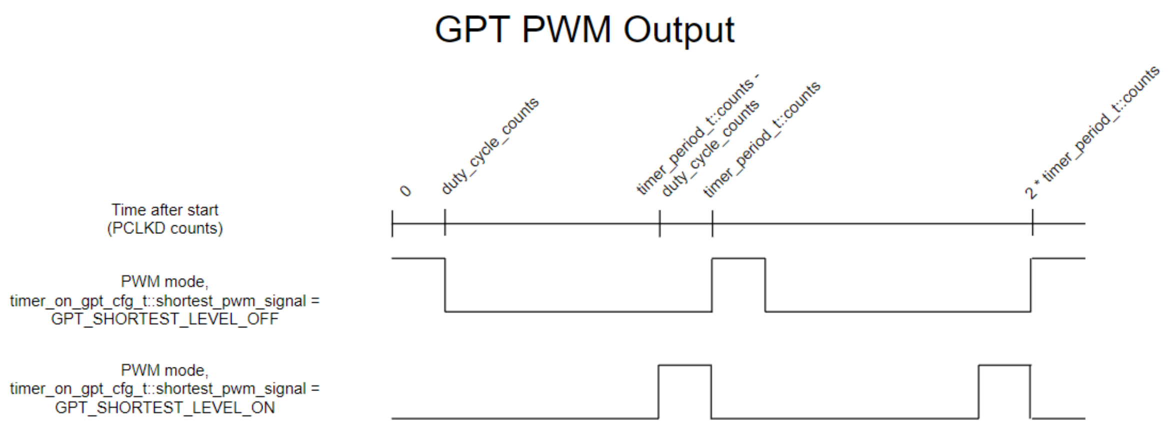

GPT PWM Output
0
duty_cycle_counts
timer_period_t::counts - duty_cycle_counts
timer_period_t::counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts
Time after start (PCLKD counts)
PWM mode, timer_on_gpt_cfg_t::shortest_pwm_signal = GPT_SHORTEST_LEVEL_OFF
PWM mode, timer_on_gpt_cfg_t::shortest_pwm_signal = GPT_SHORTEST_LEVEL_ON

Figure 120: GPT PWM Output

Triangle-Wave PWM Output

Examples of PWM signals that can be generated by this module are shown below. The duty_cycle_counts can be modified using R_GPT_DutyCycleSet() in the crest interrupt and updated at the following trough for symmetric PWM or modified in both the crest/trough interrupts and updated at the following trough/crest for asymmetric PWM.

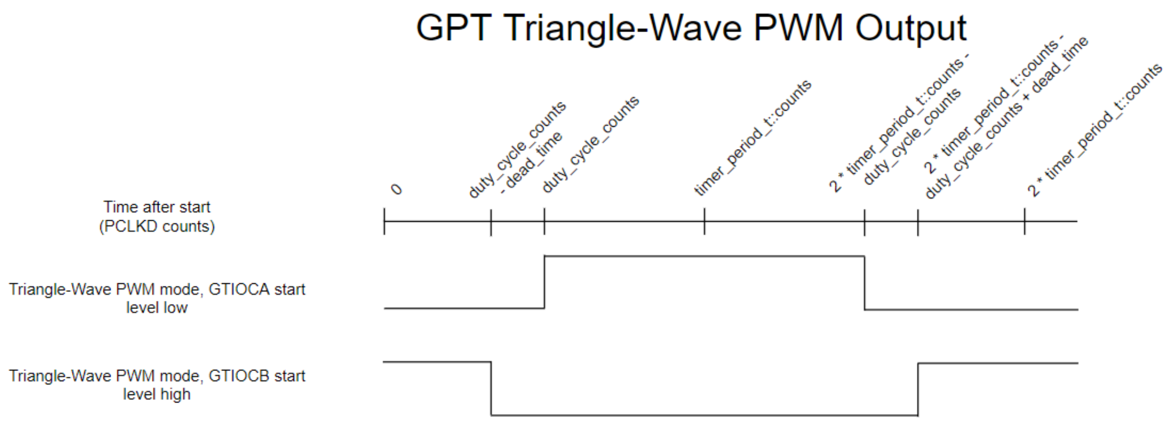

GPT Triangle-Wave PWM Output
0
duty_cycle_counts - dead_time
duty_cycle_counts
timer_period_t::counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts - duty_cycle_counts
2 * timer_period_t::counts - duty_cycle_counts + dead_time
2 * timer_period_t::counts
Time after start (PCLKD counts)
Triangle-Wave PWM mode, GTIOCA start level low
Triangle-Wave PWM mode, GTIOCB start level high

Figure 121: GPT Triangle-Wave PWM Output

Event Counting

Event counting can be done by selecting up or down counting sources from GTETRG pins, ELC events, or GTIOC pins. In event counting mode, the GPT counter is not affected by PCLKD.

Note

In event counting mode, the application must call R_GPT_Start() to enable event counting. The counter will not change after calling R_GPT_Start() until an event occurs.

Pulse Measurement

If the capture edge occurs before the start edge in pulse measurement, the first capture is invalid (0).

Controlling GPT with GTETRG Edges

The GPT timer can be configured to stop, start, clear, count up, or count down when a GTETRG rising or falling edge occurs.

Note

> *The GTETRG pins are shared by all GPT channels.*
> *GTETRG pins require POEG to be on (example code for this is provided in GPT Free Running Counter Example).*
> *If input filtering is required on the GTETRG pins, that must also be handled outside this module.*

Controlling GPT with ELC Events

The GPT timer can be configured to stop, start, clear, count up, or count down when an ELC event occurs.

Note

> *The configurable ELC GPT sources are shared by all GPT channels.*
> *The event links for the ELC must be configured outside this module.*

Triggering ELC Events with GPT

The GPT timer can trigger the start of other peripherals. The Event Link Controller (r_elc) guide provides a list of all available peripherals.

Enabling External Sources for Start, Stop, Clear, or Capture

R_GPT_Enable() must be called when external sources are used for start, stop, clear, or capture.

Interrupt Skipping

When an interrupt skipping source is selected a hardware counter will increment each time the selected event occurs. Each interrupt past the first (up to the specified skip count) will be suppressed. If ADC events are selected for skipping they will also be suppressed except during the timer period leading to the selected interrupt skipping event (see below diagram).

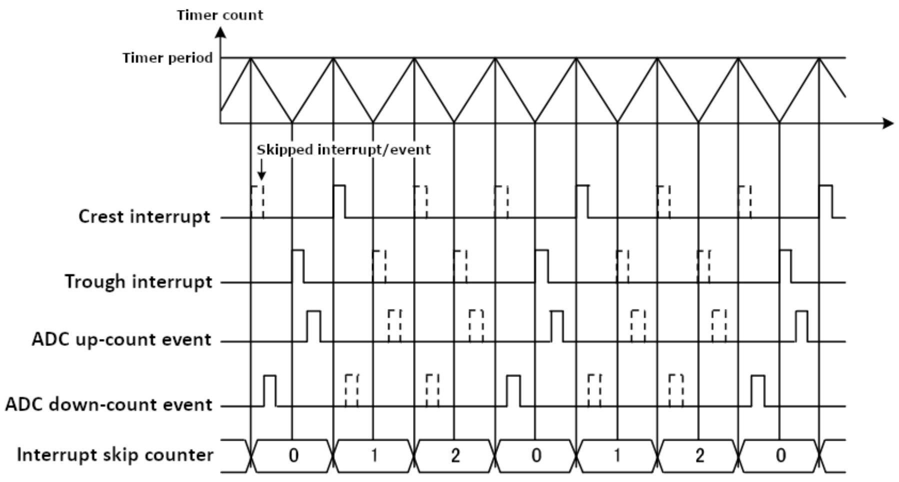


Figure 122: Crest interrupt skipping in triangle-wave PWM modes (skip count 2)

Examples

GPT Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the GPT in an application.

```
void gpt_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_GPT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_GPT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
}
```

GPT Callback Example

This is an example of a timer callback.

```
/* Example callback called when timer expires. */
void timer_callback (timer_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (TIMER_EVENT_CYCLE_END == p_args->event)
    {
 /* Add application code to be called periodically here. */
    }
}
```

GPT Free Running Counter Example

To use the GPT as a free running counter, select periodic mode and set the the Period to 0xFFFFFFFF for a 32-bit timer or 0xFFFF for a 16-bit timer.

```
void gpt_counter_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* (Optional) If event count mode is used to count edges on a GTETRG pin, POEG must
be started to use GTETRG.
  * Reference Note 1 of Table 23.2 "GPT functions" in the RA6M3 manual
R01UH0886EJ0100. */
 R_BSP_MODULE_START(FSP_IP_POEG, 0U);
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_GPT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_GPT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* (Optional) Stop the timer. */
    (void) R_GPT_Stop(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* Read the current counter value. Counter value is in status.counter. */
 timer_status_t status;
    (void) R_GPT_StatusGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &status);
}
```

GPT Input Capture Example

This is an example of using the GPT to capture pulse width or pulse period measurements.

```
/* Example callback called when a capture occurs. */
uint64_t g_captured_time    = 0U;
uint32_t g_capture_overflows = 0U;
void timer_capture_callback (timer_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if ((TIMER_EVENT_CAPTURE_A == p_args->event) || (TIMER_EVENT_CAPTURE_B ==
p_args->event))
    {
 /* (Optional) Get the current period if not known. */
 timer_info_t info;
       (void) R_GPT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
       uint64_t period = info.period_counts;
 /* The maximum period is one more than the maximum 32-bit number, but will be
reflected as 0 in
```

```
  * timer_info_t::period_counts. */
 if (0U == period)
      {
            period = UINT32_MAX + 1U;
      }
       g_captured_time    = (period * g_capture_overflows) + p_args->capture;
       g_capture_overflows = 0U;
    }
 if (TIMER_EVENT_CYCLE_END == p_args->event)
    {
 /* An overflow occurred during capture. This must be accounted for at the
application layer. */
       g_capture_overflows++;
    }
}
void gpt_capture_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_GPT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable captures. Captured values arrive in the interrupt. */
    (void) R_GPT_Enable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* (Optional) Disable captures. */
    (void) R_GPT_Disable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
}
```

GPT Period Update Example

This an example of updating the period.

```
#define GPT_EXAMPLE_MSEC_PER_SEC (1000)
#define GPT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_PERIOD_MSEC (20)
/* This example shows how to calculate a new period value at runtime. */
```

```
void gpt_period_calculation_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_GPT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_GPT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* Get the source clock frequency (in Hz). There are 3 ways to do this in FSP:
  * - If the PCLKD frequency has not changed since reset, the source clock frequency
is
  * BSP_STARTUP_PCLKD_HZ >> timer_cfg_t::source_div
  * - Use the R_GPT_InfoGet function (it accounts for the divider).
  * - Calculate the current PCLKD frequency using
R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKD) and right shift
  * by timer_cfg_t::source_div.
  *
  * This example uses the 3rd option (R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet).
  */
    uint32_t pclkd_freq_hz = R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKD) >>
g_timer0_cfg.source_div;
 /* Calculate the desired period based on the current clock. Note that this
calculation could overflow if the
  * desired period is larger than UINT32_MAX / pclkd_freq_hz. A cast to uint64_t is
used to prevent this. */
    uint32_t period_counts =
       (uint32_t) (((uint64_t) pclkd_freq_hz * GPT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_PERIOD_MSEC) /
GPT_EXAMPLE_MSEC_PER_SEC);
 /* Set the calculated period. */
    err = R_GPT_PeriodSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, period_counts);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

GPT Duty Cycle Update Example

This an example of updating the duty cycle.

```
#define GPT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_DUTY_CYCLE_PERCENT (25)
#define GPT_EXAMPLE_MAX_PERCENT (100)
/* This example shows how to calculate a new duty cycle value at runtime. */
void gpt_duty_cycle_calculation_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_GPT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_GPT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
 /* Get the current period setting. */
 timer_info_t info;
    (void) R_GPT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
    uint32_t current_period_counts = info.period_counts;
 /* Calculate the desired duty cycle based on the current period. Note that if the
period could be larger than
  * UINT32_MAX / 100, this calculation could overflow. A cast to uint64_t is used to
prevent this. The cast is
  * not required for 16-bit timers. */
    uint32_t duty_cycle_counts =
       (uint32_t) (((uint64_t) current_period_counts *
GPT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_DUTY_CYCLE_PERCENT) /
                   GPT_EXAMPLE_MAX_PERCENT);
 /* Set the calculated duty cycle. */
    err = R_GPT_DutyCycleSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, duty_cycle_counts, GPT_IO_PIN_GTIOCB);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

GPT A/D Converter Start Request Example

This is an example of using the GPT to start the ADC at a configurable A/D converter compare match value.

```
#if ((1U << GPT_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL) & (BSP_FEATURE_GPTEH_CHANNEL_MASK |
BSP_FEATURE_GPTE_CHANNEL_MASK))
/* This example shows how to configure the GPT to generate an A/D start request at an
A/D start request compare
 * match value. This example can only be used with GPTE or GPTEH variants. */
void gpt_adc_start_request_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize and configure the ELC. */
    err = R_ELC_Open(&g_elc_ctrl, &g_elc_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Configure the ELC to start a scan on ADC unit 0 when GPT channel 0. Note: This is
typically configured in
  * g_elc_cfg and already set during R_ELC_Open. */
    err = R_ELC_LinkSet(&g_elc_ctrl, ELC_PERIPHERAL_ADC0, ELC_EVENT_GPT0_AD_TRIG_A);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Globally enable ELC events. */
    err = R_ELC_Enable(&g_elc_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize the ADC to start a scan based on an ELC event trigger. Set
adc_cfg_t::trigger to
  * ADC_TRIGGER_SYNC_ELC. */
    err = R_ADC_Open(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_ADC_ScanCfg(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_channel_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable ELC triggers by calling R_ADC_ScanStart(). */
    (void) R_ADC_ScanStart(&g_adc0_ctrl);
 /* Initializes the GPT module. Configure gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t::adc_trigger to set
when the A/D start request
  * is generated. Set gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t::adc_a_compare_match to set the desired
compare match value. */
    err = R_GPT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. A/D converter start request events are generated each time the
counter is equal to the
  * A/D start request compare match value. */
    (void) R_GPT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
}
#endif
```

Data Structures

struct	gpt_output_pin_t
struct	gpt_instance_ctrl_t
struct	gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t
struct	gpt_extended_cfg_t

Enumerations

enum	gpt_io_pin_t
enum	gpt_pin_level_t
enum	gpt_shortest_level_t
enum	gpt_source_t
enum	gpt_capture_filter_t
enum	gpt_adc_trigger_t
enum	gpt_poeg_link_t
enum	gpt_output_disable_t
enum	gpt_gtioc_disable_t
enum	gpt_adc_compare_match_t
enum	gpt_interrupt_skip_source_t
enum	gpt_interrupt_skip_count_t

enum	gpt_interrupt_skip_adc_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ gpt_output_pin_t

struct gpt_output_pin_t

Configurations for output pins.

Data Fields

bool	output_enabled	Set to true to enable output, false to disable output.
gpt_pin_level_t	stop_level	Select a stop level from gpt_pin_level_t.

◆ gpt_instance_ctrl_t

struct gpt_instance_ctrl_t

Channel control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when timer_api_t::open is called.

◆ gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t

struct gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t

GPT extension for advanced PWM features.

Data Fields

uint8_t	trough_ipl	Trough interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	trough_irq	Trough interrupt.
gpt_poeg_link_t	poeg_link	Select which POEG channel controls output disable for this GPT channel.
gpt_output_disable_t	output_disable	Select which trigger sources request output disable from POEG.
gpt_adc_trigger_t	adc_trigger	Select trigger sources to start A/D conversion.
uint32_t	dead_time_count_up	Set a dead time value for counting up.
uint32_t	dead_time_count_down	Set a dead time value for counting down (available on GPT32E and GPT32EH only)
uint32_t	adc_a_compare_match	Select the compare match value used to trigger an A/D conversion start request using ELC_EVENT_GPT<channel>_AD_TRIG_A.

uint32_t	adc_b_compare_match	Select the compare match value used to trigger an A/D conversion start request using ELC_EVENT_GPT<channel>_AD_TRIG_B.
gpt_interrupt_skip_source_t	interrupt_skip_source	Interrupt source to count for interrupt skipping.
gpt_interrupt_skip_count_t	interrupt_skip_count	Number of interrupts to skip between events.
gpt_interrupt_skip_adc_t	interrupt_skip_adc	ADC events to skip when interrupt skipping is enabled.
gpt_gtioc_disable_t	gtioca_disable_setting	Select how to configure GTIOCA when output is disabled.
gpt_gtioc_disable_t	gtiocb_disable_setting	Select how to configure GTIOCB when output is disabled.

◆ **gpt_extended_cfg_t**

struct gpt_extended_cfg_t

GPT extension configures the output pins for GPT.

Data Fields		
gpt_output_pin_t	gtioca	Configuration for GPT I/O pin A.
gpt_output_pin_t	gtiocb	Configuration for GPT I/O pin B.
gpt_shortest_level_t	shortest_pwm_signal	Shortest PWM signal level.
gpt_source_t	start_source	Event sources that trigger the timer to start.
gpt_source_t	stop_source	Event sources that trigger the timer to stop.
gpt_source_t	clear_source	Event sources that trigger the timer to clear.
gpt_source_t	capture_a_source	Event sources that trigger capture of GTIOCA.
gpt_source_t	capture_b_source	Event sources that trigger capture of GTIOCB.
gpt_source_t	count_up_source	Event sources that trigger a single up count. If GPT_SOURCE_NONE is selected for both count_up_source and count_down_source, then the timer count source is PCLK.
gpt_source_t	count_down_source	Event sources that trigger a single down count. If GPT_SOURCE_NONE is selected for both count_up_source and

		count_down_source, then the timer count source is PCLK.
gpt_capture_filter_t	capture_filter_gtioca	
gpt_capture_filter_t	capture_filter_gtiocb	
uint8_t	capture_a_ipl	Capture A interrupt priority.
uint8_t	capture_b_ipl	Capture B interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	capture_a_irq	Capture A interrupt.
IRQn_Type	capture_b_irq	Capture B interrupt.
gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t const *	p_pwm_cfg	Advanced PWM features, optional.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ gpt_io_pin_t

enum gpt_io_pin_t

Input/Output pins, used to select which duty cycle to update in R_GPT_DutyCycleSet().

Enumerator	
GPT_IO_PIN_GTIOCA	GTIOCA.
GPT_IO_PIN_GTIOCB	GTIOCB.
GPT_IO_PIN_GTIOCA_AND_GTIOCB	GTIOCA and GTIOCB.

◆ gpt_pin_level_t

enum gpt_pin_level_t

Level of GPT pin

Enumerator	
GPT_PIN_LEVEL_LOW	Pin level low.
GPT_PIN_LEVEL_HIGH	Pin level high.

◆ gpt_shortest_level_t

enum gpt_shortest_level_t	
GPT PWM shortest pin level	
Enumerator	
GPT_SHORTEST_LEVEL_OFF	1 extra PCLK in ON time. Minimum ON time will be limited to 2 PCLK raw counts.
GPT_SHORTEST_LEVEL_ON	1 extra PCLK in OFF time. Minimum ON time will be limited to 1 PCLK raw counts.

◆ gpt_source_t

enum gpt_source_t	
Sources can be used to start the timer, stop the timer, count up, or count down. These enumerations represent a bitmask. Multiple sources can be ORed together.	
Enumerator	
GPT_SOURCE_NONE	No active event sources.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGA_RISING	Action performed on GTETRGA rising edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGA_FALLING	Action performed on GTETRGA falling edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGB_RISING	Action performed on GTETRGB rising edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGB_FALLING	Action performed on GTETRGB falling edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGC_RISING	Action performed on GTETRGC rising edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGC_FALLING	Action performed on GTETRGC falling edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGD_RISING	Action performed on GTETRGB rising edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTETRGD_FALLING	Action performed on GTETRGB falling edge.
GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCA_RISING_WHILE_GTIOCB_LOW	Action performed when GTIOCA input rises while GTIOCB is low.
GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCA_RISING_WHILE_GTIOCB_HIGH	Action performed when GTIOCA input rises while GTIOCB is high.
GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCA_FALLING_WHILE_GTIOCB_LOW	Action performed when GTIOCA input falls while GTIOCB is low.

GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCA_FALLING_WHILE_GTIOCB_HIGH	Action performed when GTIOCA input falls while GTIOCB is high.
GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCB_RISING_WHILE_GTIOCA_LOW	Action performed when GTIOCB input rises while GTIOCA is low.
GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCB_RISING_WHILE_GTIOCA_HIGH	Action performed when GTIOCB input rises while GTIOCA is high.
GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCB_FALLING_WHILE_GTIOCA_LOW	Action performed when GTIOCB input falls while GTIOCA is low.
GPT_SOURCE_GTIOCB_FALLING_WHILE_GTIOCA_HIGH	Action performed when GTIOCB input falls while GTIOCA is high.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_A	Action performed on ELC GPTA event.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_B	Action performed on ELC GPTB event.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_C	Action performed on ELC GPTC event.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_D	Action performed on ELC GPTD event.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_E	Action performed on ELC GPTE event.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_F	Action performed on ELC GPTF event.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_G	Action performed on ELC GPTG event.
GPT_SOURCE_GPT_H	Action performed on ELC GPTH event.

◆ gpt_capture_filter_t

enum gpt_capture_filter_t	
Input capture signal noise filter (debounce) setting. Only available for input signals GTIOCxA and GTIOCxB. The noise filter samples the external signal at intervals of the PCLK divided by one of the values. When 3 consecutive samples are at the same level (high or low), then that level is passed on as the observed state of the signal. See "Noise Filter Function" in the hardware manual, GPT section.	
Enumerator	
GPT_CAPTURE_FILTER_NONE	None - no filtering.
GPT_CAPTURE_FILTER_PCLKD_DIV_1	PCLK/1 - fast sampling.
GPT_CAPTURE_FILTER_PCLKD_DIV_4	PCLK/4.
GPT_CAPTURE_FILTER_PCLKD_DIV_16	PCLK/16.
GPT_CAPTURE_FILTER_PCLKD_DIV_64	PCLK/64 - slow sampling.

◆ gpt_adc_trigger_t

enum gpt_adc_trigger_t

Trigger options to start A/D conversion.

Enumerator	
GPT_ADC_TRIGGER_NONE	None - no output disable request.
GPT_ADC_TRIGGER_UP_COUNT_START_ADC_A	Request A/D conversion from ADC unit 0 at up counting compare match of gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t::adc_a_compare_match.
GPT_ADC_TRIGGER_DOWN_COUNT_START_ADC_A	Request A/D conversion from ADC unit 0 at down counting compare match of gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t::adc_a_compare_match.
GPT_ADC_TRIGGER_UP_COUNT_START_ADC_B	Request A/D conversion from ADC unit 1 at up counting compare match of gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t::adc_b_compare_match.
GPT_ADC_TRIGGER_DOWN_COUNT_START_ADC_B	Request A/D conversion from ADC unit 1 at down counting compare match of gpt_extended_pwm_cfg_t::adc_b_compare_match.

◆ gpt_poeg_link_t

enum gpt_poeg_link_t

POEG channel to link to this channel.

Enumerator	
GPT_POEG_LINK_POEG0	Link this GPT channel to POEG channel 0 (GTETRGA)
GPT_POEG_LINK_POEG1	Link this GPT channel to POEG channel 1 (GTETRGB)
GPT_POEG_LINK_POEG2	Link this GPT channel to POEG channel 2 (GTETRGC)
GPT_POEG_LINK_POEG3	Link this GPT channel to POEG channel 3 (GTETRGD)

◆ gpt_output_disable_t

enum gpt_output_disable_t	
Select trigger to send output disable request to POEG.	
Enumerator	
GPT_OUTPUT_DISABLE_NONE	None - no output disable request.
GPT_OUTPUT_DISABLE_DEAD_TIME_ERROR	Request output disable if a dead time error occurs.
GPT_OUTPUT_DISABLE_GTIOCA_GTIOCB_HIGH	Request output disable if GTIOCA and GTIOCB are high at the same time.
GPT_OUTPUT_DISABLE_GTIOCA_GTIOCB_LOW	Request output disable if GTIOCA and GTIOCB are low at the same time.

◆ gpt_gtioc_disable_t

enum gpt_gtioc_disable_t	
Disable level options for GTIOC pins.	
Enumerator	
GPT_GTIOC_DISABLE_PROHIBITED	Do not allow output disable.
GPT_GTIOC_DISABLE_SET_HI_Z	Set GTIOC to high impedance when output is disabled.
GPT_GTIOC_DISABLE_LEVEL_LOW	Set GTIOC level low when output is disabled.
GPT_GTIOC_DISABLE_LEVEL_HIGH	Set GTIOC level high when output is disabled.

◆ gpt_adc_compare_match_t

enum gpt_adc_compare_match_t	
Trigger options to start A/D conversion.	
Enumerator	
GPT_ADC_COMPARE_MATCH_ADC_A	Set A/D conversion start request value for GPT A/D converter start request A.
GPT_ADC_COMPARE_MATCH_ADC_B	Set A/D conversion start request value for GPT A/D converter start request B.

◆ gpt_interrupt_skip_source_t

enum gpt_interrupt_skip_source_t

Interrupt skipping modes

Enumerator	
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_SOURCE_NONE	Do not skip interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_SOURCE_OVERFLOW_UNDERFLOW	Count and skip overflow and underflow interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_SOURCE_CREST	Count crest interrupts for interrupt skipping. Skip the number of crest and trough interrupts configured in gpt_interrupt_skip_count_t. When the interrupt does fire, the trough interrupt fires before the crest interrupt.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_SOURCE_TROUGH	Count trough interrupts for interrupt skipping. Skip the number of crest and trough interrupts configured in gpt_interrupt_skip_count_t. When the interrupt does fire, the crest interrupt fires before the trough interrupt.

◆ gpt_interrupt_skip_count_t

enum gpt_interrupt_skip_count_t

Number of interrupts to skip between events

Enumerator	
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_0	Do not skip interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_1	Skip one interrupt.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_2	Skip two interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_3	Skip three interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_4	Skip four interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_5	Skip five interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_6	Skip six interrupts.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_COUNT_7	Skip seven interrupts.

◆ gpt_interrupt_skip_adc_t

enum gpt_interrupt_skip_adc_t	
ADC events to skip during interrupt skipping	
Enumerator	
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_ADC_NONE	Do not skip ADC events.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_ADC_A	Skip ADC A events.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_ADC_B	Skip ADC B events.
GPT_INTERRUPT_SKIP_ADC_A_AND_B	Skip ADC A and B events.

Function Documentation

◆ R_GPT_Open()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_Open (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, timer_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initializes the timer module and applies configurations. Implements timer_api_t::open.

GPT hardware does not support one-shot functionality natively. When using one-shot mode, the timer will be stopped in an ISR after the requested period has elapsed.

The GPT implementation of the general timer can accept a gpt_extended_cfg_t extension parameter.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the module. */
   err = R_GPT_Open(&g_timer0_ctrl, &g_timer0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful and timer has started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required input pointer is NULL or the source divider is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	timer_cfg_t::mode is TIMER_MODE_ONE_SHOT or timer_cfg_t::p_callback is not NULL, but ISR is not enabled. ISR must be enabled to use one-shot mode or callback.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	Triangle wave PWM is only supported if GPT_CFG_OUTPUT_SUPPORT_ENABLE is 2.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The channel requested in the p_cfg parameter is not available on this device.

◆ R_GPT_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_Stop (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops timer. Implements timer_api_t::stop.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Stop the timer. */
   (void) R_GPT_Stop(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Timer successfully stopped.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_Start()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_Start (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Starts timer. Implements timer_api_t::start.

Example:

```
/* Start the timer. */
   (void) R_GPT_Start(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Timer successfully started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_Reset (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Resets the counter value to 0. Implements timer_api_t::reset.

Note

This function also updates to the new period if no counter overflow has occurred since the last call to R_GPT_PeriodSet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Counter value written successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_Enable()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_Enable (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Enables external event triggers that start, stop, clear, or capture the counter. Implements timer_api_t::enable.

Example:

```
/* Enable captures. Captured values arrive in the interrupt. */
   (void) R_GPT_Enable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	External events successfully enabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_Disable()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_Disable (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disables external event triggers that start, stop, clear, or capture the counter. Implements timer_api_t::disable.

Note
The timer could be running after R_GPT_Disable(). To ensure it is stopped, call R_GPT_Stop().

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Disable captures. */
   (void) R_GPT_Disable(&g_timer0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	External events successfully disabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_PeriodSet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_PeriodSet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t const *period_counts*)

Sets period value provided. If the timer is running, the period will be updated after the next counter overflow. If the timer is stopped, this function resets the counter and updates the period. Implements timer_api_t::periodSet.

Warning
If periodic output is used, the duty cycle buffer registers are updated after the period buffer register. If this function is called while the timer is running and a GPT overflow occurs during processing, the duty cycle will not be the desired 50% duty cycle until the counter overflow after processing completes.

Example:

```
 /* Get the source clock frequency (in Hz). There are 3 ways to do this in FSP:
  * - If the PCLKD frequency has not changed since reset, the source clock frequency
is
  * BSP_STARTUP_PCLKD_HZ >> timer_cfg_t::source_div
  * - Use the R_GPT_InfoGet function (it accounts for the divider).
  * - Calculate the current PCLKD frequency using
R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKD) and right shift
  * by timer_cfg_t::source_div.
  *
  * This example uses the 3rd option (R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet).
  */
    uint32_t pclkd_freq_hz = R_FSP_SystemClockHzGet(FSP_PRIV_CLOCK_PCLKD) >>
g_timer0_cfg.source_div;
 /* Calculate the desired period based on the current clock. Note that this
calculation could overflow if the
  * desired period is larger than UINT32_MAX / pclkd_freq_hz. A cast to uint64_t is
used to prevent this. */
    uint32_t period_counts =
       (uint32_t) (((uint64_t) pclkd_freq_hz * GPT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_PERIOD_MSEC) /
GPT_EXAMPLE_MSEC_PER_SEC);
 /* Set the calculated period. */
    err = R_GPT_PeriodSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, period_counts);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Period value written successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_DutyCycleSet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_DutyCycleSet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t const *duty_cycle_counts*, uint32_t const *pin*)

Sets duty cycle on requested pin. Implements timer_api_t::dutyCycleSet.

Duty cycle is updated in the buffer register. The updated duty cycle is reflected after the next cycle end (counter overflow).

Example:

```
 /* Get the current period setting. */
 timer_info_t info;
    (void) R_GPT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
    uint32_t current_period_counts = info.period_counts;
 /* Calculate the desired duty cycle based on the current period. Note that if the
period could be larger than
  * UINT32_MAX / 100, this calculation could overflow. A cast to uint64_t is used to
```

```
prevent this. The cast is
  * not required for 16-bit timers. */
    uint32_t duty_cycle_counts =
       (uint32_t) (((uint64_t) current_period_counts *
GPT_EXAMPLE_DESIRED_DUTY_CYCLE_PERCENT) /
                   GPT_EXAMPLE_MAX_PERCENT);
 /* Set the calculated duty cycle. */
    err = R_GPT_DutyCycleSet(&g_timer0_ctrl, duty_cycle_counts, GPT_IO_PIN_GTIOCB);
    handle_error(err);
```

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block.
[in]	duty_cycle_counts	Duty cycle to set in counts.
[in]	pin	Use gpt_io_pin_t to select GPT_IO_PIN_GTIOCA or GPT_IO_PIN_GTIOCB

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Duty cycle updated successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL or the pin is not one of gpt_io_pin_t
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Duty cycle is larger than period.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	GPT_CFG_OUTPUT_SUPPORT_ENABLE is 0.

◆ R_GPT_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_InfoGet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, timer_info_t *const *p_info*)

Get timer information and store it in provided pointer p_info. Implements timer_api_t::infoGet.

Example:

```
 /* (Optional) Get the current period if not known. */
 timer_info_t info;
       (void) R_GPT_InfoGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &info);
       uint64_t period = info.period_counts;
 /* The maximum period is one more than the maximum 32-bit number, but will be
reflected as 0 in
  * timer_info_t::period_counts. */
 if (0U == period)
      {
            period = UINT32_MAX + 1U;
      }
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Period, count direction, frequency, and ELC event written to caller's structure successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_info was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_StatusGet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, timer_status_t *const *p_status*)

Get current timer status and store it in provided pointer p_status. Implements timer_api_t::statusGet.

Example:

```
/* Read the current counter value. Counter value is in status.counter. */
timer_status_t status;
   (void) R_GPT_StatusGet(&g_timer0_ctrl, &status);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Current timer state and counter value set successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_status was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_CounterSet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_CounterSet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t *counter*)

Set counter value.

Note
Do not call this API while the counter is counting. The counter value can only be updated while the counter is stopped.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Counter value updated.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_status was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	The timer is running. Stop the timer before calling this function.

◆ R_GPT_OutputEnable()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_OutputEnable (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, gpt_io_pin_t *pin*)

Enable output for GTIOCA and/or GTIOCB.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Output is enabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_status was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_OutputDisable()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_OutputDisable (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, gpt_io_pin_t *pin*)

Disable output for GTIOCA and/or GTIOCB.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Output is disabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_status was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_AdcTriggerSet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_AdcTriggerSet (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, gpt_adc_compare_match_t *which_compare_match*, uint32_t *compare_match_value*)

Set A/D converter start request compare match value.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Counter value updated.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_status was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_Close()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_Close (timer_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops counter, disables output pins, and clears internal driver data. Implements timer_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Sets driver version based on compile time macros. Implements timer_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version stored in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version was NULL.

5.2.23 General PWM Timer Three-Phase Motor Control Driver (r_gpt_three_phase)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Open (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, three_phase_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Stop (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Start (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Reset (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, three_phase_duty_cycle_t *const p_duty_cycle)
fsp_err_t	R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Close (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

fsp_err_t	R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for 3-phase motor control using the GPT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Three-Phase Interface.

Overview

The General PWM Timer (GPT) Three-Phase driver provides basic functionality for synchronously starting and stopping three PWM channels for use in 3-phase motor control applications. A function is additionally provided to allow setting duty cycle values for all three channels, optionally with double-buffering.

Features

The GPT Three-Phase driver provides the following functions:

- Synchronize configuration of three GPT channels
- Synchronously start, stop and reset all three GPT channels
- Set duty cycle on all three channels with one function

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_gpt_three_phase

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_gpt_three_phase_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Timers > Three-Phase PWM Driver on r_gpt_three_phase

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Timers > Three-Phase PWM Driver on r_gpt_three_phase:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_three_phase0	Module name.
General > Mode	• Triangle-Wave Symmetric PWM • Triangle-Wave	Triangle-Wave Symmetric PWM	Mode selection. Triangle-Wave Symmetric PWM: Generates symmetric

	• Triangle-Wave Asymmetric PWM		PWM waveforms with duty cycle determined by compare match set during a crest interrupt and updated at the next trough. Triangle-Wave Asymmetric PWM: Generates asymmetric PWM waveforms with duty cycle determined by compare match set during a crest/trough interrupt and updated at the next trough/crest.
General > Period	Value must be a non-negative integer less than or equal to 0x40000000000	15	Specify the timer period in units selected below. Setting the period to 0x100000000 raw counts results in the maximum period. Set the period to 0x100000000 raw counts for a free running timer or an input capture configuration. The period can be set up to 0x40000000000, which will use a divider of 1024 with the maximum period.
General > Period Unit	• Raw Counts • Nanoseconds • Microseconds • Milliseconds • Seconds • Hertz • Kilohertz	Kilohertz	Unit of the period specified above
General > GPT U-Channel	Channel number must exist on the device	0	Specify the GPT channel for U signal output.
General > GPT V-Channel	Channel number must exist on the device	1	Specify the GPT channel for V signal output.
General > GPT W-Channel	Channel number must exist on the device	2	Specify the GPT channel for W signal output.
General > Buffer Mode	• Single Buffer • Double Buffer	Single Buffer	When Double Buffer is selected the

			'duty_buffer' array in three_phase_duty_cycle_t is used as a buffer for the 'duty' array. This allows setting the duty cycle for the next two crest/trough events in asymmetric mode with only one call to R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet.
General > GTIOCA Stop Level	• Pin Level Low • Pin Level High • Pin Level Retained	Pin Level Low	Select the behavior of the output pin when the timer is stopped.
General > GTIOCB Stop Level	• Pin Level Low • Pin Level High • Pin Level Retained	Pin Level Low	Select the behavior of the output pin when the timer is stopped.
Dead Time > Dead Time Count Up (Raw Counts)	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Select the dead time to apply during up counting. This value also applies during down counting for the GPT32 and GPT16 variants.
Dead Time > Dead Time Count Down (Raw Counts) (GPTE/GPTEH only)	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	0	Select the dead time to apply during down counting. This value only applies to the GPT32E and GPT32EH variants.

Clock Configuration

Please refer to the General PWM Timer (r_gpt) section for more information.

Pin Configuration

Please refer to the General PWM Timer (r_gpt) section for more information.

Usage Notes

Warning

Be sure the GTIOCA/B stop level and dead time values are set appropriately for your application before attempting to drive a motor. Failure to do so may result in damage to the motor drive circuitry and/or the motor itself if the timer is stopped by software.

Initial Setup

The following should be configured once the GPT Three-Phase module has been added to a project:

1. Set "Pin Output Support" in one of the GPT submodules to "Enabled with Extra Features"
2. Configure common settings in the GPT Three-Phase module properties
3. Set the crest and trough interrupt priority and callback function in **one** of the three GPT submodules (if desired)
4. Set the "Extra Features -> Output Disable" settings in each GPT submodule as needed for your application

Note

Because all three modules are operated synchronously with the same period interrupts only need to be enabled in one of the three GPT modules.

Buffer Modes

There are two buffering modes available for duty cycle values - single- and double-buffered. In single buffer mode only the values specified in the duty array element of three_phase_duty_cycle_t are used by R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet. At the next trough or crest event the output duty cycle will be internally updated to the set values.

In double buffer mode the duty_buffer array values are used as buffer values for the duty elements. Once passed to R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet, the next trough or crest event will update the output duty cycle to the values specified in duty as before. However, at the following crest or trough event the output duty cycle will be updated to the values in duty_buffer. This allows the duty cycle for both sides of an asymmetric PWM waveform to be set at only one trough or crest event per period instead of at every event.

Examples

GPT Three-Phase Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the GPT Three-Phase module in an application. The duty cycle is updated at every timer trough with the previously loaded buffer value, then the duty cycle buffer is reloaded in the trough interrupt callback.

```
void gpt_callback (timer_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 fsp_err_t                err;
 three_phase_duty_cycle_t duty_cycle;
 if (TIMER_EVENT_TROUGH == p_args->event)
    {
 /* Update duty cycle values (example) */
       duty_cycle.duty[THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_U] =
get_duty_counts(THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_U);
       duty_cycle.duty[THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_V] =
get_duty_counts(THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_V);
       duty_cycle.duty[THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_W] =
get_duty_counts(THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_W);
```

```
 /* Update duty cycle values */
       err = R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet(&g_gpt_three_phase_ctrl, &duty_cycle);
       handle_error(err);
    }
 else
    {
 /* Handle crest event. */
    }
}
void gpt_three_phase_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Open(&g_gpt_three_phase_ctrl, &g_gpt_three_phase_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the timer. */
    (void) R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Start(&g_gpt_three_phase_ctrl);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	gpt_three_phase_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ gpt_three_phase_instance_ctrl_t

struct gpt_three_phase_instance_ctrl_t
Channel control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when three_phase_api_t::open is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Open()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Open (three_phase_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, three_phase_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initializes the 3-phase timer module (and associated timers) and applies configurations. Implements three_phase_api_t::open.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the module. */
   err = R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Open(&g_gpt_three_phase_ctrl, &g_gpt_three_phase_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required input pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.

◆ R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Stop (three_phase_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops all timers synchronously. Implements three_phase_api_t::stop.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Timers successfully stopped.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Start()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Start (three_phase_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Starts all timers synchronously. Implements three_phase_api_t::start.

Example:

```
/* Start the timer. */
   (void) R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Start(&g_gpt_three_phase_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Timers successfully started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Reset (three_phase_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Resets the counter values to 0. Implements three_phase_api_t::reset.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Counters were reset successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet (three_phase_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, three_phase_duty_cycle_t *const *p_duty_cycle*)

Sets duty cycle for all three timers. Implements three_phase_api_t::dutyCycleSet.

In symmetric PWM mode duty cycle values are reflected after the next trough. In asymmetric PWM mode values are reflected at the next trough OR crest, whichever comes first.

When double-buffering is enabled the values in three_phase_duty_cycle_t::duty_buffer are set to the double-buffer registers. When values are reflected the first time the single buffer values (three_phase_duty_cycle_t::duty) are used. On the second reflection the duty_buffer values are used. In asymmetric PWM mode this enables both count-up and count-down PWM values to be set at trough (or crest) exclusively.

Example:

```
/* Update duty cycle values */
      err = R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet(&g_gpt_three_phase_ctrl, &duty_cycle);
      handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Duty cycle updated successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	One or more duty cycle count values was outside the range 0..(period - 1).

◆ R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Close()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Close (three_phase_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops counters, disables output pins, and clears internal driver data. Implements three_phase_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Sets driver version based on compile time macros. Implements three_phase_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version stored in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version was NULL.

5.2.24 Interrupt Controller Unit (r_icu)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_ICU_ExternalIrqOpen (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, external_irq_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_ICU_ExternalIrqEnable (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ICU_ExternalIrqDisable (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_ICU_ExternalIrqVersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_ICU_ExternalIrqClose (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Detailed Description

Driver for the ICU peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the External IRQ Interface.

Overview

The Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU) controls which event signals are linked to the NVIC, DTC, and DMAC modules. The R_ICU software module only implements the External IRQ Interface. The external_irq interface is for configuring interrupts to fire when a trigger condition is detected on an external IRQ pin.

Note

Multiple instances are used when more than one external interrupt is needed. Configure each instance with different channels and properties as needed for the specific interrupt.

Features

- Supports configuring interrupts for IRQ pins on the target MCUs
    - Enabling and disabling interrupt generation.
    - Configuring interrupt trigger on rising edge, falling edge, both edges, or low level signal.
    - Enabling and disabling the IRQ noise filter.
- Supports configuring a user callback function, which will be invoked by the HAL module when an external pin interrupt is generated.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_icu

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_icu_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Input > External IRQ Driver on r_icu

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Input > External IRQ Driver on r_icu:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_external_irq0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be an integer between 0 and 15	0	Specify the hardware channel.
Trigger	• Falling	Rising	Select the signal edge

	• Rising • Both Edges • Low Level		or state that triggers an interrupt.
Digital Filtering	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Select if the digital noise filter should be enabled.
Digital Filtering Sample Clock (Only valid when Digital Filtering is Enabled)	• PCLK / 1 • PCLK / 8 • PCLK / 32 • PCLK / 64	PCLK / 64	Select the clock divider for the digital noise filter.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided here. If this callback function is provided, it is called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time the IRQn triggers
Pin Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the PIN interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The ICU peripheral module doesn't require any specific clock settings.

Note

The digital filter uses PCLKB as the clock source for sampling the IRQ pin.

Pin Configuration

The pin for the external interrupt channel must be configured as an input with IRQ Input Enabled.

Usage Notes

Digital Filter

The digital filter is used to reject trigger conditions that are too short. The trigger condition must be longer than three periods of the filter clock. The filter clock frequency is determined by PCLKB and the external_irq_pclk_div_t setting.

MIN_PULSE_WIDTH = EXTERNAL_IRQ_PCLKB_DIV / PCLKB_FREQUENCY * 3

DMAC/DTC

When using an External IRQ pin to trigger a DMAC/DTC transfer, the External IRQ pin must be opened before the transfer instance is opened.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the ICU in an application.

```
#define ICU_IRQN_PIN BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_06
#define ICU_IRQN 6
/* Called from icu_irq_isr */
void external_irq_callback (external_irq_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
    (void) p_args;
    g_external_irq_complete = 1;
}
void simple_example ()
{
 /* Example Configuration */
 external_irq_cfg_t icu_cfg =
    {
       .channel       = ICU_IRQN,
       .trigger       = EXTERNAL_IRQ_TRIG_RISING,
       .filter_enable = false,
       .pclk_div      = EXTERNAL_IRQ_PCLK_DIV_BY_1,
       .p_callback    = external_irq_callback,
       .p_context    = 0,
       .ipl          = 0,
       .irq          = (IRQn_Type) 0,
    };
 /* Configure the external interrupt. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_ICU_ExternalIrqOpen(&g_icu_ctrl, &icu_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable the external interrupt. */
 /* Enable not required when used with ELC or DMAC. */
    err = R_ICU_ExternalIrqEnable(&g_icu_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 while (0 == g_external_irq_complete)
    {
 /* Wait for interrupt. */
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	icu_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ icu_instance_ctrl_t

struct icu_instance_ctrl_t

ICU private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_ICU_ExternalIrqOpen is called.

Data Fields

uint32_t	open
	Used to determine if channel control block is in use.
IRQn_Type	irq
	NVIC interrupt number.
uint8_t	channel
	Channel.
void(*	p_callback)(external_irq_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context

Field Documentation

◆ p_callback

void(* icu_instance_ctrl_t::p_callback) (external_irq_callback_args_t *p_args)

Callback provided when a external IRQ ISR occurs. Set to NULL for no CPU interrupt.

◆ p_context

void const* icu_instance_ctrl_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in external_irq_callback_args_t.

Function Documentation

◆ R_ICU_ExternalIrqOpen()

fsp_err_t R_ICU_ExternalIrqOpen (external_irq_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, external_irq_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configure an IRQ input pin for use with the external interrupt interface. Implements external_irq_api_t::open.

The Open function is responsible for preparing an external IRQ pin for operation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Open successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One of the following is invalid: • p_ctrl or p_cfg is NULL
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The channel specified has already been opened. No configurations were changed. Call the associated Close function to reconfigure the channel.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The channel requested in p_cfg is not available on the device selected in r_bsp_cfg.h.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	p_cfg->p_callback is not NULL, but ISR is not enabled. ISR must be enabled to use callback function.

Note

This function is reentrant for different channels. It is not reentrant for the same channel.

◆ R_ICU_ExternalIrqEnable()

fsp_err_t R_ICU_ExternalIrqEnable (external_irq_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Enable external interrupt for specified channel at NVIC. Implements external_irq_api_t::enable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Interrupt Enabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The p_ctrl parameter was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	Requested IRQ is not defined in this system

◆ R_ICU_ExternalIrqDisable()

fsp_err_t R_ICU_ExternalIrqDisable (external_irq_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Disable external interrupt for specified channel at NVIC. Implements external_irq_api_t::disable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Interrupt disabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The p_ctrl parameter was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	Requested IRQ is not defined in this system

◆ R_ICU_ExternalIrqVersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_ICU_ExternalIrqVersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Set driver version based on compile time macros. Implements external_irq_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

◆ R_ICU_ExternalIrqClose()

fsp_err_t R_ICU_ExternalIrqClose (external_irq_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Close the external interrupt channel. Implements external_irq_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.

5.2.25 I2C Master on IIC (r_iic_master)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_IIC_MASTER_Open (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, i2c_master_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_MASTER_Read (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_MASTER_Write (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_MASTER_Abort (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_MASTER_SlaveAddressSet (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const slave, i2c_master_addr_mode_t const addr_mode)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_MASTER_Close (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_MASTER_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the IIC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2C Master Interface.

Overview

The I2C master on IIC HAL module supports transactions with an I2C Slave device. Callbacks must be provided which are invoked when a transmit or receive operation has completed. The callback argument will contain information about the transaction status, bytes transferred and a pointer to the user defined context.

Features

- Supports multiple transmission rates
  - Standard Mode Support with up to 100-kHz transaction rate.
  - Fast Mode Support with up to 400-kHz transaction rate.
  - Fast Mode Plus Support with up to 1-MHz transaction rate.
- I2C Master Read from a slave device.
- I2C Master Write to a slave device.
- Abort any in-progress transactions.
- Set the address of the slave device.
- Non-blocking behavior is achieved by the use of callbacks.
- Additional build-time features
  - Optional (build time) DTC support for read and write respectively.
  - Optional (build time) support for 10-bit slave addressing.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_iic_master

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_iic_master_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
DTC on Transmission and Reception	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If enabled, DTC instances will be included in the build for both transmission and reception.
10-bit slave addressing	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If enabled, the driver will support 10-bit slave addressing mode along with the default 7-bit slave addressing mode.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > I2C Master Driver on r_iic_master

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > I2C Master Driver on r_iic_master:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_i2c_master0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Specify the IIC channel.
Rate	• Standard • Fast-mode • Fast-mode plus	Standard	Select the transfer rate.
Rise Time (ns)	Value must be a non-negative integer	120	Set the rise time (tr) in nanoseconds.
Fall Time (ns)	Value must be a non-negative integer	120	Set the fall time (tf) in nanoseconds.
Duty Cycle (%)	Value must be an integer between 0 and 100	50	Set the SCL duty cycle.
Slave Address	Value must be non-negative	0x00	Specify the slave address.
Address Mode	• 7-Bit • 10-Bit	7-Bit	Select the slave address mode. Ensure 10-bit slave addressing is enabled in the configuration to use 10-Bit setting here.

Timeout Mode	• Short Mode • Long Mode	Short Mode	Select the timeout mode to detect bus hang.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	i2c_master_callback	A user callback function must be provided. This will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) upon IIC transaction completion reporting the transaction status.
Interrupt Priority Level	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority level. This is set for TXI, RXI, TEI and ERI interrupts.

Clock Configuration

The IIC peripheral module uses the PCLKB as its clock source. The actual I2C transfer rate will be calculated and set by the tooling depending on the selected transfer rate. If the PCLKB is configured in such a manner that the selected internal rate cannot be achieved, an error will be returned.

Pin Configuration

The IIC peripheral module uses pins on the MCU to communicate to external devices. I/O pins must be selected and configured as required by the external device. An I2C channel would consist of two pins - SDA and SCL for data/address and clock respectively.

Usage Notes

Interrupt Configuration

- The IIC error (EEI), receive buffer full (RXI), transmit buffer empty (TXI) and transmit end (TEI) interrupts for the selected channel used must be enabled in the properties of the selected device.
- Set equal priority levels for all the interrupts mentioned above. Setting the interrupts to different priority levels could result in improper operation.

IIC Master Rate Calculation

- The configuration tool calculates the internal baud-rate setting based on the configured transfer rate. The closest possible baud-rate that can be achieved (less than or equal to the requested rate) at the current PCLKB settings is calculated and used.
- If a valid clock rate could not be calculated, an error is returned by the tool.

Enabling DTC with the IIC

- DTC transfer support is configurable and is disabled from the build by default. IIC driver provides two DTC instances for transmission and reception respectively. The DTC instances can be enabled individually during configuration.
- For further details on DTC please refer Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc)

Multiple Devices on the Bus

- A single IIC instance can be used to communicate with multiple slave devices on the same channel by using the SlaveAddressSet API.

Multi-Master Support

- If multiple masters are connected on the same bus, the I2C Master is capable of detecting bus busy state before initiating the communication.

Restart

- IIC master can hold the the bus after an I2C transaction by issuing Restart. This will mimic a stop followed by start condition.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the r_iic_master in an application. This example shows how this driver can be used for basic read and write operations.

```
iic_master_instance_ctrl_t g_i2c_device_ctrl_1;
i2c_master_cfg_t g_i2c_device_cfg_1 =
{
    .channel       = I2C_CHANNEL,
    .rate          = I2C_MASTER_RATE_FAST,
    .slave         = I2C_SLAVE_EEPROM,
    .addr_mode    = I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_7BIT,
    .p_callback    = i2c_callback,    // Callback
    .p_context    = &g_i2c_device_ctrl_1,
    .p_transfer_tx = NULL,
    .p_transfer_rx = NULL,
    .p_extend      = &g_iic_master_cfg_extend
};
void i2c_callback (i2c_master_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
    g_i2c_callback_event = p_args->event;
}
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
```

```
    uint32_t i;
    uint32_t timeout_ms = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
 /* Initialize the IIC module */
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Open(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_1, &g_i2c_device_cfg_1);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write some data to the transmit buffer */
 for (i = 0; i < I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES; i++)
    {
       g_i2c_tx_buffer[i] = (uint8_t) i;
    }
 /* Send data to I2C slave */
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Write(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_1, &g_i2c_tx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers*/
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
       timeout_ms--;;
    }
 if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Read data back from the I2C slave */
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    timeout_ms          = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Read(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_1, &g_i2c_rx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers*/
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
```

```
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
       timeout_ms--;;
    }
 if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Verify the read data */
 if (0U != memcmp(g_i2c_tx_buffer, g_i2c_rx_buffer, I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES))
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
}
```

Multiple Slave devices on the same channel (bus)

This example demonstrates how a single IIC driver can be used to communicate with different slave devices which are on the same channel.

Note

The callback function from the first example applies to this example as well.

```
iic_master_instance_ctrl_t g_i2c_device_ctrl_2;
i2c_master_cfg_t g_i2c_device_cfg_2 =
{
    .channel        = I2C_CHANNEL,
    .rate           = I2C_MASTER_RATE_STANDARD,
    .slave          = I2C_SLAVE_TEMP_SENSOR,
    .addr_mode     = I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_7BIT,
    .p_callback     = i2c_callback,    // Callback
    .p_context     = &g_i2c_device_ctrl_2,
    .p_transfer_tx = NULL,
    .p_transfer_rx = NULL,
    .p_extend       = &g_iic_master_cfg_extend
};
void single_channel_multi_slave (void)
```

```
{
 fsp_err_t err;
    uint32_t timeout_ms = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Open(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2, &g_i2c_device_cfg_2);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Clear the recieve buffer */
    memset(g_i2c_rx_buffer, '0', I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES);
 /* Read data from I2C slave */
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Read(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2, &g_i2c_rx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
       timeout_ms--;;
    }
 if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Send data to I2C slave on the same channel */
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_SlaveAddressSet(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2,
I2C_SLAVE_DISPLAY_ADAPTER, I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_7BIT);
    handle_error(err);
    g_i2c_tx_buffer[0]   = 0xAA;       // NOLINT
    g_i2c_tx_buffer[1]   = 0xBB;       // NOLINT
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    timeout_ms          = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Write(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2, &g_i2c_tx_buffer[0], 2U, false);
    handle_error(err);
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
```

```
R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
      timeout_ms--;;
   }
if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
   {
      __BKPT(0);
   }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	iic_master_clock_settings_t
struct	iic_master_instance_ctrl_t
struct	iic_master_extended_cfg_t

Enumerations

enum	iic_master_timeout_mode_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ iic_master_clock_settings_t

struct iic_master_clock_settings_t

I2C clock settings

Data Fields		
uint8_t	cks_value	Internal Reference Clock Select.
uint8_t	brh_value	High-level period of SCL clock.
uint8_t	brl_value	Low-level period of SCL clock.

◆ iic_master_instance_ctrl_t

struct iic_master_instance_ctrl_t

I2C control structure. DO NOT INITIALIZE.

◆ iic_master_extended_cfg_t

struct iic_master_extended_cfg_t

R_IIC extended configuration

Data Fields		
iic_master_timeout_mode_t	timeout_mode	Timeout Detection Time Select:

		Long Mode = 0 and Short Mode = 1.
iic_master_clock_settings_t	clock_settings	I2C Clock settings.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ iic_master_timeout_mode_t

enum iic_master_timeout_mode_t

I2C Timeout mode parameter definition

Enumerator	
IIC_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MODE_LONG	Timeout Detection Time Select: Long Mode -> TMOS = 0.
IIC_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MODE_SHORT	Timeout Detection Time Select: Short Mode -> TMOS = 1.

Function Documentation

◆ R_IIC_MASTER_Open()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_MASTER_Open (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, i2c_master_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the I2C device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Requested clock rate was set exactly.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter check failure due to one or more reasons below: 1. p_api_ctrl or p_cfg is NULL. 2. extended parameter is NULL. 3. Callback parameter is NULL. 4. Set the rate to fast mode plus on a channel which does not support it. 5. Invalid IRQ number assigned

◆ R_IIC_MASTER_Read()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_MASTER_Read (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *bytes*, bool const *restart*)

Performs a read from the I2C device. The caller will be notified when the operation has completed (successfully) by an I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE in the callback.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl, p_dest or bytes is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	Provided number of bytes more than uint16_t size(65535) while DTC is used for data transfer.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another transfer was in progress.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_IIC_MASTER_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_IIC_MASTER_Write()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_MASTER_Write (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_src*, uint32_t const *bytes*, bool const *restart*)

Performs a write to the I2C device. The caller will be notified when the operation has completed (successfully) by an I2C_MASTER_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE in the callback.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl or p_src is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	Provided number of bytes more than uint16_t size(65535) while DTC is used for data transfer.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another transfer was in progress.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_IIC_MASTER_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_IIC_MASTER_Abort()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_MASTER_Abort (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Safely aborts any in-progress transfer and forces the IIC peripheral into ready state.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel was reset successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_IIC_MASTER_Open to initialize the control block.

Note

A callback will not be invoked in case an in-progress transfer gets aborted by calling this API.

◆ R_IIC_MASTER_SlaveAddressSet()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_MASTER_SlaveAddressSet (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *slave*, i2c_master_addr_mode_t const *addr_mode*)

Sets address and addressing mode of the slave device. This function is used to set the device address and addressing mode of the slave without reconfiguring the entire bus.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Address of the slave is set correctly.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to control structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another transfer was in-progress.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_IIC_MASTER_Open to initialize the control block.

◆ R_IIC_MASTER_Close()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_MASTER_Close (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Closes the I2C device. May power down IIC peripheral. This function will safely terminate any in-progress I2C transfers.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device closed without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Handle is not initialized. Call R_IIC_MASTER_Open to initialize the control block.

Note

A callback will not be invoked in case an in-progress transfer gets aborted by calling this API.

◆ R_IIC_MASTER_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_MASTER_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Gets version information and stores it in the provided version structure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful version get.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.26 I2C Slave on IIC (r_iic_slave)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_IIC_SLAVE_Open (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, i2c_slave_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_SLAVE_Read (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_SLAVE_Write (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_IIC_SLAVE_Close (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

fsp_err_t R_IIC_SLAVE_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the IIC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2C Slave Interface.

Overview

Features

- Supports multiple transmission rates
  - Standard Mode Support with up to 100-kHz transaction rate.
  - Fast Mode Support with up to 400-kHz transaction rate.
  - Fast Mode Plus Support with up to 1-MHz transaction rate.
- Reads data written by master device.
- Write data which is read by master device.
- Can accept 0x00 as slave address.
- Can be assigned a 10-bit address.
- Clock stretching is supported and can be implemented via callbacks.
- Provides Transmission/Reception transaction size in the callback.
- I2C Slave can notify the following events via callbacks: Transmission/Reception Request, Transmission/Reception Request for more data, Transmission/Reception Completion, Error Condition.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_iic_slave

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_iic_slave_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > I2C Slave Driver on r_iic_slave

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > I2C Slave Driver on r_iic_slave:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_i2c_slave0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Specify the IIC channel.
Rate	• Standard	Standard	Select the transfer

	• Fast-mode • Fast-mode plus		rate.
Internal Reference Clock	• PCLKB / 1 • PCLKB / 2 • PCLKB / 4 • PCLKB / 8 • PCLKB / 16 • PCLKB / 32 • PCLKB / 64 • PCLKB / 128	PCLKB / 1	Select the internal reference clock for IIC slave. The internal reference clock is used only to determine the clock frequency of the noise filter samples.
Digital Filter	• Disabled • 1 Reference Clock Cycle • 2 Reference Clock Cycles • 3 Reference Clock Cycles • 4 Reference Clock Cycles	3 Reference Clock Cycles	Select the number of digital filter stages for IIC Slave.
Slave Address	Value must be non-negative	0x00	Specify the slave address.
General Call	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Allows the slave to respond to general call address: 0x00.
Address Mode	• 7-Bit • 10-Bit	7-Bit	Select the slave address mode.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	i2c_slave_callback	A user callback function must be provided. This will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) to report I2C Slave transaction events and status.
Interrupt Priority Level	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority level. This is set for TXI, RXI, TEI and ERI interrupts.

Clock Configuration

The IIC peripheral module uses the PCLKB as its clock source. The actual I2C transfer rate will be calculated and set by the tooling depending on the selected transfer rate. If the PCLKB is configured in such a manner that the selected transfer rate cannot be achieved, an error will be returned.

Pin Configuration

The IIC peripheral module uses pins on the MCU to communicate to external devices. I/O pins must be selected and configured as required by the external device. An I2C channel would consist of two pins - SDA and SCL for data/address and clock respectively.

Usage Notes

Interrupt Configuration

- The IIC error (EEI), receive buffer full (RXI), transmit buffer empty (TXI) and transmit end (TEI) interrupts for the selected channel must be enabled in the properties of the selected device.

Callback

- A callback function must be provided which will be invoked for the cases below:
  - An I2C Master initiates a transmission or reception: I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_REQUEST; I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_REQUEST
  - A Transmission or reception has been completed: I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE; I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE
  - An I2C Master is requesting to read or write more data: I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_MORE_REQUEST; I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_MORE_REQUEST
  - Error conditions: I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED
  - An I2C master initiates a general call by passing 0x00 as slave address: I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_GENERAL_CALL
- The callback arguments will contain information about the transaction status/events, bytes transferred and a pointer to the user defined context.
- Clock stretching is enabled by the use of callbacks. This means that the IIC slave can hold the clock line SCL LOW to force the I2C master into a wait state.
- The table below shows I2C slave event handling expected in user code:

IIC Slave Callback Event	IIC Slave API expected to be called
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED	Handle event based on application
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE	Handle event based on application
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE	Handle event based on application
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_REQUEST	R_IIC_SLAVE_Read API. If the slave is a Write Only device call this API with 0 bytes to send a NACK to the master.
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_REQUEST	R_IIC_SLAVE_Write API
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_MORE_REQUEST	R_IIC_SLAVE_Read API. If the slave cannot read any more data call this API with 0 bytes to send a NACK to the master.
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_MORE_REQUEST	R_IIC_SLAVE_Write API
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_GENERAL_CALL	R_IIC_SLAVE_Read

- If parameter checking is enabled and R_IIC_SLAVE_Read API is not called for I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_REQUEST and/or I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_MORE_REQUEST, the slave will send a NACK to the master and would eventually timeout.
- R_IIC_SLAVE_Write API is not called for I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_REQUEST and/or I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_MORE_REQUEST:
  - Slave timeout is less than Master timeout: The slave will timeout and release the bus causing the master to read 0xFF for every remaining byte.

  - Slave timeout is more than Master timeout: The master will timeout first followed by the slave.

IIC Slave Rate Calculation

- The configuration tool calculates the internal baud-rate setting based on the configured transfer rate. The closest possible baud-rate that can be achieved (less than or equal to the requested rate) at the current PCLKB settings is calculated and used.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the R_IIC_SLAVE in an application. This example shows how this driver can be used for basic read and write operations.

```
iic_master_instance_ctrl_t g_i2c_master_ctrl;
i2c_master_cfg_t g_i2c_master_cfg =
{
    .channel       = I2C_MASTER_CHANNEL_2,
    .rate          = I2C_MASTER_RATE_STANDARD,
    .slave         = I2C_7BIT_ADDR_IIC_SLAVE,
    .addr_mode    = I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_7BIT,
    .p_callback    = i2c_master_callback, // Callback
    .p_context    = &g_i2c_master_ctrl,
    .p_transfer_tx = NULL,
    .p_transfer_rx = NULL,
    .p_extend      = &g_iic_master_cfg_extend_standard_mode
};
iic_slave_instance_ctrl_t g_i2c_slave_ctrl;
i2c_slave_cfg_t g_i2c_slave_cfg =
{
    .channel    = I2C_SLAVE_CHANNEL_0,
    .rate       = I2C_SLAVE_RATE_STANDARD,
    .slave      = I2C_7BIT_ADDR_IIC_SLAVE,
    .addr_mode = I2C_SLAVE_ADDR_MODE_7BIT,
    .p_callback = i2c_slave_callback, // Callback
    .p_context = &g_i2c_slave_ctrl,
    .p_extend   = &g_iic_slave_cfg_extend_standard_mode
};
```

```
void i2c_master_callback (i2c_master_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
    g_i2c_master_callback_event = p_args->event;
}
void i2c_slave_callback (i2c_slave_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
    g_i2c_slave_callback_event = p_args->event;
 if ((p_args->event == I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE) || (p_args->event ==
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE))
    {
 /* Transaction Successful */
    }
 else if ((p_args->event == I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_REQUEST) || (p_args->event ==
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_MORE_REQUEST))
    {
 /* Read from Master */
       err = R_IIC_SLAVE_Read(&g_i2c_slave_ctrl, g_i2c_slave_buffer,
g_slave_transfer_length);
       handle_error(err);
    }
 else if ((p_args->event == I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_REQUEST) || (p_args->event ==
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_MORE_REQUEST))
    {
 /* Write to master */
       err = R_IIC_SLAVE_Write(&g_i2c_slave_ctrl, g_i2c_slave_buffer,
g_slave_transfer_length);
       handle_error(err);
    }
 else
    {
 /* Error Event - reported through g_i2c_slave_callback_event */
    }
}
void basic_example (void)
```

```
{
    uint32_t i;
    uint32_t timeout_ms = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    g_slave_transfer_length = I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES;
 /* Pin connections:
  * Channel 0 SDA <--> Channel 2 SDA
  * Channel 0 SCL <--> Channel 2 SCL
  */
 /* Initialize the IIC Slave module */
    err = R_IIC_SLAVE_Open(&g_i2c_slave_ctrl, &g_i2c_slave_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize the IIC Master module */
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Open(&g_i2c_master_ctrl, &g_i2c_master_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write some data to the transmit buffer */
 for (i = 0; i < I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES; i++)
    {
       g_i2c_master_tx_buffer[i] = (uint8_t) i;
    }
 /* Send data to I2C slave */
    g_i2c_master_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    g_i2c_slave_callback_event = I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED;
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Write(&g_i2c_master_ctrl, &g_i2c_master_tx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers
  * The Slave Callback will call the R_IIC_SLAVE_Read API to service the Master Write
Request.
  */
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_master_callback_event ||
 I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_slave_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
```

```
        timeout_ms--;
    }
 if ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_master_callback_event) ||
        (I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_slave_callback_event))
    {
        __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Read data back from the I2C slave */
    g_i2c_master_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    g_i2c_slave_callback_event = I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED;
    timeout_ms = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    err = R_IIC_MASTER_Read(&g_i2c_master_ctrl, &g_i2c_master_rx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers
  * The Slave Callback will call the R_IIC_SLAVE_Write API to service the Master Read
Request.
  */
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_master_callback_event ||
 I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_slave_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
        timeout_ms--;
    }
 if ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_master_callback_event) ||
        (I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_slave_callback_event))
    {
        __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Verify the read data */
 if (0U != memcmp(g_i2c_master_tx_buffer, g_i2c_master_rx_buffer,
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES))
    {
        __BKPT(0);
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	iic_slave_clock_settings_t
struct	iic_slave_extended_cfg_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ iic_slave_clock_settings_t

struct iic_slave_clock_settings_t

I2C clock settings

Data Fields		
uint8_t	cks_value	Internal Reference Clock Select.
uint8_t	brl_value	Low-level period of SCL clock.
uint8_t	digital_filter_stages	Number of digital filter stages based on brl_value.

◆ iic_slave_extended_cfg_t

struct iic_slave_extended_cfg_t

R_IIC_SLAVE extended configuration

Data Fields		
iic_slave_clock_settings_t	clock_settings	I2C Clock settings.

Function Documentation

◆ R_IIC_SLAVE_Open()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_SLAVE_Open (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, i2c_slave_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the I2C slave device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	I2C slave device opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter check failure due to one or more reasons below: 1. p_api_ctrl or p_cfg is NULL. 2. extended parameter is NULL. 3. Callback parameter is NULL. 4. Set the rate to fast mode plus on a channel which does not support it. 5. Invalid IRQ number assigned

◆ R_IIC_SLAVE_Read()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_SLAVE_Read (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Performs a read from the I2C Master device.

This function will fail if there is already an in-progress I2C transfer on the associated channel. Otherwise, the I2C slave read operation will begin. The caller will be notified when the operation has finished by an I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE in the callback. In case the master continues to write more data, an I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_MORE_REQUEST will be issued via callback. In case of errors, an I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED will be issued via callback.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed without issue
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl, bytes or p_dest is NULL.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another transfer was in progress.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not open.

◆ R_IIC_SLAVE_Write()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_SLAVE_Write (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_src*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Performs a write to the I2C Master device.

This function will fail if there is already an in-progress I2C transfer on the associated channel. Otherwise, the I2C slave write operation will begin. The caller will be notified when the operation has finished by an I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE in the callback. In case the master continues to read more data, an I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_MORE_REQUEST will be issued via callback. In case of errors, an I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED will be issued via callback.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl or p_src is NULL.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another transfer was in progress.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not open.

◆ R_IIC_SLAVE_Close()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_SLAVE_Close (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Closes the I2C device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device not opened.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.

◆ R_IIC_SLAVE_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_IIC_SLAVE_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Gets version information and stores it in the provided version structure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful version get.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.27 I/O Ports (r_ioport)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_Open (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const ioport_cfg_t *p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_Close (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PinsCfg (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const ioport_cfg_t *p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PinCfg (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, uint32_t cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PinEventInputRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t *p_pin_event)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PinEventOutputWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t pin_value)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PinRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t *p_pin_value)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PinWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t level)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PortDirectionSet (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t direction_values, ioport_size_t mask)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PortEventInputRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t *event_data)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PortEventOutputWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t event_data, ioport_size_t mask_value)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PortRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t *p_port_value)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_PortWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t value, ioport_size_t mask)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_EthernetModeCfg (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ioport_ethernet_channel_t channel, ioport_ethernet_mode_t mode)
fsp_err_t	R_IOPORT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_data)

Detailed Description

Driver for the I/O Ports peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I/O Port Interface.

Overview

The I/O port pins operate as general I/O port pins, I/O pins for peripheral modules, interrupt input pins, analog I/O, port group function for the ELC, or bus control pins.

Features

The IOPORT HAL module can configure the following pin settings:

- Pin direction
- Default output state
- Pull-up
- NMOS/PMOS
- Drive strength
- Event edge trigger (falling, rising or both)
- Whether the pin is to be used as an IRQ pin
- Whether the pin is to be used as an analog pin
- Peripheral connection

The module also provides the following functionality:

- Read/write GPIO pins/ports
- Sets event output data
- Reads event input data

Configuration

The I/O PORT HAL module must be configured by the user for the desired operation. The operating state of an I/O pin can be set via the RA Configuraton tool. When the project is built a pin configuration file is created. The BSP will automatically configure the MCU IO ports accordingly at startup using the same API functions mentioned in this document.

Build Time Configurations for r_ioport

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_ioport_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > System > I/O Port Driver on r_ioport

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > System > I/O Port Driver on r_ioport:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_ioport	Module name.
Port 1 ELC Trigger Source	MCU Specific Options		ELC source that will trigger PORT1
Port 2 ELC Trigger Source	MCU Specific Options		ELC source that will trigger PORT2
Port 3 ELC Trigger Source	MCU Specific Options		ELC source that will trigger PORT3
Port 4 ELC Trigger Source	MCU Specific Options		ELC source that will trigger PORT4

Clock Configuration

The I/O PORT HAL module does not require a specific clock configuration.

Pin Configuration

The IOPORT module is used for configuring pins.

Usage Notes

Port Group Function for ELC

Depending on pin configuration, the IOPORT module can perform automatic reads and writes on ports 1-4 on receipt of an ELC event.

When an event is received by a port, the state of the input pins on the port is saved in a hardware register. Simultaneously, the state of output pins on the port is set or cleared based on settings configured by the user. The functions R_IOPORT_PinEventInputRead and R_IOPORT_PortEventInputRead allow reading the last event input state of a pin or port, and event-triggered pin output can be configured through R_IOPORT_PinEventOutputWrite and R_IOPORT_PortEventOutputWrite.

In addition, each pin on ports 1-4 can be configured to trigger an ELC event on rising, falling or both edges. This event can be used to activate other modules when the pin changes state.

Note

The number of ELC-aware ports vary across MCUs. Refer to the Hardware User's Manual for your device for more details.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the IOPORT in an application.

```
void basic_example ()
```

```
{
 bsp_io_level_t readLevel;
 fsp_err_t      err;
 /* Initialize the IOPORT module and configure the pins
  * Note: The default pin configuration name in the RA Configuraton tool is
g_bsp_pin_cfg */
    err = R_IOPORT_Open(&g_ioport_ctrl, &g_bsp_pin_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Call R_IOPORT_PinsCfg if the configuration was not part of initial configurations
made in open */
    err = R_IOPORT_PinsCfg(&g_ioport_ctrl, &g_runtime_pin_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set Pin 00 of Port 06 to High */
    err = R_IOPORT_PinWrite(&g_ioport_ctrl, BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_00, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH
);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read Pin 00 of Port 06*/
    err = R_IOPORT_PinRead(&g_ioport_ctrl, BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_00, &readLevel);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Blinky Example

This example uses IOPORT to configure and toggle a pin to blink an LED.

```
void blinky_example ()
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Initialize the IOPORT module and configure the pins */
    err = R_IOPORT_Open(&g_ioport_ctrl, &g_bsp_pin_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Configure Pin as output
  * Call the R_IOPORT_PinCfg if the configuration was not part of initial
configurations made in open */
    err = R_IOPORT_PinCfg(&g_ioport_ctrl, BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_00,
BSP_IO_DIRECTION_OUTPUT);
    handle_error(err);
 bsp_io_level_t level = BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW;
 while (1)
    {
 /* Determine the next state of the LEDs */
 if (BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW == level)
      {
            level = BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH;
       }
 else
      {
            level = BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW;
       }
 /* Update LED on RA6M3-PK */
       err = R_IOPORT_PinWrite(&g_ioport_ctrl, BSP_IO_PORT_06_PIN_00, level);
      handle_error(err);
 /* Delay */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(100, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS); // NOLINT
    }
}
```

ELC Example

This is an example of using IOPORT with ELC events. The ELC event system allows the captured data to be stored when it occurs and then read back at a later time.

```
static elc_instance_ctrl_t g_elc_ctrl;
static elc_cfg_t g_elc_cfg;
void ioport_elc_example ()
{
 bsp_io_level_t eventValue;
 fsp_err_t      err;
 /* Initializes the software and sets the links defined in the control structure. */
    err = R_ELC_Open(&g_elc_ctrl, &g_elc_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Create or modify a link between a peripheral function and an event source. */
    err = R_ELC_LinkSet(&g_elc_ctrl, (elc_peripheral_t) ELC_PERIPHERAL_IOPORT2,
ELC_EVENT_ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_0);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Globally enable event linking in the ELC. */
    err = R_ELC_Enable(&g_elc_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize the IOPORT module and configure the pins */
    err = R_IOPORT_Open(&g_ioport_ctrl, &g_bsp_pin_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Call the R_IOPORT_PinCfg if the configuration was not part of initial
configurations made in open */
    err = R_IOPORT_PinCfg(&g_ioport_ctrl, BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_00,
BSP_IO_DIRECTION_INPUT);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Generate an event signal through software to the linked peripheral. */
    err = R_ELC_SoftwareEventGenerate(&g_elc_ctrl, ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_0);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read Pin Event Input. The data(BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH/ BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW) from
BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_00 is read into the
  * EIDR bit */
    err = R_IOPORT_PinEventInputRead(&g_ioport_ctrl, BSP_IO_PORT_02_PIN_00,
&eventValue);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	ioport_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	ioport_port_pin_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ioport_instance_ctrl_t

struct ioport_instance_ctrl_t
IOPORT private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_IOPORT_Open() is called.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ioport_port_pin_t

enum ioport_port_pin_t

Superset list of all possible IO port pins.

Enumerator	
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_00	IO port 0 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_01	IO port 0 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_02	IO port 0 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_03	IO port 0 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_04	IO port 0 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_05	IO port 0 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_06	IO port 0 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_07	IO port 0 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_08	IO port 0 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_09	IO port 0 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_10	IO port 0 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_11	IO port 0 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_12	IO port 0 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_13	IO port 0 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_14	IO port 0 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_00_PIN_15	IO port 0 pin 15.

IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_00	IO port 1 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_01	IO port 1 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_02	IO port 1 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_03	IO port 1 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_04	IO port 1 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_05	IO port 1 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_06	IO port 1 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_07	IO port 1 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_08	IO port 1 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_09	IO port 1 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_10	IO port 1 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_11	IO port 1 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_12	IO port 1 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_13	IO port 1 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_14	IO port 1 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_01_PIN_15	IO port 1 pin 15.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_00	IO port 2 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_01	IO port 2 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_02	IO port 2 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_03	IO port 2 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_04	IO port 2 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_05	IO port 2 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_06	IO port 2 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_07	IO port 2 pin 7.

IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_08	IO port 2 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_09	IO port 2 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_10	IO port 2 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_11	IO port 2 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_12	IO port 2 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_13	IO port 2 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_14	IO port 2 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_02_PIN_15	IO port 2 pin 15.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_00	IO port 3 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_01	IO port 3 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_02	IO port 3 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_03	IO port 3 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_04	IO port 3 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_05	IO port 3 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_06	IO port 3 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_07	IO port 3 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_08	IO port 3 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_09	IO port 3 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_10	IO port 3 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_11	IO port 3 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_12	IO port 3 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_13	IO port 3 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_14	IO port 3 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_03_PIN_15	IO port 3 pin 15.

IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_00	IO port 4 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_01	IO port 4 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_02	IO port 4 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_03	IO port 4 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_04	IO port 4 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_05	IO port 4 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_06	IO port 4 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_07	IO port 4 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_08	IO port 4 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_09	IO port 4 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_10	IO port 4 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_11	IO port 4 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_12	IO port 4 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_13	IO port 4 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_14	IO port 4 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_04_PIN_15	IO port 4 pin 15.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_00	IO port 5 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_01	IO port 5 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_02	IO port 5 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_03	IO port 5 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_04	IO port 5 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_05	IO port 5 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_06	IO port 5 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_07	IO port 5 pin 7.

IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_08	IO port 5 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_09	IO port 5 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_10	IO port 5 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_11	IO port 5 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_12	IO port 5 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_13	IO port 5 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_14	IO port 5 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_05_PIN_15	IO port 5 pin 15.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_00	IO port 6 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_01	IO port 6 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_02	IO port 6 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_03	IO port 6 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_04	IO port 6 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_05	IO port 6 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_06	IO port 6 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_07	IO port 6 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_08	IO port 6 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_09	IO port 6 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_10	IO port 6 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_11	IO port 6 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_12	IO port 6 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_13	IO port 6 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_14	IO port 6 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_06_PIN_15	IO port 6 pin 15.

IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_00	IO port 7 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_01	IO port 7 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_02	IO port 7 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_03	IO port 7 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_04	IO port 7 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_05	IO port 7 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_06	IO port 7 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_07	IO port 7 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_08	IO port 7 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_09	IO port 7 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_10	IO port 7 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_11	IO port 7 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_12	IO port 7 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_13	IO port 7 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_14	IO port 7 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_07_PIN_15	IO port 7 pin 15.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_00	IO port 8 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_01	IO port 8 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_02	IO port 8 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_03	IO port 8 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_04	IO port 8 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_05	IO port 8 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_06	IO port 8 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_07	IO port 8 pin 7.

IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_08	IO port 8 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_09	IO port 8 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_10	IO port 8 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_11	IO port 8 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_12	IO port 8 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_13	IO port 8 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_14	IO port 8 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_08_PIN_15	IO port 8 pin 15.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_00	IO port 9 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_01	IO port 9 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_02	IO port 9 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_03	IO port 9 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_04	IO port 9 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_05	IO port 9 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_06	IO port 9 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_07	IO port 9 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_08	IO port 9 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_09	IO port 9 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_10	IO port 9 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_11	IO port 9 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_12	IO port 9 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_13	IO port 9 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_14	IO port 9 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_09_PIN_15	IO port 9 pin 15.

IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_00	IO port 10 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_01	IO port 10 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_02	IO port 10 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_03	IO port 10 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_04	IO port 10 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_05	IO port 10 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_06	IO port 10 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_07	IO port 10 pin 7.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_08	IO port 10 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_09	IO port 10 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_10	IO port 10 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_11	IO port 10 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_12	IO port 10 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_13	IO port 10 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_14	IO port 10 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_10_PIN_15	IO port 10 pin 15.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_00	IO port 11 pin 0.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_01	IO port 11 pin 1.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_02	IO port 11 pin 2.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_03	IO port 11 pin 3.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_04	IO port 11 pin 4.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_05	IO port 11 pin 5.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_06	IO port 11 pin 6.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_07	IO port 11 pin 7.

IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_08	IO port 11 pin 8.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_09	IO port 11 pin 9.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_10	IO port 11 pin 10.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_11	IO port 11 pin 11.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_12	IO port 11 pin 12.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_13	IO port 11 pin 13.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_14	IO port 11 pin 14.
IOPORT_PORT_11_PIN_15	IO port 11 pin 15.

Function Documentation

◆ R_IOPORT_Open()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_Open (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, const ioport_cfg_t * *p_cfg*)

Initializes internal driver data, then calls pin configuration function to configure pins.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Pin configuration data written to PFS register(s)
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.

◆ R_IOPORT_Close()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_Close (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Resets IOPORT registers. Implements ioport_api_t::close

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The IOPORT was successfully uninitialized
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

◆ R_IOPORT_PinsCfg()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PinsCfg (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, const ioport_cfg_t * *p_cfg*)

Configures the functions of multiple pins by loading configuration data into pin PFS registers. Implements ioport_api_t::pinsCfg.

This function initializes the supplied list of PmnPFS registers with the supplied values. This data can be generated by the e2 studio pin configurator or manually by the developer. Different pin configurations can be loaded for different situations such as low power modes and testing.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Pin configuration data written to PFS register(s)
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer

◆ R_IOPORT_PinCfg()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PinCfg (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_pin_t *pin*, uint32_t *cfg*)

Configures the settings of a pin. Implements ioport_api_t::pinCfg.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Pin configured
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer

Note

This function is re-entrant for different pins. This function will change the configuration of the pin with the new configuration. For example it is not possible with this function to change the drive strength of a pin while leaving all the other pin settings unchanged. To achieve this the original settings with the required change will need to be written using this function.

◆ R_IOPORT_PinEventInputRead()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PinEventInputRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_pin_t *pin*, bsp_io_level_t * *p_pin_event*)

Reads the value of the event input data of a specific pin. Implements ioport_api_t::pinEventInputRead.

The pin event data is captured in response to a trigger from the ELC. This function enables this data to be read. Using the event system allows the captured data to be stored when it occurs and then read back at a later time.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Pin read
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Port is not valid ELC PORT.

Note

This function is re-entrant.

◆ R_IOPORT_PinEventOutputWrite()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PinEventOutputWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_pin_t *pin*, bsp_io_level_t *pin_value*)

This function writes the event output data value to a pin. Implements ioport_api_t::pinEventOutputWrite.

Using the event system enables a pin state to be stored by this function in advance of being output on the pin. The output to the pin will occur when the ELC event occurs.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Pin event data written
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Port or Pin or value not valid
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer

Note

This function is re-entrant for different ports.

◆ R_IOPORT_PinRead()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PinRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_pin_t *pin*, bsp_io_level_t * *p_pin_value*)

Reads the level on a pin. Implements ioport_api_t::pinRead.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Pin read
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

Note

This function is re-entrant for different pins.

◆ R_IOPORT_PinWrite()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PinWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_pin_t *pin*, bsp_io_level_t *level*)

Sets a pin's output either high or low. Implements ioport_api_t::pinWrite.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Pin written to
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	The pin and/or level not valid
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opene
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointerd

Note

This function is re-entrant for different pins. This function makes use of the PCNTR3 register to atomically modify the level on the specified pin on a port.

◆ R_IOPORT_PortDirectionSet()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PortDirectionSet (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_t *port*, ioport_size_t *direction_values*, ioport_size_t *mask*)

Sets the direction of individual pins on a port. Implements ioport_api_t::portDirectionSet().

Multiple pins on a port can be set to inputs or outputs at once. Each bit in the mask parameter corresponds to a pin on the port. For example, bit 7 corresponds to pin 7, bit 6 to pin 6, and so on. If a bit is set to 1 then the corresponding pin will be changed to an input or an output as specified by the direction values. If a mask bit is set to 0 then the direction of the pin will not be changed.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Port direction updated
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	The port and/or mask not valid
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer

Note

This function is re-entrant for different ports.

◆ R_IOPORT_PortEventInputRead()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PortEventInputRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_t *port*, ioport_size_t * *p_event_data*)

Reads the value of the event input data. Implements ioport_api_t::portEventInputRead().

The event input data for the port will be read. Each bit in the returned value corresponds to a pin on the port. For example, bit 7 corresponds to pin 7, bit 6 to pin 6, and so on.

The port event data is captured in response to a trigger from the ELC. This function enables this data to be read. Using the event system allows the captured data to be stored when it occurs and then read back at a later time.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Port read
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Port not a valid ELC port
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

Note

This function is re-entrant for different ports.

◆ R_IOPORT_PortEventOutputWrite()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PortEventOutputWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_t *port*, ioport_size_t *event_data*, ioport_size_t *mask_value*)

This function writes the set and reset event output data for a port. Implements ioport_api_t::portEventOutputWrite.

Using the event system enables a port state to be stored by this function in advance of being output on the port. The output to the port will occur when the ELC event occurs.

The input value will be written to the specified port when an ELC event configured for that port occurs. Each bit in the value parameter corresponds to a bit on the port. For example, bit 7 corresponds to pin 7, bit 6 to pin 6, and so on. Each bit in the mask parameter corresponds to a pin on the port.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Port event data written
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Port or Mask not valid
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer

Note

This function is re-entrant for different ports.

◆ R_IOPORT_PortRead()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PortRead (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_t *port*, ioport_size_t * *p_port_value*)

Reads the value on an IO port. Implements ioport_api_t::portRead.

The specified port will be read, and the levels for all the pins will be returned. Each bit in the returned value corresponds to a pin on the port. For example, bit 7 corresponds to pin 7, bit 6 to pin 6, and so on.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Port read
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened

Note

This function is re-entrant for different ports.

◆ R_IOPORT_PortWrite()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_PortWrite (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, bsp_io_port_t *port*, ioport_size_t *value*, ioport_size_t *mask*)

Writes to multiple pins on a port. Implements ioport_api_t::portWrite.

The input value will be written to the specified port. Each bit in the value parameter corresponds to a bit on the port. For example, bit 7 corresponds to pin 7, bit 6 to pin 6, and so on. Each bit in the mask parameter corresponds to a pin on the port.

Only the bits with the corresponding bit in the mask value set will be updated. For example, value = 0xFFFF, mask = 0x0003 results in only bits 0 and 1 being updated.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Port written to
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	The port and/or mask not valid
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointerd

Note

This function is re-entrant for different ports. This function makes use of the PCNTR3 register to atomically modify the levels on the specified pins on a port.

◆ R_IOPORT_EthernetModeCfg()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_EthernetModeCfg (ioport_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, ioport_ethernet_channel_t *channel*, ioport_ethernet_mode_t *mode*)

Configures Ethernet channel PHY mode. Implements ioport_api_t::pinEthernetModeCfg.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Ethernet PHY mode set
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Channel or mode not valid
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Ethernet configuration not supported on this device.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module has not been opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer

Note

This function is not re-entrant.

◆ R_IOPORT_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_IOPORT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_data*)

Returns IOPort HAL driver version. Implements ioport_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information read
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_data is NULL

Note

This function is reentrant.

5.2.28 Independent Watchdog Timer (r_iwdt)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_IWDT_Refresh (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_IWDT_Open (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, wdt_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_IWDT_StatusClear (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, const wdt_status_t status)
fsp_err_t	R_IWDT_StatusGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, wdt_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_IWDT_CounterGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_count)
fsp_err_t	R_IWDT_TimeoutGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, wdt_timeout_values_t *const p_timeout)
fsp_err_t	R_IWDT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Detailed Description

Driver for the IWDT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the WDT Interface.

Overview

The independent watchdog timer is used to recover from unexpected errors in an application. The timer must be refreshed periodically in the permitted count window by the application. If the count is allowed to underflow or refresh occurs outside of the valid refresh period, the IWDT resets the device or generates an NMI.

Features

The IWDT HAL module has the following key features:

- When the IWDT underflows or is refreshed outside of the permitted refresh window, one of the following events can occur:
    - Resetting of the device
    - Generation of an NMI
- The IWDT begins counting at reset.

Selecting a Watchdog

RA MCUs have two watchdog peripherals: the watchdog timer (WDT) and the independent watchdog timer (IWDT). When selecting between them, consider these factors:

	WDT	IWDT
Start Mode	The WDT can be started from the application (register start mode) or configured by hardware to start automatically (auto start mode).	The IWDT can only be configured by hardware to start automatically.
Clock Source	The WDT runs off a peripheral clock.	The IWDT has its own clock source which improves safety.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_iwdt

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_iwdt_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Monitoring > Watchdog Driver on r_iwdt

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Monitoring > Watchdog Driver on r_iwdt:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid	g_wdt0	Module name.

	C symbol		
NMI callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided here. If this callback function is provided, it is called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) when the watchdog triggers.

Note

The IWDT has additional configurable settings in the OFS0 register in the BSP tab properties window. These settings include the following:

- *Start Mode*
- *Timeout Period*
- *Dedicated Clock Frequency Divisor*
- *Window End Position*
- *Window Start Position*
- *Reset Interrupt Request Select*
- *Stop Control*

Review the OFS0 properties window to see additional details.

Clock Configuration

The IWDT clock is based on the IWDTCLK frequency. You can set the IWDTCLK frequency divider using the BSP tab in the e2 studio RA Configuration editor.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

NMI Interrupt

The independent watchdog timer uses the NMI, which is enabled by default. No special configuration is required. When the NMI is triggered, the callback function registered during open is called.

Period Calculation

The IWDT operates from IWDTCLK. With a IWDTCLK of 15000 Hz, the maximum time from the last refresh to device reset or NMI generation will be just below 35 seconds as detailed below.

IWDTCLK = 15000 Hz
Clock division ratio = IWDTCLK / 256
Timeout period = 2048 cycles
WDT clock frequency = 15000 Hz / 256 = 58.59 Hz
Cycle time = 1 / 58.59 Hz = 17.067 ms
Timeout = 17.067 ms x 2048 cycles = 34.95 seconds

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the IWDT:

- When using a J-Link debugger the IWDT counter does not count and therefore will not reset the device or generate an NMI. To enable the watchdog to count and generate a reset or NMI while debugging, add this line of code in the application:

```
/* (Optional) Enable the IWDT to count and generate NMI or reset when the
 * debugger is connected. */
   R_DEBUG->DBGSTOPCR_b.DBGSTOP_IWDT = 0;
```

- If the IWDT is configured to stop the counter in low power mode, then your application must restart the watchdog by calling R_IWDT_Refresh() after the MCU wakes from low power mode.

Examples

IWDT Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the IWDT in an application.

```
void iwdt_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* In auto start mode, the IWDT starts counting immediately when the MCU is powered
on. */
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_IWDT_Open(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, &g_iwdt0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
 /* Application work here. */
 /* Refresh before the counter underflows to prevent reset or NMI based on the
setting. */
       (void) R_IWDT_Refresh(&g_iwdt0_ctrl);
    }
}
```

IWDT Advanced Example

This example demonstrates using a start window and gives an example callback to handle an NMI generated by an underflow or refresh error.

```
#define IWDT_TIMEOUT_COUNTS (2048U)
#define IWDT_MAX_COUNTER (IWDT_TIMEOUT_COUNTS - 1U)
#define IWDT_START_WINDOW_75 ((IWDT_MAX_COUNTER * 3) / 4)
/* Example callback called when a watchdog NMI occurs. */
void iwdt_callback (wdt_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* (Optional) Determine the source of the NMI. */
 wdt_status_t status = WDT_STATUS_NO_ERROR;
    err = R_IWDT_StatusGet(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, &status);
    handle_error(err);
 /* (Optional) Log source of NMI and any other debug information. */
 /* (Optional) Clear the error flags. */
    err = R_IWDT_StatusClear(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, status);
    handle_error(err);
 /* (Optional) Issue a software reset to reset the MCU. */
    __NVIC_SystemReset();
}
void iwdt_advanced_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* (Optional) Enable the IWDT to count and generate NMI or reset when the
  * debugger is connected. */
    R_DEBUG->DBGSTOPCR_b.DBGSTOP_IWDT = 0;
 /* (Optional) Check if the IWDTRF flag is set to know if the system is
  * recovering from a IWDT reset. */
 if (R_SYSTEM->RSTSR1_b.IWDTRF)
    {
 /* Clear the flag. */
       R_SYSTEM->RSTSR1 = 0U;
    }
 /* Open the module. */
    err = R_IWDT_Open(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, &g_iwdt0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize other application code. */
 /* Do not call R_IWDT_Refresh() in auto start mode unless the
  * counter is in the acceptable refresh window. */
    (void) R_IWDT_Refresh(&g_iwdt0_ctrl);
 while (true)
    {
 /* Application work here. */
 /* (Optional) If there is a chance the application takes less time than
  * the start window, verify the IWDT counter is past the start window
  * before refreshing the IWDT. */
       uint32_t iwdt_counter = 0U;
 do
      {
 /* Read the current IWDT counter value. */
            err = R_IWDT_CounterGet(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, &iwdt_counter);
      handle_error(err);
      } while (iwdt_counter >= IWDT_START_WINDOW_75);
 /* Refresh before the counter underflows to prevent reset or NMI. */
       (void) R_IWDT_Refresh(&g_iwdt0_ctrl);
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	iwdt_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ iwdt_instance_ctrl_t

struct iwdt_instance_ctrl_t

IWDT control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when wdt_api_t::open is called.

Data Fields

uint32_t	wdt_open
	Indicates whether the open() API has been successfully called.

void const *	p_context
	Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in wdt_callback_args_t.
R_IWDT_Type *	p_reg
	Pointer to register base address.
void(*	p_callback)(wdt_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback provided when a WDT NMI ISR occurs.

Function Documentation

◆ R_IWDT_Refresh()

fsp_err_t R_IWDT_Refresh (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Refresh the Independent Watchdog Timer. If the refresh fails due to being performed outside of the permitted refresh period the device will either reset or trigger an NMI ISR to run.

Example:

```
 /* Refresh before the counter underflows to prevent reset or NMI based on the
setting. */
       (void) R_IWDT_Refresh(&g_iwdt0_ctrl);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	IWDT successfully refreshed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One or more parameters are NULL pointers.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver has not been opened. Perform R_IWDT_Open() first.

◆ R_IWDT_Open()

fsp_err_t R_IWDT_Open (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, wdt_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Register the IWDT NMI callback.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the module. */
   err = R_IWDT_Open(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, &g_iwdt0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	IWDT successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_ENABLED	An attempt to open the IWDT when the OFS0 register is not configured for auto-start mode.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open. This module can only be opened once.

◆ R_IWDT_StatusClear()

fsp_err_t R_IWDT_StatusClear (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, const wdt_status_t *status*)

Clear the IWDT status and error flags. Implements wdt_api_t::statusClear.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Clear the error flags. */
   err = R_IWDT_StatusClear(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, status);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	IWDT flag(s) successfully cleared.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver has not been opened. Perform R_IWDT_Open() first.

◆ R_IWDT_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_IWDT_StatusGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, wdt_status_t *const *p_status*)

Read the IWDT status flags. When the IWDT is configured to output a reset on underflow or refresh error reading the status and error flags can be read after reset to establish if the IWDT caused the reset. Reading the status and error flags in NMI output mode indicates whether the IWDT generated the NMI interrupt.

Indicates both status and error conditions.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Determine the source of the NMI. */
wdt_status_t status = WDT_STATUS_NO_ERROR;
   err = R_IWDT_StatusGet(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, &status);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	IWDT status successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver has not been opened. Perform R_IWDT_Open() first.

◆ R_IWDT_CounterGet()

fsp_err_t R_IWDT_CounterGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t *const *p_count*)

Read the current count value of the IWDT. Implements wdt_api_t::counterGet.

Example:

```
/* Read the current IWDT counter value. */
        err = R_IWDT_CounterGet(&g_iwdt0_ctrl, &iwdt_counter);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	IWDT current count successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver has not been opened. Perform R_IWDT_Open() first.

◆ R_IWDT_TimeoutGet()

fsp_err_t R_IWDT_TimeoutGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, wdt_timeout_values_t *const *p_timeout*)

Read timeout information for the watchdog timer. Implements wdt_api_t::timeoutGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	IWDT timeout information retrieved successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One or more parameters are NULL pointers.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The driver has not been opened. Perform R_IWDT_Open() first.

◆ R_IWDT_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_IWDT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_data*)

Return IWDT HAL driver version. Implements wdt_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Call successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.

5.2.29 JPEG Codec (r_jpeg)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_Open (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, jpeg_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, void *output_buffer, uint32_t output_buffer_size)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_InputBufferSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *constp_api_ctrl, void *p_data_buffer, uint32_t data_buffer_size)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_StatusGet (jpeg_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, jpeg_status_t *p_status)

fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_Close (jpeg_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_EncodeImageSizeSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, jpeg_encode_image_size_t *p_image_size)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_DecodeLinesDecodedGet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_lines)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_DecodeHorizontalStrideSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, uint32_t horizontal_stride)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_DecodeImageSizeGet (jpeg_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, uint16_t *p_horizontal_size, uint16_t *p_vertical_size)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_DecodeImageSubsampleSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, jpeg_decode_subsample_t horizontal_subsample, jpeg_decode_subsample_t vertical_subsample)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_DecodePixelFormatGet (jpeg_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, jpeg_color_space_t *p_color_space)
fsp_err_t	R_JPEG_ModeSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, jpeg_mode_t mode)

Detailed Description

Driver for the JPEG peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the JPEG Codec Interface.

Overview

The JPEG Codec is a hardware block providing accelerated JPEG image encode and decode functionality independent of the CPU. Images can optionally be partially processed facilitating streaming applications.

Features

The JPEG Codec provides a number of options useful in a variety of applications:

- Basic encoding and decoding
- Streaming input and/or output
- Decoding JPEGs of unknown size
- Shrink (sub-sample) an image during the decoding process
- Rearrange input and output byte order (byte, word and/or longword swap)
- JPEG error detection

The specifications for the codec are as follows:

Feature	Options
Decompression input formats	Baseline JPEG Y'CbCr 4:4:4, 4:2:2, 4:2:0 and 4:1:1
Decompression output formats	ARGB8888, RGB565
Compression input formats	Raw Y'CbCr 4:2:2 only
Compression output formats	Baseline JPEG Y'CbCr 4:2:2 only
Byte reordering	Byte, halfword and/or word swapping on input and output
Interrupt sources	Image size acquired, input/output data pause, decode complete, error
Compatible image sizes	See Minimum Coded Unit (MCU) below

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_jpeg

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_jpeg_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected, code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Decode Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	If selected, code for decoding JPEG images is included in the build.
Encode Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If selected, code for encoding JPEG images is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Graphics > JPEG Codec Driver on r_jpeg

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Graphics > JPEG Codec Driver on r_jpeg:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_jpeg0	Module name.
General > Default mode	• Decode • Encode	Decode	Set the mode to use when calling R_JPEG_Open. This parameter is only used when both Encode and Decode support are enabled.

Decode > Input byte order	MCU Specific Options		Select the byte order of the input data for decoding.
Decode > Output byte order	MCU Specific Options		Select the byte order of the output data for decoding.
Decode > Output color format	• ARGB8888 (32-bit) • RGB565 (16-bit)	RGB565 (16-bit)	Select the output pixel format for decode operations.
Decode > Output alpha (ARGB8888 only)	Value must be an 8-bit integer (0-255)	255	Specify the alpha value to apply to each output pixel when ARGB8888 format is chosen.
Decode > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	If a callback function is provided it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time a related IRQ triggers.
Encode > Horizontal resolution	Value cannot be greater than 65535 and must be a non-negative integer divisible by 16	480	Horizontal resolution of the raw image (in pixels). This value can be configured at runtime via R_JPEG_ImageSizeSet.
Encode > Vertical resolution	Value cannot be greater than 65535 and must be a non-negative integer divisible by 8	272	Vertical resolution of the raw image. This value can be configured at runtime via R_JPEG_ImageSizeSet.
Encode > Horizontal stride	Value cannot be greater than 65535 and must be a non-negative integer	480	Horizontal stride of the raw image buffer (in pixels). This value can be configured at runtime via R_JPEG_ImageSizeSet.
Encode > Input byte order	MCU Specific Options		Select the byte order of the input data for encoding.
Encode > Output byte order	MCU Specific Options		Select the byte order of the output data for encoding.
Encode > Reset interval	Value cannot be greater than 65535 and must be a non-negative integer	512	Set the number of MCUs between RST markers. A value of 0 will disable DRI and RST marker output.

Encode > Quality factor	Value must be between 1 and 100 and must be an integer	50	Set the quality factor for encoding (1-100). Lower values produce smaller images at the cost of image quality.
Encode > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	If a callback function is provided it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time a related IRQ triggers.
Interrupts > Decode Process Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the decompression interrupt priority.
Interrupts > Data Transfer Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the data transfer interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The peripheral clock for this module is PCLKA. No clocks are provided by this module.

Pin Configuration

This module does not have any input or output pin connections.

Usage Notes

Overview

The JPEG Codec contains both decode and encode hardware. While these two functions are largely independent in configuration only one can be used at a time.

To switch from decode to encode mode (or vice versa) use R_JPEG_ModeSet while the JPEG Codec is idle.

Status

The status value (jpeg_status_t) provided by the callback and by R_JPEG_StatusGet is a bitfield that encompasses all potential status indication conditions. One or more statuses can be set simultaneously.

Decoding Process

JPEG decoding can be performed in several ways depending on the application:

- To perform the simplest decode operation where all dimensions are known:
    - Set the input buffer, stride and output buffer then wait for a callback with status JPEG_STATUS_OPERATION_COMPLETE.
- To pause after decoding the JPEG header (in order to acquire image dimensions and secure an output buffer):
    - Call R_JPEG_InputBufferSet before setting the output buffer and wait for a callback with status JPEG_STATUS_IMAGE_SIZE_READY.

- To decode a partial JPEG image then pause until the next chunk is available:
    - Specify a size smaller than the full JPEG data when calling R_JPEG_InputBufferSet.
- To pause decoding once an output buffer is filled:
    - Specify a size smaller than the full decoded image when calling R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet.

The flowchart below illustrates the steps necessary to handle any decode operation. The statuses given in blue are part of jpeg_status_t with the JPEG_DECODE_STATUS prefix omitted.

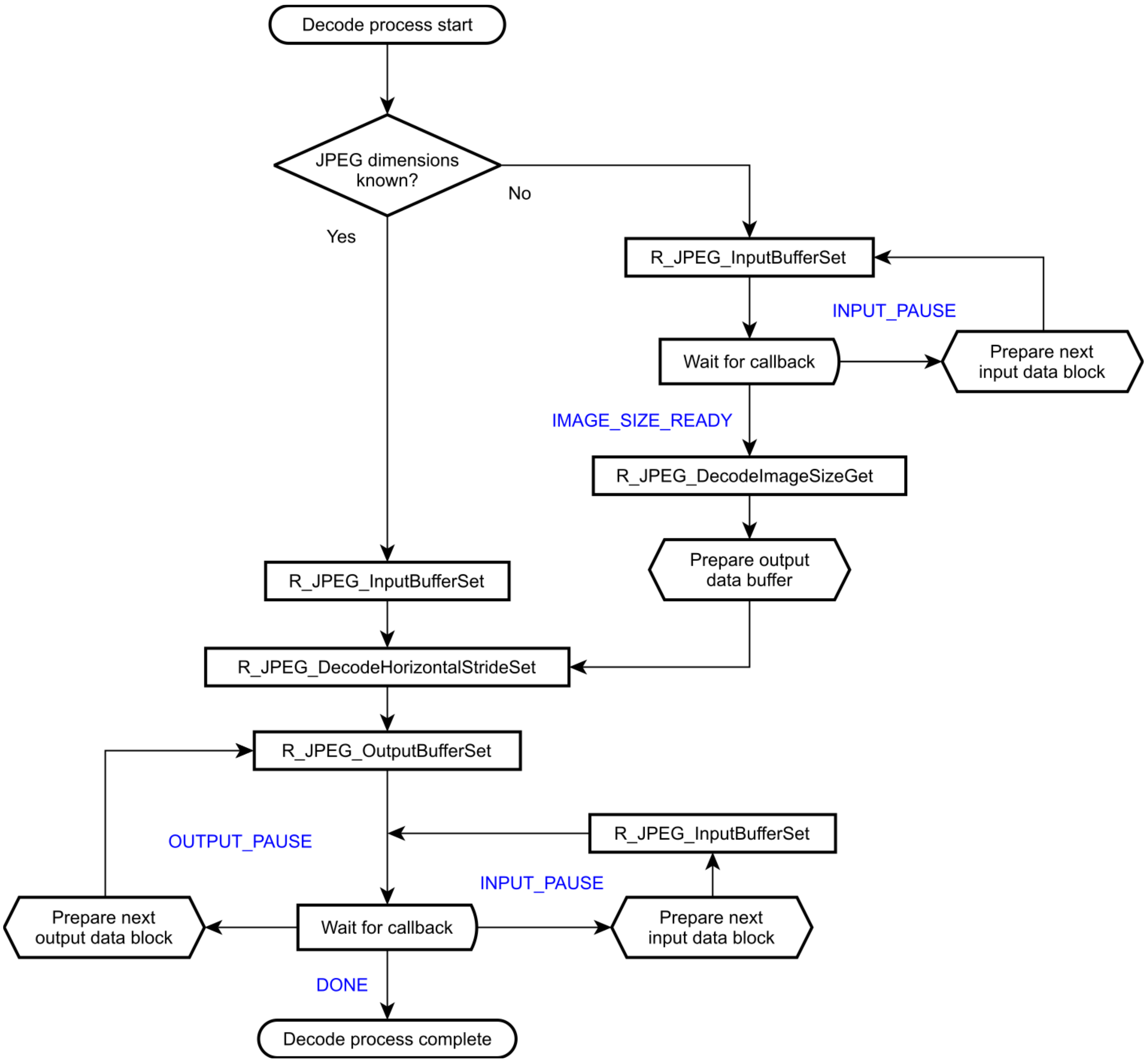


Figure 123: JPEG Decode Operational Flow

Encoding Process

As compared to decoding, encoding is fairly straightforward. The only option available is to stream input data if desired. The flowchart below details the steps needed to compress an image.

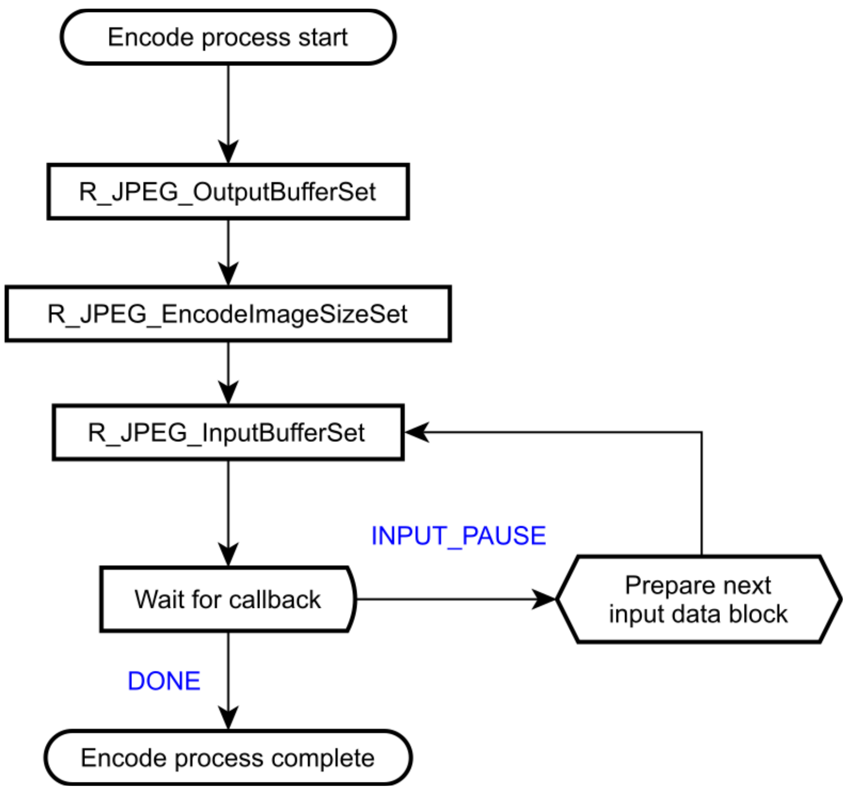


Figure 124: JPEG Encode Operational Flow

Handling Failed Operations

If an encode or decode operation fails or times out while the codec is running, the peripheral must be reset before it is used again. To reset the JPEG Codec simply close and re-open the module by calling R_JPEG_Close followed by R_JPEG_Open.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the JPEG API.

Minimum Coded Unit (MCU)

The JPEG Codec can only correctly process images that are an even increment of minimum coded units (MCUs). In other words, depending on the format the width and height of an image to be encoded or decoded must be divisible by the following:

Format	Horizontal	Vertical
Y'CbCr 4:4:4	8 pixels	8 lines
Y'CbCr 4:2:2	16 pixels	8 lines
Y'CbCr 4:1:1	32 pixels	8 lines
Y'CbCr 4:2:0	16 pixels	16 lines

Encoding Input Format

The encoding unit only supports Y'CbCr 4:2:2 input. Raw RGB888 data can be converted to this format as follows:

```
y =       (0.299000f * r) + (0.587000f * g) + (0.114000f * b);
cb = 128 - (0.168736f * r) - (0.331264f * g) + (0.500000f * b);
cr = 128 + (0.500000f * r) - (0.418688f * g) - (0.081312f * b);
```

While these equations are mathematically simple they do use the floating-point unit. To speed things up we can multiply the coefficients by 256/256...

```
y =       ((76.5440f * r) + (150.272f * g) + (29.1840f * b)) / 256;
cb = 128 - ((43.1964f * r) - (84.8036f * g) + (128.000f * b)) / 256;
cr = 128 + ((128.000f * r) - (107.184f * g) - (20.8159f * b)) / 256;
```

...which allows the formulas to be calculated entirely with shifts and addition (coefficients rounded to the nearest integer):

```
y =       (   (r << 6) + (r << 3) + (r << 2) + r
            + (g << 7) + (g << 4) + (g << 2) + (g << 1)
            + (b << 4) + (b << 3) + (b << 2) + b
           ) >> 8;
cb = 128 - (   (r << 5) + (r << 3) + (r << 1) + r
            + (g << 6) + (g << 4) + (g << 2) + g
            - (b << 7)
           ) >> 8;
cr = 128 + (   (r << 7)
            - (g << 6) - (g << 5) - (g << 3) - (g << 1) - g
            - (b << 4) - (b << 2) - b)
           ) >> 8;
```

To compose the final Y'CbCr 4:2:2 data the chroma of every two pixels must be averaged. **In addition, the JPEG Codec expects chrominance values to be in the range -127..127 instead of the standard 1..255.**

```
cb = (uint8_t) ((int8_t) ((cb0 + cb1 + 1) >> 1) - 128);
cr = (uint8_t) ((int8_t) ((cr0 + cr1 + 1) >> 1) - 128);
```

Finally, the below equation composes two 4:2:2 output pixels at a time with standard byte order (JPEG_DATA_ORDER_NORMAL):

```
    out = y0 + (cb << 8) + (y1 << 16) + (cr << 24);
```

Note

RGB565 pixels must be upscaled to RGB888 before using the above formulas. Refer to the below example on Y'CbCr Conversion for implementation details.

Examples

Basic Decode Example

This is a basic example showing the minimum code required to initialize the JPEG Codec and decode an image.

```
void jpeg_decode_basic (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Open JPEG Codec */
    err = R_JPEG_Open(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &g_jpeg_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set input buffer */
    err = R_JPEG_InputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, JPEG_PTR, JPEG_SIZE_BYTES);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set horizontal stride of output buffer */
    err = R_JPEG_DecodeHorizontalStrideSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, JPEG_HSIZE);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set output buffer */
    err = R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, decode_buffer, sizeof(decode_buffer));
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for decode completion */
 jpeg_status_t status = (jpeg_status_t) 0;
 while (!(status & (JPEG_STATUS_OPERATION_COMPLETE | JPEG_STATUS_ERROR)))
    {
       err = R_JPEG_StatusGet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &status);
      handle_error(err);
    }
}
```

Streaming Input/Output Example

In this example JPEG data is read in 512-byte chunks. Decoding is paused when a chunk is read and once the JPEG header is decoded. The image is decoded 16 lines at a time.

Note

Streaming is always bypassed when a given buffer's size encompasses the entire input or output image, respectively. Though this example decodes via smaller chunks the input and output data are still contiguous for ease of demonstration. Refer to the comments for further insight as to how to implement streaming with different JPEG/output buffer size combinations.

```
#define JPEG_INPUT_SIZE_BYTES 512U
/* JPEG Codec status */
static volatile jpeg_status_t g_jpeg_status = JPEG_STATUS_NONE;
/* JPEG event flag */
static volatile uint8_t jpeg_event = 0;
/* Callback function for JPEG decode interrupts */
void jpeg_decode_callback (jpeg_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 /* Get JPEG Codec status */
    g_jpeg_status = p_args->status;
 /* Set JPEG flag */
    jpeg_event = 1;
}
/* Simple wait that returns 1 if no event happened within the timeout period */
static uint8_t jpeg_event_wait (void)
{
    uint32_t timeout_timer = JPEG_EVENT_TIMEOUT;
 while (!jpeg_event && timeout_timer--)
    {
 /* Spin here until an event callback or timeout */
    }
    jpeg_event = 0;
 return timeout_timer ? 0 : 1;
}
```

```
/* Decode a JPEG image to a buffer using streaming input and output */
void jpeg_decode_streaming (void)
{
    uint8_t    * p_jpeg = (uint8_t *) JPEG_PTR;
 jpeg_status_t status = (jpeg_status_t) 0;
    uint8_t       timeout = 0;
 fsp_err_t    err;
 /* Number of input bytes to read at a time */
    uint32_t input_bytes = JPEG_INPUT_SIZE_BYTES;
 /* Open JPEG unit and start decode */
    err = R_JPEG_Open(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &g_jpeg_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (!(status & JPEG_STATUS_ERROR) && !timeout)
    {
 /* Set the input buffer to read `input_bytes` bytes at a time */
       err = R_JPEG_InputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, p_jpeg, input_bytes);
      handle_error(err);
 /* This delay is required for streaming input mode to function correctly.
  * (Without this delay the JPEG Codec will not correctly locate markers in the file
header.) */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(10, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
 /* Wait for a callback */
       timeout = jpeg_event_wait();
 /* Get the status from the callback */
       status = g_jpeg_status;
 /* Break if the header has finished decoding */
 if (status & JPEG_STATUS_IMAGE_SIZE_READY)
      {
 break;
      }
 /* Move pointer to next block of input data (if needed) */
       p_jpeg = (uint8_t *) ((uint32_t) p_jpeg + input_bytes);
    }
 /* Get image size */
    uint16_t horizontal;
    uint16_t vertical;
    err = R_JPEG_DecodeImageSizeGet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &horizontal, &vertical);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Prepare output data buffer here if needed (already allocated in this example) */
    uint8_t * p_output = decode_buffer;
 /* Set horizontal stride */
    err = R_JPEG_DecodeHorizontalStrideSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, horizontal);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Calculate the number of bytes that will fit in the buffer (16 lines in this
example) */
    uint32_t output_size = horizontal * 16U * 4U;
 /* Start decoding by setting the output buffer */
    err = R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, p_output, output_size);
    handle_error(err);
 while (!(status & JPEG_STATUS_ERROR) && !timeout)
    {
 /* Wait for a callback */
       timeout = jpeg_event_wait();
 /* Get the status from the callback */
       status = g_jpeg_status;
 /* Break if decoding is complete */
 if (status & JPEG_STATUS_OPERATION_COMPLETE)
      {
 break;
      }
 if (status & JPEG_STATUS_OUTPUT_PAUSE)
      {
 /* Draw the JPEG work buffer to the framebuffer here (if needed) */
 /* Move pointer to next block of output data (if needed) */
            p_output += output_size;
 /* Set the output buffer to the next 16-line block */
      err = R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, p_output, output_size);
      handle_error(err);
      }
 if (status & JPEG_STATUS_INPUT_PAUSE)
      {
 /* Get next block of input data */
         p_jpeg = (uint8_t *) ((uint32_t) p_jpeg + input_bytes);
 /* Set the new input buffer pointer */
         err = R_JPEG_InputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, p_jpeg, input_bytes);
      handle_error(err);
      }
    }
 /* Close driver to allow encode operations if needed */
    err = R_JPEG_Close(&g_jpeg_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Encode Example

This is a basic example showing the minimum code required to initialize the JPEG Codec and encode an image.

Note

This example assumes image dimensions are provided in the configuration. If this is not the case, R_JPEG_EncodeImageSizeSet must be used to set the size before calling R_JPEG_InputBufferSet.

```
void jpeg_encode_basic (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Open JPEG Codec */
    err = R_JPEG_Open(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &g_jpeg_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set output buffer */
    err = R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, jpeg_buffer, sizeof(jpeg_buffer));
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set input buffer */
    err = R_JPEG_InputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, RAW_YCBCR_IMAGE_PTR, IMAGE_SIZE_BYTES);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for decode completion */
 jpeg_status_t status = (jpeg_status_t) 0;
 while (!(status & JPEG_STATUS_OPERATION_COMPLETE))
    {
       err = R_JPEG_StatusGet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &status);
      handle_error(err);
    }
}
```

Streaming Encode Example

In this example the raw input data is provided in smaller chunks. This can help significantly reduce buffer size and improve throughput when streaming in raw data from an outside source.

```
/* Callback function for JPEG encode interrupts */
void jpeg_encode_callback (jpeg_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 /* Get JPEG Codec status */
    g_jpeg_status = p_args->status;
 /* Set JPEG flag */
    jpeg_event = 1;
}
void jpeg_encode_streaming (void)
{
    uint8_t   timeout = 0;
    uint8_t * p_chunk = (uint8_t *) RAW_YCBCR_IMAGE_PTR;
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Open JPEG Codec */
    err = R_JPEG_Open(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &g_jpeg_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set output buffer */
    err = R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, jpeg_buffer, sizeof(jpeg_buffer));
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set the image size */
 jpeg_encode_image_size_t image_size;
    image_size.horizontal_resolution    = X_RESOLUTION;
    image_size.vertical_resolution      = Y_RESOLUTION;
    image_size.horizontal_stride_pixels = H_STRIDE;
    err = R_JPEG_EncodeImageSizeSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, &image_size);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Calculate the size of the input data chunk (16 lines in this example) */
    uint32_t chunk_size = H_STRIDE * 16U * YCBCR_BYTES_PER_PIXEL;
 while (!timeout)
    {
 /* Set the input buffer */
       err = R_JPEG_InputBufferSet(&g_jpeg_ctrl, p_chunk, chunk_size);
      handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for a callback */
       timeout = jpeg_event_wait();
 if (g_jpeg_status & JPEG_STATUS_OPERATION_COMPLETE)
      {
 /* Encode complete */
 break;
      }
 if (g_jpeg_status & JPEG_STATUS_INPUT_PAUSE)
      {
 /* Load next block of input data here (if needed) */
            p_chunk += chunk_size;
      }
    }
}
```

Y'CbCr Conversion

The below function is provided as a reference for how to convert RGB values to Y'CbCr for use with the JPEG Codec.

Note

This function is only partially optimized for clarity. Further appllication-specific size- or speed-based optimizations should be considered when implementing in an actual project.

```
#define RGB565_G_MASK 0x07E0
#define RGB565_B_MASK 0x001F
#define C_0 128
typedef enum e_pixel_format
{
    PIXEL_FORMAT_ARGB8888,
    PIXEL_FORMAT_RGB565
} pixel_format_t;
/* 5-bit to 8-bit LUT */
const uint8_t lut_32[] =
{
    0,   8,   16, 25, 33, 41, 49, 58,
    66, 74, 82, 90, 99, 107, 115, 123,
    132, 140, 148, 156, 165, 173, 181, 189,
    197, 206, 214, 222, 230, 239, 247, 255
};
/* 6-bit to 8-bit LUT */
const uint8_t lut_64[] =
{
    0,   4,   8,   12, 16, 20, 24, 28,
    32, 36, 40, 45, 49, 53, 57, 61,
    65, 69, 73, 77, 81, 85, 89, 93,
    97, 101, 105, 109, 113, 117, 121, 125,
    130, 134, 138, 142, 146, 150, 154, 158,
    162, 166, 170, 174, 178, 182, 186, 190,
    194, 198, 202, 206, 210, 215, 219, 223,
    227, 231, 235, 239, 243, 247, 251, 255
};
void bitmap_rgb2ycbcr(uint32_t * out, uint8_t * in, uint32_t len, pixel_format_t
format);
/*************************************************************************************
***********************************
 * Convert an RGB buffer to Y'CbCr 4:2:2.
 *
 * NOTE: The width (in pixels) of the image to be converted must be divisible by 2.
 *
 * Parameters:
 * out Pointer to output buffer
 * in Pointer to input buffer
 * len Length of input buffer (in pixels)
 * format Input buffer format (ARGB8888 or RGB565)
 *************************************************************************************
**********************************/
void bitmap_rgb2ycbcr (uint32_t * out, uint8_t * in, uint32_t len, pixel_format_t
format)
{
    uint16_t in0;
    uint16_t in1;
    uint32_t r0;
    uint32_t g0;
    uint32_t b0;
    uint32_t r1;
    uint32_t g1;
    uint32_t b1;
    uint8_t y0;
    uint8_t y1;
    uint8_t cb0;
    uint8_t cr0;
    uint8_t cb1;
    uint8_t cr1;
 /* Divide length by 2 as we're working with two pixels at a time */
    len >>= 1;
 /* Perform the conversion */
 while (len)
    {
 /* Get R, G and B channel values */
 if (format == PIXEL_FORMAT_RGB565)
      {
```

```
/* Get next two 16-bit values */
           in0 = *((uint16_t *) in);
           in += 2;
           in1 = *((uint16_t *) in);
           in += 2;
/* Decompose into individual channels */
           r0 = in0 >> 11;
           g0 = (in0 & RGB565_G_MASK) >> 5;
           b0 = in0 & RGB565_B_MASK;
           r1 = in1 >> 11;
           g1 = (in1 & RGB565_G_MASK) >> 5;
           b1 = in1 & RGB565_B_MASK;
     }
else
     {
/* Get each ARGB8888 channel in sequence, skipping alpha */
           b0 = *in++;
           g0 = *in++;
           r0 = *in++;
           in++;
           b1 = *in++;
           g1 = *in++;
           r1 = *in++;
           in++;
     }
/* Convert RGB565 data to RGB888 */
if (PIXEL_FORMAT_RGB565 == format)
     {
           r0 = lut_32[r0];
           g0 = lut_64[g0];
           b0 = lut_32[b0];
           r1 = lut_32[r1];
           g1 = lut_64[g1];
           b1 = lut_32[b1];
```

```
      }
 /* Calculate Y'CbCr 4:4:4 values for the two pixels */
 /* Algorithm based on method shown here: https://sistenix.com/rgb2ycbcr.html */
 /* Original coefficients from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/YCbCr#JPEG_conversion */
       y0 = (uint8_t) (((r0 << 6) + (r0 << 3) + (r0 << 2) + r0 +
                         (g0 << 7) + (g0 << 4) + (g0 << 2) + (g0 << 1) +
                         (b0 << 4) + (b0 << 3) + (b0 << 2) + b0
                         ) >> 8);
       cb0 = (uint8_t) (C_0 - (((r0 << 5) + (r0 << 3) + (r0 << 1) + r0 +
                                 (g0 << 6) + (g0 << 4) + (g0 << 2) + g0 -
                                 (b0 << 7)
                                 ) >> 8));
       cr0 = (uint8_t) (C_0 + (((r0 << 7) -
                                 (g0 << 6) - (g0 << 5) - (g0 << 3) - (g0 << 1) - g0 -
                                 (b0 << 4) - (b0 << 2) - b0
                                 ) >> 8));
       y1 = (uint8_t) (((r1 << 6) + (r1 << 3) + (r1 << 2) + r1 +
                         (g1 << 7) + (g1 << 4) + (g1 << 2) + (g1 << 1) +
                         (b1 << 4) + (b1 << 3) + (b1 << 2) + b1
                         ) >> 8);
       cb1 = (uint8_t) (C_0 - (((r1 << 5) + (r1 << 3) + (r1 << 1) + r1 +
                                 (g1 << 6) + (g1 << 4) + (g1 << 2) + g1 -
                                 (b1 << 7)
                                 ) >> 8));
       cr1 = (uint8_t) (C_0 + (((r1 << 7) -
                                 (g1 << 6) - (g1 << 5) - (g1 << 3) - (g1 << 1) - g1 -
                                 (b1 << 4) - (b1 << 2) - b1
                                 ) >> 8));
 /* The above code is based on the floating point method shown here: */
 // y0 = (uint8_t) ((0.299F * (float) r0) + (0.587F * (float) g0) + (0.114F * (float)
b0));
 // y1 = (uint8_t) ((0.299F * (float) r1) + (0.587F * (float) g1) + (0.114F * (float)
b1));
 // cb0 = (uint8_t) (128.0F - (0.168736F * (float) r0) - (0.331264F * (float) g0) +
(0.5F * (float) b0));
 // cb1 = (uint8_t) (128.0F - (0.168736F * (float) r1) - (0.331264F * (float) g1) +
(0.5F * (float) b1));
 // cr0 = (uint8_t) (128.0F + (0.5F * (float) r0) - (0.418688F * (float) g0) -
(0.081312F * (float) b0));
 // cr1 = (uint8_t) (128.0F + (0.5F * (float) r1) - (0.418688F * (float) g1) -
(0.081312F * (float) b1));
 /* NOTE: The JPEG Codec expects signed instead of unsigned chrominance values. */
 /* Convert chrominance to -127..127 instead of 1..255 */
       cb0 = (uint8_t) ((int8_t) ((cb0 + cb1 + 1) >> 1) - C_0);
       cr0 = (uint8_t) ((int8_t) ((cr0 + cr1 + 1) >> 1) - C_0);
 /* Convert the two 4:4:4 values into 4:2:2 by averaging the chroma, then write to
output */
       *out++ = (uint32_t) (y0 + (cb0 << 8) + (y1 << 16) + (cr0 << 24));
       len--;
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	jpeg_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ jpeg_instance_ctrl_t

struct jpeg_instance_ctrl_t

JPEG Codec module control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when jpep_api_t::open is called.

Data Fields

uint32_t	open	JPEG Codec driver status.
jpeg_status_t	status	JPEG Codec operational status.
fsp_err_t	error_code	JPEG Codec error code (if any).
jpeg_mode_t	mode	Current mode (decode or encode).
uint32_t	horizontal_stride_bytes	Horizontal Stride settings.
uint32_t	output_buffer_size	Output buffer size.
jpeg_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	JPEG Decode configuration struct.

void const *	p_extend	JPEG Codec hardware dependent configuration */.
jpeg_decode_pixel_format_t	pixel_format	Pixel format.
uint16_t	total_lines_decoded	Track the number of lines decoded so far.
jpeg_decode_subsample_t	horizontal_subsample	Horizontal sub-sample setting.
uint16_t	lines_to_encode	Number of lines to encode.
uint16_t	vertical_resolution	vertical size
uint16_t	total_lines_encoded	Number of lines encoded.

Function Documentation

◆ R_JPEG_Open()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_Open (jpeg_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, jpeg_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initialize the JPEG Codec module.

Note

This function configures the JPEG Codec for operation and sets up the registers for data format and pixel format based on user-supplied configuration parameters. Interrupts are enabled to support callbacks.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	JPEG Codec module is properly configured and is ready to take input data.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	JPEG Codec is already open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or the configuration structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	JEDI interrupt does not have an IRQ number.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	(Encode only) Quality factor, horizontal resolution and/or vertical resolution are invalid.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	(Encode only) The horizontal resolution (at 16bpp) is not divisible by 8 bytes.

◆ R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet (jpeg_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, void * *p_output_buffer*, uint32_t *output_buffer_size*)

Assign a buffer to the JPEG Codec for storing output data.

Note

In Decode mode, the number of image lines to be decoded depends on the size of the buffer and the horizontal stride settings. Once the output buffer size is known, the horizontal stride value is known, and the input pixel format is known (the input pixel format is obtained by the JPEG decoder from the JPEG headers), the driver automatically computes the number of lines that can be decoded into the output buffer. After these lines are decoded, the JPEG engine pauses and a callback function is triggered, so the application is able to provide the next buffer for the JPEG module to resume the operation.

The JPEG decoding operation automatically starts after both the input buffer and the output buffer are set and the output buffer is big enough to hold at least eight lines of decoded image data.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The output buffer is properly assigned to JPEG codec device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or output_buffer is NULL or output_buffer_size is 0.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	Buffer starting address is not 8-byte aligned.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG not opened.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_UNSUPPORTED_IMAGE_SIZE	The number of horizontal pixels exceeds horizontal memory stride.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_BUFFERSIZE_NOT_ENOUGH	Invalid buffer size.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	The output buffer cannot be changed during codec operation.

◆ R_JPEG_InputBufferSet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_InputBufferSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void * *p_data_buffer*, uint32_t *data_buffer_size*)

Assign an input data buffer to the JPEG codec for processing.

Note

After the amount of data is processed, the JPEG driver triggers a callback function with the flag JPEG_PRV_OPERATION_INPUT_PAUSE set. The application supplies the next chunk of data to the driver so processing can resume.
The JPEG decoding operation automatically starts after both the input buffer and the output buffer are set, and the output buffer is big enough to hold at least one line of decoded image data.

If zero is provided for the decode data buffer size the JPEG Codec will never pause for more input data and will continue to read until either an image has been fully decoded or an error condition occurs.

Note

When encoding images the minimum data buffer size is 8 lines by 16 Y'CbCr 4:2:2 pixels (256 bytes). This corresponds to one minimum coded unit (MCU) of the resulting JPEG output.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The input data buffer is properly assigned to JPEG Codec device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL, or the pointer to the input_buffer is NULL, or the input_buffer_size is 0.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	Buffer starting address is not 8-byte aligned.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG not opened.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	The input buffer cannot be changed while the codec is running.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_CALL	In encode mode the output buffer must be set first.
FSP_ERR_JPEG_IMAGE_SIZE_ERROR	The buffer size is smaller than the minimum coded unit (MCU).

◆ R_JPEG_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_StatusGet (jpeg_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, jpeg_status_t * *p_status*)

Get the status of the JPEG codec. This function can also be used to poll the device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The status information is successfully retrieved.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or p_status is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG is not opened.

◆ R_JPEG_Close()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_Close (jpeg_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*)

Cancel an outstanding JPEG codec operation and close the device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The input data buffer is properly assigned to JPEG Codec device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG not opened.

◆ R_JPEG_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Get the version of the JPEG Codec driver.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version number returned successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

◆ R_JPEG_EncodeImageSizeSet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_EncodeImageSizeSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, jpeg_encode_image_size_t * *p_image_size*)

Set the image dimensions for an encode operation.

Note

Image dimensions must be set before setting the input buffer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Image size was successfully written to the JPEG Codec.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or p_image_size is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	Horizontal stride is not 8-byte aligned.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Horizontal or vertical resolution is invalid or zero.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG not opened.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Image parameters cannot be changed while the codec is running.

◆ R_JPEG_DecodeLinesDecodedGet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_DecodeLinesDecodedGet (jpeg_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t * *p_lines*)

Returns the number of lines decoded into the output buffer.

Note

Use this function to retrieve the number of image lines written to the output buffer after a partial decode operation. Combined with the horizontal stride settings and the output pixel format the application can compute the amount of data to read from the output buffer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Line count successfully returned.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or p_lines is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG not opened.

◆ R_JPEG_DecodeHorizontalStrideSet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_DecodeHorizontalStrideSet (jpeg_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t *horizontal_stride*)

Configure horizontal stride setting for decode operations.

Note

If the image size is known prior to the open call and/or the output buffer stride is constant, pass the horizontal stride value in the jpeg_cfg_t structure. Otherwise, after the image size becomes available use this function to set the output buffer horizontal stride value.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Horizontal stride value is properly configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	Horizontal stride is zero or is not 8-byte aligned.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG not opened.

◆ R_JPEG_DecodeImageSizeGet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_DecodeImageSizeGet (jpeg_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, uint16_t * *p_horizontal_size*, uint16_t * *p_vertical_size*)

Obtain the size of an image being decoded.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The image size is available and the horizontal and vertical values are stored in the memory pointed to by p_horizontal_size and p_vertical_size.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL and/or size is not ready.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG is not opened.

◆ R_JPEG_DecodeImageSubsampleSet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_DecodeImageSubsampleSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, jpeg_decode_subsample_t *horizontal_subsample*, jpeg_decode_subsample_t *vertical_subsample*)

Configure horizontal and vertical subsampling.

Note

This function can be used to scale the output of decoded image data.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Horizontal stride value is properly configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG not opened.

◆ R_JPEG_DecodePixelFormatGet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_DecodePixelFormatGet (jpeg_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, jpeg_color_space_t * *p_color_space*)

Get the color format of the JPEG being decoded.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The color format was successfully retrieved.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	JPEG is not opened.

◆ R_JPEG_ModeSet()

fsp_err_t R_JPEG_ModeSet (jpeg_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, jpeg_mode_t *mode*)

Switch between encode and decode mode (or vice-versa).

Note

The codec must not be idle in order to switch modes.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Mode changed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	JPEG Codec is currently in use.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	(Encode only) Quality factor, horizontal resolution and/or vertical resolution are invalid.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ALIGNMENT	(Encode only) The horizontal resolution (at 16bpp) is not divisible by 8 bytes.

5.2.30 Key Interrupt (r_kint)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_KINT_Open (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, keymatrix_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_KINT_Enable (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_KINT_Disable (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_KINT_Close (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_KINT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the KINT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Key Matrix Interface.

Overview

The KINT module configures the Key Interrupt (KINT) peripheral to detect rising or falling edges on any of the KINT channels. When such an event is detected on any of the configured pins, the module generates an interrupt.

Features

- Detect rising or falling edges on KINT channels
- Callback for notifying the application when edges are detected on the configured channels

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_kint

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_kint_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Input > Key Matrix Driver on r_kint

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Input > Key Matrix Driver on r_kint:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_kint0	Module name.
Input > Key Interrupt Flag Mask	• Channel 0 • Channel 1 • Channel 2 • Channel 3 • Channel 4 • Channel 5 • Channel 6 • Channel 7		Select channels to enable.
Interrupts > Trigger Type	• Falling Edge • Rising Edge	Rising Edge	Specifies if the enabled channels detect a rising edge or a falling edge. NOTE: either all channels detecting a rising edge or all channels detecting a falling edge.

Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	kint_callback	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time the IRQ triggers.
Interrupts > Key Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the key interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The KINT peripheral runs on PCLKB.

Pin Configuration

The KRn pins are key switch matrix row input pins.

Usage Notes

Connecting a Switch Matrix

The KINT module is designed to scan the rows of a switch matrix where each row is connected to a number of columns through switches. A periodic timer (or other mechanism) sets one column pin high at a time. Any switches that are pressed on the driven column cause a rising (or falling) edge on the row pin (KRn) causing an interrupt.

Note

In applications where multiple keys may be pressed at the same time it is recommended to put a diode inline with each switch to prevent ghosting.

Handling Multiple Pins

When an edge is detected on multiple pins at the same time, a single IRQ will be generated. A mask of all the pins that detected an edge will be passed to the callback.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the KINT in an application.

```
static volatile uint32_t g_channel_mask;

static volatile uint32_t g_kint_edge_detected = 0U;

/* Called from key_int_isr */

void r_kint_callback (keymatrix_callback_args_t * p_args)

{

    g_channel_mask       = p_args->channel_mask;
    g_kint_edge_detected = 1U;
}
void r_kint_example ()
{
 /* Configure the KINT. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_KINT_Open(&g_kint_ctrl, &g_kint_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Enable the KINT. */
    err = R_KINT_Enable(&g_kint_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 while (0 == g_kint_edge_detected)
    {
 /* Wait for interrupt. */
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	kint_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ kint_instance_ctrl_t

struct kint_instance_ctrl_t

Channel instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when keymatrix_api_t::open is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_KINT_Open()

fsp_err_t R_KINT_Open (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, keymatrix_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configure all the Key Input (KINT) channels and provides a handle for use with the rest of the KINT API functions. Implements keymatrix_api_t::open.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One of the following parameters may be NULL: p_cfg, or p_ctrl or the callback.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The module has already been opened.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The channel mask is invalid.

◆ R_KINT_Enable()

fsp_err_t R_KINT_Enable (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

This function enables interrupts for the KINT peripheral after clearing any pending requests. Implements keymatrix_api_t::enable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Interrupt disabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The p_ctrl parameter was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The peripheral is not opened.

◆ R_KINT_Disable()

fsp_err_t R_KINT_Disable (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

This function disables interrupts for the KINT peripheral. Implements keymatrix_api_t::disable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Interrupt disabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The p_ctrl parameter was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.

◆ R_KINT_Close()

fsp_err_t R_KINT_Close (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Clear the KINT configuration and disable the KINT IRQ. Implements keymatrix_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The module is not opened.

◆ R_KINT_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_KINT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Set driver version based on compile time macros.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful return.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

5.2.31 Low Power Modes (r_lpm)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_LPM_Open (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lpm_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_LPM_Close (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_LPM_LowPowerReconfigure (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lpm_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_LPM_LowPowerModeEnter (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_LPM_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_LPM_IoKeepClear (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Detailed Description

Driver for the LPM peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Low Power Modes Interface.

Overview

The low power modes driver is used to configure and place the device into the desired low power mode. Various sources can be configured to wake from standby, request snooze mode, end snooze mode or end deep standby mode.

Features

The LPM HAL module has the following key features:

- Supports the follwowing low power modes:
    - Deep Software Standby mode (On supported MCUs)
    - Software Standby mode
    - Sleep mode
    - Snooze mode
- Supports reducing power consumption when in deep software standby mode through internal power supply control and by resetting the states of I/O ports.
- Supports disabling and enabling the MCU's other hardware peripherals

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_lpm

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_lpm_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Power > Low Power Modes Driver on r_lpm

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Power > Low Power Modes Driver on r_lpm:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_lpm0	Module name.
General > Low Power Mode	MCU Specific Options		Power mode to be entered.
General > Output port state in standby and deep standby	MCU Specific Options		Select the state of output pins during standby. Applies to address output, data output, and other bus

			control output pins.
Standby Options > Wake Sources	MCU Specific Options		Enable wake from standby from these Sources.
Standby Options > Snooze Request Source	MCU Specific Options		Select the event that will enter snooze.
Standby Options > Snooze End Sources	MCU Specific Options		Enable wake from snooze from these sources.
Standby Options > DTC state in Snooze Mode	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	Enable wake from snooze from this source.
Standby Options > Snooze Cancel Source	MCU Specific Options		Select an interrupt source to cancel snooze.
Deep Standby Options > Maintain or reset the IO port states on exit from deep standby mode	MCU Specific Options		Select the state of the IO Pins after exiting deep standby mode.
Deep Standby Options > Internal power supply control in deep standby mode	MCU Specific Options		Select the state of the internal power supply in deep standby mode.
Deep Standby Options > Cancel Sources	MCU Specific Options		Enable wake from deep standby using these sources.
Deep Standby Options > Cancel Edges	MCU Specific Options		Falling edge trigger is default. Select sources to enable wake from deep standby with rising edge.

Clock Configuration

This module does not have any selectable clock sources.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

Sleep Mode

At power on, by default sleep is set as the low-power mode. Sleep mode is the most convenient low-power mode available, as it does not require any special configuration (other than configuring and enabling a suitable interrupt or event to wake the MCU from sleep) to return to normal program-execution mode. The states of the SRAM, the processor registers, and the hardware peripherals are all maintained in sleep mode, and the time needed to enter and wake from sleep is minimal. Any interrupt causes the MCU device to wake from sleep mode, including the Systick interrupt used by the RTOS scheduler.

Software Standby Mode

In software-standby mode, the CPU, as well as most of the on-chip peripheral functions and all of the internal oscillators, are stopped. The contents of the CPU internal registers and SRAM data, the states of on-chip peripheral functions, and I/O Ports are all retained. Software-standby mode allows significant reduction in power consumption, because most of the oscillators are stopped in this mode. Like sleep mode, standby mode requires an interrupt or event be configured and enabled to wake up.

Snooze Mode

Snooze mode can be used with some MCU peripherals to execute basic tasks while keeping the MCU in a low-power state. Many core peripherals and all clocks can be selected to run during Snooze, allowing for more flexible low-power configuration than Software Standby mode. To enable Snooze, select "Software Standby mode with Snooze mode enabled" for the "Low Power Mode" configuration option. Snooze mode settings (including entry/exit sources) are available under "Standby Options".

Deep Software Standby Mode

Deep Software Standby Mode is only available on some MCU devices. The MCU always wakes from Deep Software Standby Mode by going through reset, either by the negation of the reset pin or by one of the wakeup sources configurable in the "Deep Standby Options" configuration group.

The Reset Status Registers can be used to determine if the reset occured after coming out of deep sofware standby. For example, R_SYSTEM->RSTSR0_b.DPSRSTF is set to 1 after a deep software standby reset.

I/O Port Retention can be enabled to maintain I/O port configuration across a deep software standby reset. Retention can be cancelled through the R_LPM_IoKeepClear API.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the LPM:

- Flash stop (code flash disable) is not supported. See the section "Flash Operation Control Register (FLSTOP)" of the RA2/RA4 Family Hardware User's Manual.
- Reduced SRAM retention area in software standby mode is not supported. See the section "Power Save Memory Control Register (PSMCR)" of the RA4 Hardware User's Manual.
- Only one Snooze Request Source can be used at a time.
- When using Snooze mode with SCI0 RXD as the snooze source the system clock must be HOCO and the MOCO, Main Oscillator and PLL clocks must be turned off.
- The MCU may not enter or stay in Software Standby and Deep Software Standby modes with the debugger attached. Instead, the MCU may be woken from Software Standby and Deep Software Standby modes by the debugger. To properly test and verify Software Standby and Deep Software Standby modes, the debugger must not be attached. When attached, the debugger will prevent the MCU from entering standby modes.
- If the main oscillator or PLL with main oscillator source is used for the system clock, the wake time from standby mode can be affected by the Main Oscillator Wait Time Setting in

the MOSCWTCR register. This register setting is available to be changed through the Main Oscillator Wait Time setting in the CGC module properties. See the "Wakeup Timing and Duration" table in Electrical Characteristics for more information.

Examples

LPM Sleep Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the LPM in an application. The LPM instance is opened and the configured low-power mode is entered.

```
void r_lpm_sleep (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = R_LPM_Open(&g_lpm_ctrl, &g_lpm_cfg_sleep);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_LPM_LowPowerModeEnter(&g_lpm_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

LPM Deep Software Standby Example

```
void r_lpm_deep_software_standby (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
    err = R_LPM_Open(&g_lpm_ctrl, &g_lpm_cfg_deep_software_standby);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Check the Deep Software Standby Reset Flag. */
 if (1U == R_SYSTEM->RSTSR0_b.DPSRSTF)
    {
 /* Clear the IOKEEP bit to allow I/O Port use. */
       err = R_LPM_IoKeepClear(&g_lpm_ctrl);
      handle_error(err);
    }
 /* Add user code here. */
 /* Reconfigure the module to set the IOKEEP bit before entering deep software
standby. */
```

```
    err = R_LPM_LowPowerReconfigure(&g_lpm_ctrl, &g_lpm_cfg_deep_software_standby);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_LPM_LowPowerModeEnter(&g_lpm_ctrl);
 /* Code after R_LPM_LowPowerModeEnter when using Deep Software Standby never be
executed.
  * Deep software standby exits by resetting the MCU. */
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	lpm_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ lpm_instance_ctrl_t

struct lpm_instance_ctrl_t
LPM private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_LPM_Open() is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_LPM_Open()

fsp_err_t R_LPM_Open (lpm_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, lpm_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Perform any necessary initialization

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	LPM instance opened
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	LPM instance is already open
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	This MCU does not support Deep Software Standby
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid snooze entry source Invalid snooze end sources
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	Invalid low power mode Invalid DTC option for snooze mode Invalid deep standby end sources Invalid deep standby end sources edges Invalid power supply option for deep standby Invalid IO port option for deep standby Invalid output port state setting for standby or deep standby Invalid sources for wake from standby mode Invalid power supply option for standby Invalid IO port option for standby Invalid standby end sources Invalid standby end sources edges

◆ R_LPM_Close()

fsp_err_t R_LPM_Close (lpm_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Close the LPM Instance

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	LPM Software lock initialized
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	LPM instance is not open
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer

◆ R_LPM_LowPowerReconfigure()

```
fsp_err_t R_LPM_LowPowerReconfigure ( lpm_ctrl_t *const  p_api_ctrl, lpm_cfg_t const *const  p_cfg )
```

Configure a low power mode

NOTE: This function does not enter the low power mode, it only configures parameters of the mode. Execution of the WFI instruction is what causes the low power mode to be entered.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Low power mode successfuly applied
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	LPM instance is not open
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	This MCU does not support Deep Software Standby
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid snooze entry source Invalid snooze end sources
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	Invalid low power mode Invalid DTC option for snooze mode Invalid deep standby end sources Invalid deep standby end sources edges Invalid power supply option for deep standby Invalid IO port option for deep standby Invalid output port state setting for standby or deep standby Invalid sources for wake from standby mode Invalid power supply option for standby Invalid IO port option for standby Invalid standby end sources Invalid standby end sources edges

◆ R_LPM_LowPowerModeEnter()

fsp_err_t R_LPM_LowPowerModeEnter (lpm_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Enter low power mode (sleep/standby/deep standby) using WFI macro.

Function will return after waking from low power mode.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	LPM instance is not open
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	HOCO was not system clock when using snooze mode with SCI0/RXD0. HOCO was not stable when using snooze mode with SCI0/RXD0. MOCO was running when using snooze mode with SCI0/RXD0. MAIN OSCILLATOR was running when using snooze mode with SCI0/RXD0. PLL was running when using snooze mode with SCI0/RXD0. Unable to disable ocillator stop detect when using standby or deep standby.

◆ R_LPM_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_LPM_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

◆ R_LPM_IoKeepClear()

fsp_err_t R_LPM_IoKeepClear (lpm_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Clear the IOKEEP bit after deep software stand by

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	DPSBYCR_b.IOKEEP bit cleared Successfully.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Deep stand by mode not supported on this MCU.

5.2.32 Low Voltage Detection (r_lvd)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_LVD_Open (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lvd_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_LVD_Close (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_LVD_StatusGet (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lvd_status_t *p_lvd_status)
fsp_err_t	R_LVD_StatusClear (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_LVD_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the LVD peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the Low Voltage Detection Interface.

Overview

The Low Voltage Detection module configures the voltage monitors to detect when V_{CC} crosses a specified threshold.

Features

The LVD HAL module supports the following functions:

- Two run-time configurable voltage monitors (Voltage Monitor 1, Voltage Monitor 2)
  - Configurable voltage threshold
  - Digital filter (Available on specific MCUs)
  - Support for both interrupt or polling
    - NMI or maskable interrupt can be configured
  - Rising, falling, or both edge event detection
  - Support for resetting the MCU when V_{CC} falls below configured threshold.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_lvd

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_lvd_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Power > Low Voltage Detection Driver on r_lvd

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Power > Low Voltage Detection Driver on r_lvd:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_lvd	Module name.
Monitor Number	• 1 • 2	1	Select the LVD monitor.
Digital Filter Setting	MCU Specific Options		Enable the digital filter and select the digital filter clock divider.
Voltage Threshold	MCU Specific Options		Select the low voltage detection threshold.
Detection Response	• Maskable interrupt • Non-maskable interrupt • Reset MCU (Only available for falling edge) • No response (Voltage monitor status will be polled)	No response (Voltage monitor status will be polled)	Select what happens when the voltage crosses the threshold voltage.
Voltage Slope	• Falling voltage • Rising voltage • Rising or falling voltage	Falling voltage	Select detection on rising voltage, falling voltage or both.
Negation Delay	• Delay from reset • Delay from voltage returning to normal range	Delay from reset	Negation of the monitor signal can either be delayed from the reset event or from voltage returning to normal range.
Monitor Interrupt Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol.	NULL	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be

		called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) each time the IRQ triggers.
LVD Monitor Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options	Select the LVD Monitor interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The LOCO clock must be enabled in order to use the digital filter.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

Startup Edge Detection

If V_{CC} is below the threshold prior to configuring the voltage monitor for falling edge detection, the monitor will immediately detect the a falling edge condition. If V_{CC} is above the threshold prior to configuring the monitor for rising edge detection, the monitor will not detect a rising edge condition until V_{CC} falls below the threshold and then rises above it again.

Voltage Monitor 0

The LVD HAL module only supports configuring voltage monitor 1 and voltage monitor 2. Voltage monitor 0 can be configured by setting the appropriate bits in the OFS1 register. This means that voltage monitor 0 settings cannot be changed at runtime.

Voltage monitor 0 supports the following features

- Configurable Voltage Threshold (V_{DET0})
- Reset the device when V_{CC} falls below V_{DET0}

Limitations

- The digital filter must be disabled when using voltage monitors in Software Standby or Deep Software Standby.
- Deep Software Standby mode is not possible if the voltage monitor is configured to reset the MCU.
- When the detection response is set to reset, only voltage falling edge detection is possible.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the LVD in an application.

```
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = R_LVD_Open(&g_lvd_ctrl, &g_lvd_cfg);
```

```
    handle_error(err);
 while (1)
    {
 lvd_status_t status;
       err = R_LVD_StatusGet(&g_lvd_ctrl, &status);
      handle_error(err);
 if (LVD_THRESHOLD_CROSSING_DETECTED == status.crossing_detected)
      {
            err = R_LVD_StatusClear(&g_lvd_ctrl);
      handle_error(err);
 /* Do something */
       }
    }
}
```

Interrupt Example

This is a basic example of using a LVD instance that is configured to generate an interrupt.

```
void interrupt_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = R_LVD_Open(&g_lvd_ctrl, &g_lvd_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (1)
    {
 /* Application Process */
 /* Application will be interrupted when Vcc crosses the configured threshold. */
    }
}
/* Called when Vcc crosses configured threshold. */
void lvd_callback (lvd_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (LVD_CURRENT_STATE_BELOW_THRESHOLD == p_args->current_state)
    {
```

```
 /* Do Something */
    }
}
```

Reset Example

This is a basic example of using a LVD instance that is configured to reset the MCU.

```
void reset_example (void)
{
 if (1U == R_SYSTEM->RSTSR0_b.LVD1RF)
    {
 /* The system is coming out of reset because Vcc crossed configured voltage
threshold. */
 /* Clear Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Detect Flag. */
       R_SYSTEM->RSTSR0_b.LVD1RF = 0;
    }
 fsp_err_t err = R_LVD_Open(&g_lvd_ctrl, &g_lvd_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (1)
    {
 /* Application Process */
 /* Application will reset when Vcc crosses the configured threshold. */
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	lvd_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ lvd_instance_ctrl_t

struct lvd_instance_ctrl_t
LVD instance control structure

Function Documentation

◆ R_LVD_Open()

fsp_err_t R_LVD_Open (lvd_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, lvd_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initializes a voltage monitor and detector according to the passed-in configuration structure.

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for the driver instance
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for the driver instance

Note

Digital filter is not to be used with standby modes.
Startup time can take on the order of milliseconds for some configurations.

Example:

```
fsp_err_t err = R_LVD_Open(&g_lvd_ctrl, &g_lvd_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Requested configuration was invalid
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The instance was already opened
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another instance is already using the desired monitor
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Digital filter was enabled on a device that does not support it

◆ R_LVD_Close()

fsp_err_t R_LVD_Close (lvd_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Disables the LVD peripheral. Closes the driver instance.

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control block structure for the driver instance

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An argument was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not open

◆ R_LVD_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_LVD_StatusGet (lvd_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, lvd_status_t * *p_lvd_status*)

Get the current state of the monitor (threshold crossing detected, voltage currently above or below threshold).

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for the driver instance
[out]	p_lvd_status	Pointer to status structure

Example:

```
        err = R_LVD_StatusGet(&g_lvd_ctrl, &status);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An argument was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not open

◆ R_LVD_StatusClear()

fsp_err_t R_LVD_StatusClear (lvd_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Clears the latched status of the monitor.

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for the driver instance

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An argument was NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not open

◆ R_LVD_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_LVD_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the LVD driver version based on compile time macros.

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to the version structure

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version was NULL

5.2.33 Operational Amplifier (r_opamp)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_Open (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, opamp_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_InfoGet (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, opamp_info_t *const p_info)

fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_Start (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const channel_mask)
fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_Stop (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const channel_mask)
fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_StatusGet (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, opamp_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_Trim (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, opamp_trim_cmd_t const cmd, opamp_trim_args_t const *const p_args)
fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_Close (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_OPAMP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the OPAMP peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the OPAMP Interface.

Overview

The OPAMP HAL module provides a high level API for signal amplification applications and supports the OPAMP peripheral available on RA MCUs.

Features

- Low power or high-speed mode
- Start by software or AGT compare match
- Stop by software or ADC conversion end (stop by ADC conversion end only supported on op-amp channels configured to start by AGT compare match)
- Trimming available on some MCUs (see hardware manual)

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_opamp

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_opamp_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > Operational Amplifier Driver on r_opamp

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > Operational

Amplifier Driver on r_opamp:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_opamp0	Module name.
AGT Start Trigger Configuration (N/A unless AGT Start Trigger is Selected for the Channel)	• AGT1 Compare Match Starts OPAMPs 0 and 2 if configured for AGT Start, AGT0 Compare Match Starts OPAMPs 1 and 3 if configured for AGT Start • AGT1 Compare Match Starts OPAMPs 0 and 1 if configured for AGT Start, AGT0 Compare Match Starts OPAMPs 2 and 3 if configured for AGT Start • AGT1 Compare Match Starts all OPAMPs configured for AGT Start	AGT1 Compare Match Starts all OPAMPs configured for AGT Start	Configure which AGT channel event triggers which op-amp channel. The AGT compare match event only starts the op-amp channel if the AGT Start trigger is selected in the Trigger configuration for the channel.
Power Mode	• Low Power • Middle Speed • High Speed	High Speed	Configure the op-amp based on power or speed requirements. This setting affects the minimum required stabilization time. Middle speed is not available for all MCUs.
Trigger Channel 0	• Software Start Software Stop • AGT Start Software Stop • AGT Start ADC Stop	Software Start Software Stop	Select the event triggers to start or stop op-amp channel 0. If the event trigger is selected for start, the start() API enables the event trigger for this channel. If the event trigger is selected for stop, the stop() API disables the event trigger for this channel.
Trigger Channel 1	• Software Start	Software Start	Select the event

	Software Stop • AGT Start Software Stop • AGT Start ADC Stop	Software Stop	triggers to start or stop op-amp channel 1. If the event trigger is selected for start, the start() API enables the event trigger for this channel. If the event trigger is selected for stop, the stop() API disables the event trigger for this channel.
Trigger Channel 2	• Software Start Software Stop • AGT Start Software Stop • AGT Start ADC Stop	Software Start Software Stop	Select the event triggers to start or stop op-amp channel 2. If the event trigger is selected for start, the start() API enables the event trigger for this channel. If the event trigger is selected for stop, the stop() API disables the event trigger for this channel.
Trigger Channel 3	• Software Start Software Stop • AGT Start Software Stop • AGT Start ADC Stop	Software Start Software Stop	Select the event triggers to start or stop op-amp channel 3. If the event trigger is selected for start, the start() API enables the event trigger for this channel. If the event trigger is selected for stop, the stop() API disables the event trigger for this channel.
OPAMP AMPOS0	MCU Specific Options		Select output to connect to AMP0O pin
OPAMP AMPPS0	MCU Specific Options		Select input to connect to AMP0+ pin
OPAMP AMPMS0	MCU Specific Options		Select input to connect to AMP0- pin
OPAMP AMPPS1	MCU Specific Options		Select input to connect to AMP1+ pin
OPAMP AMPMS1	MCU Specific Options		Select input to connect to AMP1- pin
OPAMP AMPPS2	MCU Specific Options		Select input to connect to AMP2+ pin
OPAMP AMPMS2	MCU Specific Options		Select input to connect to AMP2- pin

Clock Configuration

The OPAMP runs on PCLKB.

Pin Configuration

To use the OPAMP HAL module, the port pins for the channels receiving the analog input must be set as input pins in the pin configurator in e2 studio.

Refer to the most recent FSP Release Notes for any additional operational limitations for this module.

Usage Notes

Trimming the OPAMP

- On MCUs that support trimming, the op-amp trim register is set to the factory default after the Open API is called.
- This function allows the application to trim the operational amplifier to a user setting, which overwrites the factory default trim values.
- Supported on selected MCUs. See hardware manual for details.
- Not supported if configured for low power mode(OPAMP_MODE_LOW_POWER).
- This function is not reentrant. Only one side of one op-amp can be trimmed at a time. Complete the procedure for one side of one channel before calling the trim API with the command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START again.
    - The trim procedure works as follows:
    - Call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START.
    - Connect a fixed voltage to the Pch (+) input.
    - Connect the Nch (-) input to the op-amp output to create a voltage follower.
    - Ensure the op-amp is operating and stabilized.
    - Call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START.
    - Measure the fixed voltage connected to the Pch (+) input using the SAR ADC and save the value (referred to as A later in this procedure).
    - Iterate over the following loop 5 times:
        - Call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_NEXT_STEP.
        - Measure the op-amp output using the SAR ADC (referred to as B in the next step).
        - If A <= B, call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_CLEAR_BIT.
    - Call trim() for the Nch (-) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START.
    - Measure the fixed voltage connected to the Pch (+) input using the SAR ADC and save the value (referred to as A later in this procedure).
    - Iterate over the following loop 5 times:
        - Call trim() for the Nch (-) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_NEXT_STEP.
        - Measure the op-amp output using the SAR ADC (referred to as B in the next step).
        - If A <= B, call trim() for the Nch (-) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_CLEAR_BIT.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the R_OPAMP in an application. The example demonstrates configuring OPAMP channel 0 for high speed mode, starting the OPAMP and reading the status of the OPAMP channel running. It also verifies that the stabilization wait time is the expected time for selected power mode

```
#define OPAMP_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL (0U)
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Initialize the OPAMP module. */
    err = R_OPAMP_Open(&g_opamp_ctrl, &g_opamp_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the OPAMP module. */
    err = R_OPAMP_Start(&g_opamp_ctrl, 1 << OPAMP_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Look up the required stabilization wait time. */
 opamp_info_t info;
    err = R_OPAMP_InfoGet(&g_opamp_ctrl, &info);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for the OPAMP to stabilize. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(info.min_stabilization_wait_us, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
}
```

Trim Example

This example demonstrates the typical trimming procedure for opamp channel 0 using R_OPAMP_Trim() API.

```
#ifndef OPAMP_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL
 #define OPAMP_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL (0U)
#endif
#ifndef OPAMP_EXAMPLE_ADC_CHANNEL
 #define OPAMP_EXAMPLE_ADC_CHANNEL (ADC_CHANNEL_2)
#endif
#define ADC_SCAN_END_DELAY (100U)
#define OPAMP_TRIM_LOOP_COUNT (5)
```

```
#define ADC_SCAN_END_MAX_TIMEOUT (0xFFFF)
uint32_t          g_callback_event_counter = 0;
opamp_trim_args_t trim_args_ch =
{
    .channel = OPAMP_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL,
    .input   = OPAMP_TRIM_INPUT_PCH
};
/* This callback is called when ADC Scan Complete event is generated. */
void adc_callback (adc_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
    g_callback_event_counter++;
}
void trimming_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* On RA2A1, configure negative feedback and put DAC12 signal on AMP0+ Pin. */
    g_opamp_cfg_extend.plus_input_select_opamp0 = OPAMP_PLUS_INPUT_AMPPS7;
    g_opamp_cfg_extend.minus_input_select_opamp0 = OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_AMPMS7;
 /* Initialize the OPAMP module. */
    err = R_OPAMP_Open(&g_opamp_ctrl, &g_opamp_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start the OPAMP module. */
    err = R_OPAMP_Start(&g_opamp_ctrl, 1 << OPAMP_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Look up the required stabilization wait time. */
 opamp_info_t info;
    err = R_OPAMP_InfoGet(&g_opamp_ctrl, &info);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for the OPAMP to stabilize. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(info.min_stabilization_wait_us, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
 /* Call trim() for the Pch (+) side input */
    trim_procedure(&trim_args_ch);
    handle_error(err);
    trim_args_ch.input = OPAMP_TRIM_INPUT_NCH;
 /* Call trim() for the Nch (-) side input */
    trim_procedure(&trim_args_ch);
}
void trim_procedure (opamp_trim_args_t * trim_args)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Call trim() for the selected channel and input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START.
*/
    err = R_OPAMP_Trim(&g_opamp_ctrl, OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START, trim_args);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Measure the fixed voltage connected to the channel input using the SAR ADC and
save the value
  * (referred to as result_a later in this procedure). */
 /* Reset the ADC callback counter */
    g_callback_event_counter = 0;
    err = R_ADC_ScanStart(&g_adc_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for ADC scan complete flag */
    uint32_t timeout = ADC_SCAN_END_MAX_TIMEOUT;
 while (g_callback_event_counter == 0 && timeout != 0)
    {
       timeout--;
    }
 if (0 == timeout)
    {
       err = FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT;
      handle_error(err);
    }
    uint16_t result_a;
    err = R_ADC_Read(&g_adc_ctrl, OPAMP_EXAMPLE_ADC_CHANNEL, &result_a);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Iterate over the following loop 5 times: */
 /* Call trim() with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_NEXT_STEP for the selected channel and
given input. */
    uint8_t count = OPAMP_TRIM_LOOP_COUNT;
 while (count > 0)
    {
       count--;
       err = R_OPAMP_Trim(&g_opamp_ctrl, OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_NEXT_STEP, trim_args);
      handle_error(err);
 /* Reset the ADC callback counter */
      g_callback_event_counter = 0;
 /* Read converted value after trim completes. */
      err = R_ADC_ScanStart(&g_adc_ctrl);
      handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for ADC scan complete flag */
       timeout = ADC_SCAN_END_MAX_TIMEOUT;
 while (g_callback_event_counter == 0 && timeout != 0)
      {
         timeout--;
      }
 if (0 == timeout)
      {
         err = FSP_ERR_TIMEOUT;
      handle_error(err);
      }
       uint16_t result_b;
       err = R_ADC_Read(&g_adc_ctrl, OPAMP_EXAMPLE_ADC_CHANNEL, &result_b);
      handle_error(err);
 /* Measure the op-amp output using the SAR ADC (referred to as result_b in the next
step). */
 /* If result_a <= result_b, call trim() for the selected channel and input with
command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_CLEAR_BIT. */
 if (result_a <= result_b)
      {
            err = R_OPAMP_Trim(&g_opamp_ctrl, OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_CLEAR_BIT, trim_args);
            handle_error(err);
        }
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	opamp_extended_cfg_t
struct	opamp_instance_ctrl_t

Macros

#define	OPAMP_CODE_VERSION_MAJOR

Enumerations

enum	opamp_trigger_t
enum	opamp_agt_link_t
enum	opamp_mode_t
enum	opamp_plus_input_t
enum	opamp_minus_input_t
enum	opamp_output_t

Variables

const opamp_api_t	g_opamp_on_opamp

Data Structure Documentation

◆ opamp_extended_cfg_t

struct opamp_extended_cfg_t

OPAMP configuration extension. This extension is required and must be provided in opamp_cfg_t::p_extend.

Data Fields		
opamp_agt_link_t	agt_link	Configure which AGT links are paired to which channel. Only applies to channels if OPAMP_TRIGGER_AGT_START_SOFTWARE_STOP or OPAMP_TRIGGER_AGT_START_ADC_STOP is selected for the channel.

opamp_mode_t	mode	Low power, middle speed, or high speed mode.
opamp_trigger_t	trigger_channel_0	Start and stop triggers for channel 0.
opamp_trigger_t	trigger_channel_1	Start and stop triggers for channel 1.
opamp_trigger_t	trigger_channel_2	Start and stop triggers for channel 2.
opamp_trigger_t	trigger_channel_3	Start and stop triggers for channel 3.
opamp_plus_input_t	plus_input_select_opamp0	OPAMP0+ connection.
opamp_minus_input_t	minus_input_select_opamp0	OPAMP0- connection.
opamp_output_t	output_select_opamp0	OPAMP0O connection.
opamp_plus_input_t	plus_input_select_opamp1	OPAMP1+ connection.
opamp_minus_input_t	minus_input_select_opamp1	OPAMP1- connection.
opamp_plus_input_t	plus_input_select_opamp2	OPAMP2+ connection.
opamp_minus_input_t	minus_input_select_opamp2	OPAMP2- connection.

◆ opamp_instance_ctrl_t

struct opamp_instance_ctrl_t
OPAMP instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialized in opamp_api_t::open().

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ OPAMP_CODE_VERSION_MAJOR

#define OPAMP_CODE_VERSION_MAJOR
Version of code that implements the API defined in this file

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ opamp_trigger_t

enum opamp_trigger_t	
Start and stop trigger for the op-amp.	
Enumerator	
OPAMP_TRIGGER_SOFTWARE_START_SOFTWARE_STOP	Start and stop with APIs.
OPAMP_TRIGGER_AGT_START_SOFTWARE_STOP	Start by AGT compare match and stop with API.
OPAMP_TRIGGER_AGT_START_ADC_STOP	Start by AGT compare match and stop after ADC conversion.

◆ opamp_agt_link_t

enum opamp_agt_link_t	
Which AGT timer starts the op-amp. Only applies to channels if OPAMP_TRIGGER_AGT_START_SOFTWARE_STOP or OPAMP_TRIGGER_AGT_START_ADC_STOP is selected for the channel. If OPAMP_TRIGGER_SOFTWARE_START_SOFTWARE_STOP is selected for a channel, then no AGT compare match event will start that op-amp channel.	
Enumerator	
OPAMP_AGT_LINK_AGT1_OPAMP_0_2_AGT0_OPAMP_1_3	OPAMP channel 0 and 2 are started by AGT1 compare match. OPAMP channel 1 and 3 are started by AGT0 compare match.
OPAMP_AGT_LINK_AGT1_OPAMP_0_1_AGT0_OPAMP_2_3	OPAMP channel 0 and 1 are started by AGT1 compare match. OPAMP channel 2 and 3 are started by AGT0 compare match.
OPAMP_AGT_LINK_AGT1_OPAMP_0_1_2_3	All OPAMP channels are started by AGT1 compare match.

◆ opamp_mode_t

enum opamp_mode_t

Op-amp mode.

Enumerator	
OPAMP_MODE_LOW_POWER	Low power mode.
OPAMP_MODE_MIDDLE_SPEED	Middle speed mode (not supported on all MCUs)
OPAMP_MODE_HIGH_SPEED	High speed mode.

◆ opamp_plus_input_t

enum opamp_plus_input_t

Options to connect AMPnPS pins.

Enumerator	
OPAMP_PLUS_INPUT_NONE	No Connection.
OPAMP_PLUS_INPUT_AMPPS0	Set AMPPS0. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_PLUS_INPUT_AMPPS1	Set AMPPS1. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_PLUS_INPUT_AMPPS2	Set AMPPS2. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_PLUS_INPUT_AMPPS3	Set AMPPS3. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_PLUS_INPUT_AMPPS7	Set AMPPS7. See hardware manual for channel specific options.

◆ opamp_minus_input_t

enum opamp_minus_input_t

Options to connect AMPnMS pins.

Enumerator	
OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_NONE	No Connection.
OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_AMPMS0	Set AMPMS0. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_AMPMS1	Set AMPMS1. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_AMPMS2	Set AMPMS2. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_AMPMS3	Set AMPMS3. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_AMPMS4	Set AMPMS4. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_MINUS_INPUT_AMPMS7	Set AMPMS7. See hardware manual for channel specific options.

◆ opamp_output_t

enum opamp_output_t

Options to connect AMP0OS pin.

Enumerator	
OPAMP_OUTPUT_NONE	No Connection.
OPAMP_OUTPUT_AMPOS0	Set AMPOS0. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_OUTPUT_AMPOS1	Set AMPOS1. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_OUTPUT_AMPOS2	Set AMPOS2. See hardware manual for channel specific options.
OPAMP_OUTPUT_AMPOS3	Set AMPOS3. See hardware manual for channel specific options.

Function Documentation

◆ R_OPAMP_Open()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_Open (opamp_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, opamp_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Applies power to the OPAMP and initializes the hardware based on the user configuration. Implements opamp_api_t::open.

The op-amp is not operational until the opamp_api_t::start is called. If the op-amp is configured to start after AGT compare match, the op-amp is not operational until opamp_api_t::start and the associated AGT compare match event occurs.

Some MCUs have switches that must be set before starting the op-amp. These switches must be set in the application code after opamp_api_t::open and before opamp_api_t::start.

Example:

```
/* Initialize the OPAMP module. */
    err = R_OPAMP_Open(&g_opamp_ctrl, &g_opamp_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Configuration successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Control block is already opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	An attempt to configure OPAMP in middle speed mode on MCU that does not support middle speed mode.

◆ R_OPAMP_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_InfoGet (opamp_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, opamp_info_t *const *p_info*)

Provides the minimum stabilization wait time in microseconds. Implements opamp_api_t::infoGet.

- Example:

```
 /* Look up the required stabilization wait time. */
 opamp_info_t info;
    err = R_OPAMP_InfoGet(&g_opamp_ctrl, &info);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for the OPAMP to stabilize. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(info.min_stabilization_wait_us,
BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	information on opamp_power_mode stored in p_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_OPAMP_Start()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_Start (opamp_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *channel_mask*)

If the OPAMP is configured for hardware triggers, enables hardware triggers. Otherwise, starts the op-amp. Implements opamp_api_t::start.

Some MCUs have switches that must be set before starting the op-amp. These switches must be set in the application code after opamp_api_t::open and before opamp_api_t::start.

Example:

```
/* Start the OPAMP module. */
    err = R_OPAMP_Start(&g_opamp_ctrl, 1 << OPAMP_EXAMPLE_CHANNEL);
    handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Op-amp started or hardware triggers enabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	channel_mask includes a channel that does not exist on this MCU.

◆ R_OPAMP_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_Stop (opamp_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *channel_mask*)

Stops the op-amp. If the OPAMP is configured for hardware triggers, disables hardware triggers. Implements opamp_api_t::stop.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Op-amp stopped or hardware triggers disabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	channel_mask includes a channel that does not exist on this MCU.

◆ R_OPAMP_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_StatusGet (opamp_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, opamp_status_t *const *p_status*)

Provides the operating status for each op-amp in a bitmask. This bit is set when operation begins, before the stabilization wait time has elapsed. Implements opamp_api_t::statusGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Operating status of each op-amp provided in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_OPAMP_Trim()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_Trim (opamp_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, opamp_trim_cmd_t const *cmd*, opamp_trim_args_t const *const *p_args*)

On MCUs that support trimming, the op-amp trim register is set to the factory default after open(). This function allows the application to trim the operational amplifier to a user setting, which overwrites the factory default factory trim values.

Not supported on all MCUs. See hardware manual for details. Not supported if configured for low power mode (OPAMP_MODE_LOW_POWER).

This function is not reentrant. Only one side of one op-amp can be trimmed at a time. Complete the procedure for one side of one channel before calling trim() with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START again.

Implements opamp_api_t::trim.

Reference: Section 37.9 "User Offset Trimming" RA2A1 hardware manual R01UM0008EU0130. The trim procedure works as follows:

Call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START.

Connect a fixed voltage to the Pch (+) input.

Connect the Nch (-) input to the op-amp output to create a voltage follower.

Ensure the op-amp is operating and stabilized.

Call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START.

Measure the fixed voltage connected to the Pch (+) input using the SAR ADC and save the value (referred to as A

later in this procedure).

Iterate over the following loop 5 times:

Call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_NEXT_STEP.

Measure the op-amp output using the SAR ADC (referred to as B in the next step).

If A <= B, call trim() for the Pch (+) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_CLEAR_BIT.

Call trim() for the Nch (-) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START.

Measure the fixed voltage connected to the Pch (+) input using the SAR ADC and save the value (referred to as A

later in this procedure).

Iterate over the following loop 5 times:

Call trim() for the Nch (-) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_NEXT_STEP.

Measure the op-amp output using the SAR ADC (referred to as B in the next step).

If A <= B, call trim() for the Nch (-) side input with command OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_CLEAR_BIT.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Conversion result in p_data.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Trimming is not supported on this MCU.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_STATE	The command is not valid in the current state of the trim state machine.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	The requested channel is not operating or the trim procedure is not in progress for this channel/input combination.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	Trim is not allowed in low power mode.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_OPAMP_Close()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_Close (opamp_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Stops the op-amps. Implements opamp_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Instance control block closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_OPAMP_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_OPAMP_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Gets the API and code version. Implements opamp_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information available in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

Variable Documentation

◆ g_opamp_on_opamp

const opamp_api_t g_opamp_on_opamp

OPAMP Implementation of OPAMP interface.

5.2.34 Port Output Enable for GPT (r_poeg)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_POEG_Open (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, poeg_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_POEG_StatusGet (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, poeg_status_t *const p_status)

fsp_err_t	R_POEG_OutputDisable (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_POEG_Reset (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_POEG_Close (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_POEG_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the POEG peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the POEG Interface.

Overview

The POEG module can be used to configure events to disable GPT GTIOC output pins.

Features

The POEG module has the following features:

- Supports disabling GPT output pins based on GTETRG input pin level.
- Supports disabling GPT output pins based on comparator crossing events (configurable in the High-Speed Analog Comparator (r_acmphs) driver).
- Supports disabling GPT output pins when GTIOC pins are the same level (configurable in the General PWM Timer (r_gpt) driver).
- Supports disabling GPT output pins when main oscillator stop is detected.
- Supports disabling GPT output pins by software API.
- Supports notifying the application when GPT output pins are disabled by POEG.
- Supports resetting POEG status.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_poeg

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_poeg_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Timers > Port Output Enable for GPT on r_poeg

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Timers > Port Output Enable for GPT on r_poeg:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_poeg0	Module name.
General > Channel	Must be a valid POEG channel	0	Specify the hardware channel.
General > Trigger	MCU Specific Options		Select the trigger sources that will enable POEG. Software disable is always supported. This configuration can only be set once after reset. It cannot be modified after the initial setting.
Input > GTETRG Polarity	• Active High • Active Low	Active High	Select the polarity of the GTETRG pin. Only applicable if GTETRG pin is selected under Trigger.
Input > GTETRG Noise Filter	• Disabled • PCLKB/1 • PCLKB/8 • PCLKB/32 • PCLKB/128	Disabled	Configure the noise filter for the GTETRG pin. Only applicable if GTETRG pin is selected under Trigger.
Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be specified here. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) when GPT output pins are disabled by POEG.
Interrupts > Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the POEG interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The POEG clock is based on the PCLKB frequency.

Pin Configuration

This module can use GTETRGA, GTETRGB, GTETRGC, or GTETRGD as an input signal to disable GPT output pins.

Usage Notes

POEG GTETRG Pin and Channel

The POEG channel number corresponds to the GTETRG input pin that can be used with the channel. GTETRGA must be used with POEG channel 0, GTETRGB must be used with POEG channel 1, etc.

Limitations

The user should be aware of the following limitations when using POEG:

- The POEG trigger source can only be set once per channel. Modifying the POEG trigger source after it is set is not allowed by the hardware.
- The POEG cannot be disabled using this API. The interrupt is disabled in R_POEG_Close(), but the POEG will still disable the GPT output pins if a trigger is detected even if the module is closed.

Examples

POEG Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the POEG in an application.

```
void poeg_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the POEG. */
    err = R_POEG_Open(&g_poeg0_ctrl, &g_poeg0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
}
```

POEG Callback Example

This is an example of a using the POEG callback to restore GPT output operation.

```
/* Example callback called when POEG disables GPT output pins. */
void poeg_callback (poeg_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
 /* (Optional) Determine the cause of the POEG event. */
 poeg_status_t status;
    (void) R_POEG_StatusGet(&g_poeg0_ctrl, &status);
 /* Correct the cause of the POEG event before resetting POEG. */
 /* Reset the POEG before exiting the callback. */
    (void) R_POEG_Reset(&g_poeg0_ctrl);
 /* Wait for the status to clear after reset before exiting the callback to ensure
the interrupt does not fire
  * again. */
 do
    {
      (void) R_POEG_StatusGet(&g_poeg0_ctrl, &status);
    } while (POEG_STATE_NO_DISABLE_REQUEST != status.state);
 /* Alternatively, if the POEG cannot be reset, disable the POEG interrupt to prevent
it from firing continuously.
  * Update the 0 in the macro below to match the POEG channel number. */
    NVIC_DisableIRQ(VECTOR_NUMBER_POEG0_EVENT);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	poeg_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ poeg_instance_ctrl_t

struct poeg_instance_ctrl_t
Channel control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when poeg_api_t::open is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_POEG_Open()

fsp_err_t R_POEG_Open (poeg_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, poeg_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initializes the POEG module and applies configurations. Implements poeg_api_t::open.

Note

The poeg_cfg_t::trigger setting can only be configured once after reset. Reopening with a different trigger configuration is not possible.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the POEG. */
   err = R_POEG_Open(&g_poeg0_ctrl, &g_poeg0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required input pointer is NULL or the source divider is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	poeg_cfg_t::p_callback is not NULL, but ISR is not enabled. ISR must be enabled to use callback.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The channel requested in the p_cfg parameter is not available on this device.

◆ R_POEG_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_POEG_StatusGet (poeg_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, poeg_status_t *const *p_status*)

Get current POEG status and store it in provided pointer p_status. Implements poeg_api_t::statusGet.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Determine the cause of the POEG event. */
poeg_status_t status;
   (void) R_POEG_StatusGet(&g_poeg0_ctrl, &status);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Current POEG state stored successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or p_status was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_POEG_OutputDisable()

fsp_err_t R_POEG_OutputDisable (poeg_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disables GPT output pins. Implements poeg_api_t::outputDisable.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	GPT output pins successfully disabled.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_POEG_Reset()

fsp_err_t R_POEG_Reset (poeg_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Resets status flags. Implements poeg_api_t::reset.

Note

Status flags are only reset if the original POEG trigger is resolved. Check the status using R_POEG_StatusGet after calling this function to verify the status is cleared.

Example:

```
 /* Correct the cause of the POEG event before resetting POEG. */
 /* Reset the POEG before exiting the callback. */
    (void) R_POEG_Reset(&g_poeg0_ctrl);
 /* Wait for the status to clear after reset before exiting the callback to ensure
the interrupt does not fire
  * again. */
 do
    {
      (void) R_POEG_StatusGet(&g_poeg0_ctrl, &status);
    } while (POEG_STATE_NO_DISABLE_REQUEST != status.state);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function attempted to clear status flags.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_POEG_Close()

fsp_err_t R_POEG_Close (poeg_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disables POEG interrupt. Implements poeg_api_t::close.

Note

This function does not disable the POEG.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance is not opened.

◆ R_POEG_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_POEG_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Sets driver version based on compile time macros. Implements poeg_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version stored in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version was NULL.

5.2.35 Quad Serial Peripheral Interface Flash (r_qspi)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_Open (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_Close (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_DirectWrite (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes, bool const read_after_write)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_DirectRead (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_SpiProtocolSet (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_protocol_t

	spi_protocol)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_XipEnter (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_XipExit (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_Write (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t byte_count)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_Erase (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_device_address, uint32_t byte_count)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_StatusGet (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_BankSet (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint32_t bank)
fsp_err_t	R_QSPI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the QSPI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SPI Flash Interface.

Overview

Features

The QSPI driver has the following key features:

- Memory mapped read access to the QSPI flash
- Programming the QSPI flash device
- Erasing the QSPI flash device
- Sending device specific commands and reading back responses
- Entering and exiting QPI mode
- Entering and exiting XIP mode
- 3 or 4 byte addressing

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_qspi

The following build time configurations are defined in driver/r_qspi_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Support Multiple Line	• Enabled	Disabled	If selected code for

Program in Extended SPI Mode	• Disabled		programming on multiple lines in extended SPI mode is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Storage > QSPI Driver on r_qspi

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Storage > QSPI Driver on r_qspi:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_qspi0	Module name.
General > SPI Protocol	• Extended SPI • QPI	Extended SPI	Select the initial SPI protocol. SPI protocol can be changed in R_QSPI_Direct().
General > Address Bytes	• 3 • 4 • 4 with 4-byte read code	3	Select the number of address bytes. Selecting '4 with 4-byte read code' converts the default read code determined in Read Mode to the 4-byte version. If 4-byte mode is selected without using 4-byte commands, the application must issue the EN4B command using R_QSPI_Direct().
General > Read Mode	• Standard • Fast Read • Fast Read Dual Output • Fast Read Dual I/O • Fast Read Quad Output • Fast Read Quad I/O	Fast Read Quad I/O	Select the read mode for memory mapped access.
General > Dummy Clocks for Fast Read	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	Default	Select the number of dummy clocks for fast read operations. Default is 6 clocks for Fast Read Quad I/O, 4 clocks for Fast Read Dual I/O, and 8 clocks for other fast read instructions including Fast Read Quad

			Output, Fast Read Dual Output, and Fast Read
General > Page Size Bytes	Must be an integer greater than 0	256	The maximum number of bytes allowed for a single write.
Command Definitions > Page Program Command	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0x02	The command to program a page. If 'Support Multiple Line Program in Extended SPI Mode' is Enabled, this command must use the same number of data lines as the selected read mode.
Command Definitions > Page Program Address Lines	• 1 • 2 • 4	1	Select the number of lines to use for the address bytes during write operations. This can be determined by referencing the datasheet for the external QSPI. It should either be 1 or match the number of data lines used for memory mapped fast read operations.
Command Definitions > Write Enable Command	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0x06	The command to enable write.
Command Definitions > Status Command	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0x05	The command to query the status of a write or erase command.
Command Definitions > Write Status Bit	Must be an integer between 0 and 7	0	Which bit contains the write in progress status returned from the Write Status Command.
Command Definitions > Sector Erase Command	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0x20	The command to erase a sector. Set Sector Erase Size to 0 if unused.
Command Definitions > Sector Erase Size	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	4096	The sector erase size. Set Sector Erase Size to 0 if Sector Erase is not supported.
Command Definitions > Block Erase Command	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0xD8	The command to erase a block. Set Block Erase Size to 0 if

			unused.
Command Definitions > Block Erase Size	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	65536	The block erase size. Set Block Erase Size to 0 if Block Erase is not supported.
Command Definitions > Block Erase 32KB Command	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0x52	The command to erase a 32KB block. Set Block Erase Size to 0 if unused.
Command Definitions > Block Erase 32KB Size	Must be an integer greater than or equal to 0	32768	The block erase 32KB size. Set Block Erase 32KB Size to 0 if Block Erase 32KB is not supported.
Command Definitions > Chip Erase Command	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0xC7	The command to erase the entire chip. Set Chip Erase Command to 0 if unused.
Command Definitions > XIP Enter M7-M0	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0x20	How to set M7-M0 to enter XIP mode.
Command Definitions > XIP Exit M7-M0	Must be an 8-bit QSPI command	0xFF	How to set M7-M0 exit XIP mode.
Bus Timing > QSPKCLK Divisor	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	2	Select the divisor to apply to PCLK to get QSPCLK.
Bus Timing > Minimum QSSL Deselect Cycles	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	4 QSPCLK	Define the minimum number of QSPCLK cycles for QSSL to remain high beween operations.

Clock Configuration

The QSPI clock is derived from PCLKA.

Pin Configuration

The following pins are available to connect to an external QSPI device:

- QSPCLK: QSPI clock output
- QSSL: QSPI slave select
- QIO0: Data 0 I/O
- QIO1: Data 1 I/O
- QIO2: Data 2 I/O
- QIO3: Data 3 I/O

Note

It is recommended to configure the pins with IOPORT_CFG_DRIVE_HIGH.

Usage Notes

QSPI Memory Mapped Access

After R_QSPI_Open() completes successfully, the QSPI flash device contents are mapped to address 0x60000000 and can be read like on-chip flash.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the QSPI driver:

- Only P500-P503 are currently supported by the J-Link driver to flash the QSPI.
- The default J-Link downloader requires the device to be in extended SPI mode (not QPI mode).

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the QSPI in an application.

```
#define QSPI_EXAMPLE_DATA_LENGTH (1024)
uint8_t g_dest[QSPI_EXAMPLE_DATA_LENGTH];
/* Place data in the .qspi_flash section to flash it during programming. */
const uint8_t g_src[QSPI_EXAMPLE_DATA_LENGTH] BSP_PLACE_IN_SECTION(".qspi_flash") =
"ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ";
/* Place code in the .code_in_qspi section to flash it during programming. */
void r_qspi_example_function(void) BSP_PLACE_IN_SECTION(".code_in_qspi")
__attribute__((noinline));
void r_qspi_example_function (void)
{
 /* Add code here. */
}
void r_qspi_basic_example (void)
{
 /* Open the QSPI instance. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_QSPI_Open(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &g_qspi0_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* (Optional) Send device specific initialization commands. */
    r_qspi_example_init();
 /* After R_QSPI_Open() and any required device specific intiialization, data can be
read directly from the QSPI flash. */
    memcpy(&g_dest[0], &g_src[0], QSPI_EXAMPLE_DATA_LENGTH);
 /* After R_QSPI_Open() and any required device specific intiialization, functions in
the QSPI flash can be called. */
    r_qspi_example_function();
}
```

Initialization Command Structure Example

This is an example of the types of commands that can be used to initialize the QSPI.

```
#define QSPI_COMMAND_WRITE_ENABLE (0x06U)
#define QSPI_COMMAND_WRITE_STATUS_REGISTER (0x01U)
#define QSPI_COMMAND_ENTER_QPI_MODE (0x38U)
#define QSPI_EXAMPLE_STATUS_REGISTER_1 (0x40)
#define QSPI_EXAMPLE_STATUS_REGISTER_2 (0x00)
static void r_qspi_example_init (void)
{
 /* Write status registers */
 /* Write one byte to enable writing to the status register, then deassert QSSL. */
    uint8_t   data[4];
 fsp_err_t err;
    data[0] = QSPI_COMMAND_WRITE_ENABLE;
    err    = R_QSPI_DirectWrite(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &data[0], 1, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write 3 bytes, including the write status register command followed by values for
both status registers. In the
  * status registers, set QE to 1 and other bits to their default setting. After all
data is written, deassert the
  * QSSL line. */
    data[0] = QSPI_COMMAND_WRITE_STATUS_REGISTER;
    data[1] = QSPI_EXAMPLE_STATUS_REGISTER_1;
    data[2] = QSPI_EXAMPLE_STATUS_REGISTER_2;
    err    = R_QSPI_DirectWrite(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &data[0], 3, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for status register to update. */
 spi_flash_status_t status;
 do
    {
       (void) R_QSPI_StatusGet(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &status);
    } while (true == status.write_in_progress);
 /* Write one byte to enter QSPI mode, then deassert QSSL. After entering QPI mode on
the device, change the SPI
  * protocol to QPI mode on the MCU peripheral. */
    data[0] = QSPI_COMMAND_ENTER_QPI_MODE;
    err    = R_QSPI_DirectWrite(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &data[0], 1, false);
    handle_error(err);
    (void) R_QSPI_SpiProtocolSet(&g_qspi0_ctrl, SPI_FLASH_PROTOCOL_QPI);
}
```

Reading Status Register Example (R_QSPI_DirectWrite, R_QSPI_DirectRead)

This is an example of using R_QSPI_DirectWrite followed by R_QSPI_DirectRead to send the read status register command and read back the status register from the device.

```
#define QSPI_COMMAND_READ_STATUS_REGISTER (0x05U)
void r_qspi_direct_example (void)
{
 /* Read a status register. */
 /* Write one byte to read the status register. Do not deassert QSSL. */
    uint8_t   data;
 fsp_err_t err;
    data = QSPI_COMMAND_READ_STATUS_REGISTER;
    err = R_QSPI_DirectWrite(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &data, 1, true);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read one byte. After all data is read, deassert the QSSL line. */
    err = R_QSPI_DirectRead(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &data, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Status register contents are available in variable 'data'. */
}
```

Querying Device Size Example (R_QSPI_DirectWrite, R_QSPI_DirectRead)

This is an example of using R_QSPI_DirectWrite followed by R_QSPI_DirectRead to query the device size.

```
#define QSPI_EXAMPLE_COMMAND_READ_ID (0x9F)
#define QSPI_EXAMPLE_COMMAND_READ_SFDP (0x5A)
void r_qspi_size_example (void)
{
 /* Many QSPI devices support more than one way to query the device size. Consult the
datasheet for your
  * QSPI device to determine which of these methods are supported (if any). */
    uint32_t device_size_bytes;
 fsp_err_t err;
#ifdef QSPI_EXAMPLE_COMMAND_READ_ID
 /* This example shows how to get the device size by reading the manufacturer ID. */
    uint8_t data[4];
    data[0] = QSPI_EXAMPLE_COMMAND_READ_ID;
    err    = R_QSPI_DirectWrite(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &data[0], 1, true);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read 3 bytes. The third byte often represents the size of the QSPI, where the
size of the QSPI = 2 ^ N. */
    err = R_QSPI_DirectRead(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &data[0], 3);
    handle_error(err);
    device_size_bytes = 1U << data[2];
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(device_size_bytes);
#endif
#ifdef QSPI_EXAMPLE_COMMAND_READ_SFDP
 /* Read the JEDEC SFDP header to locate the JEDEC flash parameters table. Reference
JESD216 "Serial Flash
  * Discoverable Parameters (SFDP)". */
 /* Send the standard 0x5A command followed by 3 address bytes (SFDP header is at
address 0). */
    uint8_t buffer[16];
    memset(&buffer[0], 0, sizeof(buffer));
    buffer[0] = QSPI_EXAMPLE_COMMAND_READ_SFDP;
    err       = R_QSPI_DirectWrite(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &buffer[0], 4, true);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read out 16 bytes (1 dummy byte followed by 15 data bytes). */
    err = R_QSPI_DirectRead(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &buffer[0], 16);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read the JEDEC flash parameters to locate the memory size. */
 /* Send the standard 0x5A command followed by 3 address bytes (located in big endian
order at offset 0xC-0xE).
  * These bytes are accessed at 0xD-0xF because the first byte read is a dummy byte.
*/
    buffer[0] = QSPI_EXAMPLE_COMMAND_READ_SFDP;
    buffer[1] = buffer[0xF];
    buffer[2] = buffer[0xE];
    buffer[3] = buffer[0xD];
    err       = R_QSPI_DirectWrite(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &buffer[0], 4, true);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read out 9 bytes (1 dummy byte followed by 8 data bytes). */
    err = R_QSPI_DirectRead(&g_qspi0_ctrl, &buffer[0], 9);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read the memory density (located in big endian order at offset 0x4-0x7). These
bytes are accessed at 0x5-0x8
  * because the first byte read is a dummy byte. */
    uint32_t memory_density = (uint32_t) ((buffer[8] << 24) | (buffer[7] << 16) |
(buffer[6] << 8) | buffer[5]);
 if ((1U << 31) & memory_density)
    {
 /* For densities 4 gigabits and above, bit-31 is set to 1b. The field 30:0 defines
'N' where the density is
  * computed as 2^N bits (N must be >= 32). This code subtracts 3 from N to divide by
8 to get the size in
  * bytes instead of bits. */
       device_size_bytes = 1U << ((memory_density & ~(1U << 31)) - 3U);
    }
 else
    {
 /* For densities 2 gigabits or less, bit-31 is set to 0b. The field 30:0 defines the
size in bits. This
  * code divides the memory density by 8 to get the size in bytes instead of bits. */
       device_size_bytes = (memory_density / 8) + 1;
    }
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(device_size_bytes);
#endif
}
```

Data Structures

struct	qspi_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	qspi_qssl_min_high_level_t
enum	qspi_qspclk_div_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ qspi_instance_ctrl_t

struct qspi_instance_ctrl_t
Instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when spi_flash_api_t::open is called

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ qspi_qssl_min_high_level_t

enum qspi_qssl_min_high_level_t

Enumerator	
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_1_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 1 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_2_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 2 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_3_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 3 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_4_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 4 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_5_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 5 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_6_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 6 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_7_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 7 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_8_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 8 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_9_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 9 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_10_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 10 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_11_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 11 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_12_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 12 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_13_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 13 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_14_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 14 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_15_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 15 QSPCLK.
QSPI_QSSL_MIN_HIGH_LEVEL_16_QSPCLK	QSSL deselected for at least 16 QSPCLK.

◆ qspi_qspclk_div_t

enum qspi_qspclk_div_t	
Enumerator	
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_2	QSPCLK = PCLK / 2.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_3	QSPCLK = PCLK / 3.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_4	QSPCLK = PCLK / 4.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_5	QSPCLK = PCLK / 5.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_6	QSPCLK = PCLK / 6.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_7	QSPCLK = PCLK / 7.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_8	QSPCLK = PCLK / 8.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_9	QSPCLK = PCLK / 9.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_10	QSPCLK = PCLK / 10.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_11	QSPCLK = PCLK / 11.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_12	QSPCLK = PCLK / 12.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_13	QSPCLK = PCLK / 13.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_14	QSPCLK = PCLK / 14.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_15	QSPCLK = PCLK / 15.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_16	QSPCLK = PCLK / 16.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_17	QSPCLK = PCLK / 17.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_18	QSPCLK = PCLK / 18.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_19	QSPCLK = PCLK / 19.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_20	QSPCLK = PCLK / 20.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_22	QSPCLK = PCLK / 22.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_24	QSPCLK = PCLK / 24.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_26	

	QSPCLK = PCLK / 26.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_28	QSPCLK = PCLK / 28.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_30	QSPCLK = PCLK / 30.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_32	QSPCLK = PCLK / 32.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_34	QSPCLK = PCLK / 34.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_36	QSPCLK = PCLK / 36.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_38	QSPCLK = PCLK / 38.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_40	QSPCLK = PCLK / 40.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_42	QSPCLK = PCLK / 42.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_44	QSPCLK = PCLK / 44.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_46	QSPCLK = PCLK / 46.
QSPI_QSPCLK_DIV_48	QSPCLK = PCLK / 48.

Function Documentation

◆ R_QSPI_Open()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_Open (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, spi_flash_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Open the QSPI driver module. After the driver is open, the QSPI can be accessed like internal flash memory starting at address 0x60000000.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::open.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Configuration was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_instance_ctrl or p_cfg is NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Driver has already been opened with the same p_instance_ctrl.

◆ R_QSPI_Close()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_Close (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Close the QSPI driver module.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Configuration was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_instance_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.

◆ R_QSPI_DirectWrite()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_DirectWrite (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_src*, uint32_t const *bytes*, bool const *read_after_write*)

Writes raw data directly to the QSPI.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::directWrite.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The flash was programmed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	This function can't be called when XIP mode is enabled.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	The device is busy.

◆ R_QSPI_DirectRead()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_DirectRead (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Reads raw data directly from the QSPI. This API can only be called after R_QSPI_DirectWrite with read_after_write set to true.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::directRead.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The flash was programmed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	This function must be called after R_QSPI_DirectWrite with read_after_write set to true.

◆ R_QSPI_SpiProtocolSet()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_SpiProtocolSet (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, spi_flash_protocol_t *spi_protocol*)

Sets the SPI protocol.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::spiProtocolSet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	SPI protocol updated on MCU peripheral.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.

◆ R_QSPI_XipEnter()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_XipEnter (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Enters XIP (execute in place) mode.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::xipEnter.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The flash was programmed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.

◆ R_QSPI_XipExit()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_XipExit (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Exits XIP (execute in place) mode.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::xipExit.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The flash was programmed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.

◆ R_QSPI_Write()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_Write (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_src*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t *byte_count*)

Program a page of data to the flash.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::write.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The flash was programmed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_instance_ctrl, p_dest or p_src is NULL, or byte_count crosses a page boundary.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	This function can't be called when XIP mode is enabled.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	The device is busy.

◆ R_QSPI_Erase()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_Erase (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_device_address*, uint32_t *byte_count*)

Erase a block or sector of flash. The byte_count must exactly match one of the erase sizes defined in spi_flash_cfg_t. For chip erase, byte_count must be SPI_FLASH_ERASE_SIZE_CHIP_ERASE.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::erase.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The command to erase the flash was executed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_instance_ctrl or p_device_address is NULL, or byte_count doesn't match an erase size defined in spi_flash_cfg_t, or device is in XIP mode.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	This function can't be called when XIP mode is enabled.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	The device is busy.

◆ R_QSPI_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_StatusGet (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, spi_flash_status_t *const *p_status*)

Gets the write or erase status of the flash.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::statusGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The write status is in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_instance_ctrl or p_status is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_MODE	This function can't be called when XIP mode is enabled.

◆ R_QSPI_BankSet()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_BankSet (spi_flash_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, uint32_t *bank*)

Selects the bank to access. A bank is a 64MB sliding access window into the QSPI device flash memory space. To access chip address 0x4000000, select bank 1, then read from internal flash address 0x60000000. To access chip address 0x8001000, select bank 2, then read from internal flash address 0x60001000.

This function is not required for memory devices less than or equal to 512 Mb (64MB).

Implements spi_flash_api_t::bankSet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Bank successfully selected.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver is not opened.

◆ R_QSPI_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_QSPI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros.

Implements spi_flash_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.36 Realtime Clock (r_rtc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_RTC_Open (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_Close (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_time_t *const p_time)

fsp_err_t	R_RTC_CalendarTimeGet (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_time_t *const p_time)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_CalendarAlarmSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_alarm_time_t *const p_alarm)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_CalendarAlarmGet (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_alarm_time_t *const p_alarm)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_PeriodicIrqRateSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_periodic_irq_select_t const rate)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_ErrorAdjustmentSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t const *const err_adj_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_InfoGet (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_info_t *const p_rtc_info)
fsp_err_t	R_RTC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the RTC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the RTC Interface.

Overview

The RTC HAL module configures the RTC module and controls clock, calendar and alarm functions. A callback can be used to respond to the alarm and periodic interrupt.

Features

- RTC time and date get and set.
- RTC time and date alarm get and set.
- RTC alarm and periodic event notification.

The RTC HAL module supports three different interrupt types:

- An alarm interrupt generated on a match of any combination of year, month, day, day of the week, hour, minute or second
- A periodic interrupt generated every 2, 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32, 1/64, 1/128, or 1/256 second(s)
- A carry interrupt is used internally when reading time from the RTC calender to get accurant time readings.

Note

See section "23.3.5 Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time" of the RA6M3 manual R01UH0886EJ0100 for more details.

A user-defined callback function can be registered (in the rtc_api_t::open API call) and will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR) for alarm and periodic interrupt. When called, it is passed a pointer to a structure (rtc_callback_args_t) that holds a user-defined context pointer and an indication of which type of interrupt was fired.

Date and Time validation

"Parameter Checking" needs to be enabled if date and time validation is required for calendarTimeSet and calendarAlarmSet APIs. If "Parameter Checking" is enabled, the 'day of the week' field is automatically calculated and updated by the driver for the provided date. When using the calendarAlarmSet API, only the fields which have their corresponding match flag set are written to the registers. Other register fields are reset to default value.

Sub-Clock error adjustment (Time Error Adjustment Function)

The time error adjustment function is used to correct errors, running fast or slow, in the time caused by variation in the precision of oscillation by the sub-clock oscillator. Because 32,768 cycles of the sub-clock oscillator constitute 1 second of operation when the sub-clock oscillator is selected, the clock runs fast if the sub-clock frequency is high and slow if the sub-clock frequency is low. The time error adjustment functions include:

- Automatic adjustment
- Adjustment by software

The error adjustment is reset every time RTC is reconfigured or time is set.

Note

RTC driver configurations do not do error adjustment internally while initiliazing the driver. Application must make calls to the error adjustment api's for desired adjustment. See section 26.3.8 "Time Error Adjustment Function" of the RA6M3 manual R01UH0886EJ0100) for more details on this feature

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_rtc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_rtc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Timers > RTC Driver on r_rtc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Timers > RTC Driver on r_rtc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_rtc0	Module name.
Clock Source	• Sub-Clock • LOCO	LOCO	Select the RTC clock source.
Frequency Comparision Value (LOCO)	Value must be a positive integer between 7 and 511	255	Frequency comparison value when using LOCO

Automatic Adjustment Mode	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enable/ Disable the Error Adjustment mode
Automatic Adjustment Period	• 10 Seconds • 1 Minute • NONE	10 Seconds	Select the Error Adjustment Period for Automatic Adjustment
Adjustment Type (Plus-Minus)	• NONE • Addition • Subtraction	NONE	Select the Error Adjustment type
Error Adjustment Value	Value must be a positive integer less than equal to 63	0	Specify the Adjustment Value (the number of sub-clock cycles) from the prescaler
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR).
Alarm Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the alarm interrupt priority.
Period Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the period interrupt priority.
Carry Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the carry interrupt priority.

Note

See 23.2.20 Frequency Register (RFRH/RFRL) of the RA6M3 manual R01UH0886EJ0100) for more details

Interrupt Configuration

To activate interrupts for the RTC module, the desired interrupts must be enabled, The underlying implementation will be expected to handle any interrupts it can support and notify higher layers via callback.

Clock Configuration

The RTC HAL module can use the following clock sources:

- LOCO (Low Speed On-Chip Oscillator) with less accuracy
- Sub-clock oscillator with increased accuracy

The LOCO is the default selection during configuration.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

System Initialization

- RTC driver does not start the sub-clock. The application is responsible for ensuring required clocks are started and stable before accessing MCU peripheral registers.

Warning

The subclock can take seconds to stabilize. The RA startup code does not wait for subclock stabilization unless the subclock is the main clock source. When running AGT or RTC off the subclock, the application must ensure the subclock is stable before starting operation.

- Carry interrupt priority must be set to avoid incorrect time returned from calendarTimeGet API during roll-over.
- Even when only running in Periodic Interrupt mode R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet must be called successfully to start the RTC.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the RTC: Below features are not supported by the driver

- Binary-count mode
- The R_RTC_CalendarTimeGet() cannot be used from an interrupt that has higher priority than the carry interrupt. Also, it must not be called with interrupts disabled globally, as this API internally uses carry interrupt for its processing. API may return incorrect time if this is done.

Examples

RTC Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the RTC in an application.

```
/* rtc_time_t is an alias for the C Standard time.h struct 'tm' */
rtc_time_t set_time =
{
    .tm_sec = 10,
    .tm_min = 11,
    .tm_hour = 12,
    .tm_mday = 6,
    .tm_wday = 3,
    .tm_mon = 11,
    .tm_year = YEARS_SINCE_1900,
};
rtc_time_t get_time;
void rtc_example ()
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the RTC module */
    err = R_RTC_Open(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &g_rtc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set the calendar time */
 R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &set_time);
 /* Get the calendar time */
 R_RTC_CalendarTimeGet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &get_time);
}
```

RTC Periodic interrupt example

This is an example of periodic interrupt in RTC.

```
void rtc_periodic_irq_example ()
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the RTC module*/
    err = R_RTC_Open(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &g_rtc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet must be called at least once to start the RTC */
 R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &set_time);
 /* Set the periodic interrupt rate to 1 second */
 R_RTC_PeriodicIrqRateSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_SECOND);
 /* Wait for the periodic interrupt */
 while (1)
    {
 /* Wait for interrupt */
    }
}
```

RTC Alarm interrupt example

This is an example of alarm interrupt in RTC.

```
void rtc_alarm_irq_example ()
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /*Initialize the RTC module*/
    err = R_RTC_Open(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &g_rtc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &set_time1.time);
 R_RTC_CalendarAlarmSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &set_time1);
 /* Wait for the Alarm interrupt */
 while (1)
    {
 /* Wait for interrupt */
    }
}
```

RTC Error Adjustment example

This is an example of modifying error adjustment in RTC.

```
void rtc_erroradj_example ()
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /*Initialize the RTC module*/
 R_RTC_Open(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &g_rtc1_cfg);
 R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &set_time1.time);
 /* Modify Error Adjustment after RTC is running */
    err = R_RTC_ErrorAdjustmentSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &err_cfg2);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	rtc_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ rtc_instance_ctrl_t

struct rtc_instance_ctrl_t		
Channel control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when rtc_api_t::open is called		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	open	Whether or not driver is open.
const rtc_cfg_t *	p_cfg	Pointer to initial configurations.
volatile bool	carry_isr_triggered	Was the carry isr triggered.

Function Documentation

◆ R_RTC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_Open (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens and configures the RTC driver module. Implements rtc_api_t::open. Configuration includes clock source, and interrupt callback function.

Example:

```
/* Initialize the RTC module */
   err = R_RTC_Open(&g_rtc0_ctrl, &g_rtc0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Initialization was successful and RTC has started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid p_ctrl or p_cfg pointer.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid time parameter field.

◆ R_RTC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_Close (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Close the RTC driver. Implements rtc_api_t::close

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	De-Initialization was successful and RTC driver closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid p_ctrl.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open already for close.

◆ R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_time_t *const *p_time*)

Set the calendar time.

Implements rtc_api_t::calendarTimeSet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Calendar time set operation was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open already for operation.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid time parameter field.

◆ R_RTC_CalendarTimeGet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_CalendarTimeGet (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_time_t *const *p_time*)

Get the calendar time.

Warning

Do not call this function from a critical section or from an interrupt with higher priority than the carry interrupt, or the time returned may be inaccurate.

Implements rtc_api_t::calendarTimeGet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Calendar time get operation was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open already for operation.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	User IRQ parameter not valid

◆ R_RTC_CalendarAlarmSet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_CalendarAlarmSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_alarm_time_t *const *p_alarm*)

Set the calendar alarm time.

Implements rtc_api_t::calendarAlarmSet.

Precondition
The calendar counter must be running before the alarm can be set.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Calendar alarm time set operation was successful.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid time parameter field.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open already for operation.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	User IRQ parameter not valid

◆ R_RTC_CalendarAlarmGet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_CalendarAlarmGet (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_alarm_time_t *const *p_alarm*)

Get the calendar alarm time.

Implements rtc_api_t::calendarAlarmGet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Calendar alarm time get operation was successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open already for operation.

◆ R_RTC_PeriodicIrqRateSet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_PeriodicIrqRateSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_periodic_irq_select_t const *rate*)

Set the periodic interrupt rate and enable periodic interrupt.

Implements rtc_api_t::periodicIrqRateSet

Note

To start the RTC R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet must be called at least once.

Example:

```
/* Set the periodic interrupt rate to 1 second */
R_RTC_PeriodicIrqRateSet(&g_rtc0_ctrl, RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_SECOND);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	The periodic interrupt rate was successfully set.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open already for operation.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	User IRQ parameter not valid

◆ R_RTC_ErrorAdjustmentSet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_ErrorAdjustmentSet (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t const *const *err_adj_cfg*)

This function sets time error adjustment

Implements rtc_api_t::errorAdjustmentSet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Time error adjustment successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open for operation.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	The clock source is not sub-clock.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid error adjustment value.

◆ R_RTC_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_InfoGet (rtc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rtc_info_t *const *p_rtc_info*)

Set RTC clock source and running status information ad store it in provided pointer p_rtc_info

Implements rtc_api_t::infoGet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Get information Successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Invalid input argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver not open already for operation.

◆ R_RTC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_RTC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Get driver version based on compile time macros.

Implements rtc_api_t::versionGet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

5.2.37 Serial Communications Interface (SCI) I2C (r_sci_i2c)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SCI_I2C_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_I2C_Open (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, i2c_master_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_I2C_Close (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_I2C_Read (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_I2C_Write (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const

	p_src, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_I2C_Abort (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_I2C_SlaveAddressSet (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const slave, i2c_master_addr_mode_t const addr_mode)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SCI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2C Master Interface.

Overview

The Simple I2C master on SCI HAL module supports transactions with an I2C Slave device. Callbacks must be provided which would be invoked when a transmission or receive has been completed. The callback arguments will contain information about the transaction status, bytes transferred and a pointer to the user defined context.

Features

- Supports multiple transmission rates
  - Standard Mode Support with up to 100 kHz transaction rate.
  - Fast Mode Support with up to 400 kHz transaction rate.
- SDA Delay in nanoseconds can be specified as a part of the configuration.
- I2C Master Read from a slave device.
- I2C Master Write to a slave device.
- Abort any in-progress transactions.
- Set the address of the slave device.
- Non-blocking behavior is achieved by the use of callbacks.
- Additional build-time features
  - Optional (build time) DTC support for read and write respectively.
  - Optional (build time) support for 10-bit slave addressing.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_sci_i2c

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_sci_i2c_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
DTC on Transmission and Reception	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If enabled, DTC instances will be included in the build for both transmission and reception.
10-bit slave addressing	• Enabled	Disabled	If enabled, the driver

	• Disabled		will support 10-bit slave addressing mode along with the default 7-bit slave addressing mode.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > I2C Master Driver on r_sci_i2c

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > I2C Master Driver on r_sci_i2c:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_i2c0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be an integer between 0 and 9	0	Select the SCI channel.
Slave Address	Value must be a hex value	0x00	Specify the slave address.
Address Mode	• 7-Bit • 10-Bit	7-Bit	Select the address mode.
Rate	• Standard • Fast-mode	Standard	Select the I2C data rate.
SDA Output Delay (nano seconds)	Must be a valid non-negative integer with maximum configurable value of 300	300	Specify the SDA output delay in nanoseconds.
Noise filter setting	• Use clock signal divided by 1 with noise filter • Use clock signal divided by 2 with noise filter • Use clock signal divided by 4 with noise filter • Use clock signal divided by 8 with noise filter	Use clock signal divided by 1 with noise filter	Select the sampling clock for the digital noise filter
Bit Rate Modulation	• Enable • Disable	Enable	Enabling bitrate modulation reduces the percent error of the actual bitrate with respect to the requested baud rate. It does this by modulating the number of cycles per clock output pulse, so the

			clock is no longer a square wave.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	sci_i2c_master_callback	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR).
Interrupt Priority Level	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority level. This is set for TXI, RXI (if used), TEI interrupts.
RX Interrupt Priority Level [Only used when DTC is enabled]	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority level. This is set for RXI only when DTC is enabled.

Clock Configuration

The SCI I2C peripheral module uses either PCLKA or PCLKB (depending on the MCU) as its clock source. The actual I2C transfer rate will be calculated and set by the tooling depending on the selected transfer rate and the SDA delay. If the PCLK is configured in such a manner that the selected internal rate cannot be achieved, an error will be returned.

Pin Configuration

The SCI I2C peripheral module uses pins on the MCU to communicate to external devices. I/O pins must be selected and configured as required by the external device. An I2C channel would consist of two pins - SDA and SCL for data/address and clock respectively.

Usage Notes

Interrupt Configuration

- Receive buffer full (RXI), transmit buffer empty (TXI) and transmit end (TEI) interrupts for the selected channel used must be enabled in the properties of the selected device.
- Set equal priority levels for all the interrupts mentioned above. Setting the interrupts to different priority levels could result in improper operation.

SCI I2C Master Rate Calculation

- The configuration tool calculates the internal baud-rate setting based on the configured transfer rate and SDA Delay. The closest possible baud-rate that can be achieved (less than or equal to the requested rate) at the current PCLK settings is calculated and used.
- If a valid clock rate could not be calculated, an error is returned by the tool.

Enabling DTC with the SCI I2C

- DTC transfer support is configurable and is disabled from the build by default. SCI I2C driver provides two DTC instances for transmission and reception respectively.
- For further details on DTC please refer Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc)

Multiple Devices on the Bus

- A single SCI I2C instance can be used to communicate with multiple slave devices on the same channel by using the SlaveAddressSet API.

Restart

- SCI I2C master can hold the the bus after an I2C transaction by issuing Restart. This will mimic a stop followed by start condition.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the r_sci_i2c in an application. This example shows how this driver can be used for basic read and write operations.

```
void basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
    uint32_t i;
    uint32_t timeout_ms = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
 /* Initialize the IIC module */
    err = R_SCI_I2C_Open(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_1, &g_i2c_device_cfg_1);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write some data to the transmit buffer */
 for (i = 0; i < I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES; i++)
    {
       g_i2c_tx_buffer[i] = (uint8_t) i;
    }
 /* Send data to I2C slave */
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    err = R_SCI_I2C_Write(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_1, &g_i2c_tx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers*/
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
```

```
       timeout_ms--;;
    }
 if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Read data back from the I2C slave */
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    timeout_ms          = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    err = R_SCI_I2C_Read(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_1, &g_i2c_rx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Since there is nothing else to do, block until Callback triggers*/
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
       timeout_ms--;;
    }
 if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Verify the read data */
 if (0U != memcmp(g_i2c_tx_buffer, g_i2c_rx_buffer, I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES))
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
}
```

Multiple Slave devices on the same channel (bus)

This example demonstrates how a single SCI I2C driver can be used to communicate with different slave devices which are on the same channel.

```
void single_channel_multi_slave (void)
```

```
{
 fsp_err_t err;
    uint32_t timeout_ms = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    err = R_SCI_I2C_Open(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2, &g_i2c_device_cfg_2);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Clear the recieve buffer */
    memset(g_i2c_rx_buffer, '0', I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES);
 /* Read data from I2C slave */
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    err = R_SCI_I2C_Read(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2, &g_i2c_rx_buffer[0],
I2C_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES, false);
    handle_error(err);
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
       timeout_ms--;;
    }
 if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Send data to I2C slave on the same channel */
    err = R_SCI_I2C_SlaveAddressSet(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2, I2C_SLAVE_DISPLAY_ADAPTER,
I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_7BIT);
    handle_error(err);
    g_i2c_tx_buffer[0]   = (uint8_t) I2C_EXAMPLE_DATA_1;
    g_i2c_tx_buffer[1]   = (uint8_t) I2C_EXAMPLE_DATA_2;
    g_i2c_callback_event = I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED;
    timeout_ms          = I2C_TRANSACTION_BUSY_DELAY;
    err = R_SCI_I2C_Write(&g_i2c_device_ctrl_2, &g_i2c_tx_buffer[0], 2U, false);
    handle_error(err);
 while ((I2C_MASTER_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE != g_i2c_callback_event) && timeout_ms)
    {
```

```
R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
      timeout_ms--;;
   }
if (I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED == g_i2c_callback_event)
   {
      __BKPT(0);
   }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	sci_i2c_clock_settings_t
struct	sci_i2c_instance_ctrl_t
struct	sci_i2c_extended_cfg_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ sci_i2c_clock_settings_t

struct sci_i2c_clock_settings_t

I2C clock settings

Data Fields

bool	bitrate_modulation	Bit-rate Modulation Function enable or disable.
uint8_t	brr_value	Bit rate register settings.
uint8_t	clk_divisor_value	Clock Select settings.
uint8_t	mddr_value	Modulation Duty Register settings.
uint8_t	cycles_value	SDA Delay Output Cycles Select.
uint8_t	snfr_value	Noise Filter Setting Register value.

◆ sci_i2c_instance_ctrl_t

struct sci_i2c_instance_ctrl_t

I2C control structure. DO NOT INITIALIZE.

◆ sci_i2c_extended_cfg_t

struct sci_i2c_extended_cfg_t

SCI I2C extended configuration

Data Fields		
sci_i2c_clock_settings_t	clock_settings	I2C Clock settings.

Function Documentation

◆ R_SCI_I2C_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_I2C_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Sets driver version based on compile time macros.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful version get.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

◆ R_SCI_I2C_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_I2C_Open (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, i2c_master_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the I2C device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Requested clock rate was set exactly.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter check failure due to one or more reasons below: 1. p_api_ctrl or p_cfg is NULL. 2. extended parameter is NULL. 3. Callback parameter is NULL. 4. Clock rate requested is greater than 400KHz 5. Invalid IRQ number assigned

◆ R_SCI_I2C_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_I2C_Close (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Closes the I2C device. Power down I2C peripheral.

This function will safely terminate any in-progress I2C transfer with the device. If a transfer is aborted, the user will be notified via callback with an abort event. Since the callback is optional, this function will also return a specific error code in this situation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device closed without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device was not even opened.

◆ R_SCI_I2C_Read()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_I2C_Read (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *bytes*, bool const *restart*)

Performs a read from the I2C device. The caller will be notified when the operation has completed (successfully) by an I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE in the callback.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_ctrl, p_dest is NULL, bytes is 0.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	Provided number of bytes more than uint16_t size (65535) while DTC is used for data transfer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device was not even opened.

◆ R_SCI_I2C_Write()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_I2C_Write (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_src*, uint32_t const *bytes*, bool const *restart*)

Performs a write to the I2C device.

This function will fail if there is already an in-progress I2C transfer on the associated channel. Otherwise, the I2C write operation will begin. When no callback is provided by the user, this function performs a blocking write. Otherwise, the write operation is non-blocking and the caller will be notified when the operation has finished by an I2C_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE in the callback.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl, p_src is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	Provided number of bytes more than uint16_t size (65535) while DTC is used for data transfer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device was not even opened.

◆ R_SCI_I2C_Abort()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_I2C_Abort (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Aborts any in-progress transfer and forces the I2C peripheral into a ready state.

This function will safely terminate any in-progress I2C transfer with the device. If a transfer is aborted, the user will be notified via callback with an abort event. Since the callback is optional, this function will also return a specific error code in this situation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transaction was aborted without issue.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device was not even opened.

◆ R_SCI_I2C_SlaveAddressSet()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_I2C_SlaveAddressSet (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *slave*, i2c_master_addr_mode_t const *addr_mode*)

Sets address and addressing mode of the slave device.

This function is used to set the device address and addressing mode of the slave without reconfiguring the entire bus.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Address of the slave is set correctly.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl or address is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device was not even opened.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	An I2C Transaction is in progress.

5.2.38 Serial Communications Interface (SCI) SPI (r_sci_spi)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SCI_SPI_Open (spi_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, spi_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_SPI_Read (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_SPI_Write (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void const *p_src, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_SPI_WriteRead (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void const *p_src, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_SPI_Close (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_SPI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_SPI_CalculateBitrate (uint32_t bitrate, sci_spi_div_setting_t *sclk_div, bool use_mddr)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SCI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SPI Interface.

Overview

Features

- Standard SPI Modes
  - Master or Slave Mode
  - Clock Polarity (CPOL)
    - CPOL=0 SCLK is low when idle
    - CPOL=1 SCLK is high when idle
  - Clock Phase (CPHA)
    - CPHA=0 Data Sampled on the even edge of SCLK
    - CPHA=1 Data Sampled on the odd edge of SCLK
  - MSB/LSB first
- Configurable bit rate
- DTC Support
- Callback Events
  - Transfer Complete
  - RX Overflow Error (The SCI shift register is copied to the data register before previous data was read)

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_sci_spi

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_sci_spi_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
DTC Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	If support for transfering data using the DTC will be compiled in.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > SPI Driver on r_sci_spi

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > SPI Driver on r_sci_spi:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_spi0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be an integer between 0 and 9	0	Select the SCI channel.
Operating Mode	• Master	Master	Select the SPI

	• Slave		operating mode.
Clock Phase	• Data sampling on odd edge, data variation on even edge • Data sampling on even edge, data variation on odd edge	Data sampling on odd edge, data variation on even edge	Select the clock edge to sample data.
Clock Polarity	• Low when idle • High when idle	Low when idle	Select clock level when idle.
Mode Fault Error	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Detect master/slave mode conflicts.
Bit Order	• MSB First • LSB First	MSB First	Select the data bit order.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	sci_spi_callback	A user callback function that is called from the sci spi interrupts when a transfer is completed or an error has occurred.
Receive Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the receive interrupt priority.
Transmit Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the transmit interrupt priority.
Transmit End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the transmit end interrupt priority.
Error Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the error interrupt priority.
Bitrate	Must be a valid non-negative integer with maximum configurable value of 30000000	30000000	Enter the desired bitrate.
Bitrate Modulation	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	Enabling bitrate modulation reduces the percent error of the actual bitrate with respect to the requested baud rate. It does this by modulating the number of cycles per clock output pulse, so the clock is no longer a square wave.

Clock Configuration

The SCI_SPI clock is derived from the following peripheral clock on each device.

MCU	Peripheral Clock
RA2A1	PCLKB
RA4M1	PCLKA
RA6M1	PCLKA
RA6M2	PCLKA
RA6M3	PCLKA

Pin Configuration

This module uses SCIn_MOSI, SCIn_MISO, SCIn_SPCK, and SCIn_SS pins to communicate with on board devices.

Note

At high bit rates, it might be necessary to configure the pins with IOPORT_CFG_DRIVE_HIGH.

Usage Notes

Transfer Complete Event

The transfer complete event is triggered when all of the data has been transfered. In slave mode if the SS pin is de-asserted then no transfer complete event is generated until the SS pin is asserted and the remaining data is transferred.

Performance

At high bit rates, interrupts may not be able to service transfers fast enough. In master mode this means there will be a delay between each data frame. In slave mode this could result in RX Overflow errors.

In order to improve performance at high bit rates, it is recommended that the instance be configured to service transfers using the DTC.

Transmit From RXI Interrupt

After every byte, the SCI SPI peripheral generates a transmit buffer empty interrupt and a receive buffer full interrupt. Whenever possible, the SCI_SPI module handles both interrupts in the receive buffer full interrupt. This improves performance when the DTC is not being used.

Slave Select Pin

- In master mode the slave select pin must be driven in software.
- In slave mode the hardware handles the slave select pin and will only transfer data when the SS pin is low.

Bit Rate Modulation

Depending on the peripheral clock frequency, the desired bit rate may not be achievable. With bit rate modulation, the device can remove a configurable number of input clock pulses to the internal bit rate counter in order to create the desired bit rate. This has the effect of changing the period of individual bits in order to achieve the desired average bit rate. For more information see section 34.9 Bit Rate Modulation Function in the RA6M3 manual.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the SCI_SPI in an application.

```
static volatile bool g_transfer_complete = false;
static void r_sci_spi_callback (spi_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE == p_args->event)
    {
       g_transfer_complete = true;
    }
}
void sci_spi_basic_example (void)
{
    uint8_t tx_buffer[TRANSFER_SIZE];
    uint8_t rx_buffer[TRANSFER_SIZE];
 /* Configure Slave Select Line 1 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_1, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 /* Configure Slave Select Line 2 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_2, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the SPI module. */
    err = R_SCI_SPI_Open(&g_spi_ctrl, &g_spi_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Assert Slave Select Line 1 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_1, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
 /* Start a write/read transfer */
    g_transfer_complete = false;
    err = R_SCI_SPI_WriteRead(&g_spi_ctrl, tx_buffer, rx_buffer, TRANSFER_SIZE,
SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE callback event. */
 while (false == g_transfer_complete)
    {
       ;
    }
 /* De-assert Slave Select Line 1 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_1, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 /* Wait for minimum time required between transfers. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(SSL_NEXT_ACCESS_DELAY, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
 /* Assert Slave Select Line 2 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_2, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
 /* Start a write/read transfer */
    g_transfer_complete = false;
    err = R_SCI_SPI_WriteRead(&g_spi_ctrl, tx_buffer, rx_buffer, TRANSFER_SIZE,
SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE callback event. */
 while (false == g_transfer_complete)
    {
       ;
    }
 /* De-assert Slave Select Line 2 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_2, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ R_SCI_SPI_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_SPI_Open (spi_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, spi_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initialize a channel for SPI communication mode. Implements spi_api_t::open.

This function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Enables the clock for the SCI channel.
- Initializes the associated registers with default value and the user-configurable options.
- Provides the channel handle for use with other API functions.

Parameters

p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure.
p_cfg	Pointer to a configuration structure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel initialized successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid or NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The instance has already been opened.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The channel number is invalid.

◆ R_SCI_SPI_Read()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_SPI_Read (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void * *p_dest*, uint32_t const *length*, spi_bit_width_t const *bit_width*)

Receive data from an SPI device. Implements spi_api_t::read.

The function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Enable transmitter.
- Enable receiver.
- Enable interrupts.
- Start data transmission by writing data to the TXD register.
- Receive data from receive buffer full interrupt occurs and copy data to the buffer of destination.
- Complete data reception via receive buffer full interrupt and transmitting dummy data.
- Disable transmitter.
- Disable receiver.
- Disable interrupts.

Parameters

	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure.
	p_dest	Pointer to the destination buffer.
[in]	length	The number of bytes to transfer.
[in]	bit_width	Invalid for SCI_SPI (Set to SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Read operation successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One of the following invalid parameters passed: • Pointer p_api_ctrl is NULL • Bit width is not 8 bits • Length is equal to 0 • Pointer to destination is NULL
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open the channel first.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	The given bit_width is not supported.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A transfer is already in progress.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::reconfigure

◆ R_SCI_SPI_Write()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_SPI_Write (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void const * *p_src*, uint32_t const *length*, spi_bit_width_t const *bit_width*)

Transmit data to a SPI device. Implements spi_api_t::write.

The function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Enable transmitter.
- Enable interrupts.
- Start data transmission with data via transmit buffer empty interrupt.
- Copy data from source buffer to the SPI data register for transmission.
- Complete data transmission via transmit buffer empty interrupt.
- Disable transmitter.
- Disable receiver.
- Disable interrupts.

Parameters

	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure.
	p_src	Pointer to the source buffer.
[in]	length	The number of bytes to transfer.
[in]	bit_width	Invalid for SCI_SPI (Set to SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write operation successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One of the following invalid parameters passed: • Pointer p_api_ctrl is NULL • Pointer to source is NULL • Length is equal to 0 • Bit width is not equal to 8 bits
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open the channel first.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	The given bit_width is not supported.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A transfer is already in progress.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- ◦ transfer_api_t::reconfigure

◆ R_SCI_SPI_WriteRead()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_SPI_WriteRead (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void const * *p_src*, void * *p_dest*, uint32_t const *length*, spi_bit_width_t const *bit_width*)

Simultaneously transmit data to SPI device while receiving data from SPI device (full duplex). Implements spi_api_t::writeRead.

The function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Enable transmitter.
- Enable receiver.
- Enable interrupts.
- Start data transmission using transmit buffer empty interrupt (or by writing to the TDR register).
- Copy data from source buffer to the SPI data register for transmission.
- Receive data from receive buffer full interrupt and copy data to the destination buffer.
- Complete data transmission and reception via transmit end interrupt.
- Disable transmitter.
- Disable receiver.
- Disable interrupts.

Parameters

	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure.
	p_src	Pointer to the source buffer.
	p_dest	Pointer to the destination buffer.
[in]	length	The number of bytes to transfer.
[in]	bit_width	Invalid for SCI_SPI (Set to SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write operation successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	One of the following invalid parameters passed: • Pointer p_api_ctrl is NULL • Pointer to source is NULL • Pointer to destination is NULL • Length is equal to 0 • Bit width is not equal to 8 bits
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open the channel first.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	The given bit_width is not supported.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A transfer is already in progress.

Returns
See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:
- transfer_api_t::reconfigure

◆ R_SCI_SPI_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_SPI_Close (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Disable the SCI channel and set the instance as not open. Implements spi_api_t::close.

Parameters

p_api_ctrl	Pointer to an opened instance.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_api_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open the channel first.

◆ R_SCI_SPI_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_SPI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Get the version information of the underlying driver. Implements spi_api_t::versionGet.

Parameters

p_version	Pointer to version structure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful version get.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

◆ R_SCI_SPI_CalculateBitrate()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_SPI_CalculateBitrate (uint32_t *bitrate*, sci_spi_div_setting_t * *sclk_div*, bool *use_mddr*)

Calculate the register settings required to achieve the desired bitrate.

Parameters

[in]	bitrate	bitrate[bps] e.g. 250,000; 500,00; 2,500,000(max), etc.
	sclk_div	Pointer to sci_spi_div_setting_t used to configure baudrate settings.
[in]	use_mddr	Calculate the divider settings for use with MDDR.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Baud rate is set successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Baud rate is not achievable.

Note

The application must pause for 1 bit time after the BRR register is loaded before transmitting/receiving to allow time for the clock to settle.

5.2.39 Serial Communications Interface (SCI) UART (r_sci_uart)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_Open (uart_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uart_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_Read (uart_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_Write (uart_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_BaudSet (uart_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void const *const p_baud_setting)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_InfoGet (uart_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uart_info_t *const p_info)

fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_Close (uart_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_Abort (uart_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uart_dir_t communication_to_abort)
fsp_err_t	R_SCI_UART_BaudCalculate (uint32_t baudrate, bool bitrate_modulation, uint32_t baud_rate_error_x_1000, baud_setting_t *const p_baud_setting)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SCI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the UART Interface.

Overview

Features

The SCI UART module supports the following features:

- Full-duplex UART communication
- Interrupt-driven data transmission and reception
- Invoking the user-callback function with an event code (RX/TX complete, TX data empty, RX char, error, etc)
- Baud-rate change at run-time
- Bit rate modulation and noise cancellation
- RS232 CTS/RTS hardware flow control (with an associated pin)
- RS485 Half/Full Duplex flow control
- Integration with the DTC transfer module
- Abort in-progress read/write operations
- FIFO support on supported channels

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_sci_uart

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_sci_uart_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
FIFO Support	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Enable FIFO support for the SCI_UART module.
DTC Support	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Enable DTC support for the SCI_UART module.

RS232/RS485 Flow Control Support	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Enable RS232 and RS485 flow control support using a user provided pin.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > UART Driver on r_sci_uart

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > UART Driver on r_sci_uart:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_uart0	Module name.
General > Channel	Value must be an integer between 0 and 9	0	Select the SCI channel.
General > Data Bits	• 8bits • 7bits • 9bits	8bits	Select the number of bits per word.
General > Parity	• None • Odd • Even	None	Select the parity mode.
General > Stop Bits	• 1bit • 2bits	1bit	Select the number of stop bits.
Baud > Baud Rate	Value must be an integer greater than 0	115200	Enter the desired baud rate.
Baud > Baud Rate Modulation	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	Enabling baud rate modulation reduces the percent error of the actual baud rate with respect to the requested baud rate. It does this by modulating the number of cycles per clock, so some bits are slightly longer than others.
Baud > Max Error (%)	Must be a valid non negative integer with a maximum configurable value of 100	5	Maximum percent error allowed during baud calculation. This is used by the algorithm to determine whether or not to consider using less accurate alternative register settings. NOTE: The baud calculation does not

			show an error in the tool if this percent error was not achieved. The calculated percent error is recorded in a comment in the generated baud_setting_t structure.
Flow Control > CTS/RTS Selection	• RTS (CTS is disabled) • CTS (Note that RTS is available when enabling External RTS Operation mode which uses 1 GPIO pin)	RTS (CTS is disabled)	Select CTS or RTS for the CTSn/RTSn pin of SCI channel n. The SCI hardware supports either the CTS or the RTS control signal on this pin but not both.
Flow Control > UART Communication Mode	• RS232 • RS485 Half Duplex • RS485 Full Duplex	RS232	Select the UART communication mode as either RS232 or RS485.
Flow Control > Pin Control	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Enables pin control for external RTS in RS232 mode RS485 mode.
Flow Control > RTS Port	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	Disabled	Specify the flow control pin port for the MCU.
Flow Control > RTS Pin	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	Disabled	Specify the flow control pin for the MCU.
Extra > Clock Source	• Internal Clock • Internal Clock With Output on SCK • External Clock 8x baud rate • External Clock 16x baud rate	Internal Clock	Selection of the clock source to be used in the baud-rate clock generator. When internal clock is used the baud rate can be output on the SCK pin.
Extra > Start bit detection	• Falling Edge • Low Level	Falling Edge	Start bit detected as falling edge or low level.
Extra > Noise Filter	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Enable the digital noise filter on RXDn pin. The digital noise filter block in SCI consists of two-stage flipflop circuits.
Extra > Receive FIFO	• One	Max	Unused if the channel

Trigger Level	• Max		has no FIFO or if DTC is used for reception. Set to One to get a callback immediately when each byte is received. Set to Max to get a callback when FIFO is full or after 15 bit times with no data (fewer interrupts).
Interrupts > Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	user_uart_callback	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR).
Interrupts > Receive Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the receive interrupt priority.
Interrupts > Transmit Data Empty Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the transmit interrupt priority.
Interrupts > Transmit End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the transmit end interrupt priority.
Interrupts > Error Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the error interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The SCI clock is derived from the following peripheral clock on each device.

MCU	Peripheral Clock
RA2A1	PCLKB
RA4M1	PCLKA
RA6M1	PCLKA
RA6M2	PCLKA
RA6M3	PCLKA

The clock source for the baud-rate clock generator can be selected from the internal clock, the external clock times 8 or the external clock times 16. The external clock is supplied to the SCK pin.

Pin Configuration

This module uses TXD and RXD to communicate to external devices. CTS or RTS can be controlled by the hardware. If both are desired a GPIO pin can be used for RTS. When the internal clock is the source for the baud-rate generator the SCK pin can be used to output a clock with the same frequency as the bit rate.

Usage Notes

Limitations

- Transfer size must be less than or equal to 64K bytes if DTC interface is used for transfer. uart_api_t::infoGet API can be used to get the max transfer size allowed.
- Reception is still enabled after uart_api_t::communicationAbort API is called. Any characters received after abort and before the next call to read, will arrive via the callback function with event UART_EVENT_RX_CHAR.
- When using 9-bit reception with DTC, clear the upper 7 bits of data before processing the read data. The upper 7 bits contain status flags that are part of the register used to read data in 9-bit mode.

Examples

SCI UART Example

```
uint8_t g_dest[TRANSFER_LENGTH];
uint8_t g_src[TRANSFER_LENGTH];
uint8_t g_out_of_band_received[TRANSFER_LENGTH];
uint32_t g_transfer_complete = 0;
uint32_t g_receive_complete = 0;
uint32_t g_out_of_band_index = 0;
void r_sci_uart_basic_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize p_src to known data */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < TRANSFER_LENGTH; i++)
    {
       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Open the transfer instance with initial configuration. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_SCI_UART_Open(&g_uart0_ctrl, &g_uart0_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_SCI_UART_Read(&g_uart0_ctrl, g_dest, TRANSFER_LENGTH);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_SCI_UART_Write(&g_uart0_ctrl, g_src, TRANSFER_LENGTH);
    handle_error(err);
 while (!g_transfer_complete)
    {
    }
 while (!g_receive_complete)
    {
    }
}
void example_callback (uart_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 /* Handle the UART event */
 switch (p_args->event)
    {
 /* Received a character */
 case UART_EVENT_RX_CHAR:
      {
 /* Only put the next character in the receive buffer if there is space for it */
 if (sizeof(g_out_of_band_received) > g_out_of_band_index)
      {
 /* Write either the next one or two bytes depending on the receive data size */
 if (UART_DATA_BITS_8 >= g_uart0_cfg.data_bits)
      {
                   g_out_of_band_received[g_out_of_band_index++] = (uint8_t)
p_args->data;
      }
 else
      {
                   uint16_t * p_dest = (uint16_t *)
&g_out_of_band_received[g_out_of_band_index];
                   *p_dest             = (uint16_t) p_args->data;
                   g_out_of_band_index += 2;
      }
      }
 break;
      }
 /* Receive complete */
 case UART_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE:
      {
           g_receive_complete = 1;
 break;
      }
 /* Transmit complete */
 case UART_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE:
      {
           g_transfer_complete = 1;
 break;
      }
 default:
      {
      }
    }
}
```

SCI UART Baud Set Example

```
#define SCI_UART_BAUDRATE_19200 (19200)
void r_sci_uart_baud_example (void)
{
 baud_setting_t baud_setting;
    uint32_t       baud_rate                = SCI_UART_BAUDRATE_19200;
 bool          enable_bitrate_modulation = false;
    uint32_t       error_rate_x_1000         = 5;
 fsp_err_t err = R_SCI_UART_BaudCalculate(baud_rate, enable_bitrate_modulation,
error_rate_x_1000, &baud_setting);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_SCI_UART_BaudSet(&g_uart0_ctrl, (void *) &baud_setting);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	sci_uart_instance_ctrl_t
struct	baud_setting_t

struct	sci_uart_extended_cfg_t

Enumerations

enum	sci_clk_src_t
enum	uart_mode_t
enum	sci_uart_rx_fifo_trigger_t
enum	sci_uart_start_bit_detect_t
enum	sci_uart_noise_cancellation_t
enum	sci_uart_ctsrts_config_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ sci_uart_instance_ctrl_t

struct sci_uart_instance_ctrl_t

UART instance control block.

◆ baud_setting_t

struct baud_setting_t

Register settings to acheive a desired baud rate and modulation duty.

Data Fields		
union baud_setting_t	__unnamed__	
uint8_t	cks: 2	CKS value to get divisor (CKS = N)
uint8_t	brr	Bit Rate Register setting.
uint8_t	mddr	Modulation Duty Register setting.

◆ sci_uart_extended_cfg_t

struct sci_uart_extended_cfg_t

UART on SCI device Configuration

Data Fields		
sci_clk_src_t	clock	The source clock for the baud-rate generator. If internal optionally output baud rate on SCK.
sci_uart_start_bit_detect_t	rx_edge_start	Start reception on falling edge.

sci_uart_noise_cancellation_t	noise_cancel	Noise cancellation setting.
baud_setting_t *	p_baud_setting	Register settings for a desired baud rate.
sci_uart_rx_fifo_trigger_t	rx_fifo_trigger	Receive FIFO trigger level, unused if channel has no FIFO or if DTC is used.
uart_mode_t	uart_mode	UART communication mode selection.
bsp_io_port_pin_t	flow_control_pin	UART Driver Enable pin.
sci_uart_ctsrts_config_t	ctsrts_en	CTS/RTS function of the SSn pin.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ sci_clk_src_t

enum sci_clk_src_t

Enumeration for SCI clock source

Enumerator	
SCI_UART_CLOCK_INT	Use internal clock for baud generation.
SCI_UART_CLOCK_INT_WITH_BAUDRATE_OUTPUT	Use internal clock for baud generation and output on SCK.
SCI_UART_CLOCK_EXT8X	Use external clock 8x baud rate.
SCI_UART_CLOCK_EXT16X	Use external clock 16x baud rate.

◆ uart_mode_t

enum uart_mode_t

UART communication mode definition

Enumerator	
UART_MODE_RS232	Enables RS232 communication mode.
UART_MODE_RS485_HD	Enables RS485 half duplex communication mode.
UART_MODE_RS485_FD	Enables RS485 full duplex communication mode.

◆ sci_uart_rx_fifo_trigger_t

enum sci_uart_rx_fifo_trigger_t	
Receive FIFO trigger configuration.	
Enumerator	
SCI_UART_RX_FIFO_TRIGGER_1	Callback after each byte is received without buffering.
SCI_UART_RX_FIFO_TRIGGER_MAX	Callback when FIFO is full or after 15 bit times with no data (fewer interrupts)

◆ sci_uart_start_bit_detect_t

enum sci_uart_start_bit_detect_t	
Asynchronous Start Bit Edge Detection configuration.	
Enumerator	
SCI_UART_START_BIT_LOW_LEVEL	Detect low level on RXDn pin as start bit.
SCI_UART_START_BIT_FALLING_EDGE	Detect falling level on RXDn pin as start bit.

◆ sci_uart_noise_cancellation_t

enum sci_uart_noise_cancellation_t	
Noise cancellation configuration.	
Enumerator	
SCI_UART_NOISE_CANCELLATION_DISABLE	Disable noise cancellation.
SCI_UART_NOISE_CANCELLATION_ENABLE	Enable noise cancellation.

◆ sci_uart_ctsrts_config_t

enum sci_uart_ctsrts_config_t

CTS/RTS function of the SSn pin.

Enumerator	
SCI_UART_CTSRTS_RTS_OUTPUT	Disable CTS function (RTS output function is enabled)
SCI_UART_CTSRTS_CTS_INPUT	Enable CTS function.

Function Documentation

◆ R_SCI_UART_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_Open (uart_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uart_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configures the UART driver based on the input configurations. If reception is enabled at compile time, reception is enabled at the end of this function. Implements uart_api_t::open

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to UART control block or configuration structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The requested channel does not exist on this MCU.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Control block has already been opened or channel is being used by another instance. Call close() then open() to reconfigure.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::open

◆ R_SCI_UART_Read()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_Read (uart_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Receives user specified number of bytes into destination buffer pointer. Implements uart_api_t::read

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data reception successfully ends.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to UART control block is NULL. Number of transfers outside the max or min boundary when transfer instance used
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Destination address or data size is not valid for 9-bit mode.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A previous read operation is still in progress.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	SCI_UART_CFG_RX_ENABLE is set to 0

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::reset

Note

If 9-bit data length is specified at R_SCI_UART_Open call, p_dest must be aligned 16-bit boundary.

◆ R_SCI_UART_Write()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_Write (uart_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_src*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Transmits user specified number of bytes from the source buffer pointer. Implements uart_api_t::write

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data transmission finished successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to UART control block is NULL. Number of transfers outside the max or min boundary when transfer instance used
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Source address or data size is not valid for 9-bit mode.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A UART transmission is in progress
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	SCI_UART_CFG_TX_ENABLE is set to 0

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::reset

Note

If 9-bit data length is specified at R_SCI_UART_Open call, p_src must be aligned on a 16-bit boundary.

◆ R_SCI_UART_BaudSet()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_BaudSet (uart_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void const *const *p_baud_setting*)

Updates the baud rate using the clock selected in Open. p_baud_setting is a pointer to a baud_setting_t structure. Implements uart_api_t::baudSet

Warning

This terminates any in-progress transmission.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Baud rate was successfully changed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to UART control block is NULL or the UART is not configured to use the internal clock.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened

◆ R_SCI_UART_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_InfoGet (uart_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uart_info_t *const *p_info*)

Provides the driver information, including the maximum number of bytes that can be received or transmitted at a time. Implements uart_api_t::infoGet

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored in provided p_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to UART control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened

◆ R_SCI_UART_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_Close (uart_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Aborts any in progress transfers. Disables interrupts, receiver, and transmitter. Closes lower level transfer drivers if used. Removes power. Implements uart_api_t::close

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to UART control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened

◆ R_SCI_UART_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

Provides API and code version in the user provided pointer. Implements uart_api_t::versionGet

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Version number set here

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information stored in provided p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

◆ R_SCI_UART_Abort()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_Abort (uart_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uart_dir_t *communication_to_abort*)

Provides API to abort ongoing transfer. Transmission is aborted after the current character is transmitted. Reception is still enabled after abort(). Any characters received after abort() and before the transfer is reset in the next call to read(), will arrive via the callback function with event UART_EVENT_RX_CHAR. Implements uart_api_t::communicationAbort

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	UART transaction aborted successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to UART control block is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The control block has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	The requested Abort direction is unsupported.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::disable

◆ R_SCI_UART_BaudCalculate()

fsp_err_t R_SCI_UART_BaudCalculate (uint32_t *baudrate*, bool *bitrate_modulation*, uint32_t *baud_rate_error_x_1000*, baud_setting_t *const *p_baud_setting*)

Calculates baud rate register settings. Evaluates and determines the best possible settings set to the baud rate related registers.

Parameters

[in]	baudrate	Baud rate[bps] e.g. 19200, 57600, 115200, etc.
[in]	bitrate_modulation	Enable bitrate modulation
[in]	baud_rate_error_x_1000	<baud_rate_percent_error> x 1000 required for module to function. Absolute max baud_rate_error is 15000 (15%).
[out]	p_baud_setting	Baud setting information stored here if successful

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Baud rate is set successfully
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Baud rate is '0', source clock frequency could not be read, or error in calculated baud rate is larger than 10%.

5.2.40 Sigma Delta Analog to Digital Converter (r_sdadc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_Open (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_ScanCfg (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, void const *const p_extend)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_InfoGet (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_info_t *p_adc_info)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_ScanStart (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_ScanStop (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)

fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_StatusGet (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_status_t *p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_Read (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint16_t *const p_data)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_Read32 (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint32_t *const p_data)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_OffsetSet (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, int32_t const offset)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_Calibrate (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_extend)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_Close (adc_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SDADC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SDADC24 peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the ADC Interface.

Overview

Features

The SDADC module supports the following features:

- 24 bit maximum resolution
- Configure scans to include:
  - Multiple analog channels
  - Outputs of OPAMP0 (P side) and OPAMP1 (N side) of SDADC channel 4
- Configurable scan start trigger:
  - Software scan triggers
  - Hardware scan triggers (timer expiration, for example)
- Configurable scan mode:
  - Single scan mode, where each trigger starts a single scan
  - Continuous scan mode, where all channels are scanned continuously
- Supports averaging converted samples
- Optional callback when single conversion, entire scan, or calibration completes
- Supports reading converted data
- Sample and hold support

Selecting an ADC

All RA MCUs have an Analog to Digital Converter (r_adc). Only select RA MCUs have an SDADC. When selecting between them, consider these factors. Refer to the hardware manual for details.

	ADC	SDADC
Availability	Available on all RA MCUs.	Available on select RA MCUs.

Resolution	The ADC has a maximum resolution of 12, 14, or 16 bits depending on the MCU.	The SDADC has a maximum accuracy of 24 bits.
Number of Channels	The ADC has more channels than the SDADC.	The SDADC 5 channels, one of which is tied to OPAMP0 and OPAMP1.
Frequency	The ADC sampling time is shorter (more samples per second).	The SDADC sampling time is longer (fewer samples per second).
Settling Time	The ADC does not have a settling time when switching between channels.	The SDADC requires a settling time when switching between channels.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_sdadc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_sdadc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > ADC Driver on r_sdadc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > ADC Driver on r_sdadc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_adc0	Module name.
Mode	• Single Scan • Continuous Scan	Continuous Scan	In single scan mode, all channels are converted once per start trigger, and conversion stops after all enabled channels are scanned. In continuous scan mode, conversion starts after a start trigger, then continues until stopped in software.
Resolution	• 16 Bit • 24 Bit	24 Bit	Select 24-bit or 16-bit resolution.

Alignment	• Right • Left	Right	Select left or right alignment.
Trigger	MCU Specific Options		Select conversion start trigger. Conversion can be started in software, or conversion can be started when a hardware event occurs if the hardware event is linked to the SDADC peripheral using the ELC API.
Vref Source	• Internal • External	Internal	Vref can be source internally and output on the SBIAS pin, or Vref can be input from VREFI.
Vref Voltage	• 0.8 V • 1.0 V • 1.2 V • 1.4 V • 1.6 V • 1.8 V • 2.0 V • 2.2 V • 2.4 V	1.0 V	Select Vref voltage. If Vref is input externally, the voltage on VREFI must match the voltage selected within 3%.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	Enter the name of the callback function to be called when conversion completes or a scan ends.
Conversion End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		[Required] Select the interrupt priority for the conversion end interrupt.
Scan End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		[Optional] Select the interrupt priority for the scan end interrupt.
Calibration End Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		[Optional] Select the interrupt priority for the calibration end interrupt.

Configurations for Driver > Analog > SDADC Channel Configuration on r_sdadc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Analog > SDADC Channel Configuration on r_sdadc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description

Input	• Differential • Single Ended	Differential	Select differential or single-ended input.
Stage 1 Gain	• 1 • 2 • 3 • 4 • 8	1	Select the gain for stage 1 of the PGA. Must be 1 for single-ended input.
Stage 2 Gain	• 1 • 2 • 4 • 8	1	Select the gain for stage 2 of the PGA. Must be 1 for single-ended input.
Oversampling	• 64 • 128 • 256 • 512 • 1024 • 2048	256	Select the oversampling ratio for the PGA. Must be 256 for single-ended input.
Polarity (Valid for Single-Ended Input Only)	• Positive • Negative	Positive	Select positive or negative polarity for single-ended input. VBIAS (1.0 V typical) is connected on the opposite input.
Conversions to Average per Result	• Do Not Average (Interrupt after Each Conversion) • Average 8 • Average 16 • Average 32 • Average 64	Do Not Average (Interrupt after Each Conversion)	Select the number of conversions to average for each result. The ADC_EVENT_CONVERSION_END event occurs after each average, or after each individual conversion if averaging is disabled.
Invert (Valid for Negative Single-Ended Input Only)	• Result Not Inverted • Result Inverted	Result Not Inverted	Select whether to invert negative single-ended input. When the result is inverted, the lowest measurable voltage gives a result of 0, and the highest measurable voltage gives a result of 2^resolution - 1.
Number of Conversions Per Scan	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	1	Number of conversions on this channel before AUTOSCAN moves to the next channel. When all conversions of all channels are complete, the ADC_EVENT_SCAN_END event occurs.

Clock Configuration

The SDADC clock clock is configurable on the clocks tab.

The SDADC clock must be 4 MHz when the SDADC is used.

Pin Configuration

The ANSDnP (n = 0-3) pins are analog input channels that can be used with the SDADC.

Usage Notes

Scan Procedure

In this document, the term "scan" refers to the AUTOSCAN feature of the SDADC, which works as follows:

1. Conversions are performed on enabled channels in ascending order of channel number. All conversions required for a single channel are completed before the sequencer moves to the next channel.
2. Conversions are performed at the rate (in Hz) of the SDADC oversampling clock frequency / oversampling ratio (configured per channel). The FSP uses the normal mode SDADC oversampling clock frequency.
3. If averaging is enabled for the channel, the number of conversions to average are performed before each conversion end interrupt occurs.

4. If the number of conversions for the channel is more than 1, SDADC performs the number of conversions requested. These are performed consecutively. There is a settling time associated with switching channels. Performing all of the requested conversions for each channel at a time avoids this settling time after the first conversion.

   If averaging is enabled for the channel, each averaged result counts as a single conversion.

5. Continues to the next enabled channel only after completing all conversions requested.
6. After all enabled channels are scanned, a scan end interrupt occurs. The driver supports single-scan and continuous scan operation modes.
   - Single-scan mode performs one scan per trigger (hardware trigger or software start using R_SDADC_ScanStart).
   - In continuous scan mode, the scan is restarted after each scan completes. A single trigger is required to start continuous operation of the SDADC.

When Interrupts Are Not Enabled

If interrupts are not enabled, the R_SDADC_StatusGet() API can be used to poll the SDADC to determine when the scan has completed. The R_SDADC_Read() API function is used to access the converted SDADC result. This applies to both normal scans and calibration scans.

Calibration

Calibration is required to use the SDADC if any channel is configured for differential mode. Call R_SDADC_Calibrate() after open, and prior to any other function, then wait for a calibration complete event before using the SDADC. R_SDADC_Calibrate() should not be called if all channels are configured for single-ended mode.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the SDADC in an application.

```
void sdadc_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_SDADC_Open(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Calibrate all differential channels. */
 sdadc_calibrate_args_t calibrate_args;
    calibrate_args.mode    = SDADC_CALIBRATION_INTERNAL_GAIN_OFFSET;
    calibrate_args.channel = ADC_CHANNEL_0;
    err = R_SDADC_Calibrate(&g_adc0_ctrl, &calibrate_args);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for calibration to complete. */
 adc_status_t status;
    status.state = ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS;
 while (ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS == status.state)
    {
 R_SDADC_StatusGet(&g_adc0_ctrl, &status);
    }
 /* In software trigger mode, start a scan by calling R_SDADC_ScanStart(). In other
modes, enable external
  * triggers by calling R_SDADC_ScanStart(). */
    (void) R_SDADC_ScanStart(&g_adc0_ctrl);
 /* Wait for conversion to complete. */
    status.state = ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS;
 while (ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS == status.state)
    {
 R_SDADC_StatusGet(&g_adc0_ctrl, &status);
    }
 /* Read converted data. */
    uint32_t channel1_conversion_result;
 R_SDADC_Read32(&g_adc0_ctrl, ADC_CHANNEL_1, &channel1_conversion_result);
}
```

Using DTC or DMAC with the SDADC

If desired, the DTC or DMAC can be used to store each conversion result in a circular buffer. An example configuration is below.

```
/* Example DTC transfer settings to used with SDADC. */
/* The transfer length should match the total number of conversions per scan. This
example assumes the SDADC is
 * configured to scan channel 1 three times, then channel 2 and channel 4 once, for a
total of 5 conversions. */
#define SDADC_EXAMPLE_TRANSFER_LENGTH (5)
uint32_t g_sdadc_example_buffer[SDADC_EXAMPLE_TRANSFER_LENGTH];
transfer_info_t g_sdadc_transfer_info =
{
    .dest_addr_mode = TRANSFER_ADDR_MODE_INCREMENTED,
    .repeat_area    = TRANSFER_REPEAT_AREA_DESTINATION,
    .irq            = TRANSFER_IRQ_END,
    .chain_mode    = TRANSFER_CHAIN_MODE_DISABLED,
    .src_addr_mode = TRANSFER_ADDR_MODE_FIXED,
    .mode          = TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT,
 /* NOTE: The data transferred will contain a 24-bit converted value in bits 23:0.
Bit 24 contains a status flag
  * indicating if the result overflowed or not. Bits 27:25 contain the channel number
+ 1. The settings for
  * resolution and alignment and ignored when DTC or DMAC is used. */
    .size          = TRANSFER_SIZE_4_BYTE,
 /* NOTE: It is strongly recommended to enable averaging on all channels or no
channels when using DTC with SDADC
  * because the result register is different when averaging is used. If averaging is
enabled on all channels,
  * set transfer_info_t::p_src to &R_SDADC->ADAR. */
    .p_src = (void const *) &R_SDADC0->ADCR,
    .p_dest = &g_sdadc_example_buffer[0],
    .length = SDADC_EXAMPLE_TRANSFER_LENGTH,
};
void sdadc_dtc_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_SDADC_Open(&g_adc0_ctrl, &g_adc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Calibrate all differential channels. */
 sdadc_calibrate_args_t calibrate_args;
    calibrate_args.mode    = SDADC_CALIBRATION_INTERNAL_GAIN_OFFSET;
    calibrate_args.channel = ADC_CHANNEL_0;
    err = R_SDADC_Calibrate(&g_adc0_ctrl, &calibrate_args);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for calibration to complete. */
 adc_status_t status;
    status.state = ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS;
 while (ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS == status.state)
    {
 R_SDADC_StatusGet(&g_adc0_ctrl, &status);
    }
 /* In software trigger mode, start a scan by calling R_SDADC_ScanStart(). In other
modes, enable external
  * triggers by calling R_SDADC_ScanStart(). */
    (void) R_SDADC_ScanStart(&g_adc0_ctrl);
 /* After each conversion, the converted data is transferred to the next index in
g_sdadc_example_buffer. After
  * the entire scan completes, the index in g_sdadc_example_buffer resets. The data
in g_sdadc_example_buffer
  * is:
```

```
  * - g_sdadc_example_buffer[0] = SDADC channel 1 conversion 0
  * - g_sdadc_example_buffer[1] = SDADC channel 1 conversion 1
  * - g_sdadc_example_buffer[2] = SDADC channel 1 conversion 2
  * - g_sdadc_example_buffer[3] = SDADC channel 2 conversion 0
  * - g_sdadc_example_buffer[4] = SDADC channel 4 conversion 0
  *//* At any point in the application after the first scan completes, the most
recent data for channel 2 can be read
  * from the buffer like this. Shifting removes the unrelated bits in the result
register and propagates the sign
  * bit so the value can be interpreted as a signed result. This assumes channel 2 is
configured in differential
  * mode. */
    int32_t channel_2_data = (int32_t) (g_sdadc_example_buffer[3] << 8) >> 8;
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(channel_2_data);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	sdadc_calibrate_args_t
struct	sdadc_channel_cfg_t
struct	sdadc_scan_cfg_t
struct	sdadc_extended_cfg_t
struct	sdadc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	sdadc_vref_src_t
enum	sdadc_vref_voltage_t
enum	sdadc_channel_input_t
enum	sdadc_channel_stage_1_gain_t
enum	sdadc_channel_stage_2_gain_t
enum	sdadc_channel_oversampling_t
enum	sdadc_channel_polarity_t

enum	sdadc_channel_average_t
enum	sdadc_channel_inversion_t
enum	sdadc_channel_count_formula_t
enum	sdadc_calibration_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ sdadc_calibrate_args_t

struct sdadc_calibrate_args_t

Structure to pass to the adc_api_t::calibrate p_extend argument.

Data Fields		
adc_channel_t	channel	Which channel to calibrate.
sdadc_calibration_t	mode	Calibration mode.

◆ sdadc_channel_cfg_t

struct sdadc_channel_cfg_t

SDADC per channel configuration.

◆ sdadc_scan_cfg_t

struct sdadc_scan_cfg_t

SDADC active channel configuration

Data Fields		
uint32_t	scan_mask	Channels/bits: bit 0 is ch0; bit 15 is ch15.

◆ sdadc_extended_cfg_t

struct sdadc_extended_cfg_t

SDADC configuration extension. This extension is required and must be provided in adc_cfg_t::p_extend.

Data Fields		
uint8_t	conv_end_ipl	Conversion end interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	conv_end_irq	
sdadc_vref_src_t	vref_src	Source of Vref (internal or external)
sdadc_vref_voltage_t	vref_voltage	Voltage of Vref, required for both internal and external Vref.

		If Vref is from an external source, the voltage must match the specified voltage within 3%.
sdadc_channel_cfg_t const *	p_channel_cfgs[SDADC_MAX_NUM_CHANNELS]	Configuration for each channel, set to NULL if unused.

◆ sdadc_instance_ctrl_t

struct sdadc_instance_ctrl_t
ADC instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialized in adc_api_t::open().

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ sdadc_vref_src_t

enum sdadc_vref_src_t

Source of Vref.

Enumerator	
SDADC_VREF_SRC_INTERNAL	Vref is internally sourced, can be output as SBIAS.
SDADC_VREF_SRC_EXTERNAL	Vref is externally sourced from the VREFI pin.

◆ sdadc_vref_voltage_t

enum sdadc_vref_voltage_t	
Voltage of Vref.	
Enumerator	
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_800_MV	Vref is 0.8 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_1000_MV	Vref is 1.0 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_1200_MV	Vref is 1.2 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_1400_MV	Vref is 1.4 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_1600_MV	Vref is 1.6 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_1800_MV	Vref is 1.8 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_2000_MV	Vref is 2.0 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_2200_MV	Vref is 2.2 V.
SDADC_VREF_VOLTAGE_2400_MV	Vref is 2.4 V (only valid for external Vref)

◆ sdadc_channel_input_t

enum sdadc_channel_input_t	
Per channel input mode.	
Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_INPUT_DIFFERENTIAL	Differential input.
SDADC_CHANNEL_INPUT_SINGLE_ENDED	Single-ended input.

◆ sdadc_channel_stage_1_gain_t

enum sdadc_channel_stage_1_gain_t	
Per channel stage 1 gain options.	
Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_1_GAIN_1	Gain of 1.
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_1_GAIN_2	Gain of 2.
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_1_GAIN_3	Gain of 3 (only valid for stage 1)
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_1_GAIN_4	Gain of 4.
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_1_GAIN_8	Gain of 8.

◆ sdadc_channel_stage_2_gain_t

enum sdadc_channel_stage_2_gain_t	
Per channel stage 2 gain options.	
Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_2_GAIN_1	Gain of 1.
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_2_GAIN_2	Gain of 2.
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_2_GAIN_4	Gain of 4.
SDADC_CHANNEL_STAGE_2_GAIN_8	Gain of 8.

◆ sdadc_channel_oversampling_t

enum sdadc_channel_oversampling_t	
Per channel oversampling ratio.	
Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_OVERSAMPLING_64	Oversampling ratio of 64.
SDADC_CHANNEL_OVERSAMPLING_128	Oversampling ratio of 128.
SDADC_CHANNEL_OVERSAMPLING_256	Oversampling ratio of 256.
SDADC_CHANNEL_OVERSAMPLING_512	Oversampling ratio of 512.
SDADC_CHANNEL_OVERSAMPLING_1024	Oversampling ratio of 1024.
SDADC_CHANNEL_OVERSAMPLING_2048	Oversampling ratio of 2048.

◆ sdadc_channel_polarity_t

enum sdadc_channel_polarity_t	
Per channel polarity, valid for single-ended input only.	
Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_POLARITY_POSITIVE	Positive-side single-ended input.
SDADC_CHANNEL_POLARITY_NEGATIVE	Negative-side single-ended input.

◆ sdadc_channel_average_t

enum sdadc_channel_average_t

Per channel number of conversions to average before conversion end callback.

Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_AVERAGE_NONE	Do not average (callback for each conversion)
SDADC_CHANNEL_AVERAGE_8	Average 8 samples for each conversion end callback.
SDADC_CHANNEL_AVERAGE_16	Average 16 samples for each conversion end callback.
SDADC_CHANNEL_AVERAGE_32	Average 32 samples for each conversion end callback.
SDADC_CHANNEL_AVERAGE_64	Average 64 samples for each conversion end callback.

◆ sdadc_channel_inversion_t

enum sdadc_channel_inversion_t

Per channel polarity, valid for negative-side single-ended input only.

Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_INVERSION_OFF	Do not invert conversion result.
SDADC_CHANNEL_INVERSION_ON	Invert conversion result.

◆ sdadc_channel_count_formula_t

enum sdadc_channel_count_formula_t

Select a formula to specify the number of conversions. The following symbols are used in the formulas:

- N: Number of conversions
- n: sdadc_channel_cfg_t::coefficient_n, do not set to 0 if m is 0
- m: sdadc_channel_cfg_t::coefficient_m, do not set to 0 if n is 0

Either m or n must be non-zero.

Enumerator	
SDADC_CHANNEL_COUNT_FORMULA_EXPONENTIAL	N = 32 * (2 ^ n - 1) + m * 2 ^ n.
SDADC_CHANNEL_COUNT_FORMULA_LINEAR	N = (32 * n) + m.

◆ sdadc_calibration_t

enum sdadc_calibration_t

Calibration mode.

Enumerator	
SDADC_CALIBRATION_INTERNAL_GAIN_OFFSET	Use internal reference to calibrate offset and gain.
SDADC_CALIBRATION_EXTERNAL_OFFSET	Use external reference to calibrate offset.
SDADC_CALIBRATION_EXTERNAL_GAIN	Use external reference to calibrate gain.

Function Documentation

◆ R_SDADC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_Open (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Applies power to the SDADC and initializes the hardware based on the user configuration. As part of this initialization, the SDADC clock is configured and enabled. If an interrupt priority is non-zero, enables an interrupt which will call a callback to notify the user when a conversion, scan, or calibration is complete. R_SDADC_Calibrate() must be called after this function before using the SDADC if any channels are used in differential mode. Implements adc_api_t::open().

Note

This function delays at least 2 ms as required by the SDADC power on procedure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Configuration successful.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer is NULL or an input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Control block is already open.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	A required interrupt is disabled

◆ R_SDADC_ScanCfg()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_ScanCfg (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, void const *const *p_extend*)

Configures the enabled channels of the ADC. Pass a pointer to sdadc_scan_cfg_t to p_extend. Implements adc_api_t::scanCfg().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored in p_adc_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer is NULL or an input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_InfoGet (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_info_t * *p_adc_info*)

Returns the address of the lowest number configured channel, the total number of results to be read in order to read the results of all configured channels, the size of each result, and the ELC event enumerations. Implements adc_api_t::infoGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored in p_adc_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_ScanStart()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_ScanStart (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

If the SDADC is configured for hardware triggers, enables hardware triggers. Otherwise, starts a scan. Implements adc_api_t::scanStart().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Scan started or hardware triggers enabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A conversion or calibration is in progress.

◆ R_SDADC_ScanStop()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_ScanStop (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

If the SDADC is configured for hardware triggers, disables hardware triggers. Otherwise, stops any in-progress scan started by software. Implements adc_api_t::scanStop().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Scan stopped or hardware triggers disabled successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_StatusGet (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_status_t * *p_status*)

Returns the status of a scan started by software, including calibration scans. It is not possible to determine the status of a scan started by a hardware trigger. Implements adc_api_t::scanStatusGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	No software scan or calibration is in progress.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_Read()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_Read (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_channel_t const *reg_id*, uint16_t *const *p_data*)

Reads the most recent conversion result from a channel. Truncates 24-bit results to the upper 16 bits. Implements adc_api_t::read().

Note

The result stored in p_data is signed when the SDADC channel is configured in differential mode.
Do not use this API if the conversion end interrupt (SDADC0_ADI) is used to trigger the DTC unless the interrupt mode is set to TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Conversion result in p_data.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL or an input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_Read32()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_Read32 (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*, adc_channel_t const *reg_id*, uint32_t *const *p_data*)

Reads the most recent conversion result from a channel. Implements adc_api_t::read32().

Note

The result stored in p_data is signed when the SDADC channel is configured in differential mode. When the SDADC is configured for 24-bit resolution and right alignment, the sign bit is bit 23, and the upper 8 bits are 0. When the SDADC is configured for 16-bit resolution and right alignment, the sign bit is bit 15, and the upper 16 bits are 0.
Do not use this API if the conversion end interrupt (SDADC0_ADI) is used to trigger the DTC unless the interrupt mode is set to TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Conversion result in p_data.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL or an input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_OffsetSet()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_OffsetSet (adc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, adc_channel_t const *reg_id*, int32_t const *offset*)

Sets the offset. Offset is applied after stage 1 of the input channel. Offset can only be applied when the channel is configured for differential input. Implements adc_api_t::offsetSet().

Note: The offset is cleared if adc_api_t::calibrate() is called. The offset can be re-applied if necessary after the the callback with event ADC_EVENT_CALIBRATION_COMPLETE is called.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	See p_instance_ctrl in adc_api_t::offsetSet().
[in]	reg_id	See reg_id in adc_api_t::offsetSet().
[in]	offset	Must be between -15 and 15, offset (mV) = 10.9376 mV * offset_steps / stage 1 gain.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Offset updated successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL or an input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A conversion or calibration is in progress.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_Calibrate()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_Calibrate (adc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, void *const *p_extend*)

Requires sdadc_calibrate_args_t passed to p_extend. Calibrates the specified channel. Calibration is not required or supported for single-ended mode. Calibration must be completed for differential mode before using the SDADC. A callback with the event ADC_EVENT_CALIBRATION_COMPLETE is called when calibration completes. Implements adc_api_t::calibrate().

During external offset calibration, apply a differential voltage of 0 to ANSDnP - ANSDnN, where n is the input channel and ANSDnP is OPAMP0 for channel 4 and ANSDnN is OPAMP1 for channel 4. Complete external offset calibration before external gain calibration.

During external gain calibration apply a voltage between 0.4 V / total_gain and 0.8 V / total_gain. The differential voltage applied during calibration is corrected to a conversion result of 0x7FFFFF, which is the maximum possible positive differential measurement.

This function clears the offset value. If offset is required after calibration, it must be reapplied after calibration is complete using adc_api_t::offsetSet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Calibration began successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A conversion or calibration is in progress.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_Close (adc_ctrl_t * *p_ctrl*)

Stops any scan in progress, disables interrupts, and powers down the SDADC peripheral. Implements adc_api_t::close().

Note

This function delays at least 3 us as required by the SDADC24 stop procedure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Instance control block closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input pointer was NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not open.

◆ R_SDADC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SDADC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Gets the API and code version. Implements adc_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information available in p_version.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

5.2.41 SD/MMC Host Interface (r_sdhi)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_Open (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, sdmmc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_MediaInit (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, sdmmc_device_t *const p_device)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_Read (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_Write (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_source, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_ReadIo (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_data, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_WriteIo (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_data, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, sdmmc_io_write_mode_t const read_after_write)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_ReadIoExt (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, uint32_t *const count, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t transfer_mode, sdmmc_io_address_mode_t address_mode)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_WriteIoExt (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_source, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const count, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t transfer_mode, sdmmc_io_address_mode_t address_mode)

fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_IoIntEnable (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, bool enable)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_StatusGet (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, sdmmc_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_Erase (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_Close (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SDHI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SD/MMC Host Interface (SDHI) peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SD/MMC Interface.

Overview

Features

- Supports the following memory devices: SDSC (SD Standard Capacity), SDHC (SD High Capacity), and SDXC (SD Extended Capacity)
    - Supports reading, writing and erasing SD memory devices
    - Supports 1-bit or 4-bit bus
    - Supports detection of device write protection (SD cards only)
- Automatically configures the clock to the maximum clock rate supported by both host (MCU) and device
- Supports hardware acceleration using DMAC or DTC
- Supports callback notification when an operation completes or an error occurs

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_sdhi

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_sdhi_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Unaligned Access Support	• Disabled • Enabled	Enabled	If enabled, code for supporting buffers that are not aligned on a 4-byte boundary is included in the build. Only disable this if all buffers passed to the

driver are 4-byte aligned.

Configurations for Driver > Storage > SD/MMC Driver on r_sdhi

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Storage > SD/MMC Driver on r_sdhi:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_sdmmc0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be a non-negative integer	0	Select the channel.
Bus Width	MCU Specific Options		Select the bus width.
Block Size	Value must be an integer between 1 and 512	512	Select the media block size. Must be 512 for SD cards or eMMC devices. Must be 1-512 for SDIO.
Card Detection	• Not Used • CD Pin	CD Pin	Select the card detection method.
Write Protection	• Not Used • WP Pin	WP Pin	Select whether or not to use the write protect pin. Select Not Used if the MCU or device does not have a write protect pin.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR).
Access Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the access interrupt priority.
Card Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the card interrupt priority.
DTC Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the DTC interrupt priority.

Interrupt Configurations:

The following interrupts are required to use the r_sdhi module:

Using SD/MMC with DTC:

- Access Interrupt
- DTC Interrupt

Using SD/MMC with DMAC:

- Access Interrupt
- DMAC Interrupt (in DMAC instance)

The Card interrupt is optional and only available on MCU packages that have the SDnCD pin (n = channel number).

Clock Configuration

The SDMMC MCU peripheral (SDHI) uses the PCLKA for its clock source. The SDMMC driver selects the optimal built-in divider based on the PCLKA frequency and the maximum clock rate allowed by the device obtained at media initialization.

Pin Configuration

The SDMMC driver supports the following pins (n = channel number):

- SDnCLK
- SDnCMD
- SDnDAT0
- SDnDAT1
- SDnDAT2
- SDnDAT3
- SDnCD (not available on all MCUs)
- SDnWP

The drive capacity for each pin should be set to "Medium" or "High" for most hardware designs. This can be configured in the Pins tab of the configurator by selecting the pin under Pin Selection -> Ports.

Usage Notes

Card Detection

When Card Detection is configured to "CD Pin" in the RA Configuration Tool, card detection is enabled during R_SDHI_Open().

R_SDHI_StatusGet() can be called to retrieve the current status of the card (including whether a card is present). If the Card Interrupt Priority is enabled, a callback is called when a card is inserted or removed.

If a card is removed and reinserted, R_SDHI_MediaInit() must be called before reading from the card or writing to the card.

DMA Request Interrupt Priority

When data transfers are not 4-byte aligned or not a multiple of 4 bytes, a software copy of the block size (up to 512 bytes) is done in the DMA Request interrupt. This blocks all other interrupts that are a lower or equal priority to the access interrupt until the software copy is complete.

Timing Notes for R_SDHI_MediaInit

The R_SDHI_MediaInit() API completes the entire device identification and configuration process. This involves several command-response cycles at a bus width of 1 bit and a bus speed of 400 kHz or less.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the SDHI:

Blocking Calls

The following functions block execution until the response is received for at least one command:

- R_SDHI_MediaInit
- R_SDHI_ReadIo
- R_SDHI_WriteIo
- R_SDHI_ReadIoExt
- R_SDHI_WriteIoExt
- R_SDHI_Erase

Once the function returns the status of the operation can be determined via R_SDHI_StatusGet or through receipt of a callback.

Note

Due to the variability in clocking configurations it is recommended to determine blocking delays experimentally on the target system.

Data Alignment and Size

Data transfers should be 4-byte aligned and a multiple of 4 bytes in size whenever possible. This recommendation applies to the read(), write(), readIoExt(), and writeIoExt() APIs. When data transfers are 4-byte aligned and a multiple of 4-bytes, the r_sdhi driver is zero copy and takes full advantage of hardware acceleration by the DMAC or DTC. When data transfers are not 4-byte aligned or not a multiple of 4 bytes an extra CPU interrupt is required for each block transferred and a software copy is used to move data to the destination buffer.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the r_sdhi in an application.

```
uint8_t g_dest[SDHI_MAX_BLOCK_SIZE] BSP_ALIGN_VARIABLE(4);

uint8_t g_src[SDHI_MAX_BLOCK_SIZE] BSP_ALIGN_VARIABLE(4);

uint32_t g_transfer_complete = 0;

void r_sdhi_basic_example (void)

{

 /* Initialize g_src to known data */

 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < SDHI_MAX_BLOCK_SIZE; i++)
```

```
    {
       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Open the SDHI driver. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_SDHI_Open(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, &g_sdmmc0_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
 /* A device shall be ready to accept the first command within 1ms from detecting VDD
min. Reference section 6.4.1.1
  * "Power Up Time of Card" in the SD Physical Layer Simplified Specification Version
6.00. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
 /* Initialize the SD card. This should not be done until the card is plugged in for
SD devices. */
    err = R_SDHI_MediaInit(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, NULL);
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_SDHI_Write(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, g_src, 3, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 while (!g_transfer_complete)
    {
 /* Wait for transfer. */
    }
    err = R_SDHI_Read(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, g_dest, 3, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 while (!g_transfer_complete)
    {
 /* Wait for transfer. */
    }
}
/* The callback is called when a transfer completes. */
void r_sdhi_example_callback (sdmmc_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (SDMMC_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE == p_args->event)
    {
       g_transfer_complete = 1;
    }
}
```

Card Detection Example

This is an example of using SDHI when the card may not be plugged in. The card detection interrupt must be enabled to use this example.

```
bool g_card_inserted = false;
void r_sdhi_card_detect_example (void)
{
 /* Open the SDHI driver. This enables the card detection interrupt. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_SDHI_Open(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, &g_sdmmc0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Check if card is inserted. */
 sdmmc_status_t status;
    err = R_SDHI_StatusGet(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, &status);
    handle_error(err);
 if (!status.card_inserted)
    {
 while (!g_card_inserted)
      {
 /* Wait for a card insertion interrupt. */
      }
    }
 /* A device shall be ready to accept the first command within 1ms from detecting VDD
min. Reference section 6.4.1.1
  * "Power Up Time of Card" in the SD Physical Layer Simplified Specification Version
6.00. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
 /* Initialize the SD card after card insertion is detected. */
    err = R_SDHI_MediaInit(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, NULL);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

```
/* The callback is called when a card detection event occurs if the card detection
interrupt is enabled. */
void r_sdhi_card_detect_example_callback (sdmmc_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (SDMMC_EVENT_CARD_INSERTED == p_args->event)
    {
       g_card_inserted = true;
    }
 if (SDMMC_EVENT_CARD_REMOVED == p_args->event)
    {
       g_card_inserted = false;
    }
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ R_SDHI_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_Open (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, sdmmc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the driver. Resets SDHI, and enables card detection interrupts if card detection is enabled. R_SDHI_MediaInit must be called after this function before any other functions can be used.

Implements sdmmc_api_t::open().

Example:

```
/* Open the SDHI driver. */
fsp_err_t err = R_SDHI_Open(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, &g_sdmmc0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is now open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer or block size is not in the valid range of 1-512. Block size must be 512 bytes for SD cards and eMMC devices. It is configurable for SDIO only.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Driver has already been opened with this instance of the control structure.
FSP_ERR_IRQ_BSP_DISABLED	Access interrupt is not enabled.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	Requested channel does not exist on this MCU.

◆ R_SDHI_MediaInit()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_MediaInit (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, sdmmc_device_t *const *p_device*)

Initializes the SDHI hardware and completes identification and configuration for the SD or eMMC device. This procedure requires several sequential commands. This function blocks until all identification and configuration commands are complete.

Implements sdmmc_api_t::mediaInit().

Example:

```
 /* A device shall be ready to accept the first command within 1ms from detecting VDD
min. Reference section 6.4.1.1
  * "Power Up Time of Card" in the SD Physical Layer Simplified Specification Version
6.00. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
 /* Initialize the SD card. This should not be done until the card is plugged in for
SD devices. */
    err = R_SDHI_MediaInit(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, NULL);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is now ready for read/write access.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer or block size is not in the valid range of 1-512. Block size must be 512 bytes for SD cards and eMMC devices. It is configurable for SDIO only.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_INIT_FAILED	Device was not identified as an SD card, eMMC device, or SDIO card.
FSP_ERR_RESPONSE	Device did not respond or responded with an error.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Device is holding DAT0 low (device is busy) or another operation is ongoing.

◆ R_SDHI_Read()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_Read (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *start_sector*, uint32_t const *sector_count*)

Reads data from an SD or eMMC device. Up to 0x10000 sectors can be read at a time. Implements sdmmc_api_t::read().

A callback with the event SDMMC_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE is called when the read data is available.

Example:

```
    err = R_SDHI_Read(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, g_dest, 3, 1);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data read successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	Card was unplugged.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Driver is busy with a previous operation.

◆ R_SDHI_Write()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_Write (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_source*, uint32_t const *start_sector*, uint32_t const *sector_count*)

Writes data to an SD or eMMC device. Up to 0x10000 sectors can be written at a time. Implements sdmmc_api_t::write().

A callback with the event SDMMC_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE is called when the all data has been written and the device is no longer holding DAT0 low to indicate it is busy.

Example:

```
    err = R_SDHI_Write(&g_sdmmc0_ctrl, g_src, 3, 1);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Card write finished successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Handle or Source address is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	Card was unplugged.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Driver is busy with a previous operation.
FSP_ERR_CARD_WRITE_PROTECTED	SD card is Write Protected.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Write operation failed.

◆ R_SDHI_ReadIo()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_ReadIo (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_data*, uint32_t const *function*, uint32_t const *address*)

The Read function reads a one byte register from an SDIO card. Implements sdmmc_api_t::readIo().

This function blocks until the command is sent and the response is received. p_data contains the register value read when this function returns.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data read successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	Card was unplugged.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	SDIO support disabled in SDHI_CFG_SDIO_SUPPORT_ENABLE.
FSP_ERR_RESPONSE	Device did not respond or responded with an error.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Device is holding DAT0 low (device is busy) or another operation is ongoing.

◆ R_SDHI_WriteIo()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_WriteIo (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_data*, uint32_t const *function*, uint32_t const *address*, sdmmc_io_write_mode_t const *read_after_write*)

Writes a one byte register to an SDIO card. Implements sdmmc_api_t::writeIo().

This function blocks until the command is sent and the response is received. The register has been written when this function returns. If read_after_write is true, p_data contains the register value read when this function returns.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Card write finished successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Handle or Source address is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	Card was unplugged.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Write operation failed.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	SDIO support disabled in SDHI_CFG_SDIO_SUPPORT_ENABLE.
FSP_ERR_RESPONSE	Device did not respond or responded with an error.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Device is holding DAT0 low (device is busy) or another operation is ongoing.

◆ R_SDHI_ReadIoExt()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_ReadIoExt (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *function*, uint32_t const *address*, uint32_t *const *count*, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t *transfer_mode*, sdmmc_io_address_mode_t *address_mode*)

Reads data from an SDIO card function. Implements sdmmc_api_t::readIoExt().

This function blocks until the command is sent and the response is received. A callback with the event SDMMC_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE is called when the read data is available.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data read successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer, or count is not in the valid range of 1-512 for byte mode or 1-511 for block mode.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	Card was unplugged.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Driver is busy with a previous operation.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	SDIO support disabled in SDHI_CFG_SDIO_SUPPORT_ENABLE.

◆ R_SDHI_WriteIoExt()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_WriteIoExt (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_source*, uint32_t const *function*, uint32_t const *address*, uint32_t const *count*, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t *transfer_mode*, sdmmc_io_address_mode_t *address_mode*)

Writes data to an SDIO card function. Implements sdmmc_api_t::writeIoExt().

This function blocks until the command is sent and the response is received. A callback with the event SDMMC_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE is called when the all data has been written.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Card write finished successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer, or count is not in the valid range of 1-512 for byte mode or 1-511 for block mode.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	Card was unplugged.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Driver is busy with a previous operation.
FSP_ERR_WRITE_FAILED	Write operation failed.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	SDIO support disabled in SDHI_CFG_SDIO_SUPPORT_ENABLE.

◆ R_SDHI_IoIntEnable()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_IoIntEnable (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, bool *enable*)

Enables or disables the SDIO Interrupt. Implements sdmmc_api_t::ioIntEnable().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Card enabled or disabled SDIO interrupts successfully.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Driver is busy with a previous operation.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	SDIO support disabled in SDHI_CFG_SDIO_SUPPORT_ENABLE.

◆ R_SDHI_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_StatusGet (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, sdmmc_status_t *const *p_status*)

Provides driver status. Implements sdmmc_api_t::statusGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Status stored in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.

◆ R_SDHI_Erase()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_Erase (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t const *start_sector*, uint32_t const *sector_count*)

Erases sectors of an SD card or eMMC device. Implements sdmmc_api_t::erase().

This function blocks until the erase command is sent. Poll the status to determine when erase is complete.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Erase operation requested.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer is NULL or an argument is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_CARD_NOT_INITIALIZED	Card was unplugged.
FSP_ERR_CARD_WRITE_PROTECTED	SD card is Write Protected.
FSP_ERR_RESPONSE	Device did not respond or responded with an error.
FSP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Device is holding DAT0 low (device is busy) or another operation is ongoing.

◆ R_SDHI_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_Close (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Closes an open SD/MMC device. Implements sdmmc_api_t::close().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Driver has not been initialized.

◆ R_SDHI_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SDHI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the version of the firmware and API. Implements sdmmc_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer.

5.2.42 Segment LCD Controller (r_slcdc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_Open (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_Write (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const start_segment, uint8_t const *p_data, uint8_t const segment_count)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_Modify (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const segment_number, uint8_t const data_mask, uint8_t const data)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_Start (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_Stop (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_SetContrast (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_contrast_t

	const contrast)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_SetDisplayArea (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_display_area_t const display_area)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_Close (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SLCDC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SLCDC peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SLCDC Interface.

Overview

The segment LCD controller (SLCDC) utilizes two to four reference voltages to provide AC signals for driving traditional segment LCD panels. Depending on the LCD and MCU package, up to 272 segments can be driven. A built-in link to the RTC allows for up to 152 segments to switch between two patterns at regular intervals. An on-chip boost driver can be used to provide configurable reference voltages up to 5.25V allowing for simple contrast adjustment.

Features

The SLCDC module can perform the following functions:

- Initialize, start and stop the SLCDC
- Set and modify the output pattern
- Blink between two patterns based on a periodic RTC interrupt signal
- Adjust display contrast (only when using internal voltage boosting)

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_slcdc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_slcdc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Graphics > Segment LCD Driver on r_slcdc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Graphics > Segment LCD Driver on r_slcdc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description

General > Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_slcdc0	Module Name
Clock > Source	• LOCO • SOSC • MOSC • HOCO	HOCO	Select the clock source.
Clock > Divisor	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	(HOCO/MOSC) 16384	Select the clock divisor.
Output > Bias method	• 1/2 bias • 1/3 bias • 1/4 bias	1/2 bias	Select the bias method. This determines the number of voltage levels used to create the waveforms.
Output > Timeslice	• Static • 2-slice • 3-slice • 4-slice • 8-slice	Static	Select the LCD time slice. The number of slices should match the number of common (COM) pins for your LCD panel.
Output > Waveform	• Waveform A • Waveform B	Waveform A	Select the LCD waveform.
Output > Drive method	• External resistance division • Internal voltage boosting • Capacitor split	External resistance division	Select the LCD drive method.
Output > Default contrast	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	0	Select the default contrast level.

Valid Configurations

Though there are many setting combinations only a limited subset are supported by the SLCDC peripheral hardware:

Waveform	Slices	Bias	External Resistance	Internal Boost	Capacitor Split
A	8	1/4	Available	Available	—
A	4	1/3	Available	Available	Available
A	3	1/3	Available	Available	Available
A	3	1/2	Available	—	—
A	2	1/2	Available	—	—
A	Static	—	Available	—	—
B	8	1/4	Available	Available	Available

B	4	1/3	Available	Available	—

Clock Configuration

The SLCDC clock can be sourced from the main clock (MOSC), sub-clock (SOSC), HOCO or LOCO. Dividers of 4 to 1024 are available for SOSC/LOCO and 256 to 524288 for MOSC/HOCO. It is recommended to adjust the divisor such that the resulting clock provides a frame frequency of 32-128 Hz.

Note

Make sure your desired source clock is enabled and running before starting SLCDC output.
Do not set the segment LCD clock over 512 Hz when using internal boost or capacitor split modes.

Pin Configuration

This module controls a variety of pins necessary for segment LCD voltage generation and signal output:

Pin Name	Function	Notes
SEGn	Segment data output	Connect these signals to the segment pins of the LCD.
COMn	Common signal output	Connect these signals to the common pins of the LCD.
VLn	Voltage reference	These pins should be connected to passive components based on the selected drive method (see section 45.7 "Supplying LCD Drive Voltages VL1, VL2, VL3, and VL4" in the RA4M1 User's Manual (R01UH0887EJ0100)).
CAPH, CAPL	Drive voltage generator capacitor	Connect a nonpolar 0.47uF capacitor across these pins when using internal boost or capacitor split modes. This pin is not needed when using resistance division.

Interrupt Configuration

The SLCDC provides no interrupt signals.

Note

Blinking output timing is driven directly from the RTC periodic interrupt. Once the interrupt is enabled setting the display to SLCDC_DISP_BLINK will swap between A- and B-pattern each time it occurs. The ELC is not required for this functionality.

Usage Notes

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the SLCDC:

- Different packages provide different numbers of segment pins. Check the User's Manual for your device to confirm availability and mapping of segment signals.
- When using internal boost mode a delay of 5ms is required between calling R_SLCDC_Open and R_SLCDC_Start to allow the boost circuit to charge.
- When using the internal boost or capacitor split method do not set the segment LCD clock higher than 512 Hz.

Examples

Basic Example

Below is a basic example of minimal use of the SLCDC in an application. The SLCDC driver is initialized, output is started and a pattern is written to the segment registers.

```
void slcdc_init (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Open SLCDC driver */
    err = R_SLCDC_Open(&g_slcdc_ctrl, &g_slcdc_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* When using internal boost mode this delay is required to allow the boost circuit
to charge. See RA4M1 User's
  * Manual (R01UH0887EJ0100) 8.2.18 "Segment LCD Source Clock Control Register
(SLCDSCKCR)" for details. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(5, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
 /* Start SLCDC output */
    err = R_SLCDC_Start(&g_slcdc_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write pattern to display */
    err = R_SLCDC_Write(&g_slcdc_ctrl, 0, segment_data, NUM_SEGMENTS);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Note

While the SLCDC is running, pattern data is constantly being output. No latching or buffering is required when writing or reading segment data.

Blinking Output

This example demonstrates how to set up blinking output using the RTC periodic interrupt. In this example it is assumed that the SLCDC has already been started.

```
void slcdc_blink (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err;
 /* Open RTC and set time/date */
    err = R_RTC_Open(&r_rtc_ctrl, &r_rtc_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
    err = R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet(&r_rtc_ctrl, &g_rtc_time);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set RTC periodic interrupt to 2 Hz (display blink cycle will be 1 Hz) */
    err = R_RTC_PeriodicIrqRateSet(&r_rtc_ctrl,
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_2_SECOND);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Set display to blink */
    err = R_SLCDC_SetDisplayArea(&g_slcdc_ctrl, SLCDC_DISP_BLINK);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Display will now continuously blink */
}
```

Data Structures

struct	slcdc_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ slcdc_instance_ctrl_t

struct slcdc_instance_ctrl_t
SLCDC control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when slcdc_api_t::open is called

Function Documentation

◆ R_SLCDC_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_Open (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, slcdc_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the SLCDC driver. Implements slcdc_api_t::open.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or the configuration structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Invalid display mode.

◆ R_SLCDC_Write()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_Write (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint8_t const *start_segment*, uint8_t const * *p_data*, uint8_t const *segment_count*)

Writes a sequence of display data to the segment data registers. Implements slcdc_api_t::write.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data was written successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block or data is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Segment index is (or will be) out of range.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not opened or initialized.

◆ R_SLCDC_Modify()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_Modify (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint8_t const *segment*, uint8_t const *data*, uint8_t const *data_mask*)

Modifies a single segment register based on a mask and the desired data. Implements slcdc_api_t::modify.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Invalid parameter in the argument.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not opened or initialized

◆ R_SLCDC_Start()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_Start (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Starts output of LCD signals. Implements slcdc_api_t::start.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not opened or initialized

◆ R_SLCDC_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_Stop (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops output of LCD signals. Implements slcdc_api_t::stop.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not opened or initialized

◆ R_SLCDC_SetContrast()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_SetContrast (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, slcdc_contrast_t const *contrast*)

Sets contrast to the specified level. Implements slcdc_api_t::setContrast.

Note

Contrast can be adjusted when the SLCDC is operating in internal boost mode only. The range of values is 0-5 when 1/4 bias setting is used and 0-15 otherwise. See RA4M1 User's Manual (R01UH0887EJ0100) section 45.2.4 "LCD Boost Level Control Register (VLCD)" for voltage levels at each setting.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not opened or initialized
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Unsupported operation

◆ R_SLCDC_SetDisplayArea()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_SetDisplayArea (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, slcdc_display_area_t const *display_area*)

Sets output to Waveform A, Waveform B or blinking output. Implements slcdc_api_t::setDisplayArea .

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was opened successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Pattern selection has no effect in 8-time-slice mode.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not opened or initialized.

◆ R_SLCDC_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_Close (slcdc_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Closes the SLCDC driver. Implements slcdc_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device was closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Pointer to the control block structure is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Device is not opened or initialized

◆ R_SLCDC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SLCDC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Retrieve the API version number. Implements slcdc_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful return.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_version is NULL.

5.2.43 Serial Peripheral Interface (r_spi)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SPI_Open (spi_ctrl_t *p_api_ctrl, spi_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SPI_Read (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t	R_SPI_Write (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void const *p_src, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t	R_SPI_WriteRead (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void const *p_src, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t	R_SPI_Close (spi_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SPI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *p_version)
fsp_err_t	R_SPI_CalculateBitrate (uint32_t bitrate, rspck_div_setting_t *spck_div)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SPI peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the SPI Interface.

Overview

Features

- Standard SPI Modes
    - Master or Slave Mode
    - Clock Polarity (CPOL)
        - CPOL=0 SCLK is low when idle
        - CPOL=1 SCLK is high when idle
    - Clock Phase (CPHA)
        - CPHA=0 Data Sampled on the even edge of SCLK (Master Mode Only)
        - CPHA=1 Data Sampled on the odd edge of SCLK
    - MSB/LSB first
    - 8-Bit, 16-Bit, 32-Bit data frames
        - Hardware endian swap in 16-Bit and 32-Bit mode
    - 3-Wire (clock synchronous) or 4-Wire (SPI) Mode
- Configurable bitrate
- Supports Full Duplex or Transmit Only Mode
- DTC Support
- Callback Events
    - Transfer Complete
    - RX Overflow Error (The SPI shift register is copied to the data register before previous data was read)

- TX Underrun Error (No data to load into shift register for transmitting)
- Parity Error (When parity is enabled and a parity error is detected)

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_spi

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_spi_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Enable Support for using DTC	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	If enabled, DTC instances will be included in the build for both transmission and reception.
Enable Transmitting from RXI Interrupt	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If enabled, all operations will be handled from the RX (receive) interrupt. This setting only provides a performance boost when DTC is not used. In addition, Transmit Only mode is not supported when this configuration is enabled.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > SPI Driver on r_spi

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > SPI Driver on r_spi:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_spi0	Module name.
Channel	Select channel 0 or channel 1	0	Select the SPI channel.
Receive Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for all SPI interrupts.
Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for all SPI

			interrupts.
Transfer Complete Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for all SPI interrupts.
Error Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority for all SPI interrupts.
Operating Mode	• Master • Slave	Master	Select the SPI operating mode.
Clock Phase	• Data sampling on odd edge, data variation on even edge • Data sampling on even edge, data variation on odd edge	Data sampling on odd edge, data variation on even edge	Select the clock edge to sample data.
Clock Polarity	• Low when idle • High when idle	Low when idle	Select clock level when idle.
Mode Fault Error	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Detect master/slave mode conflicts.
Bit Order	• MSB First • LSB First	MSB First	Select the data bit order.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	spi_callback	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the interrupt service routine (ISR).
SPI Mode	• SPI Operation • Clock Synchronous Operation	Clock Synchronous Operation	Select the clock sync mode.
Full or Transmit Only Mode	• Full Duplex • Transmit Only	Full Duplex	Select Full Duplex or Transmit Only Mode.
Slave Select Polarity	• Active Low • Active High	Active Low	Select the slave select active level.
Select SSL(Slave Select)	• SSL0 • SSL1 • SSL2 • SSL3	SSL0	Select which slave to use.
MOSI Idle State	• MOSI Idle Value Fixing Disable • MOSI Idle Value Fixing Low	MOSI Idle Value Fixing Disable	Select the MOSI idle level if MOSI idle is enabled.

	• MOSI Idle Value Fixing High		
Parity Mode	• Parity Disabled • Parity Odd • Parity Even	Parity Disabled	Select the parity mode if parity is enabled.
Byte Swapping	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Select the byte swap mode for 16/32-Bit Data Frames.
Bitrate	Value must be an integer greater than 0	30000000	Enter the desired bitrate.
Clock Delay	• SPI_DELAY_COUNT_1 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_2 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_3 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_4 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_5 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_6 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_7 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_8	SPI_DELAY_COUNT_1	Configure the number of SPI clock cycles before each data frame.
SSL Negation Delay	• SPI_DELAY_COUNT_1 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_2 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_3 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_4 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_5 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_6 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_7 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_8	SPI_DELAY_COUNT_1	Configure the number of SPI clock cycles after each data frame.
Next Access Delay	• SPI_DELAY_COUNT_1 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_2 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_3 • SPI_DELAY_COUNT_4 • SPI_DELAY_COU	SPI_DELAY_COUNT_1	Configure the number of SPI clock cycles between each data frame.

NT_5
- SPI_DELAY_COU NT_6
- SPI_DELAY_COU NT_7
- SPI_DELAY_COU NT_8

Clock Configuration

The SPI clock is derived from the following peripheral clock on each device.

MCU	Peripheral Clock
RA2A1	PCLKB
RA4M1	PCLKA
RA6M1	PCLKA
RA6M2	PCLKA
RA6M3	PCLKA

Pin Configuration

This module uses MOSI, MISO, RSPCK, and SSL pins to communicate with on board devices.

Note

At high bitrates, it might be nessecary to configure the pins with IOPORT_CFG_DRIVE_HIGH.

Usage Notes

Performance

At high bitrates, interrupts may not be able to service transfers fast enough. In master mode this means there will be a delay between each data frame. In slave mode this could result in TX Underrun and RX Overflow errors.

In order to improve performance at high bitrates, it is recommended that the instance be configured to service transfers using the DTC.

Another way to improve performance is to transfer the data in 16/32 bit wide data frames when possible. A typical use-case where this is possible is when reading/writing to a block device.

Transmit From RXI Interrupt

After every data frame the SPI peripheral generates a transmit buffer empty interrupt and a receive buffer full interrupt. It is possible to configure the driver to handle transmit buffer empty interrupts in the receive buffer full isr. This only improves performance when the DTC is not being used.

Note

Configuring the module to use RX DTC instance without also providing a TX DTC instance results in an invalid configuration when RXI transmit is enabled.
Transmit Only mode is not supported when Transmit from RXI is enabled.

Clock Auto-Stopping

In master mode, if the Receive Buffer Full Interrupts are not handled fast enough, instead of generating a RX Overflow error, the last clock cycle will be stretched until the receive buffer is read.

Parity Mode

When parity mode is configured, the LSB of each data frame is used as a parity bit. When odd parity is selected, the LSB is set such that there are an odd number of ones in the data frame. When even parity is selected, the LSB is set such that there are an even number of ones in the data frame.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the SPI:

- In master mode, the driver will only configure 4-Wire mode if the device supports SSL Level Keeping (SSLKP bit in SPCMD0) and will return FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED if configured for 4-Wire mode on devices without SSL Level Keeping. Without SSL Level Keeping, the SSL pin is toggled after every data frame. In most cases this is not desirable behavior so it is recommended that the SSL pin be driven in software if SSL Level Keeping is not present on the device.
- In order to use CPHA=0 setting in slave mode, the master must toggle the SSL pin after every data frame (Even if the device supports SSL Level Keeping). Because of this hardware limitation, the module will return FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED when it is configured to use CPHA=0 setting in slave mode.
- The module does not support communicating with multiple slaves using different SSL pins. In order to achieve this, the module must either be closed and re-opened to change the SSL pin or drive SSL in software. It is recommended that SSL be driven in software when controlling multiple slave devices.
- The SPI peripheral has a minimum 3 SPI CLK delay between each data frame.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the SPI in an application.

```
static volatile bool g_transfer_complete = false;
void spi_basic_example (void)
{
    uint8_t tx_buffer[TRANSFER_SIZE];
    uint8_t rx_buffer[TRANSFER_SIZE];
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the SPI module. */
    err = R_SPI_Open(&g_spi_ctrl, &g_spi_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Start a write/read transfer */
```

```
    err = R_SPI_WriteRead(&g_spi_ctrl, tx_buffer, rx_buffer, TRANSFER_SIZE,
SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE callback event. */
 while (false == g_transfer_complete)
    {
       ;
    }
}
static void r_spi_callback (spi_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE == p_args->event)
    {
       g_transfer_complete = true;
    }
}
```

Driving Software Slave Select Line

This is an example of communicating with multiple slave devices by asserting SSL in software.

```
void spi_software_ssl_example (void)
{
    uint8_t tx_buffer[TRANSFER_SIZE];
    uint8_t rx_buffer[TRANSFER_SIZE];
 /* Configure Slave Select Line 1 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_1, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 /* Configure Slave Select Line 2 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_2, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the SPI module. */
    err = R_SPI_Open(&g_spi_ctrl, &g_spi_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Assert Slave Select Line 1 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_1, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
 /* Start a write/read transfer */
    g_transfer_complete = false;
    err                = R_SPI_WriteRead(&g_spi_ctrl, tx_buffer, rx_buffer,
TRANSFER_SIZE, SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE callback event. */
 while (false == g_transfer_complete)
    {
       ;
    }
 /* De-assert Slave Select Line 1 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_1, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
 /* Wait for minimum time required between transfers. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(SSL_NEXT_ACCESS_DELAY, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MICROSECONDS);
 /* Assert Slave Select Line 2 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_2, BSP_IO_LEVEL_LOW);
 /* Start a write/read transfer */
    g_transfer_complete = false;
    err                = R_SPI_WriteRead(&g_spi_ctrl, tx_buffer, rx_buffer,
TRANSFER_SIZE, SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE callback event. */
 while (false == g_transfer_complete)
    {
       ;
    }
 /* De-assert Slave Select Line 2 */
 R_BSP_PinWrite(SLAVE_SELECT_LINE_2, BSP_IO_LEVEL_HIGH);
}
```

Configuring the SPI Clock Divider Registers

This example demonstrates how to set the SPI clock divisors at runtime.

```
void spi_bitrate_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
    g_spi_cfg.p_extend = &g_spi_extended_cfg;
 /* Configure SPI Clock divider to achieve largest bitrate less than or equal to the
desired bitrate. */
    err = R_SPI_CalculateBitrate(BITRATE, &(g_spi_extended_cfg.spck_div));
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize the SPI module. */
    err = R_SPI_Open(&g_spi_ctrl, &g_spi_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	rspck_div_setting_t
struct	spi_extended_cfg_t
struct	spi_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	spi_ssl_mode_t
enum	spi_communication_t
enum	spi_ssl_polarity_t
enum	spi_ssl_select_t
enum	spi_mosi_idle_value_fixing_t
enum	spi_parity_t
enum	spi_byte_swap_t
enum	spi_delay_count_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ rspck_div_setting_t

struct rspck_div_setting_t

SPI Clock Divider settings.

Data Fields		
uint8_t	spbr	SPBR register setting.
uint8_t	brdv: 2	BRDV setting in SPCMD0.

◆ spi_extended_cfg_t

struct spi_extended_cfg_t

Extended SPI interface configuration

Data Fields		
spi_ssl_mode_t	spi_clksyn	Select spi or clock syn mode operation.
spi_communication_t	spi_comm	Select full-duplex or transmit-only communication.
spi_ssl_polarity_t	ssl_polarity	Select SSLn signal polarity.
spi_ssl_select_t	ssl_select	Select which slave to use;0-SSL 0;1-SSL1;2-SSL2;3-SSL3.
spi_mosi_idle_value_fixing_t	mosi_idle	Select mosi idle fixed value and selection.
spi_parity_t	parity	Select parity and enable/disable parity.
spi_byte_swap_t	byte_swap	Select byte swap mode.
rspck_div_setting_t	spck_div	Register values for configuring the SPI Clock Divider.
spi_delay_count_t	spck_delay	SPI Clock Delay Register Setting.
spi_delay_count_t	ssl_negation_delay	SPI Slave Select Negation Delay Register Setting.
spi_delay_count_t	next_access_delay	SPI Next-Access Delay Register Setting.

◆ spi_instance_ctrl_t

struct spi_instance_ctrl_t

Channel control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when spi_api_t::open is called.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	open	Indicates whether the open() API has been successfully called.
spi_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to instance configuration.

R_SPI0_Type *	p_regs	Base register for this channel.
void const *	p_tx_data	Buffer to transmit.
void *	p_rx_data	Buffer to receive.
uint32_t	tx_count	Number of Data Frames to transfer (8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit)
uint32_t	rx_count	Number of Data Frames to transfer (8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit)
uint32_t	count	Number of Data Frames to transfer (8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit)
spi_bit_width_t	bit_width	Bits per Data frame (8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit)

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ spi_ssl_mode_t

enum spi_ssl_mode_t

3-Wire or 4-Wire mode.

Enumerator	
SPI_SSL_MODE_SPI	SPI operation (4-wire method) */.
SPI_SSL_MODE_CLK_SYN	Clock Synchronous operation (3-wire method) */.

◆ spi_communication_t

enum spi_communication_t

Transmit Only (Half Duplex), or Full Duplex.

Enumerator	
SPI_COMMUNICATION_FULL_DUPLEX	Full-Duplex synchronous serial communication */.
SPI_COMMUNICATION_TRANSMIT_ONLY	Transit only serial communication */.

◆ spi_ssl_polarity_t

enum spi_ssl_polarity_t

Slave Select Polarity.

Enumerator	
SPI_SSLP_LOW	SSLP signal polarity active low */.
SPI_SSLP_HIGH	SSLP signal polarity active high */.

◆ spi_ssl_select_t

enum spi_ssl_select_t

The Slave Select Line

Enumerator	
SPI_SSL_SELECT_SSL0	Select SSL0.
SPI_SSL_SELECT_SSL1	Select SSL1.
SPI_SSL_SELECT_SSL2	Select SSL2.
SPI_SSL_SELECT_SSL3	Select SSL3.

◆ spi_mosi_idle_value_fixing_t

enum spi_mosi_idle_value_fixing_t

MOSI Idle Behavior.

Enumerator	
SPI_MOSI_IDLE_VALUE_FIXING_DISABLE	MOSI output value=value set in MOIFV bit.
SPI_MOSI_IDLE_VALUE_FIXING_LOW	MOSIn level low during MOSI idling.
SPI_MOSI_IDLE_VALUE_FIXING_HIGH	MOSIn level high during MOSI idling.

◆ spi_parity_t

enum spi_parity_t	
Parity Mode	
Enumerator	
SPI_PARITY_MODE_DISABLE	Disable parity.
SPI_PARITY_MODE_ODD	Select even parity.
SPI_PARITY_MODE_EVEN	Select odd parity.

◆ spi_byte_swap_t

enum spi_byte_swap_t	
Byte Swapping Enable/Disable.	
Enumerator	
SPI_BYTE_SWAP_DISABLE	Disable Byte swapping for 16/32-Bit transfers.
SPI_BYTE_SWAP_ENABLE	Enable Byte swapping for 16/32-Bit transfers.

◆ spi_delay_count_t

enum spi_delay_count_t

Delay count for SPI delay settings.

Enumerator	
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_1	Set RSPCK delay count to 1 RSPCK.
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_2	Set RSPCK delay count to 2 RSPCK.
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_3	Set RSPCK delay count to 3 RSPCK.
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_4	Set RSPCK delay count to 4 RSPCK.
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_5	Set RSPCK delay count to 5 RSPCK.
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_6	Set RSPCK delay count to 6 RSPCK.
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_7	Set RSPCK delay count to 7 RSPCK.
SPI_DELAY_COUNT_8	Set RSPCK delay count to 8 RSPCK.

Function Documentation

◆ R_SPI_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SPI_Open (spi_ctrl_t * *p_api_ctrl*, spi_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

This functions initializes a channel for SPI communication mode. Implements spi_api_t::open.

This function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Configures the pperipheral registers acording to the configuration.
- Initialize the control structure for use in other SPI Interface functions.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel initialized successfully.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Instance was already initialized.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An invalid argument was given in the configuration structure.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	A requested setting is not possible on this device with the current build configuration.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	The channel number is invalid.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls: transfer_api_t::open

Note

This function is reentrant.

◆ R_SPI_Read()

fsp_err_t R_SPI_Read (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void * *p_dest*, uint32_t const *length*, spi_bit_width_t const *bit_width*)

This function receives data from a SPI device. Implements spi_api_t::read.

The function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Sets up the instance to complete a SPI read operation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Read operation successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer to control or destination parameters or transfer length is zero.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open channel first.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A transfer is already in progress.

◆ R_SPI_Write()

fsp_err_t R_SPI_Write (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void const * *p_src*, uint32_t const *length*, spi_bit_width_t const *bit_width*)

This function transmits data to a SPI device using the TX Only Communications Operation Mode. Implements spi_api_t::write.

The function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Sets up the instance to complete a SPI write operation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write operation successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer to control or source parameters or transfer length is zero.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open the channel first.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A transfer is already in progress.

◆ R_SPI_WriteRead()

fsp_err_t R_SPI_WriteRead (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, void const * *p_src*, void * *p_dest*, uint32_t const *length*, spi_bit_width_t const *bit_width*)

This function simultaneously transmits and receive data. Implements spi_api_t::writeRead.

The function performs the following tasks:

- Performs parameter checking and processes error conditions.
- Sets up the instance to complete a SPI writeRead operation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write operation successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer to control, source or destination parameters or transfer length is zero.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open the channel first.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	A transfer is already in progress.

◆ R_SPI_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SPI_Close (spi_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

This function manages the closing of a channel by the following task. Implements spi_api_t::close.

Disables SPI operations by disabling the SPI bus.

- Disables the SPI peripheral.
- Disables all the associated interrupts.
- Update control structure so it will not work with SPI Interface functions.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Channel successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	A required pointer argument is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel has not been opened. Open the channel first.

◆ R_SPI_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SPI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t * *p_version*)

This function gets the version information of the underlying driver. Implements spi_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful version get.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

◆ R_SPI_CalculateBitrate()

fsp_err_t R_SPI_CalculateBitrate (uint32_t *bitrate*, rspck_div_setting_t * *spck_div*)

Calculates the SPBR register value and the BRDV bits for a desired bitrate. If the desired bitrate is faster than the maximum bitrate, than the bitrate is set to the maximum bitrate. If the desired bitrate is slower than the minimum bitrate, than an error is returned.

Parameters

[in]	bitrate	Desired bitrate
[out]	spck_div	Memory location to store bitrate register settings.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Valid spbr and brdv values were calculated
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	Bitrate is not achievable

5.2.44 Serial Sound Interface (r_ssi)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_SSI_Open (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_SSI_Stop (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_SSI_StatusGet (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_SSI_Write (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_SSI_Read (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_SSI_WriteRead (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_src, void *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t	R_SSI_Mute (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_mute_t const mute_enable)
fsp_err_t	R_SSI_Close (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

fsp_err_t	R_SSI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the SSIE peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the I2S Interface.

Overview

Features

The SSI module supports the following features:

- Transmission and reception of uncompressed audio data using the standard I2S protocol in master mode
- Full-duplex I2S communication (channel 0 only)
- Integration with the DTC transfer module
- Internal connection to GPT GTIOC1A timer output to generate the audio clock
- Callback function notification when all data is loaded into the SSI FIFO

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_ssi

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_ssi_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
DTC Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	If code for DTC transfer support is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Connectivity > I2S Driver on r_ssi

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Connectivity > I2S Driver on r_ssi:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_i2s0	Module name.
Channel	Value must be an integer between 0 and 1	0	Specify the I2S channel.
Bit Depth	• 8 Bits	16 Bits	Select the bit depth of

	• 16 Bits • 18 Bits • 20 Bits • 22 Bits • 24 Bits • 32 Bits		one sample of audio data.
Word Length	• 8 Bits • 16 Bits • 24 Bits • 32 Bits • 48 Bits • 64 Bits • 128 Bits • 256 Bits	16 Bits	Select the word length of audio data. Must be at least as large as Data bits.
WS Continue Mode	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Enable WS continue mode to output the word select (WS) pin even when transmission is idle.
Bit Clock Source	• AUDIO_CLK • GTIOC1A	AUDIO_CLK	Select AUDIO_CLK for external signal to AUDIO_CLK input pin or GTIOC1A for internal connection to GPT channel 1 GTIOC1A.
Bit Clock Divider	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	Audio Clock / 1	Select divider used to generate bit clock from audio clock.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from all three interrupt service routines (ISR).
Transmit Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the transmit interrupt priority.
Receive Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the receive interrupt priority.
Idle/Error Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the Idle/Error interrupt priority.

Clock Configuration

The SSI peripheral runs on PCLKB. The PCLKB frequency can be configured on the Clocks tab of the configuration tool. The SSI audio clock can optionally be supplied from an external source through the AUDIO_CLK pin in master mode.

Pin Configuration

The SSI uses the following pins:

- AUDIO_CLK (optional, master mode only): The AUDIO_CLK pin is used to supply the audio clock from an external source.
- SSIBCKn: Bit clock pin for channel n
- SSILRCKn/SSIFSn: Channel selection pin for channel n
- SSIRXD0: Reception pin for channel 0
- SSITXD0: Transmission pin for channel 0
- SSIDATA1: Transmission or reception pin for channel 1

Usage Notes

SSI Frames

An SSI frame is 2 samples worth of data. The frame boundary (end of previous frame, start of next frame) is on the falling edge of the SSILRCKn signal.

Audio Data

Only uncompressed PCM data is supported.

Data arrays have the following size, alignment, and length based on the "Bit Depth" setting:

Bit Depth	Array Data Type	Required Alignment	Required Length (bytes)
8 Bits	8-bit integer	1 byte alignment	Multiple of 2
16 Bits	16-bit integer	2 byte alignment	Multiple of 4
18 Bits	32-bit integer, right justified	4 byte alignment	Multiple of 8
20 Bits	32-bit integer, right justified	4 byte alignment	Multiple of 8
22 Bits	32-bit integer, right justified	4 byte alignment	Multiple of 8
24 Bits	32-bit integer, right justified	4 byte alignment	Multiple of 8
32 Bits	32-bit integer	4 byte alignment	Multiple of 8

Note

The length of the array must be a multiple of 2 when the data type is the recommended data type. The 2 represents the frame size (left and right channel) of I2S communication. The SSIE peripheral does not support odd read/write lengths in I2S mode.

Audio Clock

The audio clock is only required for master mode.

Audio Clock Frequency

The bit clock frequency is the product of the sampling frequency and channels and bits per system word:

bit_clock (Hz) = sampling_frequency (Hz) * channels * system_word_bits

I2S data always has 2 channels.

For example, the bit clock for transmitting 2 channels of 16-bit data (using a 16-bit system word) at 44100 Hz would be:

44100 * 2 * 16 = 1,411,200 Hz

The audio clock frequency is used to generate the bit clock frequency. It must be a multiple of the bit clock frequency. Refer to the Bit Clock Divider configuration for divider options. The input audio clock frequency must be:

audio_clock (Hz) = desired_bit_clock (Hz) * bit_clock_divider

To get a bit clock of 1.4 MHz from an audio clock of 2.8 MHz, select the divider Audio Clock / 2.

Audio Clock Source

The audio clock source can come from:

- An external source input to the AUDIO_CLK pin
- An internal connection to the GPT channel 1 A output (GTIOC1A)

Note

When using the GTIOC1A output, the GPT channel must be set to channel 1, Pin Output Support must be Enabled, and GTIOCA Output Enabled must be True.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the SSI:

- When using channel 1, full duplex communication is not possible. Only tranmission or reception is possible.
- SSI must go idle before changing the communication mode (between read only, write only, and full duplex)

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the SSI in an application.

```
#define SSI_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_TO_TRANSFER (1024)
#define SSI_EXAMPLE_TONE_FREQUENCY_HZ (800)
int16_t g_src[SSI_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_TO_TRANSFER];
int16_t g_dest[SSI_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_TO_TRANSFER];
void ssi_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Create a stereo sine wave. Using formula sample = sin(2 * pi * tone_frequency * t
/ sampling_frequency) */
    uint32_t freq = SSI_EXAMPLE_TONE_FREQUENCY_HZ;
 for (uint32_t t = 0; t < SSI_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_TO_TRANSFER / 2; t += 1)
    {
 float input = (((float) (freq * t)) * (M_TWOPI)) /
SSI_EXAMPLE_AUDIO_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_HZ;
       g_src[2 * t]    = (int16_t) ((INT16_MAX * sinf(input)));
       g_src[2 * t + 1] = (int16_t) ((INT16_MAX * sinf(input)));
    }
 /* Initialize the module. */
    err = R_SSI_Open(&g_i2s_ctrl, &g_i2s_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Transfer data. */
    (void) R_SSI_WriteRead(&g_i2s_ctrl,
                           (uint8_t *) &g_src[0],
                           (uint8_t *) &g_dest[0],
                           SSI_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_TO_TRANSFER * sizeof(int16_t));
}
```

Streaming Example

This is an example of using SSI to stream audio data. This application uses a double buffer to store PCM sine wave data. It starts transmitting in the main loop, then loads the next buffer if it is ready in the callback. If the next buffer is not ready, a flag is set in the callback so the application knows to restart transmission in the main loop.

This example also checks the return code of R_SSI_Write() because R_SSI_Write() can return an error if a transmit overflow occurs before the FIFO is reloaded. If a transmit overflow occurs before the FIFO is reloaded, the SSI will be stopped in the error interrupt, and it cannot be restarted until the I2S_EVENT_IDLE callback is received.

```
#define SSI_STREAMING_EXAMPLE_AUDIO_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_HZ (22050)
#define SSI_STREAMING_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_PER_CHUNK (1024)
#define SSI_STREAMING_EXAMPLE_TONE_FREQUENCY_HZ (800)
int16_t       g_stream_src[2][SSI_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_TO_TRANSFER];
```

```
uint32_t      g_buffer_index          = 0;
volatile bool g_send_data_in_main_loop = true;
volatile bool g_data_ready = false;
/* Example callback called when SSI is ready for more data. */
void ssi_example_callback (i2s_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 /* Reload the FIFO if we hit the transmit watermark or restart transmission if the
SSI is idle because it was
  * stopped after a transmit FIFO overflow. */
 if ((I2S_EVENT_TX_EMPTY == p_args->event) || (I2S_EVENT_IDLE == p_args->event))
    {
 if (g_data_ready)
      {
 /* Reload FIFO and handle errors. */
            ssi_example_write();
      }
 else
      {
 /* Data was not ready yet, send it in the main loop. */
            g_send_data_in_main_loop = true;
      }
    }
}
/* Load the transmit FIFO and check for error conditions. */
void ssi_example_write (void)
{
 /* Transfer data. This call is non-blocking. */
 fsp_err_t err = R_SSI_Write(&g_i2s_ctrl,
                               (uint8_t *) &g_stream_src[g_buffer_index][0],
                               SSI_STREAMING_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_PER_CHUNK * sizeof
(int16_t));
 if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
    {
 /* Switch the buffer after data is sent. */
```

```
       g_buffer_index = !g_buffer_index;
 /* Allow loop to calculate next buffer only if transmission was successful. */
       g_data_ready = false;
    }
 else
    {
 /* Getting here most likely means a transmit overflow occurred before the FIFO could
be reloaded. The
  * application must wait until the SSI is idle, then restart transmission. In this
example, the idle
  * callback transmits data or resets the flag g_send_data_in_main_loop. */
    }
}
/* Calculate samples. This example is just a sine wave. For this type of data, it
would be better to calculate
 * one period and loop it. This example should be updated for the audio data used by
the application. */
void ssi_example_calculate_samples (uint32_t buffer_index)
{
 static uint32_t t = 0U;
 /* Create a stereo sine wave. Using formula sample = sin(2 * pi * tone_frequency * t
/ sampling_frequency) */
    uint32_t freq = SSI_STREAMING_EXAMPLE_TONE_FREQUENCY_HZ;
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < SSI_STREAMING_EXAMPLE_SAMPLES_PER_CHUNK / 2; i += 1)
    {
 float input = (((float) (freq * t)) * M_TWOPI) /
SSI_STREAMING_EXAMPLE_AUDIO_SAMPLING_FREQUENCY_HZ;
       t++;
 /* Store sample twice, once for left channel and once for right channel. */
       int16_t sample = (int16_t) ((INT16_MAX * sinf(input)));
       g_stream_src[buffer_index][2 * i]    = sample;
       g_stream_src[buffer_index][2 * i + 1] = sample;
    }
 /* Data is ready to be sent in the interrupt. */
```

```
    g_data_ready = true;
}
void ssi_streaming_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* Initialize the module. */
    err = R_SSI_Open(&g_i2s_ctrl, &g_i2s_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
 /* Prepare data in a buffer that is not currently used for transmission. */
       ssi_example_calculate_samples(g_buffer_index);
 /* Send data in main loop the first time, and if it was not ready in the interrupt.
*/
 if (g_send_data_in_main_loop)
      {
 /* Clear flag. */
            g_send_data_in_main_loop = false;
 /* Reload FIFO and handle errors. */
            ssi_example_write();
      }
 /* If the next buffer is ready, wait for the data to be sent in the interrupt. */
 while (g_data_ready)
      {
 /* Do nothing. */
      }
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	ssi_instance_ctrl_t
struct	ssi_extended_cfg_t

Enumerations

enum	ssi_audio_clock_t
enum	ssi_clock_div_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ssi_instance_ctrl_t

struct ssi_instance_ctrl_t
Channel instance control block. DO NOT INITIALIZE. Initialization occurs when i2s_api_t::open is called.

◆ ssi_extended_cfg_t

struct ssi_extended_cfg_t

SSI configuration extension. This extension is optional.

Data Fields		
ssi_audio_clock_t	audio_clock	Audio clock source, default is SSI_AUDIO_CLOCK_EXTERNAL.
ssi_clock_div_t	bit_clock_div	Select bit clock division ratio.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ssi_audio_clock_t

enum ssi_audio_clock_t

Audio clock source.

Enumerator	
SSI_AUDIO_CLOCK_EXTERNAL	Audio clock source is the AUDIO_CLK input pin.
SSI_AUDIO_CLOCK_GTIOC1A	Audio clock source is internal connection to GPT channel 1 output.

◆ ssi_clock_div_t

enum ssi_clock_div_t

Bit clock division ratio. Bit clock frequency = audio clock frequency / bit clock division ratio.

Enumerator	
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_1	Clock divisor 1.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_2	Clock divisor 2.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_4	Clock divisor 4.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_6	Clock divisor 6.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_8	Clock divisor 8.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_12	Clock divisor 12.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_16	Clock divisor 16.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_24	Clock divisor 24.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_32	Clock divisor 32.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_48	Clock divisor 48.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_64	Clock divisor 64.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_96	Clock divisor 96.
SSI_CLOCK_DIV_128	Clock divisor 128.

Function Documentation

◆ R_SSI_Open()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_Open (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, i2s_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the SSI. Implements i2s_api_t::open.

This function sets this clock divisor and the configurations specified in i2s_cfg_t. It also opens the timer and transfer instances if they are provided.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Ready for I2S communication.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The pointer to p_ctrl or p_cfg is null.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	The control block has already been opened.
FSP_ERR_IP_CHANNEL_NOT_PRESENT	Channel number is not available on this MCU.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::open

◆ R_SSI_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_Stop (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Stops SSI. Implements i2s_api_t::stop.

This function disables both transmission and reception, and disables any transfer instances used.

The SSI will stop on the next frame boundary. Do not restart SSI until it is idle.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	I2S communication stop request issued.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The pointer to p_ctrl was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or lower level drivers for other possible return codes.

◆ R_SSI_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_StatusGet (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, i2s_status_t *const *p_status*)

Gets SSI status and stores it in provided pointer p_status. Implements i2s_api_t::statusGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The p_instance_ctrl or p_status parameter was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.

◆ R_SSI_Write()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_Write (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, void const *const *p_src*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Writes data buffer to SSI. Implements i2s_api_t::write.

This function resets the transfer if the transfer interface is used, or writes the length of data that fits in the FIFO then stores the remaining write buffer in the control block to be written in the ISR.

Write() cannot be called if another write(), read() or writeRead() operation is in progress. Write can be called when the SSI is idle, or after the I2S_EVENT_TX_EMPTY event.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write initiated successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The pointer to p_ctrl or p_src was null, or bytes requested was 0.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Another transfer is in progress, data was not written.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.
FSP_ERR_UNDERFLOW	A transmit underflow error is pending. Wait for the SSI to go idle before resuming communication.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::reset

◆ R_SSI_Read()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_Read (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, void *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Reads data into provided buffer. Implements i2s_api_t::read.

This function resets the transfer if the transfer interface is used, or reads the length of data available in the FIFO then stores the remaining read buffer in the control block to be filled in the ISR.

Read() cannot be called if another write(), read() or writeRead() operation is in progress. Read can be called when the SSI is idle, or after the I2S_EVENT_RX_FULL event.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Read initiated successfully.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Peripheral is in the wrong mode or not idle.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The pointer to p_ctrl or p_dest was null, or bytes requested was 0.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.
FSP_ERR_OVERFLOW	A receive overflow error is pending. Wait for the SSI to go idle before resuming communication.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::reset

◆ R_SSI_WriteRead()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_WriteRead (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, void const *const *p_src*, void *const *p_dest*, uint32_t const *bytes*)

Writes from source buffer and reads data into destination buffer. Implements i2s_api_t::writeRead.

This function calls R_SSI_Write and R_SSI_Read.

writeRead() cannot be called if another write(), read() or writeRead() operation is in progress. writeRead() can be called when the SSI is idle, or after the I2S_EVENT_RX_FULL event.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write and read initiated successfully.
FSP_ERR_IN_USE	Peripheral is in the wrong mode or not idle.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.
FSP_ERR_UNDERFLOW	A transmit underflow error is pending. Wait for the SSI to go idle before resuming communication.
FSP_ERR_OVERFLOW	A receive overflow error is pending. Wait for the SSI to go idle before resuming communication.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- transfer_api_t::reset

◆ R_SSI_Mute()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_Mute (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, i2s_mute_t const *mute_enable*)

Mutes SSI on the next frame boundary. Implements i2s_api_t::mute.

Data is still written while mute is enabled, but the transmit line outputs zeros.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Transmission is muted.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The pointer to p_ctrl was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.

◆ R_SSI_Close()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_Close (i2s_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Closes SSI. Implements i2s_api_t::close.

This function powers down the SSI and closes the lower level timer and transfer drivers if they are used.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Device closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The pointer to p_ctrl was null.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The channel is not opened.

◆ R_SSI_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_SSI_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Sets driver version based on compile time macros.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	The parameter p_version is NULL.

5.2.45 USB (r_usb_basic)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_USB_Open (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_cfg_t const *const p_cfg) Applies power to the USB module specified in the argument (p_ctrl). More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_Close (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl) Terminates power to the USB module specified in argument (p_ctrl). USB0 module stops when USB_IP0 is specified to the member (module), USB1 module stops when USB_IP1 is specified to the member (module). More...

fsp_err_t	R_USB_Read (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t destination) Bulk/interrupt data transfer and control data transfer. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_Write (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t destination) Bulk/Interrupt data transfer and control data transfer. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_Stop (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_transfer_t direction, uint8_t destination) Requests a data read/write transfer be terminated when a data read/write transfer is being performed. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_Suspend (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl) Sends a SUSPEND signal from the USB module assigned to the member (module) of the usb_crtl_t structure. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_Resume (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl) Sends a RESUME signal from the USB module assigned to the member (module) of the usb_ctrl_tstructure. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_VbusSet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t state) Specifies starting or stopping the VBUS supply. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_InfoGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_info_t *p_info, uint8_t destination) Obtains completed USB-related events. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PipeRead (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t pipe_number) Requests a data read (bulk/interrupt transfer) via the pipe specified in the argument. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PipeWrite (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t pipe_number) Requests a data write (bulk/interrupt transfer). More...

fsp_err_t	R_USB_PipeStop (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t pipe_number) Terminates a data read/write operation. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_UsedPipesGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t *p_pipe, uint8_t destination) Gets the selected pipe number (number of the pipe that has completed initalization) via bit map information. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PipeInfoGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_pipe_t *p_info, uint8_t pipe_number) Gets the following pipe information regarding the pipe specified in the argument (p_ctrl) member (pipe): endpoint number, transfer type, transfer direction and maximum packet size. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PullUp (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t state) This API enables or disables pull-up of D+/D- line. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_EventGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_status_t *event) Obtains completed USB related events. (OS less Only) More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version) Returns the version of this module. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_Callback (usb_callback_t *p_callback) Register a callback function to be called upon completion of a USB related event. (RTOS only) More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_HostControlTransfer (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_t *p_setup, uint8_t *p_buf, uint8_t device_address) Performs settings and transmission processing when transmitting a setup packet. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PeriControlDataGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size) Receives data sent by control transfer. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PeriControlDataSet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t

	*p_buf, uint32_t size) Performs transfer processing for control transfer. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PeriControlStatusSet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_status_t status) Set the response to the setup packet. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_ModuleNumberGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *module_number) This API gets the module number. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_ClassTypeGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_class_t *class_type) This API gets the class type. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_DeviceAddressGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *device_address) This API gets the device address. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_PipeNumberGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *pipe_number) This API gets the pipe number. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_DeviceStateGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t *state) This API gets the state of the device. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_DataSizeGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t *data_size) This API gets the data size. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_SetupGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_t *setup) This API gets the setup type. More...

Detailed Description

The USB module (r_usb_basic) provides an API to perform H / W control of USB communication. It implements the USB Interface.

Overview

The USB module performs USB hardware control. The USB module operates in combination with the device class drivers provided by Renesas.

Features

The USB module has the following key features:

- Overall
  - Supporting USB Host or USB Peripheral.
  - Device connect/disconnect, suspend/resume, and USB bus reset processing.
  - Control transfer on pipe 0.
  - Data transfer on pipes 1 to 9. (Bulk or Interrupt transfer)
  - This driver supports RTOS version (hereinafter called "RTOS") and Non-OS version (hereinafter called "Non-OS"). RTOS uses the realtime OS (FreeRTOS). Non-OS does not use the real time OS.
- Host mode
  - In host mode, enumeration as Low-speed/Full-speed/Hi-speed device (However, operating speed is different by devices ability.)
  - Transfer error determination and transfer retry.
- Peripheral mode
  - In peripheral mode, enumeration as USB Host of USB1.1/2.0/3.0.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_usb_basic

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_usb_basic_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
PLL clock frequency setting	• 24MHz • 20MHz • Other than 24/20MHz	24MHz	In the case of a USB module other than USB1 module, this definition is ignored.
CPU bus access wait setting	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	9 access cycles waits	CPU Bus Access Wait Select(CPU Bus Wait Register (BUSWAIT)BWAIT[3:0]) 2-17 access cycle wait
Setting the battery charging function	• Using the battery charging function • Not using the battery charging	Using the battery charging function	Not using the battery charging function Using the battery charging function

	function		
Setting the power source IC	• High assert • Low assert	High assert	Select High assert or Low assert.
Setting USB port operation when using the battery charging function	• DCP enabled • DCP disabled	DCP disabled	Please select whether to deactivate or activate the DCP.
Setting whether to notify the application when receiving the req uest(SET_INTERFACE/S ET_FEATURE/CLEAR_FE ATURE)	• Not notifying. • Notifying	Notifying	Please choose whether it corresponds to the class request.
Select whether to use the double buffer function.	• Not Using double buffer • Using double buffer	Using double buffer	Please choose whether it corresponds to the double buffer.
Select whether to use the continuous transfer mode.	• Not Using continuous transfer mode • Using continuous transfer mode	Not Using continuous transfer mode	Please choose whether it corresponds to the continuous transfer mode.
DMA Support.	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Enable DMA support for the USB module.
Transfer source address when DMA is supported.	• DMA not support. • Setting for FS module. • Setting for HS module.	DMA not support.	It changes with the IP number used.
Transfer destination address when DMA is supported.	• DMA not support. • Setting for FS module. • Setting for HS module.	DMA not support.	It changes with the IP number used.

Configurations for Middleware > USB > USB Driver on r_usb_basic

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > USB > USB Driver on r_usb_basic:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_basic0	Module name.
USB Mode	• Host mode	Host mode	Select the usb mode.

	• Peri mode		
USB Speed	• Full Speed • Hi Speed • Low Speed	Full Speed	Select the usb speed.
USB Module Number	• USB_IP0 Port • USB_IP1 Port	USB_IP0 Port	Specify the USB module number to be used.
USB Class Type	• Peripheral communication device class • Peripheral human interface device class • Peripheral mass strage class • Peripheral vender class • Host communication device class • Host human interface device class • Host mass strage class • Host vender class	Peripheral communication device class	Select the usb device class.
USB Descriptor	Define with usb_descriptor_t.	g_usb_descriptor	Enter the name of the descriptor to be used. For how to create a descriptor structure, refer to the Descriptor definition chapter in the usb_basic manual. Specify NULL when using the Host class.
USB Complience CallBack	Define with usb_compliance_cb_t.	NULL	Member variable for setting callback used in compliance test.
USBFS USBI Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority used by USBI.
USBFS USBR Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority used by USBR.
USBFS D0FIFO Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority used by FS D0FIFO.
USBFS D1FIFO Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority used by FS

			D1FIFO.
USBHS USBIR Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority used by USBI.
USBHS D0FIFO Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority used by HS D0FIFO.
USBHS D1FIFO Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		Select the interrupt priority used by HS D1FIFO.
USB RTOS CallBack	Enter the address of the function.	NULL	Member variable for storing callbacks used by RTOS.
USB Other Context	Enter the address of the context.	NULL	Enter the information you want to specify.

Clock Configuration

The USB module uses PLL as the clock source. Set the PLL clock source frequency in the configuration file.

Pin Configuration

USB input/output pin settings are necessary to use the USB controller. The following is a list of USB pins that need to be set. Set the following pins as necessary.

USB I/O Pin Settings for USB Peripheral Operation.

Pin Name	I/O	Function
USB_VBUS	input	VBUS pin for USB communication
USBHS_VBUS	input	VBUS pin for USB communication

USB I/O Pin Settings for USB Host Operation.

Pin Name	I/O	Function
USBHS_VBUSEN	output	VBUS output enabled pin for USB communication
USBHS_OVRCURA	input	Overcurrent detection pin for USB communication
USBHS_OVRCURB	input	Overcurrent detection pin for USB communication

DMA Configuration

To use DMA, select an empty Box under Basic on RA Configuration.
Box is separated for sending and receiving.
When you make a selection, a menu will appear, allowing you to select a DMA module.
In addition, since Box is separated for transmission and reception, set the DMA in the direction you

want to use.

When using DMA with USB, it is necessary to set the DMA items in RA Configuration.

Config Name	Select Name	Description
Transfer Size	2Bytes 4Bytes	When operating with FS, select "2byte" When operating with HS, select "4byte"
Activation source	USBFS FIFO 0 USBFS FIFO 1 USBHS FIFO 0 USBHS FIFO 1	Select this when receiving data with FS Select this when sending data with FS Select this when receiving data with HS Select this when sending data with HS

Descriptor definition

The usb_descriptor_t structure stores descriptor information such as device descriptor and configuration descriptor.
The descriptor information set in this structure is sent to the USB host as response data to a standard request during enumeration of the USB host.
This structure is specified in the R_USB_Open function argument.

```
typedef struct usb_descriptor
{
     uint8_t *p_device;    /* Note 1 */
     uint8_t *p_config_f;  /* Note 2 */
     uint8_t *p_config_h;  /* Note 3 */
     uint8_t *p_qualifier; /* Note 4 */
     uint8_t **pp_string;  /* Note 5 */
     uint8_t num_string;   /* Note 6 */
} usb_descriptor_t;
```

Note:

1. Specify the top address of the area that stores the device descriptor in the member (p_device).
2. Specify the top address of the area that stores the Full-speed configuration descriptor in the member (p_config_f).
   Even when using Hi-speed, make sure you specify the top address of the area that stores the Full-speed configuration descriptor in this member.
3. Specify the top address of the area that stores the Hi-speed configuration descriptor in the member (p_config_h).
   For Full-speed, specify USB_NULL to this member.
4. Specify the top address of the area that stores the qualifier descriptor in the member (p_qualifier). For Full-speed, specify USB_NULL to this member.

5. Specify the top address of the string descriptor table in the member (pp_string).
   In the string descriptor table,specify the top address of the areas that store each string descriptor.

```
Ex. 1) Full-speed                                Ex. 2) Hi-speed

     usb_descriptor_t g_usb_descriptor =               usb_descriptor_t g_usb_
descriptor =
     {                                              {
         smp_device,                                    smp_device,
         smp_config_f,                                  smp_config_f,
         USB_NULL,                                      smp_config_h,
         USB_NULL,                                      smp_qualifier,
         smp_str_table,                                 smp_str_table,
         3,                                             3,
     };                                             };
```

6. Specify the number of the string descriptor which set in the string descriptor table to the member (num_string).
7. After setting the descriptors, enter the name of the structure that stores the start address of each descriptor in the USB Descriptor item of RA Configuration.

String Descriptor

This USB driver requires each string descriptor that is constructed to be registered in the string descriptor table.
The following describes how to register a string descriptor.

1. First construct each string descriptor. Then, define the variable of each string descriptor in uint8_t* type.

```
 Example descriptor construction)
    uint8_t smp_str_descriptor0[]
    {
        0x04,      /* Length */
        0x03,      /* Descriptor type */
        0x09, 0x04 /* Language ID */
    };

    uint8_t smp_str_descriptor1[] =
    {
        0x10,      /* Length */
        0x03,      /* Descriptor type */
        'R', 0x00,
        'E', 0x00,
        'N', 0x00,
        'E', 0x00,
        'S', 0x00,
        'A', 0x00,
        'S', 0x00
    };
    uint8_t smp_str_descriptor2[] =
    {
        0x12,      /* Length */
        0x03,      /* Descriptor type */
        'C', 0x00,
        'D', 0x00,
        'C', 0x00,
        '_', 0x00,
        'D', 0x00,
        'E', 0x00,
        'M', 0x00,
        'O', 0x00
    };
```

2. Set the top address of each string descriptor constructed above in the string descriptor table.
   Define the variablesof the string descriptor table as uint8_t* type.

3. Set the top address of the string descriptor table in the usb_descriptor_t structure member (pp_string).

4. Set the number of the string descriptor which set in the string descriptor table to usb_descriptor_t structure member (num_string).
   In the case of the above example, the value 3 is set to the member (num_string).

Note: The position set for each string descriptor in the string descriptor table is determined by the index values set in the descriptor itself (iManufacturer, iConfiguration, etc.).
For example, in the table below, the manufacturer is described in smp_str_descriptor1 and the value of iManufacturer in the device descriptor is “1”.
Therefore, the top address “smp_str_descriptor1” is set at Index“1” in the string descriptor table.

```
/* String Descriptor table */
    uint8_t *smp_str_table[] =
    {
        smp_str_descriptor0, /* Index: 0 */
        smp_str_descriptor1, /* Index: 1 */
        smp_str_descriptor2, /* Index: 2 */
    };
```

Other Descriptors

1. Please construct the device descriptor, configuration descriptor, and qualifier descriptor based on instructions
   provided in the Universal Serial Bus Revision 2.0
   specification(http://www.usb.org/developers/docs/) Each descriptor variable should be defined as uint8_t* type.
2. The top address of each descriptor should be registered in the corresponding usb_descriptor_t function member.

Usage Notes

Creating an Application Program

This chapter provides information for creating application programs.

Descriptor Creation

For USB peripheral operations, your will need to create descriptors to meet your system specifications.
Register the created descriptors in the usb_descriptor_t function members.
USB host operations do not require creation of special descriptors.
Set usb_descriptor_t structure in USB Descriptor of RA Configuation.

Creation and Registration of Callback Functions (RTOS only)

Create and register a callback function to be registered in RA Configuration.
In addition to the USB completion event, a variety of information about the event is also set by the USB driver.
Be sure to notify the application task of the relevant argument information using, for example, the RTOS API.
The item to register a callback in RA Configuration is USB RTOS CallBack.

Creation of Main Routine and Application Program Tasks

1. Non-OS

   Please describe the main routine in the main loop format.
   Make sure you call the R_USB_EventGet function in the main loop.
   The USB-related completed events are obtained from the return value of the R_USB_EventGet
   function. Also make sure your application program has a routine for each return value.
   The routine is triggered by the corresponding return value

   Note: Carry out USB data communication using the R_USB_Read, R_USB_Write functions after
   checking the return value USB_STATUS_CONFIGURED of R_USB_EventGet function.

2. RTOS

   Write application program tasks in loop format.
   In the main loop, be sure to call the RTOS API to retrieve the information
   (USB completion events and the like) that is received as notifications from the callback function.
   Write programs that correspond to the respective USB completion events, with the USB completion events
   retrieved by the application task as a trigger.

Registration to the real time OS (RTOS only)

Register the following in RTOS.

1. Application Program Tasks
2. RTOS features used by application tasks and callback functions

Note: The priority of the application program task is 1 by default.
To increase the priority, increase the value of Max Priorities in the RTOS config.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the USB:

- The current USB driver does not support hub.
- In USB host mode, the module does not support suspend during data transfer. Execute suspend only after confirming that data transfer is complete.
- Multiconfigurations are not supported.
- The USB host and USB peripheral modes cannot operate at the same time.
- This USB driver does not support the error processing when the out of specification values are specified to the arguments of each function in the driver.
- This driver does not support the CPU transfer using D0FIFO/D1FIFO register.
- This driver does not support multiple device class drivers at the same time.
- The USB Hi-Speed module only supports Hi-Speed operation.

Examples

USB Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the USB in an application.

```
void usb_basic_example (void)
{
 usb_instance_ctrl_t ctrl;
    usb_event_info_t    event_info;
 usb_status_t       event;
 R_USB_Open(&ctrl, &g_usb0_cfg);
 /* Loop back between PC(TerminalSoft) and USB MCU */
 while (1)
    {
 R_USB_EventGet(&event_info, &event);
 switch (event)
      {
 case USB_STATUS_CONFIGURED:
 case USB_STATUS_WRITE_COMPLETE:
 R_USB_Read(&ctrl, g_buf, DATA_LEN, USB_CLASS_PCDC);
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE:
 R_USB_Write(&ctrl, g_buf, event_info.data_size, USB_CLASS_PCDC);
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_REQUEST:   /* Receive Class Request */
 if (USB_PCDC_SET_LINE_CODING == (event_info.setup.request_type & USB_BREQUEST))
```

```
     {
R_USB_PeriControlDataGet(&ctrl, (uint8_t *) &g_line_coding, LINE_CODING_LENGTH);
                }
else if (USB_PCDC_GET_LINE_CODING == (event_info.setup.request_type & USB_BREQUEST))
     {
R_USB_PeriControlDataSet(&ctrl, (uint8_t *) &g_line_coding, LINE_CODING_LENGTH);
                }
else
     {
                  g_usb_on_usb.periControlStatusSet(&ctrl, USB_SETUP_STATUS_ACK);
                }
break;
case USB_STATUS_SUSPEND:
case USB_STATUS_DETACH:
break;
default:
break;
      }
   }
} /* End of function usb_main() */
```

Typedefs

typedef usb_event_info_t	usb_instance_ctrl_t

Typedef Documentation

◆ usb_instance_ctrl_t

typedef usb_event_info_t usb_instance_ctrl_t

ICU private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_ICU_ExternalIrqOpen is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_USB_Open()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Open (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Applies power to the USB module specified in the argument (p_ctrl).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success in open.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Specified USB module now in use.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_Close()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Close (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Terminates power to the USB module specified in argument (p_ctrl). USB0 module stops when USB_IP0 is specified to the member (module), USB1 module stops when USB_IP1 is specified to the member (module).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_USB_NOT_OPEN	USB module is not open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_Read()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Read (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *p_buf*, uint32_t *size*, uint8_t *destination*)

Bulk/interrupt data transfer and control data transfer.

1. Bulk/interrupt data transfer Requests USB data read (bulk/interrupt transfer). The read data is stored in the area specified by argument (p_buf). After data read is completed, confirm the operation by checking the return value (USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE) of the R_USB_GetEvent function. The received data size is set in member (size) of the usb_ctrl_t structure. To figure out the size of the data when a read is complete, check the return value (USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE) of the R_USB_GetEvent function, and then refer to the member (size) of the usb_crtl_t structure.
2. Control data transfer The R_USB_Read function is used to receive data in the data stage and the R_USB_Write function is used to send data to the USB host.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed (Data read request completed).
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Data receive request already in process for USB device with same device address.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument p_buf must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_Write()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Write (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_buf*, uint32_t *size*, uint8_t *destination*)

Bulk/Interrupt data transfer and control data transfer.

1. Bulk/Interrupt data transfer Requests USB data write (bulk/interrupt transfer). Stores write data in area specified by argument (p_buf). Set the device class type in usb_ctrl_t structure member (type). Confirm after data write is completed by checking the return value (USB_STATUS_WRITE_COMPLETE) of the R_USB_GetEvent function. To request the transmission of a NULL packet, assign USB_NULL(0) to the third argument (size).
2. Control data transfer The R_USB_Read function is used to receive data in the data stage and the R_USB_Write function is used to send data to the USB host.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed. (Data write request completed)
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Data write request already in process for USB device with same device address.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument p_buf must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_Stop()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Stop (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_transfer_t *direction*, uint8_t *destination*)

Requests a data read/write transfer be terminated when a data read/write transfer is being performed.

To stop a data read, set USB_TRANSFER_READ as the argument (type); to stop a data write, specify USB_WRITE as the argument (type).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed. (stop completed)
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Stop processing is called multiple times.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_Suspend()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Suspend (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Sends a SUSPEND signal from the USB module assigned to the member (module) of the usb_crtl_t structure.

After the suspend request is completed, confirm the operation with the return value (USB_STATUS_SUSPEND) of the R_USB_EventGet function.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	During a suspend request to the specified USB module, or when the USB module is already in the suspended state.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_Resume()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Resume (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*)

Sends a RESUME signal from the USB module assigned to the member (module) of the usb_ctrl_tstructure.

After the resume request is completed, confirm the operation with the return value (USB_STATUS_RESUME) of the R_USB_EventGet function

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Resume already requested for same device address. (USB host mode only)
FSP_ERR_USB_NOT_SUSPEND	USB device is not in the SUSPEND state.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_VbusSet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_VbusSet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint16_t *state*)

Specifies starting or stopping the VBUS supply.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion. (VBUS supply start/stop completed)
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_InfoGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_info_t * *p_info*, uint8_t *destination*)

Obtains completed USB-related events.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion. (VBUS supply start/stop completed)
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_PipeRead()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PipeRead (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *p_buf*, uint32_t *size*, uint8_t *pipe_number*)

Requests a data read (bulk/interrupt transfer) via the pipe specified in the argument.

The read data is stored in the area specified in the argument (p_buf). After the data read is completed, confirm the operation with the R_USB_GetEvent function return value(USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE). To figure out the size of the data when a read is complete, check the return value (USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE) of the R_USB_GetEvent function, and then refer to the member (size) of the usb_crtl_t structure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Specified pipe now handling data receive/send request.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument p_buf must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_PipeWrite()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PipeWrite (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *p_buf*, uint32_t *size*, uint8_t *pipe_number*)

Requests a data write (bulk/interrupt transfer).

The write data is stored in the area specified in the argument (p_buf). After data write is completed, confirm the operation with the return value (USB_STATUS_WRITE_COMPLETE) of the EventGet function. To request the transmission of a NULL packet, assign USB_NULL (0) to the third argument (size).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Specified pipe now handling data receive/send request.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument p_buf must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_PipeStop()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PipeStop (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *pipe_number*)

Terminates a data read/write operation.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed. (stop request completed)
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_UsedPipesGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_UsedPipesGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint16_t * *p_pipe*, uint8_t *destination*)

Gets the selected pipe number (number of the pipe that has completed initalization) via bit map information.

The bit map information is stored in the area specified in argument (p_pipe). Based on the information (module member and address member) assigned to the usb_ctrl_t structure, obtains the PIPE information of that USB device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_PipeInfoGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PipeInfoGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_pipe_t * *p_info*, uint8_t *pipe_number*)

Gets the following pipe information regarding the pipe specified in the argument (p_ctrl) member (pipe): endpoint number, transfer type, transfer direction and maximum packet size.

The obtained pipe information is stored in the area specified in the argument (p_info).

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_PullUp()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PullUp (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t *state*)

This API enables or disables pull-up of D+/D- line.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion. (Pull-up enable/disable setting completed)
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_EventGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_EventGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_status_t * *event*)

Obtains completed USB related events. (OS less Only)

In USB host mode, the device address value of the USB device that completed an event is specified in the usb_ctrl_t structure member (address) specified by the event's argument. In USB peripheral mode, USB_NULL is specified in member (address). If this function is called in the RTOS execution environment, a failure is returned.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Event Get Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	If called in the RTOS environment, an error is returned.

Note

Do not use the same variable as the first argument of R_USB_Open for the first argument.

◆ R_USB_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the version of this module.

The version number is encoded such that the top two bytes are the major version number and the bottom two bytes are the minor version number.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Failed in acquiring version information.

◆ R_USB_Callback()

fsp_err_t R_USB_Callback (usb_callback_t * *p_callback*)

Register a callback function to be called upon completion of a USB related event. (RTOS only)

This function registers a callback function to be called when a USB-related event has completed. If this function is called in the OS less execution environment, a failure is returned.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully completed.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	If this function is called in the OS less execution environment, a failure is returned.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.

◆ R_USB_HostControlTransfer()

fsp_err_t R_USB_HostControlTransfer (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_setup_t * *p_setup*, uint8_t * *p_buf*, uint8_t *device_address*)

Performs settings and transmission processing when transmitting a setup packet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Specified pipe now handling data receive/send request.

Note

The address specified in the argument p_buf must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_PeriControlDataGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PeriControlDataGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *p_buf*, uint32_t *size*)

Receives data sent by control transfer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Specified pipe now handling data receive/send request.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument p_buf must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_PeriControlDataSet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PeriControlDataSet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *p_buf*, uint32_t *size*)

Performs transfer processing for control transfer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.
FSP_ERR_USB_BUSY	Specified pipe now handling data receive/send request.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument p_buf must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_PeriControlStatusSet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PeriControlStatusSet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_setup_status_t *status*)

Set the response to the setup packet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter is NULL error.

◆ R_USB_ModuleNumberGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_ModuleNumberGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *module_number*)

This API gets the module number.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.

◆ R_USB_ClassTypeGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_ClassTypeGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_class_t * *class_type*)

This API gets the class type.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.

◆ R_USB_DeviceAddressGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_DeviceAddressGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *device_address*)

This API gets the device address.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.

◆ R_USB_PipeNumberGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_PipeNumberGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *pipe_number*)

This API gets the pipe number.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.

◆ R_USB_DeviceStateGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_DeviceStateGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint16_t * *state*)

This API gets the state of the device.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.

◆ R_USB_DataSizeGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_DataSizeGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint32_t * *data_size*)

This API gets the data size.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.

◆ R_USB_SetupGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_SetupGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, usb_setup_t * *setup*)

This API gets the setup type.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful completion.

5.2.46 USB Host Communications Device Class Driver (r_usb_hcdc)

Modules

This module is USB Host Communication Device Class Driver (HCDC). It implements the USB HCDC Interface.
This module works in combination with (r_usb_basic module).

Functions

Refer to USB (r_usb_basic) for the common API (r_usb_basic) to be called from the application.

Detailed Description

Overview

The r_usb_hcdc module, when used in combination with the r_usb_basic module, operates as a USB host communications device class driver (HCDC).
The HCDC conforms to the PSTN device subclass abstract control model of the USB communication device class specification (CDC) and enables communication with a CDC peripheral device.

Features

The r_usb_hcdc module has the following key features:

- Checking of connected devices.
- Implementation of communication line settings.
- Acquisition of the communication line state.
- Data transfer to and from a CDC peripheral device.
- HCDC can connect maximum 2 CDC devices to 1 USB module by using USB Hub.

Communication Device Class (CDC), PSTN and ACM

This software conforms to the Abstract Control Model (ACM) subclass of the Communication Device Class specification, as specified in detail in the PSTN Subclass document listed in 'Related Documents'.
The Abstract Control Model subclass is a technology that bridges the gap between USB devices and earlier modems (employing RS-232C connections), enabling use of application programs designed for older modems.

Basic Functions

The main functions of HCDC are as follows.

- Verify connected devices
- Make communication line settings
- Acquire the communication line state
- Transfer data to and from the CDC peripheral device

Abstract Control Model Class Requests - Host to Device

This driver supports the following class requests.
CDC Class Requests

Request	Code	Description
SendEncapsulatedCommand	0x00	Transmits an AT command as defined by the protocol used by the device (normally 0 for USB).
GetEncapsulatedResponse	0x01	Requests a response to a command transmitted by SendEncapsulatedCommand.
SetCommFeature	0x02	Enables or disables features such as device-specific 2-byte code and country setting.
GetCommFeature	0x03	Acquires the enabled/disabled state of features such as device-specific 2-byte code and country setting.
ClearCommFeature	0x04	Restores the default enabled/disabled settings of features such as device-specific 2-byte code and country setting.
SetLineCoding	0x20	Makes communication line settings (communication speed, data length, parity bit, and stop bit length).
GetLineCoding	0x21	Acquires the communication line setting state.
SetControlLineState	0x22	Makes communication line control signal (RTS, DTR) settings.
SendBreak	0x23	Transmits a break signal.

For details concerning the Abstract Control Model requests, refer to Table 11, 'Requests - Abstract Control Model' in 'USB Communications Class Subclass Specification for PSTN Devices', Revision 1.2.

SendEncapsulatedCommand
The SendEncapsulatedCommand data format is shown below.
SendEncapsulatedCommand Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	SEND_ENCAPSULATED_COMMAND(0x00)	0x0000	0x0000	Data length	Control protoco command

Note
Items such as AT commands for modem control are set as Data, and wLength is set to match the length of the data.

GetEncapsulatedResponse

The GetEncapsulatedResponse data format is shown below.
GetEncapsulatedResponse Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	GET_ENCAPSULATED_RESPONSE (0x01)	0x0000	0x0000	Data length	The data depends on the protocol.

Note

The response data to SendEncapsulatedCommand is set as Data, and wLength is set to match the length of the data.

SetCommFeature
The SetCommFeature data format is shown below.
SetCommFeature Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	SET_COMM_FEATURE(0x02)	Feature Selector	0x0000	Data length	Status Either the country code or the Abstract Control Model idle setting/multiplexing setting for Feature Selector.

Note

See Feature Selector setting list.

GetCommFeature Data Format
The GetCommFeature data format is shown below.
GetCommFeature Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	GET_COMM_FEATURE(0x03)	Feature Selector	0x0000	Data length	Status Either the country code or the Abstract Control Model idle setting/multiplexing setting for Feature

Selector.

Note

See Feature Selector setting list.

Feature Selector Settings

Feature Selector	Code	Targets	Length of Data	Description
RESERVED	0x00	None	None	Reserved
ABSTRACT_STATE	0x01	Interface	2	Selects the setting for Abstract Control Model idle state and signal multiplexing.
COUNTRY_SETTIN G	0x02	Interface	2	Selects the country code in hexadecimal format, as defined by ISO 3166.

Status Format when ABSTRACT_STATE Selected

Bit Position	Description
D15 to D2	Reserved
D1	Data multiplexing setting 1: Multiplexing of call management commands is enabled for the Data class. 0: Multiplexing is disabled.
D0	Idle setting 1: No endpoints of the target interface accept data from the host, and data is not supplied to the host. 0: Endpoints continue to accept data and it is supplied to the host.

ClearCommFeature
The ClearCommFeature data format is shown below.
ClearCommFeature Data Format

bmRequestTyp e	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	CLEAR_COMM_ FEATURE (0x04)	Feature Selector	0x0000	Data length	None

Note

See Feature Selector setting list.

SetLineCoding

The SetLineCoding data format is shown below.
SetLineCoding Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	SET_LINE_CODING(0x20)	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	Line Coding Structure See Line Coding Structure format.

Line Coding Structure Format

Offset	Field	size	Value	Description
0	dwDTERate	4	Number	Data terminal speed (bps)
4	bCharFormat	1	Number	Stop bits 0 - 1 stop bit 1 - 1.5 stop bits 2 - 2 stop bits
5	bParityType	1	Number	Parity 0 - None 1 - Odd 2 - Even 3 - Mask 4 - Space
6	bDataBits	1	Number	Data bits (5, 6, 7, 8)

GetLineCoding

The GetLineCoding data format is shown below.
GetLineCoding Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0xA1	GET_LINE_CODING(0x21)	0x0000	0x0000	0x0007	Line Coding Structure See Line Coding Structure format.

SetControlLineState

The SetControlLineState data format is shown below.
SetControlLineState Data Format

bmRequestTyp	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data

e					
0x21	SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE (0x22)	Control Signal Bitmap Control Signal Refer to bit map format.	0x0000	0x0000	None

Control Signal Bitmap

Bit Position	Description
D15 to D2	Reserved
D1	DCE transmit function control 0 - RTS OFF 1 - RTS ON
D0	Notification of DTE ready state 0 - DTR OFF 1 - DTR ON

SendBreak
The SendBreak data format is shown below.
SendBreak Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	SEND_BREAK (0x23)	Break signal output duration	0x0000	0x0000	None

ACM Notifications from Device to Host
The following are the class notifications supported and not supported by the software.
CDC Class Notifications

Notification	Code	Description	Supported
NETWORK_CONNECTION	0x00	Notification of network connection state	No
RESPONSE_AVAILABLE	0x01	Response to GET_ENCAPSLATED_RESPONSE	Yes
SERIAL_STATE	0x20	Notification of serial line state	Yes

SerialState
The SerialState data format is shown below.
SerialState Data Format

bmRequestTyp	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data

e					
0xA1	SERIAL_STATE(0x20)	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	UART State bitmap See UART State bitmap format.

UART State bitmap format is shown below.

Bit Position	Field	Description
D15 to D7		Reserved
D6	bOverRun	Overrun error detected
D5	bParity	Parity error detected
D4	bFraming	Framing error detected
D3	bRingSignal	INCOMING signal (ring signal) detected
D2	bBreak	Break signal detected
D1	bTxCarrier	Data Set Ready: Line connected and ready for communication
D0	bRxCarrier	Data Carrier Detect: Carrier detected on line

ResponseAvailable
The ResponseAvailable data format is shown below.
ResponseAvailable Data Format

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0xA1	RESPONSE_AVAILABLE(0x01)	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	None

USB Host Communication Device Class Driver (HCDC)

Basic Functions
This software conforms to the Abstract Control Model subclass of the communication device class specification.
The main functions of HCDC are to:

- Send class requests to the CDC peripheral
- Transfer data to and from the CDC peripheral
- Receive communication error information from the CDC peripheral

Structure / Union
The following structure or union is defined in r_usb_hcdc_api.h.
HCDC Request Structure
Below describes the 'UART settings' parameter structure used for the CDC requests SetLineCoding

and GetLineCoding.
usb_hcdc_linecoding_t Structure

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint32_t	dwdte_rate	Line speed	Unit: bps
uint8_t	bchar_format	Stop bits setting	
uint8_t	bparity_type	Parity setting	
uint8_t	bdata_bits	Data bit lengt	

usb_hcdc_controllinestate_t Structure

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint16_t (D1)	brts:1	Carrier control for half duplex modems 0 - Deactivate carrier, 1 - Activate carrier	
uint16_t (D0)	brts:1	Indicates to DCE if DTE is present or not 0 - Not Present, 1 - Present	

Below describes the 'AT command' parameter structure used for the CDC requests SendEncapsulatedCommand and GetEncapsulatedResponse.

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint8_t	*p_data	Area where AT command data is stored	
uint16_t	wlength	Size of AT command data	Unit: byte

Below describes the 'Break signal' parameter structure used for the CDC requests SendBreak.

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint16_t	wtime_ms	Duration of Break	Unit: ms

CommFeature Function Selection Union

usb_hcdc_abstractstate_t Structure and and usb_hcdc_countrysetting_t Structure describe the 'Feature Selector' parameter structure used for the CDC requests SetCommFeature and GetCommFeature, and usb_hcdc_commfeature_t Union describes the parameter union.

usb_hcdc_abstractstate_t Structure

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint16_t	rsv1:14	Reserved	

uint16_t	bdms:1	Data Multiplexed State	
iomt16_t	bis:1	Idle Setting	

usb_hcdc_countrysetting_t Structure

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint16_t	country_code	Country code in hexadecimal format as defined in [ISO3166],	

usb_hcdc_commfeature_t Union

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
usb_hcdc_abstractstate_t	abstract_state	Parameter when selecting Abstract Control Model	
usb_hcdc_countrysetting_t	country_setting	Parameter when selecting Country Setting	

CDC Notification Format

'Response_Available notification format' and 'Serial_State notification format' describe the data format of the CDC notification.

Response_Available notification format

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint8_t	bmRequestType	0xA1	
uint8_t	bRequest	RESPONSE_AVAILABLE(0x01)	
uint16_t	wValue	0x0000	
uint16_t	wIndex	Interface	
uint16_t	wLength	0x0000	
uint8_t	Data	none	

Serial_State notification format

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint8_t	bmRequestType	0xA1	
uint8_t	bRequest	SERIAL_STATE(0x20)	
uint16_t	wValue	0x0000	
uint16_t	wIndex	Interface	

uint16_t	wLength	0x0002	
uint8_t	Data	UART State bitmap	Refer to 'usb_hcdc_serialstate_t Structure'

The host is notified of the 'SerialState' when a change in the UART port state is detected. 'usb_hcdc_serialstate_t Structure' describes the structure of the UART State bitmap.

usb_hcdc_serialstate_t Structure

Type	Member	Description	Remarks
uint16_t (D15-D7)	rsv1:9	Reserved	
uint16_t (D6)	bover_run:1	Overrun error detected	
uint16_t (D5)	bparity:1	Parity error detected	
uint16_t (D4)	bframing:1	Framing error detected	
uint16_t (D3)	bring_signal:1	Incoming signal (Ring signal) detected	
uint16_t (D2)	bbreak:1	Break signal detected	
uint16_t (D1)	btx_carrier:1	Line connected and ready for communication	Data Set Ready
uint16_t (D0)	brx_carrier:1	Carrier detected on line	Data Carrier Detect

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_usb_hcdc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_usb_hcdc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Multiple connection Setting	• Multiple connection not supported • Multiple connection supported	Multiple connection not supported	Currently, multiple connections are not available.
Specify the device class ID of the CDC device to be connected.	• CDC class supported device • Vendor class device	CDC class supported device	Specify the device class ID of the CDC device to be connected.
Select which pipe to use for Bulk IN transfer during HCDC operation..	• Using USB PIPE1 • Using USB PIPE2	Using USB PIPE1	Please choose between 1 and 5.

	• Using USB PIPE3 • Using USB PIPE4 • Using USB PIPE5		
Select which pipe to use for Bulk OUT transfer during HCDC operation.	• Using USB PIPE1 • Using USB PIPE2 • Using USB PIPE3 • Using USB PIPE4 • Using USB PIPE5	Using USB PIPE2	Please choose between 1 and 5.
Select which pipe to use for Interrupt IN transfer during HCDC operation.	• Using USB PIPE6 • Using USB PIPE7 • Using USB PIPE8 • Using USB PIPE9	Using USB PIPE6	Please choose between 6 and 9.

Configurations for Middleware > USB > USB HCDC driver on r_usb_hcdc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > USB > USB HCDC driver on r_usb_hcdc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_hcdc0	Module name.

Clock Configuration

Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Pin Configuration

Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Usage Notes

Limitations

This driver is subject to the following limitations.

1. Only one stage of the USB hub can be used.

2. Suspend and resume are not supported for CDC devices connected to the USB hub and USB

hub downstream ports.

3. Suspend is not supported when data transfer is in progress. Confirm that data transfer has completed before executing suspend.

4. Use of compound USB devices with CDC class support is not supported.

5. This module needs to be incorporated into a project using r_usb_basic. Once incorporated into a project, use the API to perform USB H / W control.

Examples

USB HCDC Example

Application Specifications

The main functions of the APL are as follows:

1. Sends receive (Bulk In transfer) requests to the CDC device and receives data.
2. Transfers received data to the CDC device by means of Bulk Out transfers (loopback).
3. The communication speed and other settings are made by transmitting the class request SET_LINE_CODING to the CDC device. This class request can be used to set the communication speed, number of data bits, number of stop bits, and the parity bit.

Data Transfer Image

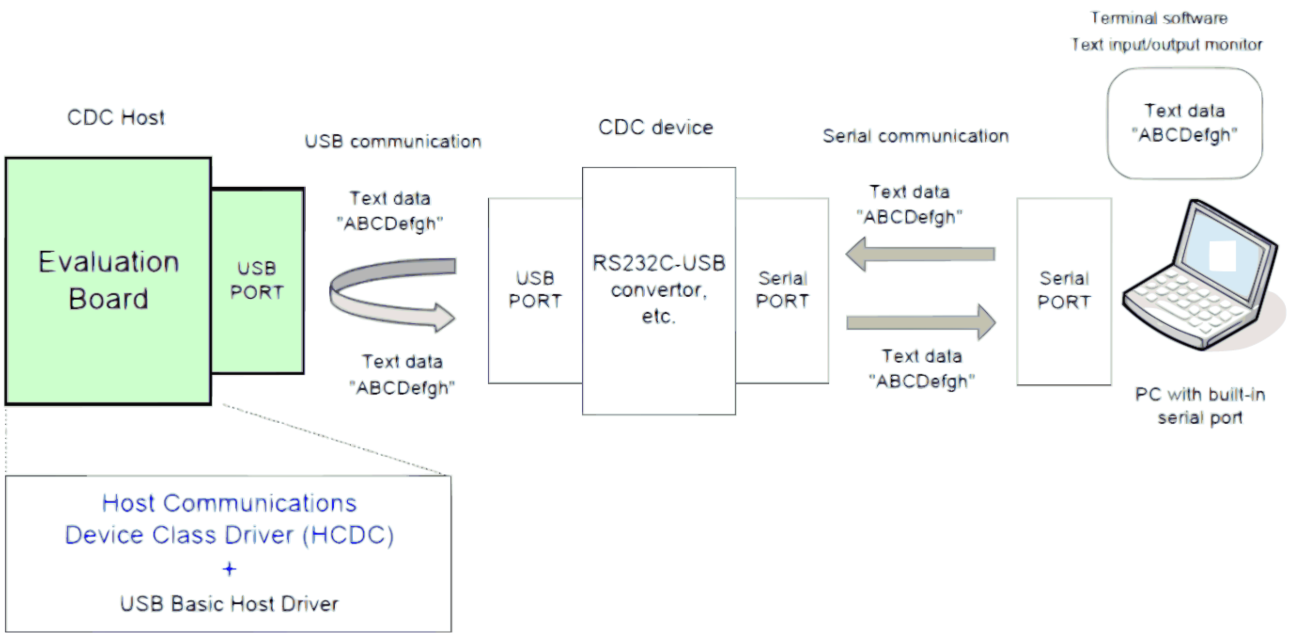


Figure 125: Data Transfer (Loopback)

Application Processing

The application comprises two parts: initial settings and main loop. An overview of the processing in these two parts is provided below.

Initial setting

Initial settings consist of MCU pin settings, USB driver settings, and initial settings to the USB controller.

Main Loop (for RTOS)

The loop performs loop-back processing in which data received from the CDC device is transmitted unaltered back to the CDC device as part of the main routine. An overview of the processing performed by the loop is shown below.

1. When a USB-related event has completed, the USB driver calls the callback function (usb_apl_callback). In the callback function (usb_apl_callback), the application task (APL) is notified of the USB completion event using the real-time OS functionality.
2. In APL, information regarding the USB completion event was notified from the callback function is retrieved using the real-time OS functionality.
3. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_CONFIGURED, APL sends the class request (SET_LINECODING) to the CDC device.
4. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_REQUEST_COMPLETE, APL performs a data reception request to receive data transmitted from the CDC device by calling the R_USB_Read function and also performs a class notification reception request from CDC device.
5. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_READ_COMPLETE, APL performs a data transmission request to send the reception data by calling the R_USB_Write function. The reception data is stored in the gloval variable (g_data). The reception data size is set in the member (size) of the usb_ctrl_t structure. If this member (size) is zero, the USB driver judges that the NULL packet is received and performs a data reception request to the CDC device again.
6. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_WRITE_COMPLETE, APL performs a data reception request to receive the data sent from CDC device.
7. The avove processing is repeated.

An overview of the processing performed by the APL is shown below:

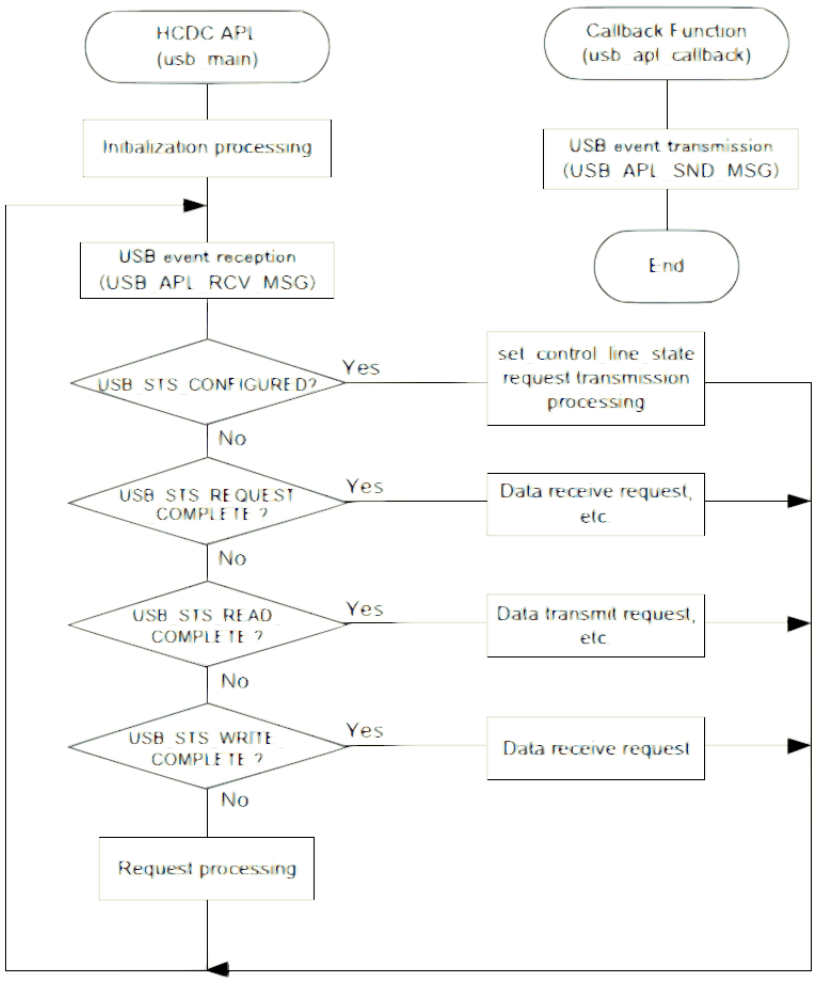


Figure 126: Main Loop processing (for RTOS)

Connecting Multiple CDC Devices

This is a hcdc example of minimal use of the USB in an application.

```
#define SET_LINE_CODING (USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING | USB_HOST_TO_DEV | USB_CLASS |
USB_INTERFACE)
#define GET_LINE_CODING (USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING | USB_DEV_TO_HOST | USB_CLASS |
USB_INTERFACE)
#define SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE (USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE | USB_HOST_TO_DEV |
USB_CLASS | USB_INTERFACE)
void usb_basic_example (void)
{
 usb_instance_ctrl_t ctrl;          /* Variable that stores the contents of the
received message. */
 usb_status_t       event;
```

```
    usb_event_info_t    event_info;
    g_usb_on_usb.open(&ctrl, &g_basic0_cfg);
 while (1)
    {
 /* Message reception processing is performed here. */
 /* Analyzing the received message */
       g_usb_on_usb.eventGet(&event_info, &event);
 switch (event)
      {
 case USB_STATUS_CONFIGURED:
                 set_line_coding(&ctrl, event_info.device_address); /* CDC Class
request "SetLineCoding" */
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE:
 if (USB_CLASS_HCDC == event_info.type)
      {
 if (event_info.data_size > 0)
      {
 /* Send the received data to USB Host */
                         g_usb_on_usb.write(&ctrl, g_snd_buf, event_info.data_size,
USB_DEVICE_ADDRESS_1);
                    }
 else
      {
 /* Send the data reception request when the zero-length packet is received. */
                         g_usb_on_usb.read(&ctrl, g_snd_buf, CDC_DATA_LEN,
USB_DEVICE_ADDRESS_1);
                    }
                 }
 else
 /* USB_HCDCC */
      {
 /* Class notification "SerialState" receive start */
                    g_usb_on_usb.read(&ctrl,
                                     (uint8_t *) &g_serial_state,
                                     USB_HCDC_SERIAL_STATE_MSG_LEN,
                                     USB_DEVICE_ADDRESS_1);
                }
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_WRITE_COMPLETE:
 /* Report receive start */
                g_usb_on_usb.read(&ctrl, g_rcv_buf, CDC_DATA_LEN,
USB_DEVICE_ADDRESS_1);
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_REQUEST_COMPLETE:
 /* Check Complete request "SetLineCoding" */
 if (USB_CDC_SET_LINE_CODING == (event_info.setup.request_type & USB_BREQUEST))
      {
 /* Class notification "SerialState" receive start */
                   set_control_line_state(&ctrl, event_info.device_address); /* CDC
Class request "SetControlLineState" */
                }
 /* Check Complete request "SetControlLineState" */
 else if (USB_CDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE == (event_info.setup.request_type &
USB_BREQUEST))
      {
                   get_line_coding(&ctrl, event_info.device_address); /* CDC Class
request "SetLineCoding" */
                }
 else if (USB_CDC_GET_LINE_CODING == (ctrl.setup.request_type & USB_BREQUEST))
      {
                   g_usb_on_usb.write(&ctrl, g_snd_buf, CDC_DATA_LEN,
USB_DEVICE_ADDRESS_1);
                }
 else
      {
 /* Not support request */
                }
 break;
 default:                   /* Other event */
 break;
      }
   }
} /* End of function usb_main */
void set_control_line_state (usb_instance_ctrl_t * p_ctrl, uint8_t device_address)
{
    usb_setup_t setup;
    setup.request_type   = SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE; /*
bRequestCode:SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE, bmRequestType */
    setup.request_value = 0x0000;                /* wValue:Zero */
    setup.request_index = 0x0000;                /* wIndex:Interface */
    setup.request_length = 0x0000;                /* wLength:Zero */
    g_usb_on_usb.hostControlTransfer(p_ctrl, &setup, (uint8_t *) &g_usb_dummy,
device_address);
} /* End of function cdc_set_control_line_state */
void set_line_coding (usb_instance_ctrl_t * p_ctrl, uint8_t device_address)
{
    usb_setup_t setup;
    g_com_parm.dwdte_rate   = (uint32_t) COM_SPEED;
    g_com_parm.bdata_bits   = COM_DATA_BIT;
    g_com_parm.bchar_format = COM_STOP_BIT;
    g_com_parm.bparity_type = COM_PARITY_BIT;
    setup.request_type   = SET_LINE_CODING;    /* bRequestCode:SET_LINE_CODING,
bmRequestType */
    setup.request_value = 0x0000;             /* wValue:Zero */
    setup.request_index = 0x0000;             /* wIndex:Interface */
    setup.request_length = LINE_CODING_LENGTH; /* Data:Line Coding Structure */
 /* Request Control transfer */
    g_usb_on_usb.hostControlTransfer(p_ctrl, &setup, (uint8_t *) &g_com_parm,
device_address);
} /* End of function cdc_set_line_coding */
void get_line_coding (usb_instance_ctrl_t * p_ctrl, uint8_t device_address)
```

```
{
    usb_setup_t setup;
    setup.request_type   = GET_LINE_CODING;    /* bRequestCode:GET_LINE_CODING,
bmRequestType */
    setup.request_value = 0x0000;             /* wValue:Zero */
    setup.request_index = 0x0000;             /* wIndex:Interface */
    setup.request_length = LINE_CODING_LENGTH; /* Data:Line Coding Structure */
 /* Request Control transfer */
    g_usb_on_usb.hostControlTransfer(p_ctrl, &setup, (uint8_t *) &g_com_parm,
device_address);
} /* End of function cdc_get_line_coding */
```

5.2.47 USB Host Mass Storage Class Driver (r_usb_hmsc)

Modules

Functions

FSP_HEADER fsp_err_t	R_USB_HMSC_StorageCommand (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *buf, uint8_t command, uint8_t destination) Processing for MassStorage(ATAPI) command. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_HMSC_DriveNumberGet (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_drive, uint8_t destination) Get number of Storage drive. More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreGet (void) Get a semaphore. (RTOS only) More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreRelease (void) Release a semaphore. (RTOS only) More...
fsp_err_t	R_USB_HMSC_StorageReadSector (uint16_t drive_number, uint8_t *const buff, uint32_t sector_number, uint16_t sector_count) Read sector information. More...

fsp_err_t	R_USB_HMSC_StorageWriteSector (uint16_t drive_number, uint8_t const *const buff, uint32_t sector_number, uint16_t sector_count) Write sector information. More...

Detailed Description

The USB module (r_usb_hmsc) provides an API to perform hardware control of USB communications. It implements the USB HMSC Interface.

This module is USB Basic Host and Peripheral. It works in combination with Driver (r_usb_basic module).

Overview

The r_usb_hmsc module, when used in combination with the r_usb_basic module, operates as a USB host mass storage class driver (HMSC). HMSC is built on the USB mass storage class Bulk-Only Transport (BOT) protocol. It is possible to communicate with BOT-compatible USB storage devices by combining it with the file system and storage device driver. This module should be used in combination with the FreeRTOS+FAT File System.

Features

The r_usb_hmsc module has the following key features:

- Checking of connected USB storage devices to determine whether or not operation is supported
- Storage command communication using the BOT protocol
- Support for SFF-8070i (ATAPI) USB mass storage subclass
- Sharing of a single pipe for IN/OUT directions or multiple devices
- Maximum 4 USB storage devices can be connected

Class Driver Overview

1. Class Requests

The class requests supported by this driver are shown below.

Request	Description
GetMaxLun	Gets the maximum number of units that are supported.
MassStorageReset	Cancels a protocol error.

2. Storage Commands

This driver supports the following storage commands:

- TEST_UNIT_READY
- REQUEST_SENSE

- MODE_SELECT10
- MODE_SENSE10
- PREVENT_ALLOW
- READ_FORMAT_CAPACITY
- READ10
- WRITE10

Configuration

Refer to USB (r_usb_basic) basic module.

Clock Configuration

Refer to USB (r_usb_basic) basic module.

Pin Configuration

Refer to USB (r_usb_basic) basic module.

Usage Notes

- Due to the wide variety of USB mass storage device implementations, this driver is not guaranteed to work with all devices. When implementing the driver it is important to verify correct operation with the mass storage devices that the end user is expected to use.
- This module must be incorporated into a project using r_usb_basic. Once incorporated into a project, use the API to perform USB hardware control.

Limitations

1. Some MSC devices may be unable to connect because they are not recognized as storage devices.
2. MSC devices that return values of 1 or higher in response to the GetMaxLun command (mass storage class command) are not supported.
3. Maximum 4 USB storage devices can be connected.
4. Only USB storage devices with a sector size of 512 bytes can be connected.
5. A device that does not respond to the READ_CAPACITY command operates as a device with a sector size of 512 bytes.

Examples

USB HMSC Example

Example Operating Environment

The following shows an example operating environment for the HMSC.

Refer to the associated instruction manuals for details on setting up the evaluation board and using the emulator, etc.

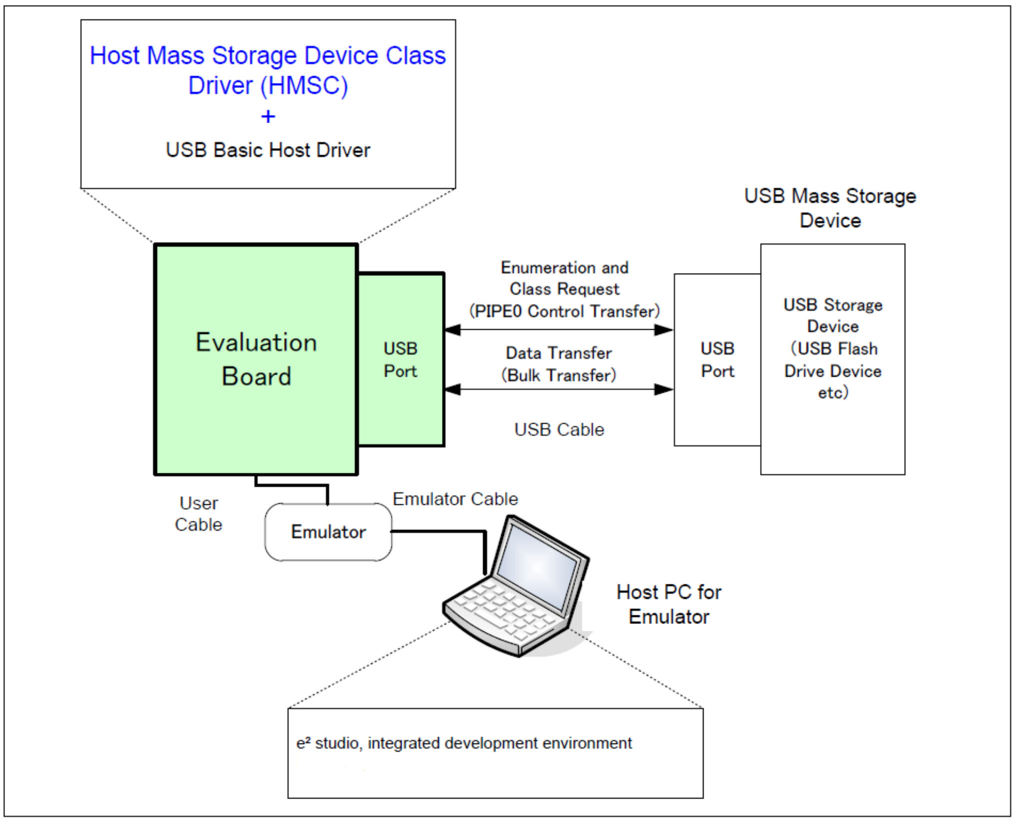

Host Mass Storage Device Class Driver (HMSC)
+
USB Basic Host Driver
USB Mass Storage Device
Evaluation Board
USB Port
Enumeration and Class Request (PIPE0 Control Transfer)
Data Transfer (Bulk Transfer)
USB Cable
USB Port
USB Storage Device (USB Flash Drive Device etc)
User Cable
Emulator
Emulator Cable
Host PC for Emulator
e² studio, integrated development environment

Figure 127: Example Operating Environment

Application Specifications

The main functions of the application are as follows:

1. Performs enumeration and drive recognition processing on MSC devices.
2. After the above processsing finisihes, the application writes the file hmscdemo.txt to the MSC device once.
3. After writing the above file, the APL repeatedly reads the file hmscdemo.txt. It continues to read the file repeatedly until the switch is pressed again.

Application Processing (for RTOS)

This application has two tasks. An overview of the processing in these two tasks is provided below.

usb_apl_task

1. After start up, MCU pin setting, USB controller initialization, and application program initialization are performed.
2. The MSC device is attached to the kit. When enumeration and drive recognition processing have completed, the USB driver calls the callback function (usb_apl_callback). In the callback function (usb_apl_callback), the application task is notified of the USB completion event using the FreeRTOS functionality.
3. In the application task, information regarding the USB completion event about which notification was received from the callback function is retrieved using the real-time OS functionality.
4. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step

2 above is USB_STS_CONFIGURED then, based on the USB completion event, the MSC device is mounted and the file is written to the MSC device.

5. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_DETACH, the application initializes the variables for state management.

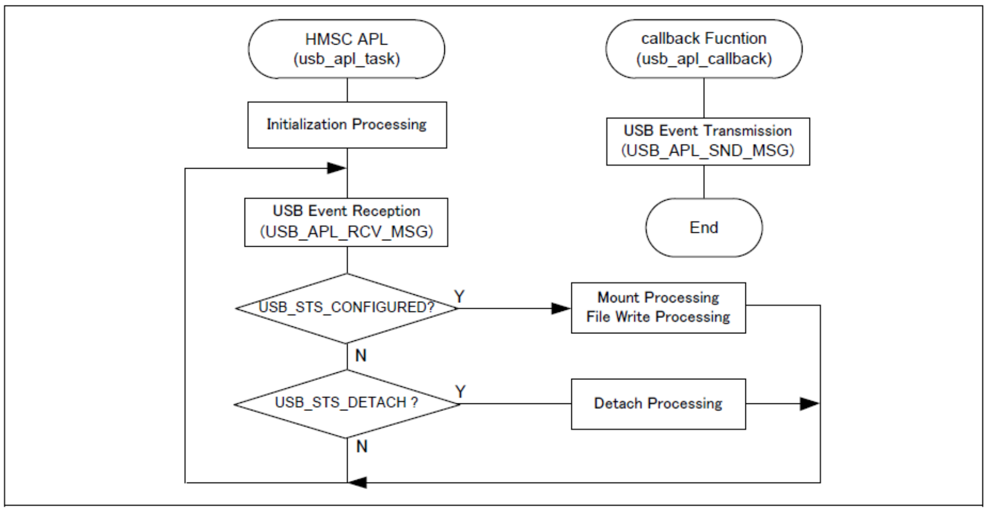


Figure 128: usb_apl_task

file_read_task

Of the application tasks usb_apl_task and file_read_task, file_read_task is processed while usb_apl_task is in the wait state. This task performs file read processing on the file that was written to the MSC device (hmscdemo.txt).

Example Code

Note

For example code refer to the USB HMSC Block Media example.

Function Documentation

◆ R_USB_HMSC_StorageCommand()

fsp_err_t R_USB_HMSC_StorageCommand (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *buf*, uint8_t *command*, uint8_t *destination*)

Processing for MassStorage(ATAPI) command.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter Null pointer error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_HMSC_DriveNumberGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_HMSC_DriveNumberGet (usb_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, uint8_t * *p_drive*, uint8_t *destination*)

Get number of Storage drive.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter Null pointer error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

◆ R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreGet()

fsp_err_t R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreGet (void)

Get a semaphore. (RTOS only)

If this function is called in the OS less execution environment, a failure is returned.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.

◆ R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreRelease()

fsp_err_t R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreRelease (void)

Release a semaphore. (RTOS only)

If this function is called in the OS less execution environment, a failure is returned.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.

◆ R_USB_HMSC_StorageReadSector()

fsp_err_t R_USB_HMSC_StorageReadSector (uint16_t *drive_number*, uint8_t *const *buff*, uint32_t *sector_number*, uint16_t *sector_count*)

Read sector information.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter Null pointer error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument buff must be 4-byte aligned.

◆ R_USB_HMSC_StorageWriteSector()

fsp_err_t R_USB_HMSC_StorageWriteSector (uint16_t *drive_number*, uint8_t const *const *buff*, uint32_t *sector_number*, uint16_t *sector_count*)

Write sector information.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_USB_FAILED	The function could not be completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Parameter Null pointer error.
FSP_ERR_USB_PARAMETER	Parameter error.

Note

The address specified in the argument buff must be 4-byte aligned.

5.2.48 USB Peripheral Communication Device Class (r_usb_pcdc)

Modules

This module is USB Peripheral Communication Device Class Driver (PCDC). It implements the USB PCDC Interface.
This module works in combination with (r_usb_basic module).

Functions

Refer to USB (r_usb_basic) for the common API (r_usb_basic) to be called from the application.

Detailed Description

Overview

The r_usb_pcdc module combines with the r_usb_basic module to provide USB Peripheral It operates as a communication device class driver (hereinafter referred to as PCDC).
PCDC conforms to Abstract Control Model of USB communication device class specification (hereinafter referred to as CDC) and can communicate with USB host.

Features

The r_usb_pcdc module has the following key features:

- Data transfer to and from a USB host.
- Response to CDC class requests.
- Provision of communication device class notification transmit service.

Basic Functions

CDC conforms to the communication device class specification Abstract Control Model subclass.

Abstract Control Model Overview

The Abstract Control Model subclass of CDC is a technology that bridges the gap between USB devices and earlier modems (employing RS-232C connections), enabling use of application programs designed for older modems. The class requests and class notifications supported are listed below.

Class Requests (Host to Peripheral)

This driver notifies to the application program when receiving the following class request.

Request	Code	Description
SetLineCoding	0x20	Makes communication line settings (communication speed, data length,parity bit, and stop bit length).
GetLineCoding	0x21	Acquires the communication line setting state.
SetControlLineState	0x22	Makes communication line control signal (RTS,DTR) settings.

For details concerning the Abstract Control Model requests, refer to Table 11, [Requests - Abstract Control Model] in [USB Communications Class Subclass Specification for PSTN Devices], Revision 1.2.

Data Format of Class Requests

The data format of the class requests supported by the class driver software is described below.

1.SetLineCoding

This is the class request the host transmits to perform the UART line setting.
The SetLineCoding data format is shown below.

SetLineCoding Format

bmRequestTyp e t	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	SET_LINE_CODI NG(0x20)	0x00	0x0	0x07	Line Coding Structure

Line Coding Structure

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	DwDTERate	4	Number	Data terminal speed (bps)
4	BcharFormat	1	Number	Stop bits: 0 - 1 stop bit 1 - 1.5 stop bits 1 - 1.5 stop bits 2 - 2 stop bits
5	BparityType	1	Number	Parity: 0 - None 1 - Odd 2 - Even
6	BdataBits	1		Data bits (5, 6, 7, 8)

2.GetLineCoding

This is the class request the host transmits to request the UART line state.
The GetLineCoding data format is shown below.

GetLineCoding Format

bmRequestTyp e t	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0xA1	GET_LINE_COD ING(0x21)	0x00	0x0	0x07	Line Coding Structure

3.SetControlLineState

This is a class request that the host sends to set up the signal for flow controls of UART.
This software does not support RTS/DTR control.
The SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE data format is shown below.

SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE Format

bmRequestType t	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0x21	SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE(0x22)	Control Signal Bitmap	0x0	0x00	None

Control Signal Bitmap

Bit Position	Description
D15 to D2	Reserved (reset to 0)
D1	DCE transmit function control: 0 - RTS Off 1 - RTS On
D0	Notification of DTE ready state: 0 - DTR Off 1 - DTR On

Class Notifications (Peripheral to Host)

The table below shows the class notification support / non-support of this S / W.

Notification	Code	Description	Supported
NETWORK_CONNECTION	0x00	Notification of network connection state	No
RESPONSE_AVAILABLE	0x01	Response to GET_ENCAPSLATED_RESPONSE	No
SERIAL_STATE	0x20	Notification of serial line state	Yes

1.Serial State

The host is notified of the serial state when a change in the UART port state is detected.
This software supports the detection of overrun, parity and framing errors. A state notification is performed when a change from normal state to error is detected. However, notification is not continually transmitted when an error is continually detected.

SerialState Format

bmRequestType t	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
0xA1	SERIAL_STATE(0x20)	0x00	0x0	0x02	UART State bitmap

UART state bitmap format

Bits	Fieeld	Description	Supported
D15 to D7		Reserved	-
D6	b_over_run	Overrun error detected	Yes
D5	b_parity	Parity error detected	Yes
D4	b_framing	Framing error detected	Yes
D3	b_ring_signal	INCOMING signal (ring signal) detected	No
D2	b_break	Break signal detected	No
D1	btx_arrier	Data Set Ready: Line connected and ready for communication	No
D0	brx_carrier	Data Carrier Detect: Carrier detected on line	No

PC Virtual COM-port Usage

The CDC device can be used as a virtual COM port when operating in Windows OS.
Use a PC running Windows OS, and connect an board. After USB enumeration, the CDC class requests GetLineCoding and SetControlLineState are executed by the target, and the CDC device is registered in Windows Device Manager as a virtual COM device.
Registering the CDC device as a virtual COM-port in Windows Device Manager enables data communication with the CDC device via a terminal app such as [HyperTerminal] which comes standard with Windows OS. When changing settings of the serial port in the Windows terminal application, the UART setting is propagated to the firmware via the class request SetLineCoding.
Data input (or file transmission) from the terminal app window is transmitted to the board using endpoint 2 (EP2); data from the board side is transmitted to the PC using EP1.
When the last packet of data received is the maximum packet size, and the terminal determines that there is continuous data, the received data may not be displayed in the terminal. If the received data is smaller than the maximum packet size, the data received up to that point is displayed in the terminal.
The received data is outputted on the terminal when the data less than Maximum packet size is received.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_usb_pcdc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_usb_pcdc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Select which pipe to use for Bulk IN transfer during PCDC operation.	• Using USB PIPE1 • Using USB PIPE2 • Using USB PIPE3	Using USB PIPE1	Please choose between 1 and 5.

	• Using USB PIPE4 • Using USB PIPE5		
Select which pipe to use for Bulk OUT transfer during PCDC operation.	• Using USB PIPE1 • Using USB PIPE2 • Using USB PIPE3 • Using USB PIPE4 • Using USB PIPE5	Using USB PIPE2	Please choose between 1 and 5.
Select which pipe to use for Interrupt IN transfer during PCDC operation.	• Using USB PIPE6 • Using USB PIPE7 • Using USB PIPE8 • Using USB PIPE9	Using USB PIPE6	Please choose between 6 and 9.

Configurations for Middleware > USB > USB PCDC driver on r_usb_pcdc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > USB > USB PCDC driver on r_usb_pcdc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_pcdc0	Module name.

Setting as r_usb_pcdc module is not necessary.
Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Clock Configuration

Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Pin Configuration

Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Usage Notes

Limitations

This module needs to be incorporated into a project using r_usb_basic. Once incorporated into a project, use the API to perform USB H / W control.

Examples

USB PCDC Example

Example Operating Environment

The following shows an example of the operating environment for the PCDC echo mode.
Refer to the associated instruction manuals for details on setting up the evaluation board and using the emulator, etc.

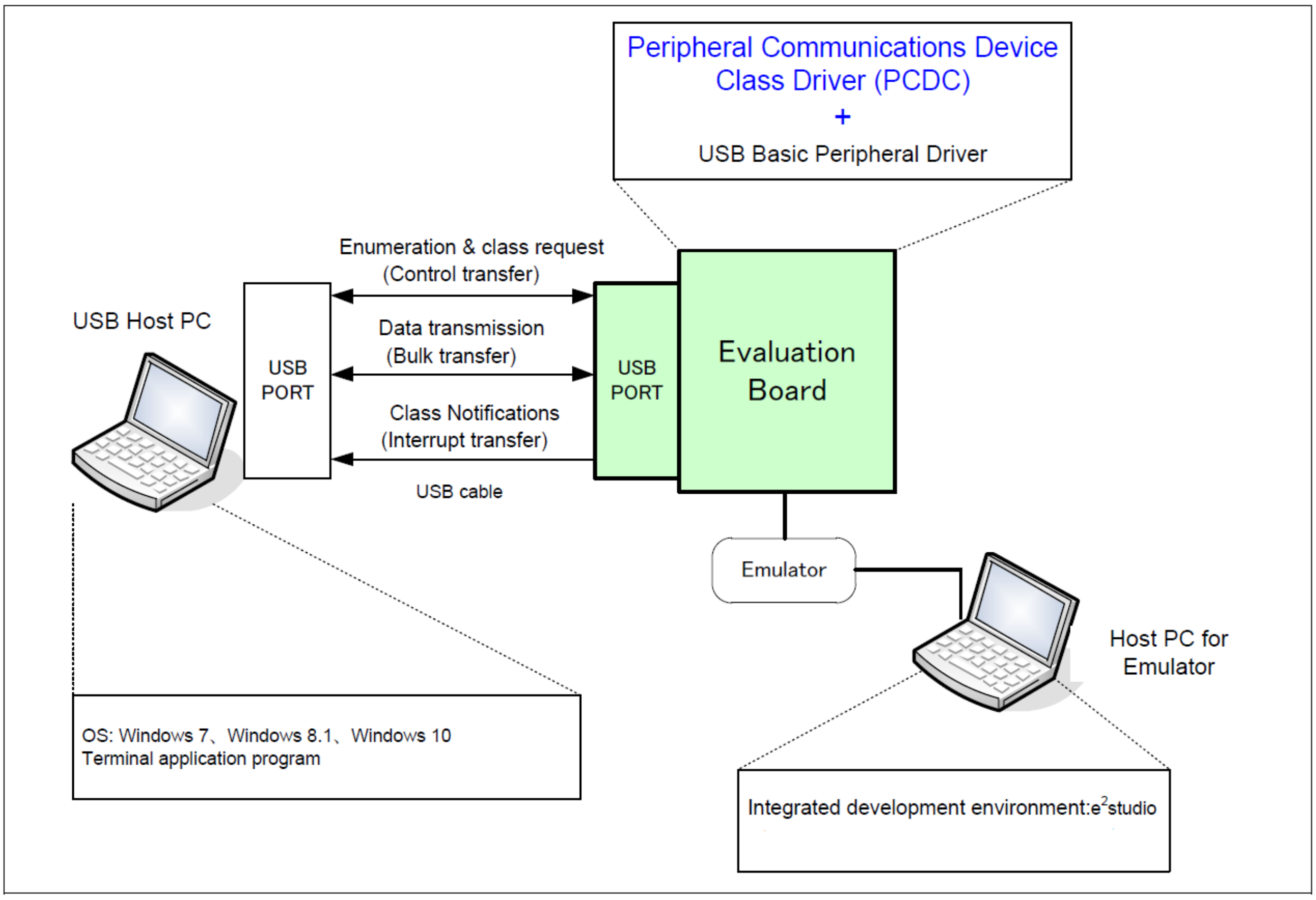

Peripheral Communications Device Class Driver (PCDC)
+
USB Basic Peripheral Driver
Enumeration & class request (Control transfer)
Data transmission (Bulk transfer)
Class Notifications (Interrupt transfer)
USB cable
USB Host PC
USB PORT
USB PORT
Evaluation Board
Emulator
Host PC for Emulator
OS: Windows 7、Windows 8.1、Windows 10
Terminal application program
Integrated development environment:e²studio

Figure 129: Example Operating Environment

Application Specifications

The main functions of the APL are as follows:

1. Echo mode (Loopback mode)
   Transmits data received from the USB host back to the USB host.

2. Low-power functionality
   This functionality transitions the MCU to low-power mode according to the status of the USB.
   a) The APL transitions the MCU to sleep mode when the USB is suspended.
   b) When the USB is detached (disconnected), the APL transitions the MCU to software standby mode.

Application Processing (for RTOS)

The APL comprises two parts: initial settings and main loop. An overview of the processing in these two parts is provided below.

Initial Setting

Initial settings consist of MCU pin settings, USB driver settings, and initial settings to the USB controller.

Main Loop (Echo mode)

In Echo mode, loop-back processing in which data sent by the USB host is received and then transmitted unmodified back to the USB host takes place as part of the main routine. An overview of the processing performed by the loop is shown below.

1. When a USB-related event has completed, the USB driver calls the callback function (usb_apl_callback). In the callback function (usb_apl_callback), the application task (APL) is notified of the USB completion event using the real-time OS functionality.
2. In APL, information regarding the USB completion event was notified from the callback function is retrieved using the real-time OS functionality.
3. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_CONFIGURED, APL performs a data reception request to receive data transmitted from the USB Host by calling the R_USB_Read function.
4. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_REQUEST, APL performs processing in response to the received request.
5. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_READ_COMPLETE, APL performs a data transmission request to send USB Host the reception data by calling the R_USB_Write function.
6. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_WRITE_COMPLETE, APL performs a data reception request to receive the data sent from USB Host by calling the R_USB_Read function.
7. If the USB completion event (the event member of the usb_ctrl_t structure) retrieved in step 2 above is USB_STS_SUSPEND or USB_STS_DETACH, APL performs processing to transition the CDC device to low-power mode.

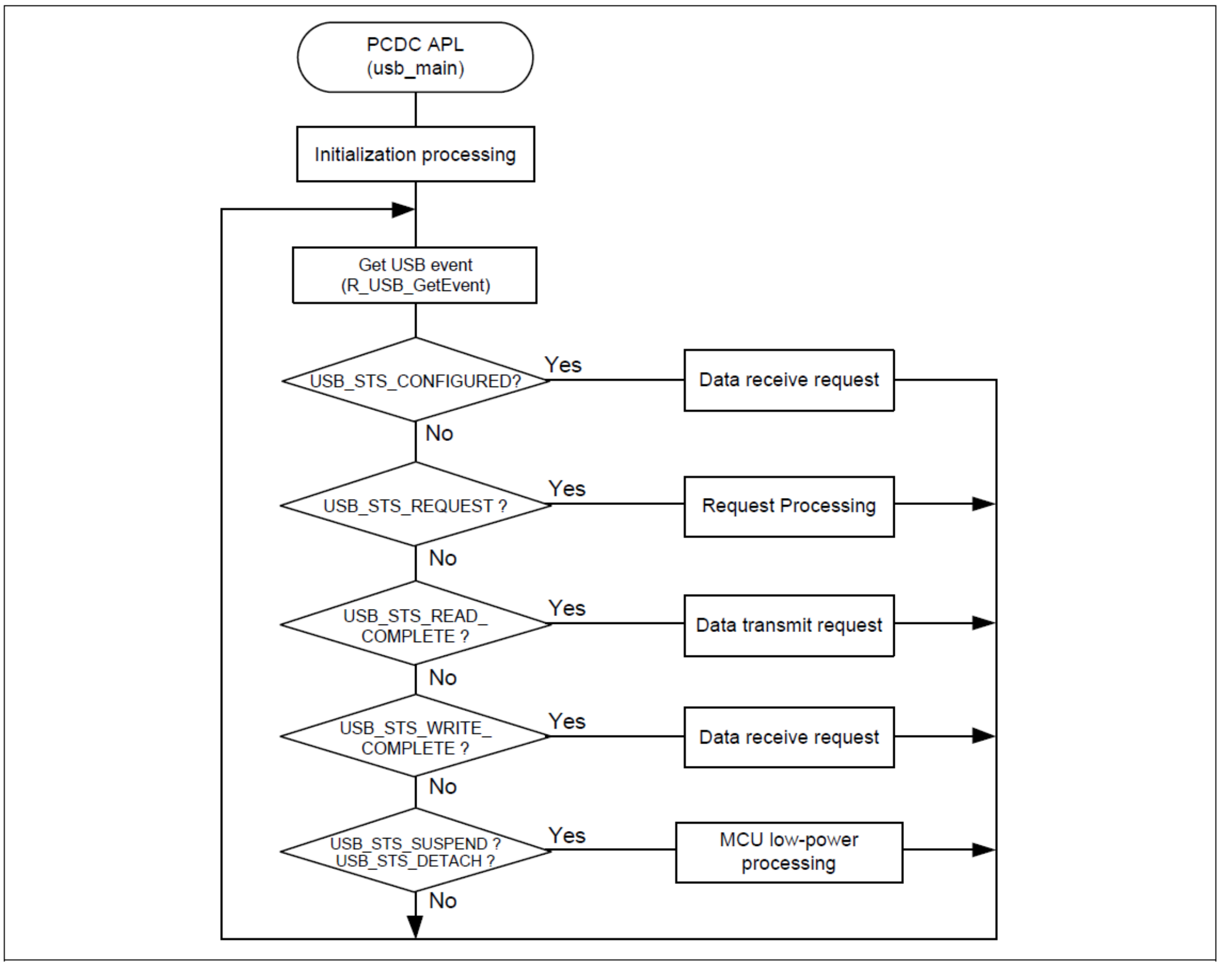


Figure 130: Main Loop processing (Echo mode)

Below is an example of minimal use of the USB PCDC module in an application.

```
void usb_basic_example (void)
{
 usb_instance_ctrl_t ctrl;
    usb_event_info_t    event_info;
 usb_status_t       event;
 R_USB_Open(&ctrl, &g_usb0_cfg);
 /* Loop back between PC(TerminalSoft) and USB MCU */
 while (1)
    {
 R_USB_EventGet(&event_info, &event);
 switch (event)
      {
```

```
 case USB_STATUS_CONFIGURED:
 case USB_STATUS_WRITE_COMPLETE:
 R_USB_Read(&ctrl, g_buf, DATA_LEN, USB_CLASS_PCDC);
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE:
 R_USB_Write(&ctrl, g_buf, event_info.data_size, USB_CLASS_PCDC);
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_REQUEST:   /* Receive Class Request */
 if (USB_PCDC_SET_LINE_CODING == (event_info.setup.request_type & USB_BREQUEST))
      {
 R_USB_PeriControlDataGet(&ctrl, (uint8_t *) &g_line_coding, LINE_CODING_LENGTH);
                }
 else if (USB_PCDC_GET_LINE_CODING == (event_info.setup.request_type & USB_BREQUEST))
      {
 R_USB_PeriControlDataSet(&ctrl, (uint8_t *) &g_line_coding, LINE_CODING_LENGTH);
                }
 else
      {
                  g_usb_on_usb.periControlStatusSet(&ctrl, USB_SETUP_STATUS_ACK);
                }
 break;
 case USB_STATUS_SUSPEND:
 case USB_STATUS_DETACH:
 break;
 default:
 break;
       }
    }
} /* End of function usb_main() */
```

Descriptor

A template for PCDC descriptors can be found in ra/fsp/src/r_usb_pcdc/r_usb_pcdc_descriptor.c.template. Also, please be sure to use your vendor ID.

5.2.49 USB Peripheral Mass Storage Class (r_usb_pmsc)

Modules

This module is USB Peripheral Mass Storage Class Driver (PMSC). It implements the USB PMSC Interface.
This module works in combination with (r_usb_basic module).

Functions

Refer to USB (r_usb_basic) for the common API (r_usb_basic) to be called from the application.

Detailed Description

Overview

The r_usb_pmsc module combines with the r_usb_basic module to provide USB Peripheral It operates as a Mass Storage class driver (hereinafter referred to as PMSC).
The USB peripheral mass storage class driver (PMSC) comprises a USB mass storage class bulk-only transport (BOT) protocol.
When combined with a USB peripheral control driver and media driver, it enables communication with a USB host as a BOT-compatible storage device.

Features

The r_usb_pmsc module has the following key features:

- Storage command control using the BOT protocol.
- Response to mass storage device class requests from a USB host.

Class Driver Overview

1. Class Requests

The class requests supported by this driver are shown below.

Request	Code	Description
Bulk-Only Mass Storage Reset	0xFF	Resets the connection interface to the mass storage device.
Get Max Lun	0xFE	Reports the logical numbers supported by the device.

2. Storage Commands

This driver supports the following storage command.
This driver send the STALL or FAIL error (CSW) to USB HOST when receiving other than the following command.

Command	Code	Description
TEST_UNIT_READY	0x00	Checks the state of the peripheral device.
REQUEST_SENSE	0x03	Gets the error information of the previous storage command execution result.
INQUIRY	0x12	Gets the parameter information of the logical unit.
READ_FORMAT_CAPACITY	0x23	Gets the formattable capacity.
READ_CAPACITY	0x25	Gets the capacity information of the logical unit.
READ10	0x28	Reads data.
WRITE10	0x1A	Writes data.
MODE_SENSE10	0x5A	Gets the parameters of the logical unit.

Basic Functions

The functions of PDCD are to:
1.Supporting SFF-8070i (ATAPI)
2.Respond to mass storage class requests from USB host.

BOT Protocol Overview

BOT (USB MSC Bulk-Only Transport) is a transfer protocol that, encapsulates command, data, and status (results of commands) using only two endpoints (one bulk in and one bulk out). The ATAPI storage commands and the response status are embedded in a "Command Block Wrapper"(CBW) and a "Command Status Wrapper"(CSW). fllow shows an overview of how the BOT protocol progresses with command and status data flowing between USB host and peripheral.

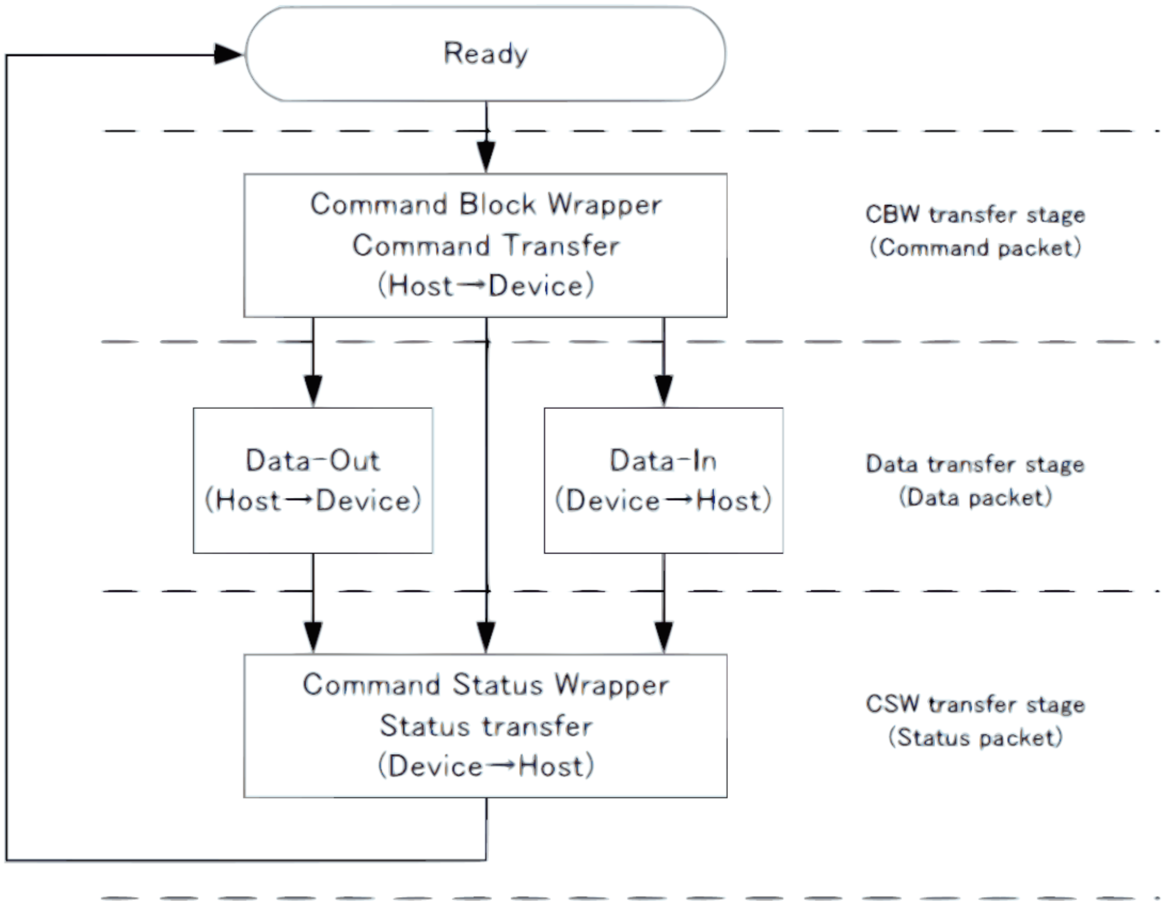


Figure 131: BOT protocol Overview

Block Media Interface

PMSC implements a block media interface to enable access to media with different specifications. If the block media interface supports multiple media, users can select any media to access.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for r_usb_pmsc

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_usb_pmsc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Select which pipe to use for Bulk IN transfer during PMSC operation.	• Using USB PIPE1 • Using USB PIPE2 • Using USB PIPE3 • Using USB PIPE4	Using USB PIPE1	Please choose between 1 and 5. NOTE: The same pipe number as that used for bulk-out transfer cannot be used.

	• Using USB PIPE5		
Select which pipe to use for Bulk OUT transfer during PMSC operation.	• Using USB PIPE1 • Using USB PIPE2 • Using USB PIPE3 • Using USB PIPE4 • Using USB PIPE5	Using USB PIPE2	Please choose between 1 and 5. NOTE: The same pipe number as that used for bulk-in transfer cannot be used.
Setting Vendor Information	Must be entered with 8 bytes of data.	Vendor	Specify the vendor information which is response data of Inquiry command.
Setting Product Information	Must be entered as 16 bytes data.	Mass Storage	Specify the product information which is response data of Inquiry command.
Setting Product Revision Level.	Must be entered as 4 bytes data.	1.00	Specify the product revision level which is response data of Inquiry command.
Setting the number of transfer sector.	Please enter a number between 1 and 255.	8	Specify the maximum sector size to request to PCD (Peripheral Control Driver) at one data transfer.

Configurations for Middleware > USB > USB PMSC driver on r_usb_pmsc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > USB > USB PMSC driver on r_usb_pmsc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_pmsc0	Module name.

Setting as r_usb_pmsc module is not necessary.
Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Clock Configuration

Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Pin Configuration

Refer to r_usb_basic module.

Usage Notes

Limitations

1.This driver returns the value 0 (zero) to the mass storage command (GetMaxLun) sent from USB Host.
2.The sector size which this driver supports is 512 only.
3.To use a removable storage device, the media must be inserted beforehand.
4.For removing the removable media (PMSC), remove the USB device on the Windows PC and then disconnect the USB cable.
5.Currently, the only media supported by the block media interface is the SD card, so the user-selectable block media interface is the SD card.
6.When using DMA transfer at Hi Speed, it is necessary to set the r_usb_basic configuration so that the continuous transfer mode is not used.
7.The storage area must be formatted.
8.When using SD/MMC Block Media Implementation (rm_block_media_sdmmc), "Card Detection" must be set to "Not Used" in the SD/MMC Host Interface (r_sdhi) settings.

Examples

USB PMSC Example

Example Operating Environment
The following is an image of connecting a PC and PMSC. When the evaluation board is connected to the host PC, it is recognized as a removable disk, and data transfer such as reading / writing files is possible.
The media area of the removable disk is the media specified by the user in the block media interface.
The FAT type depends on the size of the media used, and is FAT12, FAT16, or FAT32.

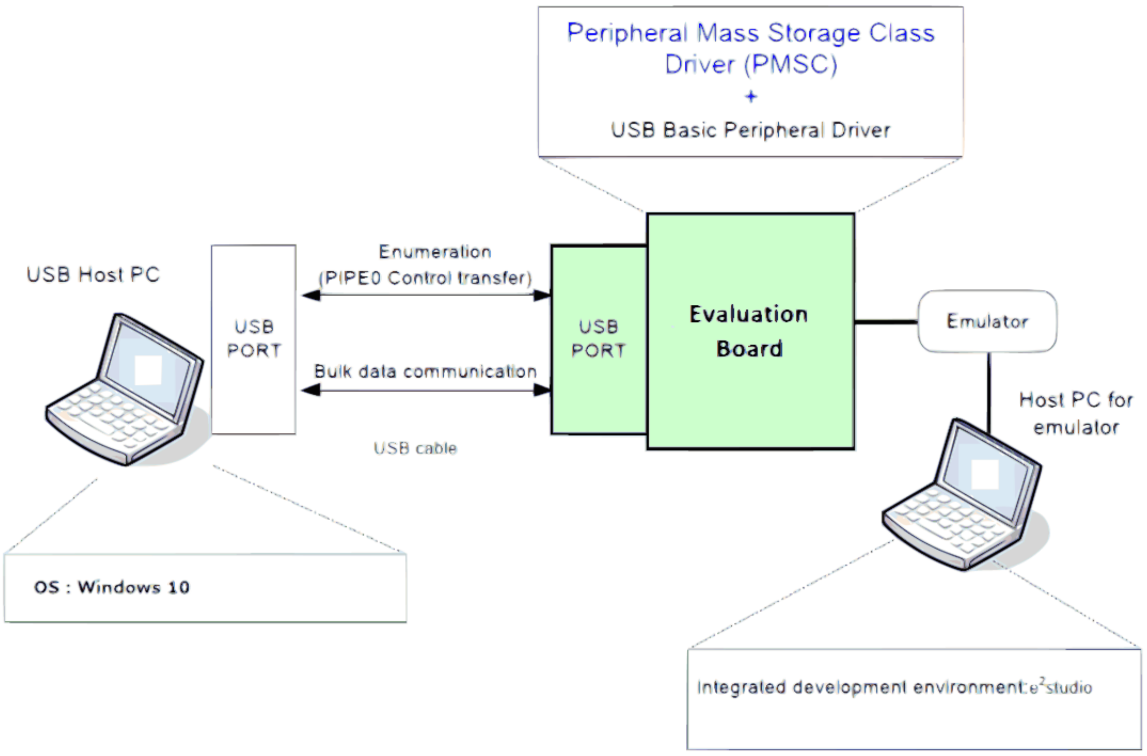

Peripheral Mass Storage Class Driver (PMSC)
+
USB Basic Peripheral Driver
USB Host PC
USB PORT
Enumeration (PIPE0 Control transfer)
Bulk data communication
USB cable
USB PORT
Evaluation Board
Emulator
Host PC for emulator
OS : Windows 10
Integrated development environment:e²studio

Figure 132: Example Operating Environment

This is a pmsc example of minimal use of the USB in an application.

```
void usb_pmsc_example (void)
{
 usb_instance_ctrl_t ctrl;
    usb_event_info_t    usb_event;
#if (BSP_CFG_RTOS == 2)
    usb_event_info_t * p_mess;
    usb_event_info_t   usb_event;
#else  /* (BSP_CFG_RTOS == 2) */
 usb_status_t event;
#endif /* (BSP_CFG_RTOS == 2) */
    g_usb0_cfg.p_usb_reg = &g_usb_descriptor;
    g_usb_on_usb.open(&ctrl, &g_usb0_cfg);
 /* Loop back between PC(TerminalSoft) and USB MCU */
 while (1)
    {
#if (BSP_CFG_RTOS == 2)
```

```
       USB_APL_RCV_MSG(USB_APL_MBX, (usb_msg_t **) &p_mess);
       usb_event = *p_mess;
 /* Analyzing the received message */
 switch (usb_event.event)
#else  /* (BSP_CFG_RTOS == 2) */
 R_USB_EventGet(&usb_event, &event);
 switch (event)
#endif  /* (BSP_CFG_RTOS == 2) */
      {
 case USB_STATUS_CONFIGURED:
      {
 break;
            }
 case USB_STATUS_SUSPEND:
 case USB_STATUS_DETACH:
      {
#if USB_SUPPORT_LPW == USB_APL_ENABLE
// @@ low_power_mcu();
#endif  /* USB_SUPPORT_LPW == USB_APL_ENABLE */
 break;
            }
 default:
      {
 break;
            }
       }
    }
} /* End of function usb_main() */
```

Descriptor

A template for PMSC descriptors can be found in ra/fsp/src/r_usb_pmsc/r_usb_pmsc_descriptor.c.template. Also, please be sure to use your vendor ID.

5.2.50 Watchdog Timer (r_wdt)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	R_WDT_Refresh (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	R_WDT_Open (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	R_WDT_StatusClear (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const wdt_status_t status)
fsp_err_t	R_WDT_StatusGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	R_WDT_CounterGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_count)
fsp_err_t	R_WDT_TimeoutGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_timeout_values_t *const p_timeout)
fsp_err_t	R_WDT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Driver for the WDT peripheral on RA MCUs. This module implements the WDT Interface.

Overview

The watchdog timer is used to recover from unexpected errors in an application. The watchdog timer must be refreshed periodically in the permitted count window by the application. If the count is allowed to underflow or refresh occurs outside of the valid refresh period, the WDT resets the device or generates an NMI.

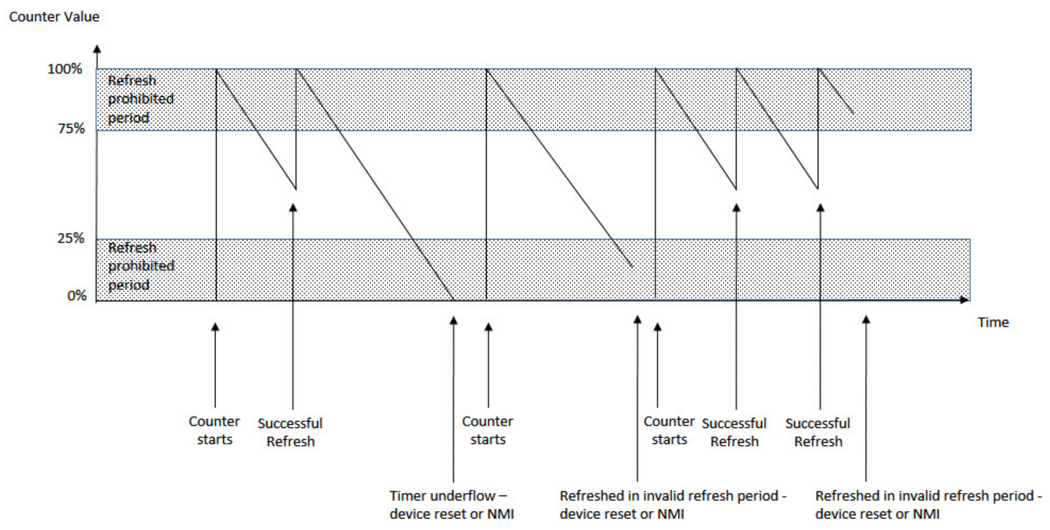


Figure 133: Watchdog Timer Operation Example

Features

The WDT HAL module has the following key features:

- When the WDT underflows or is refreshed outside of the permitted refresh window, one of the following events can occur:
  - Resetting of the device
  - Generation of an NMI
- The WDT has two supported modes:
  - In auto start mode, the WDT begins counting at reset.
  - In register start mode, the WDT can be started from the application.

Selecting a Watchdog

RA MCUs have two watchdog peripherals: the watchdog timer (WDT) and the independent watchdog timer (IWDT). When selecting between them, consider these factors:

	WDT	IWDT
Start Mode	The WDT can be started from the application (register start mode) or configured by hardware to start automatically (auto start mode).	The IWDT can only be configured by hardware to start automatically.
Clock Source	The WDT runs off a peripheral clock.	The IWDT has its own clock source which improves safety.

Configuration

When using register start mode, configure the watchdog timer on the Stacks tab.

Note

When using auto start mode, configurations on the Stacks tab are ignored. Configure the watchdog using the OFS settings on the BSP tab.

Build Time Configurations for r_wdt

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/r_wdt_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Register Start NMI Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If enabled, code for NMI support in register start mode is included in the build.

Configurations for Driver > Monitoring > Watchdog Driver on r_wdt

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Driver > Monitoring > Watchdog Driver on r_wdt:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_wdt0	Module name.
Timeout	• 1,024 Cycles • 4,096 Cycles • 8,192 Cycles • 16,384 Cycles	16,384 Cycles	Select the watchdog timeout in cycles.
Clock Division Ratio	• PCLK/4 • PCLK/64 • PCLK/128 • PCLK/512 • PCLK/2048 • PCLK/8192	PCLK/8192	Select the watchdog clock divisor.
Window Start Position	• 100% (Window Position Not Specified) • 75% • 50% • 25	100% (Window Position Not Specified)	Select the allowed watchdog refresh start point.
Window End Position	• 0% (Window	0% (Window Position	Select the allowed

	Position Not Specified) • 25% • 50% • 75%	Not Specified)	watchdog refresh end point.
Reset Control	• Reset Output • NMI Generated	Reset Output	Select what happens when the watchdog timer expires.
Stop Control	• WDT Count Enabled in Low Power Mode • WDT Count Disabled in Low Power Mode	WDT Count Disabled in Low Power Mode	Select the watchdog state in low power mode.
NMI Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function must be provided if the WDT is configured to generate an NMI when the timer underflows or a refresh error occurs. If this callback function is provided, it will be called from the NMI handler each time the watchdog triggers.

Clock Configuration

The WDT clock is based on the PCLKB frequency. You can set the PCLKB frequency using the clock configurator in e2 studio or using the CGC Interface at run-time. The maximum timeout period with PCLKB running at 60 MHz is approximately 2.2 seconds.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

NMI Interrupt

The watchdog timer uses the NMI, which is enabled by default. No special configuration is required. When the NMI is triggered, the callback function registered during open is called.

Period Calculation

The WDT operates from PCLKB. With a PCLKB of 60 MHz, the maximum time from the last refresh to device reset or NMI generation will be just over 2.2 seconds as detailed below.

PLCKB = 60 MHz
Clock division ratio = PCLKB / 8192
Timeout period = 16384 cycles
WDT clock frequency = 60 MHz / 8192 = 7.324 kHz

Cycle time = 1 / 7.324 kHz = 136.53 us
Timeout = 136.53 us x 16384 cycles = 2.23 seconds

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using the WDT:

- When using a J-Link debugger the WDT counter does not count and therefore will not reset the device or generate an NMI. To enable the watchdog to count and generate a reset or NMI while debugging, add this line of code in the application:

```
/* (Optional) Enable the WDT to count and generate NMI or reset when the
 * debugger is connected. */
   R_DEBUG->DBGSTOPCR_b.DBGSTOP_WDT = 0;
```

- If the WDT is configured to stop the counter in low power mode, then your application must restart the watchdog by calling R_WDT_Refresh() after the MCU wakes from low power mode.

Examples

WDT Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the WDT in an application.

```
void wdt_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* In auto start mode, the WDT starts counting immediately when the MCU is powered
on. */
 /* Initializes the module. */
    err = R_WDT_Open(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &g_wdt0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* In register start mode, start the watchdog by calling R_WDT_Refresh. */
    err = R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
 /* Application work here. */
 /* Refresh before the counter underflows to prevent reset or NMI. */
      err = R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
      handle_error(err);
    }
}
```

WDT Advanced Example

This example demonstrates using a start window and gives an example callback to handle an NMI generated by an underflow or refresh error.

```
#define WDT_TIMEOUT_COUNTS (16384U)
#define WDT_MAX_COUNTER (WDT_TIMEOUT_COUNTS - 1U)
#define WDT_START_WINDOW_75 ((WDT_MAX_COUNTER * 3) / 4)
/* Example callback called when a watchdog NMI occurs. */
void wdt_callback (wdt_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(p_args);
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
 /* (Optional) Determine the source of the NMI. */
 wdt_status_t status = WDT_STATUS_NO_ERROR;
    err = R_WDT_StatusGet(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &status);
    handle_error(err);
 /* (Optional) Log source of NMI and any other debug information. */
 /* (Optional) Clear the error flags. */
    err = R_WDT_StatusClear(&g_wdt0_ctrl, status);
    handle_error(err);
 /* (Register start mode) In register start mode, call R_WDT_Refresh() to
  * continue using the watchdog after an error. */
    err = R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* (Optional) Issue a software reset to reset the MCU. */
    __NVIC_SystemReset();
}
void wdt_advanced_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
```

```
/* (Optional) Enable the WDT to count and generate NMI or reset when the
 * debugger is connected. */
   R_DEBUG->DBGSTOPCR_b.DBGSTOP_WDT = 0;
/* (Optional) Check if the WDTRF flag is set to know if the system is
 * recovering from a WDT reset. */
if (R_SYSTEM->RSTSR1_b.WDTRF)
   {
/* Clear the flag. */
      R_SYSTEM->RSTSR1 = 0U;
   }
/* Open the module. */
   err = R_WDT_Open(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &g_wdt0_cfg);
/* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
   handle_error(err);
/* Initialize other application code. */
/* (Register start mode) Call R_WDT_Refresh() to start the WDT in register
 * start mode. Do not call R_WDT_Refresh() in auto start mode unless the
 * counter is in the acceptable refresh window. */
   err = R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
   handle_error(err);
while (true)
   {
/* Application work here. */
/* (Optional) If there is a chance the application takes less time than
 * the start window, verify the WDT counter is past the start window
 * before refreshing the WDT. */
      uint32_t wdt_counter = 0U;
do
     {
/* Read the current WDT counter value. */
           err = R_WDT_CounterGet(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &wdt_counter);
     handle_error(err);
     } while (wdt_counter >= WDT_START_WINDOW_75);
/* Refresh before the counter underflows to prevent reset or NMI. */
```

```
        err = R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
        handle_error(err);
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	wdt_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ wdt_instance_ctrl_t

struct wdt_instance_ctrl_t

WDT private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when R_WDT_Open() is called.

Function Documentation

◆ R_WDT_Refresh()

fsp_err_t R_WDT_Refresh (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Refresh the watchdog timer. Implements wdt_api_t::refresh.

In addition to refreshing the watchdog counter this function can be used to start the counter in register start mode.

Example:

```
/* Refresh before the counter underflows to prevent reset or NMI. */
     err = R_WDT_Refresh(&g_wdt0_ctrl);
     handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WDT successfully refreshed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	p_ctrl is NULL.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not initialized.

Note

This function only returns FSP_SUCCESS. If the refresh fails due to being performed outside of the permitted refresh period the device will either reset or trigger an NMI ISR to run.

◆ R_WDT_Open()

fsp_err_t R_WDT_Open (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, wdt_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Configure the WDT in register start mode. In auto-start_mode the NMI callback can be registered. Implements wdt_api_t::open.

This function should only be called once as WDT configuration registers can only be written to once so subsequent calls will have no effect.

Example:

```
/* Initializes the module. */
   err = R_WDT_Open(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &g_wdt0_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WDT successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer, or one or more configuration options is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open. This module can only be opened once.

Note

In auto start mode the only valid configuration option is for registering the callback for the NMI ISR if NMI output has been selected.

◆ R_WDT_StatusClear()

fsp_err_t R_WDT_StatusClear (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, const wdt_status_t *status*)

Clear the WDT status and error flags. Implements wdt_api_t::statusClear.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Clear the error flags. */
   err = R_WDT_StatusClear(&g_wdt0_ctrl, status);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WDT flag(s) successfully cleared.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not initialized.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	This function is only valid if the watchdog generates an NMI when an error occurs.

Note

When the WDT is configured to output a reset on underflow or refresh error reading the status and error flags serves no purpose as they will always indicate that no underflow has occurred and there is no refresh error. Reading the status and error flags is only valid when interrupt request output is enabled.

◆ R_WDT_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t R_WDT_StatusGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, wdt_status_t *const *p_status*)

Read the WDT status flags. Implements wdt_api_t::statusGet.

Indicates both status and error conditions.

Example:

```
/* (Optional) Determine the source of the NMI. */
wdt_status_t status = WDT_STATUS_NO_ERROR;
   err = R_WDT_StatusGet(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &status);
   handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WDT status successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not initialized.
FSP_ERR_UNSUPPORTED	This function is only valid if the watchdog generates an NMI when an error occurs.

Note

When the WDT is configured to output a reset on underflow or refresh error reading the status and error flags serves no purpose as they will always indicate that no underflow has occurred and there is no refresh error. Reading the status and error flags is only valid when interrupt request output is enabled.

◆ R_WDT_CounterGet()

fsp_err_t R_WDT_CounterGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t *const *p_count*)

Read the current count value of the WDT. Implements wdt_api_t::counterGet.

Example:

```
/* Read the current WDT counter value. */
        err = R_WDT_CounterGet(&g_wdt0_ctrl, &wdt_counter);
     handle_error(err);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WDT current count successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not initialized.

◆ R_WDT_TimeoutGet()

fsp_err_t R_WDT_TimeoutGet (wdt_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, wdt_timeout_values_t *const *p_timeout*)

Read timeout information for the watchdog timer. Implements wdt_api_t::timeoutGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WDT timeout information retrieved successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Instance control block is not initialized.

◆ R_WDT_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t R_WDT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Return WDT HAL driver version. Implements wdt_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter

5.2.51 SD/MMC Block Media Implementation (rm_block_media_sdmmc)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Open (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_MediaInit (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Read (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Write (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)

fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Erase (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_StatusGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, rm_block_media_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_InfoGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Close (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Middleware to implement the block media interface on SD cards. This module implements the Block Media Interface.

Overview

Features

The SD/MMC implementation of the block media interface has the following key features:

- Reading, writing, and erasing data from an SD card
- Callback called when card insertion or removal is detected
- Provides media information such as sector size and total number of sectors.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for rm_block_media_sdmmc

The following build time configurations are defined in driver/rm_block_media_sdmmc_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Middleware > Storage > Block Media Implementation on rm_block_media_sdmmc

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > Storage > Block Media Implementation on rm_block_media_sdmmc:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description

Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_rm_block_media0	Module name.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called when a card is inserted or removed.

Clock Configuration

This module has no required clock configurations.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the SD/MMC block media implementation in an application.

```
#define RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_BLOCK_SIZE (512)
uint8_t g_dest[RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_BLOCK_SIZE] BSP_ALIGN_VARIABLE(4);
uint8_t g_src[RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_BLOCK_SIZE] BSP_ALIGN_VARIABLE(4);
uint32_t g_transfer_complete = 0;
void rm_block_media_sdmmc_basic_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize g_src to known data */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_BLOCK_SIZE; i++)
    {
       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Open the RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC driver. */
 fsp_err_t err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Open(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl,
&g_rm_block_media0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* A device shall be ready to accept the first command within 1ms from detecting VDD
min. Reference section 6.4.1.1
```

```
  * "Power Up Time of Card" in the SD Physical Layer Simplified Specification Version
6.00. */
 R_BSP_SoftwareDelay(1U, BSP_DELAY_UNITS_MILLISECONDS);
 /* Initialize the SD card. This should not be done until the card is plugged in for
SD devices. */
    err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_MediaInit(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write a block of data to sector 3 of an SD card. */
    err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Write(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl, g_src, 3, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read a block of data from sector 3 of an SD card. */
    err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Read(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl, g_dest, 3, 1);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Open()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Open (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_block_media_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the module.

Implements rm_block_media_api_t::open().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is available and is now open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module has already been opened with this instance of the control structure.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- sdmmc_api_t::open

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_MediaInit()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_MediaInit (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Initializes the SD or eMMC device. This procedure requires several sequential commands. This function blocks until all identification and configuration commands are complete.

Implements rm_block_media_api_t::mediaInit().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is initialized and ready to access the memory device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- sdmmc_api_t::mediaInit

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Read()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Read (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest_address*, uint32_t const *block_address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Reads data from an SD or eMMC device. Up to 0x10000 sectors can be read at a time. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::read().

This function blocks until the data is read into the destination buffer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data read successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- sdmmc_api_t::read

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Write()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Write (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_src_address*, uint32_t const *block_address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Writes data to an SD or eMMC device. Up to 0x10000 sectors can be written at a time. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::write().

This function blocks until the write operation completes.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write finished successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- sdmmc_api_t::write

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Erase()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Erase (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t const *block_address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Erases sectors of an SD card or eMMC device. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::erase().

This function blocks until erase is complete.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Erase operation requested.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- sdmmc_api_t::erase
- sdmmc_api_t::statusGet

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_StatusGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, rm_block_media_status_t *const *p_status*)

Provides driver status. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::statusGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Status stored in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_InfoGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_block_media_info_t *const *p_info*)

Retrieves module information. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::infoGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Erase operation requested.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Close()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Close (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Closes an open SD/MMC device. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::close().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the version of the firmware and API. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer.

5.2.52 USB HMSC Block Media Implementation (rm_block_media_usb)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Open (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_MediaInit (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Read (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Write (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Erase (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_StatusGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, rm_block_media_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_InfoGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Close (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Middleware to implement the block media interface on USB mass storage devices. This module implements the Block Media Interface.

Overview

Features

The USB implementation of the block media interface has the following key features:

- Reading, writing, and erasing data from a USB mass storage device
- Callback called when device insertion or removal is detected
- Provides media information such as sector size and total number of sectors.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for rm_block_media_usb

The following build time configurations are defined in driver/rm_block_media_usb_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Middleware > Storage > Block Media Implementation on rm_block_media_usb

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > Storage > Block Media Implementation on rm_block_media_usb:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_rm_block_media0	Module name.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called when a device is attached or removed.
Pointer to user context	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user context can be provided. If this context is provided, it will be passed to callback function when a device is attached or removed.

Note

RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_MediaInit function must be called after receiving the insert event notification.

Clock Configuration

This module has no required clock configurations.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the USB mass storage block media implementation in an application.

```
#define RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_BLOCK_SIZE (512)
volatile bool g_usb_inserted = false;
uint8_t       g_dest[RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_BLOCK_SIZE] BSP_ALIGN_VARIABLE(4);
uint8_t       g_src[RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_BLOCK_SIZE] BSP_ALIGN_VARIABLE(4);
void rm_block_media_usb_basic_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize g_src to known data */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_BLOCK_SIZE; i++)
    {
       g_src[i] = (uint8_t) ('A' + (i % 26));
    }
 /* Open the RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB driver. */
 fsp_err_t err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Open(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl,
&g_rm_block_media0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (!g_usb_inserted)
    {
 /* Wait for a card insertion interrupt. */
    }
 /* Initialize the mass storage device. This should not be done until the device is
plugged in and initialized. */
```

```
    err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_MediaInit(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Write a block of data to sector 3 of an USB mass storage device. */
    err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Write(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl, g_src, 3, 1);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Read a block of data from sector 3 of an USB mass storage device. */
    err = RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Read(&g_rm_block_media0_ctrl, g_dest, 3, 1);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Device Insertion

This is an example of using a callback to determine when a mass storage device is plugged in and enumerated.

```
/* The callback is called when a media insertion event occurs. */
void rm_block_media_usb_media_insertion_example_callback
(rm_block_media_callback_args_t * p_args)
{
 if (RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_EVENT_MEDIA_INSERTED == p_args->event)
    {
       g_usb_inserted = true;
    }
 if (RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_EVENT_MEDIA_REMOVED == p_args->event)
    {
       g_usb_inserted = false;
    }
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Open()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Open (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_block_media_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the module.

Implements rm_block_media_api_t::open().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is available and is now open.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module has already been opened with this instance of the control structure.

Returns
See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_MediaInit()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_MediaInit (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Initializes the USB device.

Implements rm_block_media_api_t::mediaInit().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is initialized and ready to access the memory device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Read()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Read (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint8_t *const *p_dest_address*, uint32_t const *block_address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Reads data from an USB device. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::read().

This function blocks until the data is read into the destination buffer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Data read successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Write()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Write (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint8_t const *const *p_src_address*, uint32_t const *block_address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Writes data to an USB device. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::write().

This function blocks until the write operation completes.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Write finished successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Erase()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Erase (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint32_t const *block_address*, uint32_t const *num_blocks*)

Erases sectors of an USB device. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::erase().

This function blocks until erase is complete.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Erase operation requested.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_StatusGet()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_StatusGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_api_ctrl*, rm_block_media_status_t *const *p_status*)

Provides driver status. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::statusGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Status stored in p_status.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL pointer.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_InfoGet (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_block_media_info_t *const *p_info*)

Retrieves module information. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::infoGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Erase operation requested.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_NOT_INITIALIZED	Module has not been initialized.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Close()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Close (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Closes an open USB device. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::close().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successful close.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the version of the firmware and API. Implements rm_block_media_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function executed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null Pointer.

5.2.53 SEGGER emWin Port (rm_emwin_port)

Modules

SEGGER emWin port for RA MCUs.

Overview

The SEGGER emWin RA Port module provides the configuration and hardware acceleration support necessary for use of emWin on RA products. The port provides full integration with the graphics peripherals (GLCDC, DRW and JPEG) as well as FreeRTOS.

Note

This port layer primarily enables hardware acceleration and background handling of many display operations and does not contain code intended to be directly called by the user. Please consult the SEGGER emWin User Guide (UM03001) for details on how to use emWin in your project.

Hardware Acceleration

The following functions are currently performed with hardware acceleration:

- DRW Engine (r_drw)
    - Drawing bitmaps (ARGB8888 and RGB565)
    - Rectangle fill
    - Line and shape drawing
    - Anti-aliased operations
        - Circle stroke and fill
        - Polygon stroke and fill
        - Lines and arcs
- JPEG Codec (r_jpeg)
    - JPEG decoding
- Graphics LCD Controller (r_glcdc)
    - Brightness, contrast and gamma correction
    - Pixel format conversion (framebuffer to LCD)

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for rm_emwin_port

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/rm_emwin_port_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Memory Allocation > GUI Heap Size	Value must be a non-negative integer	32768	Set the size of the heap to be allocated for use exclusively by emWin.
Memory Allocation > Section for GUI Heap	Manual Entry	.noinit	Specify the section in which to allocate the GUI heap.
Memory Allocation > Maximum Layers	Value must be a non-negative integer	16	Set the maximum number of available display layers in emWin.

			This setting is not related to GLCDC Layer 1 or 2.
Memory Allocation > AA Font Conversion Buffer Size	Value must be a non-negative integer	400	Set the size of the conversion buffer for anti-aliased font glyphs. This should be set to the size (in bytes) of the largest AA character to be rendered.
Configuration > Multi-thread Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enable or disable multithreading support.
Configuration > Number of emWin-supported threads	Manual Entry	5	If multithreading support is enabled this configuration specifies the number of different tasks that can call emWin functions.
Configuration > Touch Panel Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enable or disable touch panel support.
Configuration > Mouse Support	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Enable or disable support for mouse input.
Configuration > Memory Devices	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enable or disable support for memory devices, which allow the user to allocate their own memory in the GUI heap.
Configuration > Text Rotation	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Enable or disable support for displaying rotated text.
Configuration > Window Manager	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Enable or disable the emWin Window Manager (WM).
Configuration > Bidirectional Text	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Enable or disable support for bidirectional text (such as Arabic or Hebrew).
Configuration > Debug Logging Level	• None (0) • Parameter checking only (1) • All checks enabled (2) • Log errors (3) • Log warnings	All checks enabled (2)	Set the debug logging level.

	(4) • Log all messages (5)		
JPEG Decoding > General > Input Alignment	• 8-byte aligned (faster) • Unaligned (slower)	Unaligned (slower)	Setting this option to 8-bit alignment can allow the hardware JPEG Codec to directly read JPEG data. This speeds up JPEG decoding operations and reduces RAM overhead, but all JPEG images must reside on an 8-byte boundary. When this option is enabled the input buffer is not allocated.
JPEG Decoding > General > Double-Buffer Output	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Enable this option to configure JPEG decoding operations to use a double-buffered output pipeline. This allows the JPEG to be rendered to the display at the same time as decoding at the cost of additional RAM usage. Enabling this option automatically allocates double the output buffer size.
JPEG Decoding > General > Error Timeout	Value must be a non-negative integer	50	Set the timeout for JPEG decoding operations (in RTOS ticks) in the event of a decode error.
JPEG Decoding > Buffers > Input Buffer Size	Value must be a non-negative integer	0x1000	Set the size of the JPEG decode input buffer (in bytes). This buffer is used to ensure 8-byte alignment of input data. Specifying a size smaller than the size of the JPEG to decode will use additional interrupts to stream data in during the decoding process.
JPEG Decoding > Buffers > Output Buffer	Value must be a non-negative integer	0x3C00	Set the size of the JPEG decode output buffer

Size			(in bytes). An output buffer smaller than the size of a decoded image will use additional interrupts to stream the data into a framebuffer. Unless you are sure of the subsampling used in and the size of the input JPEG images it is recommended to allocate at least 16 framebuffer lines of memory.
JPEG Decoding > Buffers > Section for Buffers	Manual Entry	.noinit	Specify the section in which to allocate the JPEG work buffers.

Hardware Configuration

No clocks or pins are directly required by this module. Please consult the submodules' documentation for their requirements.

Usage Notes

Getting Started

To get started with emWin in an e2 studio project the following must be performed:

1. Open the configuration.xml file for your project
2. Add emWin to your project in the Stacks view by clicking **New Stack -> SEGGER -> SEGGER emWin**
3. Ensure the configuration options for emWin are set as necessary for your application
4. Set the proporties for the GLCDC module to match the timing and memory requirements of your display panel
5. Set the JPEG decode color depth to the desired value (if applicable)
6. Ensure interrupts on all modules are enabled:
    - GLCDC Vertical Position (Vpos) Interrupt
    - DRW Interrupt (if applicable)
    - JPEG Encode/Decode and Data Transfer Interrupts (if applicable)
7. Click Generate Project Content to save and commit configuration changes

At this point the project is now ready to build with emWin. Please refer to the SEGGER emWin User Guide (UM03001) as well as demo and sample code for details on how to create a GUI application.

Using Hardware Acceleration

In most cases there is no need to perform additional configuration to ensure the DRW Engine is used. However, there are some guidelines that should be followed depending on the item in question:

- Bitmaps:
    - ARGB8888, RGB888 and RGB565 bitmaps require no additional settings.

- Anti-aliased shapes:
  - Anti-aliased lines, circles, polygons, polygon outlines and arcs are rendered with the DRW Engine.
- Anti-aliased (4bpp) fonts:
  - Set the text mode to GUI_TM_TRANS or create the relevant widget with WM_CF_HASTRANS set.
  - Ensure the "AA Font Conversion Buffer Size" configuration option is set to a size equal to or greater than the size (in bytes) of the largest glyph.
- 8bpp palletized images:
  - When creating these images ensure transparency is not enabled as the SEGGER method for this is not compatible with the DRW Engine.
- RLE-encoded images:
  - Hardware acceleration is not available for SEGGER's RLE format at this time.

Multi-thread Support

When the "Multi-thread Support" configuration is enabled, emWin can be called from multiple threads. This comes with advantages and disadvantages:

Advantages:

- High flexibility in development of applications
- Threads can pend and post on emWin events

Disadvantages:

- Slightly higher RAM/ROM use
- Large GUI projects can become difficult to debug

Note

Multi-thread support is independent of RTOS support. RTOS support is managed internally and cannot be manually configured.

Limitations

Developers should be aware of the following limitations when using SEGGER emWin with FSP:

- Color modes lower than 16 bits are not currently optimized for hardware acceleration.
- Support for rotated screen modes is in development.
- Hardware acceleration is not available for SEGGER's RLE image format at this time.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example demonstrating a very simple emWin application. The screen is cleared to white and "Hello World!" is printed in the center.

Note

emWin manages the GLCDC, DRW and JPEG Codec submodules internally; they do not need to be opened directly.

```
#include "DIALOG.h"
```

```
#define COLOR_WHITE 0x00FFFFFFU
#define COLOR_BLACK 0x00000000U
#define GUI_DRAW_DELAY 100
static void _cbMain (WM_MESSAGE * pMsg)
{
    GUI_RECT Rect;
 switch (pMsg->MsgId)
    {
 case WM_CREATE:
      {
 break;
       }
 case WM_PAINT:
      {
 /* Clear background to white */
            GUI_SetBkColor(COLOR_WHITE);
            GUI_Clear();
 /* Draw "Hello World!" in black in the center */
            WM_GetClientRect(&Rect);
            GUI_SetColor(COLOR_BLACK);
            GUI_DispStringInRect("Hello World!", &Rect, GUI_TA_VCENTER |
GUI_TA_HCENTER);
 break;
       }
 default:
      {
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
 break;
       }
    }
}
void emWinTask (void)
{
    int32_t xSize;
```

```
   int32_t ySize;
/* Initialize emWin */
   GUI_Init();
/* Get screen dimensions */
   xSize = LCD_GetXSize();
   ySize = LCD_GetYSize();
/* Create main window */
   WM_CreateWindowAsChild(0, 0, xSize, ySize, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbMain, 0);
/* Enter main drawing loop */
while (1)
   {
      GUI_Delay(GUI_DRAW_DELAY);
   }
}
```

Note

For further example code please consult SEGGER emWin documentation, which can be downloaded here, as well as the Quick Start Guide and example project(s) provided with your Evaluation Kit (if applicable).

5.2.54 FreeRTOS+FAT Port (rm_freertos_plus_fat)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t *const p_device)
fsp_err_t	RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskInit (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg_t const *const p_disk_cfg, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk)
fsp_err_t	RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskDeinit (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk)
fsp_err_t	RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_InfoGet (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk, rm_freertos_plus_fat_info_t *const

	p_info)
fsp_err_t	RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Close (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Middleware for the Fat File System control on RA MCUs.

Overview

This module provides the hardware port layer for FreeRTOS+FAT file system. After initializing this module, refer to the FreeRTOS+FAT API reference to use the file system: https://www.freertos.org/FreeRTOS-Plus/FreeRTOS_Plus_FAT/index.html

Features

The FreeRTOS+FAT port module supports the following features:

- Callbacks for insertion and removal for removable devices.
- Helper function to initialize FF_Disk_t
- Blocking read and write port functions that use FreeRTOS task notification to pend if FreeRTOS is used
- FreeRTOS is optional

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for rm_freertos_plus_fat

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/middleware/rm_freertos_plus_fat_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for FreeRTOS+ > FreeRTOS+FAT Port for RA

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > FreeRTOS+ > FreeRTOS+FAT Port for RA:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_rm_freertos_plus_fat 0	Module name.

Total Number of Sectors	Must be a non-negative integer	31293440	Enter the total number of sectors on the device. If this is not known, update rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg_t::num_blocks after calling RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit().
Sector Size (bytes)	Must be a power of 2 multiple of 512	512	Select the sector size. Must match the underlying media sector size and at least 512. If this is not known, update rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg_t::num_blocks after calling RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit().
Cache Size (bytes)	Must be a power of 2 multiple of 512	1024	Select the cache size. Must be a multiple of the sector size and at least 2 times the sector size.
Partition Number	Must be a non-negative integer	0	Select the partition number for this disk.
Callback	Name must be a valid C symbol	NULL	A user callback function can be provided. If this callback function is provided, it will be called when a card is inserted or removed.

Usage Notes

Pending during Read/Write

If the underlying driver supports non-blocking operations, the FreeRTOS+FAT port pends the active FreeRTOS task during read and write operations so other tasks can run in the background.

If FreeRTOS is not used, the FreeRTOS+FAT port spins in a while loop waiting for read and write operations to complete.

FreeRTOS+FAT without FreeRTOS

To use FreeRTOS+FAT without FreeRTOS, copy FreeRTOSConfigMinimal.h to one of your project's include paths and rename it FreeRTOSConfig.h.

Also, update the Malloc function to malloc and the Free function to free in the Common configurations.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of FreeRTOS+FAT in an application.

```
#define RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_FILE_NAME "TEST_FILE.txt"
#define RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES (10240)
#define RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_PARTITION_NUMBER (0)
extern rm_freertos_plus_fat_instance_ctrl_t g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl;
extern const rm_freertos_plus_fat_cfg_t g_freertos_plus_fat0_cfg;
extern const rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg_t g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg;
extern uint8_t g_file_data[RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES];
extern uint8_t g_read_buffer[RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_BUFFER_SIZE_BYTES];
void rm_freertos_plus_fat_example (void)
{
 /* Open media driver.*/
 fsp_err_t err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl,
&g_freertos_plus_fat0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize the media and the disk. If the media is removable, it must be inserted
before calling
  * RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit. */
 rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t device;
    err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl, &device);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize one disk for each partition used in the application. */
    FF_Disk_t disk;
    err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskInit(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl,
&g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg, &disk);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Mount each disk. This assumes the disk is already partitioned and formatted. */
    FF_Error_t ff_err = FF_Mount(&disk,
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_PARTITION_NUMBER);
    handle_ff_error(ff_err);
 /* Add the disk to the file system. */
    FF_FS_Add("/", &disk);
 /* Open a source file for writing. */
    FF_FILE * pxSourceFile = ff_fopen((const char *)
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_FILE_NAME, "w");
    assert(NULL != pxSourceFile);
 /* Write file data. */
 size_t size_return = ff_fwrite(g_file_data, sizeof(g_file_data), 1, pxSourceFile);
    assert(1 == size_return);
 /* Close the file. */
 int close_err = ff_fclose(pxSourceFile);
    assert(0 == close_err);
 /* Open the source file in read mode. */
    pxSourceFile = ff_fopen((const char *) RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_FILE_NAME,
"r");
    assert(NULL != pxSourceFile);
 /* Read file data. */
    size_return = ff_fread(g_read_buffer, sizeof(g_file_data), 1, pxSourceFile);
    assert(1 == size_return);
 /* Close the file. */
    close_err = ff_fclose(pxSourceFile);
    assert(0 == close_err);
 /* Verify the file data read matches the file written. */
    assert(0U == memcmp(g_file_data, g_read_buffer, sizeof(g_file_data)));
}
```

Format Example

This shows how to partition and format a disk if it is not already partitioned and formatted.

```
void rm_freertos_plus_fat_format_example (void)
{
 /* Open media driver.*/
 fsp_err_t err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl,
&g_freertos_plus_fat0_cfg);
```

```
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize the media and the disk. If the media is removable, it must be inserted
before calling
  * RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit. */
 rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t device;
    err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl, &device);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize one disk for each partition used in the application. */
    FF_Disk_t disk;
    err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskInit(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl,
&g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg, &disk);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Try to mount the disk. If the disk is not formatted, mount will fail. */
    FF_Error_t ff_err = FF_Mount(&disk,
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_PARTITION_NUMBER);
 if (FF_isERR((uint32_t) ff_err))
    {
 /* The disk is likely not formatted. Partition and format the disk, then mount
again. */
       FF_PartitionParameters_t partition_params;
       partition_params.ulSectorCount   = device.sector_count;
       partition_params.ulHiddenSectors = 1;
       partition_params.ulInterSpace    = 0;
       memset(partition_params.xSizes, 0, sizeof(partition_params.xSizes));
       partition_params.xSizes[RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_PARTITION_NUMBER] =
            (BaseType_t) partition_params.ulSectorCount - 1;
       partition_params.xPrimaryCount = 1;
       partition_params.eSizeType    = eSizeIsSectors;
       ff_err = FF_Partition(&disk, &partition_params);
      handle_ff_error(ff_err);
       ff_err = FF_Format(&disk, RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_PARTITION_NUMBER,
pdFALSE, pdFALSE);
      handle_ff_error(ff_err);
```

```
       ff_err = FF_Mount(&disk, RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EXAMPLE_PARTITION_NUMBER);
      handle_ff_error(ff_err);
    }
}
```

Media Insertion Example

This shows how to use the callback to wait for media insertion.

```
#if 2 == BSP_CFG_RTOS
static EventGroupHandle_t xUSBEventGroupHandle = NULL;
#else
volatile uint32_t g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_insertion_events = 0;
volatile uint32_t g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_removal_events = 0;
#endif
/* Callback called by media driver when a removable device is inserted or removed. */
void rm_freertos_plus_fat_test_callback (rm_freertos_plus_fat_callback_args_t *
p_args)
{
#if 2 == BSP_CFG_RTOS
 /* Post an event if FreeRTOS is available. */
    BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
    xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR(xUSBEventGroupHandle, p_args->event,
&xHigherPriorityTaskWoken);
    portYIELD_FROM_ISR(xHigherPriorityTaskWoken);
#else
 /* If FreeRTOS is not used, set a global flag. */
 if (p_args->event & RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EVENT_MEDIA_INSERTED)
    {
       g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_insertion_events++;
    }
 if (p_args->event & RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EVENT_MEDIA_REMOVED)
    {
       g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_removal_events++;
    }
```

```
#endif
}
void rm_freertos_plus_fat_media_insertion_example (void)
{
#if 2 == BSP_CFG_RTOS
 /* Create event flags if FreeRTOS is used. */
    xUSBEventGroupHandle = xEventGroupCreate();
    TEST_ASSERT_NOT_EQUAL(NULL, xUSBEventGroupHandle);
#endif
 /* Open media driver.*/
 fsp_err_t err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl,
&g_freertos_plus_fat0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 /* Wait for media insertion. */
#if 2 == BSP_CFG_RTOS
    EventBits_t xEventGroupValue = xEventGroupWaitBits(xUSBEventGroupHandle,
 RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EVENT_MEDIA_INSERTED,
                                                       pdTRUE,
                                                       pdFALSE,
                                                       portMAX_DELAY);
    assert(RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EVENT_MEDIA_INSERTED ==
(RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EVENT_MEDIA_INSERTED & xEventGroupValue));
#else
 while (0U == g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_insertion_events)
    {
 /* Wait for media insertion. */
    }
#endif
 /* Initialize the media and the disk. If the media is removable, it must be inserted
before calling
  * RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit. */
 rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t device;
    err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl, &device);
    handle_error(err);
 /* Initialize one disk for each partition used in the application. */
    FF_Disk_t disk;
    err = RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskInit(&g_freertos_plus_fat0_ctrl,
&g_rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg, &disk);
    handle_error(err);
}
```

Data Structures

struct	rm_freertos_plus_fat_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ rm_freertos_plus_fat_instance_ctrl_t

struct rm_freertos_plus_fat_instance_ctrl_t

FreeRTOS plus FAT private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open is called.

Function Documentation

◆ RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open()

fsp_err_t RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_freertos_plus_fat_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Initializes lower layer media device.

Implements rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::open().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Aninput parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_OUT_OF_MEMORY	Not enough memory to create semaphore.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- rm_block_media_api_t::open

◆ RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit()

fsp_err_t RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t *const *p_device*)

Initializes the media device. This function blocks until all identification and configuration commands are complete.

Implements rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::mediaInit().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is initialized and ready to access the memory device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module has not been initialized.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:
- rm_block_media_api_t::mediaInit
- rm_block_media_api_t::infoGet

◆ RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskInit()

fsp_err_t RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskInit (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg_t const *const *p_disk_cfg*, FF_Disk_t *const *p_disk*)

Initializes a FreeRTOS+FAT disk structure. This function calls FF_CreateIOManger.

Implements rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::diskInit().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is initialized and ready to access the memory device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module has not been initialized.
FSP_ERR_INTERNAL	Call to FF_CreateIOManger failed.

◆ RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskDeinit()

fsp_err_t RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskDeinit (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, FF_Disk_t *const *p_disk*)

Deinitializes a FreeRTOS+FAT disk structure. This function calls FF_DeleteIOManger.

Implements rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::diskDeinit().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Module is initialized and ready to access the memory device.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter is invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module has not been initialized.

◆ RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_InfoGet()

fsp_err_t RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_InfoGet (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, FF_Disk_t *const *p_disk*, rm_freertos_plus_fat_info_t *const *p_info*)

Get partition information. This function can only be called after rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::diskInit() .

Implements rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::infoGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Information stored in p_info.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module not open.

◆ RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Close()

fsp_err_t RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Close (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Closes media device.

Implements rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::close().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Media device closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module not open.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:
- rm_block_media_api_t::close

◆ RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the version of this module.

Implements rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Failed in acquiring version information.

5.2.55 FreeRTOS Plus TCP (rm_freertos_plus_tcp)

Modules

Middleware for using TCP on RA MCUs.

Overview

FreeRTOS Plus TCP is a TCP stack created for use with FreeRTOS.

This module provides the NetworkInterface required to use FreeRTOS Plus TCP with the Ethernet (r_ether) driver.

Please refer to the FreeRTOS Plus TCP documentation for further details.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for FreeRTOS_Plus_TCP

The following build time configurations are defined in aws/FreeRTOSIPConfig.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Print debug messages	• Disable • Enable	Disable	If ipconfigHAS_DEBUG_PRINTF is set to 1 then FreeRTOS_debug_printf should be defined to the function used to print out the debugging messages.
Print info messages	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Set to 1 to print out non debugging messages, for example the output of the FreeRTOS_netstat() command, and ping replies. If ipconfigHAS_PRINTF is set to 1 then FreeRTOS_printf should be set to the function used to print out the messages.
Byte order of the target MCU	pdFREERTOS_LITTLE_ENDIAN	pdFREERTOS_LITTLE_ENDIAN	Define the byte order of the target MCU
IP/TCP/UDP checksums	• Disable • Enable	Enable	If the network card/driver includes checksum offloading (IP/TCP/UDP checksums) then set ipconfigDRIVER_INCLUDED_RX_IP_CHECKSUM to 1 to prevent the software stack repeating the checksum calculations.
Receive Block Time	Value must be an integer	10000	Amount of time FreeRTOS_recv() will block for. The timeouts can be set per socket, using setsockopt().
Send Block Time	Value must be an	10000	Amount of time

	integer		FreeRTOS_send() will block for. The timeouts can be set per socket, using setsockopt().
DNS caching	• Disable • Enable	Enable	DNS caching
DNS Request Attempts	Value must be an integer	2	When a cache is present, ipconfigDNS_REQUEST_ATTEMPTS can be kept low and also DNS may use small timeouts.
IP stack task priority	Manual Entry	configMAX_PRIORITIES - 2	Set the priority of the task that executes the IP stack.
Stack size in words (not bytes)	Manual Entry	configMINIMAL_STACK_SIZE * 5	The size, in words (not bytes), of the stack allocated to the FreeRTOS+TCP stack.
Network Events call vApplicationIPNetworkEventHook	• Disable • Enable	Enable	vApplicationIPNetworkEventHook is called when the network connects or disconnects.
Max UDP send block time	Manual Entry	15000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS	Max UDP send block time
Use DHCP	• Disable • Enable	Enable	If ipconfigUSE_DHCP is 1 then FreeRTOS+TCP will attempt to retrieve an IP address, netmask, DNS server address and gateway address from a DHCP server.
DHCP Register Hostname	• Disable • Enable	Enable	Register hostname when using DHCP
DHCP Uses Unicast	• Disable • Enable	Enable	DHCP uses unicast.
DHCP Send Discover After Auto IP	• Disable • Enable	Disable	DHCP Send Discover After Auto IP
DHCP callback function	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Provide an implementation of the DHCP callback function (xApplicationDHCPHook)
Interval between transmissions	Manual Entry	120000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS	When ipconfigUSE_DHCP is

			set to 1, DHCP requests will be sent out at increasing time intervals until either a reply is received from a DHCP server and accepted, or the interval between transmissions reaches ipconfigMAXIMUM_DISCOVER_TX_PERIOD.
ARP Cache Entries	Value must be an integer	6	The maximum number of entries that can exist in the ARP table at any one time
ARP Request Retransmissions	Value must be an integer	5	ARP requests that do not result in an ARP response will be re-transmitted a maximum of ipconfigMAX_ARP_RETRANSMISSIONS times before the ARP request is aborted.
Maximum time before ARP table entry becomes stale	Value must be an integer	150	The maximum time between an entry in the ARP table being created or refreshed and the entry being removed because it is stale
Use string for IP Address	• Disable • Enable	Enable	Take an IP in decimal dot format (for example, "192.168.0.1") as its parameter FreeRTOS_inet_addr_quick() takes an IP address as four separate numerical octets (for example, 192, 168, 0, 1) as its parameters
Total number of avaiable network buffers	Value must be an integer	10	Define the total number of network buffer that are available to the IP stack
Set the maximum number of events	Please enter a valid function name without spaces or funny characters	ipconfigNUM_NETWORK_BUFFER_DESCRIPTORS + 5	Set the maximum number of events that can be queued for processing at any one time. The event queue

			must be a minimum of 5 greater than the total number of network buffers
Enable FreeRTOS_sendto() without calling Bind	• Enable • Disable	Disable	Set to 1 then calling FreeRTOS_sendto() on a socket that has not yet been bound will result in the IP stack automatically binding the socket to a port number from the range socketAUTO_PORT_ALLOCATION_START_NUMBER to 0xffff. If ipconfigALLOW_SOCKET_SEND_WITHOUT_BIND is set to 0 then calling FreeRTOS_sendto() on a socket that has not yet been bound will result in the send operation being aborted.
TTL values for UDP packets	Value must be an integer	128	Define the Time To Live (TTL) values used in outgoing UDP packets
TTL values for TCP packets	Value must be an integer	128	Defines the Time To Live (TTL) values used in outgoing TCP packets
Use TCP and all its features	• Disable • Enable	Enable	Use TCP and all its features
Let TCP use windowing mechanism	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Let TCP use windowing mechanism
Maximum number of bytes the payload of a network frame can contain	Value must be an integer	1500	Maximum number of bytes the payload of a network frame can contain
Basic DNS client or resolver	• Disable • Enable	Enable	Set ipconfigUSE_DNS to 1 to include a basic DNS client/resolver. DNS is used through the FreeRTOS_gethostbyname() API function.
Reply to incoming ICMP echo (ping) requests	• Disable • Enable	Enable	If ipconfigREPLY_TO_INCOMING_PINGS is set to 1 then the IP stack will generate replies to incoming ICMP echo

			(ping) requests.
FreeRTOS_SendPingRequest() is available	• Disable • Enable	Disable	If ipconfigSUPPORT_OUTGOING_PINGS is set to 1 then the FreeRTOS_SendPingRequest() API function is available.
FreeRTOS_select() (and associated) API function is available	• Disable • Enable	Disable	If ipconfigSUPPORT_SELECT_FUNCTION is set to 1 then the FreeRTOS_select() (and associated) API function is available
Filter out non Ethernet II frames.	• Disable • Enable	Enable	If ipconfigFILTER_OUT_NON_ETHERNET_II_FRAMES is set to 1 then Ethernet frames that are not in Ethernet II format will be dropped. This option is included for potential future IP stack developments
Responsibility of the Ethernet interface to filter out packets	• Disable • Enable	Disable	If ipconfigETHERNET_DRIVER_FILTERS_FRAME_TYPES is set to 1 then it is the responsibility of the Ethernet interface to filter out packets that are of no interest.
Block time to simulate MAC interrupts	Please enter a valid function name without spaces or funny characters	20 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS	The windows simulator cannot really simulate MAC interrupts, and needs to block occasionally to allow other tasks to run
Access 32-bit fields in the IP packets	Value must be an integer	2	To access 32-bit fields in the IP packets with 32-bit memory instructions, all packets will be stored 32-bit-aligned, plus 16-bits. This has to do with the contents of the IP-packets: all 32-bit fields are 32-bit-aligned, plus 16-bit
Size of the pool of TCP window descriptors	Value must be an integer	240	Define the size of the pool of TCP window descriptors
Size of Rx buffer for TCP sockets	Value must be an integer	3000	Define the size of Rx buffer for TCP sockets

Size of Tx buffer for TCP sockets	Value must be an integer	3000	Define the size of Tx buffer for TCP sockets
TCP keep-alive	• Disable • Enable	Enable	TCP keep-alive is avaiable or not
TCP keep-alive interval	Value must be an integer	120	TCP keep-alive interval in second
The socket semaphore to unblock the MQTT task (USER_SEMAPHORE)	• Disable • Enable	Disable	The socket semaphore is used to unblock the MQTT task
The socket semaphore to unblock the MQTT task (WAKE_CALLBACK)	• Disable • Enable	Enable	The socket semaphore is used to unblock the MQTT task
The socket semaphore to unblock the MQTT task (USE_CALLBACKS)	• Disable • Enable	Disable	The socket semaphore is used to unblock the MQTT task
The socket semaphore to unblock the MQTT task (TX_DRIVER)	• Disable • Enable	Disable	The socket semaphore is used to unblock the MQTT task
The socket semaphore to unblock the MQTT task (RX_DRIVER)	• Disable • Enable	Disable	The socket semaphore is used to unblock the MQTT task
Possible optimisation for expert users	• Disable • Enable	Disable	Possible optimisation for expert users - requires network driver support. It is is useful when there is high network traffic. If non-zero value then instead of passing received packets into the IP task one at a time the network interface can chain received packets together and pass them into the IP task in one go. If set to 0 then only one buffer will be sent at a time.

Usage Notes

In order to use the NetworkInterface implementation provided by Renesas for RA devices:

- Configure an r_ether instance and provide a pointer to the instance of the NetworkInterface as follows:

```
/* Reference used by the NetworkInterface to access the ethernet instance. */
```

```
extern ether_instance_t const * gp_freertos_ether;
...
/* Make it reference the configured ether instance. */
ether_instance_t const * gp_freertos_ether = &g_ether_instance;
```

- Follow the TCP stack initialization procedure as described here: FreeRTOS+TCP Networking Tutorial: Initializing the TCP/IP Stack

Note

The MAC address passed to FreeRTOS_IPInit must match the MAC address configured in the r_ether instance.
g_ether_instance must have vEtherISRCallback configured as the callback.
The xApplicationGetRandomNumber and ulApplicationGetNextSequenceNumber functions should be implemented in systems using FreeRTOS Plus TCP without Secure Sockets.
To connect to a server using an IP address the macro ipconfigINCLUDE_FULL_INET_ADDR must be set to 1.

Limitations

- Zero-copy is not currently supported by the NetworkInterface.

Examples

5.2.56 FreeRTOS Port (rm_freertos_port)

Modules

FreeRTOS port for RA MCUs.

Overview

Note

The FreeRTOS Port does not provide any interfaces to the user. Consult the FreeRTOS documentation at https://www.freertos.org/ for further information.

Features

The RA FreeRTOS port supports the following features:

- Standard FreeRTOS configurations
- Hardware stack monitor

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for all

The following build time configurations are defined in aws/FreeRTOSConfig.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
General > Custom FreeRTOSConfig.h	Manual Entry		Add a path to your custom FreeRTOSConfig.h file. It can be used to override some or all of the configurations defined here, and to define additional configurations.
General > Use Preemption	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Set to Enabled to use the preemptive RTOS scheduler, or Disabled to use the cooperative RTOS scheduler.
General > Use Port Optimised Task Selection	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Some FreeRTOS ports have two methods of selecting the next task to execute - a generic method, and a method that is specific to that port. The Generic method: Is used when Use Port Optimized Task Selection is set to 0, or when a port specific method is not implemented. Can be used with all FreeRTOS ports. Is completely written in C, making it less efficient than a port specific method. Does not impose a limit on the maximum number of available priorities. A port specific method: Is not available for all ports. Is used when Use Port Optimized Task Selection is Enabled. Relies on one or more architecture specific

			assembly instructions (typically a Count Leading Zeros [CLZ] or equivalent instruction) so can only be used with the architecture for which it was specifically written. Is more efficient than the generic method. Typically imposes a limit of 32 on the maximum number of available priorities.
General > Use Tickless Idle	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Set Use Tickless Idle to Enabled to use the low power tickless mode, or Disabled to keep the tick interrupt running at all times. Low power tickless implementations are not provided for all FreeRTOS ports.
General > Cpu Clock Hz	Manual Entry	SystemCoreClock	Enter the frequency in Hz at which the internal clock that drives the peripheral used to generate the tick interrupt will be executing - this is normally the same clock that drives the internal CPU clock. This value is required in order to correctly configure timer peripherals.
General > Tick Rate Hz	Must be an integer and greater than 0	1000	The frequency of the RTOS tick interrupt. The tick interrupt is used to measure time. Therefore a higher tick frequency means time can be measured to a higher resolution. However, a high tick frequency also means that the RTOS kernel will use more CPU time so be less efficient. The RTOS demo applications all use a

			tick rate of 1000Hz. This is used to test the RTOS kernel and is higher than would normally be required. More than one task can share the same priority. The RTOS scheduler will share processor time between tasks of the same priority by switching between the tasks during each RTOS tick. A high tick rate frequency will therefore also have the effect of reducing the 'time slice' given to each task.
General > Max Priorities	Must be an integer and greater than 0	5	The number of priorities available to the application tasks. Any number of tasks can share the same priority. Each available priority consumes RAM within the RTOS kernel so this value should not be set any higher than actually required by your application.
General > Minimal Stack Size	Must be an integer and greater than 0	128	The size of the stack used by the idle task. Generally this should not be reduced from the value set in the FreeRTOSConfig.h file provided with the demo application for the port you are using. Like the stack size parameter to the xTaskCreate() and xTaskCreateStatic() functions, the stack size is specified in words, not bytes. If each item placed on the stack is 32-bits, then a stack size of 100 means 400 bytes (each

			32-bit stack item consuming 4 bytes).
General > Max Task Name Len	Must be an integer and greater than 0	16	The maximum permissible length of the descriptive name given to a task when the task is created. The length is specified in the number of characters including the NULL termination byte.
General > Use 16 Bit Ticks	Disabled	Disabled	Time is measured in 'ticks' - which is the number of times the tick interrupt has executed since the RTOS kernel was started. The tick count is held in a variable of type TickType_t. Defining configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS as 1 causes TickType_t to be defined (typedef'ed) as an unsigned 16bit type. Defining configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS as 0 causes TickType_t to be defined (typedef'ed) as an unsigned 32bit type. Using a 16 bit type will greatly improve performance on 8 and 16 bit architectures, but limits the maximum specifiable time period to 65535 'ticks'. Therefore, assuming a tick frequency of 250Hz, the maximum time a task can delay or block when a 16bit counter is used is 262 seconds, compared to 17179869 seconds when using a 32bit counter.
General > Idle Should Yield	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	This parameter controls the behaviour

of tasks at the idle priority. It only has an effect if:
The preemptive scheduler is being used.
The application creates tasks that run at the idle priority.
If Use Time Slicing is Enabled then tasks that share the same priority will time slice. If none of the tasks get preempted then it might be assumed that each task at a given priority will be allocated an equal amount of processing time - and if the priority is above the idle priority then this is indeed the case.
When tasks share the idle priority the behaviour can be slightly different. If Idle Should Yield is Enabled then the idle task will yield immediately if any other task at the idle priority is ready to run. This ensures the minimum amount of time is spent in the idle task when application tasks are available for scheduling. This behaviour can however have undesirable effects (depending on the needs of your application) as depicted below:

The diagram above shows the execution pattern of four tasks that are all running at the idle priority. Tasks A, B and C are application tasks. Task I is the idle task. A

			context switch occurs with regular period at times T0, T1, ..., T6. When the idle task yields task A starts to execute - but the idle task has already consumed some of the current time slice. This results in task I and task A effectively sharing the same time slice. The application tasks B and C therefore get more processing time than the application task A. This situation can be avoided by: If appropriate, using an idle hook in place of separate tasks at the idle priority. Creating all application tasks at a priority greater than the idle priority. Setting Idle Should Yield to Disabled. Setting Idle Should Yield to Disabled prevents the idle task from yielding processing time until the end of its time slice. This ensure all tasks at the idle priority are allocated an equal amount of processing time (if none of the tasks get pre-empted) - but at the cost of a greater proportion of the total processing time being allocated to the idle task.
General > Use Task Notifications	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Setting Use Task Notifications to Enabled will include direct to task notification functionality and its

			associated API in the build. Setting Use Task Notifications to Disabled will exclude direct to task notification functionality and its associated API from the build. Each task consumes 8 additional bytes of RAM when direct to task notifications are included in the build.
General > Use Mutexes	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Set to Enabled to include mutex functionality in the build, or Disabled to omit mutex functionality from the build. Readers should familiarise themselves with the differences between mutexes and binary semaphores in relation to the FreeRTOS functionality.
General > Use Recursive Mutexes	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Set to Enabled to include recursive mutex functionality in the build, or Disabled to omit recursive mutex functionality from the build.
General > Use Counting Semaphores	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Set to Enabled to include counting semaphore functionality in the build, or Disabled to omit counting semaphore functionality from the build.
General > Queue Registry Size	Must be an integer and greater than 0	10	The queue registry has two purposes, both of which are associated with RTOS kernel aware debugging: It allows a textual name to be associated

			with a queue for easy queue identification within a debugging GUI. It contains the information required by a debugger to locate each registered queue and semaphore. The queue registry has no purpose unless you are using a RTOS kernel aware debugger. Registry Size defines the maximum number of queues and semaphores that can be registered. Only those queues and semaphores that you want to view using a RTOS kernel aware debugger need be registered. See the API reference documentation for vQueueAddToRegistry() and vQueueUnregisterQueue() for more information.
General > Use Queue Sets	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Set to Enabled to include queue set functionality (the ability to block, or pend, on multiple queues and semaphores), or Disabled to omit queue set functionality.
General > Use Time Slicing	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If Use Time Slicing is Enabled, FreeRTOS uses prioritised preemptive scheduling with time slicing. That means the RTOS scheduler will always run the highest priority task that is in the Ready state, and will switch between tasks of equal priority on every RTOS tick interrupt. If Use Time

			Slicing is Disabled then the RTOS scheduler will still run the highest priority task that is in the Ready state, but will not switch between tasks of equal priority just because a tick interrupt has occurred.
General > Use Newlib Reentrant	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If Use Newlib Reentrant is Enabled then a newlib reent structure will be allocated for each created task. Note Newlib support has been included by popular demand, but is not used by the FreeRTOS maintainers themselves. FreeRTOS is not responsible for resulting newlib operation. User must be familiar with newlib and must provide system-wide implementations of the necessary stubs. Be warned that (at the time of writing) the current newlib design implements a system-wide malloc() that must be provided with locks.
General > Enable Backward Compatibility	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	The FreeRTOS.h header file includes a set of #define macros that map the names of data types used in versions of FreeRTOS prior to version 8.0.0 to the names used in FreeRTOS version 8.0.0. The macros allow application code to update the version of FreeRTOS they are built against from a pre 8.0.0 version to a post 8.0.0 version without modification. Setting Enable Backward Compatibility to Disabled in

			FreeRTOSConfig.h excludes the macros from the build, and in so doing allowing validation that no pre version 8.0.0 names are being used.
General > Num Thread Local Storage Pointers	Must be an integer and greater than 0	5	Sets the number of indexes in each task's thread local storage array.
General > Stack Depth Type	Manual Entry	uint32_t	Sets the type used to specify the stack depth in calls to xTaskCreate(), and various other places stack sizes are used (for example, when returning the stack high water mark). Older versions of FreeRTOS specified stack sizes using variables of type UBaseType_t, but that was found to be too restrictive on 8-bit microcontrollers. Stack Depth Type removes that restriction by enabling application developers to specify the type to use.
General > Message Buffer Length Type	Manual Entry	size_t	FreeRTOS Message buffers use variables of type Message Buffer Length Type to store the length of each message. If Message Buffer Length Type is not defined then it will default to size_t. If the messages stored in a message buffer will never be larger than 255 bytes then defining Message Buffer Length Type to uint8_t will save 3 bytes per message on a 32-bit microcontroller. Likewise if the messages stored in a

			message buffer will never be larger than 65535 bytes then defining Message Buffer Length Type to uint16_t will save 2 bytes per message on a 32-bit microcontroller.
General > Library Max Syscall Interrupt Priority	MCU Specific Options		The highest interrupt priority that can be used by any interrupt service routine that makes calls to interrupt safe FreeRTOS API functions. DO NOT CALL INTERRUPT SAFE FREERTOS API FUNCTIONS FROM ANY INTERRUPT THAT HAS A HIGHER PRIORITY THAN THIS! (higher priorities are lower numeric values) Below is explanation for macros that are set based on this value from FreeRTOS website. In the RA port, configKERNEL_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY is not used and the kernel runs at the lowest priority. Note in the following discussion that only API functions that end in "FromISR" can be called from within an interrupt service routine. configMAX_SYSCALL_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY sets the highest interrupt priority from which interrupt safe FreeRTOS API functions can be called. A full interrupt nesting

model is achieved by setting configMAX_SYSCALL_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY above (that is, at a higher priority level) than configKERNEL_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY. This means the FreeRTOS kernel does not completely disable interrupts, even inside critical sections. Further, this is achieved without the disadvantages of a segmented kernel architecture.

Interrupts that do not call API functions can execute at priorities above configMAX_SYSCALL_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY and therefore never be delayed by the RTOS kernel execution.

A special note for ARM Cortex-M users: Please read the page dedicated to interrupt priority settings on ARM Cortex-M devices. As a minimum, remember that ARM Cortex-M cores use numerically low priority numbers to represent HIGH priority interrupts, which can seem counter-intuitive and is easy to forget! If you wish to assign an interrupt a low priority do NOT assign it a priority of 0 (or other low numeric value) as this can result in the interrupt actually having the highest priority in the system - and therefore potentially make your system crash if this priority is above config

			MAX_SYSCALL_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY. The lowest priority on a ARM Cortex-M core is in fact 255 - however different ARM Cortex-M vendors implement a different number of priority bits and supply library functions that expect priorities to be specified in different ways. For example, on the RA6M3 the lowest priority you can specify is 15 - and the highest priority you can specify is 0.
General > Assert	Manual Entry	assert (x)	The semantics of the configASSERT() macro are the same as the standard C assert() macro. An assertion is triggered if the parameter passed into configASSERT() is zero. configASSERT() is called throughout the FreeRTOS source files to check how the application is using FreeRTOS. It is highly recommended to develop FreeRTOS applications with configASSERT() defined. The example definition (shown at the top of the file and replicated below) calls vAssertCalled(), passing in the file name and line number of the triggering configASSERT() call (__FILE__ and __LINE__ are standard macros provided by most compilers). This is just for demonstration as vAssertCalled() is not a

FreeRTOS function, configASSERT() can be defined to take whatever action the application writer deems appropriate.

It is normal to define configASSERT() in such a way that it will prevent the application from executing any further. This if for two reasons; stopping the application at the point of the assertion allows the cause of the assertion to be debugged, and executing past a triggered assertion will probably result in a crash anyway.

Note defining configASSERT() will increase both the application code size and execution time. When the application is stable the additional overhead can be removed by simply commenting out the configASSERT() definition in FreeRTOSConfig.h.

/* Define configASSERT() to call vAssertCalled() if the assertion fails. The assertion
has failed if the value of the parameter passed into configASSERT() equals zero. */
#define configASSERT((x)) if((x) == 0) vAssertCalled(__FILE__, __LINE__)
If running FreeRTOS under the control of a debugger, then

			configASSERT() can be defined to just disable interrupts and sit in a loop, as demonstrated below. That will have the effect of stopping the code on the line that failed the assert test - pausing the debugger will then immediately take you to the offending line so you can see why it failed. /* Define configASSERT() to disable interrupts and sit in a loop. */ #define configASSERT((x)) if((x) == 0) { taskDISABLE_INTERRUPTS(); for(;;); }
General > Include Application Defined Privileged Functions	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include Application Defined Privileged Functions is only used by FreeRTOS MPU. If Include Application Defined Privileged Functions is Enabled then the application writer must provide a header file called "application_defined_privileged_functions.h", in which functions the application writer needs to execute in privileged mode can be implemented. Note that, despite having a .h extension, the header file should contain the implementation of the C functions, not just the functions' prototypes. Functions implemented in "application_defined_privileged_functions.h" must save and restore the processor's

			privilege state using the prvRaisePrivilege() function and portRESET_PRIVILEGE() macro respectively. For example, if a library provided print function accesses RAM that is outside of the control of the application writer, and therefore cannot be allocated to a memory protected user mode task, then the print function can be encapsulated in a privileged function using the following code: void MPU_debug_printf(const char *pcMessage) { /* State the privilege level of the processor when the function was called. */ BaseType_t xRunningPrivileged = prvRaisePrivilege(); /* Call the library function, which now has access to all RAM. */ debug_printf(pcMessage); /* Reset the processor privilege level to its original value. */ portRESET_PRIVILEGE(xRunningPrivileged); } This technique should only be use during development, and not deployment, as it circumvents the memory protection.
Hooks > Use Idle Hook	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Set to Enabled if you wish to use an idle hook, or Disabled to

			omit an idle hook.
Hooks > Use Malloc Failed Hook	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	The kernel uses a call to pvPortMalloc() to allocate memory from the heap each time a task, queue or semaphore is created. The official FreeRTOS download includes four sample memory allocation schemes for this purpose. The schemes are implemented in the heap_1.c, heap_2.c, heap_3.c, heap_4.c and heap_5.c source files respectively. Use Malloc Failed Hook is only relevant when one of these three sample schemes is being used. The malloc() failed hook function is a hook (or callback) function that, if defined and configured, will be called if pvPortMalloc() ever returns NULL. NULL will be returned only if there is insufficient FreeRTOS heap memory remaining for the requested allocation to succeed. If Use Malloc Failed Hook is Enabled then the application must define a malloc() failed hook function. If Use Malloc Failed Hook is set to Dosab;ed then the malloc() failed hook function will not be called, even if one is defined. Malloc() failed hook functions must have the name and prototype shown below. void vApplicationMalloc

			FailedHook(void);
Hooks > Use Daemon Task Startup Hook	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If Use Timers and Use Daemon Task Startup Hook are both Enabled then the application must define a hook function that has the exact name and prototype as shown below. The hook function will be called exactly once when the RTOS daemon task (also known as the timer service task) executes for the first time. Any application initialisation code that needs the RTOS to be running can be placed in the hook function. void void vApplicationDaemonTaskStartupHook(void);
Hooks > Use Tick Hook	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Set to Enabled if you wish to use an tick hook, or Disabled to omit an tick hook.
Hooks > Check For Stack Overflow	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	The stack overflow detection page describes the use of this parameter. This is not recommended for RA MCUs with hardware stack monitor support. RA MCU designs should enable the RA hardware stack monitor instead.
Stats > Use Trace Facility	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Set to Enabled if you wish to include additional structure members and functions to assist with execution visualisation and tracing.
Stats > Use Stats Formatting Functions	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Set Use Trace Facility and Use Stats Formatting Functions to Enabled to include the vTaskList() and vTaskGetRunTimeStats()

			functions in the build. Setting either to Disabled will omit vTaskList() and vTaskGetRunTimeStates() from the build.
Stats > Generate Run Time Stats	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	The Run Time Stats page describes the use of this parameter.
Memory Allocation > Support Static Allocation	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	If Support Static Allocation is Enabled then RTOS objects can be created using RAM provided by the application writer. If Support Static Allocation is Disabled then RTOS objects can only be created using RAM allocated from the FreeRTOS heap. If Support Static Allocation is left undefined it will default to 0. If Support Static Allocation is Enabled then the application writer must also provide two callback functions: vApplicationGetIdleTaskMemory() to provide the memory for use by the RTOS Idle task, and (if Use Timers is Enabled) vApplicationGetTimerTaskMemory() to provide memory for use by the RTOS Daemon/Timer Service task. Examples are provided below. /* Support Static Allocation is Enabled, so the application must provide an implementation of vApplicationGetIdleTaskMemory() to provide the memory that is

```
used by the Idle task. */
void vApplicationGetIdl
eTaskMemory(
StaticTask_t **ppxIdleT
askTCBBuffer,<br>
StackType_t **ppxIdleT
askStackBuffer,<br>
uint32_t
*pulIdleTaskStackSize )
{
/* If the buffers to be
provided to the Idle
task are declared
inside this
function then they
must be declared static
- otherwise they will be
allocated on
the stack and so not
exists after this
function exits. */
static StaticTask_t
xIdleTaskTCB;
static StackType_t
uxIdleTaskStack[ config
MINIMAL_STACK_SIZE ];

/* Pass out a pointer to
the StaticTask_t
structure in which the
Idle task's
state will be stored. */
*ppxIdleTaskTCBBuffer
=

/* Pass out the array
that will be used as the
Idle task's stack. */
*ppxIdleTaskStackBuffe
r = uxIdleTaskStack;

/* Pass out the size of
the array pointed to by
*ppxIdleTaskStackBuffe
r.
Note that, as the array
is necessarily of type
StackType_t,
configMINIMAL_STACK_
SIZE is specified in
words, not bytes. */
*pulIdleTaskStackSize
= configMINIMAL_STAC
K_SIZE;
}
```

```
/*-----------------------------
-----------------------------*/

/* Support Static
Allocation and Use
Timers are both
Enabled, so the
application must
provide an
implementation of vAp
plicationGetTimerTask
Memory()
to provide the memory
that is used by the
Timer service task. */
void vApplicationGetTi
merTaskMemory(
StaticTask_t **ppxTime
rTaskTCBBuffer,<br>
StackType_t **ppxTime
rTaskStackBuffer,<br>
uint32_t
*pulTimerTaskStackSiz
e )
{
/* If the buffers to be
provided to the Timer
task are declared
inside this
function then they
must be declared static
- otherwise they will be
allocated on
the stack and so not
exists after this
function exits. */
static StaticTask_t
xTimerTaskTCB;
static StackType_t
uxTimerTaskStack[ con
figTIMER_TASK_STACK_
DEPTH ];

/* Pass out a pointer to
the StaticTask_t
structure in which the
Timer
task's state will be
stored. */
*ppxTimerTaskTCBBuff
er =

/* Pass out the array
that will be used as the
Timer task's stack. */
```

			*ppxTimerTaskStackBuffer = uxTimerTaskStack;
			
			/* Pass out the size of the array pointed to by *ppxTimerTaskStackBuffer.
			Note that, as the array is necessarily of type StackType_t, configTIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH is specified in words, not bytes. */
			*pulTimerTaskStackSize = configTIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH;
			}
			
			Examples of the callback functions that must be provided by the application to supply the RAM used by the Idle and Timer Service tasks if Support Static Allocation is Enabled.
			
			See the Static Vs Dynamic Memory Allocation page for more information.

Memory Allocation > Support Dynamic Allocation	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If Support Dynamic Allocation is Enabled then RTOS objects can be created using RAM that is automatically allocated from the FreeRTOS heap. If Support Dynamic Allocation is set to 0 then RTOS objects can only be created using RAM provided by the application writer. See the Static Vs Dynamic Memory Allocation page for more information.
Memory Allocation > Total Heap Size	Must be an integer and greater than 0	1024	The total amount of RAM available in the FreeRTOS heap.

			This value will only be used if Support Dynamic Allocation is Enabled and the application makes use of one of the sample memory allocation schemes provided in the FreeRTOS source code download. See the memory configuration section for further details.
Memory Allocation > Application Allocated Heap	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	By default the FreeRTOS heap is declared by FreeRTOS and placed in memory by the linker. Setting Application Allocated Heap to Enabled allows the heap to instead be declared by the application writer, which allows the application writer to place the heap wherever they like in memory. If heap_1.c, heap_2.c or heap_4.c is used, and Application Allocated Heap is Enabled, then the application writer must provide a uint8_t array with the exact name and dimension as shown below. The array will be used as the FreeRTOS heap. How the array is placed at a specific memory location is dependent on the compiler being used - refer to your compiler's documentation. uint8_t ucHeap[configTOTAL_HEAP_SIZE];
Timers > Use Timers	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Set to Enabled to include software timer functionality, or Disabled to omit

			software timer functionality. See the FreeRTOS software timers page for a full description.
Timers > Timer Task Priority	Must be an integer and greater than 0	3	Sets the priority of the software timer service/daemon task. See the FreeRTOS software timers page for a full description.
Timers > Timer Queue Length	Must be an integer and greater than 0	10	Sets the length of the software timer command queue. See the FreeRTOS software timers page for a full description.
Timers > Timer Task Stack Depth	Must be an integer and greater than 0	128	Sets the stack depth allocated to the software timer service/daemon task. See the FreeRTOS software timers page for a full description.
Optional Functions > vTaskPrioritySet() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include vTaskPrioritySet() function in build
Optional Functions > uxTaskPriorityGet() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include uxTaskPriorityGet() function in build
Optional Functions > vTaskDelete() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include vTaskDelete() function in build
Optional Functions > vTaskSuspend() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include vTaskSuspend() function in build
Optional Functions > xResumeFromISR() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include xResumeFromISR() function in build
Optional Functions > vTaskDelayUntil() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include vTaskDelayUntil() function in build
Optional Functions > vTaskDelay() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include vTaskDelay() function in build
Optional Functions > x TaskGetSchedulerState () Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include xTaskGetSched ulerState() function in build
Optional Functions > x	• Enabled	Enabled	Include xTaskGetCurre

TaskGetCurrentTaskHandle() Function	• Disabled		ntTaskHandle() function in build
Optional Functions > uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark() function in build
Optional Functions > xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle() function in build
Optional Functions > eTaskGetState() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include eTaskGetState() function in build
Optional Functions > xEventGroupSetBitFromISR() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include xEventGroupSetBitFromISR() function in build
Optional Functions > xTimerPendFunctionCall() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include xTimerPendFunctionCall() function in build
Optional Functions > xTaskAbortDelay() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include xTaskAbortDelay() function in build
Optional Functions > xTaskGetHandle() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include xTaskGetHandle() function in build
Optional Functions > xTaskResumeFromISR() Function	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Include xTaskResumeFromISR() function in build
RA > Hardware Stack Monitor	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Include RA stack monitor
Logging > Print String Function	Manual Entry	printf(x)	
Logging > Logging Max Message Length	Manual Entry	192	
Logging > Logging Include Time and Task Name	• Disabled • Enabled	Disabled	

Clock Configuration

The FreeRTOS port uses the SysTick timer as the system clock. The timer rate is configured in the FreeRTOS component under General > Tick Rate Hz.

Pin Configuration

This module does not use I/O pins.

Usage Notes

Hardware Stack Monitor

The hardware stack monitor generates an NMI if the PSP goes out of the memory area for the stack allocated for the current task. A callback can be registered using R_BSP_GroupIrqWrite() to be called whenever a stack overflow or underflow of the PSP for a particular thread is detected.

Stack Monitor Underflow Detection

By default the hardware stack monitor only checks for overflow of the process stack. To check for underflow define configRECORD_STACK_HIGH_ADDRESS as 1 on the command line.

Low Power Modes

When FreeRTOS is configured to use tickless idle, the idle task executes WFI() when no task is ready to run. If the MCU is configured to enter software standby mode or deep software standby mode when the idle task executes WFI(), the RA FreeRTOS port changes the low power mode to sleep mode so the idle task can wake from SysTick. The low power mode settings are restored when the MCU wakes from sleep mode.

Examples

Stack Monitor Example

This is an example of using the stack monitor in an application.

```
void stack_monitor_callback(bsp_grp_irq_t irq);
void rm_freertos_port_stack_monitor_example(void);
void stack_monitor_callback (bsp_grp_irq_t irq)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(irq);
 if (1U == R_MPU_SPMON->SP[0].CTL_b.ERROR)
    {
 /* Handle main stack monitor error here. */
    }
 if (1U == R_MPU_SPMON->SP[1].CTL_b.ERROR)
    {
 /* Handle process stack monitor error here. */
    }
}
void rm_freertos_port_stack_monitor_example (void)
{
 /* Register a callback to be called when the stack goes outside the allocated stack
area. */
```

```
 R_BSP_GroupIrqWrite(BSP_GRP_IRQ_MPU_STACK, stack_monitor_callback);
}
```

5.2.57 LittleFS Flash Port (rm_littlefs_flash)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Open (rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_littlefs_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Close (rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t	RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

Middleware for the LittleFS File System control on RA MCUs.

Overview

This module provides the hardware port layer for the LittleFS file system. After initializing this module, refer to the LittleFS documentation to use the file system:
https://github.com/ARMmbed/littlefs

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for rm_littlefs_flash

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/rm_littlefs_flash_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking Enable	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.

Configurations for Middleware > LittleFS on Flash

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > LittleFS on Flash:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description

Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_rm_littlefs0	Module name.
Read Size	Must be a non-negative integer	1	Minimum size of a block read. All read operations will be a multiple of this value.
Program Size	Must be a non-negative integer	4	Minimum size of a block program. All program operations will be a multiple of this value.
Block Size (bytes)	Must be a multiple of 64	128	Size of an erasable block. This does not impact ram consumption and may be larger than the physical erase size. However, non-inlined files take up at minimum one block. Must be a multiple of the read and program sizes.
Block Count	Must be an integer greater than 0.	1024	Number of erasable blocks on the device.
Block Cycles	Must be an integer	1024	Number of erase cycles before LittleFS evicts metadata logs and moves the metadata to another block. Suggested values are in the range 100-1000, with large values having better performance at the cost of less consistent wear distribution. Set to -1 to disable block-level wear-leveling.
Cache Size	Must be a non-negative integer	64	Size of block caches. Each cache buffers a portion of a block in RAM. The LittleFS needs a read cache, a program cache, and one additional cache per file. Larger caches can improve performance by storing more data and reducing the number of

			disk accesses. Must be a multiple of the read and program sizes, and a factor of the block size.
Lookahead Size	Must be a non-negative multiple of 8	16	Size of the lookahead buffer in bytes. A larger lookahead buffer increases the number of blocks found during an allocation pass. The lookahead buffer is stored as a compact bitmap, so each byte of RAM can track 8 blocks. Must be a multiple of 8.

Common LittleFS Configuration

Build Time Configurations for LittleFS

The following build time configurations are defined in arm/littlefs/lfs_util.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Custom lfs_util.h	Manual Entry		Add a path to your custom lfs_util.h file. It can be used to override some or all of the configurations defined here, and to define additional configurations.
Use Malloc	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Configures the use of malloc by LittleFS.
Use Assert	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Configures the use of assert by LittleFS.
Debug Messages	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Configures debug messages.
Warning Messages	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Configures warning messages.
Error Messages	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Configures error messages.
Trace Messages	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	Configures trace messages.
Intrinsics	• Enabled • Disabled	Enabled	Configures intrinsic functions such as __builtin_clz.

Instance Name for STDIO wrapper	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_rm_littlefs0	The rm_littlefs instance name to use with the STDIO wrapper.

Usage Notes

Blocking Read/Write/Erase

The LittleFS port blocks on Read/Write/Erase calls until the operation has completed.

Memory Constraints

The block size defined in the LittleFS configuration must be a multiple of the data flash erase size of the MCU. It must be greater than 104bytes which is the minimum block size of a LittleFS block. For information about data flash erase sizes refer to the "Specifications of the code flash memory and data flash memory" table of the "Flash Memory" chapter's "Overview" section.

Limitations

This module is not thread safe.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of LittleFS on Flash in an application.

```
extern const rm_littlefs_cfg_t g_rm_littlefs_flash0_cfg;
#ifdef LFS_NO_MALLOC
static uint8_t g_file_buffer[LFS_CACHE_SIZE];
static struct lfs_file_config g_file_cfg =
{
    .buffer = g_file_buffer
};
#endif
void rm_littlefs_example (void)
{
    uint8_t    buffer[30];
    lfs_file_t file;
 /* Open LittleFS Flash port.*/
 fsp_err_t err = RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Open(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_ctrl,
&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
```

```
    handle_error(err);
 /* Format the filesystem. */
 int lfs_err = lfs_format(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs_cfg);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
 /* Mount the filesystem. */
    lfs_err = lfs_mount(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs_cfg);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
 /* Create a breakfast directory. */
    lfs_err = lfs_mkdir(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, "breakfast");
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
 /* Create a file toast in the breakfast directory. */
 const char * path = "breakfast/toast";
#ifdef LFS_NO_MALLOC
 /*********************************************************************************
************************************
  * By default LittleFS uses malloc to allocate buffers. This can be disabled in the
configurator.
  * Buffers will be generated by the configurator for the read, program and lookahead
buffers.
  * When opening a file a unique buffer must be passed in for use as a file buffer.
  * The buffer size must be equal to the cache size.
  *********************************************************************************
**********************************/
    lfs_err = lfs_file_opencfg(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs,
                               &file,
                               path,
                               LFS_O_WRONLY | LFS_O_CREAT | LFS_O_APPEND,
                               &g_file_cfg);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
#else
    lfs_err = lfs_file_open(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &file, path, LFS_O_WRONLY |
LFS_O_CREAT | LFS_O_APPEND);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
#endif
```

```
 const char * contents = "butter";
    lfs_size_t   len      = strlen(contents);
 /* Apply butter to toast 10 times. */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < 10; i++)
    {
       lfs_err = lfs_file_write(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &file, contents, len);
 if (lfs_err < 0)
      {
      handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
       }
    }
 /* Close the file. */
    lfs_err = lfs_file_close(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &file);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
 /* Unmount the filesystem. */
    lfs_err = lfs_unmount(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
 /* Remount the filesystem. */
    lfs_err = lfs_mount(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs_cfg);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
 /* Open breakfast/toast. */
#ifdef LFS_NO_MALLOC
    lfs_err = lfs_file_opencfg(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &file, path, LFS_O_RDONLY,
&g_file_cfg);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
#else
    lfs_err = lfs_file_open(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &file, path, LFS_O_RDONLY);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
#endif
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
 /* Verify the toast is buttered the correct amount. */
 for (uint32_t i = 0; i < 10; i++)
    {
       lfs_err = lfs_file_read(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &file, buffer, len);
 if (lfs_err < 0)
      {
      handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
       }
 if (0 != memcmp(buffer, contents, len))
      {
            handle_error(FSP_ERR_ASSERTION);
       }
    }
 /* Close the file. */
    lfs_err = lfs_file_close(&g_rm_littlefs_flash0_lfs, &file);
    handle_lfs_error(lfs_err);
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Open()

fsp_err_t RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Open (rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, rm_littlefs_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens the driver and initializes lower layer driver.

Implements rm_littlefs_api_t::open().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE	The provided block size is invalid.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Flash BGO mode must be disabled.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- flash_api_t::open

◆ RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Close()

fsp_err_t RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Close (rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Closes the lower level driver.

Implements rm_littlefs_api_t::close().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Media device closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	An input parameter was invalid.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module not open.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- flash_api_t::close

◆ RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the version of this module.

Implements rm_littlefs_api_t::versionGet().

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Success.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Failed in acquiring version information.

5.2.58 Crypto Middleware (rm_psa_crypto)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	RM_PSA_CRYPTO_TRNG_Read (uint8_t *const p_rngbuf, uint32_t num_req_bytes, uint32_t *p_num_gen_bytes) Reads requested length of random data from the TRNG. Generate nbytes of random bytes and store them in p_rngbuf buffer. More...

int	mbedtls_platform_setup (mbedtls_platform_context *ctx)
void	mbedtls_platform_teardown (mbedtls_platform_context *ctx)

Detailed Description

Hardware acceleration for the mbedCrypto implementation of the ARM PSA Crypto API.

Overview

Note

The PSA Crypto module does not provide any interfaces to the user. This release uses the mbed-Crypto version 3.1.0 which conforms to the PSA Crypto API 1.0 beta3 specification. Consult the ARM mbedCrypto documentation at https://github.com/ARMmbed/mbed-crypto/blob/mbedcrypto-3.1.0/docs/getting_started.md for further information.

Features

The PSA_Crypto module provides hardware support for the following PSA Crypto operations

- SHA256 calculation
- SHA224 calculation
- AES
  - Keybits - 128, 256
  - Plain-Text Key Generation
  - Wrapped Key Generation
  - Encryption and Decryption with no padding and with PKCS7 padding.
  - CBC, CTR and GCM modes
  - Export and Import for Plaintext and Wrapped keys
- ECC
  - Curves:
    - SECP256R1
    - SECP256K1
    - Brainpool256R1
    - SECP384R1
    - Brainpool384R1
  - Plain-Text Key Generation
  - Wrapped Key Generation
  - Signing and Verification
  - Export and Import for Plaintext and Wrapped keys
- RSA
  - Keybits - 2048
  - Plain-Text Key Generation
  - Wrapped Key Generation
  - Signing and Verification
  - Encryption and Decryption with PKCS1V15 and OAEP padding
  - Export and Import for Plaintext and Wrapped keys
- Random number generation
- Persistent Key Storage

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for mbedCrypto

The following build time configurations are defined in arm/mbedtls/config.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Hardware Acceleration > Key Format > AES	MCU Specific Options		Select AES key formats used
Hardware Acceleration > Key Format > ECC	MCU Specific Options		Select ECC key formats used
Hardware Acceleration > Key Format > RSA	MCU Specific Options		Select RSA key formats used
Hardware Acceleration > Hash > SHA256/224	MCU Specific Options		Defines MBEDTLS_SHA256_ALT and MBEDTLS_SHA256_PROCESS_ALT.
Hardware Acceleration > Cipher > AES	MCU Specific Options		Defines MBEDTLS_AES_ALT, MBEDTLS_AES_SETKEY_ENC_ALT, MBEDTLS_AES_SETKEY_DEC_ALT, MBEDTLS_AES_ENCRYPT_ALT and MBEDTLS_AES_DECRYPT_ALT
Hardware Acceleration > Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC	MCU Specific Options		Defines MBEDTLS_ECP_ALT
Hardware Acceleration > Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECDSA	MCU Specific Options		Defines MBEDTLS_ECDSA_SIGN_ALT and MBEDTLS_ECDSA_VERIFY_ALT
Hardware Acceleration > Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > RSA	MCU Specific Options		Defines MBEDTLS_RSA_ALT.
Hardware Acceleration > TRNG	Enabled	Enabled	Defines MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_HARDWARE_ALT.
Hardware Acceleration > Secure Crypto Engine Initialization	Enabled	Enabled	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SETUP_TEARDOWN_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_EXIT_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_EXIT_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_ALT

Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FPRINTF_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FPRINTF_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_PRINTF_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_PRINTF_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SNPRINTF_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SNPRINTF_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_VSNPRINTF_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_VSNPRINTF_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_ZEROIZE_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_ZEROIZE_ALT
Platform > Alternate > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_GMTIME_R_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_GMTIME_R_ALT
Platform > MBEDTLS_HAVE_ASM	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HAVE_ASM
Platform > MBEDTLS_NO_UDBL_DIVISION	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_NO_UDBL_DIVISION
Platform > MBEDTLS_NO_64BIT_MULTIPLICATION	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_NO_64BIT_MULTIPLICATION
Platform > MBEDTLS_HAVE_SSE2	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HAVE_SSE2
Platform > MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME
Platform > MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME_DATE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME_DATE
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_MEMORY	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_MEMORY
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NO_STD_FUNCTIONS	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NO_STD_FUNCTIONS
Platform > MBEDTLS_TIMING_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_TIMING_ALT
Platform > MBEDTLS_NO_PLATFORM_ENTROPY	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_NO_PLATFORM_ENTROPY
Platform >	• Define	Define	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_C

MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_C	• Undefine		
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_C
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_CALLOC	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_CALLOC
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_CALLOC value	Manual Entry	calloc	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_CALLOC value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FREE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FREE
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FREE value	Manual Entry	free	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FREE value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT value	Manual Entry	exit	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_TIME	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_TIME
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_TIME value	Manual Entry	time	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_TIME value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FPRINTF	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FPRINTF
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FPRINTF value	Manual Entry	fprintf	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_FPRINTF value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_PRINTF	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_PRINTF
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_PRINTF value	Manual Entry	printf	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_PRINTF value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_SNPRINTF	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_SNPRINTF
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_SNPRINTF value	Manual Entry	snprintf	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_SNPRINTF value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_SUCCESS	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_SUCCESS
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_SU	Manual Entry	0	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_SUCCESS

CCESS value			value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_FAILURE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_FAILURE
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_FAILURE value	Manual Entry	1	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_EXIT_FAILURE value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_READ	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_READ
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_READ value	Manual Entry	mbedtls_platform_std_nv_seed_read	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_READ value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_WRITE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_WRITE
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_WRITE value	Manual Entry	mbedtls_platform_std_nv_seed_write	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_WRITE value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_FILE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_FILE
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_FILE value	Manual Entry		MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_STD_NV_SEED_FILE value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_CALLOC_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_CALLOC_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_CALLOC_MACRO value	Manual Entry	calloc	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_CALLOC_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FREE_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FREE_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FREE_MACRO value	Manual Entry	free	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FREE_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_EXIT_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_EXIT_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_EXIT_MACRO value	Manual Entry	exit	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_EXIT_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_P	Manual Entry	time	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_T

LATFORM_TIME_MACRO value			IME_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_TYPE_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_TYPE_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_TYPE_MACRO value	Manual Entry	time_t	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_TIME_TYPE_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FPRINTF_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FPRINTF_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FPRINTF_MACRO value	Manual Entry	fprintf	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_FPRINTF_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_PRINTF_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_PRINTF_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_PRINTF_MACRO value	Manual Entry	printf	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_PRINTF_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SNPRINTF_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SNPRINTF_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SNPRINTF_MACRO value	Manual Entry	snprintf	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SNPRINTF_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_VSNPRINTF_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_VSNPRINTF_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_VSNPRINTF_MACRO value	Manual Entry	vsnprintf	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_VSNPRINTF_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_READ_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_READ_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_READ_MACRO value	Manual Entry	mbedtls_platform_std_nv_seed_read	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_READ_MACRO value
Platform > MBEDTLS_PARAM_FAILED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PARAM_FAILED
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_WRITE_MACRO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_WRITE_MACRO
Platform > MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_W	Manual Entry	mbedtls_platform_std_nv_seed_write	MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_NV_SEED_WRITE_MACRO

RITE_MACRO value			value
General > MBEDTLS_DEPRECATED_WARNING	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DEPRECATED_WARNING
General > MBEDTLS_DEPRECATED_REMOVED	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_DEPRECATED_REMOVED
General > MBEDTLS_CHECK_PARAMS	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CHECK_PARAMS
General > MBEDTLS_CHECK_PARAMS_ASSERT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CHECK_PARAMS_ASSERT
General > MBEDTLS_ERROR_STRERROR_DUMMY	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_ERROR_STRERROR_DUMMY
General > MBEDTLS_MEMORY_DEBUG	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MEMORY_DEBUG
General > MBEDTLS_MEMORY_BACKTRACE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MEMORY_BACKTRACE
General > MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_SPM	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_SPM
General > MBEDTLS_SELF_TEST	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SELF_TEST
General > MBEDTLS_THREADING_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_THREADING_ALT
General > MBEDTLS_THREADING_PTHREAD	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_THREADING_PTHREAD
General > MBEDTLS_USE_PSA_CRYPTO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_USE_PSA_CRYPTO
General > MBEDTLS_VERSION_FEATURES	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_VERSION_FEATURES
General > MBEDTLS_ERROR_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_ERROR_C
General > MBEDTLS_MEMORY_BUFFER_ALLOC_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MEMORY_BUFFER_ALLOC_C
General > MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_C
General > MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_SE_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_SE_C
General > MBEDTLS_THREADING_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_THREADING_C
General > MBEDTLS_TIMING_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_TIMING_C
General >	• Define	Define	MBEDTLS_VERSION_C

MBEDTLS_VERSION_C	• Undefine		
General > MBEDTLS_MEMORY_ALIGN_MULTIPLE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MEMORY_ALIGN_MULTIPLE
General > MBEDTLS_MEMORY_ALIGN_MULTIPLE value	Manual Entry	4	MBEDTLS_MEMORY_ALIGN_MULTIPLE value
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ARC4_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ARC4_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ARIA_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ARIA_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_CCM_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CCM_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_CHACHAPOLY_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CHACHAPOLY_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_CMAC_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CMAC_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_DES_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DES_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_GCM_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_GCM_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_NIST_KW_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_NIST_KW_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_XTEA_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_XTEA_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_DES_SETKEY_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DES_SETKEY_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_DES_CRYPT_ECB_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DES_CRYPT_ECB_ALT
Cipher > Alternate > MBEDTLS_DES3_CRYPT_ECB_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DES3_CRYPT_ECB_ALT

Cipher > AES > MBEDTLS_AES_ROM_TABLES	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_AES_ROM_TABLES
Cipher > AES > MBEDTLS_AES_FEWER_TABLES	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_AES_FEWER_TABLES
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_SMALL_MEMORY	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_SMALL_MEMORY
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_CBC	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_CBC
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_CFB	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_CFB
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_CTR	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_CTR
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_OFB	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_OFB
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_XTS	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_MODE_XTS
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_NULL_CIPHER	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_NULL_CIPHER
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_PKCS7	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_PKCS7
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_ONE_AND_ZEROS	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_ONE_AND_ZEROS
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_ZEROS_AND_LEN	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_ZEROS_AND_LEN
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_ZEROS	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_PADDING_ZEROS
Cipher > MBEDTLS_AES_C	Define	Define	MBEDTLS_AES_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_ARC4_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ARC4_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_ARIA_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ARIA_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CCM_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CCM_C
Cipher >	• Define	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_

MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C	• Undefine		C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CHACHAPOLY_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CHACHAPOLY_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_CIPHER_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CIPHER_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_DES_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DES_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_GCM_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_GCM_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_NIST_KW_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_NIST_KW_C
Cipher > MBEDTLS_XTEA_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_XTEA_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > DHM > Alternate > MBEDTLS_DHM_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DHM_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > DHM > MBEDTLS_DHM_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_DHM_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECDSA_GENKEY_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECDSA_GENKEY_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_INTERNAL_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_INTERNAL_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_RANDOMIZE_JAC_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_RANDOMIZE_JAC_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_ADD_MIXED_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_ADD_MIXED_ALT

Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_DOUBLE_JAC_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DOUBLE_JAC_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_NORMALIZE_JAC_MANY_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_NORMALIZE_JAC_MANY_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_NORMALIZE_JAC_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_NORMALIZE_JAC_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_DOUBLE_ADD_MXZ_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DOUBLE_ADD_MXZ_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_RANDOMIZE_MXZ_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_RANDOMIZE_MXZ_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Alternate > MBEDTLS_ECP_NORMALIZE_MXZ_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_NORMALIZE_MXZ_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192R1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192R1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224R1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224R1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP384R	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP384R1_ENABLED

1_ENABLED			
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP521R1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP521R1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192K1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192K1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224K1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224K1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256K1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256K1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP256R1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP256R1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP384R1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP384R1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP512R1_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP512R1_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_CURVE25519_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_CURVE25519_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > Curves > MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_CURVE448_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_CURVE448_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECDH	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECDH_GEN_PUBLIC_ALT

_GEN_PUBLIC_ALT			
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECDH_COMPUTE_SHARED_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECDH_COMPUTE_SHARED_ALT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_NIST_OPTIM	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_NIST_OPTIM
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_RESTARTABLE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_RESTARTABLE
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECDH_LEGACY_CONTEXT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECDH_LEGACY_CONTEXT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECDSA_DETERMINISTIC	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECDSA_DETERMINISTIC
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_PK_PARSE_EC_EXTENDED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PK_PARSE_EC_EXTENDED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECDH_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECDH_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECDSA_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_ECDSA_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_ECP_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_MAX_BITS	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_MAX_BITS
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) >	Manual Entry	521	MBEDTLS_ECP_MAX_BITS value

ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_MAX_BITS value			
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_WINDOW_SIZE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_WINDOW_SIZE
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_WINDOW_SIZE value	Manual Entry	6	MBEDTLS_ECP_WINDOW_SIZE value
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_FIXED_POINT_OPTIM	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECP_FIXED_POINT_OPTIM
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECP_FIXED_POINT_OPTIM value	Manual Entry	1	MBEDTLS_ECP_FIXED_POINT_OPTIM value
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > ECC > MBEDTLS_ECDH_VARIANT_EVEREST_ENABLED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ECDH_VARIANT_EVEREST_ENABLED
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > RSA > MBEDTLS_PK_RSA_ALT_SUPPORT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PK_RSA_ALT_SUPPORT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > RSA > MBEDTLS_RSA_NO_CRT	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_RSA_NO_CRT
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > RSA > MBEDTLS_RSA_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_RSA_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_GENPRIME	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_GENPRIME
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PKCS1_V15	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PKCS1_V15
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PKCS1_V21	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PKCS1_V21
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_ASN1_PARSE	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_ASN1_PARSE_C

_C			
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_ASN1_WRITE_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_ASN1_WRITE_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_BASE64_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_BASE64_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_BIGNUM_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_BIGNUM_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_OID_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_OID_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PEM_PARSE_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PEM_PARSE_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PEM_WRITE_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PEM_WRITE_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PK_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PK_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PK_PARSE_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PK_PARSE_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PK_WRITE_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PK_WRITE_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PKCS5_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PKCS5_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_PKCS12_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_PKCS12_C
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_MPI_WINDOW_SIZE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MPI_WINDOW_SIZE
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_MPI_WINDOW_SIZE value	Manual Entry	6	MBEDTLS_MPI_WINDOW_SIZE value
Public Key	• Define	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MPI_MAX_SIZ

Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_MPI_MAX_SIZE	• Undefine		E
Public Key Cryptography (PKC) > MBEDTLS_MPI_MAX_SIZE value	Manual Entry	1024	MBEDTLS_MPI_MAX_SIZE value
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_MD2_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD2_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_MD4_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD4_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_MD5_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD5_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_SHA1_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA1_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_SHA512_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA512_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_MD2_PROCESS_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD2_PROCESS_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_MD4_PROCESS_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD4_PROCESS_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_MD5_PROCESS_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD5_PROCESS_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_PROCESS_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_PROCESS_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_SHA1_PROCESS_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA1_PROCESS_ALT
Hash > Alternate > MBEDTLS_SHA512_PROCESS_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA512_PROCESS_ALT
Hash > MBEDTLS_SHA256_SMALLER	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA256_SMALLER
Hash > MBEDTLS_SHA512_SMALLER	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA512_SMALLER
Hash > MBEDTLS_SHA512_NO_SHA384	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA512_NO_SHA384
Hash >	• Define	Define	MBEDTLS_MD_C

MBEDTLS_MD_C	• Undefine		
Hash > MBEDTLS_MD2_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD2_C
Hash > MBEDTLS_MD4_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_MD4_C
Hash > MBEDTLS_MD5_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_MD5_C
Hash > MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_C
Hash > MBEDTLS_SHA1_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_SHA1_C
Hash > MBEDTLS_SHA256_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_SHA256_C
Hash > MBEDTLS_SHA512_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_SHA512_C
Message Authentication Code (MAC) > Alternate > MBEDTLS_POLY1305_ALT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_POLY1305_ALT
Message Authentication Code (MAC) > MBEDTLS_CMAC_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CMAC_C
Message Authentication Code (MAC) > MBEDTLS_HKDF_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_HKDF_C
Message Authentication Code (MAC) > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_C
Message Authentication Code (MAC) > MBEDTLS_POLY1305_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_POLY1305_C
RNG > MBEDTLS_TEST_NULL_ENTROPY	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_TEST_NULL_ENTROPY
RNG > MBEDTLS_NO_DEFAULT_ENTROPY_SOURCES	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_NO_DEFAULT_ENTROPY_SOURCES
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_FORCE_SHA256	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_FORCE_SHA256
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_NV_SEED	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_NV_SEED

RNG > MBEDTLS_PSA_INJECT_ENTROPY	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PSA_INJECT_ENTROPY
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_C	• Define • Undefine	Define	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_C
RNG > MBEDTLS_HAVEGE_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HAVEGE_C
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_ENTROPY_LEN	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	RNG|MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_ENTROPY_LEN
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_ENTROPY_LEN value	Manual Entry	48	RNG value|MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_ENTROPY_LEN
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	RNG|MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL value	Manual Entry	10000	RNG value|MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_INPUT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_INPUT
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_INPUT value	Manual Entry	256	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_INPUT value
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST value	Manual Entry	1024	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST value
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT value	Manual Entry	384	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT value
RNG > MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_USE_128_BIT_KEY	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_USE_128_BIT_KEY
RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL
RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL value	Manual Entry	10000	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_RESEED_INTERVAL value
RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_INPUT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_INPUT

RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_INPUT value	Manual Entry	256	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_INPUT value
RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST
RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST value	Manual Entry	1024	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_REQUEST value
RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT
RNG > MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT value	Manual Entry	384	MBEDTLS_HMAC_DRBG_MAX_SEED_INPUT value
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_SOURCES	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_SOURCES
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_SOURCES value	Manual Entry	20	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_SOURCES value
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_GATHER	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_GATHER
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_GATHER value	Manual Entry	128	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MAX_GATHER value
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MIN_HARDWARE	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MIN_HARDWARE
RNG > MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MIN_HARDWARE value	Manual Entry	32	MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_MIN_HARDWARE value
Storage > MBEDTLS_FS_IO	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_FS_IO
Storage > MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_KEY_FILE_ID_ENCODES_OWNER	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_KEY_FILE_ID_ENCODES_OWNER
Storage > MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_STORAGE_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_STORAGE_C
Storage > MBEDTLS_PSA_ITS_FILE_C	• Define • Undefine	Undefine	MBEDTLS_PSA_ITS_FILE_C

SHA256 Configuration

To enable hardware acceleration for the SHA256/224 calculation, the macro MBEDTLS_SHA256_ALT and MBEDTLS_SHA256_PROCESS_ALT must be defined in the configuration file. By default SHA256 is enabled. SHA256 can be disabled, but SHA512 then needs to be enabled (software version) because the PSA immplementation uses it for the entropy accumulator. This can be done using the configurator in an e2 studio project.

AES Configuration

To enable hardware acceleration for the AES128/256 operation, the macro MBEDTLS_AES_SETKEY_ENC_ALT, MBEDTLS_AES_SETKEY_DEC_ALT, MBEDTLS_AES_ENCRYPT_ALT and MBEDTLS_AES_DECRYPT_ALT must be defined in the configuration file.By default AES is enabled. AES cannot be disabled because the PSA immplementation required for the CTR_DRBG randon number generator. This can be done using the configurator in an e2 studio project.

ECC Configuration

To enable hardware acceleration for the ECC Key Generation operation, the macro MBEDTLS_ECP_ALT must be defined in the configuration file. For ECDSA, the macros MBEDTLS_ECDSA_SIGN_ALT and MBEDTLS_ECDSA_VERIFY_ALT must be defined. By default ECC, ECDSA and ECDHE are enabled. To disable ECC, undefine MBEDTLS_ECP_C, MBEDTLS_ECDSA_C and MBEDTLS_ECDH_C. This can be done using the configurator in an e2 studio project.

RSA Configuration

To enable hardware acceleration for the RSA2048 operation, the macro MBEDTLS_RSA_ALT must be defined in the configuration file. By default RSA is enabled. To disable RSA, undefine MBEDTLS_RSA_C, MBEDTLS_PK_C, MBEDTLS_PK_PARSE_C, MBEDTLS_PK_WRITE_C. This can be done using the configurator in an e2 studio project.

Wrapped Key Usage

To use the Secure Crypto Engine to generate and use wrapped keys, use PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_VOLATILE_WRAPPED when setting the key lifetime. Wrapped keys can also be generated by using PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_PERSISTENT_WRAPPED to generate persistent keys as described in the next section. Setting the key's lifetime attribute using this value will cause the SCE to use wrapped key mode for all operations related to that key. The user can use the export functionality to save the wrapped keys to user ROM and import it later for usage. This mode requires that Wrapped Key functionality for the algorithm is enabled in the project configuration.

Persistent Key Storage

Persistent key storage can be enabled by defining MBEDTLS_FS_IO, MBEDTLS_PSA_CRYPTO_STORAGE_C, and MBEDTLS_PSA_ITS_FILE_C. The key lifetime must also be specifed as either PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_PERSISTENT or PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_PERSISTENT_WRAPPED. A lower level storage module must be added in the configurator and initialized in the code before generating persistent keys. Persistent storage supports the use of plaintext and vendor keys. Refer to the lower level storage module documentation for information on how it should be initialized. To generate a persistent key the key must be assigned a unique id prior to calling generate using the psa_set_key_id api.

```
if (PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_IS_PERSISTENT(lifetime))
   {
/* Set the id to a positive integer. */
      psa_set_key_id(&attributes, (psa_key_id_t) 5);
   }
```

Platform Configuration

To run the mbedCrypto implementation of the PSA Crypto API on the MCU, the macro MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SETUP_TEARDOWN_ALT must be defined in the configuration file. This enables code that will initialize the SCE. Parameter checking (General|MBEDTLS_CHECK_PARAMS) is enabled by default. To reduce code size, disable parameter checking.

Random Number Configuration

To run the mbedCrypto implementation of the PSA Crypto API on the MCU, the macro MBEDTLS_ENTROPY_HARDWARE_ALT must be defined in the configuration file. This enables using the TRNG as an entropy source. None of the other cryptographic operations (even in software only mode) will work without this feature.

Usage Notes

Hardware Initialization

mbedtls_platform_setup() must be invoked before using the PSA Crypto API to ensure that the SCE peripheral is initialized.

Memory Usage

In general, depending on the mbedCrypto features being used a heap size of 0x1000 to 0x5000 bytes is required. The total allocated heap should be the **sum** of the heap requirements of the individual algorithms:

Algorithm	Required Heap (bytes)
SHA256/224	None
AES	0x200
Hardware ECC	0x400
Software ECC	0x1800
RSA	0x1500

A minimum stack of 0x1000 is required where the module is used. This is either the main stack in a bare metal application or the task stack of the task used for crypto operations.

Limitations

- Only little endian mode is supported.

Examples

Hash Example

This is an example on calculating the SHA256 hash using the PSA Crypto API.

```
const uint8_t NIST_SHA256ShortMsgLen200[] =
{
    0x2e, 0x7e, 0xa8, 0x4d, 0xa4, 0xbc, 0x4d, 0x7c, 0xfb, 0x46, 0x3e, 0x3f, 0x2c,
0x86, 0x47, 0x05,
    0x7a, 0xff, 0xf3, 0xfb, 0xec, 0xec, 0xa1, 0xd2, 00
};
const uint8_t NIST_SHA256ShortMsgLen200_expected[] =
{
    0x76, 0xe3, 0xac, 0xbc, 0x71, 0x88, 0x36, 0xf2, 0xdf, 0x8a, 0xd2, 0xd0, 0xd2,
0xd7, 0x6f, 0x0c,
    0xfa, 0x5f, 0xea, 0x09, 0x86, 0xbe, 0x91, 0x8f, 0x10, 0xbc, 0xee, 0x73, 0x0d,
0xf4, 0x41, 0xb9
};
void psa_crypto_sha256_example (void)
{
    psa_algorithm_t      alg               = PSA_ALG_SHA_256;
    psa_hash_operation_t operation         = {0};
 size_t               expected_hash_len = PSA_HASH_SIZE(alg);
    uint8_t              actual_hash[PSA_HASH_MAX_SIZE];
 size_t               actual_hash_len;
 mbedtls_platform_context ctx = {0};
 /* Setup the platform; initialize the SCE and the TRNG */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != mbedtls_platform_setup(&ctx))
    {
 /* Platform initialization failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_hash_setup(&operation, alg))
    {
 /* Hash setup failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_hash_update(&operation, NIST_SHA256ShortMsgLen200,
sizeof(NIST_SHA256ShortMsgLen200)))
    {
 /* Hash calculation failed */
```

```
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_hash_finish(&operation, &actual_hash[0], sizeof
(actual_hash), &actual_hash_len))
    {
 /* Reading calculated hash failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (0 != memcmp(&actual_hash[0], &NIST_SHA256ShortMsgLen200_expected[0],
actual_hash_len))
    {
 /* Hash compare of calculated value with expected value failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (0 != memcmp(&expected_hash_len, &actual_hash_len, sizeof
(expected_hash_len)))
    {
 /* Hash size compare of calculated value with expected value failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else
    {
 /* SHA256 calculation succeeded */
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* De-initialize the platform. This is currently a placeholder function which does
not do anything. */
 mbedtls_platform_teardown(&ctx);
}
```

AES Example

This is an example on using the PSA Crypto API to generate an AES256 key, encrypting and decrypting multi-block data and using PKCS7 padding.

```
static psa_status_t cipher_operation (psa_cipher_operation_t * operation,
 const uint8_t          * input,
 size_t                   input_size,
 size_t                   part_size,
                                     uint8_t                * output,
 size_t                   output_size,
 size_t                 * output_len)
{
    psa_status_t status;
 size_t       bytes_to_write = 0;
 size_t       bytes_written = 0;
 size_t       len            = 0;
    *output_len = 0;
 while (bytes_written != input_size)
    {
       bytes_to_write = (input_size - bytes_written > part_size ?
                         part_size :
                         input_size - bytes_written);
       status = psa_cipher_update(operation,
                                  input + bytes_written,
                                  bytes_to_write,
                                  output + *output_len,
                                  output_size - *output_len,
                                  &len);
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != status)
      {
 return status;
      }
       bytes_written += bytes_to_write;
       *output_len   += len;
    }
    status = psa_cipher_finish(operation, output + *output_len, output_size -
*output_len, &len);
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != status)
```

```
    {
 return status;
    }
    *output_len += len;
 return status;
}
void psa_crypto_aes256cbcmultipart_example (void)
{
 enum
    {
       block_size = PSA_BLOCK_CIPHER_BLOCK_SIZE(PSA_KEY_TYPE_AES),
       key_bits   = 256,
       input_size = 100,
       part_size = 10,
    };
 mbedtls_platform_context ctx         = {0};
 const psa_algorithm_t    alg         = PSA_ALG_CBC_PKCS7;
    psa_cipher_operation_t   operation_1 = PSA_CIPHER_OPERATION_INIT;
    psa_cipher_operation_t   operation_2 = PSA_CIPHER_OPERATION_INIT;
 size_t iv_len = 0;
    psa_key_handle_t    key_handle       = 0;
 size_t               encrypted_length = 0;
 size_t               decrypted_length = 0;
    uint8_t             iv[block_size]    = {0};
    uint8_t             input[input_size] = {0};
    uint8_t             encrypted_data[input_size + block_size] = {0};
    uint8_t             decrypted_data[input_size + block_size] = {0};
    psa_key_attributes_t attributes = PSA_KEY_ATTRIBUTES_INIT;
 /* Setup the platform; initialize the SCE */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != mbedtls_platform_setup(&ctx))
    {
 /* Platform initialization failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_crypto_init())
    {
 /* PSA Crypto Initialization failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Set key attributes */
    psa_set_key_usage_flags(&attributes, PSA_KEY_USAGE_ENCRYPT |
PSA_KEY_USAGE_DECRYPT);
    psa_set_key_algorithm(&attributes, alg);
    psa_set_key_type(&attributes, PSA_KEY_TYPE_AES);
    psa_set_key_bits(&attributes, key_bits);
    psa_key_lifetime_t lifetime = PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_VOLATILE;
 /* To use wrapped keys instead of plaintext:
  * - Use PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_VOLATILE_WRAPPED or PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_PERSISTENT_WRAPPED.
  * - To use persistent keys:
  * - The file system must be initialized prior to calling the generate/import key
functions.
  * - Refer to the littlefs example to see how to format and mount the filesystem. */
    psa_set_key_lifetime(&attributes, lifetime);
 if (PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_IS_PERSISTENT(lifetime))
    {
 /* Set the id to a positive integer. */
       psa_set_key_id(&attributes, (psa_key_id_t) 5);
    }
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_generate_random(input, sizeof(input)))
    {
 /* Random number generation for input data failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_generate_key(&attributes, &key_handle))
    {
 /* Generating AES 256 key and allocating to key slot failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_cipher_encrypt_setup(&operation_1, key_handle, alg))
    {
 /* Initializing the encryption (with PKCS7 padding) operation handle failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_cipher_generate_iv(&operation_1, iv, sizeof(iv),
&iv_len))
    {
 /* Generating the random IV failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
             cipher_operation(&operation_1, input, input_size, part_size,
encrypted_data, sizeof(encrypted_data),
                              &encrypted_length))
    {
 /* Encryption failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_cipher_abort(&operation_1))
    {
 /* Terminating the encryption operation failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_cipher_decrypt_setup(&operation_2, key_handle, alg))
    {
 /* Initializing the decryption (with PKCS7 padding) operation handle failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_cipher_set_iv(&operation_2, iv, sizeof(iv)))
    {
 /* Setting the IV failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
             cipher_operation(&operation_2, encrypted_data, encrypted_length,
part_size, decrypted_data,
 sizeof(decrypted_data), &decrypted_length))
    {
 /* Decryption failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_cipher_abort(&operation_2))
    {
 /* Terminating the decryption operation failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (0 != memcmp(input, decrypted_data, sizeof(input)))
    {
 /* Comparing the input data with decrypted data failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_destroy_key(key_handle))
    {
 /* Destroying the key handle failed */
       debugger_break();
    }
 else
    {
 /* All the operations succeeded */
    }
 /* Close the SCE */
 mbedtls_platform_teardown(&ctx);
}
```

ECC Example

This is an example on using the PSA Crypto API to generate an ECC-P256R1 key, signing and verifying data after hashing it first using SHA256.

Note

Unlike RSA, ECDSA does not have any padding schemes. Thus the hash argument for the ECC sign operation MUST have a size larger than or equal to the curve size; i.e. for PSA_ECC_CURVE_SECP256R1 the payload size must be at least 256/8 bytes. nist.fips.186-4: " A hash function that provides a lower security strength than the security strength associated with the bit length of 'n' ordinarily should not be used, since this would reduce the security strength of the digital signature process to a level no greater than that provided by the hash function."

```
#define ECC_256_BIT_LENGTH 256
#define ECC_256_EXPORTED_SIZE 500
uint8_t exportedECC_SECP256R1Key[ECC_256_EXPORTED_SIZE];
size_t exportedECC_SECP256R1Keylength = 0;
void psa_ecc256R1_example (void)
{
/* This example generates an ECC-P256R1 keypair, performs signing and verification
operations.
 * It then exports the generated key into ASN1 DER format to a RAM array which can
then be programmed to flash.
 * It then re-imports that key, and performs signing and verification operations. */
 unsigned char            payload[] = "ASYMMETRIC_INPUT_FOR_SIGN......";
 unsigned char            signature1[PSA_SIGNATURE_MAX_SIZE] = {0};
 unsigned char            signature2[PSA_SIGNATURE_MAX_SIZE] = {0};
 size_t                   signature_length1 = 0;
 size_t                   signature_length2 = 0;
    psa_key_attributes_t    attributes       = PSA_KEY_ATTRIBUTES_INIT;
    psa_key_attributes_t    read_attributes   = PSA_KEY_ATTRIBUTES_INIT;
 mbedtls_platform_context ctx                = {0};
    psa_key_handle_t         ecc_key_handle    = {0};
    psa_hash_operation_t hash_operation = {0};
    uint8_t             payload_hash[PSA_HASH_MAX_SIZE];
 size_t               payload_hash_len;
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != mbedtls_platform_setup(&ctx))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_crypto_init())
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Set key attributes */
    psa_set_key_usage_flags(&attributes, PSA_KEY_USAGE_SIGN_HASH |
PSA_KEY_USAGE_VERIFY_HASH | PSA_KEY_USAGE_EXPORT);
    psa_set_key_algorithm(&attributes, PSA_ALG_ECDSA(PSA_ALG_SHA_256));
    psa_set_key_type(&attributes, PSA_KEY_TYPE_ECC_KEY_PAIR(PSA_ECC_CURVE_SECP_R1));
    psa_set_key_bits(&attributes, ECC_256_BIT_LENGTH);
 /* To use wrapped keys instead of plaintext:
  * - Use PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_VOLATILE_WRAPPED or PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_PERSISTENT_WRAPPED.
  * - To use persistent keys:
  * - The file system must be initialized prior to calling the generate/import key
functions.
  * - Refer to the littlefs example to see how to format and mount the filesystem. */
    psa_set_key_lifetime(&attributes, PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_VOLATILE);
 /* Generate ECC P256R1 Key pair */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_generate_key(&attributes, &ecc_key_handle))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Test the key information */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_get_key_attributes(ecc_key_handle, &read_attributes))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Calculate the hash of the message */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_hash_setup(&hash_operation, PSA_ALG_SHA_256))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_hash_update(&hash_operation, payload, sizeof(payload)))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_hash_finish(&hash_operation, &payload_hash[0], sizeof(payload_hash),
&payload_hash_len))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Sign message using the private key
  * NOTE: The hash argument (payload_hash here) MUST have a size equal to the curve
size;
  * i.e. for SECP256R1 the payload size must be 256/8 bytes.
  * Similarly for SECP384R1 the payload size must be 384/8 bytes.
  * nist.fips.186-4: " A hash function that provides a lower security strength than
  * the security strength associated with the bit length of 'n' ordinarily should not
be used, since this
  * would reduce the security strength of the digital signature process to a level no
greater than that
  * provided by the hash function." */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_sign_hash(ecc_key_handle, PSA_ALG_ECDSA(PSA_ALG_SHA_256), payload_hash,
payload_hash_len, signature1,
 sizeof(signature1), &signature_length1))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Verify the signature1 using the public key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_verify_hash(ecc_key_handle, PSA_ALG_ECDSA(PSA_ALG_SHA_256), payload_hash,
payload_hash_len, signature1,
                        signature_length1))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Export the key. The exported key can then be save to flash for later usage. */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_export_key(ecc_key_handle, exportedECC_SECP256R1Key, sizeof
(exportedECC_SECP256R1Key),
                      &exportedECC_SECP256R1Keylength))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Destroy the key and handle */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_destroy_key(ecc_key_handle))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Import the previously exported key pair */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_import_key(&attributes, exportedECC_SECP256R1Key,
exportedECC_SECP256R1Keylength, &ecc_key_handle))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Sign message using the private key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_sign_hash(ecc_key_handle, PSA_ALG_ECDSA(PSA_ALG_SHA_256), payload_hash,
payload_hash_len, signature2,
 sizeof(signature2), &signature_length2))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Verify signature2 using the public key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_verify_hash(ecc_key_handle, PSA_ALG_ECDSA(PSA_ALG_SHA_256), payload_hash,
payload_hash_len, signature2,
                        signature_length2))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Signatures cannot be compared since ECC signatures vary for the same data unless
```

```
Deterministic ECC is used which is not supported by the HW.
  * Only the verification operation can be used to validate signatures. */
}
```

RSA Example

This is an example on using the PSA Crypto API to generate an RSA2048 key, encrypting and decrypting multi-block data and using PKCS7 padding.

```
#define RSA_2048_BIT_LENGTH 2048
#define RSA_2048_EXPORTED_SIZE 1210
/* The RSA 2048 key pair export in der format is roughly as follows
 * RSA private keys:
 * RSAPrivateKey ::= SEQUENCE { --------------------------------------- 1 + 3
 * version Version, --------------------------------------- 1 + 1 + 1
 * modulus INTEGER, ---------------- n ------------------- 1 + 3 + 256 + 1
 * publicExponent INTEGER, ---------------- e ------------------- 1 + 4
 * privateExponent INTEGER, ---------------- d ------------------- 1 + 3 + 256 (276
for Wrapped)
 * prime1 INTEGER, ---------------- p ------------------- 1 + 3 + (256 / 2)
 * prime2 INTEGER, ---------------- q ------------------- 1 + 3 + (256 / 2)
 * exponent1 INTEGER, ---------------- d mod (p-1) --------- 1 + 2 + (256 / 2) (4 for
Wrapped)
 * exponent2 INTEGER, ---------------- d mod (q-1) --------- 1 + 2 + (256 / 2) (4 for
Wrapped)
 * coefficient INTEGER, ---------------- (inverse of q) mod p - 1 + 2 + (256 / 2) (4
for Wrapped)
 * otherPrimeInfos OtherPrimeInfos OPTIONAL ------------------------ 0 (not
supported)
 * }
 */
uint8_t exportedRSA2048Key[RSA_2048_EXPORTED_SIZE];
size_t exportedRSA2048Keylength = 0;
void psa_rsa2048_example (void)
{
```

```
/* This example generates an RSA2048 keypair, performs signing and verification
operations.
 * It then exports the generated key into ASN1 DER format to a RAM array which can
then be programmed to flash.
 * It then re-imports that key, and performs signing and verification operations. */
 mbedtls_platform_context ctx       = {0};
    psa_key_handle_t         key_handle = {0};
 unsigned char            payload[] = "ASYMMETRIC_INPUT_FOR_SIGN";
 unsigned char            signature1[PSA_SIGNATURE_MAX_SIZE] = {0};
 unsigned char            signature2[PSA_SIGNATURE_MAX_SIZE] = {0};
 size_t               signature_length1 = 0;
 size_t               signature_length2 = 0;
    psa_key_attributes_t attributes       = PSA_KEY_ATTRIBUTES_INIT;
    psa_key_attributes_t read_attributes   = PSA_KEY_ATTRIBUTES_INIT;
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != mbedtls_platform_setup(&ctx))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_crypto_init())
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Set key attributes */
    psa_set_key_usage_flags(&attributes, PSA_KEY_USAGE_SIGN_HASH |
PSA_KEY_USAGE_VERIFY_HASH | PSA_KEY_USAGE_EXPORT);
    psa_set_key_algorithm(&attributes, PSA_ALG_RSA_PKCS1V15_SIGN_RAW);
    psa_set_key_type(&attributes, PSA_KEY_TYPE_RSA_KEY_PAIR);
    psa_set_key_bits(&attributes, RSA_2048_BIT_LENGTH);
 /* To use wrapped keys instead of plaintext:
  * - Use PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_VOLATILE_WRAPPED or PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_PERSISTENT_WRAPPED.
  * - To use persistent keys:
  * - The file system must be initialized prior to calling the generate/import key
functions.
  * - Refer to the littlefs example to see how to format and mount the filesystem. */
```

```
    psa_set_key_lifetime(&attributes, PSA_KEY_LIFETIME_VOLATILE);
 /* Generate RSA 2048 Key pair */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_generate_key(&attributes, &key_handle))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Test the key information */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_get_key_attributes(key_handle, &read_attributes))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Sign message using the private key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_sign_hash(key_handle, PSA_ALG_RSA_PKCS1V15_SIGN_RAW, payload, sizeof
(payload), signature1,
 sizeof(signature1), &signature_length1))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Verify the signature1 using the public key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_verify_hash(key_handle, PSA_ALG_RSA_PKCS1V15_SIGN_RAW, payload,
sizeof(payload), signature1,
                        signature_length1))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Export the key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_export_key(key_handle, exportedRSA2048Key, sizeof(exportedRSA2048Key),
&exportedRSA2048Keylength))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Destroy the key and handle */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_destroy_key(key_handle))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Import the previously exported key pair */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS != psa_import_key(&attributes, exportedRSA2048Key,
exportedRSA2048Keylength, &key_handle))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Sign message using the private key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_sign_hash(key_handle, PSA_ALG_RSA_PKCS1V15_SIGN_RAW, payload, sizeof
(payload), signature2,
 sizeof(signature2), &signature_length2))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Verify signature2 using the public key */
 if (PSA_SUCCESS !=
       psa_verify_hash(key_handle, PSA_ALG_RSA_PKCS1V15_SIGN_RAW, payload,
sizeof(payload), signature2,
                        signature_length2))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
 /* Compare signatures to verify that the same signature was generated */
 if (0 != memcmp(signature2, signature1, signature_length2))
    {
       debugger_break();
    }
    mbedtls_psa_crypto_free();
 mbedtls_platform_teardown(&ctx);
```

```
}
```

Function Documentation

◆ RM_PSA_CRYPTO_TRNG_Read()

fsp_err_t RM_PSA_CRYPTO_TRNG_Read (uint8_t *const *p_rngbuf*, uint32_t *num_req_bytes*, uint32_t * *p_num_gen_bytes*)

Reads requested length of random data from the TRNG. Generate nbytes of random bytes and store them in p_rngbuf buffer.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Random number generation successful
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	NULL input parameter(s).
FSP_ERR_CRYPTO_UNKNOWN	An unknown error occurred.

Returns

See Common Error Codes or functions called by this function for other possible return codes. This function calls:

- s_generate_16byte_random_data

◆ mbedtls_platform_setup()

int mbedtls_platform_setup (mbedtls_platform_context * *ctx*)

This function initializes the SCE and the TRNG. It **must** be invoked before the crypto library can be used. This implementation is used if MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SETUP_TEARDOWN_ALT is defined.

Example:

```
mbedtls_platform_context ctx = {0};
/* Setup the platform; initialize the SCE and the TRNG */
if (PSA_SUCCESS != mbedtls_platform_setup(&ctx))
```

Return values

0	Initialization was successful.
MBEDTLS_ERR_PLATFORM_HW_ACCEL_FAILED	SCE Initialization error.

◆ mbedtls_platform_teardown()

void mbedtls_platform_teardown (mbedtls_platform_context * *ctx*)

This implementation is used if MBEDTLS_PLATFORM_SETUP_TEARDOWN_ALT is defined. It is intended to de-initialize any items that were initialized in the mbedtls_platform_setup() function, but currently is only a placeholder function.

Example:

```
 /* De-initialize the platform. This is currently a placeholder function which does
not do anything. */
 mbedtls_platform_teardown(&ctx);
```

Return values

N/A	

5.2.59 Capacitive Touch Middleware (rm_touch)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	RM_TOUCH_Open (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, touch_cfg_t const *const p_cfg) Opens and configures the TOUCH Middle module. Implements touch_api_t::open. More...
fsp_err_t	RM_TOUCH_ScanStart (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) This function should be called each time a periodic timer expires. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are used to tuning for the sensors. Before starting the next scan, first get the data with RM_TOUCH_DataGet(). If a different control block scan should be run, check the scan is complete before executing. Implements touch_api_t::scanStart. More...
fsp_err_t	RM_TOUCH_DataGet (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint64_t *p_button_status, uint16_t *p_slider_position, uint16_t *p_wheel_position) Gets the 64-bit mask indicating which buttons are pressed. Also, this function gets the current position of where slider or wheel is being pressed. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are

	used to tuning for the sensors. Implements touch_api_t::dataGet. More...
fsp_err_t	RM_TOUCH_Close (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl) Disables specified TOUCH control block. Implements touch_api_t::close. More...
fsp_err_t	RM_TOUCH_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Detailed Description

This module supports the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (CTSU). It implements the Touch Middleware Interface.

Overview

The Touch Middleware uses the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (r_ctsu) API and provides application-level APIs for scanning touch buttons, sliders, and wheels.

Configure this module with the QE for Capacitive Touch tool.

Features

- Supports touch buttons (Self and Mutual), sliders, and wheels
- Can retrieve the status of up to 64 buttons at once
- Software and external triggering
- Callback on scan end
- Collects and calculates usable scan results:
  - Slider position from 0 to 100 (percent)
  - Wheel position from 0 to 359 (degrees)
- Optional (build time) support for real-time monitoring functionality through the QE tool over UART

Configuration

Note

> ***This module is configured via the QE for Capacitive Touch tool. For information on how to use the QE tool, once the tool is installed click Help -> Help Contents in e2 studio and search for "QE".***
> *Multiple configurations can be defined within a single project allowing for different scan procedures or button layouts.*

Build Time Configurations for rm_touch

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/rm_touch_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description

Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled • Disabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is included in the build.
Support for QE monitoring using UART	• Enabled • Disabled	Disabled	If selected enable supporting for using UART at QE monitoring .

Configurations for Middleware > CapTouch > TOUCH Driver on rm_touch

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > CapTouch > TOUCH Driver on rm_touch:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_touch0	Module name.

Interrupt Configuration

Refer to the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (r_ctsu) section for details.

Clock Configuration

Refer to the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (r_ctsu) section for details.

Pin Configuration

Refer to the Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (r_ctsu) section for details.

Usage Notes

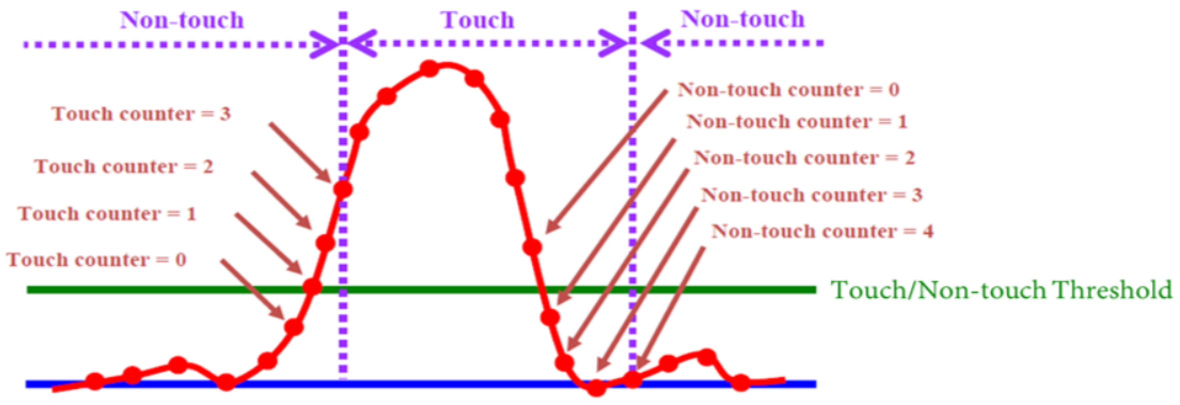
Sliders and Wheels

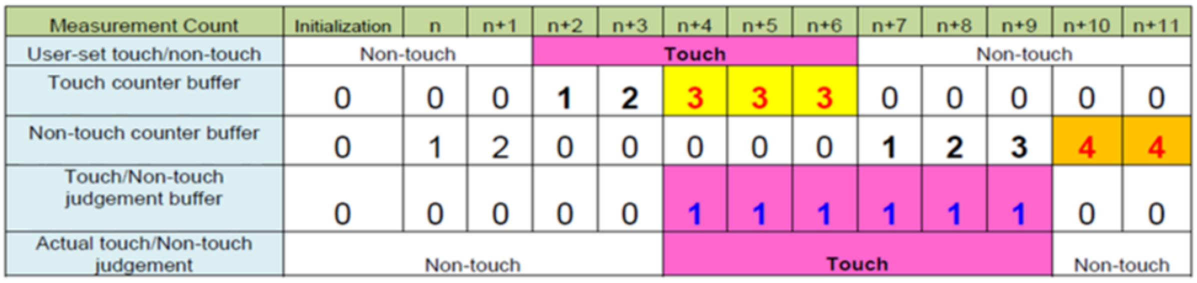
Sliders and wheels are subject so some limitations:

	Slider	Wheel
Electrode type	Self capacitance only	Self capacitance only
Number of electrodes	4+	3-5
Touch position output range	0-100	0-359
Default value (no touch)	0xFFFF	0xFFFF

Touch Judgement

Touch data is judged as touched or not-touched based on the threshold and hysteresis values determined during the QE tool tuning process. Refer to the QE for Capacitive Touch tool documentation in e2 studio Help for details on how these values are set.





Measurement Count	Initialization	n	n+1	n+2	n+3	n+4	n+5	n+6	n+7	n+8	n+9	n+10	n+11
User-set touch/non-touch	Non-touch			Touch					Non-touch				
Touch counter buffer	0	0	0	1	2	3	3	3	0	0	0	0	0
Non-touch counter buffer	0	1	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	2	3	4	4
Touch/Non-touch judgement buffer	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0
Actual touch/Non-touch judgement	Non-touch					Touch						Non-touch	

Figure 134: Touch/Non-touch judgement Image

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of the TOUCH in an application.

```
void touch_basic_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
    err = RM_TOUCH_Open(&g_touch_ctrl, &g_touch_cfg);
 /* Handle any errors. This function should be defined by the user. */
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
 RM_TOUCH_ScanStart(&g_touch_ctrl);
 while (0 == g_flag)
      {
 /* Wait scan end callback */
       }
       g_flag = 0;
      err = RM_TOUCH_DataGet(&g_touch_ctrl, &button, slider, wheel);
 if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
      {
 /* Application specific data processing. */
       }
    }
}
```

Multi Mode Example

This is a optional exmaple of using both Self-capacitance and Mutual-capacitance. Refer to the Multi Mode Example in CTSU usage notes.

```
void touch_optional_example (void)
{
 fsp_err_t err = FSP_SUCCESS;
    err = RM_TOUCH_Open(&g_touch_ctrl, &g_touch_cfg);
    handle_error(err);
    err = RM_TOUCH_Open(&g_touch_ctrl_mutual, &g_touch_cfg_mutual);
    handle_error(err);
 while (true)
    {
 RM_TOUCH_ScanStart(&g_touch_ctrl);
 while (0 == g_flag)
      {
 /* Wait scan end callback */
       }
       g_flag = 0;
 RM_TOUCH_ScanStart(&g_touch_ctrl_mutual);
 while (0 == g_flag)
      {
 /* Wait scan end callback */
       }
       g_flag = 0;
       err = RM_TOUCH_DataGet(&g_touch_ctrl, &button, slider, wheel);
 if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
      {
 /* Application specific data processing. */
       }
       err = RM_TOUCH_DataGet(&g_touch_ctrl_mutual, &button, slider, wheel);
 if (FSP_SUCCESS == err)
      {
 /* Application specific data processing. */
       }
    }
}
```

Data Structures

struct	touch_button_info_t
struct	touch_slider_info_t
struct	touch_wheel_info_t
struct	touch_instance_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ touch_button_info_t

struct touch_button_info_t

Information of button

Data Fields

uint64_t	status	Touch result bitmap.
uint16_t *	p_threshold	Pointer to Threshold value array. g_touch_button_threshold[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_hysteresis	Pointer to Hysteresis value array. g_touch_button_hysteresis[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_reference	Pointer to Reference value array. g_touch_button_reference[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_on_count	Continuous touch counter.

		g_touch_button_on_count[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_off_count	Continuous non-touch counter. g_touch_button_off_count[] is set by Open API.
uint32_t *	p_drift_buf	Drift reference value. g_touch_button_drift_buf[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_drift_count	Drift counter. g_touch_button_drift_count[] is set by Open API.
uint8_t	on_freq	Copy from config by Open API.
uint8_t	off_freq	Copy from config by Open API.
uint16_t	drift_freq	Copy from config by Open API.
uint16_t	cancel_freq	Copy from config by Open API.

◆ touch_slider_info_t

struct touch_slider_info_t

Information of slider

Data Fields		
uint16_t *	p_position	Calculated Position data. g_touch_slider_position[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_threshold	Copy from config by Open API. g_touch_slider_threshold[] is set by Open API.

◆ touch_wheel_info_t

struct touch_wheel_info_t

Information of wheel

Data Fields		
uint16_t *	p_position	Calculated Position data. g_touch_wheel_position[] is set by Open API.
uint16_t *	p_threshold	Copy from config by Open API. g_touch_wheel_threshold[] is set by Open API.

◆ touch_instance_ctrl_t

struct touch_instance_ctrl_t

TOUCH private control block. DO NOT MODIFY. Initialization occurs when RM_TOUCH_Open() is called.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	open	Whether or not driver is open.
touch_button_info_t	binfo	Information of button.
touch_slider_info_t	sinfo	Information of slider.
touch_wheel_info_t	winfo	Information of wheel.
touch_cfg_t const *	p_touch_cfg	Pointer to initial configurations.
ctsu_instance_t const *	p_ctsu_instance	Pointer to CTSU instance.

Function Documentation

◆ RM_TOUCH_Open()

fsp_err_t RM_TOUCH_Open (touch_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, touch_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens and configures the TOUCH Middle module. Implements touch_api_t::open.

Example:

```
    err = RM_TOUCH_Open(&g_touch_ctrl, &g_touch_cfg);
```

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	TOUCH successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer, or one or more configuration options is invalid.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open. This module can only be opened once.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Configuration parameter error.

◆ RM_TOUCH_ScanStart()

fsp_err_t RM_TOUCH_ScanStart (touch_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

This function should be called each time a periodic timer expires. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are used to tuning for the sensors. Before starting the next scan, first get the data with RM_TOUCH_DataGet(). If a different control block scan should be run, check the scan is complete before executing. Implements touch_api_t::scanStart.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully started.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_SCANNING	Scanning this instance or other.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_NOT_GET_DATA	The previous data does not been getted by DataGet.

◆ RM_TOUCH_DataGet()

fsp_err_t RM_TOUCH_DataGet (touch_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*, uint64_t * *p_button_status*, uint16_t * *p_slider_position*, uint16_t * *p_wheel_position*)

Gets the 64-bit mask indicating which buttons are pressed. Also, this function gets the current position of where slider or wheel is being pressed. If initial offset tuning is enabled, The first several calls are used to tuning for the sensors. Implements touch_api_t::dataGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully data decoded.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_SCANNING	Scanning this instance.
FSP_ERR_CTSU_INCOMPLETE_TUNING	Incomplete initial offset tuning.

◆ RM_TOUCH_Close()

fsp_err_t RM_TOUCH_Close (touch_ctrl_t *const *p_ctrl*)

Disables specified TOUCH control block. Implements touch_api_t::close.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Successfully closed.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ RM_TOUCH_VersionGet()

fsp_err_t RM_TOUCH_VersionGet (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Return TOUCH Middle module version. Implements touch_api_t::versionGet.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Version information successfully read.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Null pointer passed as a parameter

5.2.60 AWS Device Provisioning

Modules

AWS Device Provisioning example software.

Overview

Terminology

The terminology defined below will be used in the following sections.

Term	Description
Service Provider	Entity that provide the cloud infrastructure and associated services e.g. AWS/Azure etc.
Device Manufacturer	Entity that provides the MCU. e.g. Renesas.
OEM	Entity that uses the MCU to create a product.

Customer	End user of OEM product.

Device ID

For systems that intend to use Public Key Certificate (PKC), the Device ID is in the form of a key pair (RSA or ECC). A PKC comprises of a **public key**, metadata, and finally a signature over all that. This signature is generated by the entity that issues the certificate and is known as a CA (Certificate Authority). The most common format for a public certificate is the X.509 format which is typically PEM (base 64) encoded such that the certificate is human-readable. It can also be DER encoded which is binary encoding and thus not human readable. The **public key** portion of the Device ID is used for the Device Certificate.

Provisioning

Device Provisioning refers to the process by which a service provider links a certificate to a Device ID and thus a device . Depending on the provisioning model, an existing certificate from the device may be used or a new one will be issued at this stage. Provisioning (also referred to as Registration) occurs with respect to a particular service provider, eg AWS or Azure etc. It is necessary that the certificate is issued by the service provider or a CA known to those providers. When a device is provisioned with AWS for example, the AWS IoT service associates the Device ID (and thus the device) with a specific certificate. The certificate will be programmed into the device and for all future transactions with AWS, the certificate will be used as the means of identifying the device. The public and private key are also stored on the MCU.

Provisioning Models

Provisioning services vary between service providers. There are essentially three general provisioning models.

1. Provisioning happens on the production line. This requires the provisioning Infrastructure to be present on the production line. This is the most secure model, but is expensive.
2. Devices are programmed with a shared credential that is linked into the code at build time and the provisioning occurs when a customer uses the device for the first time. The shared credential and a unique device serial number are used to uniquely identify the device during the provisioning process. So long as the product only has the shared credential, it will only operate with limited (as defined by certificate policy) functionality .Once the provisioning is done, then the device will be fully functional. This is the most common use case for consumer products where no sensitive information is being transmitted. AWS provides an example of this model.
3. Devices have no identity programmed in the factory; provisioning occurs through some other device like a smartphone which is already trusted by the service provider.

In all these cases, the Device Identity

1. Is unique to the device
2. Must have restricted access within the device
3. Can be used to issue more than one certificate and the certificates themselves have to be updatable in the field.

AWS uses the PKCS11 API to erase, store and retrieve certificates. These PKCS11 functions (Write, Read and Erase) are separated out into a Physical Abstraction Layer (PAL) which the OEM/Device Manufacturer is expected to implement for the type of memory that they intend to use. The internal rm_aws_pkcs11_pal module implements these requirements on RA MCU data flash.

AWS Provisioning Example

AWS provides an **example** implementation to support device provisioning. This implementation uses the PKCS11 API to store device credentials into the PKCS11 defined memory. The implementation (aws_dev_mode_key_provisioning.c) exposes two functions:

1. vDevModeKeyProvisioning()
2. vAlternateKeyProvisioning()

Both of these functions require that the device credentials be provided in PEM format. Using either of these example functions as is in production is not recommended; but vAlternateKeyProvisioning() provides more flexibility because of the ability to provide credentials as arguments.

Credentials can be created as follows:

- Create your own CA and use that to generate the device certificate. This CA will have to be registered with the service provider with which the product will be used, Eg. Register your CA with AWS.
- Use AWS to generate the device certificate.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of provisioning a device using the AWS demo implementation.

```
#define keyCLIENT_CERTIFICATE_PEM \
  "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\n" \
  "MIIDETCCAfkCFHwd2yn8zn5qB2ChYUT9Mvbi9Xp1MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMEUx\n" \
  "CzAJBgNVBAYTAkFVMRMwEQYDVQQIDApTb21lLVN0YXRlMSEwHwYDVQQKDBhJbnRl\n" \
  "cm5ldCBXaWRnaXRzIFB0eSBMdGQwHhcNMTkwOTExMjEyMjU0WhcNMjAwOTEwMjEy\n" \
  "MjU0WjBFMQswCQYDVQQGEwJBVTETMBEGA1UECAwKU29tZS1TdGF0ZTEhMB8GA1UE\n" \
  "CgwYSW50ZXJuZXQgV2lkZ2l0cyBQdHkgTHRkMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOC\n" \
  "AQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAo8oThJXSMDo41oL7HTpC4TX8NalBvnkFw30Av67dl/oZDjVA\n" \
  "iXPnZkhVppLnj++0/Oed0M7UwNUO2nurQt6yTYrvW7E8ZPjAlC7ueJcGYZhOaVv2\n" \
  "bhSmigjFQru2lw5odSuYy5+22CCgxft58nrRCo5Bk+GwWgZmcrxe/BzutRHQ7X4x\n" \
  "dYJhyhBOi2R1Kt8XsbuWilfgfkVhhkVklFeKqiypdQM6cnPWo/G4DyW34jOXzzEM\n" \
  "FLWvQOQLCKUZOgjJBnFdbx8oOOwMkYCChbV7gqPE6cw0Zy26CvlLQiINyonLPbNT\n" \
  "c64sS/ZBGPZFOPJmb4tG2nipYgZ1hO/r++jCbwIDAQABMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUA\n" \
  "A4IBAQCdqq59ubdRY9EiV3bleKXeqG7+8HgBHdm0X9dgq10nD37p00YLyuZLE9NM\n" \
  "066G/VcflGrx/Nzw+/UuI7/UuBbBS/3ppHRnsZqBIl8nnr/ULrFQy8z3vKtL1q3C\n" \
  "DxabjPONlPO2keJeTTA71N/RCEMwJoa8i0XKXGdu/hQo6x4n+Gq73fEiGCl99xsc\n" \
  "4tIO4yPS4lv+uXBzEUzoEy0CLIkiDesnT5lLeCyPmUNoU89HU95IusZT7kygCHHd\n" \
  "72am1ic3X8PKc268KT3ilr3VMhK67C+iIIkfrM5AiU+oOIRrIHSC/p0RigJg3rXA\n" \
  "GBIRHvt+OYF9fDeG7U4QDJNCfGW+\n" \
  "-----END CERTIFICATE-----"
#define keyCLIENT_PRIVATE_KEY_PEM \
  "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n" \
  "MIIEowIBAAKCAQEAo8oThJXSMDo41oL7HTpC4TX8NalBvnkFw30Av67dl/oZDjVA\n" \
  "iXPnZkhVppLnj++0/Oed0M7UwNUO2nurQt6yTYrvW7E8ZPjAlC7ueJcGYZhOaVv2\n" \
  "bhSmigjFQru2lw5odSuYy5+22CCgxft58nrRCo5Bk+GwWgZmcrxe/BzutRHQ7X4x\n" \
  "dYJhyhBOi2R1Kt8XsbuWilfgfkVhhkVklFeKqiypdQM6cnPWo/G4DyW34jOXzzEM\n" \
  "FLWvQOQLCKUZOgjJBnFdbx8oOOwMkYCChbV7gqPE6cw0Zy26CvlLQiINyonLPbNT\n" \
  "c64sS/ZBGPZFOPJmb4tG2nipYgZ1hO/r++jCbwIDAQABAoIBAQCGR2hC/ZVJhqIM\n" \
  "c2uuJZKpElpIIBBPOObZwwS3IYR4UUjzVgMn7UbbmxflLXD8lzfZU4YVp0vTH5lC\n" \
  "07qvYuXpHqtnj+GEok837VYCtUY9AuHeDM/2paV3awNV15E1PFG1Jd3pqnH7tJw6\n" \
  "VBZBDiGNNt1agN/UnoSlMfvpU0r8VGPXCBNxe3JY5QyBJPI1wF4LcxRI+eYmr7Ja\n" \
  "/cjn97DZotgz4B7gUNu8XIEkUOTwPabZINY1zcLWiXTMA+8qTniPVk653h14Xqt4\n" \
  "4o4D4YCTpwJcmxSV1m21/6+uyuXr9SIKAE+Ys2cYLA46x+rwLaW5fUoQ5hHa0Ytb\n" \
  "RYJ4SrtBAoGBANWtwlE69N0hq5xDPckSbNGubIeG8P4mBhGkJxIqYoqugGLMDiGX\n" \
  "4bltrjr2TPWaxTo3pPavLJiBMIsENA5KU+c/r0jLkxgEp9MIVJrtNgkCiDQqogBG\n" \
  "j4IJL2iQwXoLCqk2tx/dh9Mww+7SETE7EPNrv4UrYaGN5AEvpf5W+NHPAoGBAMQ6\n" \
  "wVa0Mx1PlA4enY2rfE3WXP8bzjleSOwR75JXqG2WbPC0/cszwbyPWOEqRpBZfvD/\n" \
  "QFkKx06xp1C09XwiQanr2gDucYXHeEKg/9iuJV1UkMQp95ojlhtSXdRZV7/l4pmN\n" \
  "fpB2vcAptX/4gY4tDrWMO08JNnRjE7duC+rmmk1hAoGAS4L0QLCNB/h2JOq+Uuhn\n" \
  "/FGfmOVfFPFrA6D3DbxcxpWUWVWzSLvb0SOphryzxbfEKyau7V5KbDp7ZSU/IC20\n" \
  "KOygjSEkAkDi7fjrrTRW/Cgg6g6G4YIOBO4qCtHdDbwJMHNdk6096qw5EZS67qLp\n" \
  "Apz5OZ5zChySjri/+HnTxJECgYBysGSP6IJ3fytplTtAshnU5JU2BWpi3ViBoXoE\n" \
  "bndilajWhvJO8dEqBB5OfAcCF0y6TnWtlT8oH21LHnjcNKlsRw0Dvllbd1oylybx\n" \
  "3da41dRG0sCEtoflMB7nHdDLt/DZDnoKtVvyFG6gfP47utn+Ahgn+Zp6K+46J3eP\n" \
  "s3g8AQKBgE/PJiaF8pbBXaZOuwRRA9GOMSbDIF6+jBYTYp4L9wk4+LZArKtyI+4k\n" \
  "Md2DUvHwMC+ddOtKqjYnLm+V5cSbvu7aPvBZtwxghzTUDcf7EvnA3V/bQBh3R0z7\n" \
  "pVsxTyGRmBSeLdbUWACUbX9LXdpudarPAJ59daWmP3mBEVmWdzUw\n" \
  "-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----"
void device_provisioning_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize the crypto hardware acceleration. */
 mbedtls_platform_setup(NULL);
    ProvisioningParams_t params;
 /* Provision device with provided credentials. The provided credentials are written
to data flash.
  * In production, the credentials can be provided over a comms channel instead of
being linked into the image.
  * The same example provisioning function, vAlternateKeyProvisioning, can be used in
that case. */
    params.pucClientPrivateKey       = (uint8_t *) keyCLIENT_PRIVATE_KEY_PEM;
    params.pucClientCertificate      = (uint8_t *) keyCLIENT_CERTIFICATE_PEM;
    params.ulClientPrivateKeyLength = 1 + strlen((const char *)
params.pucClientPrivateKey);
    params.ulClientCertificateLength = 1 + strlen((const char *)
params.pucClientCertificate);
    params.pucJITPCertificate       = NULL;
    params.ulJITPCertificateLength   = 0;
    vAlternateKeyProvisioning(&params);
}
```

Limitations

The provisioning code is an example provided by AWS. It must be modified to meet product requirements.

5.2.61 AWS MQTT

Modules

This module provides the AWS MQTT integration documentation.

Overview

The AWS MQTT library can connect to either AWS or a third party MQTT broker such as Mosquitto. The documentation for the library can be found on the AWS IoT Device SDK C: MQTT website.

Features

- MQTT connections over TLS to an AWS IoT Endpoint or Mosquitto server
- Unsecure MQTT connections to Mosquitto servers. This is not recommended for production and should only be done to a local server for testiing.

Configuration

Memory Usage

The AWS MQTT library relies heavily on dynamic memory allocation for thread/task creation as well as other uses. To accomodate this it is recommended to increase the heap to 64k or tweak the thread stack configuration values. Noteable values are:

AWS IoT Common

- IoT Thread Default Stack Size
- IoT Network Receive Task Stack Size

FreeRTOS Thread

- General|Minimal Stack Size

FreeRTOS Plus TCP

- Stack size in words (not bytes)

Usage Notes

The AWS MQTT library utilizes a system taskpool to queue up messages. This system task pool must be created before calling into the MQTT library. iot_init.c has been provided for easy initialization of this taskpool via IotSdk_Init().

The AWS MQTT Demo has been provided to easily demonstrate MQTT functionality. An example of initializiing the system taskpool and running the MQTT demo has been provided below.

Limitations

- aws_clientcredential.h and aws_clientcredential_keys.h need to be added manually.
- The IoT Thread must have a higher priorty than the Network Receive Thread.
- MbedTLS must be initialized and key provisioning must be done before starting a secure connection. Refer to AWS Secure Sockets.

Examples

Non-secure connection to a Mosquitto server

```
/* Default IP address configuration. Used in ipconfigUSE_DHCP is set to 0, or
 * ipconfigUSE_DHCP is set to 1 but a DNS server cannot be contacted. */
#define configIP_ADDR0 192
#define configIP_ADDR1 168
#define configIP_ADDR2 0
#define configIP_ADDR3 56
```

```
/* Default gateway IP address configuration. Used in ipconfigUSE_DHCP is set to
 * 0, or ipconfigUSE_DHCP is set to 1 but a DNS server cannot be contacted. */
#define configGATEWAY_ADDR0 192
#define configGATEWAY_ADDR1 168
#define configGATEWAY_ADDR2 0
#define configGATEWAY_ADDR3 1
/* Default DNS server configuration. OpenDNS addresses are 208.67.222.222 and
 * 208.67.220.220. Used in ipconfigUSE_DHCP is set to 0, or ipconfigUSE_DHCP is
 * set to 1 but a DNS server cannot be contacted.*/
#define configDNS_SERVER_ADDR0 208
#define configDNS_SERVER_ADDR1 67
#define configDNS_SERVER_ADDR2 222
#define configDNS_SERVER_ADDR3 222
/* Default netmask configuration. Used in ipconfigUSE_DHCP is set to 0, or
 * ipconfigUSE_DHCP is set to 1 but a DNS server cannot be contacted. */
#define configNET_MASK0 255
#define configNET_MASK1 255
#define configNET_MASK2 255
#define configNET_MASK3 0
/* Define the network addressing. These parameters will be used if either
 * ipconfigUDE_DHCP is 0 or if ipconfigUSE_DHCP is 1 but DHCP auto configuration
 * failed. */
const uint8_t ucIPAddress[4] =
{
    configIP_ADDR0,
    configIP_ADDR1,
    configIP_ADDR2,
    configIP_ADDR3
};
const uint8_t ucNetMask[4] =
{
    configNET_MASK0,
    configNET_MASK1,
    configNET_MASK2,
    configNET_MASK3
};
const uint8_t ucGatewayAddress[4] =
{
    configGATEWAY_ADDR0,
    configGATEWAY_ADDR1,
    configGATEWAY_ADDR2,
    configGATEWAY_ADDR3
};
const uint8_t ucDNSServerAddress[4] =
{
    configDNS_SERVER_ADDR0,
    configDNS_SERVER_ADDR1,
    configDNS_SERVER_ADDR2,
    configDNS_SERVER_ADDR3
};
/* Use the mac address defined in the lower layer. */
extern uint8_t g_ether0_mac_address[6];
void mqtt_non_secure_example ()
{
 bool connect_to_aws = false;
 const IotNetworkServerInfo_t serverInfo =
    {
       .pHostName = "192.168.0.100",
       .port      = 1883
    };
    IotSdk_Init();
    RunMqttDemo(connect_to_aws, "renesas-iot-demo", (void *) &serverInfo, NULL,
&IotNetworkAfr);
}
```

Secure connection to a Mosquitto server

Note

MbedTLS must be initialized and key provisioning must be done before starting a secure connection. Refer to AWS

Secure Sockets.

```
static char SERVER_CERTIFICATE_PEM[] = "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\n"
 "example_certificate_formatting\n"
 "-----END CERTIFICATE-----";
static char CLIENT_CERTIFICATE_PEM[] = "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\n"
 "example_certificate_formatting\n"
 "-----END CERTIFICATE-----";
static char CLIENT_KEY_PEM[] = "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n"
 "example_certificate_formatting\n"
 "-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----";
void mqtt_secure_example ()
{
 bool connect_to_aws = false;
 const IotNetworkServerInfo_t serverInfo =
    {
       .pHostName = "192.168.0.100",
       .port      = 8883
    };
 const IotNetworkCredentials_t afrCredentials =
    {
       .pAlpnProtos       = NULL,
       .maxFragmentLength = 1400,
       .disableSni       = true,
       .pRootCa          = SERVER_CERTIFICATE_PEM,
       .rootCaSize       = sizeof(SERVER_CERTIFICATE_PEM),
       .pClientCert       = CLIENT_CERTIFICATE_PEM,
       .clientCertSize    = sizeof(CLIENT_CERTIFICATE_PEM),
       .pPrivateKey       = CLIENT_KEY_PEM,
       .privateKeySize    = sizeof(CLIENT_KEY_PEM),
    };
    IotSdk_Init();
    RunMqttDemo(connect_to_aws, "renesas-iot-demo", (void *) &serverInfo, (void *)
&afrCredentials, &IotNetworkAfr);
}
```

5.2.62 Wifi Middleware (rm_wifi_onchip_silex)

Modules

Functions

fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_open (wifi_onchip_silex_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_version_get (fsp_version_t *const p_version)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_close ()
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_connect (const char *p_ssid, uint32_t security, const char *p_passphrase)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_mac_addr_get (uint8_t *p_macaddr)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_scan (WIFIScanResult_t *p_results, uint32_t maxNetworks)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_ping (uint8_t *p_ip_addr, uint32_t count, uint32_t interval_ms)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_ip_addr_get (uint8_t *p_ip_addr)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_avail_socket_get (uint32_t *p_socket_id)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_status_get (uint32_t socket_no, uint32_t *p_socket_status)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_create (uint32_t socket_no, uint32_t type, uint32_t ipversion)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_connect (uint32_t socket_no, uint32_t ipaddr, uint32_t port)
int32_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_send (uint32_t socket_no, const uint8_t *p_data, uint32_t length, uint32_t timeout_ms)
int32_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_recv (uint32_t socket_no, uint8_t *p_data, uint32_t length, uint32_t timeout_ms)
int32_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_shutdown (uint32_t socket_no, uint32_t shutdown_channels)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_disconnect (uint32_t socket_no)

fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_disconnect ()
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_dns_query (const char *p_textstring, uint8_t *p_ip_addr)
fsp_err_t	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_connected (fsp_err_t *p_status)
void	rm_wifi_onchip_silex_uart_callback (uart_callback_args_t *p_args)
Socket_t	SOCKETS_Socket (int32_t lDomain, int32_t lType, int32_t lProtocol)
int32_t	SOCKETS_Connect (Socket_t xSocket, SocketsSockaddr_t *pxAddress, Socklen_t xAddressLength)
int32_t	SOCKETS_Recv (Socket_t xSocket, void *pvBuffer, size_t xBufferLength, uint32_t ulFlags)
int32_t	SOCKETS_Send (Socket_t xSocket, const void *pvBuffer, size_t xDataLength, uint32_t ulFlags)
int32_t	SOCKETS_Shutdown (Socket_t xSocket, uint32_t ulHow)
int32_t	SOCKETS_Close (Socket_t xSocket)
int32_t	SOCKETS_SetSockOpt (Socket_t xSocket, int32_t lLevel, int32_t lOptionName, const void *pvOptionValue, size_t xOptionLength)
uint32_t	SOCKETS_GetHostByName (const char *pcHostName)
BaseType_t	SOCKETS_Init (void)
uint32_t	ulApplicationGetNextSequenceNumber (uint32_t ulSourceAddress, uint16_t usSourcePort, uint32_t ulDestinationAddress, uint16_t usDestinationPort)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_On (void)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_Off (void)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_ConnectAP (const WIFINetworkParams_t *const pxNetworkParams)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_Disconnect (void)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_Reset (void)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_Scan (WIFIScanResult_t *pxBuffer, uint8_t ucNumNetworks)

WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_Ping (uint8_t *pucIPAddr, uint16_t usCount, uint32_t ulIntervalMS)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_GetIP (uint8_t *pucIPAddr)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_GetMAC (uint8_t *pucMac)
WIFIReturnCode_t	WIFI_GetHostIP (char *pcHost, uint8_t *pucIPAddr)
BaseType_t	WIFI_IsConnected (void)

Detailed Description

Wifi and Socket implementation using the Silex SX-ULPGN WiFi module on RA MCUs.

Overview

This Middleware module supplies an implementation for the FreeRTOS Secure Sockets and WiFi interfaces using the Silex SX-ULPGN module.

The SX-ULPGN is a low-power, compact IEEE 802.11b/g/n 2.4GHz 1x1 Wireless LAN module equipped with the Qualcomm® QCA4010 Wireless SOC. The module comes readily equipped with radio certification for Japan, North America and Europe. More information about this module can be found at the Silex Web Site

Features

The WiFi Onchip Silex Middleware driver supplies these features:

- Supports connect/disconnect to a b/g/n (2.4GHz) WiFi Access Point using Open, WPA, and WPA2 security. Encryption types can be either TKIP, or CCMP(AES).
- Supports retrieval of the module device MAC address.
- Once connected you can acquire the assigned module device IP.
- Supports a WiFi network scan capability to get a list of local Access Points.
- Supports a Ping function to test network connectivity.
- Supports a DNS Query call to retrieve the IPv4 address of a supplied URL.
- Supports a BSD style Secure Socket interface.
- Drive supports 1 or 2 UARTs for interfacing with the SX-ULPGN module. The second UART is considered optional.

Configuration

Build Time Configurations for rm_wifi_onchip_silex

The following build time configurations are defined in fsp_cfg/rm_wifi_onchip_silex_cfg.h:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Parameter Checking	• Default (BSP) • Enabled	Default (BSP)	If selected code for parameter checking is

	• Disabled		included in the build.
Number of supported socket instances	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	16	Enable number of socket instances
Size of RX buffer for socket	Manual Entry	4096	
Size of TX buffer for CMD Port	Manual Entry	1500	
Size of RX buffer for CMD Port	Manual Entry	1500	
Semaphore maximum timeout	Manual Entry	10000	
Number reties for AT commands	Manual Entry	10	
Module Reset Port	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	06	Specify the module reset pin port for the MCU.
Module Reset Pin	Refer to the RA Configuration tool for available options.	03	Specify the module reset pin for the MCU.

Configurations for Middleware > WiFi > WiFi Onchip Silex Driver using r_sci_uart

This module can be added to the Stacks tab via New Stack > Middleware > WiFi > WiFi Onchip Silex Driver using r_sci_uart:

Configuration	Options	Default	Description
Name	Name must be a valid C symbol	g_wifi0	Module name.

Note: When configuring the two UART components you will need to make sure that DTC and FIFO are both enabled in the UART configuration. Also, you must create both TX/RX DTC components per UART.

Note: If you wish to use flow control then you must enable flow control in the configurator. This can be found in the UART setting. It is advantageous to use flow control all the time since it allows the hardware to gate the flow of data across the serial bus. Without hardware flow control for faster data rate you will most likely see an overflow condition between MCU and the module device.

Note: Higher baud rates are now support in the configurator and should be changed in the first UART configuration. There is no need to change the second UART baud rate since it is only used as a AT command channel.

Note: It is a good idea to also enable the FIFO in the UART configuration settings if you plan to use higher baud rates.

Interrupt Configuration

Refer to Serial Communications Interface (SCI) UART (r_sci_uart). R_SCI_UART_Open() is called by Wifi Middleware (rm_wifi_onchip_silex).

Clock Configuration

Refer to Serial Communications Interface (SCI) UART (r_sci_uart).

Pin Configuration

Refer to Serial Communications Interface (SCI) UART (r_sci_uart). R_SCI_UART_Open() is called by Wifi Middleware (rm_wifi_onchip_silex)

Usage Notes

Limitations

- WiFi AP connections do not currently support WEP security.
- When operating with a single UART only single socket connections are possible. To support multiple sockets two UART channels must be connected to the module. When using the Renesas-provided SX-ULPGN PMOD board the second UART channel is on pins 9 and 10 of the PMOD header.
- Network connection parameters SSID and Passphrase for the Access Point can not contain any commas. This is a current limitation of the Silex module firmware. The rm_wifi_onchip_silex_connect() function will return an error if a comma is detected.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of minimal use of WiFi Middleware in an application.

```
void wifi_onchip_basic_example (void)
{
    WIFIReturnCode_t    wifi_err;
    WIFINetworkParams_t net_params;
    SocketsSockaddr_t   addr            = {0};
    int32_t             number_bytes_rx = 0;
    int32_t             number_bytes_tx = 0;
    memset(scan_data, 0, sizeof(WIFIScanResult_t) * MAX_WIFI_SCAN_RESULTS);
    memset(g_socket_recv_buffer, 0, sizeof(uint8_t) * SX_WIFI_SOCKET_RX_BUFFER_SIZE);
 /* Open connection to the Wifi Module */
    wifi_err = WIFI_On();
 if (wifi_err)
    {
       handle_error((fsp_err_t) wifi_err);
```

```
   }
/* Setup Access Point connection parameters */
   net_params.cChannel         = 0;
   net_params.pcPassword       = "password";
   net_params.pcSSID          = "access_point_ssid";
   net_params.ucPasswordLength = 8;
   net_params.ucSSIDLength    = 17;
   net_params.xSecurity       = eWiFiSecurityWPA2;
/* Connect to the Access Point */
   wifi_err = WIFI_ConnectAP(&net_params);
if (wifi_err)
   {
      handle_error((fsp_err_t) wifi_err);
   }
/* Get address assigned by AP */
   uint8_t ip_address_device[4] = {0};
   wifi_err = WIFI_GetIP(&ip_address_device[0]);
if (wifi_err)
   {
      handle_error((fsp_err_t) wifi_err);
   }
/* Ping an address accessible on the network */
   uint8_t       ip_address[4] = {216, 58, 194, 174}; // NOLINT
const uint16_t ping_count    = 3;
const uint32_t intervalMS    = 100;
   wifi_err = WIFI_Ping(&ip_address[0], ping_count, intervalMS);
if (wifi_err)
   {
      handle_error((fsp_err_t) wifi_err);
   }
/* Scan the local Wifi network for other APs */
   wifi_err = WIFI_Scan(&scan_data[0], MAX_WIFI_SCAN_RESULTS);
if (wifi_err)
   {
       handle_error((fsp_err_t) wifi_err);
    }
 /* Do a DNS Query for IP address of server */
    addr.ulAddress = SOCKETS_GetHostByName("www.renesas.com");
    addr.usPort    = SOCKETS_htons(80);
 /* Initialize the Socket Interface */
    BaseType_t sock_err = SOCKETS_Init();
 if (sock_err != pdPASS)
    {
       handle_error((fsp_err_t) sock_err);
    }
 /* Create a socket instance */
    Socket_t socket1 = SOCKETS_Socket(SOCKETS_AF_INET, SOCKETS_SOCK_STREAM,
SOCKETS_IPPROTO_TCP);
 if (socket1 == NULL)
    {
       handle_error((fsp_err_t) !socket1);
    }
 /* Connect to an server using address */
    sock_err = SOCKETS_Connect(socket1, &addr, sizeof(SocketsSockaddr_t));
 if (sock_err)
    {
       handle_error((fsp_err_t) sock_err);
    }
 /* Send a HTTP Get call to server */
    number_bytes_tx = SOCKETS_Send(socket1, HTTP_GET_string, strlen(HTTP_GET_string),
0);
 if (0 >= number_bytes_tx)
    {
       handle_error((fsp_err_t) ERROR_OCCURED);
    }
 /* Receive the HTTP GET call reply */
    number_bytes_rx = SOCKETS_Recv(socket1, g_socket_recv_buffer,
SX_WIFI_SOCKET_RX_BUFFER_SIZE, 0);
```

```
if (0 >= number_bytes_rx)
   {
      handle_error((fsp_err_t) ERROR_OCCURED);
   }
/* Close the socket connection */
SOCKETS_Close(socket1);
/* Shutdown the WIFI and Socket Interfaces */
WIFI_Off();
}
```

Data Structures

struct	wifi_onchip_silex_cfg_t
struct	ulpgn_socket_t
struct	uart_state_t
struct	wifi_onchip_silex_instance_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	sx_ulpgn_security_t
enum	sx_ulpgn_socket_status_t
enum	sx_ulpgn_socket_rw

Data Structure Documentation

◆ wifi_onchip_silex_cfg_t

struct wifi_onchip_silex_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in open function

Data Fields		
const uint32_t	num_uarts	Number of UART interfaces to use.
const uint32_t	num_sockets	Number of sockets to initialize.
const bsp_io_port_pin_t	reset_pin	Reset pin used for module.
const uart_instance_t *	uart_instances[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_MAX_NUMBER_UART_PORTS]	SCI UART instances.
void const *	p_context	User defined context passed

		into callback function.
void const *	p_extend	Pointer to extended configuration by instance of interface.

◆ ulpgn_socket_t

struct ulpgn_socket_t		
Silex ULPGN Wifi internal socket instance structure		
Data Fields		
StreamBufferHandle_t	socket_byteq_hdl	Socket stream buffer handle.
StaticStreamBuffer_t	socket_byteq_struct	Structure to hold stream buffer info.
uint8_t	socket_recv_buff[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_MAX_SOCKET_RX_SIZE]	Socket receive buffer used by byte queue.
uint32_t	socket_status	Current socket status.
uint32_t	socket_recv_error_count	Socket receive error count.
uint32_t	socket_create_flag	Flag to determine in socket has been created.
uint32_t	socket_read_write_flag	flag to determine if read and/or write channels are active.

◆ uart_state_t

struct uart_state_t		
Silex ULPGN Wifi SCI UART state information		
Data Fields		
SemaphoreHandle_t	uart_tei_sem	UART transmission end binary semaphore.

◆ wifi_onchip_silex_instance_ctrl_t

struct wifi_onchip_silex_instance_ctrl_t		
WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX private control block. DO NOT MODIFY.		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	open	Flag to indicate if wifi instance has been initialized.
wifi_onchip_silex_cfg_t const *	p_wifi_onchip_silex_cfg	Pointer to initial configurations.
bsp_io_port_pin_t	reset_pin	Wifi module reset pin.
uint32_t	num_uarts	number of UARTS currently used for communication with module

uint32_t	tx_data_size	Size of the data to send.
uint32_t	num_creatable_sockets	Number of simultaneous sockets supported.
uint32_t	curr_cmd_port	Current UART instance index for AT commands.
uint32_t	curr_data_port	Current UART instance index for data.
uint8_t	cmd_rx_queue_buf[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_CMD_RX_BUF_SIZE]	Command port receive buffer used by byte queue.
StreamBufferHandle_t	socket_byteq_hdl	Socket stream buffer handle.
StaticStreamBuffer_t	socket_byteq_struct	Structure to hold stream buffer info.
volatile uint32_t	curr_socket_index	Currently active socket instance.
uint8_t	cmd_tx_buff[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_CMD_TX_BUF_SIZE]	Command send buffer.
uint8_t	cmd_rx_buff[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_CMD_RX_BUF_SIZE]	Command receive buffer.
uint32_t	at_cmd_mode	Current command mode.
uint8_t	curr_ipaddr[4]	Current IP address of module.
uint8_t	curr_subnetmask[4]	Current Subnet Mask of module.
uint8_t	curr_gateway[4]	Current GAteway of module.
SemaphoreHandle_t	tx_sem	Transmit binary semaphore handle.
SemaphoreHandle_t	rx_sem	Receive binary semaphore handle.
uint8_t	last_data[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_RETURN_TEXT_LENGTH]	Tailing buffer used for command parser.
uart_instance_t *	uart_instance_objects[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_MAX_NUMBER_UART_PORTS]	UART instance objects.
uart_state_t	uart_state_info[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_MAX_NUMBER_UART_PORTS]	UART instance state information.
ulpgn_socket_t	sockets[WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX_CFG_NUM_CREATEABLE_SOCKETS]	Internal socket instances.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ sx_ulpgn_security_t

enum sx_ulpgn_security_t
Silex ULPGN Wifi security types

◆ sx_ulpgn_socket_status_t

enum sx_ulpgn_socket_status_t
Silex ULPGN Wifi socket status types

◆ sx_ulpgn_socket_rw

enum sx_ulpgn_socket_rw
Silex socket shutdown channels

Function Documentation

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_open()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_open (wifi_onchip_silex_cfg_t const *const *p_cfg*)

Opens and configures the WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX Middleware module.

Parameters

[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration structure.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX successfully configured.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_OUT_OF_MEMORY	There is no more heap memory available.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ALREADY_OPEN	Module is already open. This module can only be opened once.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_version_get()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_version_get (fsp_version_t *const *p_version*)

Returns the WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX Middleware module versions.

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Memory address to return version information to.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_close()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_close ( )

Disables WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX closed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_connect()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_connect (const char * *p_ssid*, uint32_t *security*, const char * *p_passphrase*)

Connects to the specified Wifi Access Point.

Parameters

[in]	p_ssid	Pointer to SSID of Wifi Access Point.
[in]	security	Security type to use for connection.
[in]	p_passphrase	Pointer to the passphrase to use for connection.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	No commas are accepted in the SSID or Passphrase.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_mac_addr_get()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_mac_addr_get (uint8_t * *p_macaddr*)

Get MAC address.

Parameters

[out]	p_macaddr	Pointer array to hold mac address.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_scan()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_scan (WIFIScanResult_t * *p_results*, uint32_t *maxNetworks*)

Get the information about local Wifi Access Points.

Parameters

[out]	p_results	Pointer to a structure array holding scanned Access Points.
[in]	maxNetworks	Size of the structure array for holding APs.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_ping()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_ping (uint8_t * *p_ip_addr*, uint32_t *count*, uint32_t *interval_ms*)

Ping an IP address on the network.

Parameters

[in]	p_ip_addr	Pointer to IP address array.
[in]	count	Number of pings to attempt.
[in]	interval_ms	Interval between ping attempts.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_ip_addr_get()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_ip_addr_get (uint8_t * *p_ip_addr*)

Get the assigned module IP address.

Parameters

[out]	p_ip_addr	Pointer an array to hold the IP address.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_avail_socket_get()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_avail_socket_get (uint32_t * *p_socket_id*)

Get the next available socket ID.

Parameters

[out]	p_socket_id	Pointer to an integer to hold the socket ID.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occured in the execution of this function

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_status_get()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_status_get (uint32_t *socket_no*, uint32_t * *p_socket_status*)

Get the socket status.

Parameters

[in]	socket_no	Socket ID number.
[out]	p_socket_status	Pointer to an integer to hold the socket status

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_create()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_create (uint32_t *socket_no*, uint32_t *type*, uint32_t *ipversion*)

Create a new socket instance.

Parameters

[in]	socket_no	Socket ID number.
[in]	type	Socket type.
[in]	ipversion	Socket IP type.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_connect()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_connect (uint32_t *socket_no*, uint32_t *ipaddr*, uint32_t *port*)

Connect to a specific IP and Port using socket.

Parameters

[in]	socket_no	Socket ID number.
[in]	ipaddr	IP address for socket connection.
[in]	port	Port number for socket connection.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_send()

int32_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_send (uint32_t *socket_no*, const uint8_t * *p_data*, uint32_t *length*, uint32_t *timeout_ms*)

Send data over TCP to a server.

Parameters

[in]	socket_no	Socket ID number.
[in]	p_data	Pointer to data to send.
[in]	length	Length of data to send.
[in]	timeout_ms	Timeout to wait for transmit end event

Return values

FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_recv()

int32_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_recv (uint32_t *socket_no*, uint8_t * *p_data*, uint32_t *length*, uint32_t *timeout_ms*)

Receive data over TCP from a server.

Parameters

[in]	socket_no	Socket ID number.
[out]	p_data	Pointer to data received from socket.
[in]	length	Length of data array used for receive.
[in]	timeout_ms	Timeout to wait for data to be received from socket.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_shutdown()

int32_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_tcp_shutdown (uint32_t *socket_no*, uint32_t *shutdown_channels*)

Shutdown portion of a socket

Parameters

[in]	socket_no	Socket ID number.
[in]	shutdown_channels	Specify if read or write channel is shutdown for socket

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_disconnect()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_disconnect (uint32_t *socket_no*)

Disconnect a specific socket connection.

Parameters

[in]	socket_no	Socket ID to disconnect

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	Bad parameter value was passed into function.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_disconnect()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_disconnect ( )

Disconnects from connected AP.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	WIFI_ONCHIP_SILEX disconnected successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	Module is not open.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_dns_query()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_dns_query (const char * *p_textstring*, uint8_t * *p_ip_addr*)

Initiate a DNS lookup for a given URL.

Parameters

[in]	p_textstring	Pointer to array holding URL to query from DNS.
[out]	p_ip_addr	Pointer to IP address returned from look up.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_INVALID_ARGUMENT	The URL passed in is to long.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_connected()

fsp_err_t rm_wifi_onchip_silex_socket_connected (fsp_err_t * *p_status*)

Check if a specific socket instance is connected.

Parameters

[out]	p_status	Pointer to integer holding the socket connection status.

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Function completed successfully.
FSP_ERR_ASSERTION	Assertion error occurred.
FSP_ERR_NOT_OPEN	The instance has not been opened.
FSP_ERR_WIFI_FAILED	Error occurred with command to Wifi module.

◆ rm_wifi_onchip_silex_uart_callback()

void rm_wifi_onchip_silex_uart_callback (uart_callback_args_t * *p_args*)

Callback function for first UART port in command mode. Used specifically for the SCI UART driver.

Parameters

[in]	p_args	Pointer to callback arguments structure.

◆ SOCKETS_Socket()

Socket_t SOCKETS_Socket (int32_t *lDomain*, int32_t *lType*, int32_t *lProtocol*)

Creates a TCP socket.

This call allocates memory and claims a socket resource.

See also
SOCKETS_Close()

Parameters

[in]	lDomain	Must be set to SOCKETS_AF_INET. See SocketDomains.
[in]	lType	Set to SOCKETS_SOCK_STREAM to create a TCP socket. No other value is valid. See SocketTypes.
[in]	lProtocol	Set to SOCKETS_IPPROTO_TCP to create a TCP socket. No other value is valid. See Protocols.

Returns

- If a socket is created successfully, then the socket handle is returned
- SOCKETS_INVALID_SOCKET is returned if an error occurred.

◆ SOCKETS_Connect()

int32_t SOCKETS_Connect (Socket_t *xSocket*, SocketsSockaddr_t * *pxAddress*, Socklen_t *xAddressLength*)

Connects the socket to the specified IP address and port.

The socket must first have been successfully created by a call to SOCKETS_Socket().

Parameters

[in]	xSocket	The handle of the socket to be connected.
[in]	pxAddress	A pointer to a SocketsSockaddr_t structure that contains the the address to connect the socket to.
[in]	xAddressLength	Should be set to sizeof(SocketsSockaddr_t).

Returns

- SOCKETS_ERROR_NONE if a connection is established.
- If an error occured, a negative value is returned. SocketsErrors

◆ SOCKETS_Recv()

int32_t SOCKETS_Recv (Socket_t *xSocket*, void * *pvBuffer*, size_t *xBufferLength*, uint32_t *ulFlags*)

Receive data from a TCP socket.

The socket must have already been created using a call to SOCKETS_Socket() and connected to a remote socket using SOCKETS_Connect().

Parameters

[in]	xSocket	The handle of the socket from which data is being received.
[out]	pvBuffer	The buffer into which the received data will be placed.
[in]	xBufferLength	The maximum number of bytes which can be received. pvBuffer must be at least xBufferLength bytes long.
[in]	ulFlags	Not currently used. Should be set to 0.

Returns

- If the receive was successful then the number of bytes received (placed in the buffer pointed to by pvBuffer) is returned.
- If a timeout occurred before data could be received then 0 is returned (timeout is set using SOCKETS_SO_RCVTIMEO).
- If an error occured, a negative value is returned. SocketsErrors

◆ SOCKETS_Send()

int32_t SOCKETS_Send (Socket_t *xSocket*, const void * *pvBuffer*, size_t *xDataLength*, uint32_t *ulFlags*)

Transmit data to the remote socket.

The socket must have already been created using a call to SOCKETS_Socket() and connected to a remote socket using SOCKETS_Connect().

Parameters

[in]	xSocket	The handle of the sending socket.
[in]	pvBuffer	The buffer containing the data to be sent.
[in]	xDataLength	The length of the data to be sent.
[in]	ulFlags	Not currently used. Should be set to 0.

Returns

- On success, the number of bytes actually sent is returned.
- If an error occured, a negative value is returned. SocketsErrors

◆ SOCKETS_Shutdown()

int32_t SOCKETS_Shutdown (Socket_t *xSocket*, uint32_t *ulHow*)

Closes all or part of a full-duplex connection on the socket.

Parameters

[in]	xSocket	The handle of the socket to shutdown.
[in]	ulHow	SOCKETS_SHUT_RD, SOCKETS_SHUT_WR or SOCKETS_SHUT_RDWR. ShutdownFlags

Returns

- If the operation was successful, 0 is returned.
- If an error occured, a negative value is returned. SocketsErrors

◆ SOCKETS_Close()

int32_t SOCKETS_Close (Socket_t *xSocket*)

Closes the socket and frees the related resources.

Parameters

[in]	xSocket	The handle of the socket to close.

Returns

- On success, 0 is returned.
- If an error occurred, a negative value is returned. SocketsErrors

◆ SOCKETS_SetSockOpt()

int32_t SOCKETS_SetSockOpt (Socket_t *xSocket*, int32_t *lLevel*, int32_t *lOptionName*, const void * *pvOptionValue*, size_t *xOptionLength*)

Manipulates the options for the socket.

Parameters

[in]	xSocket	The handle of the socket to set the option for.
[in]	lLevel	Not currently used. Should be set to 0.
[in]	lOptionName	See SetSockOptOptions.
[in]	pvOptionValue	A buffer containing the value of the option to set.
[in]	xOptionLength	The length of the buffer pointed to by pvOptionValue.

Note

Socket option support and possible values vary by port. Please see PORT_SPECIFIC_LINK to check the valid options and limitations of your device.

- Berkeley Socket Options
  - SOCKETS_SO_RCVTIMEO
    - Sets the receive timeout
    - pvOptionValue (TickType_t) is the number of milliseconds that the receive function should wait before timing out.
    - Setting pvOptionValue = 0 causes receive to wait forever.
    - See PORT_SPECIFIC_LINK for device limitations.
  - SOCKETS_SO_SNDTIMEO
    - Sets the send timeout
    - pvOptionValue (TickType_t) is the number of milliseconds that the send function should wait before timing out.
    - Setting pvOptionValue = 0 causes send to wait forever.

        - See PORT_SPECIFIC_LINK for device limitations.
- Non-Standard Options
    - SOCKETS_SO_NONBLOCK
        - Makes a socket non-blocking.
        - pvOptionValue is ignored for this option.
- Security Sockets Options
    - SOCKETS_SO_REQUIRE_TLS
        - Use TLS for all connect, send, and receive on this socket.
        - This socket options MUST be set for TLS to be used, even if other secure socket options are set.
        - pvOptionValue is ignored for this option.
    - SOCKETS_SO_TRUSTED_SERVER_CERTIFICATE
        - Set the root of trust server certificiate for the socket.
        - This socket option only takes effect if SOCKETS_SO_REQUIRE_TLS is also set. If SOCKETS_SO_REQUIRE_TLS is not set, this option will be ignored.
        - pvOptionValue is a pointer to the formatted server certificate. TODO: Link to description of how to format certificates with
        - xOptionLength (BaseType_t) is the length of the certificate in bytes.
    - SOCKETS_SO_SERVER_NAME_INDICATION
        - Use Server Name Indication (SNI)
        - This socket option only takes effect if SOCKETS_SO_REQUIRE_TLS is also set. If SOCKETS_SO_REQUIRE_TLS is not set, this option will be ignored.
        - pvOptionValue is a pointer to a string containing the hostname
        - xOptionLength is the length of the hostname string in bytes.

Returns

- On success, 0 is returned.
- If an error occured, a negative value is returned. SocketsErrors

◆ SOCKETS_GetHostByName()

uint32_t SOCKETS_GetHostByName (const char * *pcHostName*)

Resolve a host name using Domain Name Service.

Parameters

[in]	pcHostName	The host name to resolve.

Returns

- The IPv4 address of the specified host.
- If an error has occured, 0 is returned.

◆ SOCKETS_Init()

BaseType_t SOCKETS_Init (void)

Secure Sockets library initialization function.

This function does general initialization and setup. It must be called once and only once before calling any other function.

Returns

- pdPASS if everything succeeds
- pdFAIL otherwise.

◆ ulApplicationGetNextSequenceNumber()

uint32_t ulApplicationGetNextSequenceNumber (uint32_t *ulSourceAddress*, uint16_t *usSourcePort*, uint32_t *ulDestinationAddress*, uint16_t *usDestinationPort*)

Generate a TCP Initial Sequence Number that is reasonably difficult to predict, per https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc6528.

◆ WIFI_On()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_On (void)

Turns on Wi-Fi.

This function turns on Wi-Fi module,initializes the drivers and must be called before calling any other Wi-Fi API

Returns
eWiFiSuccess if Wi-Fi module was successfully turned on, failure code otherwise.

◆ WIFI_Off()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_Off (void)

Turns off Wi-Fi.

This function turns off the Wi-Fi module. The Wi-Fi peripheral should be put in a low power or off state in this routine.

Returns
eWiFiSuccess if Wi-Fi module was successfully turned off, failure code otherwise.

◆ WIFI_ConnectAP()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_ConnectAP (const WIFINetworkParams_t *const *pxNetworkParams*)

Connects to the Wi-Fi Access Point (AP) specified in the input.

The Wi-Fi should stay connected when the same Access Point it is currently connected to is specified. Otherwise, the Wi-Fi should disconnect and connect to the new Access Point specified. If the new Access Point specifed has invalid parameters, then the Wi-Fi should be disconnected.

Parameters

[in]	pxNetworkParams	Configuration to join AP.

Returns

eWiFiSuccess if connection is successful, failure code otherwise.

```
WIFINetworkParams_t xNetworkParams;
WIFIReturnCode_t xWifiStatus;
xNetworkParams.pcSSID = "SSID String";
xNetworkParams.ucSSIDLength = SSIDLen;
xNetworkParams.pcPassword = "Password String";
xNetworkParams.ucPasswordLength = PassLength;
xNetworkParams.xSecurity = eWiFiSecurityWPA2;
xWifiStatus = WIFI_ConnectAP( &( xNetworkParams ) );
if(xWifiStatus == eWiFiSuccess)
{
 //Connected to AP.
}
```

See also

WIFINetworkParams_t

◆ WIFI_Disconnect()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_Disconnect (void)

Disconnects from the currently connected Access Point.

Returns

eWiFiSuccess if disconnection was successful or if the device is already disconnected, failure code otherwise.

◆ WIFI_Reset()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_Reset (void)

Resets the Wi-Fi Module.

Returns
eWiFiSuccess if Wi-Fi module was successfully reset, failure code otherwise.

◆ WIFI_Scan()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_Scan (WIFIScanResult_t * *pxBuffer*, uint8_t *ucNumNetworks*)

Perform a Wi-Fi network Scan.

Parameters

[in]	pxBuffer	- Buffer for scan results.
[in]	ucNumNetworks	- Number of networks to retrieve in scan result.

Returns
eWiFiSuccess if the Wi-Fi network scan was successful, failure code otherwise.

Note
The input buffer will have the results of the scan.

```
const uint8_t ucNumNetworks = 10; //Get 10 scan results
WIFIScanResult_t xScanResults[ ucNumNetworks ];
WIFI_Scan( xScanResults, ucNumNetworks );
```

◆ WIFI_Ping()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_Ping (uint8_t * *pucIPAddr*, uint16_t *usCount*, uint32_t *ulIntervalMS*)

Ping an IP address in the network.

Parameters

[in]	pucIPAddr	IP Address array to ping.
[in]	usCount	Number of times to ping
[in]	ulIntervalMS	Interval in milliseconds for ping operation

Returns
eWiFiSuccess if ping was successful, other failure code otherwise.

◆ WIFI_GetIP()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_GetIP (uint8_t * *pucIPAddr*)

Retrieves the Wi-Fi interface's IP address.

Parameters

[out]	pucIPAddr	IP Address buffer.

Returns

eWiFiSuccess if successful and IP Address buffer has the interface's IP address, failure code otherwise.

```
uint8_t ucIPAddr[ 4 ];
WIFI_GetIP( &ucIPAddr[0] );
```

◆ WIFI_GetMAC()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_GetMAC (uint8_t * *pucMac*)

Retrieves the Wi-Fi interface's MAC address.

Parameters

[out]	pucMac	MAC Address buffer sized 6 bytes.

```
uint8_t ucMacAddressVal[ wificonfigMAX_BSSID_LEN ];
WIFI_GetMAC( &ucMacAddressVal[0] );
```

Returns

eWiFiSuccess if the MAC address was successfully retrieved, failure code otherwise. The returned MAC address must be 6 consecutive bytes with no delimitters.

◆ WIFI_GetHostIP()

WIFIReturnCode_t WIFI_GetHostIP (char * *pcHost*, uint8_t * *pucIPAddr*)

Retrieves the host IP address from a host name using DNS.

Parameters

[in]	pcHost	- Host (node) name.
[in]	pucIPAddr	- IP Address buffer.

Returns

eWiFiSuccess if the host IP address was successfully retrieved, failure code otherwise.

```
uint8_t ucIPAddr[ 4 ];
WIFI_GetHostIP( "amazon.com", &ucIPAddr[0] );
```

◆ WIFI_IsConnected()

BaseType_t WIFI_IsConnected (void)

Check if the Wi-Fi is connected.

Returns

pdTRUE if the link is up, pdFalse otherwise.

5.2.63 AWS Secure Sockets

Modules

This module provides the AWS Secure Sockets implementation.

Overview

Features

Information about the features provided by the AWS Secure Sockets Library is available in the FreeRTOS Libraries User Guide.

The FSP implementation supports using Secure Sockets with either Ethernet or WiFi. These stacks can be added in FSP via the configurator under FreeRTOS | Secure Sockets.

Dependencies

The Secure Sockets library has two dependencies:

1. A TCP/IP implementation
2. A TLS implementation

For TCP/IP, AWS have provided the FreeRTOS TCP/IP implementation. For TLS, AWS have chosen mbedTLS, but use PKCS11 for storage and invoking the crypto portion of mbedTLS. For more information about AWS Secure Sockets, refer to the AWS documentation. An example of Secure Sockets usage is on the same page.

mbedTLS

mbedTLS is ARM's implementation of the TLS and SSP protocols as well as the cryptographic primitives required by those implementations. mbedTLS is also solely used for its cryptographic features even if the TLS/SSL portions are not used. With PSA, ARM have created a separate API for cryptography. Starting with mbedTLS3, crypto implementation has been moved out to a new module called mbedCrypto (PSA Crypto API) and a build time configuration can direct the mbedTLS3 implementation to use either the old mbedtls cryptography functions or use the new PSA Crypto API. Since the current version of mbedCrypto (PSA Crypto API) implements both the old mbedtls crypto API as well as the new PSA Crypto API, either option is functional for now.

CipherSuites

During the TLS connection setup stage, the client has to indicate to the server the type of cryptographic operations that it supports. This is referred to as the ciphersuite. The entire list of ciphersuites supported by mbedTLS can be found in mbedtls/ssl_ciphersuites.h.

Configuration

In FSP, Secure Sockets can be added as a new stack via FreeRTOS | Secure Sockets | Secure Sockets on WiFi or Secure Sockets on FreeRTOS Plus TCP. All required dependant modules, except heap, are automatically added. To complete the configuration,

- Add a heap instance and use the same one for all dependencies.
- Resolve the module configuration requirements.

Usage Notes

For detailed documentation on Secure Sockets consult the AWS documentation.

Examples

Basic Example

This is a basic example of using the Secure Sockets API with Ethernet. The message "hello, world!" is sent to a remote socket.

```
#define SECURE_SOCKETS_EXAMPLE_BUFFER_SIZE (64)
static const char SERVER_CERTIFICATE_PEM[] =
 "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\n"
 "MIIDazCCAlOgAwIBAgIURabL79ayIywQv0y8SPnbZ1FYDRIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEL\n"
 "BQAwRTELMAkGA1UEBhMCQVUxEzARBgNVBAgMClNvbWUtU3RhdGUxITAfBgNVBAoM\n"
 "GEludGVybmV0IFdpZGdpdHMgUHR5IEx0ZDAeFw0xOTA5MTEyMTIyMjZaFw0yMDA5\n"
 "MTAyMTIyMjZaMEUxCzAJBgNVBAYTAkFVMRMwEQYDVQQIDApTb21lLVN0YXRlMSEw\n"
 "HwYDVQQKDBhJbnRlcm5ldCBXaWRnaXRzIFB0eSBMdGQwggEiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEB\n"
 "AQUAA4IBDwAwggEKAoIBAQDSA3h+5sT58FHgnovnQzsVHQ0H/3TsnEKwVzyBwTQl\n"
 "s4PbG6VXCWyyJWjdJ4XMH1oU8gAlxauFbwOO98Aquei4K3Pi/ynKNBeX4VJcLyE5\n"
 "Azq7nRIIwt4+OoZ5kV7v8JIoLY5i+Ktn3zq1t0y1ZmK6Uk/rRPonb+Kx7wQPx7jq\n"
 "ZIZGda+CgF6ZedidPcABuggqD1y3U2gLiRPoBhe9nN2hG60rRp7vhbWMF0pzTDXu\n"
 "BKF7XSTbhYz3pl6NeOCLh5E3t8x908Ui5W1zDN3iOysrcwQFtCiGTvzNtxSfli1+\n"
 "PugIt9Q2vlYmuz5qI+juxHftJSXO86M5SV7exqUOXP9RAgMBAAGjUzBRMB0GA1Ud\n"
 "DgQWBBQG8VNJEJUjpTKMjmrOY3XApNp5lDAfBgNVHSMEGDAWgBQG8VNJEJUjpTKM\n"
 "jmrOY3XApNp5lDAPBgNVHRMBAf8EBTADAQH/MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA4IBAQAt\n"
 "CabfjsYUnG8tt3/GDdhjsuG+SfeQe11S73pZi3+L616bPH5MNUv+LkgR/1AFEqt5\n"
 "WadKVTgzW5Ork1t7CfkYwrOHbyhyaaDPzERjMCfCcl8lQluBy6vE/lEb0hWq6XlO\n"
 "f6+8i+VKxWkSIXs2ZQqqYSOTTzAjHSsiiuE5WsC00ErvCvnC7uD6+3Y7W1uQRkFZ\n"
 "uSd9AN1ixPvAFi69FF/ymlJv6vII5GXOVDrIwdr50bMNuezMEx6qMNDADRH8iEaL\n"
 "JaSgfklczGiI1i7MPD4JTtsXOgKwxcBDAa0zQDVA5uBGEIOhva3m5X70N4iO7W0V\n"
 "eEhZekKeg3Fl3t/CXi8l\n"
 "-----END CERTIFICATE-----";
#define keyCLIENT_CERTIFICATE_PEM \
  "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\n" \
  "MIIDETCCAfkCFHwd2yn8zn5qB2ChYUT9Mvbi9Xp1MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMEUx\n" \
  "CzAJBgNVBAYTAkFVMRMwEQYDVQQIDApTb21lLVN0YXRlMSEwHwYDVQQKDBhJbnRl\n" \
  "cm5ldCBXaWRnaXRzIFB0eSBMdGQwHhcNMTkwOTExMjEyMjU0WhcNMjAwOTEwMjEy\n" \
  "MjU0WjBFMQswCQYDVQQGEwJBVTETMBEGA1UECAwKU29tZS1TdGF0ZTEhMB8GA1UE\n" \
  "CgwYSW50ZXJuZXQgV2lkZ2l0cyBQdHkgTHRkMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOC\n" \
  "AQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAo8oThJXSMDo41oL7HTpC4TX8NalBvnkFw30Av67dl/oZDjVA\n" \
  "iXPnZkhVppLnj++0/Oed0M7UwNUO2nurQt6yTYrvW7E8ZPjAlC7ueJcGYZhOaVv2\n" \
  "bhSmigjFQru2lw5odSuYy5+22CCgxft58nrRCo5Bk+GwWgZmcrxe/BzutRHQ7X4x\n" \
  "dYJhyhBOi2R1Kt8XsbuWilfgfkVhhkVklFeKqiypdQM6cnPWo/G4DyW34jOXzzEM\n" \
  "FLWvQOQLCKUZOgjJBnFdbx8oOOwMkYCChbV7gqPE6cw0Zy26CvlLQiINyonLPbNT\n" \
  "c64sS/ZBGPZFOPJmb4tG2nipYgZ1hO/r++jCbwIDAQABMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUA\n" \
  "A4IBAQCdqq59ubdRY9EiV3bleKXeqG7+8HgBHdm0X9dgq10nD37p00YLyuZLE9NM\n" \
  "066G/VcflGrx/Nzw+/UuI7/UuBbBS/3ppHRnsZqBIl8nnr/ULrFQy8z3vKtL1q3C\n" \
  "DxabjPONlPO2keJeTTA71N/RCEMwJoa8i0XKXGdu/hQo6x4n+Gq73fEiGCl99xsc\n" \
  "4tIO4yPS4lv+uXBzEUzoEy0CLIkiDesnT5lLeCyPmUNoU89HU95IusZT7kygCHHd\n" \
  "72am1ic3X8PKc268KT3ilr3VMhK67C+iIIkfrM5AiU+oOIRrIHSC/p0RigJg3rXA\n" \
  "GBIRHvt+OYF9fDeG7U4QDJNCfGW+\n" \
  "-----END CERTIFICATE-----"
#define keyCLIENT_PRIVATE_KEY_PEM \
  "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n" \
  "MIIEowIBAAKCAQEAo8oThJXSMDo41oL7HTpC4TX8NalBvnkFw30Av67dl/oZDjVA\n" \
  "iXPnZkhVppLnj++0/Oed0M7UwNUO2nurQt6yTYrvW7E8ZPjAlC7ueJcGYZhOaVv2\n" \
  "bhSmigjFQru2lw5odSuYy5+22CCgxft58nrRCo5Bk+GwWgZmcrxe/BzutRHQ7X4x\n" \
  "dYJhyhBOi2R1Kt8XsbuWilfgfkVhhkVklFeKqiypdQM6cnPWo/G4DyW34jOXzzEM\n" \
  "FLWvQOQLCKUZOgjJBnFdbx8oOOwMkYCChbV7gqPE6cw0Zy26CvlLQiINyonLPbNT\n" \
  "c64sS/ZBGPZFOPJmb4tG2nipYgZ1hO/r++jCbwIDAQABAoIBAQCGR2hC/ZVJhqIM\n" \
  "c2uuJZKpElpIIBBPOObZwwS3IYR4UUjzVgMn7UbbmxflLXD8lzfZU4YVp0vTH5lC\n" \
  "07qvYuXpHqtnj+GEok837VYCtUY9AuHeDM/2paV3awNV15E1PFG1Jd3pqnH7tJw6\n" \
  "VBZBDiGNNt1agN/UnoSlMfvpU0r8VGPXCBNxe3JY5QyBJPI1wF4LcxRI+eYmr7Ja\n" \
  "/cjn97DZotgz4B7gUNu8XIEkUOTwPabZINY1zcLWiXTMA+8qTniPVk653h14Xqt4\n" \
  "4o4D4YCTpwJcmxSV1m21/6+uyuXr9SIKAE+Ys2cYLA46x+rwLaW5fUoQ5hHa0Ytb\n" \
  "RYJ4SrtBAoGBANWtwlE69N0hq5xDPckSbNGubIeG8P4mBhGkJxIqYoqugGLMDiGX\n" \
  "4bltrjr2TPWaxTo3pPavLJiBMIsENA5KU+c/r0jLkxgEp9MIVJrtNgkCiDQqogBG\n" \
  "j4IJL2iQwXoLCqk2tx/dh9Mww+7SETE7EPNrv4UrYaGN5AEvpf5W+NHPAoGBAMQ6\n" \
  "wVa0Mx1PlA4enY2rfE3WXP8bzjleSOwR75JXqG2WbPC0/cszwbyPWOEqRpBZfvD/\n" \
  "QFkKx06xp1C09XwiQanr2gDucYXHeEKg/9iuJV1UkMQp95ojlhtSXdRZV7/l4pmN\n" \
  "fpB2vcAptX/4gY4tDrWMO08JNnRjE7duC+rmmk1hAoGAS4L0QLCNB/h2JOq+Uuhn\n" \
  "/FGfmOVfFPFrA6D3DbxcxpWUWVWzSLvb0SOphryzxbfEKyau7V5KbDp7ZSU/IC20\n" \
  "KOygjSEkAkDi7fjrrTRW/Cgg6g6G4YIOBO4qCtHdDbwJMHNdk6096qw5EZS67qLp\n" \
  "Apz5OZ5zChySjri/+HnTxJECgYBysGSP6IJ3fytplTtAshnU5JU2BWpi3ViBoXoE\n" \
  "bndilajWhvJO8dEqBB5OfAcCF0y6TnWtlT8oH21LHnjcNKlsRw0Dvllbd1oylybx\n" \
  "3da41dRG0sCEtoflMB7nHdDLt/DZDnoKtVvyFG6gfP47utn+Ahgn+Zp6K+46J3eP\n" \
  "s3g8AQKBgE/PJiaF8pbBXaZOuwRRA9GOMSbDIF6+jBYTYp4L9wk4+LZArKtyI+4k\n" \
  "Md2DUvHwMC+ddOtKqjYnLm+V5cSbvu7aPvBZtwxghzTUDcf7EvnA3V/bQBh3R0z7\n" \
  "pVsxTyGRmBSeLdbUWACUbX9LXdpudarPAJ59daWmP3mBEVmWdzUw\n" \
  "-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----"
const uint8_t g_ip_address[4] = {169, 254, 57, 49};
const uint8_t g_net_mask[4] = {255, 255, 0, 0};
const uint8_t g_gateway_address[4] = {169, 254, 57, 49};
const uint8_t g_dns_address[4] = {8, 8, 8, 8};
const uint8_t g_mac_address[6] = {0x66, 0x66, 0x66, 0x66, 0x66, 0x66};
static uint8_t g_buffer[SECURE_SOCKETS_EXAMPLE_BUFFER_SIZE];
/*********************************************************************************************
***********************************
 * Refer to the following link for detailed API information:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/freertos/latest/lib-
ref/html2/secure_sockets/secure_sockets_function_primary.html
 ********************************************************************************************
**********************************/
void secure_sockets_ethernet_example (void)
{
 /* Initialize the crypto hardware acceleration. */
 mbedtls_platform_setup(NULL);
    xLoggingTaskInitialize(256, 1, 10); // NOLINT(readability-magic-numbers)
    ProvisioningParams_t params;
 /* Write the keys into a secure region in data flash. */
    params.pucClientPrivateKey       = (uint8_t *) keyCLIENT_PRIVATE_KEY_PEM;
    params.pucClientCertificate      = (uint8_t *) keyCLIENT_CERTIFICATE_PEM;
    params.ulClientPrivateKeyLength = 1 + strlen((const char *)
params.pucClientPrivateKey);
    params.ulClientCertificateLength = 1 + strlen((const char *)
params.pucClientCertificate);
    params.pucJITPCertificate       = NULL;
    params.ulJITPCertificateLength   = 0;
    vAlternateKeyProvisioning(&params);
 /* Start up the network stack. */
    FreeRTOS_IPInit(g_ip_address, g_net_mask, g_gateway_address, g_dns_address,
g_mac_address);
 while (pdFALSE == FreeRTOS_IsNetworkUp())
    {
       vTaskDelay(1);
    }
    Socket_t socket = SOCKETS_Socket(SOCKETS_AF_INET, SOCKETS_SOCK_STREAM,
SOCKETS_IPPROTO_TCP);
 if (SOCKETS_INVALID_SOCKET == socket)
    {
 /* Could not create socket. */
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Enable TLS and configure the server certificate. */
 SOCKETS_SetSockOpt(socket, 0, SOCKETS_SO_REQUIRE_TLS, NULL, (size_t) 0);
 SOCKETS_SetSockOpt(socket, 0, SOCKETS_SO_TRUSTED_SERVER_CERTIFICATE,
SERVER_CERTIFICATE_PEM,
 sizeof(SERVER_CERTIFICATE_PEM));
 /* Connect to a remote server */
    SocketsSockaddr_t server_addr;
    server_addr.usPort    = SOCKETS_htons(9001);
    server_addr.ulAddress = SOCKETS_inet_addr_quick(192, 168, 0, 3);
 if (0 != SOCKETS_Connect(socket, &server_addr, sizeof(server_addr)))
    {
 /* Could not connect to server. */
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Send a message and check that the correct number of bytes were transferred */
 const char msg[] = "hello, world!\n";
 if (sizeof(msg) != SOCKETS_Send(socket, msg, sizeof(msg), 0))
    {
 /* Failed to send data. */
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 if (0 != SOCKETS_Shutdown(socket, SOCKETS_SHUT_RDWR))
    {
       __BKPT(0);
    }
 /* Follow socket shutdown example:
  * https://freertos.org/FreeRTOS-Plus/FreeRTOS_Plus_TCP/API/close.html
  */
 while (0 <= SOCKETS_Recv(socket, g_buffer, sizeof(g_buffer), 0))
    {
       vTaskDelay(10);
    }
 SOCKETS_Close(socket);
}
const char * pcApplicationHostnameHook(void);
const char * pcApplicationHostnameHook (void)
{
 /* Assign the name "FreeRTOS" to this network node. This function will
  * be called during the DHCP: the machine will be registered with an IP
  * address plus this name. */
 return "FreeRTOS";
}
void vApplicationIPNetworkEventHook (eIPCallbackEvent_t eNetworkEvent)
{
 FSP_PARAMETER_NOT_USED(eNetworkEvent);
}
```

5.3 Interfaces

Detailed Description

The FSP interfaces provide APIs for common functionality. They can be implemented by one or more modules. Modules can use other modules as dependencies using this interface layer.

Modules

	ADC Interface Interface for A/D Converters.
	CAC Interface Interface for clock frequency accuracy measurements.

	CAN Interface Interface for CAN peripheral.
	CGC Interface Interface for clock generation.
	Comparator Interface Interface for comparators.
	CRC Interface Interface for cyclic redundancy checking.
	CTSU Interface Interface for Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (CTSU) functions.
	DAC Interface Interface for D/A converters.
	Display Interface Interface for LCD panel displays.
	DOC Interface Interface for the Data Operation Circuit.
	ELC Interface Interface for the Event Link Controller.
	Ethernet Interface Interface for Ethernet functions.
	Ethernet PHY Interface Interface for Ethernet phy functions.
	External IRQ Interface

	Interface for detecting external interrupts.
	Flash Interface Interface for the Flash Memory.
	I2C Master Interface Interface for I2C master communication.
	I2C Slave Interface Interface for I2C slave communication.
	I2S Interface Interface for I2S audio communication.
	I/O Port Interface Interface for accessing I/O ports and configuring I/O functionality.
	JPEG Codec Interface Interface for JPEG functions.
	Key Matrix Interface Interface for key matrix functions.
	Low Power Modes Interface Interface for accessing low power modes.
	Low Voltage Detection Interface Interface for Low Voltage Detection.
	OPAMP Interface Interface for Operational Amplifiers.
	POEG Interface Interface for the Port Output Enable for GPT.

	RTC Interface Interface for accessing the Realtime Clock.
	SD/MMC Interface Interface for accessing SD, eMMC, and SDIO devices.
	SLCDC Interface Interface for Segment LCD controllers.
	SPI Interface Interface for SPI communications.
	SPI Flash Interface Interface for accessing external SPI flash devices.
	Three-Phase Interface Interface for three-phase timer functions.
	Timer Interface Interface for timer functions.
	Transfer Interface Interface for data transfer functions.
	UART Interface Interface for UART communications.
	USB Interface Interface for USB functions.
	USB HCDC Interface Interface for USB HCDC functions.

	USB HMSC Interface Interface for USB HMSC functions.
	USB PCDC Interface Interface for USB PCDC functions.
	USB PMSC Interface Interface for USB PMSC functions.
	WDT Interface Interface for watch dog timer functions.
	Block Media Interface Interface for block media memory access.
	FreeRTOS+FAT Port Interface Interface for FreeRTOS+FAT port.
	LittleFS Interface Interface for LittleFS access.
	Touch Middleware Interface Interface for Touch Middleware functions.

5.3.1 ADC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for A/D Converters.

Summary

The ADC interface provides standard ADC functionality including one-shot mode (single scan), continuous scan and group scan. It also allows configuration of hardware and software triggers for starting scans. After each conversion an interrupt can be triggered, and if a callback function is provided, the call back is invoked with the appropriate event information.

Implemented by: Analog to Digital Converter (r_adc)

Data Structures

struct	adc_status_t
struct	adc_callback_args_t
struct	adc_info_t
struct	adc_cfg_t
struct	adc_api_t
struct	adc_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	adc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	adc_mode_t
enum	adc_resolution_t
enum	adc_alignment_t
enum	adc_trigger_t
enum	adc_event_t
enum	adc_channel_t
enum	adc_state_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ adc_status_t

struct adc_status_t

ADC status.

Data Fields		
adc_state_t	state	Current state.

◆ adc_callback_args_t

struct adc_callback_args_t		
ADC callback arguments definitions		
Data Fields		
uint16_t	unit	ADC device in use.
adc_event_t	event	ADC callback event.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data.
adc_channel_t	channel	Channel of conversion result. Only valid for ADC_EVENT_CON VERSION_COMPLETE.

◆ **adc_info_t**

struct adc_info_t		
ADC Information Structure for Transfer Interface		
Data Fields		
__I uint16_t *	p_address	The address to start reading the data from.
uint32_t	length	The total number of transfers to read.
transfer_size_t	transfer_size	The size of each transfer.
elc_peripheral_t	elc_peripheral	Name of the peripheral in the ELC list.
elc_event_t	elc_event	Name of the ELC event for the peripheral.
uint32_t	calibration_data	Temperature sensor calibration data (0xFFFFFFFF if unsupported) for reference voltage.
int16_t	slope_microvolts	Temperature sensor slope in microvolts/degrees C.
bool	calibration_ongoing	Calibration is in progress.

◆ **adc_cfg_t**

struct adc_cfg_t	
ADC general configuration	
Data Fields	
uint16_t	unit
	ADC unit to be used.

adc_mode_t	mode
	ADC operation mode.
adc_resolution_t	resolution
	ADC resolution.
adc_alignment_t	alignment
	Specify left or right alignment; ignored if addition used.
adc_trigger_t	trigger
	Default and Group A trigger source.
IRQn_Type	scan_end_irq
	Scan end IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	scan_end_b_irq
	Scan end group B IRQ number.
uint8_t	scan_end_ipl
	Scan end interrupt priority.
uint8_t	scan_end_b_ipl
	Scan end group B interrupt priority.
void(*	p_callback)(adc_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback function; set to NULL for none.
void const *	p_context

	Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in adc_callback_args_t.
void const *	p_extend
	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.

◆ **adc_api_t**

struct adc_api_t	
ADC functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.	
Data Fields	
fsp_err_t(*	open)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	scanCfg)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_extend)
fsp_err_t(*	scanStart)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	scanStop)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	scanStatusGet)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_status_t *p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint16_t *const p_data)
fsp_err_t(*	read32)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint32_t *const p_data)
fsp_err_t(*	calibrate)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_extend)
fsp_err_t(*	offsetSet)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, int32_t const offset)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_info_t *const p_adc_info)

fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::open) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize ADC Unit; apply power, set the operational mode, trigger sources, interrupt priority, and configurations common to all channels and sensors.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_Open()
- R_SDADC_Open()

Precondition
Configure peripheral clocks, ADC pins and IRQs prior to calling this function.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure

◆ scanCfg

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::scanCfg) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_extend)

Configure the scan including the channels, groups, and scan triggers to be used for the unit that was initialized in the open call. Some configurations are not supported for all implementations. See implementation for details.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_ScanCfg()
- R_SDADC_ScanCfg()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[in]	p_extend	See implementation for details

◆ scanStart

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::scanStart) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Start the scan (in case of a software trigger), or enable the hardware trigger.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_ScanStart()
- R_SDADC_ScanStart()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure

◆ scanStop

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::scanStop) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Stop the ADC scan (in case of a software trigger), or disable the hardware trigger.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_ScanStop()
- R_SDADC_ScanStop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure

◆ scanStatusGet

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::scanStatusGet) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_status_t *p_status)

Check scan status.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_StatusGet()
- R_SDADC_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[out]	p_status	Pointer to store current status in

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::read) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint16_t *const p_data)

Read ADC conversion result.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_Read()
- R_SDADC_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[in]	reg_id	ADC channel to read (see enumeration adc_channel_t)
[in]	p_data	Pointer to variable to load value into.

◆ read32

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::read32) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, uint32_t *const p_data)

Read ADC conversion result into a 32-bit word.

Implemented as

- R_SDADC_Read32()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[in]	reg_id	ADC channel to read (see enumeration adc_channel_t)
[in]	p_data	Pointer to variable to load value into.

◆ calibrate

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::calibrate) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_extend)

Calibrate ADC or associated PGA (programmable gain amplifier). The driver may require implementation specific arguments to the p_extend input. Not supported for all implementations. See implementation for details.

Implemented as

- R_SDADC_Calibrate()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[in]	p_extend	Pointer to implementation specific arguments

◆ offsetSet

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::offsetSet) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_channel_t const reg_id, int32_t const offset)

Set offset for input PGA configured for differential input. Not supported for all implementations. See implementation for details.

Implemented as

- R_SDADC_OffsetSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[in]	reg_id	ADC channel to read (see enumeration adc_channel_t)
[in]	offset	See implementation for details.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::close) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close the specified ADC unit by ending any scan in progress, disabling interrupts, and removing power to the specified A/D unit.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_Close()
- R_SDADC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::infoGet) (adc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, adc_info_t *const p_adc_info)

Return the ADC data register address of the first (lowest number) channel and the total number of bytes to be read in order for the DTC/DMAC to read the conversion results of all configured channels. Return the temperature sensor calibration and slope data.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_InfoGet()
- R_SDADC_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[out]	p_adc_info	Pointer to ADC information structure

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* adc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Retrieve the API version.

Implemented as

- R_ADC_VersionGet()
- R_SDADC_VersionGet()

Precondition

This function retrieves the API version.

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to version structure

◆ adc_instance_t

struct adc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
adc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
adc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
void const *	p_channel_cfg	Pointer to the channel configuration structure for this instance.
adc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ adc_ctrl_t

typedef void adc_ctrl_t

ADC control block. Allocate using driver instance control structure from driver instance header file.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ adc_mode_t

enum adc_mode_t

ADC operation mode definitions

Enumerator	
ADC_MODE_SINGLE_SCAN	Single scan - one or more channels.
ADC_MODE_GROUP_SCAN	Two trigger sources to trigger scan for two groups which contain one or more channels.
ADC_MODE_CONTINUOUS_SCAN	Continuous scan - one or more channels.

◆ adc_resolution_t

enum adc_resolution_t	
ADC data resolution definitions	
Enumerator	
ADC_RESOLUTION_12_BIT	12 bit resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_10_BIT	10 bit resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_8_BIT	8 bit resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_14_BIT	14 bit resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_16_BIT	16 bit resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_24_BIT	24 bit resolution

◆ adc_alignment_t

enum adc_alignment_t	
ADC data alignment definitions	
Enumerator	
ADC_ALIGNMENT_RIGHT	Data alignment right.
ADC_ALIGNMENT_LEFT	Data alignment left.

◆ adc_trigger_t

enum adc_trigger_t	
ADC trigger mode definitions	
Enumerator	
ADC_TRIGGER_SOFTWARE	Software trigger; not for group modes.
ADC_TRIGGER_SYNC_ELC	Synchronous trigger via ELC.
ADC_TRIGGER_ASYNC_EXTERNAL	External asynchronous trigger; not for group modes.

◆ adc_event_t

enum adc_event_t	
ADC callback event definitions	
Enumerator	
ADC_EVENT_SCAN_COMPLETE	Normal/Group A scan complete.
ADC_EVENT_SCAN_COMPLETE_GROUP_B	Group B scan complete.
ADC_EVENT_CALIBRATION_COMPLETE	Calibration complete.
ADC_EVENT_CONVERSION_COMPLETE	Conversion complete.

◆ adc_channel_t

enum adc_channel_t	
ADC channels	
Enumerator	
ADC_CHANNEL_0	ADC channel 0.
ADC_CHANNEL_1	ADC channel 1.
ADC_CHANNEL_2	ADC channel 2.
ADC_CHANNEL_3	ADC channel 3.
ADC_CHANNEL_4	ADC channel 4.
ADC_CHANNEL_5	ADC channel 5.
ADC_CHANNEL_6	ADC channel 6.
ADC_CHANNEL_7	ADC channel 7.
ADC_CHANNEL_8	ADC channel 8.
ADC_CHANNEL_9	ADC channel 9.
ADC_CHANNEL_10	ADC channel 10.
ADC_CHANNEL_11	ADC channel 11.
ADC_CHANNEL_12	ADC channel 12.

ADC_CHANNEL_13	ADC channel 13.
ADC_CHANNEL_14	ADC channel 14.
ADC_CHANNEL_15	ADC channel 15.
ADC_CHANNEL_16	ADC channel 16.
ADC_CHANNEL_17	ADC channel 17.
ADC_CHANNEL_18	ADC channel 18.
ADC_CHANNEL_19	ADC channel 19.
ADC_CHANNEL_20	ADC channel 20.
ADC_CHANNEL_21	ADC channel 21.
ADC_CHANNEL_22	ADC channel 22.
ADC_CHANNEL_23	ADC channel 23.
ADC_CHANNEL_24	ADC channel 24.
ADC_CHANNEL_25	ADC channel 25.
ADC_CHANNEL_26	ADC channel 26.
ADC_CHANNEL_27	ADC channel 27.
ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX_A	Data duplexing register A.
ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX_B	Data duplexing register B.
ADC_CHANNEL_DUPLEX	Data duplexing register.
ADC_CHANNEL_TEMPERATURE	Temperature sensor output.
ADC_CHANNEL_VOLT	Internal reference voltage.

◆ adc_state_t

enum adc_state_t	
ADC states.	
Enumerator	
ADC_STATE_IDLE	ADC is idle.
ADC_STATE_SCAN_IN_PROGRESS	ADC scan in progress.

5.3.2 CAC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for clock frequency accuracy measurements.

Summary

The interface for the clock frequency accuracy measurement circuit (CAC) peripheral is used to check a system clock frequency with a reference clock signal by counting the number of pulses of the clock to be measured.

Implemented by: Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (r_cac)

Data Structures

struct	cac_ref_clock_config_t
struct	cac_meas_clock_config_t
struct	cac_callback_args_t
struct	cac_cfg_t
struct	cac_api_t
struct	cac_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	cac_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	cac_event_t
enum	cac_clock_type_t
enum	cac_clock_source_t
enum	cac_ref_divider_t
enum	cac_ref_digfilter_t
enum	cac_ref_edge_t
enum	cac_meas_divider_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ cac_ref_clock_config_t

struct cac_ref_clock_config_t

Structure defining the settings that apply to reference clock configuration.

Data Fields		
cac_ref_divider_t	divider	Divider specification for the Reference clock.
cac_clock_source_t	clock	Clock source for the Reference clock.
cac_ref_digfilter_t	digfilter	Digital filter selection for the CACREF ext clock.
cac_ref_edge_t	edge	Edge detection for the Reference clock.

◆ cac_meas_clock_config_t

struct cac_meas_clock_config_t

Structure defining the settings that apply to measurement clock configuration.

Data Fields		
cac_meas_divider_t	divider	Divider specification for the Measurement clock.
cac_clock_source_t	clock	Clock source for the Measurement clock.

◆ cac_callback_args_t

struct cac_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields

cac_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback.
void const *	p_context	Value provided in configuration structure.

◆ cac_cfg_t

struct cac_cfg_t

CAC Configuration

Data Fields

cac_ref_clock_config_t	cac_ref_clock
	reference clock specific settings
cac_meas_clock_config_t	cac_meas_clock
	measurement clock specific settings
uint16_t	cac_upper_limit
	the upper limit counter threshold
uint16_t	cac_lower_limit
	the lower limit counter threshold
IRQn_Type	mendi_irq
	Measurement End IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	ovfi_irq
	Measurement Overflow IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	ferri_irq
	Frequency Error IRQ number.

uint8_t	mendi_ipl
	Measurement end interrupt priority.
uint8_t	ovfi_ipl
	Overflow interrupt priority.
uint8_t	ferri_ipl
	Frequency error interrupt priority.
void(*	p_callback)(cac_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback provided when a CAC interrupt ISR occurs.
void const *	p_context
	Passed to user callback in cac_callback_args_t.
void const *	p_extend
	CAC hardware dependent configuration */.

◆ cac_api_t

struct cac_api_t

CAC functions implemented at the HAL layer API

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cac_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	startMeasurement)(cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	stopMeasurement)(cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *const p_counter)

fsp_err_t(*	close)(cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* cac_api_t::open) (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cac_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open function for CAC device.

Parameters

[out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CAC device control. Must be declared by user.
[in]	cac_cfg_t	Pointer to CAC configuration structure.

◆ startMeasurement

fsp_err_t(* cac_api_t::startMeasurement) (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Begin a measurement for the CAC peripheral.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CAC device control.

◆ stopMeasurement

fsp_err_t(* cac_api_t::stopMeasurement) (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

End a measurement for the CAC peripheral.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CAC device control.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* cac_api_t::read) (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *const p_counter)

Read function for CAC peripheral.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control for the CAC device context.
[in]	p_counter	Pointer to variable in which to store the current CACNTBR register contents.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* cac_api_t::close) (cac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close function for CAC device.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CAC device control.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* cac_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get the CAC API and code version information.

Parameters

[out]	p_version	is value returned.

◆ cac_instance_t

struct cac_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
cac_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
cac_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
cac_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ cac_ctrl_t

typedef void cac_ctrl_t
CAC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the CAC API calls. **Implemented as** ◦ cac_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ cac_event_t

enum cac_event_t

Event types returned by the ISR callback when used in CAC interrupt mode

Enumerator	
CAC_EVENT_FREQUENCY_ERROR	Frequency error.
CAC_EVENT_MEASUREMENT_COMPLETE	Measurement complete.
CAC_EVENT_COUNTER_OVERFLOW	Counter overflow.

◆ cac_clock_type_t

enum cac_clock_type_t

Enumeration of the two possible clocks.

Enumerator	
CAC_CLOCK_MEASURED	Measurement clock.
CAC_CLOCK_REFERENCE	Reference clock.

◆ cac_clock_source_t

enum cac_clock_source_t	
Enumeration of the possible clock sources for both the reference and measurement clocks.	
Enumerator	
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_MAIN_OSC	Main clock oscillator.
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_SUBCLOCK	Sub-clock.
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_HOCO	HOCO (High speed on chip oscillator)
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_MOCO	MOCO (Middle speed on chip oscillator)
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_LOCO	LOCO (Middle speed on chip oscillator)
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_PCLKB	PCLKB (Peripheral Clock B)
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_IWDT	IWDT- Dedicated on-chip oscillator.
CAC_CLOCK_SOURCE_EXTERNAL	Externally supplied measurement clock on CACREF pin.

◆ cac_ref_divider_t

enum cac_ref_divider_t	
Enumeration of available dividers for the reference clock.	
Enumerator	
CAC_REF_DIV_32	Reference clock divided by 32.
CAC_REF_DIV_128	Reference clock divided by 128.
CAC_REF_DIV_1024	Reference clock divided by 1024.
CAC_REF_DIV_8192	Reference clock divided by 8192.

◆ cac_ref_digfilter_t

enum cac_ref_digfilter_t	
Enumeration of available digital filter settings for an external reference clock.	
Enumerator	
CAC_REF_DIGITAL_FILTER_OFF	No digital filter on the CACREF pin for reference clock.
CAC_REF_DIGITAL_FILTER_1	Sampling clock for digital filter = measuring frequency.
CAC_REF_DIGITAL_FILTER_4	Sampling clock for digital filter = measuring frequency/4.
CAC_REF_DIGITAL_FILTER_16	Sampling clock for digital filter = measuring frequency/16.

◆ cac_ref_edge_t

enum cac_ref_edge_t	
Enumeration of available edge detect settings for the reference clock.	
Enumerator	
CAC_REF_EDGE_RISE	Rising edge detect for the Reference clock.
CAC_REF_EDGE_FALL	Falling edge detect for the Reference clock.
CAC_REF_EDGE_BOTH	Both Rising and Falling edges detect for the Reference clock.

◆ cac_meas_divider_t

enum cac_meas_divider_t	
Enumeration of available dividers for the measurement clock	
Enumerator	
CAC_MEAS_DIV_1	Measurement clock divided by 1.
CAC_MEAS_DIV_4	Measurement clock divided by 4.
CAC_MEAS_DIV_8	Measurement clock divided by 8.
CAC_MEAS_DIV_32	Measurement clock divided by 32.

5.3.3 CAN Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for CAN peripheral.

Summary

The CAN interface provides common APIs for CAN HAL drivers. CAN interface supports following features.

- Full-duplex CAN communication
- Generic CAN parameter setting
- Interrupt driven transmit/receive processing
- Callback function support with returning event code
- Hardware resource locking during a transaction

Controller Area Network (r_can)

Data Structures

struct	can_bit_timing_cfg_t
struct	can_frame_t
struct	can_mailbox_t
struct	can_callback_args_t

struct	can_cfg_t
struct	can_api_t
struct	can_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef uint32_t	can_id_t
typedef void	can_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	can_event_t
enum	can_status_t
enum	can_error_t
enum	can_operation_mode_t
enum	can_test_mode_t
enum	can_id_mode_t
enum	can_frame_type_t
enum	can_message_mode_t
enum	can_clock_source_t
enum	can_time_segment1_t
enum	can_time_segment2_t
enum	can_sync_jump_width_t
enum	can_mailbox_send_receive_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ can_bit_timing_cfg_t

struct can_bit_timing_cfg_t

CAN bit rate configuration.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	baud_rate_prescaler	Baud rate prescaler. Valid values: 1 - 1024.

can_time_segment1_t	time_segment_1	Time segment 1 control.
can_time_segment2_t	time_segment_2	Time segment 2 control.
can_sync_jump_width_t	synchronization_jump_width	Synchronization jump width.

◆ can_frame_t

struct can_frame_t		
CAN data Frame		
Data Fields		
can_id_t	id	CAN id.
uint8_t	data_length_code	CAN Data Length code, number of bytes in the message.
uint8_t	data[8]	CAN data, up to 8 bytes.
can_frame_type_t	type	Frame type, data or remote frame.

◆ can_mailbox_t

struct can_mailbox_t		
CAN Mailbox		
Data Fields		
can_id_t	mailbox_id	Mailbox ID.
can_mailbox_send_receive_t	mailbox_type	Receive or Transmit mailbox type.
can_frame_type_t	frame_type	Frame type for receive mailbox.

◆ can_callback_args_t

struct can_callback_args_t		
CAN callback parameter definition		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	channel	Device channel number.
can_event_t	event	Event code.
uint32_t	mailbox	Mailbox number of interrupt source.
can_frame_t *	p_frame	Pointer to the received frame.
void const *	p_context	Context provided to user during callback.

◆ can_cfg_t

struct can_cfg_t
CAN Configuration

Data Fields	
uint32_t	channel
	CAN channel.
can_bit_timing_cfg_t *	p_bit_timing
	CAN bit timing.
can_id_mode_t	id_mode
	Standard or Extended ID mode.
uint32_t	mailbox_count
	Number of mailboxes.
can_mailbox_t *	p_mailbox
	Pointer to mailboxes.
can_message_mode_t	message_mode
	Overwrite message or overrun.
can_operation_mode_t	operation_mode
	Can operation mode.
can_test_mode_t	test_mode
	Can operation mode.
void(*	p_callback)(can_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to callback function.

void const *	p_context
	User defined callback context.
void const *	p_extend
	CAN hardware dependent configuration.
uint8_t	ipl
	Error/Transmit/Receive interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	error_irq
	Error IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	mailbox_rx_irq
	Receive mailbox IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	mailbox_tx_irq
	Transmit mailbox IRQ number.

◆ can_api_t

struct can_api_t

Shared Interface definition for CAN

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, can_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t mailbox, can_frame_t *const p_frame)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	modeTransition)(can_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, can_operation_mode_t

	operation_mode, can_test_mode_t test_mode)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, can_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* can_api_t::open) (can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, can_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open function for CAN device

Implemented as

- R_CAN_Open()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the CAN control block Must be declared by user. Value set here.
[in]	can_cfg_t	Pointer to CAN configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* can_api_t::write) (can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t mailbox, can_frame_t *const p_frame)

Write function for CAN device

Implemented as

- R_CAN_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the CAN control block.
[in]	mailbox	Mailbox (number) to write to.
[in]	p_frame	Pointer for frame of CAN ID, DLC, data and frame type to write.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* can_api_t::close) (can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close function for CAN device

Implemented as

- R_CAN_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the CAN control block.

◆ modeTransition

fsp_err_t(* can_api_t::modeTransition) (can_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, can_operation_mode_t operation_mode, can_test_mode_t test_mode)

Mode Transition function for CAN device

Implemented as

- R_CAN_ModeTransition()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the CAN control block.
[in]	operation_mode	Destination CAN operation state.
[in]	test_mode	Destination CAN test state.

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* can_api_t::infoGet) (can_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, can_info_t *const p_info)

Get CAN channel info.

Implemented as

- R_CAN_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Handle for channel (pointer to channel control block)
[out]	p_info	Memory address to return channel specific data to.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* can_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Version get function for CAN device

Implemented as

- R_CAN_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to the memory to store the version information

◆ can_instance_t

struct can_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
can_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
can_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
can_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ can_id_t

typedef uint32_t can_id_t

CAN Id

◆ can_ctrl_t

typedef void can_ctrl_t

CAN control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the CAN API calls.

Implemented as

- can_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ can_event_t

enum can_event_t	
CAN event codes	
Enumerator	
CAN_EVENT_ERR_WARNING	Error Warning event.
CAN_EVENT_ERR_PASSIVE	Error Passive event.
CAN_EVENT_ERR_BUS_OFF	Bus Off event.
CAN_EVENT_BUS_RECOVERY	Bus Off Recovery event.
CAN_EVENT_MAILBOX_MESSAGE_LOST	Mailbox has been overrun.
CAN_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE	Receive complete event.
CAN_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE	Transmit complete event.

◆ can_status_t

enum can_status_t	
CAN Status	
Enumerator	
CAN_STATUS_NEW_DATA	New Data status flag.
CAN_STATUS_SENT_DATA	Sent Data status flag.
CAN_STATUS_RECEIVE_FIFO	Receive FIFO status flag (Not supported)
CAN_STATUS_TRANSMIT_FIFO	Transmit FIFO status flag (Not supported)
CAN_STATUS_NORMAL_MBOX_MESSAGE_LOST	Normal mailbox message lost status flag.
CAN_STATUS_FIFO_MBOX_MESSAGE_LOST	FIFO mailbox message lost status flag (Not Supported)
CAN_STATUS_TRANSMISSION_ABORT	Transmission abort status flag.
CAN_STATUS_ERROR	Error status flag.
CAN_STATUS_RESET_MODE	Reset mode status flag.
CAN_STATUS_HALT_MODE	Halt mode status flag.
CAN_STATUS_SLEEP_MODE	Sleep mode status flag.
CAN_STATUS_ERROR_PASSIVE	Error-passive status flag.
CAN_STATUS_BUS_OFF	Bus-off status flag.

◆ can_error_t

enum can_error_t	
CAN Error Code	
Enumerator	
CAN_ERROR_STUFF	Stuff Error.
CAN_ERROR_FORM	Form Error.
CAN_ERROR_ACK	ACK Error.
CAN_ERROR_CRC	CRC Error.
CAN_ERROR_BIT_RECESSIVE	Bit Error (recessive) Error.
CAN_ERROR_BIT_DOMINANT	Bit Error (dominant) Error.
CAN_ERROR_ACK_DELIMITER	ACK Delimiter Error.
CAN_ERROR_ERROR_DISPLAY_MODE	Error Display mode.

◆ can_operation_mode_t

enum can_operation_mode_t	
CAN Operation modes	
Enumerator	
CAN_OPERATION_MODE_NORMAL	CAN Normal Operation Mode.
CAN_OPERATION_MODE_RESET	CAN Reset Operation Mode.
CAN_OPERATION_MODE_HALT	CAN Halt Operation Mode.
CAN_OPERATION_MODE_SLEEP	CAN SLEEP Operation Mode.

◆ can_test_mode_t

enum can_test_mode_t	
CAN Test modes	
Enumerator	
CAN_TEST_MODE_DISABLED	CAN Test Mode Disabled.
CAN_TEST_MODE_LISTEN	CAN Test Listen Mode.
CAN_TEST_MODE_LOOPBACK_EXTERNAL	CAN Test External Loopback Mode.
CAN_TEST_MODE_LOOPBACK_INTERNAL	CAN Test Internal Loopback Mode.

◆ can_id_mode_t

enum can_id_mode_t	
CAN ID modes	
Enumerator	
CAN_ID_MODE_STANDARD	Standard IDs of 11 bits used.
CAN_ID_MODE_EXTENDED	Extended IDs of 29 bits used.

◆ can_frame_type_t

enum can_frame_type_t	
CAN frame types	
Enumerator	
CAN_FRAME_TYPE_DATA	Data frame type.
CAN_FRAME_TYPE_REMOTE	Remote frame type.

◆ can_message_mode_t

enum can_message_mode_t

CAN Message Modes

Enumerator	
CAN_MESSAGE_MODE_OVERWRITE	Receive data will be overwritten if not read before the next frame.
CAN_MESSAGE_MODE_OVERRUN	Receive data will be retained until it is read.

◆ can_clock_source_t

enum can_clock_source_t

CAN Source Clock

Enumerator	
CAN_CLOCK_SOURCE_PCLKB	PCLKB is the source of the CAN Clock.
CAN_CLOCK_SOURCE_CANMCLK	CANMCLK is the source of the CAN Clock.

◆ can_time_segment1_t

enum can_time_segment1_t

CAN Time Segment 1 Time Quanta

Enumerator	
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ4	Time Segment 1 setting for 4 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ5	Time Segment 1 setting for 5 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ6	Time Segment 1 setting for 6 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ7	Time Segment 1 setting for 7 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ8	Time Segment 1 setting for 8 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ9	Time Segment 1 setting for 9 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ10	Time Segment 1 setting for 10 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ11	Time Segment 1 setting for 11 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ12	Time Segment 1 setting for 12 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ13	Time Segment 1 setting for 13 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ14	Time Segment 1 setting for 14 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ15	Time Segment 1 setting for 15 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT1_TQ16	Time Segment 1 setting for 16 Time Quanta.

◆ can_time_segment2_t

enum can_time_segment2_t	
CAN Time Segment 2 Time Quanta	
Enumerator	
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT2_TQ2	Time Segment 2 setting for 2 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT2_TQ3	Time Segment 2 setting for 3 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT2_TQ4	Time Segment 2 setting for 4 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT2_TQ5	Time Segment 2 setting for 5 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT2_TQ6	Time Segment 2 setting for 6 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT2_TQ7	Time Segment 2 setting for 7 Time Quanta.
CAN_TIME_SEGMENT2_TQ8	Time Segment 2 setting for 8 Time Quanta.

◆ can_sync_jump_width_t

enum can_sync_jump_width_t	
CAN Synchronization Jump Width Time Quanta	
Enumerator	
CAN_SYNC_JUMP_WIDTH_TQ1	Synchronization Jump Width setting for 1 Time Quanta.
CAN_SYNC_JUMP_WIDTH_TQ2	Synchronization Jump Width setting for 2 Time Quanta.
CAN_SYNC_JUMP_WIDTH_TQ3	Synchronization Jump Width setting for 3 Time Quanta.
CAN_SYNC_JUMP_WIDTH_TQ4	Synchronization Jump Width setting for 4 Time Quanta.

◆ can_mailbox_send_receive_t

enum can_mailbox_send_receive_t	
CAN Mailbox type	
Enumerator	
CAN_MAILBOX_RECEIVE	Mailbox is for receiving.
CAN_MAILBOX_TRANSMIT	Mailbox is for sending.

5.3.4 CGC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for clock generation.

Summary

The CGC interface provides the ability to configure and use all of the CGC module's capabilities. Among the capabilities is the selection of several clock sources to use as the system clock source. Additionally, the system clocks can be divided down to provide a wide range of frequencies for various system and peripheral needs.

Clock stability can be checked and clocks may also be stopped to save power when not needed. The API has a function to return the frequency of the system and system peripheral clocks at run time. There is also a feature to detect when the main oscillator has stopped, with the option of calling a user provided callback function.

The CGC interface is implemented by:

- Clock Generation Circuit (r_cgc)

Data Structures

struct	cgc_callback_args_t
struct	cgc_pll_cfg_t
union	cgc_divider_cfg_t
struct	cgc_cfg_t
struct	cgc_clocks_cfg_t

struct	cgc_api_t
struct	cgc_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	cgc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	cgc_event_t
enum	cgc_clock_t
enum	cgc_pll_div_t
enum	cgc_pll_mul_t
enum	cgc_sys_clock_div_t
enum	cgc_usb_clock_div_t
enum	cgc_clock_change_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ cgc_callback_args_t

struct cgc_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
cgc_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data.

◆ cgc_pll_cfg_t

struct cgc_pll_cfg_t

Clock configuration structure - Used as an input parameter to the cgc_api_t::clockStart function for the PLL clock.

Data Fields		
cgc_clock_t	source_clock	PLL source clock (main oscillator or HOCO)
cgc_pll_div_t	divider	PLL divider.
cgc_pll_mul_t	multiplier	PLL multiplier.

◆ cgc_divider_cfg_t

union cgc_divider_cfg_t		
Clock configuration structure - Used as an input parameter to the cgc_api_t::systemClockSet and cgc_api_t::systemClockGet functions.		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	sckdivcr_w	(@ 0x4001E020) System clock Division control register
struct cgc_divider_cfg_t	__unnamed__	

◆ cgc_cfg_t

struct cgc_cfg_t
Configuration options.

◆ cgc_clocks_cfg_t

struct cgc_clocks_cfg_t		
Clock configuration		
Data Fields		
cgc_clock_t	system_clock	System clock source enumeration.
cgc_pll_cfg_t	pll_cfg	PLL configuration structure.
cgc_divider_cfg_t	divider_cfg	Clock dividers structure.
cgc_clock_change_t	loco_state	State of LOCO.
cgc_clock_change_t	moco_state	State of MOCO.
cgc_clock_change_t	hoco_state	State of HOCO.
cgc_clock_change_t	mainosc_state	State of Main oscillator.
cgc_clock_change_t	pll_state	State of PLL.

◆ cgc_api_t

struct cgc_api_t	
CGC functions implemented at the HAL layer follow this API.	
Data Fields	
fsp_err_t(*	open)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	clocksCfg)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clocks_cfg_t const *const p_clock_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	clockStart)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source,

	cgc_pll_cfg_t const *const p_pll_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	clockStop)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source)
fsp_err_t(*	clockCheck)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source)
fsp_err_t(*	systemClockSet)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source, cgc_divider_cfg_t const *const p_divider_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	systemClockGet)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t *const p_clock_source, cgc_divider_cfg_t *const p_divider_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	oscStopDetectEnable)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	oscStopDetectDisable)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	oscStopStatusClear)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::open) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration

Implemented as

- R_CGC_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration

◆ clocksCfg

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::clocksCfg) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clocks_cfg_t const *const p_clock_cfg)

Configure all system clocks.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_ClocksCfg()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	p_clock_cfg	Pointer to desired configuration of system clocks

◆ clockStart

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::clockStart) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source, cgc_pll_cfg_t const *const p_pll_cfg)

Start a clock.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_ClockStart()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	clock_source	Clock source to start
[in]	p_pll_cfg	Pointer to PLL configuration, can be NULL if clock_source is not CGC_CLOCK_PLL

◆ clockStop

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::clockStop) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source)

Stop a clock.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_ClockStop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	clock_source	The clock source to stop

◆ clockCheck

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::clockCheck) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source)

Check the stability of the selected clock.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_ClockCheck()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	clock_source	Which clock source to check for stability

◆ systemClockSet

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::systemClockSet) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t clock_source, cgc_divider_cfg_t const *const p_divider_cfg)

Set the system clock.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_SystemClockSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	clock_source	Clock source to set as system clock
[in]	p_divider_cfg	Pointer to the clock divider configuration

◆ systemClockGet

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::systemClockGet) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, cgc_clock_t *const p_clock_source, cgc_divider_cfg_t *const p_divider_cfg)

Get the system clock information.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_SystemClockGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[out]	p_clock_source	Returns the current system clock
[out]	p_divider_cfg	Returns the current system clock dividers

◆ oscStopDetectEnable

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::oscStopDetectEnable) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Enable and optionally register a callback for Main Oscillator stop detection.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_OscStopDetectEnable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	p_callback	Callback function that will be called by the NMI interrupt when an oscillation stop is detected. If the second argument is "false", then this argument can be NULL.
[in]	enable	Enable/disable Oscillation Stop Detection

◆ oscStopDetectDisable

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::oscStopDetectDisable) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable Main Oscillator stop detection.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_OscStopDetectDisable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block

◆ oscStopStatusClear

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::oscStopStatusClear) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Clear the oscillator stop detection flag.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_OscStopStatusClear()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::close) (cgc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close the CGC driver.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block

◆ **versionGet**

fsp_err_t(* cgc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Gets the CGC driver version.

Implemented as

- R_CGC_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used

◆ **cgc_instance_t**

struct cgc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
cgc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
cgc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
cgc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ **cgc_ctrl_t**

typedef void cgc_ctrl_t

CGC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the CGC API calls.

Implemented as

- cgc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ **cgc_event_t**

enum cgc_event_t

Events that can trigger a callback function

Enumerator	
CGC_EVENT_OSC_STOP_DETECT	Oscillator stop detection has caused the event.

◆ cgc_clock_t

enum cgc_clock_t	
System clock source identifiers - The source of ICLK, BCLK, FCLK, PCLKS A-D and UCLK prior to the system clock divider	
Enumerator	
CGC_CLOCK_HOCO	The high speed on chip oscillator.
CGC_CLOCK_MOCO	The middle speed on chip oscillator.
CGC_CLOCK_LOCO	The low speed on chip oscillator.
CGC_CLOCK_MAIN_OSC	The main oscillator.
CGC_CLOCK_SUBCLOCK	The subclock oscillator.
CGC_CLOCK_PLL	The PLL oscillator.

◆ cgc_pll_div_t

enum cgc_pll_div_t	
PLL divider values	
Enumerator	
CGC_PLL_DIV_1	PLL divider of 1.
CGC_PLL_DIV_2	PLL divider of 2.
CGC_PLL_DIV_3	PLL divider of 3 (S7, S5 only)
CGC_PLL_DIV_4	PLL divider of 4 (S3 only)

◆ cgc_pll_mul_t

enum cgc_pll_mul_t

PLL multiplier values

Enumerator	
CGC_PLL_MUL_8_0	PLL multiplier of 8.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_9_0	PLL multiplier of 9.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_10_0	PLL multiplier of 10.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_10_5	PLL multiplier of 10.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_11_0	PLL multiplier of 11.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_11_5	PLL multiplier of 11.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_12_0	PLL multiplier of 12.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_12_5	PLL multiplier of 12.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_13_0	PLL multiplier of 13.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_13_5	PLL multiplier of 13.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_14_0	PLL multiplier of 14.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_14_5	PLL multiplier of 14.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_15_0	PLL multiplier of 15.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_15_5	PLL multiplier of 15.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_16_0	PLL multiplier of 16.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_16_5	PLL multiplier of 16.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_17_0	PLL multiplier of 17.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_17_5	PLL multiplier of 17.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_18_0	PLL multiplier of 18.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_18_5	PLL multiplier of 18.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_19_0	PLL multiplier of 19.0.

CGC_PLL_MUL_19_5	PLL multiplier of 19.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_20_0	PLL multiplier of 20.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_20_5	PLL multiplier of 20.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_21_0	PLL multiplier of 21.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_21_5	PLL multiplier of 21.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_22_0	PLL multiplier of 22.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_22_5	PLL multiplier of 22.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_23_0	PLL multiplier of 23.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_23_5	PLL multiplier of 23.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_24_0	PLL multiplier of 24.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_24_5	PLL multiplier of 24.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_25_0	PLL multiplier of 25.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_25_5	PLL multiplier of 25.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_26_0	PLL multiplier of 26.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_26_5	PLL multiplier of 26.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_27_0	PLL multiplier of 27.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_27_5	PLL multiplier of 27.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_28_0	PLL multiplier of 28.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_28_5	PLL multiplier of 28.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_29_0	PLL multiplier of 29.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_29_5	PLL multiplier of 29.5.
CGC_PLL_MUL_30_0	PLL multiplier of 30.0.
CGC_PLL_MUL_31_0	PLL multiplier of 31.0.

◆ cgc_sys_clock_div_t

enum cgc_sys_clock_div_t

System clock divider vlues - The individually selectable divider of each of the system clocks, ICLK, BCLK, FCLK, PCLKS A-D.

Enumerator	
CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_1	System clock divided by 1.
CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_2	System clock divided by 2.
CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_4	System clock divided by 4.
CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_8	System clock divided by 8.
CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_16	System clock divided by 16.
CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_32	System clock divided by 32.
CGC_SYS_CLOCK_DIV_64	System clock divided by 64.

◆ cgc_usb_clock_div_t

enum cgc_usb_clock_div_t

USB clock divider values

Enumerator	
CGC_USB_CLOCK_DIV_3	Divide USB source clock by 3.
CGC_USB_CLOCK_DIV_4	Divide USB source clock by 4.
CGC_USB_CLOCK_DIV_5	Divide USB source clock by 5.

◆ cgc_clock_change_t

enum cgc_clock_change_t	
Clock options	
Enumerator	
CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_START	Start the clock.
CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_STOP	Stop the clock.
CGC_CLOCK_CHANGE_NONE	No change to the clock.

5.3.5 Comparator Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for comparators.

Summary

The comparator interface provides standard comparator functionality, including generating an event when the comparator result changes.

Implemented by: High-Speed Analog Comparator (r_acmphs) Low-Power Analog Comparator (r_acmplp)

Data Structures

struct	comparator_info_t
struct	comparator_status_t
struct	comparator_callback_args_t
struct	comparator_cfg_t
struct	comparator_api_t
struct	comparator_instance_t

Macros

#define	COMPARATOR_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	comparator_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	comparator_mode_t
enum	comparator_trigger_t
enum	comparator_polarity_invert_t
enum	comparator_pin_output_t
enum	comparator_filter_t
enum	comparator_state_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ comparator_info_t

struct comparator_info_t

Comparator information.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	min_stabilization_wait_us	Minimum stabilization wait time in microseconds.

◆ comparator_status_t

struct comparator_status_t

Comparator status.

Data Fields		
comparator_state_t	state	Current comparator state.

◆ comparator_callback_args_t

struct comparator_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in comparator_api_t::open function in comparator_cfg_t.
uint32_t	channel	The physical hardware channel that caused the interrupt.

◆ comparator_cfg_t

struct comparator_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in open function

Data Fields

uint8_t	channel
	Hardware channel used.
comparator_mode_t	mode
	Normal or window mode.
comparator_trigger_t	trigger
	Trigger setting.
comparator_filter_t	filter
	Digital filter clock divisor setting.
comparator_polarity_invert_t	invert
	Whether to invert output.
comparator_pin_output_t	pin_output
	Whether to include output on output pin.
uint8_t	vref_select
	Internal Vref Select.
uint8_t	ipl
	Interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	irq

	NVIC interrupt number.
void(*	p_callback)(comparator_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context
void const *	p_extend
	Comparator hardware dependent configuration.

Field Documentation

◆ p_callback

void(* comparator_cfg_t::p_callback) (comparator_callback_args_t *p_args)

Callback called when comparator event occurs.

◆ p_context

void const* comparator_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in comparator_callback_args_t.

◆ comparator_api_t

struct comparator_api_t

Comparator functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	outputEnable)(comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* comparator_api_t::open) (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize the comparator.

Implemented as

- R_ACMPHS_Open()
- R_ACMPLP_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration

◆ outputEnable

fsp_err_t(* comparator_api_t::outputEnable) (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Start the comparator.

Implemented as

- R_ACMPHS_OutputEnable()
- R_ACMPLP_OutputEnable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* comparator_api_t::infoGet) (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_info_t *const p_info)

Provide information such as the recommended minimum stabilization wait time.

Implemented as

- R_ACMPHS_InfoGet()
- R_ACMPLP_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[out]	p_info	Comparator information stored here

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* comparator_api_t::statusGet) (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, comparator_status_t *const p_status)

Provide current comparator status.

Implemented as

- R_ACMPHS_StatusGet()
- R_ACMPLP_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[out]	p_status	Status stored here

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* comparator_api_t::close) (comparator_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Stop the comparator.

Implemented as

- R_ACMPHS_Close()
- R_ACMPLP_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* comparator_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Retrieve the API version.

Implemented as

- R_ACMPHS_VersionGet()
- R_ACMPLP_VersionGet()

Precondition
This function retrieves the API version.

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to version structure

◆ comparator_instance_t

struct comparator_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
comparator_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
comparator_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
comparator_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ COMPARATOR_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define COMPARATOR_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Includes board and MCU related header files. Version Number of API.

Typedef Documentation

◆ comparator_ctrl_t

typedef void comparator_ctrl_t

Comparator control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the comparator API calls.

Implemented as

- acmphs_instance_ctrl_t
- acmplp_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ comparator_mode_t

enum comparator_mode_t	
Select whether to invert the polarity of the comparator output.	
Enumerator	
COMPARATOR_MODE_NORMAL	Normal mode.
COMPARATOR_MODE_WINDOW	Window mode, not supported by all implementations.

◆ comparator_trigger_t

enum comparator_trigger_t	
Trigger type: rising edge, falling edge, both edges, low level.	
Enumerator	
COMPARATOR_TRIGGER_RISING	Rising edge trigger.
COMPARATOR_TRIGGER_FALLING	Falling edge trigger.
COMPARATOR_TRIGGER_BOTH_EDGE	Both edges trigger.

◆ comparator_polarity_invert_t

enum comparator_polarity_invert_t	
Select whether to invert the polarity of the comparator output.	
Enumerator	
COMPARATOR_POLARITY_INVERT_OFF	Do not invert polarity.
COMPARATOR_POLARITY_INVERT_ON	Invert polarity.

◆ comparator_pin_output_t

enum comparator_pin_output_t	
Select whether to include the comparator output on the output pin.	
Enumerator	
COMPARATOR_PIN_OUTPUT_OFF	Do not include comparator output on output pin.
COMPARATOR_PIN_OUTPUT_ON	Include comparator output on output pin.

◆ comparator_filter_t

enum comparator_filter_t	
Comparator digital filtering sample clock divisor settings.	
Enumerator	
COMPARATOR_FILTER_OFF	Disable debounce filter.
COMPARATOR_FILTER_1	Filter using PCLK divided by 1, not supported by all implementations.
COMPARATOR_FILTER_8	Filter using PCLK divided by 8.
COMPARATOR_FILTER_16	Filter using PCLK divided by 16, not supported by all implementations.
COMPARATOR_FILTER_32	Filter using PCLK divided by 32.

◆ comparator_state_t

enum comparator_state_t	
Current comparator state.	
Enumerator	
COMPARATOR_STATE_OUTPUT_LOW	VCMP < VREF if polarity is not inverted, VCMP > VREF if inverted.
COMPARATOR_STATE_OUTPUT_HIGH	VCMP > VREF if polarity is not inverted, VCMP < VREF if inverted.
COMPARATOR_STATE_OUTPUT_DISABLED	comparator_api_t::outputEnable() has not been called

5.3.6 CRC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for cyclic redundancy checking.

Summary

The CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check) calculator generates CRC codes using five different polynomials including 8 bit, 16 bit, and 32 bit variations. Calculation can be performed by sending data to the block using the CPU or by snooping on read or write activity on one of 10 SCI channels.

Implemented by:

- Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) Calculator (r_crc)

Data Structures

struct	crc_input_t
struct	crc_cfg_t
struct	crc_api_t
struct	crc_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	crc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	crc_polynomial_t
enum	crc_bit_order_t
enum	crc_snoop_direction_t
enum	crc_snoop_address_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ crc_input_t

struct crc_input_t
Structure for CRC inputs

◆ crc_cfg_t

struct crc_cfg_t		
User configuration structure, used in open function		
Data Fields		
crc_polynomial_t	polynomial	CRC Generating Polynomial Switching (GPS)
crc_bit_order_t	bit_order	CRC Calculation Switching (LMS)
crc_snoop_address_t	snoop_address	Register Snoop Address (CRCSA)
void const *	p_extend	CRC Hardware Dependent Configuration.

◆ crc_api_t

struct crc_api_t	
CRC driver structure. General CRC functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.	
Data Fields	
fsp_err_t(*	open)(crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, crc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	crcResultGet)(crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *crc_result)
fsp_err_t(*	snoopEnable)(crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t crc_seed)
fsp_err_t(*	snoopDisable)(crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	calculate)(crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, crc_input_t *const p_crc_input, uint32_t *p_crc_result)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* crc_api_t::open) (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, crc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open the CRC driver module.

Implemented as

- R_CRC_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CRC device handle.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to a configuration structure.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* crc_api_t::close) (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close the CRC module driver

Implemented as

- R_CRC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to crc device handle

Return values

FSP_SUCCESS	Configuration was successful.

◆ crcResultGet

fsp_err_t(* crc_api_t::crcResultGet) (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *crc_result)

Return the current calculated value.

Implemented as

- R_CRC_CalculatedValueGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CRC device handle.
[out]	crc_result	The calculated value from the last CRC calculation.

◆ snoopEnable

fsp_err_t(* crc_api_t::snoopEnable) (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t crc_seed)

Configure and Enable snooping.

Implemented as

- R_CRC_SnoopEnable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CRC device handle.
[in]	crc_seed	CRC seed.

◆ snoopDisable

fsp_err_t(* crc_api_t::snoopDisable) (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable snooping.

Implemented as

- R_CRC_SnoopDisable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to CRC device handle.

◆ calculate

fsp_err_t(* crc_api_t::calculate) (crc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, crc_input_t *const p_crc_input, uint32_t *p_crc_result)

Perform a CRC calculation on a block of data.

Implemented as

- R_CRC_Calculate()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to crc device handle.
[in]	p_crc_input	A pointer to structure for CRC inputs
[out]	crc_result	The calculated value of the CRC calculation.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* crc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *version)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros.

Implemented as

- R_CRC_VersionGet()

◆ crc_instance_t

struct crc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
crc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
crc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
crc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ crc_ctrl_t

typedef void crc_ctrl_t

CRC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the CRC API calls.

Implemented as

- crc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ crc_polynomial_t

enum crc_polynomial_t	
CRC Generating Polynomial Switching (GPS).	
Enumerator	
CRC_POLYNOMIAL_CRC_8	8-bit CRC-8 (X^8 + X^2 + X + 1)
CRC_POLYNOMIAL_CRC_16	16-bit CRC-16 (X^16 + X^15 + X^2 + 1)
CRC_POLYNOMIAL_CRC_CCITT	16-bit CRC-CCITT (X^16 + X^12 + X^5 + 1)
CRC_POLYNOMIAL_CRC_32	32-bit CRC-32 (X^32 + X^26 + X^23 + X^22 + X^16 + X^12 + X^11 + X^10 + X^8 + X^7 + X^5 + X^4 + X^2 + X + 1)
CRC_POLYNOMIAL_CRC_32C	32-bit CRC-32C (X^32 + X^28 + X^27 + X^26 + X^25 + X^23 + X^22 + X^20 + X^19 + X^18 + X^14 + X^13 + X^11 + X^10 + X^9 + X^8 + X^6 + 1)

◆ crc_bit_order_t

enum crc_bit_order_t	
CRC Calculation Switching (LMS)	
Enumerator	
CRC_BIT_ORDER_LMS_LSB	Generates CRC for LSB first communication.
CRC_BIT_ORDER_LMS_MSB	Generates CRC for MSB first communication.

◆ crc_snoop_direction_t

enum crc_snoop_direction_t	
Snoop-On-Write/Read Switch (CRCSWR)	
Enumerator	
CRC_SNOOP_DIRECTION_RECEIVE	Snoop-on-read.
CRC_SNOOP_DIRECTION_TRANSMIT	Snoop-on-write.

◆ crc_snoop_address_t

enum crc_snoop_address_t	
Snoop SCI register Address (lower 14 bits)	
Enumerator	
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_NONE	Snoop mode disabled.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI0_TDR	Snoop SCI0 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI1_TDR	Snoop SCI1 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI2_TDR	Snoop SCI2 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI3_TDR	Snoop SCI3 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI4_TDR	Snoop SCI4 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI5_TDR	Snoop SCI5 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI6_TDR	Snoop SCI6 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI7_TDR	Snoop SCI7 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI8_TDR	Snoop SCI8 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI9_TDR	Snoop SCI9 transmit data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI0_FTDRL	Snoop SCI0 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI1_FTDRL	Snoop SCI1 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI2_FTDRL	Snoop SCI2 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI3_FTDRL	Snoop SCI3 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI4_FTDRL	Snoop SCI4 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI5_FTDRL	Snoop SCI5 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI6_FTDRL	Snoop SCI6 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI7_FTDRL	Snoop SCI7 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI8_FTDRL	Snoop SCI8 transmit FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI9_FTDRL	Snoop SCI9 transmit FIFO data register.

CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI0_RDR	Snoop SCI0 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI1_RDR	Snoop SCI1 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI2_RDR	Snoop SCI2 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI3_RDR	Snoop SCI3 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI4_RDR	Snoop SCI4 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI5_RDR	Snoop SCI5 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI6_RDR	Snoop SCI6 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI7_RDR	Snoop SCI7 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI8_RDR	Snoop SCI8 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI9_RDR	Snoop SCI9 receive data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI0_FRDRL	Snoop SCI0 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI1_FRDRL	Snoop SCI1 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI2_FRDRL	Snoop SCI2 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI3_FRDRL	Snoop SCI3 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI4_FRDRL	Snoop SCI4 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI5_FRDRL	Snoop SCI5 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI6_FRDRL	Snoop SCI6 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI7_FRDRL	Snoop SCI7 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI8_FRDRL	Snoop SCI8 receive FIFO data register.
CRC_SNOOP_ADDRESS_SCI9_FRDRL	Snoop SCI9 receive FIFO data register.

5.3.7 CTSU Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (CTSU) functions.

Summary

The CTSU interface provides CTSU functionality.

The CTSU interface can be implemented by:

- Capacitive Touch Sensing Unit (r_ctsu)

Data Structures

struct	ctsu_callback_args_t
struct	ctsu_element_cfg_t
struct	ctsu_cfg_t
struct	ctsu_api_t
struct	ctsu_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	ctsu_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	ctsu_event_t
enum	ctsu_cap_t
enum	ctsu_txvsel_t
enum	ctsu_txvsel2_t
enum	ctsu_atune1_t
enum	ctsu_atune12_t
enum	ctsu_md_t
enum	ctsu_posel_t
enum	ctsu_ssdiv_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ctsu_callback_args_t

struct ctsu_callback_args_t		
Callback function parameter data		
Data Fields		
ctsu_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in CTSU_api_t::open function in ctsu_cfg_t.

◆ ctsu_element_cfg_t

struct ctsu_element_cfg_t		
CTSU Configuration parameters. Element Configuration		
Data Fields		
ctsu_ssdiv_t	ssdiv	CTSU Spectrum Diffusion Frequency Division Setting (CTSU Only)
uint16_t	so	CTSU Sensor Offset Adjustment.
uint8_t	snum	CTSU Measurement Count Setting.
uint8_t	sdpa	CTSU Base Clock Setting.

◆ ctsu_cfg_t

struct ctsu_cfg_t	
User configuration structure, used in open function	
Data Fields	
ctsu_cap_t	cap
	CTSU Scan Start Trigger Select.
ctsu_txvsel_t	txvsel
	CTSU Transmission Power Supply Select.
ctsu_txvsel2_t	txvsel2
	CTSU Transmission Power Supply Select 2 (CTSU2 Only)
ctsu_atune1_t	atune1

	CTSU Power Supply Capacity Adjustment (CTSU Only)
ctsu_atune12_t	atune12
	CTSU Power Supply Capacity Adjustment (CTSU2 Only)
ctsu_md_t	md
	CTSU Measurement Mode Select.
ctsu_posel_t	posel
	CTSU Non-Measured Channel Output Select (CTSU2 Only)
uint8_t	ctsuchac0
	TS00-TS07 enable mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchac1
	TS08-TS15 enable mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchac2
	TS16-TS23 enable mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchac3
	TS24-TS31 enable mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchac4
	TS32-TS39 enable mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchtrc0
	TS00-TS07 mutual-tx mask.

uint8_t	ctsuchtrc1
	TS08-TS15 mutual-tx mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchtrc2
	TS16-TS23 mutual-tx mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchtrc3
	TS24-TS31 mutual-tx mask.
uint8_t	ctsuchtrc4
	TS32-TS39 mutual-tx mask.
ctsu_element_cfg_t const *	p_elements
	Pointer to elements configuration array.
uint8_t	num_rx
	Number of receive terminals.
uint8_t	num_tx
	Number of transmit terminals.
uint16_t	num_moving_average
	Number of moving average for measurement data.
bool	tunning_enable
	Initial offset tuning flag.

void(*	p_callback)(ctsu_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback provided when CTSUFN ISR occurs.
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_tx
	DTC instance for transmit at CTSUWR. Set to NULL if unused.
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_rx
	DTC instance for receive at CTSURD. Set to NULL if unused.
adc_instance_t const *	p_adc_instance
	ADC instance for temperature correction.
IRQn_Type	write_irq
	CTSU_CTSUWR interrupt vector.
IRQn_Type	read_irq
	CTSU_CTSURD interrupt vector.
IRQn_Type	end_irq
	CTSU_CTSUFN interrupt vector.
void const *	p_context
	User defined context passed into callback function.
void const *	p_extend
	Pointer to extended configuration by instance of interface.

◆ ctsu_api_t

struct ctsu_api_t

Functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ctsu_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	scanStart)(ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	dataGet)(ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *p_data)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* ctsu_api_t::open) (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ctsu_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open driver.

Implemented as

- R_CTSU_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration structure.

◆ scanStart

fsp_err_t(* ctsu_api_t::scanStart) (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Scan start.

Implemented as

- R_CTSU_ScanStart()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ dataGet

fsp_err_t(* ctsu_api_t::dataGet) (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *p_data)

Data get.

Implemented as

- R_CTSU_DataGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_data	Pointer to get data array.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* ctsu_api_t::close) (ctsu_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close driver.

Implemented as

- R_CTSU_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* ctsu_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Return the version of the driver.

Implemented as

- R_CTSU_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_data	Memory address to return version information to.

◆ ctsu_instance_t

struct ctsu_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
ctsu_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
ctsu_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration

		structure for this instance.
ctsu_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ ctsu_ctrl_t

typedef void ctsu_ctrl_t
CTSU Control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the API calls. **Implemented as** ◦ ctsu_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ctsu_event_t

enum ctsu_event_t

CTSU Events for callback function

Enumerator	
CTSU_EVENT_SCAN_COMPLETE	Normal end.
CTSU_EVENT_OVERFLOW	Sensor counter overflow (CTSUST.CTSUSOVF set)
CTSU_EVENT_ICOMP	Abnormal TSCAP voltage (CTSUERRS.CTSUICOMP set)
CTSU_EVENT_ICOMP1	Abnormal sensor current (CTSUSR.ICOMP1 set)

◆ ctsu_cap_t

enum ctsu_cap_t

CTSU Scan Start Trigger Select

Enumerator	
CTSU_CAP_SOFTWARE	Scan start by software trigger.
CTSU_CAP_EXTERNAL	Scan start by external trigger.

◆ ctsu_txvsel_t

enum ctsu_txvsel_t	
CTSU Transmission Power Supply Select	
Enumerator	
CTSU_TXVSEL_VCC	VCC selected.
CTSU_TXVSEL_INTERNAL_POWER	Internal logic power supply selected.

◆ ctsu_txvsel2_t

enum ctsu_txvsel2_t	
CTSU Transmission Power Supply Select 2 (CTSU2 Only)	
Enumerator	
CTSU_TXVSEL_MODE	Follow TXVSEL setting.
CTSU_TXVSEL_VCC_PRIVATE	VCC private selected.

◆ ctsu_atune1_t

enum ctsu_atune1_t	
CTSU Power Supply Capacity Adjustment (CTSU Only)	
Enumerator	
CTSU_ATUNE1_NORMAL	Normal output(40uA)
CTSU_ATUNE1_HIGH	High-current output(80uA)

◆ ctsu_atune12_t

enum ctsu_atune12_t	
CTSU Power Supply Capacity Adjustment (CTSU2 Only)	
Enumerator	
CTSU_ATUNE12_80UA	High-current output(80uA)
CTSU_ATUNE12_40UA	Normal output(40uA)
CTSU_ATUNE12_20UA	Low-current output(20uA)
CTSU_ATUNE12_160UA	Very high-current output(160uA)

◆ ctsu_md_t

enum ctsu_md_t	
CTSU Measurement Mode Select	
Enumerator	
CTSU_MODE_SELF_MULTI_SCAN	Self-capacitance multi scan mode.
CTSU_MODE_MUTUAL_FULL_SCAN	Mutual capacitance full scan mode.
CTSU_MODE_MUTUAL_CFC_SCAN	Mutual capacitance cfc scan mode (CTSU2 Only)
CTSU_MODE_CURRENT_SCAN	Current scan mode (CTSU2 Only)
CTSU_MODE_CORRECTION_SCAN	Correction scan mode (CTSU2 Only)

◆ ctsu_posel_t

enum ctsu_posel_t	
CTSU Non-Measured Channel Output Select (CTSU2 Only)	
Enumerator	
CTSU_POSEL_LOW_GPIO	Output low through GPIO.
CTSU_POSEL_HI_Z	Hi-Z.
CTSU_POSEL_LOW	Output low through the power setting by the TXVSEL[1:0] bits.
CTSU_POSEL_SAME_PULSE	Same phase pulse output as transmission channel through the power setting by the TXVSEL[1:0] bits.

◆ ctsu_ssdiv_t

enum ctsu_ssdiv_t

CTSU Spectrum Diffusion Frequency Division Setting (CTSU Only)

Enumerator	
CTSU_SSDIV_4000	4.00 <= Base clock frequency(MHz)
CTSU_SSDIV_2000	2.00 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 4.00
CTSU_SSDIV_1330	1.33 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 2.00
CTSU_SSDIV_1000	1.00 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 1.33
CTSU_SSDIV_0800	0.80 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 1.00
CTSU_SSDIV_0670	0.67 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.80
CTSU_SSDIV_0570	0.57 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.67
CTSU_SSDIV_0500	0.50 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.57
CTSU_SSDIV_0440	0.44 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.50
CTSU_SSDIV_0400	0.40 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.44
CTSU_SSDIV_0360	0.36 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.40
CTSU_SSDIV_0330	0.33 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.36
CTSU_SSDIV_0310	0.31 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.33
CTSU_SSDIV_0290	0.29 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.31
CTSU_SSDIV_0270	0.27 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.29
CTSU_SSDIV_0000	0.00 <= Base clock frequency(MHz) < 0.27

5.3.8 DAC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for D/A converters.

Summary

The DAC interface provides standard Digital/Analog Converter functionality. A DAC application writes digital sample data to the device and generates analog output on the DAC output pin.

Implemented by: Digital to Analog Converter (r_dac) Digital to Analog Converter (r_dac8)

Data Structures

struct	dac_info_t
struct	dac_cfg_t
struct	dac_api_t
struct	dac_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	dac_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	dac_data_format_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ dac_info_t

struct dac_info_t

DAC information structure to store various information for a DAC

Data Fields		
uint8_t	bit_width	Resolution of the DAC.

◆ dac_cfg_t

struct dac_cfg_t

DAC Open API configuration parameter

Data Fields		
uint8_t	channel	ID associated with this DAC channel.
bool	ad_da_synchronized	AD/DA synchronization.
void const *	p_extend	

◆ dac_api_t

struct dac_api_t

DAC driver structure. General DAC functions implemented at the HAL layer follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, dac_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t value)
fsp_err_t(*	start)(dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* dac_api_t::open) (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, dac_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_DAC_Open()
- R_DAC8_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* dac_api_t::close) (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close the D/A Converter.

Implemented as

- R_DAC_Close()
- R_DAC8_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in dac_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* dac_api_t::write) (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t value)

Write sample value to the D/A Converter.

Implemented as

- R_DAC_Write()
- R_DAC8_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in dac_api_t::open call for this timer.
[in]	value	Sample value to be written to the D/A Converter.

◆ start

fsp_err_t(* dac_api_t::start) (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Start the D/A Converter if it has not been started yet.

Implemented as

- R_DAC_Start()
- R_DAC8_Start()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in dac_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ **stop**

fsp_err_t(* dac_api_t::stop) (dac_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Stop the D/A Converter if the converter is running.

Implemented as

- R_DAC_Stop()
- R_DAC8_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in dac_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ **versionGet**

fsp_err_t(* dac_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_DAC_VersionGet()
- R_DAC8_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ **dac_instance_t**

struct dac_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
dac_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
dac_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
dac_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ dac_ctrl_t

typedef void dac_ctrl_t
DAC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the DAC API calls. **Implemented as** ◦ dac_instance_ctrl_t ◦ dac8_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ dac_data_format_t

enum dac_data_format_t	
DAC Open API data format settings.	
Enumerator	
DAC_DATA_FORMAT_FLUSH_RIGHT	LSB of data is flush to the right leaving the top 4 bits unused.
DAC_DATA_FORMAT_FLUSH_LEFT	MSB of data is flush to the left leaving the bottom 4 bits unused.

5.3.9 Display Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for LCD panel displays.

Summary

The display interface provides standard display functionality:

- Signal timing configuration for LCD panels with RGB interface.
- Dot clock source selection (internal or external) and frequency divider.
- Blending of multiple graphics layers on the background screen.
- Color correction (brightness/configuration/gamma correction).
- Interrupts and callback function.

Implemented by: Graphics LCD Controller (r_glcdc)

Data Structures

struct	display_timing_t
struct	display_color_t
struct	display_coordinate_t
struct	display_brightness_t
struct	display_contrast_t
struct	display_correction_t
struct	gamma_correction_t
struct	display_gamma_correction_t
struct	display_clut_t
struct	display_input_cfg_t
struct	display_output_cfg_t
struct	display_layer_t
struct	display_callback_args_t
struct	display_cfg_t
struct	display_runtime_cfg_t
struct	display_clut_cfg_t
struct	display_status_t
struct	display_api_t
struct	display_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	display_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	display_frame_layer_t
enum	display_state_t
enum	display_event_t

enum	display_in_format_t
enum	display_out_format_t
enum	display_endian_t
enum	display_color_order_t
enum	display_signal_polarity_t
enum	display_sync_edge_t
enum	display_fade_control_t
enum	display_fade_status_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ display_timing_t

struct display_timing_t

Display signal timing setting

Data Fields		
uint16_t	total_cyc	Total cycles in one line or total lines in one frame.
uint16_t	display_cyc	Active video cycles or lines.
uint16_t	back_porch	Back porch cycles or lines.
uint16_t	sync_width	Sync signal asserting width.
display_signal_polarity_t	sync_polarity	Sync signal polarity.

◆ display_color_t

struct display_color_t

RGB Color setting

◆ display_coordinate_t

struct display_coordinate_t

Contrast (gain) correction setting

Data Fields		
int16_t	x	Coordinate X, this allows to set signed value.
int16_t	y	Coordinate Y, this allows to set signed value.

◆ display_brightness_t

struct display_brightness_t		
Brightness (DC) correction setting		
Data Fields		
bool	enable	Brightness Correction On/Off.
uint16_t	r	Brightness (DC) adjustment for R channel.
uint16_t	g	Brightness (DC) adjustment for G channel.
uint16_t	b	Brightness (DC) adjustment for B channel.

◆ display_contrast_t

struct display_contrast_t		
Contrast (gain) correction setting		
Data Fields		
bool	enable	Contrast Correction On/Off.
uint8_t	r	Contrast (gain) adjustment for R channel.
uint8_t	g	Contrast (gain) adjustment for G channel.
uint8_t	b	Contrast (gain) adjustment for B channel.

◆ display_correction_t

struct display_correction_t		
Color correction setting		
Data Fields		
display_brightness_t	brightness	Brightness.
display_contrast_t	contrast	Contrast.

◆ gamma_correction_t

struct gamma_correction_t		
Gamma correction setting for each color		
Data Fields		
bool	enable	Gamma Correction On/Off.
uint16_t *	gain	Gain adjustment.
uint16_t *	threshold	Start threshold.

◆ display_gamma_correction_t

struct display_gamma_correction_t		
Gamma correction setting		
Data Fields		
gamma_correction_t	r	Gamma correction for R channel.
gamma_correction_t	g	Gamma correction for G channel.
gamma_correction_t	b	Gamma correction for B channel.

◆ display_clut_t

struct display_clut_t		
CLUT setting		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	color_num	The number of colors in CLUT.
const uint32_t *	p_clut	Address of the area storing the CLUT data (in ARGB8888 format)

◆ display_input_cfg_t

struct display_input_cfg_t		
Graphics plane input configuration structure		
Data Fields		
uint32_t *	p_base	Base address to the frame buffer.
uint16_t	hsize	Horizontal pixel size in a line.
uint16_t	vsize	Vertical pixel size in a frame.
uint32_t	hstride	Memory stride (bytes) in a line.
display_in_format_t	format	Input format setting.
bool	line_descending_enable	Line descending enable.
bool	lines_repeat_enable	Line repeat enable.
uint16_t	lines_repeat_times	Expected number of line repeating.

◆ display_output_cfg_t

struct display_output_cfg_t
Display output configuration structure
Data Fields

display_timing_t	htiming	Horizontal display cycle setting.
display_timing_t	vtiming	Vertical display cycle setting.
display_out_format_t	format	Output format setting.
display_endian_t	endian	Bit order of output data.
display_color_order_t	color_order	Color order in pixel.
display_signal_polarity_t	data_enable_polarity	Data Enable signal polarity.
display_sync_edge_t	sync_edge	Signal sync edge selection.
display_color_t	bg_color	Background color.
display_brightness_t	brightness	Brightness setting.
display_contrast_t	contrast	Contrast setting.
display_gamma_correction_t *	p_gamma_correction	Pointer to gamma correction setting.
bool	dithering_on	Dithering on/off.

◆ display_layer_t

struct display_layer_t

Graphics layer blend setup parameter structure

Data Fields		
display_coordinate_t	coordinate	Blending location (starting point of image)
display_color_t	bg_color	Color outside region.
display_fade_control_t	fade_control	Layer fade-in/out control on/off.
uint8_t	fade_speed	Layer fade-in/out frame rate.

◆ display_callback_args_t

struct display_callback_args_t

Display callback parameter definition

Data Fields		
display_event_t	event	Event code.
void const *	p_context	Context provided to user during callback.

◆ display_cfg_t

struct display_cfg_t

Display main configuration structure

Data Fields

display_input_cfg_t	input [2]

	Graphics input frame setting. More...
display_output_cfg_t	output
	Graphics output frame setting.
display_layer_t	layer [2]
	Graphics layer blend setting.
uint8_t	line_detect_ipl
	Line detect interrupt priority.
uint8_t	underflow_1_ipl
	Underflow 1 interrupt priority.
uint8_t	underflow_2_ipl
	Underflow 2 interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	line_detect_irq
	Line detect interrupt vector.
IRQn_Type	underflow_1_irq
	Underflow 1 interrupt vector.
IRQn_Type	underflow_2_irq
	Underflow 2 interrupt vector.
void(*	p_callback)(display_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to callback function. More...

void const *	p_context
	User defined context passed into callback function.
void const *	p_extend
	Display hardware dependent configuration. More...

Field Documentation

◆ input

display_input_cfg_t display_cfg_t::input[2]

Graphics input frame setting.

Generic configuration for display devices

◆ p_callback

void(* display_cfg_t::p_callback) (display_callback_args_t *p_args)

Pointer to callback function.

Configuration for display event processing

◆ p_extend

void const* display_cfg_t::p_extend

Display hardware dependent configuration.

Pointer to display peripheral specific configuration

◆ display_runtime_cfg_t

struct display_runtime_cfg_t

Display main configuration structure

Data Fields		
display_input_cfg_t	input	Graphics input frame setting. Generic configuration for display devices
display_layer_t	layer	Graphics layer alpha blending setting.

◆ display_clut_cfg_t

struct display_clut_cfg_t

Display CLUT configuration structure

Data Fields		
uint32_t *	p_base	Pointer to CLUT source data.
uint16_t	start	Beginning of CLUT entry to be updated.
uint16_t	size	Size of CLUT entry to be updated.

◆ display_status_t

struct display_status_t

Display Status

Data Fields		
display_state_t	state	Status of GLCDC module.
display_fade_status_t	fade_status[DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_2+1]	Status of fade-in/fade-out status.

◆ display_api_t

struct display_api_t

Shared Interface definition for display peripheral

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, display_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	start)(display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	layerChange)(display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_runtime_cfg_t const *const p_cfg, display_frame_layer_t frame)
fsp_err_t(*	bufferChange)(display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const framebuffer, display_frame_layer_t frame)
fsp_err_t(*	correction)(display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_correction_t const *const p_param)

fsp_err_t(*	clut)(display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_clut_cfg_t const *const p_clut_cfg, display_frame_layer_t frame)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::open) (display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, display_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open display device.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_Open()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block. Must be declared by user. Value set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to display configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::close) (display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close display device.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.

◆ start

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::start) (display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Display start.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_Start()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.

◆ stop

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::stop) (display_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Display stop.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.

◆ layerChange

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::layerChange) (display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_runtime_cfg_t const *const p_cfg, display_frame_layer_t frame)

Change layer parameters at runtime.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_LayerChange()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to run-time layer configuration structure.
[in]	frame	Number of graphic frames.

◆ bufferChange

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::bufferChange) (display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const framebuffer, display_frame_layer_t frame)

Change layer framebuffer pointer.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_BufferChange()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	framebuffer	Pointer to desired framebuffer.
[in]	frame	Number of graphic frames.

◆ correction

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::correction) (display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_correction_t const *const p_param)

Color correction.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_ColorCorrection()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	param	Pointer to color correction configuration structure.

◆ clut

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::clut) (display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_clut_cfg_t const *const p_clut_cfg, display_frame_layer_t frame)

Set CLUT for display device.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_ClutUpdate()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	p_clut_cfg	Pointer to CLUT configuration structure.
[in]	frame	Number of frame buffer corresponding to the CLUT.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::statusGet) (display_ctrl_t const *const p_ctrl, display_status_t *const p_status)

Get status for display device.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	status	Pointer to display interface status structure.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* display_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get version.

Implemented as

- R_GLCDC_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to the memory to store the version information.

◆ display_instance_t

struct display_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
display_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
display_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
display_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ display_ctrl_t

typedef void display_ctrl_t

Display control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the display API calls.

Implemented as

- glcdc_instance_ctrl_tDisplay control block

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ display_frame_layer_t

enum display_frame_layer_t

Display frame number

Enumerator	
DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_1	Frame layer 1.
DISPLAY_FRAME_LAYER_2	Frame layer 2.

◆ display_state_t

enum display_state_t	
Display interface operation state	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_STATE_CLOSED	Display closed.
DISPLAY_STATE_OPENED	Display opened.
DISPLAY_STATE_DISPLAYING	Displaying.

◆ display_event_t

enum display_event_t	
Display event codes	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_EVENT_GR1_UNDERFLOW	Graphics frame1 underflow occurs.
DISPLAY_EVENT_GR2_UNDERFLOW	Graphics frame2 underflow occurs.
DISPLAY_EVENT_LINE_DETECTION	Designated line is processed.

◆ display_in_format_t

enum display_in_format_t	
Input format setting	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_32BITS_ARGB8888	ARGB8888, 32 bits.
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_32BITS_RGB888	RGB888, 32 bits.
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_16BITS_RGB565	RGB565, 16 bits.
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_16BITS_ARGB1555	ARGB1555, 16 bits.
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_16BITS_ARGB4444	ARGB4444, 16 bits.
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_CLUT8	CLUT8.
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_CLUT4	CLUT4.
DISPLAY_IN_FORMAT_CLUT1	CLUT1.

◆ display_out_format_t

enum display_out_format_t	
Output format setting	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_OUT_FORMAT_24BITS_RGB888	RGB888, 24 bits.
DISPLAY_OUT_FORMAT_18BITS_RGB666	RGB666, 18 bits.
DISPLAY_OUT_FORMAT_16BITS_RGB565	RGB565, 16 bits.
DISPLAY_OUT_FORMAT_8BITS_SERIAL	SERIAL, 8 bits.

◆ display_endian_t

enum display_endian_t	
Data endian select	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_ENDIAN_LITTLE	Little-endian.
DISPLAY_ENDIAN_BIG	Big-endian.

◆ display_color_order_t

enum display_color_order_t	
RGB color order select	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_COLOR_ORDER_RGB	Color order RGB.
DISPLAY_COLOR_ORDER_BGR	Color order BGR.

◆ display_signal_polarity_t

enum display_signal_polarity_t	
Polarity of a signal select	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_SIGNAL_POLARITY_LOACTIVE	Low active signal.
DISPLAY_SIGNAL_POLARITY_HIACTIVE	High active signal.

◆ display_sync_edge_t

enum display_sync_edge_t	
Signal synchronization edge select	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_SIGNAL_SYNC_EDGE_RISING	Signal is synchronized to rising edge.
DISPLAY_SIGNAL_SYNC_EDGE_FALLING	Signal is synchronized to falling edge.

◆ display_fade_control_t

enum display_fade_control_t	
Fading control	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_FADE_CONTROL_NONE	Applying no fading control.
DISPLAY_FADE_CONTROL_FADEIN	Applying fade-in control.
DISPLAY_FADE_CONTROL_FADEOUT	Applying fade-out control.

◆ display_fade_status_t

enum display_fade_status_t	
Fading status	
Enumerator	
DISPLAY_FADE_STATUS_NOT_UNDERWAY	Fade-in/fade-out is not in progress.
DISPLAY_FADE_STATUS_FADING_UNDERWAY	Fade-in or fade-out is in progress.
DISPLAY_FADE_STATUS_PENDING	Fade-in/fade-out is configured but not yet started.

5.3.10 DOC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for the Data Operation Circuit.

Defines the API and data structures for the DOC implementation of the Data Operation Circuit (DOC) interface.

Summary

This module implements the DOC_API using the Data Operation Circuit (DOC).

Implemented by: Data Operation Circuit (r_doc)

Data Structures

struct	doc_status_t
struct	doc_callback_args_t
struct	doc_cfg_t
struct	doc_api_t
struct	doc_instance_t

Macros

#define	DOC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	doc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	doc_event_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ doc_status_t

struct doc_status_t

DOC status

◆ doc_callback_args_t

struct doc_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data.

Data Fields

void const *	p_context	Set in doc_api_t::open function in doc_cfg_t. Placeholder for user data.

◆ doc_cfg_t

struct doc_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in the open function.

Data Fields

doc_event_t	event
	Select enumerated value from doc_event_t.

uint16_t	doc_data
	initial/reference value for DODSR register.
uint8_t	ipl
	DOC interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	irq
	NVIC interrupt number assigned to this instance.
void(*	p_callback)(doc_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context

Field Documentation

◆ p_callback

void(* doc_cfg_t::p_callback) (doc_callback_args_t *p_args)

Callback provided when a DOC ISR occurs.

◆ p_context

void const* doc_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in doc_callback_args_t.

◆ doc_api_t

struct doc_api_t

Data Operation Circuit (DOC) API structure. DOC functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, doc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, doc_status_t *p_status)

fsp_err_t(*	write)(doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t data)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* doc_api_t::open) (doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, doc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_DOC_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* doc_api_t::close) (doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Allow the driver to be reconfigured. Will reduce power consumption.

Implemented as

- R_DOC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in doc_api_t::open call.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* doc_api_t::statusGet) (doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, doc_status_t *p_status)

Gets the result of addition/subtraction and stores it in the provided pointer p_data.

Implemented as

- R_DOC_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in doc_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_data	Provides the 16 bit result of the addition/subtraction operation at the user defined location.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* doc_api_t::write) (doc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t data)

Write to the DODIR register.

Implemented as

- R_DOC_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in doc_api_t::open call.
[in]	data	data to be written to DOC DODIR register.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* doc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get version and stores it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_DOC_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ doc_instance_t

struct doc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields

doc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
doc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
doc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ DOC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define DOC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Register definitions, common services and error codes.

Typedef Documentation

◆ doc_ctrl_t

typedef void doc_ctrl_t

DOC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the DOC API calls.

Implemented as

- doc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ doc_event_t

enum doc_event_t

Event that can trigger a callback function.

Enumerator	
DOC_EVENT_COMPARISON_MISMATCH	Comparison of data has resulted in a mismatch.
DOC_EVENT_ADDITION	Addition of data has resulted in a value greater than H'FFFF.
DOC_EVENT_SUBTRACTION	Subtraction of data has resulted in a value less than H'0000.
DOC_EVENT_COMPARISON_MATCH	Comparison of data has resulted in a match.

5.3.11 ELC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for the Event Link Controller.

Data Structures

struct	elc_cfg_t
struct	elc_api_t
struct	elc_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	elc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	elc_peripheral_t
enum	elc_software_event_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ elc_cfg_t

struct elc_cfg_t

Main configuration structure for the Event Link Controller

Data Fields		
elc_event_t const	link[ELC_PERIPHERAL_NUM]	Event link register (ELSR) settings.

◆ elc_api_t

struct elc_api_t

ELC driver structure. General ELC functions implemented at the HAL layer follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

fsp_err_t(*	softwareEventGenerate)(elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_software_event_t event_num)
fsp_err_t(*	linkSet)(elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_peripheral_t peripheral, elc_event_t signal)
fsp_err_t(*	linkBreak)(elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_peripheral_t peripheral)
fsp_err_t(*	enable)(elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	disable)(elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::open) (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize all links in the Event Link Controller.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::close) (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable all links in the Event Link Controller and close the API.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ softwareEventGenerate

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::softwareEventGenerate) (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_software_event_t event_num)

Generate a software event in the Event Link Controller.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_SoftwareEventGenerate()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	eventNum	Software event number to be generated.

◆ linkSet

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::linkSet) (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_peripheral_t peripheral, elc_event_t signal)

Create a single event link.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_LinkSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	peripheral	The peripheral block that will receive the event signal.
[in]	signal	The event signal.

◆ linkBreak

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::linkBreak) (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, elc_peripheral_t peripheral)

Break an event link.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_LinkBreak()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	peripheral	The peripheral that should no longer be linked.

◆ enable

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::enable) (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Enable the operation of the Event Link Controller.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_Enable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ disable

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::disable) (elc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable the operation of the Event Link Controller.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_Disable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* elc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros.

Implemented as

- R_ELC_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_version	is value returned.

◆ elc_instance_t

struct elc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
elc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
elc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
elc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for

		this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ elc_ctrl_t

typedef void elc_ctrl_t
ELC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the ELC API calls. **Implemented as** ◦ elc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ elc_peripheral_t

enum elc_peripheral_t
Possible peripherals to be linked to event signals (not all available on all MCUs)

◆ elc_software_event_t

enum elc_software_event_t
Software event number

Enumerator	
ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_0	Software event 0.
ELC_SOFTWARE_EVENT_1	Software event 1.

5.3.12 Ethernet Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for Ethernet functions.

Summary

The Ethernet interface provides Ethernet functionality. The Ethernet interface supports the following features:

- Transmit/receive processing(Blocking and Non-Bloking)
- Callback function with returned event code
- Magic packet detection mode support
- Auto negotiation support
- Flow control support
- Multicast filtering support

Implemented by:

- Ethernet (r_ether)

Data Structures

struct	ether_instance_descriptor_t
struct	ether_callback_args_t
struct	ether_cfg_t
struct	ether_api_t
struct	ether_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	ether_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	ether_wake_on_lan_t
enum	ether_flow_control_t
enum	ether_multicast_t
enum	ether_promiscuous_t
enum	ether_zerocopy_t
enum	ether_event_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ether_instance_descriptor_t

struct ether_instance_descriptor_t
EDMAC descriptor as defined in the hardware manual. Structure must be packed at 1 byte.

◆ ether_callback_args_t

struct ether_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
uint32_t	channel	Device channel number.
ether_event_t	event	Event code.
uint32_t	status_ecsr	ETHERC status register for interrupt handler.
uint32_t	status_eesr	ETHERC/EDMAC status register for interrupt handler.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in ether_api_t::open function in ether_cfg_t.

◆ ether_cfg_t

struct ether_cfg_t

Configuration parameters.

Data Fields

uint8_t	channel
	Channel.
ether_zerocopy_t	zerocopy
	Zero copy enable or disable in Read/Write function.
ether_multicast_t	multicast
	Multicast enable or disable.
ether_promiscuous_t	promiscuous
	Promiscuous mode enable or disable.
ether_flow_control_t	flow_control
	Flow control functionally enable or disable.
uint32_t	broadcast_filter
	Limit of the number of broadcast frames received continuously.

uint8_t *	p_mac_address
	Pointer of MAC address.
ether_instance_descriptor_t *	p_rx_descriptors
	Receive descriptor buffer pool.
ether_instance_descriptor_t *	p_tx_descriptors
	Transmit descriptor buffer pool.
uint8_t	num_tx_descriptors
	Number of transmission descriptor.
uint8_t	num_rx_descriptors
	Number of receive descriptor.
uint8_t **	pp_ether_buffers
	Transmit and receive buffer.
uint32_t	ether_buffer_size
	Size of transmit and receive buffer.
IRQn_Type	irq
	NVIC interrupt number.
uint32_t	interrupt_priority
	NVIC interrupt priority.

void(*	p_callback)(ether_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback provided when an ISR occurs.
ether_phy_instance_t const *	p_ether_phy_instance
	Pointer to ETHER_PHY instance.
void const *	p_context
void const *	p_extend
	Placeholder for user extension.

Field Documentation

◆ p_context

void const* ether_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in ether_callback_args_t.

◆ ether_api_t

struct ether_api_t

Functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, ether_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void *const p_buffer, uint32_t *const length_bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	bufferRelease)(ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void *const p_buffer, uint32_t const frame_length)

fsp_err_t(*	linkProcess)(ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	wakeOnLANEnable)(ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::open) (ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, ether_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open driver.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration structure.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::close) (ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Close driver.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::read) (ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void *const p_buffer, uint32_t *const length_bytes)

Read packet if data is available.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_buffer	Pointer to where to store read data.
[in]	length_bytes	Number of bytes in buffer

◆ bufferRelease

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::bufferRelease) (ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Release rx buffer from buffer pool process in zero-copy read operation.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_BufferRelease()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::write) (ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, void *const p_buffer, uint32_t const frame_length)

Write packet.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_buffer	Pointer to data to write.
[in]	frame_length	Send ethernet frame size(without 4 bytes of CRC data size).

◆ linkProcess

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::linkProcess) (ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Process link.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_LinkProcess()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ wakeOnLANEnable

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::wakeOnLANEnable) (ether_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Enable magic packet detection.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_WakeOnLANEnable()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* ether_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Return the version of the driver.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_data	Memory address to return version information to.

◆ ether_instance_t

struct ether_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
ether_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
ether_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
ether_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ ether_ctrl_t

typedef void ether_ctrl_t

Control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the API calls.

Implemented as

- ether_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ether_wake_on_lan_t

enum ether_wake_on_lan_t

Wake on Lan

Enumerator	
ETHER_WAKE_ON_LAN_DISABLE	Disable Wake on Lan.
ETHER_WAKE_ON_LAN_ENABLE	Enable Wake on Lan.

◆ ether_flow_control_t

enum ether_flow_control_t

Flow control functionality

Enumerator	
ETHER_FLOW_CONTROL_DISABLE	Disable flow control functionality.
ETHER_FLOW_CONTROL_ENABLE	Enable flow control functionality with pause frames.

◆ ether_multicast_t

enum ether_multicast_t	
Multicast Filter	
Enumerator	
ETHER_MULTICAST_DISABLE	Disable reception of multicast frames.
ETHER_MULTICAST_ENABLE	Enable reception of multicast frames.

◆ ether_promiscuous_t

enum ether_promiscuous_t	
Promiscuous Mode	
Enumerator	
ETHER_PROMISCUOUS_DISABLE	Only receive packets with current MAC address, multicast, and broadcast.
ETHER_PROMISCUOUS_ENABLE	Receive all packets.

◆ ether_zerocopy_t

enum ether_zerocopy_t	
Zero copy	
Enumerator	
ETHER_ZEROCOPY_DISABLE	Disable zero copy in Read/Write function.
ETHER_ZEROCOPY_ENABLE	Enable zero copy in Read/Write function.

◆ ether_event_t

enum ether_event_t	
Event code of callback function	
Enumerator	
ETHER_EVENT_WAKEON_LAN	Magic packet detection event.
ETHER_EVENT_LINK_ON	Link up detection event.
ETHER_EVENT_LINK_OFF	Link down detection event.
ETHER_EVENT_INTERRUPT	Interrupt event.

5.3.13 Ethernet PHY Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for Ethernet phy functions.

Summary

The Ethernet PHY module (r_ether_phy) provides an API for standard Ethernet PHY communications applications that use the ETHERC peripheral.

The Ethernet PHY interface supports the following features:

- Auto negotiation support
- Flow control support
- Link status check support

Implemented by:

- Ethernet PHY (r_ether_phy)

Data Structures

struct	ether_phy_cfg_t
struct	ether_phy_api_t
struct	ether_phy_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	ether_phy_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	ether_phy_flow_control_t
enum	ether_phy_link_speed_t
enum	ether_phy_mii_type_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ether_phy_cfg_t

struct ether_phy_cfg_t

Configuration parameters.

Data Fields		
uint8_t	channel	Channel.
uint8_t	phy_lsi_address	Address of PHY-LSI.
uint32_t	phy_reset_wait_time	Wait time for PHY-LSI reboot.
int32_t	mii_bit_access_wait_time	Wait time for MII/RMII access.
ether_phy_flow_control_t	flow_control	Flow control functionally enable or disable.
ether_phy_mii_type_t	mii_type	Interface type is MII or RMII.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in ether_phy_callback_args_t.
void const *	p_extend	Placeholder for user extension.

◆ ether_phy_api_t

struct ether_phy_api_t

Functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, ether_phy_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	startAutoNegotiate)(ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

fsp_err_t(*	linkPartnerAbilityGet)(ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_line_speed_duplex, uint32_t *const p_local_pause, uint32_t *const p_partner_pause)
fsp_err_t(*	linkStatusGet)(ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* ether_phy_api_t::open) (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, ether_phy_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open driver.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_PHY_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration structure.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* ether_phy_api_t::close) (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Close driver.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_PHY_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ startAutoNegotiate

fsp_err_t(* ether_phy_api_t::startAutoNegotiate) (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Start auto negotiation.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_PHY_StartAutoNegotiate()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ linkPartnerAbilityGet

fsp_err_t(* ether_phy_api_t::linkPartnerAbilityGet) (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_line_speed_duplex, uint32_t *const p_local_pause, uint32_t *const p_partner_pause)

Get the partner ability.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_PHY_LinkPartnerAbilityGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_line_speed_duplex	Pointer to the location of both the line speed and the duplex.
[out]	p_local_pause	Pointer to the location to store the local pause bits.
[out]	p_partner_pause	Pointer to the location to store the partner pause bits.

◆ linkStatusGet

fsp_err_t(* ether_phy_api_t::linkStatusGet) (ether_phy_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Get Link status from phy-LSI interface.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_PHY_LinkStatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* ether_phy_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Return the version of the driver.

Implemented as

- R_ETHER_PHY_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_data	Memory address to return version information to.

◆ ether_phy_instance_t

struct ether_phy_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
ether_phy_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
ether_phy_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
ether_phy_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ ether_phy_ctrl_t

typedef void ether_phy_ctrl_t

Control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the API calls.

Implemented as

- ether_phy_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ether_phy_flow_control_t

enum ether_phy_flow_control_t	
Flow control functionality	
Enumerator	
ETHER_PHY_FLOW_CONTROL_DISABLE	Disable flow control functionality.
ETHER_PHY_FLOW_CONTROL_ENABLE	Enable flow control functionality with pause frames.

◆ ether_phy_link_speed_t

enum ether_phy_link_speed_t	
Link speed	
Enumerator	
ETHER_PHY_LINK_SPEED_NO_LINK	Link is not established.
ETHER_PHY_LINK_SPEED_10H	Link status is 10Mbit/s and half duplex.
ETHER_PHY_LINK_SPEED_10F	Link status is 10Mbit/s and full duplex.
ETHER_PHY_LINK_SPEED_100H	Link status is 100Mbit/s and half duplex.
ETHER_PHY_LINK_SPEED_100F	Link status is 100Mbit/s and full duplex.

◆ ether_phy_mii_type_t

enum ether_phy_mii_type_t	
Media-independent interface	
Enumerator	
ETHER_PHY_MII_TYPE_MII	MII.
ETHER_PHY_MII_TYPE_RMII	RMII.

5.3.14 External IRQ Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for detecting external interrupts.

Summary

The External IRQ Interface is for configuring interrupts to fire when a trigger condition is detected on an external IRQ pin.

The External IRQ Interface can be implemented by:

- Interrupt Controller Unit (r_icu)

Data Structures

struct	external_irq_callback_args_t
struct	external_irq_cfg_t
struct	external_irq_api_t
struct	external_irq_instance_t

Macros

#define	EXTERNAL_IRQ_API_VERSION_MAJOR EXTERNAL IRQ API version number (Major)
#define	EXTERNAL_IRQ_API_VERSION_MINOR EXTERNAL IRQ API version number (Minor)

Typedefs

typedef void	external_irq_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	external_irq_trigger_t
enum	external_irq_pclk_div_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ external_irq_callback_args_t

struct external_irq_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields

void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in external_irq_api_t::open function in external_irq_cfg_t.
uint32_t	channel	The physical hardware channel that caused the interrupt.

◆ external_irq_cfg_t

struct external_irq_cfg_t	
User configuration structure, used in open function	
Data Fields	
uint8_t	channel
	Hardware channel used.
uint8_t	ipl
	Interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	irq
	NVIC interrupt number assigned to this instance.
external_irq_trigger_t	trigger
	Trigger setting.
external_irq_pclk_div_t	pclk_div
	Digital filter clock divisor setting.
bool	filter_enable
	Digital filter enable/disable setting.
void(*	p_callback)(external_irq_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context

void const *	p_extend
	External IRQ hardware dependent configuration.

Field Documentation

◆ p_callback

void(* external_irq_cfg_t::p_callback) (external_irq_callback_args_t *p_args)

Callback provided external input trigger occurs.

◆ p_context

void const* external_irq_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in external_irq_callback_args_t.

◆ external_irq_api_t

struct external_irq_api_t

External interrupt driver structure. External interrupt functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, external_irq_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	enable)(external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	disable)(external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* external_irq_api_t::open) (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, external_irq_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_ICU_ExternalIrqOpen()

Parameters

[out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Value set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of the structure must be set by user.

◆ enable

fsp_err_t(* external_irq_api_t::enable) (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Enable callback when an external trigger condition occurs.

Implemented as

- R_ICU_ExternalIrqEnable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in Open call for this external interrupt.

◆ disable

fsp_err_t(* external_irq_api_t::disable) (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable callback when external trigger condition occurs.

Implemented as

- R_ICU_ExternalIrqDisable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in Open call for this external interrupt.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* external_irq_api_t::close) (external_irq_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Allow driver to be reconfigured. May reduce power consumption.

Implemented as

- R_ICU_ExternalIrqClose()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in Open call for this external interrupt.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* external_irq_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_ICU_ExternalIrqVersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ external_irq_instance_t

struct external_irq_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
external_irq_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
external_irq_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
external_irq_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ external_irq_ctrl_t

typedef void external_irq_ctrl_t

External IRQ control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the external IRQ API calls.

Implemented as

- icu_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ external_irq_trigger_t

enum external_irq_trigger_t

Condition that will trigger an interrupt when detected.

Enumerator	
EXTERNAL_IRQ_TRIG_FALLING	Falling edge trigger.
EXTERNAL_IRQ_TRIG_RISING	Rising edge trigger.
EXTERNAL_IRQ_TRIG_BOTH_EDGE	Both edges trigger.
EXTERNAL_IRQ_TRIG_LEVEL_LOW	Low level trigger.

◆ external_irq_pclk_div_t

enum external_irq_pclk_div_t

External IRQ input pin digital filtering sample clock divisor settings. The digital filter rejects trigger conditions that are shorter than 3 periods of the filter clock.

Enumerator	
EXTERNAL_IRQ_PCLK_DIV_BY_1	Filter using PCLK divided by 1.
EXTERNAL_IRQ_PCLK_DIV_BY_8	Filter using PCLK divided by 8.
EXTERNAL_IRQ_PCLK_DIV_BY_32	Filter using PCLK divided by 32.
EXTERNAL_IRQ_PCLK_DIV_BY_64	Filter using PCLK divided by 64.

5.3.15 Flash Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for the Flash Memory.

Summary

The Flash interface provides the ability to read, write, erase, and blank check the code flash and data flash regions.

The Flash interface is implemented by:

- Low-Power Flash Driver (r_flash_lp)

Data Structures

struct	flash_block_info_t
struct	flash_regions_t
struct	flash_info_t
struct	flash_callback_args_t
struct	flash_cfg_t
struct	flash_api_t
struct	flash_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	flash_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	flash_result_t
enum	flash_startup_area_swap_t
enum	flash_event_t
enum	flash_id_code_mode_t
enum	flash_status_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ flash_block_info_t

struct flash_block_info_t		
Flash block details stored in factory flash.		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	block_section_st_addr	Starting address for this block section (blocks of this size)
uint32_t	block_section_end_addr	Ending address for this block section (blocks of this size)
uint32_t	block_size	Flash erase block size.
uint32_t	block_size_write	Flash write block size.

◆ flash_regions_t

struct flash_regions_t		
Flash block details		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	num_regions	Length of block info array.
flash_block_info_t const *	p_block_array	Block info array base address.

◆ flash_info_t

struct flash_info_t		
Information about the flash blocks		
Data Fields		
flash_regions_t	code_flash	Information about the code flash regions.
flash_regions_t	data_flash	Information about the code flash regions.

◆ flash_callback_args_t

struct flash_callback_args_t		
Callback function parameter data		
Data Fields		
flash_event_t	event	Event can be used to identify what caused the callback (flash ready or error).
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in flash_api_t::open function in::flash_cfg_t.

◆ flash_cfg_t

struct flash_cfg_t
FLASH Configuration

Data Fields	
bool	data_flash_bgo
	True if BGO (Background Operation) is enabled for Data Flash.
void(*	p_callback)(flash_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback provided when a Flash interrupt ISR occurs.
void const *	p_extend
	FLASH hardware dependent configuration.
void const *	p_context
	Placeholder for user data. Passed to user callback in flash_callback_args_t.
uint8_t	ipl
	Flash ready interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	irq
	Flash ready interrupt number.
uint8_t	err_ipl
	Flash error interrupt priority (unused in r_flash_lp)
IRQn_Type	err_irq
	Flash error interrupt number (unused in r_flash_lp)

◆ **flash_api_t**

struct flash_api_t

Shared Interface definition for FLASH

Data Fields	
fsp_err_t(*	open)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const src_address, uint32_t const flash_address, uint32_t const num_bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	erase)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t(*	blankCheck)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const num_bytes, flash_result_t *const p_blank_check_result)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	accessWindowSet)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const start_addr, uint32_t const end_addr)
fsp_err_t(*	accessWindowClear)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	idCodeSet)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_id_bytes, flash_id_code_mode_t mode)
fsp_err_t(*	reset)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	updateFlashClockFreq)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	startupAreaSelect)(flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_startup_area_swap_t swap_type, bool is_temporary)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::open) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_Open()
- R_FLASH_HP_Open()

Parameters

[out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control. Must be declared by user. Value set here.
[in]	flash_cfg_t	Pointer to FLASH configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by the user.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::write) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const src_address, uint32_t const flash_address, uint32_t const num_bytes)

Write FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_Write()
- R_FLASH_HP_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control for the FLASH device context.
[in]	src_address	Address of the buffer containing the data to write to Flash.
[in]	flash_address	Code Flash or Data Flash address to write. The address must be on a programming line boundary.
[in]	num_bytes	The number of bytes to write. This number must be a multiple of the programming size. For Code Flash this is FLASH_MIN_PGM_SIZE_CF. For Data Flash this is FLASH_MIN_PGM_SIZE_DF.

Warning

Specifying a number that is not a multiple of the programming size will result in SF_FLASH_ERR_BYTES being returned and no data written.

◆ erase

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::erase) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const num_blocks)

Erase FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_Erase()
- R_FLASH_HP_Erase()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control for the FLASH device.
[in]	address	The block containing this address is the first block erased.
[in]	num_blocks	Specifies the number of blocks to be erased, the starting block determined by the block_erase_address.

◆ blankCheck

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::blankCheck) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const num_bytes, flash_result_t *const p_blank_check_result)

Blank check FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_BlankCheck()
- R_FLASH_HP_BlankCheck()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control for the FLASH device context.
[in]	address	The starting address of the Flash area to blank check.
[in]	num_bytes	Specifies the number of bytes that need to be checked. See the specific handler for details.
[out]	p_blank_check_result	Pointer that will be populated by the API with the results of the blank check operation in non-BGO (blocking) mode. In this case the blank check operation completes here and the result is returned. In Data Flash BGO mode the blank check operation is only started here and the result obtained later when the supplied callback routine is called. In this case FLASH_RESULT_BGO_ACTIVE will be returned in p_blank_check_result.

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::infoGet) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_info_t *const p_info)

Close FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_InfoGet()
- R_FLASH_HP_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.
[out]	p_info	Pointer to FLASH info structure.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::close) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_Close()
- R_FLASH_HP_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::statusGet) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_status_t *const p_status)

Get Status for FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_StatusGet()
- R_FLASH_HP_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.
[out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the current flash status.

◆ accessWindowSet

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::accessWindowSet) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const start_addr, uint32_t const end_addr)

Set Access Window for FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowSet()
- R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.
[in]	start_addr	Determines the Starting block for the Code Flash access window.
[in]	end_addr	Determines the Ending block for the Code Flash access window. This address will not be within the access window.

◆ accessWindowClear

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::accessWindowClear) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Clear any existing Code Flash access window for FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_AccessWindowClear()
- R_FLASH_HP_AccessWindowClear()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.
[in]	start_addr	Determines the Starting block for the Code Flash access window.
[in]	end_addr	Determines the Ending block for the Code Flash access window.

◆ idCodeSet

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::idCodeSet) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_id_bytes, flash_id_code_mode_t mode)

Set ID Code for FLASH device. Setting the ID code can restrict access to the device. The ID code will be required to connect to the device. Bits 126 and 127 are set based on the mode.

For example, uint8_t id_bytes[] = {0x00, 0x11, 0x22, 0x33, 0x44, 0x55, 0x66, 0x77, 0x88, 0x99, 0xaa, 0xbb, 0xcc, 0xdd, 0xee, 0x00}; with mode FLASH_ID_CODE_MODE_LOCKED_WITH_ALL_ERASE_SUPPORT will result in an ID code of 00112233445566778899aabbccddeec0

With mode FLASH_ID_CODE_MODE_LOCKED, it will result in an ID code of 00112233445566778899aabbccddee80

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_IdCodeSet()
- R_FLASH_HP_IdCodeSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.
[in]	p_id_bytes	Ponter to the ID Code to be written.
[in]	mode	Mode used for checking the ID code.

◆ reset

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::reset) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Reset function for FLASH device.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_Reset()
- R_FLASH_HP_Reset()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.

◆ updateFlashClockFreq

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::updateFlashClockFreq) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Update Flash clock frequency (FCLK) and recalculate timeout values

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_UpdateFlashClockFreq()
- R_FLASH_HP_UpdateFlashClockFreq()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.

◆ startupAreaSelect

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::startupAreaSelect) (flash_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, flash_startup_area_swap_t swap_type, bool is_temporary)

Select which block - Default (Block 0) or Alternate (Block 1) is used as the start-up area block.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_StartUpAreaSelect()
- R_FLASH_HP_StartUpAreaSelect()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to FLASH device control.
[in]	swap_type	FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BLOCK0, FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BLOCK1 or FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BTFLG.
[in]	is_temporary	True or false. See table below.

swap_type	is_temporary	Operation
FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BLOCK0	false	On next reset Startup area will be Block 0.
FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BLOCK1	true	Startup area is immediately, but temporarily switched to Block 1.
FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BTFLG	true	Startup area is immediately, but temporarily switched to the Block determined by the Configuration BTFLG.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* flash_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get Flash driver version.

Implemented as

- R_FLASH_LP_VersionGet()
- R_FLASH_HP_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Returns version.

◆ flash_instance_t

struct flash_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
flash_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
flash_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
flash_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ flash_ctrl_t

typedef void flash_ctrl_t

Flash control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the flash API calls.

Implemented as

- flash_lp_instance_ctrl_t
- flash_hp_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ flash_result_t

enum flash_result_t	
Result type for certain operations	
Enumerator	
FLASH_RESULT_BLANK	Return status for Blank Check Function.
FLASH_RESULT_NOT_BLANK	Return status for Blank Check Function.
FLASH_RESULT_BGO_ACTIVE	Flash is configured for BGO mode. Result is returned in callback.

◆ flash_startup_area_swap_t

enum flash_startup_area_swap_t	
Parameter for specifying the startup area swap being requested by startupAreaSelect()	
Enumerator	
FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BTFLG	Startup area will be set based on the value of the BTFLG.
FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BLOCK0	Startup area will be set to Block 0.
FLASH_STARTUP_AREA_BLOCK1	Startup area will be set to Block 1.

◆ flash_event_t

enum flash_event_t	
Event types returned by the ISR callback when used in Data Flash BGO mode	
Enumerator	
FLASH_EVENT_ERASE_COMPLETE	Erase operation successfully completed.
FLASH_EVENT_WRITE_COMPLETE	Write operation successfully completed.
FLASH_EVENT_BLANK	Blank check operation successfully completed. Specified area is blank.
FLASH_EVENT_NOT_BLANK	Blank check operation successfully completed. Specified area is NOT blank.
FLASH_EVENT_ERR_DF_ACCESS	Data Flash operation failed. Can occur when writing an unerased section.
FLASH_EVENT_ERR_CF_ACCESS	Code Flash operation failed. Can occur when writing an unerased section.
FLASH_EVENT_ERR_CMD_LOCKED	Operation failed, FCU is in Locked state (often result of an illegal command)
FLASH_EVENT_ERR_FAILURE	Erase or Program Operation failed.
FLASH_EVENT_ERR_ONE_BIT	A 1-bit error has been corrected when reading the flash memory area by the sequencer.

◆ flash_id_code_mode_t

enum flash_id_code_mode_t	
ID Code Modes for writing to ID code registers	
Enumerator	
FLASH_ID_CODE_MODE_UNLOCKED	ID code is ignored.
FLASH_ID_CODE_MODE_LOCKED_WITH_ALL_ERASE_SUPPORT	ID code is checked. All erase is available.
FLASH_ID_CODE_MODE_LOCKED	ID code is checked.

◆ flash_status_t

enum flash_status_t	
Flash status	
Enumerator	
FLASH_STATUS_IDLE	The flash is idle.
FLASH_STATUS_BUSY	The flash is currently processing a command.

5.3.16 I2C Master Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for I2C master communication.

Summary

The I2C master interface provides a common API for I2C HAL drivers. The I2C master interface supports:

- Interrupt driven transmit/receive processing
- Callback function support which can return an event code

Implemented by:

- I2C Master on IIC (r_iic_master)

Data Structures

struct	i2c_master_callback_args_t
struct	i2c_master_cfg_t
struct	i2c_master_api_t
struct	i2c_master_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	i2c_master_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	i2c_master_rate_t
enum	i2c_master_addr_mode_t
enum	i2c_master_event_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ i2c_master_callback_args_t

struct i2c_master_callback_args_t

I2C callback parameter definition

Data Fields		
void const *const	p_context	Pointer to user-provided context.
i2c_master_event_t const	event	Event code.

◆ i2c_master_cfg_t

struct i2c_master_cfg_t

I2C configuration block

Data Fields

uint8_t	channel
	Identifier recognizable by implementation. More...
i2c_master_rate_t	rate
	Device's maximum clock rate from enum i2c_rate_t.
uint32_t	slave
	The address of the slave device.
i2c_master_addr_mode_t	addr_mode
	Indicates how slave fields should be interpreted.
uint8_t	ipl
	Interrupt priority level. Same for RXI, TXI, TEI and ERI.

IRQn_Type	rxi_irq
	Receive IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	txi_irq
	Transmit IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	tei_irq
	Transmit end IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	eri_irq
	Error IRQ number.
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_tx
	DTC instance for I2C transmit.Set to NULL if unused. More...
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_rx
	DTC instance for I2C receive. Set to NULL if unused.
void(*	p_callback)(i2c_master_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to callback function. More...
void const *	p_context
	Pointer to the user-provided context.
void const *	p_extend
	Any configuration data needed by the hardware. More...

Field Documentation

◆ channel

uint8_t i2c_master_cfg_t::channel

Identifier recognizable by implementation.

Generic configuration

◆ p_transfer_tx

transfer_instance_t const* i2c_master_cfg_t::p_transfer_tx

DTC instance for I2C transmit.Set to NULL if unused.

DTC support

◆ p_callback

void(* i2c_master_cfg_t::p_callback) (i2c_master_callback_args_t *p_args)

Pointer to callback function.

Parameters to control software behavior

◆ p_extend

void const* i2c_master_cfg_t::p_extend

Any configuration data needed by the hardware.

Implementation-specific configuration

◆ i2c_master_api_t

struct i2c_master_api_t

Interface definition for I2C access as master

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2c_master_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)
fsp_err_t(*	abort)(i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	slaveAddressSet)(i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const

	slave, i2c_master_addr_mode_t const addr_mode)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* i2c_master_api_t::open) (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2c_master_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Opens the I2C Master driver and initializes the hardware.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_MASTER_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements are set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* i2c_master_api_t::read) (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)

Performs a read operation on an I2C Master device.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_MASTER_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_api_master_t::open call.
[in]	p_dest	Pointer to the location to store read data.
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes to read.
[in]	restart	Specify if the restart condition should be issued after reading.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* i2c_master_api_t::write) (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes, bool const restart)

Performs a write operation on an I2C Master device.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_MASTER_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_api_master_t::open call.
[in]	p_src	Pointer to the location to get write data from.
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes to write.
[in]	restart	Specify if the restart condition should be issued after writing.

◆ abort

fsp_err_t(* i2c_master_api_t::abort) (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Performs a reset of the peripheral.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_MASTER_Abort()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_api_master_t::open call.

◆ slaveAddressSet

fsp_err_t(* i2c_master_api_t::slaveAddressSet) (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const slave, i2c_master_addr_mode_t const addr_mode)

Sets address of the slave device without reconfiguring the bus.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_MASTER_SlaveAddressSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_api_master_t::open call.
[in]	slave_address	Address of the slave device.
[in]	address_mode	Addressing mode.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* i2c_master_api_t::close) (i2c_master_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Closes the driver and releases the I2C Master device.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_MASTER_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_api_master_t::open call.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* i2c_master_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Gets version information and stores it in the provided version struct.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_MASTER_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ i2c_master_instance_t

struct i2c_master_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields

i2c_master_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
i2c_master_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
i2c_master_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ i2c_master_ctrl_t

typedef void i2c_master_ctrl_t

I2C control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the I2C API calls.

Implemented as

- iic_master_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ i2c_master_rate_t

enum i2c_master_rate_t

Communication speed options

Enumerator	
I2C_MASTER_RATE_STANDARD	100 kHz
I2C_MASTER_RATE_FAST	400 kHz
I2C_MASTER_RATE_FASTPLUS	1 MHz

◆ i2c_master_addr_mode_t

enum i2c_master_addr_mode_t

Addressing mode options

Enumerator	
I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_7BIT	Use 7-bit addressing mode.
I2C_MASTER_ADDR_MODE_10BIT	Use 10-bit addressing mode.

◆ i2c_master_event_t

enum i2c_master_event_t	
Callback events	
Enumerator	
I2C_MASTER_EVENT_ABORTED	A transfer was aborted.
I2C_MASTER_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE	A receive operation was completed successfully.
I2C_MASTER_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE	A transmit operation was completed successfully.

5.3.17 I2C Slave Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for I2C slave communication.

Summary

The I2C slave interface provides a common API for I2C HAL drivers. The I2C slave interface supports:

- Interrupt driven transmit/receive processing
- Callback function support which returns a event codes

Implemented by:

- I2C Slave on IIC (r_iic_slave)

Data Structures

struct	i2c_slave_callback_args_t
struct	i2c_slave_cfg_t
struct	i2c_slave_api_t
struct	i2c_slave_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	i2c_slave_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	i2c_slave_rate_t
enum	i2c_slave_addr_mode_t
enum	i2c_slave_event_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ i2c_slave_callback_args_t

struct i2c_slave_callback_args_t

I2C callback parameter definition

Data Fields		
void const *const	p_context	Pointer to user-provided context.
uint32_t const	bytes	Number of received/transmitted bytes in buffer.
i2c_slave_event_t const	event	Event code.

◆ i2c_slave_cfg_t

struct i2c_slave_cfg_t

I2C configuration block

Data Fields

uint8_t	channel
	Identifier recognizable by implementation. More...
i2c_slave_rate_t	rate
	Device's maximum clock rate from enum i2c_rate_t.
uint16_t	slave
	The address of the slave device.
i2c_slave_addr_mode_t	addr_mode
	Indicates how slave fields should be interpreted.

bool	general_call_enable
	Allow a General call from master.
IRQn_Type	rxi_irq
	Receive IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	txi_irq
	Transmit IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	tei_irq
	Transmit end IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	eri_irq
	Error IRQ number.
uint8_t	ipl
	Interrupt priority level.
void(*	p_callback)(i2c_slave_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to callback function. More...
void const *	p_context
	Pointer to the user-provided context.
void const *	p_extend
	Any configuration data needed by the hardware. More...

Field Documentation

◆ channel

uint8_t i2c_slave_cfg_t::channel

Identifier recognizable by implementation.

Generic configuration

◆ p_callback

void(* i2c_slave_cfg_t::p_callback) (i2c_slave_callback_args_t *p_args)

Pointer to callback function.

Parameters to control software behavior

◆ p_extend

void const* i2c_slave_cfg_t::p_extend

Any configuration data needed by the hardware.

Implementation-specific configuration

◆ i2c_slave_api_t

struct i2c_slave_api_t

Interface definition for I2C access as slave

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2c_slave_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* i2c_slave_api_t::open) (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2c_slave_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Opens the I2C Slave driver and initializes the hardware.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_SLAVE_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements are set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* i2c_slave_api_t::read) (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)

Performs a read operation on an I2C Slave device.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_SLAVE_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_slave_api_t::open call.
[in]	p_dest	Pointer to the location to store read data.
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes to read.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* i2c_slave_api_t::write) (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)

Performs a write operation on an I2C Slave device.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_SLAVE_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_slave_api_t::open call.
[in]	p_src	Pointer to the location to get write data from.
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes to write.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* i2c_slave_api_t::close) (i2c_slave_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Closes the driver and releases the I2C Slave device.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_SLAVE_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block set in i2c_slave_api_t::open call.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* i2c_slave_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Gets version information and stores it in the provided version struct.

Implemented as

- R_IIC_SLAVE_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ i2c_slave_instance_t

struct i2c_slave_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
i2c_slave_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure

		for this instance.
i2c_slave_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
i2c_slave_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ i2c_slave_ctrl_t

typedef void i2c_slave_ctrl_t

I2C control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the I2C API calls.

Implemented as

- iic_slave_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ i2c_slave_rate_t

enum i2c_slave_rate_t

Communication speed options

Enumerator	
I2C_SLAVE_RATE_STANDARD	100 kHz
I2C_SLAVE_RATE_FAST	400 kHz
I2C_SLAVE_RATE_FASTPLUS	1 MHz

◆ i2c_slave_addr_mode_t

enum i2c_slave_addr_mode_t

Addressing mode options

Enumerator	
I2C_SLAVE_ADDR_MODE_7BIT	Use 7-bit addressing mode.
I2C_SLAVE_ADDR_MODE_10BIT	Use 10-bit addressing mode.

◆ i2c_slave_event_t

enum i2c_slave_event_t

Callback events

Enumerator	
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_ABORTED	A transfer was aborted.
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE	A receive operation was completed successfully.
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE	A transmit operation was completed successfully.
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_REQUEST	A read operation expected from slave. Detected a write from master.
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_REQUEST	A write operation expected from slave. Detected a read from master.
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_RX_MORE_REQUEST	configured to be read in slave. A read operation expected from slave. Master sends out more data than
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_TX_MORE_REQUEST	configured to be written by slave. A write operation expected from slave. Master requests more data than
I2C_SLAVE_EVENT_GENERAL_CALL	General Call address received from Master. Detected a write from master.

5.3.18 I2S Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for I2S audio communication.

Summary

The I2S (Inter-IC Sound) interface provides APIs and definitions for I2S audio communication.

Known Implementations

Serial Sound Interface (r_ssi)

Data Structures

struct	i2s_callback_args_t
struct	i2s_status_t
struct	i2s_cfg_t
struct	i2s_api_t
struct	i2s_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	i2s_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	i2s_pcm_width_t
enum	i2s_word_length_t
enum	i2s_event_t
enum	i2s_mode_t
enum	i2s_mute_t
enum	i2s_ws_continue_t
enum	i2s_state_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ i2s_callback_args_t

struct i2s_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in i2s_api_t::open function in i2s_cfg_t.
i2s_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback (overflow or error).

◆ i2s_status_t

struct i2s_status_t		
I2S status.		
Data Fields		
i2s_state_t	state	Current I2S state.

◆ i2s_cfg_t

struct i2s_cfg_t	
User configuration structure, used in open function	
Data Fields	
uint32_t	channel
i2s_pcm_width_t	pcm_width
	Audio PCM data width.
i2s_word_length_t	word_length
	Audio word length, bits must be >= i2s_cfg_t::pcm_width bits.
i2s_ws_continue_t	ws_continue
	Whether to continue WS transmission during idle state.
i2s_mode_t	operating_mode
	Master or slave mode.
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_tx
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_rx
void(*	p_callback)(i2s_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context

void const *	p_extend
	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.
uint8_t	rxi_ipl
	Receive interrupt priority.
uint8_t	txi_ipl
	Transmit interrupt priority.
uint8_t	idle_err_ipl
	Idle/Error interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	txi_irq
	Transmit IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	rxi_irq
	Receive IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	int_irq
	Idle/Error IRQ number.

Field Documentation

◆ channel

uint32_t i2s_cfg_t::channel

Select a channel corresponding to the channel number of the hardware.

◆ p_transfer_tx

transfer_instance_t const* i2s_cfg_t::p_transfer_tx

To use DTC during write, link a DTC instance here. Set to NULL if unused.

◆ **p_transfer_rx**

transfer_instance_t const* i2s_cfg_t::p_transfer_rx

To use DTC during read, link a DTC instance here. Set to NULL if unused.

◆ **p_callback**

void(* i2s_cfg_t::p_callback) (i2s_callback_args_t *p_args)

Callback provided when an I2S ISR occurs. Set to NULL for no CPU interrupt.

◆ **p_context**

void const* i2s_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in i2s_callback_args_t.

◆ **i2s_api_t**

struct i2s_api_t

I2S functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	mute)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_mute_t const mute_enable)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	writeRead)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_src, void *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::open) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_Open()

Precondition
Peripheral clocks and any required output pins should be configured prior to calling this function.

Note
To reconfigure after calling this function, call i2s_api_t::close first.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ stop

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::stop) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Stop communication. Communication is stopped when callback is called with I2S_EVENT_IDLE.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in i2s_api_t::open call for this instance.

◆ mute

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::mute) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_mute_t const mute_enable)

Enable or disable mute.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_Mute()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in i2s_api_t::open call for this instance.
[in]	mute_enable	Whether to enable or disable mute.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::write) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)

Write I2S data. All transmit data is queued when callback is called with I2S_EVENT_TX_EMPTY. Transmission is complete when callback is called with I2S_EVENT_IDLE.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in i2s_api_t::open call for this instance.
[in]	p_src	Buffer of PCM samples. Must be 4 byte aligned.
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes in the buffer. Recommended requesting a multiple of 8 bytes. If not a multiple of 8, padding 0s will be added to transmission to make it a multiple of 8.

◆ **read**

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::read) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)

Read I2S data. Reception is complete when callback is called with I2S_EVENT_RX_EMPTY.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in i2s_api_t::open call for this instance.
[in]	p_dest	Buffer to store PCM samples. Must be 4 byte aligned.
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes in the buffer. Recommended requesting a multiple of 8 bytes. If not a multiple of 8, receive will stop at the multiple of 8 below requested bytes.

◆ writeRead

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::writeRead) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_src, void *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)

Simultaneously write and read I2S data. Transmission and reception are complete when callback is called with I2S_EVENT_IDLE.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_WriteRead()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in i2s_api_t::open call for this instance.
[in]	p_src	Buffer of PCM samples. Must be 4 byte aligned.
[in]	p_dest	Buffer to store PCM samples. Must be 4 byte aligned.
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes in the buffers. Recommended requesting a multiple of 8 bytes. If not a multiple of 8, padding 0s will be added to transmission to make it a multiple of 8, and receive will stop at the multiple of 8 below requested bytes.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::statusGet) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, i2s_status_t *const p_status)

Get current status and store it in provided pointer p_status.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in i2s_api_t::open call for this instance.
[out]	p_status	Current status of the driver.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::close) (i2s_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Allows driver to be reconfigured and may reduce power consumption.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in i2s_api_t::open call for this instance.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* i2s_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_SSI_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ i2s_instance_t

struct i2s_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
i2s_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
i2s_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
i2s_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ i2s_ctrl_t

typedef void i2s_ctrl_t

I2S control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the I2S API calls.

Implemented as

- ssi_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ i2s_pcm_width_t

enum i2s_pcm_width_t

Audio PCM width

Enumerator	
I2S_PCM_WIDTH_8_BITS	Using 8-bit PCM.
I2S_PCM_WIDTH_16_BITS	Using 16-bit PCM.
I2S_PCM_WIDTH_18_BITS	Using 18-bit PCM.
I2S_PCM_WIDTH_20_BITS	Using 20-bit PCM.
I2S_PCM_WIDTH_22_BITS	Using 22-bit PCM.
I2S_PCM_WIDTH_24_BITS	Using 24-bit PCM.
I2S_PCM_WIDTH_32_BITS	Using 24-bit PCM.

◆ i2s_word_length_t

enum i2s_word_length_t	
Audio system word length.	
Enumerator	
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_8_BITS	Using 8-bit system word length.
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_16_BITS	Using 16-bit system word length.
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_24_BITS	Using 24-bit system word length.
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_32_BITS	Using 32-bit system word length.
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_48_BITS	Using 48-bit system word length.
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_64_BITS	Using 64-bit system word length.
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_128_BITS	Using 128-bit system word length.
I2S_WORD_LENGTH_256_BITS	Using 256-bit system word length.

◆ i2s_event_t

enum i2s_event_t	
Events that can trigger a callback function	
Enumerator	
I2S_EVENT_IDLE	Communication is idle.
I2S_EVENT_TX_EMPTY	Transmit buffer is below FIFO trigger level.
I2S_EVENT_RX_FULL	Receive buffer is above FIFO trigger level.

◆ i2s_mode_t

enum i2s_mode_t	
I2S communication mode	
Enumerator	
I2S_MODE_SLAVE	Slave mode.
I2S_MODE_MASTER	Master mode.

◆ i2s_mute_t

enum i2s_mute_t	
Mute audio samples.	
Enumerator	
I2S_MUTE_OFF	Disable mute.
I2S_MUTE_ON	Enable mute.

◆ i2s_ws_continue_t

enum i2s_ws_continue_t	
Whether to continue WS (word select line) transmission during idle state.	
Enumerator	
I2S_WS_CONTINUE_ON	Enable WS continue mode.
I2S_WS_CONTINUE_OFF	Disable WS continue mode.

◆ i2s_state_t

enum i2s_state_t	
Possible status values returned by i2s_api_t::statusGet.	
Enumerator	
I2S_STATE_IN_USE	I2S is in use.
I2S_STATE_STOPPED	I2S is stopped.

5.3.19 I/O Port Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for accessing I/O ports and configuring I/O functionality.

Summary

The IOPort shared interface provides the ability to access the IOPorts of a device at both bit and port level. Port and pin direction can be changed.

IOPORT Interface description: I/O Ports (r_ioport)

Data Structures

struct	ioport_pin_cfg_t
struct	ioport_cfg_t
struct	ioport_api_t
struct	ioport_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef uint16_t	ioport_size_t IO port size on this device. More...
typedef void	ioport_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	ioport_peripheral_t
enum	ioport_ethernet_channel_t
enum	ioport_ethernet_mode_t
enum	ioport_cfg_options_t
enum	ioport_pwpr_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ ioport_pin_cfg_t

struct ioport_pin_cfg_t		
Pin identifier and pin PFS pin configuration value		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	pin_cfg	Pin PFS configuration - Use ioport_cfg_options_t parameters to configure.
bsp_io_port_pin_t	pin	Pin identifier.

◆ **ioport_cfg_t**

struct ioport_cfg_t		
Multiple pin configuration data for loading into PFS registers by R_IOPORT_Init()		
Data Fields		
uint16_t	number_of_pins	Number of pins for which there is configuration data.
ioport_pin_cfg_t const *	p_pin_cfg_data	Pin configuration data.

◆ **ioport_api_t**

struct ioport_api_t	
IOPort driver structure. IOPort functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.	
Data Fields	
fsp_err_t(*	open)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const ioport_cfg_t *p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	pinsCfg)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const ioport_cfg_t *p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	pinCfg)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, uint32_t cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	pinEventInputRead)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t *p_pin_event)
fsp_err_t(*	pinEventOutputWrite)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t pin_value)
fsp_err_t(*	pinEthernetModeCfg)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ioport_ethernet_channel_t channel, ioport_ethernet_mode_t mode)

fsp_err_t(*	pinRead)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t *p_pin_value)
fsp_err_t(*	pinWrite)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t level)
fsp_err_t(*	portDirectionSet)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t direction_values, ioport_size_t mask)
fsp_err_t(*	portEventInputRead)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t *p_event_data)
fsp_err_t(*	portEventOutputWrite)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t event_data, ioport_size_t mask_value)
fsp_err_t(*	portRead)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t *p_port_value)
fsp_err_t(*	portWrite)(ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t value, ioport_size_t mask)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_data)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::open) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const ioport_cfg_t *p_cfg)

Initialize internal driver data and initial pin configurations. Called during startup. Do not call this API during runtime. Use ioport_api_t::pinsCfg for runtime reconfiguration of multiple pins.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration data array.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::close) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close the API.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ pinsCfg

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::pinsCfg) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const ioport_cfg_t *p_cfg)

Configure multiple pins.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PinsCfg()

Parameters

[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration data array.

◆ pinCfg

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::pinCfg) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, uint32_t cfg)

Configure settings for an individual pin.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PinCfg()

Parameters

[in]	pin	Pin to be read.
[in]	cfg	Configuration options for the pin.

◆ pinEventInputRead

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::pinEventInputRead) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t *p_pin_event)

Read the event input data of the specified pin and return the level.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PinEventInputRead()

Parameters

[in]	pin	Pin to be read.
[in]	p_pin_event	Pointer to return the event data.

◆ pinEventOutputWrite

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::pinEventOutputWrite) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t pin_value)

Write pin event data.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PinEventOutputWrite()

Parameters

[in]	pin	Pin event data is to be written to.
[in]	pin_value	Level to be written to pin output event.

◆ pinEthernetModeCfg

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::pinEthernetModeCfg) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, ioport_ethernet_channel_t channel, ioport_ethernet_mode_t mode)

Configure the PHY mode of the Ethernet channels.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_EthernetModeCfg()

Parameters

[in]	channel	Channel configuration will be set for.
[in]	mode	PHY mode to set the channel to.

◆ pinRead

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::pinRead) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t *p_pin_value)

Read level of a pin.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PinRead()

Parameters

[in]	pin	Pin to be read.
[in]	p_pin_value	Pointer to return the pin level.

◆ pinWrite

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::pinWrite) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_pin_t pin, bsp_io_level_t level)

Write specified level to a pin.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PinWrite()

Parameters

[in]	pin	Pin to be written to.
[in]	level	State to be written to the pin.

◆ portDirectionSet

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::portDirectionSet) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t direction_values, ioport_size_t mask)

Set the direction of one or more pins on a port.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PortDirectionSet()

Parameters

[in]	port	Port being configured.
[in]	direction_values	Value controlling direction of pins on port (1 - output, 0 - input).
[in]	mask	Mask controlling which pins on the port are to be configured.

◆ portEventInputRead

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::portEventInputRead) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t *p_event_data)

Read captured event data for a port.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PortEventInputRead()

Parameters

[in]	port	Port to be read.
[in]	p_event_data	Pointer to return the event data.

◆ portEventOutputWrite

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::portEventOutputWrite) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t event_data, ioport_size_t mask_value)

Write event output data for a port.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PortEventOutputWrite()

Parameters

[in]	port	Port event data will be written to.
[in]	event_data	Data to be written as event data to specified port.
[in]	mask_value	Each bit set to 1 in the mask corresponds to that bit's value in event data. being written to port.

◆ portRead

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::portRead) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t *p_port_value)

Read states of pins on the specified port.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PortRead()

Parameters

[in]	port	Port to be read.
[in]	p_port_value	Pointer to return the port value.

◆ portWrite

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::portWrite) (ioport_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bsp_io_port_t port, ioport_size_t value, ioport_size_t mask)

Write to multiple pins on a port.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_PortWrite()

Parameters

[in]	port	Port to be written to.
[in]	value	Value to be written to the port.
[in]	mask	Mask controlling which pins on the port are written to.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* ioport_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_data)

Return the version of the IOPort driver.

Implemented as

- R_IOPORT_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_data	Memory address to return version information to.

◆ ioport_instance_t

struct ioport_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
ioport_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
ioport_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
ioport_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ ioport_size_t

typedef uint16_t ioport_size_t

IO port size on this device.

IO port type used with ports

◆ ioport_ctrl_t

typedef void ioport_ctrl_t

IOPORT control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the IOPORT API calls.

Implemented as

- ioport_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ ioport_peripheral_t

enum ioport_peripheral_t

Superset of all peripheral functions.

Enumerator	
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_IO	Pin will functions as an IO pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_DEBUG	Pin will function as a DEBUG pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_AGT	Pin will function as an AGT peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_GPT0	Pin will function as a GPT peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_GPT1	Pin will function as a GPT peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_SCI0_2_4_6_8	Pin will function as an SCI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_SCI1_3_5_7_9	Pin will function as an SCI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_SPI	Pin will function as a SPI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_IIC	Pin will function as a IIC peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_KEY	Pin will function as a KEY peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_CLKOUT_COMP_RTC	Pin will function as a clock/comparator/RTC peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_CAC_AD	Pin will function as a CAC/ADC peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_BUS	Pin will function as a BUS peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_CTSU	Pin will function as a CTSU peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_LCDC	Pin will function as a segment LCD peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_DALI	Pin will function as a DALI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_CAN	Pin will function as a CAN peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_QSPI	Pin will function as a QSPI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_SSI	Pin will function as an SSI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_USB_FS	Pin will function as a USB full speed peripheral pin

IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_USB_HS	Pin will function as a USB high speed peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_SDHI_MMC	Pin will function as an SD/MMC peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_ETHER_MII	Pin will function as an Ethernet MMI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_ETHER_RMII	Pin will function as an Ethernet RMMI peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_PDC	Pin will function as a PDC peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_LCD_GRAPHICS	Pin will function as a graphics LCD peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_TRACE	Pin will function as a debug trace peripheral pin
IOPORT_PERIPHERAL_END	Marks end of enum - used by parameter checking

◆ ioport_ethernet_channel_t

enum ioport_ethernet_channel_t

Superset of Ethernet channels.

Enumerator	
IOPORT_ETHERNET_CHANNEL_0	Used to select Ethernet channel 0.
IOPORT_ETHERNET_CHANNEL_1	Used to select Ethernet channel 1.
IOPORT_ETHERNET_CHANNEL_END	Marks end of enum - used by parameter checking.

◆ ioport_ethernet_mode_t

enum ioport_ethernet_mode_t

Superset of Ethernet PHY modes.

Enumerator	
IOPORT_ETHERNET_MODE_RMII	Ethernet PHY mode set to MII.
IOPORT_ETHERNET_MODE_MII	Ethernet PHY mode set to RMII.
IOPORT_ETHERNET_MODE_END	Marks end of enum - used by parameter checking.

◆ ioport_cfg_options_t

enum ioport_cfg_options_t	
Options to configure pin functions	
Enumerator	
IOPORT_CFG_PORT_DIRECTION_INPUT	Sets the pin direction to input (default)
IOPORT_CFG_PORT_DIRECTION_OUTPUT	Sets the pin direction to output.
IOPORT_CFG_PORT_OUTPUT_LOW	Sets the pin level to low.
IOPORT_CFG_PORT_OUTPUT_HIGH	Sets the pin level to high.
IOPORT_CFG_PULLUP_ENABLE	Enables the pin's internal pull-up.
IOPORT_CFG_PIM_TTL	Enables the pin's input mode.
IOPORT_CFG_NMOS_ENABLE	Enables the pin's NMOS open-drain output.
IOPORT_CFG_PMOS_ENABLE	Enables the pin's PMOS open-drain ouput.
IOPORT_CFG_DRIVE_MID	Sets pin drive output to medium.
IOPORT_CFG_DRIVE_MID_IIC	Sets pin to drive output needed for IIC on a 20mA port.
IOPORT_CFG_DRIVE_HIGH	Sets pin drive output to high.
IOPORT_CFG_EVENT_RISING_EDGE	Sets pin event trigger to rising edge.
IOPORT_CFG_EVENT_FALLING_EDGE	Sets pin event trigger to falling edge.
IOPORT_CFG_EVENT_BOTH_EDGES	Sets pin event trigger to both edges.
IOPORT_CFG_IRQ_ENABLE	Sets pin as an IRQ pin.
IOPORT_CFG_ANALOG_ENABLE	Enables pin to operate as an analog pin.
IOPORT_CFG_PERIPHERAL_PIN	Enables pin to operate as a peripheral pin.

◆ ioport_pwpr_t

enum ioport_pwpr_t	
Enumerator	
IOPORT_PFS_WRITE_DISABLE	Disable PFS write access.
IOPORT_PFS_WRITE_ENABLE	Enable PFS write access.

5.3.20 JPEG Codec Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for JPEG functions.

Data Structures

struct	jpeg_encode_image_size_t
struct	jpeg_callback_args_t
struct	jpeg_cfg_t
struct	jpeg_api_t
struct	jpeg_instance_t

Macros

#define	JPEG_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	jpeg_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	jpeg_color_space_t
enum	jpeg_data_order_t
enum	jpeg_status_t
enum	jpeg_decode_pixel_format_t

enum	jpeg_decode_subsample_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ jpeg_encode_image_size_t

struct jpeg_encode_image_size_t		
Image parameter structure		
Data Fields		
uint16_t	horizontal_stride_pixels	Horizontal stride.
uint16_t	horizontal_resolution	Horizontal Resolution in pixel.
uint16_t	vertical_resolution	Vertical Resolution in pixel.

◆ jpeg_callback_args_t

struct jpeg_callback_args_t		
Callback status structure		
Data Fields		
jpeg_status_t	status	JPEG status.
uint32_t	image_size	JPEG image size.
void const *	p_context	Pointer to user-provided context.

◆ jpeg_cfg_t

struct jpeg_cfg_t	
User configuration structure, used in open function.	
Data Fields	
IRQn_Type	jedi_irq
	Data transfer interrupt IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	jdti_irq
	Decompression interrupt IRQ number.
uint8_t	jdti_ipl
	Data transfer interrupt priority.

uint8_t	jedi_ipl
	Decompression interrupt priority.
jpeg_mode_t	default_mode
	Mode to use at startup.
jpeg_data_order_t	decode_input_data_order
	Input data stream byte order.
jpeg_data_order_t	decode_output_data_order
	Output data stream byte order.
jpeg_decode_pixel_format_t	pixel_format
	Pixel format.
uint8_t	alpha_value
	Alpha value to be applied to decoded pixel data. Only valid for ARGB8888 format.
void(*	p_decode_callback)(jpeg_callback_args_t *p_args)
	User-supplied callback functions.
void const *	p_decode_context
	Placeholder for user data. Passed to user callback in jpeg_callback_args_t.
jpeg_data_order_t	encode_input_data_order
	Input data stream byte order.

jpeg_data_order_t	encode_output_data_order
	Output data stream byte order.
uint16_t	dri_marker
	DRI Marker setting (0 = No DRI or RST marker)
uint16_t	horizontal_resolution
	Horizontal resolution of input image.
uint16_t	vertical_resolution
	Vertical resolution of input image.
uint16_t	horizontal_stride_pixels
	Horizontal stride of input image.
uint8_t const *	p_quant_luma_table
	Luma quantization table.
uint8_t const *	p_quant_chroma_table
	Chroma quantization table.
uint8_t const *	p_huffman_luma_ac_table
	Huffman AC table for luma.
uint8_t const *	p_huffman_luma_dc_table
	Huffman DC table for luma.
uint8_t const *	p_huffman_chroma_ac_table

	Huffman AC table for chroma.
uint8_t const *	p_huffman_chroma_dc_table
	Huffman DC table for chroma.
void(*	p_encode_callback)(jpeg_callback_args_t *p_args)
	User-supplied callback functions.
void const *	p_encode_context
	Placeholder for user data. Passed to user callback in jpeg_callback_args_t.

◆ **jpeg_api_t**

struct jpeg_api_t	
JPEG functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.	
Data Fields	
fsp_err_t(*	open)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	inputBufferSet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *p_buffer, uint32_t buffer_size)
fsp_err_t(*	outputBufferSet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *p_buffer, uint32_t buffer_size)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)
fsp_err_t(*	horizontalStrideSet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t horizontal_stride)

fsp_err_t(*	pixelFormatGet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_color_space_t *const p_color_space)
fsp_err_t(*	imageSubsampleSet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_decode_subsample_t horizontal_subsample, jpeg_decode_subsample_t vertical_subsample)
fsp_err_t(*	linesDecodedGet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_lines)
fsp_err_t(*	imageSizeGet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *p_horizontal_size, uint16_t *p_vertical_size)
fsp_err_t(*	imageSizeSet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_encode_image_size_t *p_image_size)
fsp_err_t(*	modeSet)(jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_mode_t mode)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::open) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_Open()

Precondition

none

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ inputBufferSet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::inputBufferSet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *p_buffer, uint32_t buffer_size)

Assign input data buffer to JPEG codec.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_InputBufferSet()

Precondition
the JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Note
The buffer starting address must be 8-byte aligned.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[in]	p_buffer	Pointer to the input buffer space
[in]	buffer_size	Size of the input buffer

◆ outputBufferSet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::outputBufferSet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *p_buffer, uint32_t buffer_size)

Assign output buffer to JPEG codec for storing output data.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_OutputBufferSet()

Precondition
The JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Note
The buffer starting address must be 8-byte aligned. For the decoding process, the HLD driver automatically computes the number of lines of the image to decoded so the output data fits into the given space. If the supplied output buffer is not able to hold the entire frame, the application should call the Output Full Callback function so it can be notified when additional buffer space is needed.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[in]	p_buffer	Pointer to the output buffer space
[in]	buffer_size	Size of the output buffer

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::statusGet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_status_t *const p_status)

Retrieve current status of the JPEG codec module.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_StatusGet()

Precondition

the JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_status	JPEG module status

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::close) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Cancel an outstanding operation.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_Close()

Precondition

the JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Note

If the encoding or the decoding operation is finished without errors, the HLD driver automatically closes the device. In this case, application does not need to explicitly close the JPEG device.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ horizontalStrideSet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::horizontalStrideSet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t horizontal_stride)

Configure the horizontal stride value.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_DecodeHorizontalStrideSet()

Precondition
The JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[in]	horizontal_stride	Horizontal stride value to be used for the decoded image data.
[in]	buffer_size	Size of the output buffer

◆ pixelFormatGet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::pixelFormatGet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_color_space_t *const p_color_space)

Get the input pixel format.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_DecodePixelFormatGet()

Precondition
the JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_color_space	JPEG input format.

◆ imageSubsampleSet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::imageSubsampleSet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_decode_subsample_t horizontal_subsample, jpeg_decode_subsample_t vertical_subsample)

Configure the horizontal and vertical subsample settings.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_DecodeImageSubsampleSet()

Precondition

The JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[in]	horizontal_subsample	Horizontal subsample value
[in]	vertical_subsample	Vertical subsample value

◆ linesDecodedGet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::linesDecodedGet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_lines)

Return the number of lines decoded into the output buffer.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_DecodeLinesDecodedGet()

Precondition

the JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_lines	Number of lines decoded

◆ imageSizeGet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::imageSizeGet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint16_t *p_horizontal_size, uint16_t *p_vertical_size)

Retrieve image size during decoding operation.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_DecodeImageSizeGet()

Precondition

the JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Note

If the encoding or the decoding operation is finished without errors, the HLD driver automatically closes the device. In this case, application does not need to explicitly close the JPEG device.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_horizontal_size	Image horizontal size, in number of pixels.
[out]	p_vertical_size	Image vertical size, in number of pixels.

◆ imageSizeSet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::imageSizeSet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_encode_image_size_t *p_image_size)

Set image parameters to JPEG Codec

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_EncodeImageSizeSet()

Precondition

The JPEG codec module must have been opened properly.

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_image_size	Pointer to the RAW image parameters

◆ modeSet

fsp_err_t(* jpeg_api_t::modeSet) (jpeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, jpeg_mode_t mode)

Switch between encode and decode mode or vice-versa.

Implemented as

- R_JPEG_ModeSet()

Precondition

The JPEG codec module must have been opened properly. The JPEG Codec can only perform one operation at a time and requires different configuration for encode and decode. This function facilitates easy switching between the two modes in case both are needed in an application.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in jpeg_api_t::open call.
[in]	mode	Mode to switch to

◆ jpeg_instance_t

struct jpeg_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
jpeg_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
jpeg_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
jpeg_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ JPEG_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define JPEG_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Register definitions, common services and error codes. Configuration for this module

Typedef Documentation

◆ jpeg_ctrl_t

typedef void jpeg_ctrl_t

JPEG decode control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the JPEG decode API calls.

Implemented as

- jpeg_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ jpeg_color_space_t

enum jpeg_color_space_t

Image color space definitions

Enumerator	
JPEG_COLOR_SPACE_YCBCR444	Color Space YCbCr 444.
JPEG_COLOR_SPACE_YCBCR422	Color Space YCbCr 422.
JPEG_COLOR_SPACE_YCBCR420	Color Space YCbCr 420.
JPEG_COLOR_SPACE_YCBCR411	Color Space YCbCr 411.

◆ jpeg_data_order_t

enum jpeg_data_order_t	
Multi-byte Data Format	
Enumerator	
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_NORMAL	(1)(2)(3)(4)(5)(6)(7)(8) Normal byte order
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_BYTE_SWAP	(2)(1)(4)(3)(6)(5)(8)(7) Byte Swap
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_WORD_SWAP	(3)(4)(1)(2)(7)(8)(5)(6) Word Swap
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_WORD_BYTE_SWAP	(4)(3)(2)(1)(8)(7)(6)(5) Word-Byte Swap
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_LONGWORD_SWAP	(5)(6)(7)(8)(1)(2)(3)(4) Longword Swap
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_LONGWORD_BYTE_SWAP	(6)(5)(8)(7)(2)(1)(4)(3) Longword Byte Swap
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_LONGWORD_WORD_SWAP	(7)(8)(5)(6)(3)(4)(1)(2) Longword Word Swap
JPEG_DATA_ORDER_LONGWORD_WORD_BYTE_SWAP	(8)(7)(6)(5)(4)(3)(2)(1) Longword Word Byte Swap

◆ jpeg_status_t

enum jpeg_status_t	
JPEG HLD driver internal status information. The driver can simultaneously be in more than any one status at the same time. Parse the status bit-fields using the definitions in this enum to determine driver status	
Enumerator	
JPEG_STATUS_NONE	JPEG codec module is not initialized.
JPEG_STATUS_IDLE	JPEG Codec module is open but not running.
JPEG_STATUS_RUNNING	JPEG Codec is running.
JPEG_STATUS_HEADER_PROCESSING	JPEG Codec module is reading the JPEG header information.
JPEG_STATUS_INPUT_PAUSE	JPEG Codec paused waiting for more input data.
JPEG_STATUS_OUTPUT_PAUSE	JPEG Codec paused after decoded the number of lines specified by user.
JPEG_STATUS_IMAGE_SIZE_READY	JPEG decoding operation obtained image size, and paused.
JPEG_STATUS_ERROR	JPEG Codec module encountered an error.
JPEG_STATUS_OPERATION_COMPLETE	JPEG Codec has completed the operation.

◆ jpeg_decode_pixel_format_t

enum jpeg_decode_pixel_format_t	
Pixel Data Format	
Enumerator	
JPEG_DECODE_PIXEL_FORMAT_ARGB8888	Pixel Data ARGB8888 format.
JPEG_DECODE_PIXEL_FORMAT_RGB565	Pixel Data RGB565 format.

◆ **jpeg_decode_subsample_t**

enum jpeg_decode_subsample_t	
Data type for horizontal and vertical subsample settings. This setting applies only to the decoding operation.	
Enumerator	
JPEG_DECODE_OUTPUT_NO_SUBSAMPLE	No subsample. The image is decoded with no reduction in size.
JPEG_DECODE_OUTPUT_SUBSAMPLE_HALF	The output image size is reduced by half.
JPEG_DECODE_OUTPUT_SUBSAMPLE_ONE_QUARTER	The output image size is reduced to one-quarter.
JPEG_DECODE_OUTPUT_SUBSAMPLE_ONE_EIGHTH	The output image size is reduced to one-eighth.

5.3.21 Key Matrix Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for key matrix functions.

Summary

The KEYMATRIX interface provides standard KeyMatrix functionality including event generation on a rising or falling edge for one or more channels at the same time. The generated event indicates all channels that are active in that instant via a bit mask. This allows the interface to be used with a matrix configuration or a one-to-one hardware implementation that is triggered on either a rising or a falling edge.

Implemented by:

- Key Interrupt (r_kint)

Data Structures

struct	keymatrix_callback_args_t
struct	keymatrix_cfg_t
struct	keymatrix_api_t

struct	keymatrix_instance_t

Macros

#define	KEYMATRIX_API_VERSION_MAJOR KEY MATRIX API version number (Major)
#define	KEYMATRIX_API_VERSION_MINOR KEY MATRIX API version number (Minor)

Typedefs

typedef void	keymatrix_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	keymatrix_trigger_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ keymatrix_callback_args_t

struct keymatrix_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
void const *	p_context	Holder for user data. Set in keymatrix_api_t::open function in keymatrix_cfg_t.
uint32_t	channel_mask	Bit vector representing the physical hardware channel(s) that caused the interrupt.

◆ keymatrix_cfg_t

struct keymatrix_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in open function

Data Fields

uint32_t	channel_mask
	Key Input channel(s). Bit mask of channels to open.
keymatrix_trigger_t	trigger
	Key Input trigger setting.

uint8_t	ipl
	Interrupt priority level.
IRQn_Type	irq
	NVIC IRQ number.
void(*	p_callback)(keymatrix_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback for key interrupt ISR.
void const *	p_context
	Holder for user data. Passed to callback in keymatrix_user_cb_data_t.
void const *	p_extend
	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.

◆ keymatrix_api_t

struct keymatrix_api_t

Key Matrix driver structure. Key Matrix functions implemented at the HAL layer will use this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, keymatrix_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	enable)(keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	disable)(keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* keymatrix_api_t::open) (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, keymatrix_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_KINT_Open()

Parameters

[out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Value set in this function.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of the structure must be set by user.

◆ enable

fsp_err_t(* keymatrix_api_t::enable) (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Enable Key interrupt

Implemented as

- R_KINT_Enable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block pointer set in Open call for this Key interrupt.

◆ disable

fsp_err_t(* keymatrix_api_t::disable) (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable Key interrupt.

Implemented as

- R_KINT_Disable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block pointer set in Open call for this Key interrupt.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* keymatrix_api_t::close) (keymatrix_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Allow driver to be reconfigured. May reduce power consumption.

Implemented as

- R_KINT_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block pointer set in Open call for this Key interrupt.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* keymatrix_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_KINT_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ keymatrix_instance_t

struct keymatrix_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
keymatrix_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
keymatrix_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
keymatrix_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ keymatrix_ctrl_t

typedef void keymatrix_ctrl_t
Key matrix control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the key matrix API calls. **Implemented as** ◦ kint_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ keymatrix_trigger_t

enum keymatrix_trigger_t	
Trigger type: rising edge, falling edge	
Enumerator	
KEYMATRIX_TRIG_FALLING	Falling edge trigger.
KEYMATRIX_TRIG_RISING	Rising edge trigger.

5.3.22 Low Power Modes Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for accessing low power modes.

Summary

This section defines the API for the LPM (Low Power Mode) Driver. The LPM Driver provides functions for controlling power consumption by configuring and transitioning to a low power mode. The LPM driver supports configuration of MCU low power modes using the LPM hardware peripheral. The LPM driver supports low power modes deep standby, standby, sleep, and snooze.

Note

Not all low power modes are available on all MCUs.

The LPM interface is implemented by:

- Low Power Modes (r_lpm)

Data Structures

struct	lpm_cfg_t
struct	lpm_api_t
struct	lpm_instance_t

Macros

#define	LPM_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	lpm_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	lpm_mode_t
enum	lpm_snooze_request_t
enum	lpm_snooze_end_t
enum	lpm_snooze_cancel_t
enum	lpm_snooze_dtc_t
enum	lpm_standby_wake_source_t
enum	lpm_io_port_t
enum	lpm_power_supply_t
enum	lpm_deep_standby_cancel_edge_t
enum	lpm_deep_standby_cancel_source_t
enum	lpm_output_port_enable_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ lpm_cfg_t

struct lpm_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in open function

Data Fields		
lpm_mode_t	low_power_mode	Low Power Mode
lpm_standby_wake_source_bits_t	standby_wake_sources	Bitwise list of sources to wake from standby

lpm_snooze_request_t	snooze_request_source	Snooze request source
lpm_snooze_end_bits_t	snooze_end_sources	Bitwise list of snooze end sources
lpm_snooze_cancel_t	snooze_cancel_sources	list of snooze cancel sources
lpm_snooze_dtc_t	dtc_state_in_snooze	State of DTC in snooze mode, enabled or disabled
void const *	p_extend	Placeholder for extension.

◆ lpm_api_t

struct lpm_api_t

lpm driver structure. General lpm functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lpm_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	lowPowerReconfigure)(lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lpm_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	lowPowerModeEnter)(lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	ioKeepClear)(lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* lpm_api_t::open) (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lpm_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialization function

Implemented as

- R_LPM_Open()

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* lpm_api_t::close) (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Initialization function

Implemented as

- R_LPM_Close()

◆ lowPowerReconfigure

fsp_err_t(* lpm_api_t::lowPowerReconfigure) (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, lpm_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Configure a low power mode.

Implemented as

- R_LPM_LowPowerReconfigure()

Parameters

[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ lowPowerModeEnter

fsp_err_t(* lpm_api_t::lowPowerModeEnter) (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Enter low power mode (sleep/standby/deep standby) using WFI macro. Function will return after waking from low power mode.

Implemented as

- R_LPM_LowPowerModeEnter()

◆ ioKeepClear

fsp_err_t(* lpm_api_t::ioKeepClear) (lpm_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Clear the IOKEEP bit after deep software standby.

- **Implemented as**

- R_LPM_IoKeepClear()

◆ **versionGet**

fsp_err_t(* lpm_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros.

Implemented as

- R_LPM_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ **lpm_instance_t**

struct lpm_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
lpm_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
lpm_cfg_t const *const	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
lpm_api_t const *const	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ **LPM_API_VERSION_MAJOR**

#define LPM_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Register definitions, common services and error codes.

Typedef Documentation

◆ **lpm_ctrl_t**

typedef void lpm_ctrl_t

LPM control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the LPM API calls.

Implemented as

- lpm_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ lpm_mode_t

enum lpm_mode_t

Low power modes

Enumerator	
LPM_MODE_SLEEP	Sleep mode.
LPM_MODE_STANDBY	Software Standby mode.
LPM_MODE_STANDBY_SNOOZE	Software Standby mode with Snooze mode enabled.
LPM_MODE_DEEP	Deep Software Standby mode.

◆ lpm_snooze_request_t

enum lpm_snooze_request_t

Snooze request sources

Enumerator	
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_RXD0_FALLING	Enable RXD0 falling edge snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ0	Enable IRQ0 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ1	Enable IRQ1 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ2	Enable IRQ2 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ3	Enable IRQ3 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ4	Enable IRQ4 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ5	Enable IRQ5 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ6	Enable IRQ6 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ7	Enable IRQ7 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ8	Enable IRQ8 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ9	Enable IRQ9 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ10	Enable IRQ10 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ11	Enable IRQ11 pin snooze request.

LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ12	Enable IRQ12 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ13	Enable IRQ13 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ14	Enable IRQ14 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_IRQ15	Enable IRQ15 pin snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_KEY	Enable KR snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_ACMPHS0	Enable High-speed analog comparator 0 snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_RTC_ALARM	Enable RTC alarm snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_RTC_PERIOD	Enable RTC period snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_AGT1_UNDERFLOW	Enable AGT1 underflow snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_AGT1_COMPARE_A	Enable AGT1 compare match A snooze request.
LPM_SNOOZE_REQUEST_AGT1_COMPARE_B	Enable AGT1 compare match B snooze request.

◆ lpm_snooze_end_t

enum lpm_snooze_end_t	
Snooze end control	
Enumerator	
LPM_SNOOZE_END_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCES	Transition from Snooze to Normal mode directly.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_AGT1_UNDERFLOW	AGT1 underflow.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_DTC_TRANS_COMPLETE	Last DTC transmission completion.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_DTC_TRANS_COMPLETE_NEGATED	Not Last DTC transmission completion.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_ADC0_COMPARE_MATCH	ADC Channel 0 compare match.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_ADC0_COMPARE_MISMATCH	ADC Channel 0 compare mismatch.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_ADC1_COMPARE_MATCH	ADC 1 compare match.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_ADC1_COMPARE_MISMATCH	ADC 1 compare mismatch.
LPM_SNOOZE_END_SCI0_ADDRESS_MATCH	SCI0 address mismatch.

◆ lpm_snooze_cancel_t

enum lpm_snooze_cancel_t

Snooze cancel control

Enumerator	
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_NONE	No snooze cancel source.
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_ADC0_WCMPM	ADC Channel 0 window compare match.
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_ADC0_WCMPUM	ADC Channel 0 window compare mismatch.
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_SCI0_AM	SCI0 address match event.
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_SCI0_RXI_OR_ERI	SCI0 receive error.
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_DTC_COMPLETE	DTC transfer completion.
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_DOC_DOPCI	Data operation circuit interrupt.
LPM_SNOOZE_CANCEL_SOURCE_CTSU_CTSUFN	CTSU measurement end interrupt.

◆ lpm_snooze_dtc_t

enum lpm_snooze_dtc_t

DTC Enable in Snooze Mode

Enumerator	
LPM_SNOOZE_DTC_DISABLE	Disable DTC operation.
LPM_SNOOZE_DTC_ENABLE	Enable DTC operation.

◆ lpm_standby_wake_source_t

enum lpm_standby_wake_source_t

Wake from standby mode sources, does not apply to sleep or deep standby modes

Enumerator	
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ0	IRQ0.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ1	IRQ1.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ2	IRQ2.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ3	IRQ3.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ4	IRQ4.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ5	IRQ5.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ6	IRQ6.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ7	IRQ7.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ8	IRQ8.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ9	IRQ9.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ10	IRQ10.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ11	IRQ11.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ12	IRQ12.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ13	IRQ13.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ14	IRQ14.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IRQ15	IRQ15.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IWDT	Independent watchdog interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_KEY	Key interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_LVD1	Low Voltage Detection 1 interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_LVD2	Low Voltage Detection 2 interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_VBATT	VBATT Monitor interrupt.

LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_ACMPHS0	Analog Comparator High-speed 0 interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_ACMPLP0	Analog Comparator Low-speed 0 interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_RTCALM	RTC Alarm interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_RTCPRD	RTC Period interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_USBHS	USB High-speed interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_USBFS	USB Full-speed interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_AGT1UD	AGT1 underflow interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_AGT1CA	AGT1 compare match A interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_AGT1CB	AGT1 compare match B interrupt.
LPM_STANDBY_WAKE_SOURCE_IIC0	I2C 0 interrupt.

◆ lpm_io_port_t

enum lpm_io_port_t

I/O port state after Deep Software Standby mode

Enumerator	
LPM_IO_PORT_RESET	When the Deep Software Standby mode is canceled, the I/O ports are in the reset state
LPM_IO_PORT_NO_CHANGE	When the Deep Software Standby mode is canceled, the I/O ports are in the same state as in the Deep Software Standby mode

◆ lpm_power_supply_t

enum lpm_power_supply_t

Power supply control

Enumerator	
LPM_POWER_SUPPLY_DEEPCUT0	Power to the standby RAM, Low-speed on-chip oscillator, AGTn, and USBFS/HS resume detecting unit is supplied in deep software standby mode
LPM_POWER_SUPPLY_DEEPCUT1	Power to the standby RAM, Low-speed on-chip oscillator, AGTn, and USBFS/HS resume detecting unit is not supplied in deep software standby mode
LPM_POWER_SUPPLY_DEEPCUT3	Power to the standby RAM, Low-speed on-chip oscillator, AGTn, and USBFS/HS resume detecting unit is not supplied in deep software standby mode. In addition, LVD is disabled and the low power function in a poweron reset circuit is enabled

◆ lpm_deep_standby_cancel_edge_t

enum lpm_deep_standby_cancel_edge_t

Deep Standby Interrupt Edge

Enumerator	
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_EDGE_NONE	No options for a deep standby cancel source.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ0_RISING	IRQ0-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ0_FALLING	IRQ0-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ1_RISING	IRQ1-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ1_FALLING	IRQ1-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ2_RISING	IRQ2-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ2_FALLING	IRQ2-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ3_RISING	IRQ3-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ3_FALLING	IRQ3-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ4_RISING	IRQ4-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ4_FALLING	IRQ4-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ5_RISING	IRQ5-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ5_FALLING	IRQ5-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ6_RISING	IRQ6-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ6_FALLING	IRQ6-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ7_RISING	IRQ7-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ7_FALLING	IRQ7-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ8_RISING	IRQ8-DS Pin Rising Edge.

LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ8_FALLING	IRQ8-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ9_RISING	IRQ9-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ9_FALLING	IRQ9-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ10_RISING	IRQ10-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ10_FALLING	IRQ10-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ11_RISING	IRQ11-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ11_FALLING	IRQ11-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ12_RISING	IRQ12-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ12_FALLING	IRQ12-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ13_RISING	IRQ13-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ13_FALLING	IRQ13-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ14_RISING	IRQ14-DS Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ14_FALLING	IRQ14-DS Pin Falling Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_LVD1_RISING	LVD1 Rising Slope.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_LVD1_FALLING	LVD1 Falling Slope.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_LVD2_RISING	LVD2 Rising Slope.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_LVD2_FALLING	LVD2 Falling Slope.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_NMI_RISING	NMI Pin Rising Edge.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_NMI_FALLING	NMI Pin Falling Edge.

◆ lpm_deep_standby_cancel_source_t

enum lpm_deep_standby_cancel_source_t

Deep Standby cancel sources

Enumerator	
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_RESET_ONLY	Cancel deep standby only by reset.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ0	IRQ0.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ1	IRQ1.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ2	IRQ2.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ3	IRQ3.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ4	IRQ4.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ5	IRQ5.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ6	IRQ6.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ7	IRQ7.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ8	IRQ8.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ9	IRQ9.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ10	IRQ10.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ11	IRQ11.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ12	IRQ12.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ13	IRQ13.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_IRQ14	IRQ14.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_LVD1	LVD1.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_LVD2	LVD2.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_RTC_INTERVAL	RTC Interval Interrupt.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_RTC_ALARM	RTC Alarm Interrupt.

LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_NMI	NMI.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_USBFS	USBFS Suspend/Resume.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_USBHS	USBHS Suspend/Resume.
LPM_DEEP_STANDBY_CANCEL_SOURCE_AGT1	AGT1 Underflow.

◆ lpm_output_port_enable_t

enum lpm_output_port_enable_t	
Output port enable	
Enumerator	
LPM_OUTPUT_PORT_ENABLE_HIGH_IMPEDANCE	0: In Software Standby Mode or Deep Software Standby Mode, the address output pins, data output pins, and other bus control signal output pins are set to the high-impedance state. In Snooze, the status of the address bus and bus control signals are same as before entering Software Standby Mode.
LPM_OUTPUT_PORT_ENABLE_RETAIN	1: In Software Standby Mode, the address output pins, data output pins, and other bus control signal output pins retain the output state.

5.3.23 Low Voltage Detection Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for Low Voltage Detection.

Summary

The LVD driver provides functions for configuring the LVD voltage monitors and detectors.

Implemented by:

- Low Voltage Detection (r_lvd)

Data Structures

struct	lvd_status_t
struct	lvd_callback_args_t
struct	lvd_cfg_t
struct	lvd_api_t
struct	lvd_instance_t

Macros

#define	LVD_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	lvd_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	lvd_threshold_t
enum	lvd_response_t
enum	lvd_voltage_slope_t
enum	lvd_sample_clock_t
enum	lvd_negation_delay_t
enum	lvd_threshold_crossing_t
enum	lvd_current_state_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ lvd_status_t

struct lvd_status_t

Current state of a voltage monitor.

Data Fields		
lvd_threshold_crossing_t	crossing_detected	Threshold crossing detection (latched)
lvd_current_state_t	current_state	Instantaneous status of monitored voltage (above or below threshold)

◆ lvd_callback_args_t

struct lvd_callback_args_t

LVD callback parameter definition

Data Fields		
uint32_t	monitor_number	Monitor number.
lvd_current_state_t	current_state	Current state of the voltage monitor.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data.

◆ **lvd_cfg_t**

struct lvd_cfg_t

LVD configuration structure

Data Fields

uint32_t	monitor_number
lvd_threshold_t	voltage_threshold
lvd_response_t	detection_response
lvd_voltage_slope_t	voltage_slope
lvd_negation_delay_t	negation_delay
lvd_sample_clock_t	sample_clock_divisor
IRQn_Type	irq
uint8_t	monitor_ipl
void(*	p_callback)(lvd_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context
void const *	p_extend

Field Documentation

◆ monitor_number

uint32_t lvd_cfg_t::monitor_number

Monitor number, 1, 2, ...

◆ voltage_threshold

lvd_threshold_t lvd_cfg_t::voltage_threshold

Threshold for out of range voltage detection

◆ detection_response

lvd_response_t lvd_cfg_t::detection_response

Response on detecting a threshold crossing

◆ voltage_slope

lvd_voltage_slope_t lvd_cfg_t::voltage_slope

Direction of voltage crossing that will trigger a detection (Rising Edge, Falling Edge, Both).

◆ negation_delay

lvd_negation_delay_t lvd_cfg_t::negation_delay

Negation of LVD signal follows reset or voltage in range

◆ sample_clock_divisor

lvd_sample_clock_t lvd_cfg_t::sample_clock_divisor

Sample clock divider, use LVD_SAMPLE_CLOCK_DISABLED to disable digital filtering

◆ irq

IRQn_Type lvd_cfg_t::irq

Interrupt number.

◆ monitor_ipl

uint8_t lvd_cfg_t::monitor_ipl

Interrupt priority level.

◆ p_callback

void(* lvd_cfg_t::p_callback) (lvd_callback_args_t *p_args)

User function to be called from interrupt

◆ p_context

void const* lvd_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in

◆ p_extend

void const* lvd_cfg_t::p_extend
Extension parameter for hardware specific settings

◆ lvd_api_t

struct lvd_api_t
LVD driver API structure. LVD driver functions implemented at the HAL layer will adhere to this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, lvd_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, lvd_status_t *p_lvd_status)
fsp_err_t(*	statusClear)(lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* lvd_api_t::open) (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, lvd_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initializes a low voltage detection driver according to the passed-in configuration structure.

Implemented as

- R_LVD_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure for the driver instance
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for the driver instance

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* lvd_api_t::statusGet) (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, lvd_status_t *p_lvd_status)

Get the current state of the monitor, (threshold crossing detected, voltage currently above or below threshold). Must be used if the peripheral was initialized with lvd_response_t set to LVD_RESPONSE_NONE.

Implemented as

- R_LVD_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for the driver instance
[in,out]	p_lvd_status	Pointer to a lvd_status_t structure

◆ statusClear

fsp_err_t(* lvd_api_t::statusClear) (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Clears the latched status of the monitor. Must be used if the peripheral was initialized with lvd_response_t set to LVD_RESPONSE_NONE.

Implemented as

- R_LVD_StatusClear()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for the driver instance

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* lvd_api_t::close) (lvd_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disables the LVD peripheral. Closes the driver instance.

Implemented as

- R_LVD_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for the driver instance

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* lvd_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Returns the LVD driver version based on compile time macros.

Implemented as

- R_LVD_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_version	Pointer to version structure

◆ lvd_instance_t

struct lvd_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
lvd_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
lvd_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this interface instance.
lvd_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this interface instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ LVD_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define LVD_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Register definitions, common services, and error codes.

Typedef Documentation

◆ lvd_ctrl_t

typedef void lvd_ctrl_t

LVD control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the LVD API calls.

Implemented as

- lvd_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ lvd_threshold_t

enum lvd_threshold_t

Voltage detection level The thresholds supported by each MCU are in the MCU User's Manual as well as in the r_lvd module description on the stack tab of the RA project.

Enumerator	
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_4_29V	4.29V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_4_14V	4.14V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_4_02V	4.02V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_3_84V	3.84V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_3_10V	3.10V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_3_00V	3.00V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_90V	2.90V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_79V	2.79V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_68V	2.68V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_58V	2.58V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_48V	2.48V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_20V	2.20V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_1_96V	1.96V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_1_86V	1.86V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_1_75V	1.75V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_1_65V	1.65V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_99V	2.99V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_92V	2.92V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_1_LEVEL_2_85V	2.85V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_2_LEVEL_4_29V	4.29V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_2_LEVEL_4_14V	4.14V

LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_2_LEVEL_4_02V	4.02V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_2_LEVEL_3_84V	3.84V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_2_LEVEL_2_99V	2.99V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_2_LEVEL_2_92V	2.92V
LVD_THRESHOLD_MONITOR_2_LEVEL_2_85V	2.85V

◆ lvd_response_t

enum lvd_response_t

Response types for handling threshold crossing event.

Enumerator	
LVD_RESPONSE_NMI	Non-maskable interrupt.
LVD_RESPONSE_INTERRUPT	Maskable interrupt.
LVD_RESPONSE_RESET	Reset.
LVD_RESPONSE_NONE	No response, status must be requested via statusGet function.

◆ lvd_voltage_slope_t

enum lvd_voltage_slope_t

The direction from which Vcc must cross the threshold to trigger a detection (rising, falling, or both).

Enumerator	
LVD_VOLTAGE_SLOPE_RISING	When VCC >= Vdet2 (rise) is detected.
LVD_VOLTAGE_SLOPE_FALLING	When VCC < Vdet2 (drop) is detected.
LVD_VOLTAGE_SLOPE_BOTH	When drop and rise are detected.

◆ lvd_sample_clock_t

enum lvd_sample_clock_t	
Sample clock divider, use LVD_SAMPLE_CLOCK_DISABLED to disable digital filtering	
Enumerator	
LVD_SAMPLE_CLOCK_LOCO_DIV_2	Digital filter sample clock is LOCO divided by 2.
LVD_SAMPLE_CLOCK_LOCO_DIV_4	Digital filter sample clock is LOCO divided by 4.
LVD_SAMPLE_CLOCK_LOCO_DIV_8	Digital filter sample clock is LOCO divided by 8.
LVD_SAMPLE_CLOCK_LOCO_DIV_16	Digital filter sample clock is LOCO divided by 16.
LVD_SAMPLE_CLOCK_DISABLED	Digital filter is disabled.

◆ lvd_negation_delay_t

enum lvd_negation_delay_t	
Negation delay of LVD reset signal follows reset or voltage in range	
Enumerator	
LVD_NEGATION_DELAY_FROM_VOLTAGE	Negation follows a stabilization time (tLVDn) after VCC > Vdet1 is detected. If a transition to software standby or deep software standby is to be made, the only possible value for the RN bit is LVD_NEGATION_DELAY_FROM_VOLTAGE
LVD_NEGATION_DELAY_FROM_RESET	Negation follows a stabilization time (tLVDn) after assertion of the LVDn reset. If a transition to software standby or deep software standby is to be made, the only possible value for the RN bit is LVD_NEGATION_DELAY_FROM_VOLTAGE

◆ lvd_threshold_crossing_t

enum lvd_threshold_crossing_t	
Threshold crossing detection (latched)	
Enumerator	
LVD_THRESHOLD_CROSSING_NOT_DETECTED	Threshold crossing has not been detected.
LVD_THRESHOLD_CROSSING_DETECTED	Threshold crossing has been detected.

◆ lvd_current_state_t

enum lvd_current_state_t	
Instantaneous status of VCC (above or below threshold)	
Enumerator	
LVD_CURRENT_STATE_BELOW_THRESHOLD	VCC < threshold.
LVD_CURRENT_STATE_ABOVE_THRESHOLD	VCC >= threshold or monitor is disabled.

5.3.24 OPAMP Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for Operational Amplifiers.

Summary

The OPAMP interface provides standard operational amplifier functionality, including starting and stopping the amplifier.

Implemented by: Operational Amplifier (r_opamp)

Data Structures

struct	opamp_trim_args_t
struct	opamp_info_t
struct	opamp_status_t
struct	opamp_cfg_t
struct	opamp_api_t
struct	opamp_instance_t

Macros

#define	OPAMP_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	opamp_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	opamp_trim_cmd_t
enum	opamp_trim_input_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ opamp_trim_args_t

struct opamp_trim_args_t		
OPAMP trim arguments.		
Data Fields		
uint8_t	channel	Channel.
opamp_trim_input_t	input	Which input of the channel above.

◆ opamp_info_t

struct opamp_info_t		
OPAMP information.		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	min_stabilization_wait_us	Minimum stabilization wait time in microseconds.

◆ opamp_status_t

struct opamp_status_t		
OPAMP status.		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	operating_channel_mask	Bitmask of channels currently operating.

◆ opamp_cfg_t

struct opamp_cfg_t		
OPAMP general configuration.		
Data Fields		
void const *	p_extend	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.

◆ opamp_api_t

struct opamp_api_t
OPAMP functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	start)(opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const channel_mask)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const channel_mask)
fsp_err_t(*	trim)(opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_trim_cmd_t const cmd, opamp_trim_args_t const *const p_args)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::open) (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize the operational amplifier.

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration

◆ start

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::start) (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const channel_mask)

Start the op-amp(s).

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_Start()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	channel_mask	Bitmask of channels to start

◆ stop

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::stop) (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const channel_mask)

Stop the op-amp(s).

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	channel_mask	Bitmask of channels to stop

◆ trim

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::trim) (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_trim_cmd_t const cmd, opamp_trim_args_t const *const p_args)

Trim the op-amp(s). Not supported on all MCUs. See implementation for procedure details.

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_Trim()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[in]	cmd	Trim command
[in]	p_args	Pointer to arguments for the command

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::infoGet) (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_info_t *const p_info)

Provide information such as the recommended minimum stabilization wait time.

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[out]	p_info	OPAMP information stored here

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::statusGet) (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, opamp_status_t *const p_status)

Provide status of each op-amp channel.

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block
[out]	p_status	Status stored here

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::close) (opamp_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close the specified OPAMP unit by ending any scan in progress, disabling interrupts, and removing power to the specified A/D unit.

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to instance control block

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* opamp_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Retrieve the API version.

Implemented as

- R_OPAMP_VersionGet()

Precondition

This function retrieves the API version.

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to version structure

◆ opamp_instance_t

struct opamp_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
opamp_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
opamp_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
opamp_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ OPAMP_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define OPAMP_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Includes board and MCU related header files. Version Number of API.

Typedef Documentation

◆ opamp_ctrl_t

typedef void opamp_ctrl_t

OPAMP control block. Allocate using driver instance control structure from driver instance header file.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ opamp_trim_cmd_t

enum opamp_trim_cmd_t	
Trim command.	
Enumerator	
OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_START	Initialize trim state machine.
OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_NEXT_STEP	Move to next step in state machine.
OPAMP_TRIM_CMD_CLEAR_BIT	Clear trim bit.

◆ opamp_trim_input_t

enum opamp_trim_input_t	
Trim input.	
Enumerator	
OPAMP_TRIM_INPUT_PCH	Trim non-inverting (+) input.
OPAMP_TRIM_INPUT_NCH	Trim inverting (-) input.

5.3.25 POEG Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for the Port Output Enable for GPT.

Defines the API and data structures for the Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG) interface.

Summary

The POEG disables GPT output pins based on configurable events.

Implemented by: Port Output Enable for GPT (r_poeg)

Data Structures

struct	poeg_status_t
struct	poeg_callback_args_t

struct	poeg_cfg_t
struct	poeg_api_t
struct	poeg_instance_t

Macros

#define	POEG_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	poeg_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	poeg_state_t
enum	poeg_trigger_t
enum	poeg_gtetrg_polarity_t
enum	poeg_gtetrg_noise_filter_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ poeg_status_t

struct poeg_status_t

POEG status

Data Fields		
poeg_state_t	state	Current state of POEG.

◆ poeg_callback_args_t

struct poeg_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data.

Data Fields		
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data, set in poeg_cfg_t.

◆ poeg_cfg_t

struct poeg_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in the open function.

Data Fields

poeg_trigger_t	trigger

	Select one or more triggers for the POEG.
poeg_gtetrg_polarity_t	polarity
	Select the polarity for the GTETRG pin.
poeg_gtetrg_noise_filter_t	noise_filter
	Configure the GTETRG noise filter.
void(*	p_callback)(poeg_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context
uint32_t	channel
	Channel 0 corresponds to GTETRGA, 1 to GTETRGB, etc.
IRQn_Type	irq
	NVIC interrupt number assigned to this instance.
uint8_t	ipl
	POEG interrupt priority.

Field Documentation

◆ p_callback

void(* poeg_cfg_t::p_callback) (poeg_callback_args_t *p_args)

Callback called when a POEG interrupt occurs.

◆ p_context

void const* poeg_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in poeg_callback_args_t.

◆ poeg_api_t

struct poeg_api_t

Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG) API structure. POEG functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, poeg_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, poeg_status_t *p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	outputDisable)(poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	reset)(poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* poeg_api_t::open) (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, poeg_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_POEG_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* poeg_api_t::statusGet) (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, poeg_status_t *p_status)

Gets the current driver state.

Implemented as

- R_POEG_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in poeg_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_status	Provides the current state of the POEG.

◆ outputDisable

fsp_err_t(* poeg_api_t::outputDisable) (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disables GPT output pins by software request.

Implemented as

- R_POEG_OutputDisable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in poeg_api_t::open call.

◆ reset

fsp_err_t(* poeg_api_t::reset) (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Attempts to clear status flags to reenable GPT output pins. Confirm all status flags are cleared after calling this function by calling poeg_api_t::statusGet().

Implemented as

- R_POEG_Reset()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in poeg_api_t::open call.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* poeg_api_t::close) (poeg_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disables POEG interrupt.

Implemented as

- R_POEG_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in poeg_api_t::open call.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* poeg_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get version and stores it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_POEG_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ poeg_instance_t

struct poeg_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
poeg_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
poeg_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
poeg_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ POEG_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define POEG_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Register definitions, common services and error codes.

Typedef Documentation

◆ poeg_ctrl_t

typedef void poeg_ctrl_t

DOC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the DOC API calls.

Implemented as

- poeg_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ poeg_state_t

enum poeg_state_t

POEG states.

Enumerator	
POEG_STATE_NO_DISABLE_REQUEST	GPT output is not disabled by POEG.
POEG_STATE_PIN_DISABLE_REQUEST	GPT output disabled due to GTETRG pin level.
POEG_STATE_GPT_OR_COMPARATOR_DISABLE_REQUEST	GPT output disabled due to high speed analog comparator or GPT.
POEG_STATE_OSCILLATION_STOP_DISABLE_REQUEST	GPT output disabled due to main oscillator stop.
POEG_STATE_SOFTWARE_STOP_DISABLE_REQUEST	GPT output disabled due to poeg_api_t::outputDisable()
POEG_STATE_PIN_DISABLE_REQUEST_ACTIVE	GPT output disable request active from the GTETRG pin. If a filter is used, this flag represents the state of the filtered input.

◆ poeg_trigger_t

enum poeg_trigger_t

Triggers that will disable GPT output pins.

Enumerator	
POEG_TRIGGER_SOFTWARE	Software disable is always supported with POEG. Select this option if no other triggers are used.
POEG_TRIGGER_PIN	Disable GPT output based on GTETRG input level.
POEG_TRIGGER_GPT_OUTPUT_LEVEL	Disable GPT output based on GPT output pin levels.
POEG_TRIGGER_OSCILLATION_STOP	Disable GPT output based on main oscillator stop.
POEG_TRIGGER_ACMPHS0	Disable GPT output based on ACMPHS0 comparator result.
POEG_TRIGGER_ACMPHS1	Disable GPT output based on ACMPHS1 comparator result.
POEG_TRIGGER_ACMPHS2	Disable GPT output based on ACMPHS2 comparator result.
POEG_TRIGGER_ACMPHS3	Disable GPT output based on ACMPHS3 comparator result.
POEG_TRIGGER_ACMPHS4	Disable GPT output based on ACMPHS4 comparator result.
POEG_TRIGGER_ACMPHS5	Disable GPT output based on ACMPHS5 comparator result.

◆ poeg_gtetrg_polarity_t

enum poeg_gtetrg_polarity_t	
GTETRG polarity.	
Enumerator	
POEG_GTETRG_POLARITY_ACTIVE_HIGH	Disable GPT output based when GTETRG input level is high.
POEG_GTETRG_POLARITY_ACTIVE_LOW	Disable GPT output based when GTETRG input level is low.

◆ poeg_gtetrg_noise_filter_t

enum poeg_gtetrg_noise_filter_t	
GTETRG noise filter. For the input signal to pass through the noise filter, the active level set in poeg_gtetrg_polarity_t must be read 3 consecutive times at the sampling clock selected.	
Enumerator	
POEG_GTETRG_NOISE_FILTER_DISABLED	No noise filter applied to GTETRG input.
POEG_GTETRG_NOISE_FILTER_PCLKB_DIV_1	Apply noise filter with sample clock PCLKB.
POEG_GTETRG_NOISE_FILTER_PCLKB_DIV_8	Apply noise filter with sample clock PCLKB/8.
POEG_GTETRG_NOISE_FILTER_PCLKB_DIV_32	Apply noise filter with sample clock PCLKB/32.
POEG_GTETRG_NOISE_FILTER_PCLKB_DIV_128	Apply noise filter with sample clock PCLKB/128.

5.3.26 RTC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for accessing the Realtime Clock.

Summary

The RTC Interface is for configuring Real Time Clock (RTC) functionality including alarm, periodic notiification and error adjustment.

The Real Time Clock Interface can be implemented by:

- Realtime Clock (r_rtc)

Data Structures

struct	rtc_callback_args_t
struct	rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t
struct	rtc_alarm_time_t
struct	rtc_info_t
struct	rtc_cfg_t
struct	rtc_api_t
struct	rtc_instance_t

Macros

#define	RTC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef struct tm	rtc_time_t
typedef void	rtc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	rtc_event_t
enum	rtc_clock_source_t
enum	rtc_status_t
enum	rtc_error_adjustment_t
enum	rtc_error_adjustment_mode_t
enum	rtc_error_adjustment_period_t
enum	rtc_periodic_irq_select_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ rtc_callback_args_t

struct rtc_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data		
Data Fields		
rtc_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback (compare match or error).
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data.

◆ **rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t**

struct rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t		
Time error adjustment value configuration		
Data Fields		
rtc_error_adjustment_mode_t	adjustment_mode	Automatic Adjustment Enable/Disable.
rtc_error_adjustment_period_t	adjustment_period	Error Adjustment period.
rtc_error_adjustment_t	adjustment_type	Time error adjustment setting.
uint32_t	adjustment_value	Value of the prescaler for error adjustment.

◆ **rtc_alarm_time_t**

struct rtc_alarm_time_t		
Alarm time setting structure		
Data Fields		
rtc_time_t	time	Time structure.
bool	sec_match	Enable the alarm based on a match of the seconds field.
bool	min_match	Enable the alarm based on a match of the minutes field.
bool	hour_match	Enable the alarm based on a match of the hours field.
bool	mday_match	Enable the alarm based on a match of the days field.
bool	mon_match	Enable the alarm based on a match of the months field.
bool	year_match	Enable the alarm based on a match of the years field.
bool	dayofweek_match	Enable the alarm based on a match of the dayofweek field.

◆ **rtc_info_t**

struct rtc_info_t		
RTC Information Structure for information returned by infoGet()		
Data Fields		
rtc_clock_source_t	clock_source	Clock source for the RTC block.
rtc_status_t	status	RTC run status.

◆ **rtc_cfg_t**

struct rtc_cfg_t	
User configuration structure, used in open function	
Data Fields	
rtc_clock_source_t	clock_source
	Clock source for the RTC block.
uint32_t	freq_compare_value_loco
	The frequency comparison value for LOCO.
rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t const *const	p_err_cfg
	Pointer to Error Adjustment configuration.
uint8_t	alarm_ipl
	Alarm interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	alarm_irq
	Alarm interrupt vector.
uint8_t	periodic_ipl
	Periodic interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	periodic_irq
	Periodic interrupt vector.

uint8_t	carry_ipl
	Carry interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	carry_irq
	Carry interrupt vector.
void(*	p_callback)(rtc_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Called from the ISR.
void const *	p_context
	User defined context passed into callback function.
void const *	p_extend
	RTC hardware dependant configuration.

◆ rtc_api_t

struct rtc_api_t

RTC driver structure. General RTC functions implemented at the HAL layer follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	calendarTimeSet)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_time_t *const p_time)
fsp_err_t(*	calendarTimeGet)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_time_t *const p_time)
fsp_err_t(*	calendarAlarmSet)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_alarm_time_t *const p_alarm)

fsp_err_t(*	calendarAlarmGet)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_alarm_time_t *const p_alarm)
fsp_err_t(*	periodicIrqRateSet)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_periodic_irq_select_t const rate)
fsp_err_t(*	errorAdjustmentSet)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t const *const err_adj_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_info_t *const p_rtc_info)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::open) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open the RTC driver.

Implemented as

- R_RTC_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to RTC device handle
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::close) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close the RTC driver.

Implemented as

- R_RTC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to RTC device handle.

◆ calendarTimeSet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::calendarTimeSet) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_time_t *const p_time)

Set the calendar time and start the calender counter

Implemented as

- R_RTC_CalendarTimeSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to RTC device handle
[in]	p_time	Pointer to a time structure that contains the time to set
[in]	clock_start	Flag that starts the clock right after it is set

◆ calendarTimeGet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::calendarTimeGet) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_time_t *const p_time)

Get the calendar time.

Implemented as

- R_RTC_CalendarTimeGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to RTC device handle
[out]	p_time	Pointer to a time structure that contains the time to get

◆ calendarAlarmSet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::calendarAlarmSet) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_alarm_time_t *const p_alarm)

Set the calendar alarm time and enable the alarm interrupt.

Implemented as

- R_RTC_CalendarAlarmSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to RTC device handle
[in]	p_alarm	Pointer to an alarm structure that contains the alarm time to set
[in]	irq_enable_flag	Enable the ALARM irq if set

◆ calendarAlarmGet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::calendarAlarmGet) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_alarm_time_t *const p_alarm)

Get the calendar alarm time.

Implemented as

- R_RTC_CalendarAlarmGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to RTC device handle
[out]	p_alarm	Pointer to an alarm structure to fill up with the alarm time

◆ periodicIrqRateSet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::periodicIrqRateSet) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_periodic_irq_select_t const rate)

Set the periodic irq rate

Implemented as

- R_RTC_PeriodicIrqRateSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to RTC device handle
[in]	rate	Rate of periodic interrupts

◆ errorAdjustmentSet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::errorAdjustmentSet) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_error_adjustment_cfg_t const *const err_adj_cfg)

Set time error adjustment.

Implemented as

- R_RTC_ErrorAdjustmentSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[in]	err_adj_cfg	Pointer to the Error Adjustment Config

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::infoGet) (rtc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rtc_info_t *const p_rtc_info)

Return the currently configure clock source for the RTC

Implemented as

- R_RTC_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control handle structure
[out]	p_rtc_info	Pointer to RTC information structure

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* rtc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const version)

Gets version and stores it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_RTC_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used

◆ rtc_instance_t

struct rtc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
rtc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
rtc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
rtc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ RTC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define RTC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Use of time structure, tm

Typedef Documentation

◆ rtc_time_t

typedef struct tm rtc_time_t
Date and time structure defined in C standard library <time.h>

◆ rtc_ctrl_t

typedef void rtc_ctrl_t
RTC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the RTC API calls. **Implemented as** ◦ rtc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ rtc_event_t

enum rtc_event_t

Events that can trigger a callback function

Enumerator	
RTC_EVENT_ALARM_IRQ	Real Time Clock ALARM IRQ.
RTC_EVENT_PERIODIC_IRQ	Real Time Clock PERIODIC IRQ.

◆ rtc_clock_source_t

enum rtc_clock_source_t

Clock source for the RTC block

Enumerator	
RTC_CLOCK_SOURCE_SUBCLK	Sub-clock oscillator.
RTC_CLOCK_SOURCE_LOCO	Low power On Chip Oscillator.

◆ rtc_status_t

enum rtc_status_t	
RTC run state	
Enumerator	
RTC_STATUS_STOPPED	RTC counter is stopped.
RTC_STATUS_RUNNING	RTC counter is running.

◆ rtc_error_adjustment_t

enum rtc_error_adjustment_t	
Time error adjustment settings	
Enumerator	
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_NONE	Adjustment is not performed.
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_ADD_PRESCALER	Adjustment is performed by the addition to the prescaler.
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_SUBTRACT_PRESCALER	Adjustment is performed by the subtraction from the prescaler.

◆ rtc_error_adjustment_mode_t

enum rtc_error_adjustment_mode_t	
Time error adjustment mode settings	
Enumerator	
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_MODE_MANUAL	Adjustment mode is set to manual.
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_MODE_AUTOMATIC	Adjustment mode is set to automatic.

◆ rtc_error_adjustment_period_t

enum rtc_error_adjustment_period_t	
Time error adjustment period settings	
Enumerator	
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_PERIOD_1_MINUTE	Adjustment period is set to every one minute.
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_PERIOD_10_SECOND	Adjustment period is set to every ten second.
RTC_ERROR_ADJUSTMENT_PERIOD_NONE	Adjustment period not supported in manual mode.

◆ rtc_periodic_irq_select_t

enum rtc_periodic_irq_select_t	
Periodic Interrupt select	
Enumerator	
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_256_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/256 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_128_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/128 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_64_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/64 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_32_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/32 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_16_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/16 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_8_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/8 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_4_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/4 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_DIV_BY_2_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1/2 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_1_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 1 second.
RTC_PERIODIC_IRQ_SELECT_2_SECOND	A periodic irq is generated every 2 seconds.

5.3.27 SD/MMC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for accessing SD, eMMC, and SDIO devices.

Summary

The r_sdhi interface provides standard SD and eMMC media functionality. This interface also supports SDIO.

The SD/MMC interface is implemented by:

- SD/MMC Host Interface (r_sdhi)

Data Structures

struct	sdmmc_status_t
struct	sdmmc_device_t
struct	sdmmc_callback_args_t
struct	sdmmc_cfg_t
struct	sdmmc_api_t
struct	sdmmc_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	sdmmc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	sdmmc_card_type_t
enum	sdmmc_bus_width_t
enum	sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t
enum	sdmmc_io_address_mode_t
enum	sdmmc_io_write_mode_t
enum	sdmmc_event_t
enum	sdmmc_card_detect_t

enum	sdmmc_write_protect_t
enum	sdmmc_r1_state_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ sdmmc_status_t

struct sdmmc_status_t

Current status.

Data Fields		
bool	initialized	False if card was removed (only applies if MCU supports card detection and SDnCD pin is connected), true otherwise. If ready is false, call sdmmc_api_t::mediaInit to reinitialize it
bool	transfer_in_progress	true = Card is busy
bool	card_inserted	Card detect status, true if card detect is not used.

◆ sdmmc_device_t

struct sdmmc_device_t

Information obtained from the media device.

Data Fields		
sdmmc_card_type_t	card_type	SD, eMMC, or SDIO.
bool	write_protected	true = Card is write protected
uint32_t	clock_rate	Current clock rate.
uint32_t	sector_count	Sector count.
uint32_t	sector_size_bytes	Sector size.
uint32_t	erase_sector_count	Minimum erasable unit (in 512 byte sectors)

◆ sdmmc_callback_args_t

struct sdmmc_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
sdmmc_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback.

sdmmc_response_t	response	Response from card, only valid if SDMMC_EVENT_RESPONSE is set in event.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data.

◆ sdmmc_cfg_t

struct sdmmc_cfg_t	
SD/MMC Configuration	
Data Fields	
uint8_t	channel
	Channel of SD/MMC host interface.
sdmmc_bus_width_t	bus_width
	Device bus width is 1, 4 or 8 bits wide.
transfer_instance_t const *	p_lower_lvl_transfer
	Transfer instance used to move data with DMA or DTC.
void(*	p_callback)(sdmmc_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to callback function.
void const *	p_context
	User defined context passed into callback function.
void const *	p_extend
	SD/MMC hardware dependent configuration.
uint32_t	block_size
sdmmc_card_detect_t	card_detect

sdmmc_write_protect_t	write_protect
IRQn_Type	access_irq
	Access IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	sdio_irq
	SDIO IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	card_irq
	Card IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	dma_req_irq
	DMA request IRQ number.
uint8_t	access_ipl
	Access interrupt priority.
uint8_t	sdio_ipl
	SDIO interrupt priority.
uint8_t	card_ipl
	Card interrupt priority.
uint8_t	dma_req_ipl
	DMA request interrupt priority.

Field Documentation

◆ **block_size**

uint32_t sdmmc_cfg_t::block_size

Block size in bytes. Block size must be 512 bytes for SD cards and eMMC devices. Block size can be 1-512 bytes for SDIO.

◆ **card_detect**

sdmmc_card_detect_t sdmmc_cfg_t::card_detect

Whether or not card detection is used.

◆ **write_protect**

sdmmc_write_protect_t sdmmc_cfg_t::write_protect

Select whether or not to use the write protect pin. Select Not Used if the MCU or device does not have a write protect pin.

◆ **sdmmc_api_t**

struct sdmmc_api_t

SD/MMC functions implemented at the HAL layer API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, sdmmc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	mediaInit)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, sdmmc_device_t *const p_device)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_source, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)
fsp_err_t(*	readIo)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_data, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address)
fsp_err_t(*	writeIo)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_data, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, sdmmc_io_write_mode_t const read_after_write)
fsp_err_t(*	readIoExt)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, uint32_t *const count, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t transfer_mode,

	sdmmc_io_address_mode_t address_mode)
fsp_err_t(*	writeIoExt)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_source, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const count, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t transfer_mode, sdmmc_io_address_mode_t address_mode)
fsp_err_t(*	ioIntEnable)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bool enable)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, sdmmc_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	erase)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::open) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, sdmmc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open the SD/MMC driver.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to SD/MMC instance control block.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to SD/MMC instance configuration structure.

◆ mediaInit

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::mediaInit) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, sdmmc_device_t *const p_device)

Initializes an SD/MMC device. If the device is a card, the card must be plugged in prior to calling this API. This API blocks until the device initialization procedure is complete.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_MediaInit()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to SD/MMC instance control block.
[out]	p_device	Pointer to store device information.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::read) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)

Read data from an SD/MMC channel. This API is not supported for SDIO devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[out]	p_dest	Pointer to data buffer to read data to.
[in]	start_sector	First sector address to read.
[in]	sector_count	Number of sectors to read. All sectors must be in the range of sdmmc_device_t::sector_count.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::write) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_source, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)

Write data to SD/MMC channel. This API is not supported for SDIO devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[in]	p_source	Pointer to data buffer to write data from.
[in]	start_sector	First sector address to write to.
[in]	sector_count	Number of sectors to write. All sectors must be in the range of sdmmc_device_t::sector_count.

◆ readIo

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::readIo) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_data, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address)

Read one byte of I/O data from an SDIO device. This API is not supported for SD or eMMC memory devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_ReadIo()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[out]	p_data	Pointer to location to store data byte.
[in]	function	SDIO Function Number.
[in]	address	SDIO register address.

◆ writeIo

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::writeIo) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_data, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, sdmmc_io_write_mode_t const read_after_write)

Write one byte of I/O data to an SDIO device. This API is not supported for SD or eMMC memory devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_WriteIo()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[in,out]	p_data	Pointer to data byte to write. Read data is also provided here if read_after_write is true.
[in]	function	SDIO Function Number.
[in]	address	SDIO register address.
[in]	read_after_write	Whether or not to read back the same register after writing

◆ readIoExt

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::readIoExt) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, uint32_t *const count, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t transfer_mode, sdmmc_io_address_mode_t address_mode)

Read multiple bytes or blocks of I/O data from an SDIO device. This API is not supported for SD or eMMC memory devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_ReadIoExt()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[out]	p_dest	Pointer to data buffer to read data to.
[in]	function	SDIO Function Number.
[in]	address	SDIO register address.
[in]	count	Number of bytes or blocks to read, maximum 512 bytes or 511 blocks.
[in]	transfer_mode	Byte or block mode
[in]	address_mode	Fixed or incrementing address mode

◆ writeIoExt

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::writeIoExt) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_source, uint32_t const function, uint32_t const address, uint32_t const count, sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t transfer_mode, sdmmc_io_address_mode_t address_mode)

Write multiple bytes or blocks of I/O data to an SDIO device. This API is not supported for SD or eMMC memory devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_WriteIoExt()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[in]	p_source	Pointer to data buffer to write data from.
[in]	function_number	SDIO Function Number.
[in]	address	SDIO register address.
[in]	count	Number of bytes or blocks to write, maximum 512 bytes or 511 blocks.
[in]	transfer_mode	Byte or block mode
[in]	address_mode	Fixed or incrementing address mode

◆ ioIntEnable

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::ioIntEnable) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, bool enable)

Enables SDIO interrupt for SD/MMC instance. This API is not supported for SD or eMMC memory devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_IoIntEnable

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[in]	enable	Interrupt enable = true, interrupt disable = false.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::statusGet) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, sdmmc_status_t *const p_status)

Get SD/MMC device status.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[out]	p_status	Pointer to current driver status.

◆ erase

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::erase) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const start_sector, uint32_t const sector_count)

Erase SD/MMC sectors. The sector size for erase is fixed at 512 bytes. This API is not supported for SDIO devices.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_Erase

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.
[in]	start_sector	First sector to erase. Must be a multiple of sdmmc_device_t::erase_sector_count.
[in]	sector_count	Number of sectors to erase. Must be a multiple of sdmmc_device_t::erase_sector_count. All sectors must be in the range of sdmmc_device_t::sector_count.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::close) (sdmmc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close open SD/MMC device.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to an open SD/MMC instance control block.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* sdmmc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Returns the version of the SD/MMC driver.

Implemented as

- R_SDHI_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Pointer to return version information to.

◆ sdmmc_instance_t

struct sdmmc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
sdmmc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
sdmmc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
sdmmc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ sdmmc_ctrl_t

typedef void sdmmc_ctrl_t
SD/MMC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the SD/MMC API calls. **Implemented as** ◦ sdmmc_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ sdmmc_card_type_t

enum sdmmc_card_type_t	
SD/MMC media uses SD protocol or MMC protocol.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_CARD_TYPE_MMC	The media is an eMMC device.
SDMMC_CARD_TYPE_SD	The media is an SD card.
SDMMC_CARD_TYPE_SDIO	The media is an SDIO card.

◆ sdmmc_bus_width_t

enum sdmmc_bus_width_t	
SD/MMC data bus is 1, 4 or 8 bits wide.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_BUS_WIDTH_1_BIT	Data bus is 1 bit wide.
SDMMC_BUS_WIDTH_4_BITS	Data bus is 4 bits wide.
SDMMC_BUS_WIDTH_8_BITS	Data bus is 8 bits wide.

◆ sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t

enum sdmmc_io_transfer_mode_t	
SDIO transfer mode, configurable in SDIO read/write extended commands.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_IO_MODE_TRANSFER_BYTE	SDIO byte transfer mode.
SDMMC_IO_MODE_TRANSFER_BLOCK	SDIO block transfer mode.

◆ sdmmc_io_address_mode_t

enum sdmmc_io_address_mode_t	
SDIO address mode, configurable in SDIO read/write extended commands.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_IO_ADDRESS_MODE_FIXED	Write all data to the same address.
SDMMC_IO_ADDRESS_MODE_INCREMENT	Increment destination address after each write.

◆ sdmmc_io_write_mode_t

enum sdmmc_io_write_mode_t	
Controls the RAW (read after write) flag of CMD52. Used to read back the status after writing a control register.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_IO_WRITE_MODE_NO_READ	Write only (do not read back)
SDMMC_IO_WRITE_READ_AFTER_WRITE	Read back the register after write.

◆ sdmmc_event_t

enum sdmmc_event_t	
Events that can trigger a callback function	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_EVENT_CARD_REMOVED	Card removed event.
SDMMC_EVENT_CARD_INSERTED	Card inserted event.
SDMMC_EVENT_RESPONSE	Response event.
SDMMC_EVENT_SDIO	IO event.
SDMMC_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE	Read or write complete.
SDMMC_EVENT_TRANSFER_ERROR	Read or write failed.
SDMMC_EVENT_ERASE_COMPLETE	Erase completed.
SDMMC_EVENT_ERASE_BUSY	Erase timeout, poll sdmmc_api_t::statusGet.

◆ sdmmc_card_detect_t

enum sdmmc_card_detect_t	
Card detection configuration options.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_CARD_DETECT_NONE	Card detection unused.
SDMMC_CARD_DETECT_CD	Card detection using the CD pin.

◆ sdmmc_write_protect_t

enum sdmmc_write_protect_t	
Write protection configuration options.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_WRITE_PROTECT_NONE	Write protection unused.
SDMMC_WRITE_PROTECT_WP	Write protection using WP pin.

◆ sdmmc_r1_state_t

enum sdmmc_r1_state_t	
Card state when receiving the prior command.	
Enumerator	
SDMMC_R1_STATE_IDLE	Idle State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_READY	Ready State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_IDENT	Identification State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_STBY	Stand-by State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_TRAN	Transfer State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_DATA	Sending-data State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_RCV	Receive-data State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_PRG	Programming State.
SDMMC_R1_STATE_DIS	Disconnect State (between programming and stand-by)
SDMMC_R1_STATE_IO	This is an I/O card and memory states do not apply.

5.3.28 SLCDC Interface
Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for Segment LCD controllers.

Data Structures

struct	slcdc_cfg_t
struct	slcdc_api_t
struct	slcdc_instance_t

Macros

#define	SLCDC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	slcdc_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	slcdc_bias_method_t
enum	slcdc_time_slice_t
enum	slcdc_waveform_t
enum	slcdc_drive_volt_gen_t
enum	slcdc_display_area_control_blink_t
enum	slcdc_display_area_t
enum	slcdc_contrast_t
enum	slcdc_display_on_off_t
enum	slcdc_display_enable_disable_t
enum	slcdc_display_clock_t
enum	slcdc_clk_div_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ slcdc_cfg_t

struct slcdc_cfg_t

SLCDC configuration block

Data Fields

slcdc_display_clock_t	slcdc_clock	LCD clock source (LCDSCKSEL)
slcdc_clk_div_t	slcdc_clock_setting	LCD clock setting (LCDC0)
slcdc_bias_method_t	bias_method	LCD display bias method select (LBAS bit)
slcdc_time_slice_t	time_slice	Time slice of LCD display select (LDTY bit)
slcdc_waveform_t	waveform	LCD display waveform select (LWAVE bit)

slcdc_drive_volt_gen_t	drive_volt_gen	LCD Drive Voltage Generator Select (MDSET bit)
slcdc_contrast_t	contrast	LCD Boost Level (contrast setting)

◆ slcdc_api_t

struct slcdc_api_t

SLCDC functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const start_segment, uint8_t const *p_data, uint8_t const segment_count)
fsp_err_t(*	modify)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const segment, uint8_t const data_mask, uint8_t const data)
fsp_err_t(*	start)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	setContrast)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_contrast_t const contrast)
fsp_err_t(*	setDisplayArea)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_display_area_t const display_area)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::open) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open SLCDC.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_Open()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block. Must be declared by user.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to display configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by the user.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::write) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const start_segment, uint8_t const *p_data, uint8_t const segment_count)

Write data to the SLCDC segment data array. Specifies the initial display data. Except when using 8-time slice mode, store values in the lower 4 bits when writing to the A-pattern area and in the upper 4 bits when writing to the B-pattern area.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	start_segment	Specify the start segment number to be written.
[in]	p_data	Pointer to the display data to be written to the specified segments.
[in]	segment_count	Number of segments to be written.

◆ modify

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::modify) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const segment, uint8_t const data_mask, uint8_t const data)

Rewrite data in the SLCDC segment data array. Rewrites the LCD display data in 1-bit units. If a bit is not specified for rewriting, the value stored in the bit is held as it is.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_Modify()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	segment	The segment to be written.
[in]	data_mask	Mask the data being displayed. Set 0 to the bit to be rewritten and set 1 to the other bits. Multiple bits can be rewritten.
[in]	data	Specify display data to rewrite to the specified segment.

◆ start

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::start) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Enable display signal output. Displays the segment data on the LCD.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_Start()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.

◆ stop

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::stop) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable display signal output. Stops displaying data on the LCD.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.

◆ setContrast

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::setContrast) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_contrast_t const contrast)

Set the display contrast. This function can be used only when the internal voltage boosting method is used for drive voltage generation.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_SetContrast()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.

◆ setDisplayArea

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::setDisplayArea) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, slcdc_display_area_t const display_area)

Set LCD display area. This function sets a specified display area, A-pattern or B-pattern. This function can be used to 'blink' the display between A-pattern and B-pattern area data.

When using blinking, the RTC is required to operate before this function is executed. To configure the RTC, follow the steps below. 1) Open RTC 2) Set Periodic IRQ 3) Start RTC counter 4) Enable IRQ, RTC_EVENT_PERIODIC_IRQ Refer to the User's Manual for the detailed procedure.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_SetDisplayArea()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.
[in]	display_area	Display area to be used, A-pattern or B-pattern area.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::close) (slcdc_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close SLCDC.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to display interface control block.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* slcdc_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get version.

Implemented as

- R_SLCDC_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to the memory to store the version information.

◆ slcdc_instance_t

struct slcdc_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
slcdc_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
slcdc_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
slcdc_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ SLCDC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

#define SLCDC_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Register definitions, common services and error codes.

Typedef Documentation

◆ slcdc_ctrl_t

typedef void slcdc_ctrl_t

SLCDC control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the SLCDC API calls.

Implemented as

- slcdc_instance_ctrl_tSLCDC control block

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ slcdc_bias_method_t

enum slcdc_bias_method_t	
LCD display bias method.	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_BIAS_2	1/2 bias method
SLCDC_BIAS_3	1/3 bias method
SLCDC_BIAS_4	1/4 bias method

◆ slcdc_time_slice_t

enum slcdc_time_slice_t	
Time slice of LCD display.	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_STATIC	Static.
SLCDC_SLICE_2	2-time slice
SLCDC_SLICE_3	3-time slice
SLCDC_SLICE_4	4-time slice
SLCDC_SLICE_8	8-time slice

◆ slcdc_waveform_t

enum slcdc_waveform_t	
LCD display waveform select.	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_WAVE_A	Waveform A.
SLCDC_WAVE_B	Waveform B.

◆ slcdc_drive_volt_gen_t

enum slcdc_drive_volt_gen_t

LCD Drive Voltage Generator Select.

Enumerator	
SLCDC_VOLT_EXTERNAL	External resistance division method.
SLCDC_VOLT_INTERNAL	Internal voltage boosting method.
SLCDC_VOLT_CAPACITOR	Capacitor split method.

◆ slcdc_display_area_control_blink_t

enum slcdc_display_area_control_blink_t

Display Data Area Control

Enumerator	
SLCDC_NOT_BLINKING	Display either A-pattern or B-pattern data.
SLCDC_BLINKING	Alternately display A-pattern and B-pattern data.

◆ slcdc_display_area_t

enum slcdc_display_area_t

Display Area data

Enumerator	
SLCDC_DISP_A	Display A-pattern data.
SLCDC_DISP_B	Display B-pattern data.
SLCDC_DISP_BLINK	Blink between A- and B-pattern.

◆ slcdc_contrast_t

enum slcdc_contrast_t	
LCD Boost Level (contrast) settings	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_CONTRAST_0	Contrast level 0.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_1	Contrast level 1.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_2	Contrast level 2.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_3	Contrast level 3.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_4	Contrast level 4.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_5	Contrast level 5.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_6	Contrast level 6.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_7	Contrast level 7.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_8	Contrast level 8.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_9	Contrast level 9.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_10	Contrast level 10.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_11	Contrast level 11.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_12	Contrast level 12.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_13	Contrast level 13.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_14	Contrast level 14.
SLCDC_CONTRAST_15	Contrast level 15.

◆ slcdc_display_on_off_t

enum slcdc_display_on_off_t	
LCD Display Enable/Disable	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_DISP_OFF	Display off.
SLCDC_DISP_ON	Display on.

◆ slcdc_display_enable_disable_t

enum slcdc_display_enable_disable_t	
LCD Display output enable	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_DISP_DISABLE	Output ground level to segment/common pins.
SLCDC_DISP_ENABLE	Output enable.

◆ slcdc_display_clock_t

enum slcdc_display_clock_t	
LCD Display clock selection	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_CLOCK_LOCO	Display clock source LOCO.
SLCDC_CLOCK_SOSC	Display clock source SOSC.
SLCDC_CLOCK_MOSC	Display clock source MOSC.
SLCDC_CLOCK_HOCO	Display clock source HOCO.

◆ slcdc_clk_div_t

enum slcdc_clk_div_t	
LCD clock settings	
Enumerator	
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_4	LOCO Clock/4.

SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_8	LOCO Clock/8.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_16	LOCO Clock/16.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_32	LOCO Clock/32.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_64	LOCO Clock/64.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_128	LOCO Clock/128.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_256	LOCO Clock/256.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_512	LOCO Clock/512.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_LOCO_1024	LOCO Clock/1024.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_256	HOCO Clock/256.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_512	HOCO Clock/512.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_1024	HOCO Clock/1024.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_2048	HOCO Clock/2048.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_4096	HOCO Clock/4096.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_8192	HOCO Clock/8192.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_16384	HOCO Clock/16384.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_32768	HOCO Clock/32768.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_65536	HOCO Clock/65536.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_131072	HOCO Clock/131072.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_262144	HOCO Clock/262144.
SLCDC_CLK_DIVISOR_HOCO_524288	HOCO Clock/524288.

5.3.29 SPI Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for SPI communications.

Summary

Provides a common interface for communication using the SPI Protocol.

Implemented by:

- Serial Peripheral Interface (r_spi)
- Serial Communications Interface (SCI) SPI (r_sci_spi)

Data Structures

struct	spi_callback_args_t
struct	spi_cfg_t
struct	spi_api_t
struct	spi_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	spi_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	spi_bit_width_t
enum	spi_mode_t
enum	spi_clk_phase_t
enum	spi_clk_polarity_t
enum	spi_mode_fault_t
enum	spi_bit_order_t
enum	spi_event_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ spi_callback_args_t

struct spi_callback_args_t
Common callback parameter definition
Data Fields

uint32_t	channel	Device channel number.
spi_event_t	event	Event code.
void const *	p_context	Context provided to user during callback.

◆ spi_cfg_t

struct spi_cfg_t	
SPI interface configuration	
Data Fields	
uint8_t	channel
	Channel number to be used.
IRQn_Type	rxi_irq
	Receive Buffer Full IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	txi_irq
	Transmit Buffer Empty IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	tei_irq
	Transfer Complete IRQ number.
IRQn_Type	eri_irq
	Error IRQ number.
uint8_t	rxi_ipl
	Receive Interrupt priority.
uint8_t	txi_ipl
	Transmit Interrupt priority.

uint8_t	tei_ipl
	Transfer Complete Interrupt priority.
uint8_t	eri_ipl
	Error Interrupt priority.
spi_mode_t	operating_mode
	Select master or slave operating mode.
spi_clk_phase_t	clk_phase
	Data sampling on odd or even clock edge.
spi_clk_polarity_t	clk_polarity
	Clock level when idle.
spi_mode_fault_t	mode_fault
	Mode fault error (master/slave conflict) flag.
spi_bit_order_t	bit_order
	Select to transmit MSB/LSB first.
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_tx
	To use SPI DTC/DMA write transfer, link a DTC/DMA instance here. Set to NULL if unused.
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_rx
	To use SPI DTC/DMA read transfer, link a DTC/DMA instance here. Set to NULL if unused.

void(*	p_callback)(spi_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to user callback function.
void const *	p_context
	User defined context passed to callback function.
void const *	p_extend
	Extended SPI hardware dependent configuration.

◆ **spi_api_t**

struct spi_api_t	
Shared Interface definition for SPI	
Data Fields	
fsp_err_t(*	open)(spi_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *p_src, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t(*	writeRead)(spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *p_src, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* spi_api_t::open) (spi_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize a channel for SPI communication mode.

Implemented as

- R_SPI_Open()
- R_SCI_SPI_Open()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to user-provided storage for the control block.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to SPI configuration structure.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* spi_api_t::read) (spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)

Receive data from a SPI device.

Implemented as

- R_SPI_Read()
- R_SCI_SPI_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control block for the channel.
[in]	length	Number of units of data to be transferred (unit size specified by the bit_width).
[in]	bit_width	Data bit width to be transferred.
[out]	p_dest	Pointer to destination buffer into which data will be copied that is received from a SPI device. It is the responsibility of the caller to ensure that adequate space is available to hold the requested data count.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* spi_api_t::write) (spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *p_src, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)

Transmit data to a SPI device.

Implemented as

- R_SPI_Write()
- R_SCI_SPI_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control block for the channel.
[in]	p_src	Pointer to a source data buffer from which data will be transmitted to a SPI device. The argument must not be NULL.
[in]	length	Number of units of data to be transferred (unit size specified by the bit_width).
[in]	bit_width	Data bit width to be transferred.

◆ writeRead

fsp_err_t(* spi_api_t::writeRead) (spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *p_src, void *p_dest, uint32_t const length, spi_bit_width_t const bit_width)

Simultaneously transmit data to a SPI device while receiving data from a SPI device (full duplex).

Implemented as

- R_SPI_WriteRead()
- R_SCI_SPI_WriteRead()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control block for the channel.
[in]	p_src	Pointer to a source data buffer from which data will be transmitted to a SPI device. The argument must not be NULL.
[out]	p_dest	Pointer to destination buffer into which data will be copied that is received from a SPI device. It is the responsibility of the caller to ensure that adequate space is available to hold the requested data count. The argument must not be NULL.
[in]	length	Number of units of data to be transferred (unit size specified by the bit_width).
[in]	bit_width	Data bit width to be transferred.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* spi_api_t::close) (spi_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Remove power to the SPI channel designated by the handle and disable the associated interrupts.

Implemented as

- R_SPI_Close()
- R_SCI_SPI_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control block for the channel.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* spi_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get the version information of the underlying driver.

Implemented as

- R_SPI_VersionGet()
- R_SCI_SPI_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	pointer to memory location to return version number

◆ spi_instance_t

struct spi_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
spi_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
spi_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
spi_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ spi_ctrl_t

typedef void spi_ctrl_t

SPI control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the SPI API calls.

Implemented as

- sci_spi_instance_ctrl_t
- spi_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ spi_bit_width_t

enum spi_bit_width_t	
Data bit width	
Enumerator	
SPI_BIT_WIDTH_8_BITS	Data bit width is 8 bits byte.
SPI_BIT_WIDTH_16_BITS	Data bit width is 16 bits word.
SPI_BIT_WIDTH_32_BITS	Data bit width is 32 bits long word.

◆ spi_mode_t

enum spi_mode_t	
Master or slave operating mode	
Enumerator	
SPI_MODE_MASTER	Channel operates as SPI master.
SPI_MODE_SLAVE	Channel operates as SPI slave.

◆ spi_clk_phase_t

enum spi_clk_phase_t	
Clock phase	
Enumerator	
SPI_CLK_PHASE_EDGE_ODD	0: Data sampling on odd edge, data variation on even edge
SPI_CLK_PHASE_EDGE_EVEN	1: Data variation on odd edge, data sampling on even edge

◆ spi_clk_polarity_t

enum spi_clk_polarity_t	
Clock polarity	
Enumerator	
SPI_CLK_POLARITY_LOW	0: Clock polarity is low when idle
SPI_CLK_POLARITY_HIGH	1: Clock polarity is high when idle

◆ spi_mode_fault_t

enum spi_mode_fault_t	
Mode fault error flag. This error occurs when the device is setup as a master, but the SSLA line does not seem to be controlled by the master. This usually happens when the connecting device is also acting as master. A similar situation can also happen when configured as a slave.	
Enumerator	
SPI_MODE_FAULT_ERROR_ENABLE	Mode fault error flag on.
SPI_MODE_FAULT_ERROR_DISABLE	Mode fault error flag off.

◆ spi_bit_order_t

enum spi_bit_order_t	
Bit order	
Enumerator	
SPI_BIT_ORDER_MSB_FIRST	Send MSB first in transmission.
SPI_BIT_ORDER_LSB_FIRST	Send LSB first in transmission.

◆ spi_event_t

enum spi_event_t	
SPI events	
Enumerator	
SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_COMPLETE	The data transfer was completed.
SPI_EVENT_TRANSFER_ABORTED	The data transfer was aborted.
SPI_EVENT_ERR_MODE_FAULT	Mode fault error.
SPI_EVENT_ERR_READ_OVERFLOW	Read overflow error.
SPI_EVENT_ERR_PARITY	Parity error.
SPI_EVENT_ERR_OVERRUN	Overrun error.
SPI_EVENT_ERR_FRAMING	Framing error.
SPI_EVENT_ERR_MODE_UNDERRUN	Underrun error.

5.3.30 SPI Flash Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for accessing external SPI flash devices.

Summary

The SPI flash API provides an interface that configures, writes, and erases sectors in SPI flash devices.

Data Structures

struct	spi_flash_erase_command_t
struct	spi_flash_cfg_t
struct	spi_flash_status_t
struct	spi_flash_api_t

struct	spi_flash_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	spi_flash_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	spi_flash_read_mode_t
enum	spi_flash_protocol_t
enum	spi_flash_address_bytes_t
enum	spi_flash_data_lines_t
enum	spi_flash_dummy_clocks_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ spi_flash_erase_command_t

struct spi_flash_erase_command_t

Structure to define an erase command and associated erase size.

Data Fields		
uint8_t	command	Erase command.
uint32_t	size	Size of erase for associated command, set to SPI_FLASH_ERASE_SIZE_CHIP_ERASE for chip erase.

◆ spi_flash_cfg_t

struct spi_flash_cfg_t

User configuration structure used by the open function

Data Fields		
spi_flash_protocol_t	spi_protocol	Initial SPI protocol. SPI protocol can be changed in spi_flash_api_t::spiProtocolSet.
spi_flash_read_mode_t	read_mode	Read mode.
spi_flash_address_bytes_t	address_bytes	Number of bytes used to represent the address.
spi_flash_dummy_clocks_t	dummy_clocks	Number of dummy clocks to use for fast read operations.
spi_flash_data_lines_t	page_program_address_lines	Number of lines used to send address for page program

		command. This should either be 1 or match the number of lines used in the selected read mode.
uint32_t	page_size_bytes	Page size in bytes (maximum number of bytes for page program)
uint8_t	page_program_command	Page program command.
uint8_t	write_enable_command	Command to enable write or erase, typically 0x06.
uint8_t	status_command	Command to read the write status.
uint8_t	write_status_bit	Which bit determines write status.
uint8_t	xip_enter_command	Command to enter XIP mode.
uint8_t	xip_exit_command	Command to exit XIP mode.
uint8_t	erase_command_list_length	Length of erase command list.
spi_flash_erase_command_t const *	p_erase_command_list	List of all erase commands and associated sizes.
void const *	p_extend	Pointer to implementation specific extended configurations.

◆ spi_flash_status_t

struct spi_flash_status_t

Status.

Data Fields		
bool	write_in_progress	Whether or not a write is in progress. This is determined by reading the spi_flash_cfg_t::write_status_bit from the spi_flash_cfg_t::status_command.

◆ spi_flash_api_t

struct spi_flash_api_t

SPI flash implementations follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	directWrite)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src,

	uint32_t const bytes, bool const read_after_write)
fsp_err_t(*	directRead)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	spiProtocolSet)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_protocol_t spi_protocol)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t byte_count)
fsp_err_t(*	erase)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_device_address, uint32_t byte_count)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	xipEnter)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	xipExit)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	bankSet)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint32_t bank)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::open) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open the SPI flash driver module.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to a configuration structure

◆ directWrite

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::directWrite) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes, bool const read_after_write)

Write raw data to the SPI flash.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_DirectWrite()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[in]	p_src	Pointer to raw data to write, must include any required command/address
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes to write
[in]	read_after_write	If true, the slave select remains asserted and the peripheral does not return to direct communications mode. If false, the slave select is deasserted and memory mapped access is possible after this function returns if the device is not busy.

◆ directRead

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::directRead) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)

Read raw data from the SPI flash. Must follow a call to spi_flash_api_t::directWrite.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_DirectRead()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[out]	p_dest	Pointer to read raw data into
[in]	bytes	Number of bytes to read

◆ spiProtocolSet

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::spiProtocolSet) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_protocol_t spi_protocol)

Change the SPI protocol in the driver. The application must change the SPI protocol on the device.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_SpiProtocolSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[in]	spi_protocol	Desired SPI protocol

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::write) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t byte_count)

Program a page of data to the flash.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[in]	p_src	The memory address of the data to write to the flash device
[in]	p_dest	The location in the flash device address space to write the data to
[in]	byte_count	The number of bytes to write

◆ erase

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::erase) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_device_address, uint32_t byte_count)

Erase a certain number of bytes of the flash.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_Erase()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[in]	p_device_address	The location in the flash device address space to start the erase from
[in]	byte_count	The number of bytes to erase. Set to SPI_FLASH_ERASE_SIZE_CHIP_ERASE to erase entire chip.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::statusGet) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, spi_flash_status_t *const p_status)

Get the write or erase status of the flash.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[out]	p_status	Current status of the SPI flash device stored here.

◆ xipEnter

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::xipEnter) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)

Enter XIP mode.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_XipEnter()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle

◆ xipExit

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::xipExit) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)

Exit XIP mode.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_XipExit()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle

◆ bankSet

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::bankSet) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl, uint32_t bank)

Select the bank to access. See implementation for details.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_BankSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle
[in]	bank	The bank number

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::close) (spi_flash_ctrl_t *p_ctrl)

Close the SPI flash driver module.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to a driver handle

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* spi_flash_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get the driver version based on compile time macros.

Implemented as

- R_QSPI_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version stored here.

◆ spi_flash_instance_t

struct spi_flash_instance_t		
This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.		
Data Fields		
spi_flash_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
spi_flash_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
spi_flash_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ spi_flash_ctrl_t

typedef void spi_flash_ctrl_t

SPI flash control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the SPI flash API calls.

Implemented as

- qspi_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ spi_flash_read_mode_t

enum spi_flash_read_mode_t	
Read mode.	
Enumerator	
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_STANDARD	Standard Read Mode (no dummy cycles)
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_FAST_READ	Fast Read Mode (dummy cycles between address and data)
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_FAST_READ_DUAL_OUTPUT	Fast Read Dual Output Mode (data on 2 lines)
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_FAST_READ_DUAL_IO	Fast Read Dual I/O Mode (address and data on 2 lines)
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_FAST_READ_QUAD_OUTPUT	Fast Read Quad Output Mode (data on 4 lines)
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_FAST_READ_QUAD_IO	Fast Read Quad I/O Mode (address and data on 4 lines)

◆ spi_flash_protocol_t

enum spi_flash_protocol_t	
SPI protocol.	
Enumerator	
SPI_FLASH_PROTOCOL_EXTENDED_SPI	Extended SPI mode (commands on 1 line)
SPI_FLASH_PROTOCOL_QPI	QPI mode (commands on 4 lines). Note that the application must ensure the device is in QPI mode.

◆ spi_flash_address_bytes_t

enum spi_flash_address_bytes_t	
Number of bytes in the address.	
Enumerator	
SPI_FLASH_ADDRESS_BYTES_3	3 address bytes
SPI_FLASH_ADDRESS_BYTES_4	4 address bytes with standard commands. If this option is selected, the application must issue the EN4B command using spi_flash_api_t::directWrite() if required by the device.
SPI_FLASH_ADDRESS_BYTES_4_4BYTE_READ_CODE	4 address bytes using standard 4-byte command set.

◆ spi_flash_data_lines_t

enum spi_flash_data_lines_t	
Number of data lines used.	
Enumerator	
SPI_FLASH_DATA_LINES_1	1 data line
SPI_FLASH_DATA_LINES_2	2 data lines
SPI_FLASH_DATA_LINES_4	4 data lines

◆ spi_flash_dummy_clocks_t

enum spi_flash_dummy_clocks_t	
Number of dummy cycles for fast read operations.	
Enumerator	
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_DEFAULT	Default is 6 clocks for Fast Read Quad I/O, 4 clocks for Fast Read Dual I/O, and 8 clocks for other fast read instructions including Fast Read Quad Output, Fast Read Dual Output, and Fast Read.
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_3	3 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_4	4 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_5	5 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_6	6 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_7	7 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_8	8 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_9	9 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_10	10 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_11	11 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_12	12 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_13	13 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_14	14 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_15	15 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_16	16 dummy clocks
SPI_FLASH_DUMMY_CLOCKS_17	17 dummy clocks

5.3.31 Three-Phase Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for three-phase timer functions.

Summary

The Three-Phase interface provides functionality for synchronous start/stop/reset control of three timer channels for use in 3-phase motor control applications.

Implemented by:

- General PWM Timer Three-Phase Motor Control Driver (r_gpt_three_phase)

Data Structures

struct	three_phase_duty_cycle_t
struct	three_phase_cfg_t
struct	three_phase_api_t
struct	three_phase_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	three_phase_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	three_phase_channel_t
enum	three_phase_buffer_mode_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ three_phase_duty_cycle_t

struct three_phase_duty_cycle_t

Struct for passing duty cycle values to three_phase_api_t::dutyCycleSet

Data Fields		
uint32_t	duty[3]	Duty cycle.
uint32_t	duty_buffer[3]	Double-buffer for duty cycle values.

◆ three_phase_cfg_t

struct three_phase_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in open function

Data Fields		
three_phase_buffer_mode_t	buffer_mode	Single or double-buffer mode.
timer_instance_t const *	p_timer_instance[3]	Pointer to the timer instance structs.
uint32_t	channel_mask	Bitmask of timer channels used by this module.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in timer_callback_args_t.
void const *	p_extend	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.

◆ three_phase_api_t

struct three_phase_api_t

Three-Phase API structure.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, three_phase_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	start)(three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	reset)(three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	dutyCycleSet)(three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, three_phase_duty_cycle_t *const p_duty_cycle)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* three_phase_api_t::open) (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, three_phase_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ start

fsp_err_t(* three_phase_api_t::start) (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Start all three timers synchronously.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Start()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in three_phase_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ stop

fsp_err_t(* three_phase_api_t::stop) (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Stop all three timers synchronously.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in three_phase_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ reset

fsp_err_t(* three_phase_api_t::reset) (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Reset all three timers synchronously.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Reset()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in three_phase_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ dutyCycleSet

fsp_err_t(* three_phase_api_t::dutyCycleSet) (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, three_phase_duty_cycle_t *const p_duty_cycle)

Sets the duty cycle match values. If the timer is counting, the updated duty cycle is reflected after the next timer expiration.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_DutyCycleSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in three_phase_api_t::open call for this timer.
[in]	p_duty_cycle	Duty cycle values for all three timer channels.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* three_phase_api_t::close) (three_phase_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Allows driver to be reconfigured and may reduce power consumption.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in three_phase_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* three_phase_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_THREE_PHASE_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ three_phase_instance_t

struct three_phase_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
three_phase_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
three_phase_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
three_phase_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ three_phase_ctrl_t

typedef void three_phase_ctrl_t

Three-Phase control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the timer API calls.

Implemented as

- gpt_three_phase_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ three_phase_channel_t

enum three_phase_channel_t	
Timer channel indices	
Enumerator	
THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_U	U-channel index.
THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_V	V-channel index.
THREE_PHASE_CHANNEL_W	W-channel index.

◆ three_phase_buffer_mode_t

enum three_phase_buffer_mode_t	
Buffering mode	
Enumerator	
THREE_PHASE_BUFFER_MODE_SINGLE	Single-buffer mode.
THREE_PHASE_BUFFER_MODE_DOUBLE	Double-buffer mode.

5.3.32 Timer Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for timer functions.

Summary

The general timer interface provides standard timer functionality including periodic mode, one-shot mode, PWM output, and free-running timer mode. After each timer cycle (overflow or underflow), an interrupt can be triggered.

If an instance supports output compare mode, it is provided in the extension configuration timer_on_<instance>_cfg_t defined in r_<instance>.h.

Implemented by:

- General PWM Timer (r_gpt)
- Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (r_agt)

Data Structures

struct	timer_callback_args_t
struct	timer_info_t
struct	timer_status_t
struct	timer_cfg_t
struct	timer_api_t
struct	timer_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	timer_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	timer_event_t
enum	timer_variant_t
enum	timer_state_t
enum	timer_mode_t
enum	timer_direction_t
enum	timer_source_div_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ timer_callback_args_t

struct timer_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in timer_api_t::open function in timer_cfg_t.
timer_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback.
uint32_t	capture	

◆ timer_info_t

struct timer_info_t		
Timer information structure to store various information for a timer resource		
Data Fields		
timer_direction_t	count_direction	Clock counting direction of the timer.
uint32_t	clock_frequency	Clock frequency of the timer counter.
uint32_t	period_counts	

◆ timer_status_t

struct timer_status_t		
Current timer status.		
Data Fields		
uint32_t	counter	Current counter value.
timer_state_t	state	Current timer state (running or stopped)

◆ timer_cfg_t

struct timer_cfg_t	
User configuration structure, used in open function	
Data Fields	
timer_mode_t	mode
	Select enumerated value from timer_mode_t.
uint32_t	period_counts
	Period in raw timer counts.
timer_source_div_t	source_div
	Source clock divider.
uint32_t	duty_cycle_counts
	Duty cycle in counts.
uint8_t	channel

uint8_t	cycle_end_ipl
	Cycle end interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	cycle_end_irq
	Cycle end interrupt.
void(*	p_callback)(timer_callback_args_t *p_args)
void const *	p_context
void const *	p_extend
	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.

Field Documentation

◆ channel

uint8_t timer_cfg_t::channel

Select a channel corresponding to the channel number of the hardware.

◆ p_callback

void(* timer_cfg_t::p_callback) (timer_callback_args_t *p_args)

Callback provided when a timer ISR occurs. Set to NULL for no CPU interrupt.

◆ p_context

void const* timer_cfg_t::p_context

Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in timer_callback_args_t.

◆ timer_api_t

struct timer_api_t

Timer API structure. General timer functions implemented at the HAL layer follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

fsp_err_t(*	start)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	reset)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	enable)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	disable)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	periodSet)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const period)
fsp_err_t(*	dutyCycleSet)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const duty_cycle_counts, uint32_t const pin)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::open) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_Open()
- R_AGT_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ start

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::start) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Start the counter.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_Start()
- R_AGT_Start()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ stop

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::stop) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Stop the counter.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_Stop()
- R_AGT_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ reset

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::reset) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Reset the counter to the initial value.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_Reset()
- R_AGT_Reset()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ enable

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::enable) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Enables input capture.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_Enable()
- R_AGT_Enable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ disable

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::disable) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disables input capture.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_Disable()
- R_AGT_Disable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ periodSet

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::periodSet) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const period)

Set the time until the timer expires. See implementation for details of period update timing.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_PeriodSet()
- R_AGT_PeriodSet()

Note

Timer expiration may or may not generate a CPU interrupt based on how the timer is configured in timer_api_t::open.

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.
[in]	p_period	Time until timer should expire.

◆ dutyCycleSet

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::dutyCycleSet) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const duty_cycle_counts, uint32_t const pin)

Sets the number of counts for the pin level to be high. If the timer is counting, the updated duty cycle is reflected after the next timer expiration.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_DutyCycleSet()
- R_AGT_DutyCycleSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.
[in]	duty_cycle_counts	Time until duty cycle should expire.
[in]	pin	Which output pin to update. See implementation for details.

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::infoGet) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_info_t *const p_info)

Stores timer information in p_info.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_InfoGet()
- R_AGT_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.
[out]	p_info	Collection of information for this timer.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::statusGet) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, timer_status_t *const p_status)

Get the current counter value and timer state and store it in p_status.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_StatusGet()
- R_AGT_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.
[out]	p_status	Current status of this timer.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::close) (timer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Allows driver to be reconfigured and may reduce power consumption.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_Close()
- R_AGT_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in timer_api_t::open call for this timer.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* timer_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get version and store it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- R_GPT_VersionGet()
- R_AGT_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ timer_instance_t

struct timer_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
timer_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
timer_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
timer_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ timer_ctrl_t

typedef void timer_ctrl_t

Timer control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the timer API calls.

Implemented as

- gpt_instance_ctrl_t
- agt_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ timer_event_t

enum timer_event_t	
Events that can trigger a callback function	
Enumerator	
TIMER_EVENT_CYCLE_END	Requested timer delay has expired or timer has wrapped around.
TIMER_EVENT_CREST	Timer crest event (counter is at a maximum, triangle-wave PWM only)
TIMER_EVENT_CAPTURE_A	A capture has occurred on signal A.
TIMER_EVENT_CAPTURE_B	A capture has occurred on signal B.
TIMER_EVENT_TROUGH	Timer trough event (counter is 0, triangle-wave PWM only.

◆ timer_variant_t

enum timer_variant_t	
Timer variant types.	
Enumerator	
TIMER_VARIANT_32_BIT	32-bit timer
TIMER_VARIANT_16_BIT	16-bit timer

◆ timer_state_t

enum timer_state_t	
Possible status values returned by timer_api_t::statusGet.	
Enumerator	
TIMER_STATE_STOPPED	Timer is stopped.
TIMER_STATE_COUNTING	Timer is running.

◆ timer_mode_t

enum timer_mode_t	
Timer operational modes	
Enumerator	
TIMER_MODE_PERIODIC	Timer restarts after period elapses.
TIMER_MODE_ONE_SHOT	Timer stops after period elapses.
TIMER_MODE_PWM	Timer generates saw-wave PWM output.
TIMER_MODE_TRIANGLE_WAVE_SYMMETRIC_PWM	Timer generates symmetric triangle-wave PWM output.
TIMER_MODE_TRIANGLE_WAVE_ASYMMETRIC_PWM	Timer generates asymmetric triangle-wave PWM output.

◆ timer_direction_t

enum timer_direction_t	
Direction of timer count	
Enumerator	
TIMER_DIRECTION_DOWN	Timer count goes up.
TIMER_DIRECTION_UP	Timer count goes down.

◆ timer_source_div_t

enum timer_source_div_t	
PCLK divisors	
Enumerator	
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_1	Timer clock source divided by 1.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_2	Timer clock source divided by 2.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_4	Timer clock source divided by 4.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_8	Timer clock source divided by 8.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_16	Timer clock source divided by 16.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_32	Timer clock source divided by 32.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_64	Timer clock source divided by 64.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_128	Timer clock source divided by 128.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_256	Timer clock source divided by 256.
TIMER_SOURCE_DIV_1024	Timer clock source divided by 1024.

5.3.33 Transfer Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for data transfer functions.

Summary

The transfer interface supports background data transfer (no CPU intervention).

Implemented by:

- Data Transfer Controller (r_dtc)
- Direct Memory Access Controller (r_dmac)

Data Structures

struct	transfer_properties_t
struct	transfer_info_t
struct	transfer_cfg_t
struct	transfer_api_t
struct	transfer_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	transfer_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	transfer_mode_t
enum	transfer_size_t
enum	transfer_addr_mode_t
enum	transfer_repeat_area_t
enum	transfer_chain_mode_t
enum	transfer_irq_t
enum	transfer_start_mode_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ transfer_properties_t

struct transfer_properties_t

Driver specific information.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	block_count_max	Maximum number of blocks.
uint32_t	block_count_remaining	Number of blocks remaining.
uint32_t	transfer_length_max	Maximum number of transfers.
uint32_t	transfer_length_remaining	Number of transfers remaining.

◆ transfer_info_t

struct transfer_info_t

This structure specifies the properties of the transfer.

Warning

When using DTC, this structure corresponds to the descriptor block registers required by the DTC. The following components may be modified by the driver: p_src, p_dest, num_blocks, and length.

When using DTC, do NOT reuse this structure to configure multiple transfers. Each transfer must have a unique transfer_info_t.

When using DTC, this structure must not be allocated in a temporary location. Any instance of this structure must remain in scope until the transfer it is used for is closed.

Note

When using DTC, consider placing instances of this structure in a protected section of memory.

Data Fields		
union transfer_info_t	__unnamed__	
void const *volatile	p_src	Source pointer.
void *volatile	p_dest	Destination pointer.
volatile uint16_t	num_blocks	Number of blocks to transfer when using TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK (both DTC an DMAC) and TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT (DMAC only), unused in other modes.
volatile uint16_t	length	Length of each transfer. Range limited for TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK and TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT, see HAL driver for details.

◆ transfer_cfg_t

struct transfer_cfg_t

Driver configuration set in transfer_api_t::open. All elements except p_extend are required and must be initialized.

Data Fields		
transfer_info_t *	p_info	Pointer to transfer configuration options. If using chain transfer (DTC only), this can be a pointer to an array of chained transfers that will be completed in order.
void const *	p_extend	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.

◆ transfer_api_t

struct transfer_api_t

Transfer functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

fsp_err_t(*	reconfigure)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_info_t *p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	reset)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *p_src, void *p_dest, uint16_t const num_transfers)
fsp_err_t(*	enable)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	disable)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	softwareStart)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_start_mode_t mode)
fsp_err_t(*	softwareStop)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_properties_t *const p_properties)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::open) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initial configuration.

Implemented as

- R_DTC_Open()
- R_DMAC_Open()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ reconfigure

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::reconfigure) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_info_t *p_info)

Reconfigure the transfer. Enable the transfer if p_info is valid.

Implemented as

- R_DTC_Reconfigure()
- R_DMAC_Reconfigure()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_info	Pointer to a new transfer info structure.

◆ reset

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::reset) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *p_src, void *p_dest, uint16_t const num_transfers)

Reset source address pointer, destination address pointer, and/or length, keeping all other settings the same. Enable the transfer if p_src, p_dest, and length are valid.

Implemented as

- R_DTC_Reset()
- R_DMAC_Reset()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in transfer_api_t::open call for this transfer.
[in]	p_src	Pointer to source. Set to NULL if source pointer should not change.
[in]	p_dest	Pointer to destination. Set to NULL if destination pointer should not change.
[in]	num_transfers	Transfer length in normal mode or number of blocks in block mode. In DMAC only, resets number of repeats (initially stored in transfer_info_t::num_blocks) in repeat mode. Not used in repeat mode for DTC.

◆ enable

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::enable) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Enable transfer. Transfers occur after the activation source event (or when transfer_api_t::softwareStart is called if ELC_EVENT_ELC_NONE is chosen as activation source).

Implemented as

- R_DTC_Enable()
- R_DMAC_Enable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in transfer_api_t::open call for this transfer.

◆ disable

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::disable) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Disable transfer. Transfers do not occur after the activation source event (or when transfer_api_t::softwareStart is called if ELC_EVENT_ELC_NONE is chosen as the DMAC activation source).

Note

If a transfer is in progress, it will be completed. Subsequent transfer requests do not cause a transfer.

Implemented as

- R_DTC_Disable()
- R_DMAC_Disable()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in transfer_api_t::open call for this transfer.

◆ softwareStart

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::softwareStart) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_start_mode_t mode)

Start transfer in software.

Warning

Only works if ELC_EVENT_ELC_NONE is chosen as the DMAC activation source.

Note

Not supported for DTC.

Implemented as

- R_DMAC_SoftwareStart()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in transfer_api_t::open call for this transfer.
[in]	mode	Select mode from transfer_start_mode_t.

◆ softwareStop

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::softwareStop) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Stop transfer in software. The transfer will stop after completion of the current transfer.

Note

Not supported for DTC.
Only applies for transfers started with TRANSFER_START_MODE_REPEAT.

Warning

Only works if ELC_EVENT_ELC_NONE is chosen as the DMAC activation source.

Implemented as

- R_DMAC_SoftwareStop()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in transfer_api_t::open call for this transfer.

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::infoGet) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, transfer_properties_t *const p_properties)

Provides information about this transfer.

Implemented as

- R_DTC_InfoGet()
- R_DMAC_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in transfer_api_t::open call for this transfer.
[out]	p_properties	Driver specific information.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::close) (transfer_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Releases hardware lock. This allows a transfer to be reconfigured using transfer_api_t::open.

Implemented as

- R_DTC_Close()
- R_DMAC_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in transfer_api_t::open call for this transfer.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* transfer_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)
Gets version and stores it in provided pointer p_version. **Implemented as** ◦ R_DTC_VersionGet() ◦ R_DMAC_VersionGet() **Parameters**

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ transfer_instance_t

struct transfer_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
transfer_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
transfer_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
transfer_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ transfer_ctrl_t

typedef void transfer_ctrl_t

Transfer control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the transfer API calls.

Implemented as

- dtc_instance_ctrl_t
- dmac_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ transfer_mode_t

enum transfer_mode_t	
Transfer mode describes what will happen when a transfer request occurs.	
Enumerator	
TRANSFER_MODE_NORMAL	In normal mode, each transfer request causes a transfer of transfer_size_t from the source pointer to the destination pointer. The transfer length is decremented and the source and address pointers are updated according to transfer_addr_mode_t. After the transfer length reaches 0, transfer requests will not cause any further transfers.
TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT	Repeat mode is like normal mode, except that when the transfer length reaches 0, the pointer to the repeat area and the transfer length will be reset to their initial values. If DMAC is used, the transfer repeats only transfer_info_t::num_blocks times. After the transfer repeats transfer_info_t::num_blocks times, transfer requests will not cause any further transfers. If DTC is used, the transfer repeats continuously (no limit to the number of repeat transfers).
TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK	In block mode, each transfer request causes transfer_info_t::length transfers of transfer_size_t. After each individual transfer, the source and destination pointers are updated according to transfer_addr_mode_t. After the block transfer is complete, transfer_info_t::num_blocks is decremented. After the transfer_info_t::num_blocks reaches 0, transfer requests will not cause any further transfers.

◆ transfer_size_t

enum transfer_size_t	
Transfer size specifies the size of each individual transfer. Total transfer length = transfer_size_t * transfer_length_t	
Enumerator	
TRANSFER_SIZE_1_BYTE	Each transfer transfers a 8-bit value.
TRANSFER_SIZE_2_BYTE	Each transfer transfers a 16-bit value.
TRANSFER_SIZE_4_BYTE	Each transfer transfers a 32-bit value.

◆ transfer_addr_mode_t

enum transfer_addr_mode_t	
Address mode specifies whether to modify (increment or decrement) pointer after each transfer.	
Enumerator	
TRANSFER_ADDR_MODE_FIXED	Address pointer remains fixed after each transfer.
TRANSFER_ADDR_MODE_OFFSET	Offset is added to the address pointer after each transfer.
TRANSFER_ADDR_MODE_INCREMENTED	Address pointer is incremented by associated transfer_size_t after each transfer.
TRANSFER_ADDR_MODE_DECREMENTED	Address pointer is decremented by associated transfer_size_t after each transfer.

◆ transfer_repeat_area_t

enum transfer_repeat_area_t

Repeat area options (source or destination). In TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT, the selected pointer returns to its original value after transfer_info_t::length transfers. In TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK, the selected pointer returns to its original value after each transfer.

Enumerator	
TRANSFER_REPEAT_AREA_DESTINATION	Destination area repeated in TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT or TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK.
TRANSFER_REPEAT_AREA_SOURCE	Source area repeated in TRANSFER_MODE_REPEAT or TRANSFER_MODE_BLOCK.

◆ transfer_chain_mode_t

enum transfer_chain_mode_t

Chain transfer mode options.

Note

Only applies for DTC.

Enumerator	
TRANSFER_CHAIN_MODE_DISABLED	Chain mode not used.
TRANSFER_CHAIN_MODE_EACH	Switch to next transfer after a single transfer from this transfer_info_t.
TRANSFER_CHAIN_MODE_END	Complete the entire transfer defined in this transfer_info_t before chaining to next transfer.

◆ transfer_irq_t

enum transfer_irq_t	
Interrupt options.	
Enumerator	
TRANSFER_IRQ_END	Interrupt occurs only after last transfer. If this transfer is chained to a subsequent transfer, the interrupt will occur only after subsequent chained transfer(s) are complete. Warning DTC triggers the interrupt of the activation source. Choosing TRANSFER_IRQ_END with DTC will prevent activation source interrupts until the transfer is complete.
TRANSFER_IRQ_EACH	Interrupt occurs after each transfer. *Note* *Not available in all HAL drivers. See HAL driver for details.*

◆ transfer_start_mode_t

enum transfer_start_mode_t	
Select whether to start single or repeated transfer with software start.	
Enumerator	
TRANSFER_START_MODE_SINGLE	Software start triggers single transfer.
TRANSFER_START_MODE_REPEAT	Software start transfer continues until transfer is complete.

5.3.34 UART Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for UART communications.

Summary

The UART interface provides common APIs for UART HAL drivers. The UART interface supports the following features:

- Full-duplex UART communication
- Interrupt driven transmit/receive processing
- Callback function with returned event code
- Runtime baud-rate change
- Hardware resource locking during a transaction
- CTS/RTS hardware flow control support (with an associated IOPORT pin)

Implemented by:

- Serial Communications Interface (SCI) UART (r_sci_uart)

Data Structures

struct	uart_info_t
struct	uart_callback_args_t
struct	uart_cfg_t
struct	uart_api_t
struct	uart_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	uart_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	uart_event_t
enum	uart_data_bits_t
enum	uart_parity_t
enum	uart_stop_bits_t
enum	uart_dir_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ uart_info_t

struct uart_info_t
UART driver specific information
Data Fields

uint32_t	write_bytes_max	Maximum bytes that can be written at this time. Only applies if uart_cfg_t::p_transfer_tx is not NULL.
uint32_t	read_bytes_max	Maximum bytes that are available to read at one time. Only applies if uart_cfg_t::p_transfer_rx is not NULL.

◆ uart_callback_args_t

struct uart_callback_args_t

UART Callback parameter definition

Data Fields		
uint32_t	channel	Device channel number.
uart_event_t	event	Event code.
uint32_t	data	Contains the next character received for the events UART_EVENT_RX_CHAR, UART_EVENT_ERR_PARITY, UART_EVENT_ERR_FRAMING, or UART_EVENT_ERR_OVERFLOW. Otherwise unused.
void const *	p_context	Context provided to user during callback.

◆ uart_cfg_t

struct uart_cfg_t

UART Configuration

Data Fields

uint8_t	channel
	Select a channel corresponding to the channel number of the hardware.
uart_data_bits_t	data_bits
	Data bit length (8 or 7 or 9)
uart_parity_t	parity
	Parity type (none or odd or even)

uart_stop_bits_t	stop_bits
	Stop bit length (1 or 2)
uint8_t	rxi_ipl
	Receive interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	rxi_irq
	Receive interrupt IRQ number.
uint8_t	txi_ipl
	Transmit interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	txi_irq
	Transmit interrupt IRQ number.
uint8_t	tei_ipl
	Transmit end interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	tei_irq
	Transmit end interrupt IRQ number.
uint8_t	eri_ipl
	Error interrupt priority.
IRQn_Type	eri_irq
	Error interrupt IRQ number.

transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_rx
transfer_instance_t const *	p_transfer_tx
void(*	p_callback)(uart_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to callback function.
void const *	p_context
	User defined context passed into callback function.
void const *	p_extend
	UART hardware dependent configuration.

Field Documentation

◆ p_transfer_rx

transfer_instance_t const* uart_cfg_t::p_transfer_rx

Optional transfer instance used to receive multiple bytes without interrupts. Set to NULL if unused. If NULL, the number of bytes allowed in the read API is limited to one byte at a time.

◆ p_transfer_tx

transfer_instance_t const* uart_cfg_t::p_transfer_tx

Optional transfer instance used to send multiple bytes without interrupts. Set to NULL if unused. If NULL, the number of bytes allowed in the write APIs is limited to one byte at a time.

◆ uart_api_t

struct uart_api_t

Shared Interface definition for UART

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uart_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint32_t

	const bytes)
fsp_err_t(*	baudSet)(uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_baudrate_info)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uart_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	communicationAbort)(uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uart_dir_t communication_to_abort)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::open) (uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uart_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open UART device.

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_Open()

Parameters

[in,out]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the UART control block Must be declared by user. Value set here.
[in]	uart_cfg_t	Pointer to UART configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::read) (uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest, uint32_t const bytes)

Read from UART device. The read buffer is used until the read is complete. When a transfer is complete, the callback is called with event UART_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE. Bytes received outside an active transfer are received in the callback function with event UART_EVENT_RX_CHAR. The maximum transfer size is reported by infoGet().

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the UART control block for the channel.
[in]	p_dest	Destination address to read data from.
[in]	bytes	Read data length.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::write) (uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src, uint32_t const bytes)

Write to UART device. The write buffer is used until write is complete. Do not overwrite write buffer contents until the write is finished. When the write is complete (all bytes are fully transmitted on the wire), the callback called with event UART_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE. The maximum transfer size is reported by infoGet().

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the UART control block.
[in]	p_src	Source address to write data to.
[in]	bytes	Write data length.

◆ baudSet

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::baudSet) (uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, void const *const p_baudrate_info)

Change baud rate.

Warning
Calling this API aborts any in-progress transmission and disables reception until the new baud settings have been applied.

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_BaudSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the UART control block.
[in]	p_baudrate_info	Pointer to module specific information for configuring baud rate.

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::infoGet) (uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uart_info_t *const p_info)

Get the driver specific information.

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the UART control block.
[in]	baudrate	Baud rate in bps.

◆ communicationAbort

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::communicationAbort) (uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uart_dir_t communication_to_abort)

Abort ongoing transfer.

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_Abort()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the UART control block.
[in]	communication_to_abort	Type of abort request.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::close) (uart_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close UART device.

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to the UART control block.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* uart_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *p_version)

Get version.

Implemented as

- R_SCI_UART_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_version	Pointer to the memory to store the version information.

◆ uart_instance_t

struct uart_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
uart_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
uart_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
uart_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ uart_ctrl_t

typedef void uart_ctrl_t

UART control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the UART API calls.

Implemented as

- sci_uart_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ uart_event_t

enum uart_event_t

UART Event codes

Enumerator	
UART_EVENT_RX_COMPLETE	Receive complete event.
UART_EVENT_TX_COMPLETE	Transmit complete event.
UART_EVENT_RX_CHAR	Character received.
UART_EVENT_ERR_PARITY	Parity error event.
UART_EVENT_ERR_FRAMING	Mode fault error event.
UART_EVENT_ERR_OVERFLOW	FIFO Overflow error event.
UART_EVENT_BREAK_DETECT	Break detect error event.
UART_EVENT_TX_DATA_EMPTY	Last byte is transmitting, ready for more data.

◆ uart_data_bits_t

enum uart_data_bits_t

UART Data bit length definition

Enumerator	
UART_DATA_BITS_8	Data bits 8-bit.
UART_DATA_BITS_7	Data bits 7-bit.
UART_DATA_BITS_9	Data bits 9-bit.

◆ uart_parity_t

enum uart_parity_t	
UART Parity definition	
Enumerator	
UART_PARITY_OFF	No parity.
UART_PARITY_EVEN	Even parity.
UART_PARITY_ODD	Odd parity.

◆ uart_stop_bits_t

enum uart_stop_bits_t	
UART Stop bits definition	
Enumerator	
UART_STOP_BITS_1	Stop bit 1-bit.
UART_STOP_BITS_2	Stop bits 2-bit.

◆ uart_dir_t

enum uart_dir_t	
UART transaction definition	
Enumerator	
UART_DIR_RX_TX	Both RX and TX.
UART_DIR_RX	Only RX.
UART_DIR_TX	Only TX.

5.3.35 USB Interface
Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for USB functions.

Summary

The USB interface provides USB functionality.

The USB interface can be implemented by:

- USB (r_usb_basic)

Data Structures

struct	usb_api_t
struct	usb_instance_t

Macros

#define	USB_API_VERSION_MINOR Minor version of the API.
#define	USB_API_VERSION_MAJOR Major version of the API.
#define	USB_BREQUEST b15-8
#define	USB_GET_STATUS USB Standard request Get Status.
#define	USB_CLEAR_FEATURE USB Standard request Clear Feature.
#define	USB_REQRESERVED USB Standard request Reqreserved.
#define	USB_SET_FEATURE USB Standard request Set Feature.
#define	USB_REQRESERVED1

	USB Standard request Reqreserved1.
#define	USB_SET_ADDRESS USB Standard request Set Address.
#define	USB_GET_DESCRIPTOR USB Standard request Get Descriptor.
#define	USB_SET_DESCRIPTOR USB Standard request Set Descriptor.
#define	USB_GET_CONFIGURATION USB Standard request Get Configuration.
#define	USB_SET_CONFIGURATION USB Standard request Set Configuration.
#define	USB_GET_INTERFACE USB Standard request Get Interface.
#define	USB_SET_INTERFACE USB Standard request Set Interface.
#define	USB_SYNCH_FRAME USB Standard request Synch Frame.
#define	USB_HOST_TO_DEV From host to device.
#define	USB_DEV_TO_HOST From device to host.
#define	USB_STANDARD Standard Request.

#define USB_CLASS

Class Request.

#define USB_VENDOR

Vendor Request.

#define USB_DEVICE

Device.

#define USB_INTERFACE

Interface.

#define USB_ENDPOINT

End Point.

#define USB_OTHER

Other.

#define USB_NULL

NULL pointer.

#define USB_IP0

USB0 module.

#define USB_IP1

USB1 module.

#define USB_PIPE0

Pipe Number0.

#define USB_PIPE1

Pipe Number1.

#define USB_PIPE2

Pipe Number2.

#define USB_PIPE3

Pipe Number3.

#define USB_PIPE4

Pipe Number4.

#define USB_PIPE5

Pipe Number5.

#define USB_PIPE6

Pipe Number6.

#define USB_PIPE7

Pipe Number7.

#define USB_PIPE8

Pipe Number8.

#define USB_PIPE9

Pipe Number9.

#define USB_EP0

End Point Number0.

#define USB_EP1

End Point Number1.

#define USB_EP2

End Point Number2.

#define USB_EP3

End Point Number3.

#define USB_EP4

End Point Number4.

#define USB_EP5

End Point Number5.

#define USB_EP6

End Point Number6.

#define USB_EP7

End Point Number7.

#define USB_EP8

End Point Number8.

#define USB_EP9

End Point Number9.

#define USB_EP10

End Point Number10.

#define USB_EP11

End Point Number11.

#define USB_EP12

End Point Number12.

#define USB_EP13

End Point Number13.

#define USB_EP14

End Point Number14.

#define USB_EP15

End Point Number15.

#define USB_DT_DEVICE

Device Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_CONFIGURATION

Configuration Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_STRING

String Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_INTERFACE

Interface Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_ENDPOINT

Endpoint Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_DEVICE_QUALIFIER

Device Qualifier Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_OTHER_SPEED_CONF

Other Speed Configuration Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_INTERFACE_POWER

Interface Power Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_OTGDESCRIPTOR

OTG Descriptor.

#define USB_DT_HUBDESCRIPTOR

HUB descriptor.

#define USB_IFCLS_NOT

Un corresponding Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_AUD

Audio Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_CDC

CDC Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_CDCC

CDC-Control Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_HID

HID Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_PHY

Physical Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_IMG

Image Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_PRN

Printer Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_MAS

Mass Storage Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_HUB

HUB Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_CDCD

CDC-Data Class.

#define USB_IFCLS_CHIP

	Chip/Smart Card Class.
#define	USB_IFCLS_CNT Content-Security Class.
#define	USB_IFCLS_VID Video Class.
#define	USB_IFCLS_DIAG Diagnostic Device.
#define	USB_IFCLS_WIRE Wireless Controller.
#define	USB_IFCLS_APL Application-Specific.
#define	USB_IFCLS_VEN Vendor-Specific Class.
#define	USB_EP_IN In Endpoint.
#define	USB_EP_OUT Out Endpoint.
#define	USB_EP_ISO Isochronous Transfer.
#define	USB_EP_BULK Bulk Transfer.
#define	USB_EP_INT Interrupt Transfer.

#define	USB_CF_RESERVED Reserved(set to 1)
#define	USB_CF_SELFP Self Powered.
#define	USB_CF_BUSP Bus Powered.
#define	USB_CF_RWUPON Remote Wake up ON.
#define	USB_CF_RWUPOFF Remote Wake up OFF.
#define	USB_DD_BLENGTH Device Descriptor Length.
#define	USB_CD_BLENGTH Configuration Descriptor Length.
#define	USB_ID_BLENGTH Interface Descriptor Length.
#define	USB_ED_BLENGTH Endpoint Descriptor Length.

Enumerations

enum	usb_speed_t
enum	usb_setup_status_t
enum	usb_status_t
enum	usb_class_t

enum	usb_bcport_t
enum	usb_onoff_t
enum	usb_transfer_t
enum	usb_transfer_type_t
enum	usb_mode_t
enum	usb_compliancetest_status_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ usb_api_t

struct usb_api_t

Functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t destination)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t destination)
fsp_err_t(*	stop)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_transfer_t direction, uint8_t destination)
fsp_err_t(*	suspend)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	resume)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	vbusSet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t state)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_info_t *p_info, uint8_t destination)

fsp_err_t(*	pipeRead)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t pipe_number)
fsp_err_t(*	pipeWrite)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t pipe_number)
fsp_err_t(*	pipeStop)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t pipe_number)
fsp_err_t(*	usedPipesGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t *p_pipe, uint8_t destination)
fsp_err_t(*	pipeInfoGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_pipe_t *p_info, uint8_t pipe_number)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)
fsp_err_t(*	eventGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_status_t *event)
fsp_err_t(*	callback)(usb_callback_t *p_callback)
fsp_err_t(*	pullUp)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t state)
fsp_err_t(*	hostControlTransfer)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_t *p_setup, uint8_t *p_buf, uint8_t device_address)
fsp_err_t(*	periControlDataGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size)
fsp_err_t(*	periControlDataSet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size)
fsp_err_t(*	periControlStatusSet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_status_t status)
fsp_err_t(*	moduleNumberGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *module_number)

fsp_err_t(*	classTypeGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_class_t *class_type)
fsp_err_t(*	deviceAddressGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *device_address)
fsp_err_t(*	pipeNumberGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *pipe_number)
fsp_err_t(*	deviceStateGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t *state)
fsp_err_t(*	dataSizeGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t *data_size)
fsp_err_t(*	setupGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_t *setup)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::open) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Start the USB module

Implemented as

- R_USB_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::close) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Stop the USB module

Implemented as

- R_USB_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::read) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t destination)

Request USB data read

Implemented as

- R_USB_Read()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_buf	Pointer to area that stores read data.
[in]	size	Read request size.
[in]	destination	In Host, it represents the device address, and in Peri, it represents the device class.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::write) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t destination)

Request USB data write

Implemented as

- R_USB_Write()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_buf	Pointer to area that stores write data.
[in]	size	Read request size.
[in]	destination	In Host, it represents the device address, and in Peri, it represents the device class.

◆ stop

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::stop) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_transfer_t direction, uint8_t destination)

Stop USB data read/write processing

Implemented as

- R_USB_Stop()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	direction	Receive (USB_TRANSFER_READ) or send (USB_TRANSFER_WRITE).
[in]	destination	In Host, it represents the device address, and in Peri, it represents the device class.

◆ suspend

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::suspend) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Request suspend

Implemented as

- R_USB_Suspend()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ resume

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::resume) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl)

Request resume

Implemented as

- R_USB_Resume()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ vbusSet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::vbusSet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t state)

Sets VBUS supply start/stop.

Implemented as

- R_USB_VbusSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	state	VBUS supply start/stop specification

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::infoGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_info_t *p_info, uint8_t destination)

Get information on USB device.

Implemented as

- R_USB_InfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_info	Pointer to usb_info_t structure area.
[in]	destination	Device address for Host.

◆ pipeRead

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::pipeRead) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t pipe_number)

Request data read from specified pipe

Implemented as

- R_USB_PipeRead()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_buf	Pointer to area that stores read data.
[in]	size	Read request size.
[in]	pipe_number	Pipe Number.

◆ pipeWrite

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::pipeWrite) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size, uint8_t pipe_number)

Request data write to specified pipe

Implemented as

- R_USB_PipeWrite()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_buf	Pointer to area that stores write data.
[in]	size	Read request size.
[in]	pipe_number	Pipe Number.

◆ pipeStop

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::pipeStop) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t pipe_number)

Stop USB data read/write processing to specified pipe

Implemented as

- R_USB_PipeStop()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	pipe_number	Pipe Number.

◆ usedPipesGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::usedPipesGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t *p_pipe, uint8_t destination)

Get pipe number

Implemented as

- R_USB_UsedPipesGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_pipe	Pointer to area that stores the selected pipe number (bit map information).
[in]	destination	Device address for Host.

◆ pipeInfoGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::pipeInfoGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_pipe_t *p_info, uint8_t pipe_number)

Get pipe information

Implemented as

- R_USB_PipeInfoGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_info	Pointer to usb_pipe_t structure area.
[in]	pipe_number	Pipe Number.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get the driver version

Implemented as

- R_USB_VersionGet()

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Version number.

◆ eventGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::eventGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_status_t *event)

Return USB-related completed events (OS less only)

Implemented as

- R_USB_EventGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	event	Pointer to event.

◆ callback

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::callback) (usb_callback_t *p_callback)

Register a callback function to be called upon completion of a USB related event. (RTOS only)

Implemented as

- R_USB_Callback()

Parameters

[in]	p_callback	Pointer to Callback function.

◆ pullUp

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::pullUp) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t state)

Pull-up enable/disable setting of D+/D- line.

Implemented as

- R_USB_PullUp()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	state	Pull-up enable/disable setting.

◆ hostControlTransfer

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::hostControlTransfer) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_t *p_setup, uint8_t *p_buf, uint8_t device_address)

Performs settings and transmission processing when transmitting a setup packet.

Implemented as

- R_USB_HostControlTransfer()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[in]	p_setup	Setup packet information.
[in]	p_buf	Transfer area information.
[in]	device_address	Device address information.

◆ periControlDataGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::periControlDataGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size)

Receives data sent by control transfer.

Implemented as

- R_USB_PeriControlDataGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[in]	p_buf	Data reception area information.
[in]	size	Data reception size information.

◆ periControlDataSet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::periControlDataSet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_buf, uint32_t size)

Performs transfer processing for control transfer.

Implemented as

- R_USB_PeriControlDataSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[in]	p_buf	Area information for data transfer.
[in]	size	Transfer size information.

◆ periControlStatusSet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::periControlStatusSet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_status_t status)

Set the response to the setup packet.

Implemented as

- R_USB_PeriControlStatusSet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[in]	status	USB port startup information.

◆ moduleNumberGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::moduleNumberGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *module_number)

This API gets the module number.

Implemented as

- R_USB_ModuleNumberGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[out]	module_number	Module number to get.

◆ classTypeGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::classTypeGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_class_t *class_type)

This API gets the module number.

Implemented as

- R_USB_ClassTypeGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[out]	class_type	Class type to get.

◆ deviceAddressGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::deviceAddressGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *device_address)

This API gets the device address.

Implemented as

- R_USB_DeviceAddressGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[out]	device_address	device address to get.

◆ pipeNumberGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::pipeNumberGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *pipe_number)

This API gets the pipe number.

Implemented as

- R_USB_PipeNumberGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[out]	pipe_number	Pipe number to get.

◆ deviceStateGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::deviceStateGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint16_t *state)

This API gets the state of the device.

Implemented as

- R_USB_DeviceStateGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[out]	state	device state to get.

◆ dataSizeGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::dataSizeGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint32_t *data_size)

This API gets the data size.

Implemented as

- R_USB_DataSizeGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[out]	data_size	Data size to get.

◆ setupGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_api_t::setupGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, usb_setup_t *setup)

This API gets the setup type.

Implemented as

- R_USB_SetupGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	USB control structure.
[out]	setup	Setup type to get.

◆ usb_instance_t

struct usb_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
usb_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
usb_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
usb_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ usb_speed_t

enum usb_speed_t

USB speed type

Enumerator	
USB_SPEED_LS	Low speed operation.
USB_SPEED_FS	Full speed operation.
USB_SPEED_HS	Hi speed operation.

◆ usb_setup_status_t

enum usb_setup_status_t	
USB request result	
Enumerator	
USB_SETUP_STATUS_ACK	ACK response.
USB_SETUP_STATUS_STALL	STALL response.

◆ usb_status_t

enum usb_status_t

USB driver status

Enumerator	
USB_STATUS_POWERED	Powered State.
USB_STATUS_DEFAULT	Default State.
USB_STATUS_ADDRESS	Address State.
USB_STATUS_CONFIGURED	Configured State.
USB_STATUS_SUSPEND	Suspend State.
USB_STATUS_RESUME	Resume State.
USB_STATUS_DETACH	Detach State.
USB_STATUS_REQUEST	Request State.
USB_STATUS_REQUEST_COMPLETE	Request Complete State.
USB_STATUS_READ_COMPLETE	Read Complete State.
USB_STATUS_WRITE_COMPLETE	Write Complete State.
USB_STATUS_BC	battery Charge State
USB_STATUS_OVERCURRENT	Over Current state.
USB_STATUS_NOT_SUPPORT	Device Not Support.
USB_STATUS_NONE	None Status.
USB_STATUS_MSC_CMD_COMPLETE	MSC_CMD Complete.

◆ usb_class_t

enum usb_class_t	
USB class type	
Enumerator	
USB_CLASS_PCDC	PCDC Class.
USB_CLASS_PCDCC	PCDCC Class.
USB_CLASS_PHID	PHID Class.
USB_CLASS_PVND	PVND Class.
USB_CLASS_HCDC	HCDC Class.
USB_CLASS_HCDCC	HCDCC Class.
USB_CLASS_HHID	HHID Class.
USB_CLASS_HVND	HVND Class.
USB_CLASS_HMSC	HMSC Class.
USB_CLASS_PMSC	PMSC Class.
USB_CLASS_REQUEST	USB Class Request.
USB_CLASS_END	USB Class End Code.

◆ usb_bcport_t

enum usb_bcport_t	
USB battery charging type	
Enumerator	
USB_BCPORT_SDP	SDP port settings.
USB_BCPORT_CDP	CDP port settings.
USB_BCPORT_DCP	DCP port settings.

◆ usb_onoff_t

enum usb_onoff_t	
USB status	
Enumerator	
USB_OFF	USB Off State.
USB_ON	USB On State.

◆ usb_transfer_t

enum usb_transfer_t	
USB read / write type	
Enumerator	
USB_TRANSFER_READ	Data Receive communication.
USB_TRANSFER_WRITE	Data transmission communication.

◆ usb_transfer_type_t

enum usb_transfer_type_t	
USB transfer type	
Enumerator	
USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_BULK	Bulk communication.
USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_INT	Interrupt communication.
USB_TRANSFER_TYPE_ISO	Isochronous communication.

◆ usb_mode_t

enum usb_mode_t	
Enumerator	
USB_MODE_HOST	Host mode.
USB_MODE_PERI	Peripheral mode.

◆ usb_compliancetest_status_t

enum usb_compliancetest_status_t	
Enumerator	
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_ATTACH	Device Attach Detection.
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_DETACH	Device Detach Detection.
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_TPL	TPL device connect.
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_NOTTPL	Not TPL device connect.
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_HUB	USB Hub connect.
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_OVRC	Over current.
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_NORES	Response Time out for Control Read Transfer.
USB_COMPLIANCETEST_SETUP_ERR	Setup Transaction Error.

5.3.36 USB HCDC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for USB HCDC functions.

Summary

The USB HCDCinterface provides USB HCDC functionality.

The USB HCDC interface can be implemented by:

- USB Host Communications Device Class Driver (r_usb_hcdc)

5.3.37 USB HMSC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for USB HMSC functions.

Summary

The USB HMSC interface provides USB HMSC functionality.

The USB HMSC interface can be implemented by:

- USB Host Mass Storage Class Driver (r_usb_hmsc)

Data Structures

struct	usb_hmsc_api_t

Enumerations

enum	usb_atapi_t
enum	usb_csw_result_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ usb_hmsc_api_t

struct usb_hmsc_api_t

USB HMSC functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	storageCommand)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *buf, uint8_t command, uint8_t destination)
fsp_err_t(*	driveNumberGet)(usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_drive, uint8_t destination)
fsp_err_t(*	storageReadSector)(uint16_t drive_number, uint8_t *const buff, uint32_t sector_number, uint16_t sector_count)
fsp_err_t(*	storageWriteSector)(uint16_t drive_number, uint8_t const *const buff, uint32_t sector_number, uint16_t sector_count)
fsp_err_t(*	semaphoreGet)(void)
fsp_err_t(*	semaphoreRelease)(void)

Field Documentation

◆ storageCommand

fsp_err_t(* usb_hmsc_api_t::storageCommand) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *buf, uint8_t command, uint8_t destination)

Processing for MassStorage(ATAPI) command.

Implemented as

- R_USB_HMSC_StorageCommand()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	*buf	Pointer to the buffer area to store the transfer data.
[in]	command	ATAPI command.
[in]	destination	Represents a device address.

◆ driveNumberGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_hmsc_api_t::driveNumberGet) (usb_ctrl_t *const p_api_ctrl, uint8_t *p_drive, uint8_t destination)

Get number of Storage drive.

Implemented as

- R_USB_HMSC_DriveNumberGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_api_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_drive	Store address for Drive No.
[in]	destination	Represents a device address.

◆ storageReadSector

fsp_err_t(* usb_hmsc_api_t::storageReadSector) (uint16_t drive_number, uint8_t *const buff, uint32_t sector_number, uint16_t sector_count)

Read sector information.

Implemented as

- R_USB_HMSC_StorageReadSector()

Parameters

[in]	drive_number	Drive number.
[out]	*buff	Pointer to the buffer area to store the transfer data.
[in]	sector_number	The sector number to start with.
[in]	sector_count	Transmit with the sector size of the number of times.

◆ storageWriteSector

fsp_err_t(* usb_hmsc_api_t::storageWriteSector) (uint16_t drive_number, uint8_t const *const buff, uint32_t sector_number, uint16_t sector_count)

Write sector information.

Implemented as

- R_USB_HMSC_StorageWriteSector()

Parameters

[in]	drive_number	Drive number.
[in]	*buff	Pointer to the buffer area to store the transfer data.
[in]	sector_number	The sector number to start with.
[in]	sector_count	Transmit with the sector size of the number of times.

◆ semaphoreGet

fsp_err_t(* usb_hmsc_api_t::semaphoreGet) (void)

Get Semaphore.

Implemented as

- R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreGet()

◆ semaphoreRelease

fsp_err_t(* usb_hmsc_api_t::semaphoreRelease) (void)

Release Semaphore.

Implemented as

- R_USB_HMSC_SemaphoreRelease()

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ usb_atapi_t

enum usb_atapi_t

Enumerator	
USB_ATAPI_TEST_UNIT_READY	ATAPI command Test Unit Ready.
USB_ATAPI_REQUEST_SENSE	ATAPI command Request Sense.
USB_ATAPI_FORMAT_UNIT	ATAPI command Format Unit.
USB_ATAPI_INQUIRY	ATAPI command Inquiry.
USB_ATAPI_MODE_SELECT6	ATAPI command Mode Select6.
USB_ATAPI_MODE_SENSE6	ATAPI command Mode Sense6.
USB_ATAPI_START_STOP_UNIT	ATAPI command Start Stop Unit.
USB_ATAPI_PREVENT_ALLOW	ATAPI command Prevent Allow.
USB_ATAPI_READ_FORMAT_CAPACITY	ATAPI command Read Format Capacity.
USB_ATAPI_READ_CAPACITY	ATAPI command Read Capacity.
USB_ATAPI_READ10	ATAPI command Read10.
USB_ATAPI_WRITE10	ATAPI command Write10.
USB_ATAPI_SEEK	ATAPI command Seek.
USB_ATAPI_WRITE_AND_VERIFY	ATAPI command Write and Verify.
USB_ATAPI_VERIFY10	ATAPI command Verify10.
USB_ATAPI_MODE_SELECT10	ATAPI command Mode Select10.
USB_ATAPI_MODE_SENSE10	ATAPI command Mode Sense10.

◆ usb_csw_result_t

enum usb_csw_result_t	
Enumerator	
USB_CSW_RESULT_SUCCESS	CSW was successful.
USB_CSW_RESULT_FAIL	CSW failed.
USB_CSW_RESULT_PHASE	CSW has phase error.

5.3.38 USB PCDC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for USB PCDC functions.

Summary

The USB interface provides USB functionality.

The USB PCDC interface can be implemented by:

- USB Peripheral Communication Device Class (r_usb_pcdc)

Macros

#define	USB_PCDC_SET_LINE_CODING Command code for Set Line Codeing.
#define	USB_PCDC_GET_LINE_CODING Command code for Get Line Codeing.
#define	USB_PCDC_SET_CONTROL_LINE_STATE Command code for Control Line State.
#define	USB_PCDC_SERIAL_STATE Serial State Code.

#define	USB_PCDC_SETUP_TBL_BSIZE setup packet table size (uint16_t * 5)

5.3.39 USB PMSC Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for USB PMSC functions.

Summary

The USB PMSC interface provides USB PMSC functionality.

The USB PMSC interface can be implemented by:

- USB Peripheral Mass Storage Class (r_usb_pmsc)

5.3.40 WDT Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for watch dog timer functions.

Summary

The WDT interface for the Watchdog Timer (WDT) peripheral provides watchdog functionality including resetting the device or generating an interrupt.

The watchdog timer interface can be implemented by:

- Watchdog Timer (r_wdt)
- Independent Watchdog Timer (r_iwdt)

Data Structures

struct	wdt_callback_args_t
struct	wdt_timeout_values_t

struct	wdt_cfg_t
struct	wdt_api_t
struct	wdt_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	wdt_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	wdt_timeout_t
enum	wdt_clock_division_t
enum	wdt_window_start_t
enum	wdt_window_end_t
enum	wdt_reset_control_t
enum	wdt_stop_control_t
enum	wdt_status_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ wdt_callback_args_t

struct wdt_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data. Set in wdt_api_t::open function in wdt_cfg_t.

◆ wdt_timeout_values_t

struct wdt_timeout_values_t

WDT timeout data. Used to return frequency of WDT clock and timeout period

Data Fields		
uint32_t	clock_frequency_hz	Frequency of watchdog clock after divider.
uint32_t	timeout_clocks	Timeout period in units of watchdog clock ticks.

◆ wdt_cfg_t

struct wdt_cfg_t

WDT configuration parameters.

Data Fields

wdt_timeout_t	timeout
	Timeout period.
wdt_clock_division_t	clock_division
	Clock divider.
wdt_window_start_t	window_start
	Refresh permitted window start position.
wdt_window_end_t	window_end
	Refresh permitted window end position.
wdt_reset_control_t	reset_control
	Select NMI or reset generated on underflow.
wdt_stop_control_t	stop_control
	Select whether counter operates in sleep mode.
void(*	p_callback)(wdt_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Callback provided when a WDT NMI ISR occurs.
void const *	p_context
void const *	p_extend
	Placeholder for user extension.

Field Documentation

◆ p_context

void const* wdt_cfg_t::p_context
Placeholder for user data. Passed to the user callback in wdt_callback_args_t.

◆ wdt_api_t

struct wdt_api_t

WDT functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	refresh)(wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	statusClear)(wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const wdt_status_t status)
fsp_err_t(*	counterGet)(wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_count)
fsp_err_t(*	timeoutGet)(wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_timeout_values_t *const p_timeout)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* wdt_api_t::open) (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize the WDT in register start mode. In auto-start mode with NMI output it registers the NMI callback.

Implemented as

- R_WDT_Open()
- R_IWDT_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration structure.

◆ refresh

fsp_err_t(* wdt_api_t::refresh) (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Refresh the watchdog timer.

Implemented as

- R_WDT_Refresh()
- R_IWDT_Refresh()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* wdt_api_t::statusGet) (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_status_t *const p_status)

Read the status of the WDT.

Implemented as

- R_WDT_StatusGet()
- R_IWDT_StatusGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_status	Pointer to variable to return status information through.

◆ statusClear

fsp_err_t(* wdt_api_t::statusClear) (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, const wdt_status_t status)

Clear the status flags of the WDT.

Implemented as

- R_WDT_StatusClear()
- R_IWDT_StatusClear()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	status	Status condition(s) to clear.

◆ counterGet

fsp_err_t(* wdt_api_t::counterGet) (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t *const p_count)

Read the current WDT counter value.

Implemented as

- R_WDT_CounterGet()
- R_IWDT_CounterGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_count	Pointer to variable to return current WDT counter value.

◆ timeoutGet

fsp_err_t(* wdt_api_t::timeoutGet) (wdt_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, wdt_timeout_values_t *const p_timeout)

Read the watchdog timeout values.

Implemented as

- R_WDT_TimeoutGet()
- R_IWDT_TimeoutGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_timeout	Pointer to structure to return timeout values.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* wdt_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Return the version of the driver.

Implemented as

- R_WDT_VersionGet()
- R_IWDT_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_data	Memory address to return version information to.

◆ wdt_instance_t

struct wdt_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
wdt_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
wdt_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
wdt_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ wdt_ctrl_t

typedef void wdt_ctrl_t

WDT control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the WDT API calls.

Implemented as

- wdt_instance_ctrl_t
- iwdt_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ wdt_timeout_t

enum wdt_timeout_t	
WDT time-out periods.	
Enumerator	
WDT_TIMEOUT_128	128 clock cycles
WDT_TIMEOUT_512	512 clock cycles
WDT_TIMEOUT_1024	1024 clock cycles
WDT_TIMEOUT_2048	2048 clock cycles
WDT_TIMEOUT_4096	4096 clock cycles
WDT_TIMEOUT_8192	8192 clock cycles
WDT_TIMEOUT_16384	16384 clock cycles

◆ wdt_clock_division_t

enum wdt_clock_division_t	
WDT clock division ratio.	
Enumerator	
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_1	CLK/1.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_4	CLK/4.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_16	CLK/16.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_32	CLK/32.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_64	CLK/64.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_128	CLK/128.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_256	CLK/256.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_512	CLK/512.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_2048	CLK/2048.
WDT_CLOCK_DIVISION_8192	CLK/8192.

◆ wdt_window_start_t

enum wdt_window_start_t	
WDT refresh permitted period window start position.	
Enumerator	
WDT_WINDOW_START_25	Start position = 25%.
WDT_WINDOW_START_50	Start position = 50%.
WDT_WINDOW_START_75	Start position = 75%.
WDT_WINDOW_START_100	Start position = 100%.

◆ wdt_window_end_t

enum wdt_window_end_t	
WDT refresh permitted period window end position.	
Enumerator	
WDT_WINDOW_END_75	End position = 75%.
WDT_WINDOW_END_50	End position = 50%.
WDT_WINDOW_END_25	End position = 25%.
WDT_WINDOW_END_0	End position = 0%.

◆ wdt_reset_control_t

enum wdt_reset_control_t	
WDT Counter underflow and refresh error control.	
Enumerator	
WDT_RESET_CONTROL_NMI	NMI request when counter underflows.
WDT_RESET_CONTROL_RESET	Reset request when counter underflows.

◆ wdt_stop_control_t

enum wdt_stop_control_t	
WDT Counter operation in sleep mode.	
Enumerator	
WDT_STOP_CONTROL_DISABLE	Count will not stop when device enters sleep mode.
WDT_STOP_CONTROL_ENABLE	Count will automatically stop when device enters sleep mode.

◆ wdt_status_t

enum wdt_status_t	
WDT status	
Enumerator	
WDT_STATUS_NO_ERROR	No status flags set.
WDT_STATUS_UNDERFLOW_ERROR	Underflow flag set.
WDT_STATUS_REFRESH_ERROR	Refresh error flag set. Refresh outside of permitted window.
WDT_STATUS_UNDERFLOW_AND_REFRESH_ERROR	Underflow and refresh error flags set.

5.3.41 Block Media Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for block media memory access.

Summary

The block media interface supports reading, writing, and erasing media devices. All functions are non-blocking if possible. The callback is used to determine when an operation completes.

Implemented by: SD/MMC Block Media Implementation (rm_block_media_sdmmc) USB HMSC Block Media Implementation (rm_block_media_usb)

Data Structures

struct	rm_block_media_info_t
struct	rm_block_media_callback_args_t
struct	rm_block_media_cfg_t
struct	rm_block_media_status_t
struct	rm_block_media_api_t
struct	rm_block_media_instance_t

Macros

#define	RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	rm_block_media_ctrl_t

Enumerations

enum	rm_block_media_event_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ rm_block_media_info_t

struct rm_block_media_info_t

Block media device information supported by the instance

Data Fields

uint32_t	sector_size_bytes	Sector size in bytes.
uint32_t	num_sectors	Total number of sectors.
bool	reentrant	True if connected block media driver is reentrant.

◆ rm_block_media_callback_args_t

struct rm_block_media_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields

rm_block_media_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data.

◆ rm_block_media_cfg_t

struct rm_block_media_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in open function

Data Fields

uint32_t	block_size
	Block size, must be a power of 2 multiple of sector_size_bytes.
void(*	p_callback)(rm_block_media_callback_args_t *p_args)
	Pointer to callback function.
void const *	p_context
	User defined context passed into callback function.
void const *	p_extend
	Extension parameter for hardware specific settings.

◆ rm_block_media_status_t

struct rm_block_media_status_t

Current status

Data Fields

bool	initialized	False if rm_block_media_api_t::mediaInit has not been called since media was inserted, true otherwise.
bool	busy	true if media is busy with a previous write/erase operation
bool	media_inserted	Media insertion status, true if media is not removable.

◆ rm_block_media_api_t

struct rm_block_media_api_t

Block media interface API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	mediaInit)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	read)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t(*	write)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t(*	erase)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)
fsp_err_t(*	statusGet)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_status_t *const p_status)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_info_t *const p_info)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::open) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize block media device. rm_block_media_api_t::mediaInit must be called to complete the intitialization procedure.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Open
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Open

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ mediaInit

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::mediaInit) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Initializes a media device. If the device is removable, it must be plugged in prior to calling this API. This function blocks until media initialization is complete.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_MediaInit
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_MediaInit

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_block_media_api_t::open call.

◆ read

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::read) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t *const p_dest_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)

Reads blocks of data from the specified memory device address to the location specified by the caller.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Read
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Read

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_block_media_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_dest_address	Destination to read the data into.
[in]	block_address	Block address to read the data from.
[in]	num_blocks	Number of blocks of data to read.

◆ write

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::write) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint8_t const *const p_src_address, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)

Writes blocks of data to the specified device memory address.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Write
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Write

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_block_media_api_t::open call.
[in]	p_src_address	Address to read the data to be written.
[in]	block_address	Block address to write the data to.
[in]	num_blocks	Number of blocks of data to write.

◆ erase

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::erase) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint32_t const block_address, uint32_t const num_blocks)

Erases blocks of data from the memory device.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Erase
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Erase

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_block_media_api_t::open call.
[in]	block_address	Block address to start the erase process at.
[in]	num_blocks	Number of blocks of data to erase.

◆ statusGet

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::statusGet) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_status_t *const p_status)

Get status of connected device.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_StatusGet
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_StatusGet

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_block_media_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_status	Pointer to store current status.

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::infoGet) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_block_media_info_t *const p_info)

Returns information about the block media device.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_InfoGet
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_InfoGet

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_block_media_api_t::open call.
[out]	p_info	Pointer to information structure. All elements of this structure will be set by the function.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::close) (rm_block_media_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Closes the module.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_Close
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_Close

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_block_media_api_t::open call.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* rm_block_media_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Gets version and stores it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_SDMMC_VersionGet
- RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_USB_VersionGet

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ rm_block_media_instance_t

struct rm_block_media_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.		
Data Fields		
rm_block_media_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
rm_block_media_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
rm_block_media_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_API_VERSION_MAJOR

```
#define RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_API_VERSION_MAJOR
```

Register definitions, common services and error codes.

Typedef Documentation

◆ rm_block_media_ctrl_t

```
typedef void rm_block_media_ctrl_t
```

Block media API control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the block media API calls.

Implemented as

- rm_block_media_sdmmc_instance_ctrl_t
- rm_block_media_usb_instance_ctrl_t

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ rm_block_media_event_t

enum rm_block_media_event_t	
Events that can trigger a callback function	
Enumerator	
RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_EVENT_MEDIA_REMOVED	Media removed event.
RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_EVENT_MEDIA_INSERTED	Media inserted event.
RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_EVENT_OPERATION_COMPLETE	Read, write, or erase completed.
RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_EVENT_ERROR	Media inserted event.
RM_BLOCK_MEDIA_EVENT_POLL_STATUS	Poll rm_block_media_api_t::statusGet for write/erase completion.

5.3.42 FreeRTOS+FAT Port Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for FreeRTOS+FAT port.

Summary

The FreeRTOS+FAT port provides notifications for insertion and removal of removable media and provides initialization functions required by FreeRTOS+FAT.

The FreeRTOS+FAT interface can be implemented by: FreeRTOS+FAT Port (rm_freertos_plus_fat)

Data Structures

struct	rm_freertos_plus_fat_callback_args_t
struct	rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t
struct	rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t
struct	rm_freertos_plus_fat_instance_t

Enumerations

enum	rm_freertos_plus_fat_event_t

enum	rm_freertos_plus_fat_type_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ rm_freertos_plus_fat_callback_args_t

struct rm_freertos_plus_fat_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Data Fields		
rm_freertos_plus_fat_event_t	event	The event can be used to identify what caused the callback.
void const *	p_context	Placeholder for user data.

◆ rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t

struct rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t

Information obtained from the media device.

Data Fields		
uint32_t	sector_count	Sector count.
uint32_t	sector_size_bytes	Sector size in bytes.

◆ rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t

struct rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t

FreeRTOS plus Fat functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	mediaInit)(rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t *const p_device)
fsp_err_t(*	diskInit)(rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg_t const *const p_disk_cfg, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk)
fsp_err_t(*	diskDeinit)(rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk)
fsp_err_t(*	infoGet)(rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk, rm_freertos_plus_fat_info_t *const p_info)

fsp_err_t(*	close)(rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::open) (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open media device.

Implemented as

- RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure.

◆ mediaInit

fsp_err_t(* rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::mediaInit) (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_device_t *const p_device)

Initializes a media device. If the device is removable, it must be plugged in prior to calling this API. This function blocks until media initialization is complete.

Implemented as

- RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_MediaInit

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_device	Pointer to store device information.

◆ diskInit

fsp_err_t(* rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::diskInit) (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_freertos_plus_fat_disk_cfg_t const *const p_disk_cfg, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk)

Initializes a FreeRTOS+FAT FF_Disk_t structure.

Implemented as

- RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskInit

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_disk_cfg	Pointer to disk configurations
[out]	p_disk	Pointer to store FreeRTOS+FAT disk structure.

◆ diskDeinit

fsp_err_t(* rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::diskDeinit) (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk)

Deinitializes a FreeRTOS+FAT FF_Disk_t structure.

Implemented as

- RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_DiskDeinit

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_disk_cfg	Pointer to disk configurations
[out]	p_disk	Pointer to store FreeRTOS+FAT disk structure.

◆ infoGet

fsp_err_t(* rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::infoGet) (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, FF_Disk_t *const p_disk, rm_freertos_plus_fat_info_t *const p_info)

Returns information about the media device.

Implemented as

- RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_InfoGet

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_info	Pointer to information structure. All elements of this structure will be set by the function.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::close) (rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close media device.

Implemented as

- RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Get the driver version.

Implemented as

- RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ rm_freertos_plus_fat_instance_t

struct rm_freertos_plus_fat_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields		
rm_freertos_plus_fat_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.

rm_freertos_plus_fat_cfg_t const *const	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
rm_freertos_plus_fat_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Enumeration Type Documentation

◆ rm_freertos_plus_fat_event_t

enum rm_freertos_plus_fat_event_t

Events that can trigger a callback function

Enumerator	
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EVENT_MEDIA_REMOVED	Media removed event.
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_EVENT_MEDIA_INSERTED	Media inserted event.

◆ rm_freertos_plus_fat_type_t

enum rm_freertos_plus_fat_type_t

Enumerator	
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_TYPE_FAT32	FAT32 disk.
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_TYPE_FAT16	FAT16 disk.
RM_FREERTOS_PLUS_FAT_TYPE_FAT12	FAT12 disk.

5.3.43 LittleFS Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for LittleFS access.

Summary

The LittleFS Port configures a fail-safe filesystem designed for microcontrollers on top of a lower level storage device.

Implemented by: LittleFS Flash Port (rm_littlefs_flash)

Data Structures

struct	rm_littlefs_cfg_t
struct	rm_littlefs_api_t
struct	rm_littlefs_instance_t

Macros

#define	RM_LITTLEFS_API_VERSION_MAJOR

Typedefs

typedef void	rm_littlefs_ctrl_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ rm_littlefs_cfg_t

struct rm_littlefs_cfg_t

User configuration structure, used in open function

Data Fields		
struct lfs_config const *	p_lfs_cfg	Pointer LittleFS configuration structure.
void const *	p_extend	Pointer to hardware dependent configuration.

◆ rm_littlefs_api_t

struct rm_littlefs_api_t

LittleFS Port interface API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_littlefs_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* rm_littlefs_api_t::open) (rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, rm_littlefs_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Initialize The lower level storage device.

Implemented as

- RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Open

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control block. Must be declared by user. Elements set here.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to configuration structure. All elements of this structure must be set by user.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* rm_littlefs_api_t::close) (rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Closes the module and lower level storage device.

Implemented as

- RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_Close

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Control block set in rm_littlefs_api_t::open call.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* rm_littlefs_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_version)

Gets version and stores it in provided pointer p_version.

Implemented as

- RM_LITTLEFS_FLASH_VersionGet

Parameters

[out]	p_version	Code and API version used.

◆ rm_littlefs_instance_t

struct rm_littlefs_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields

rm_littlefs_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
rm_littlefs_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
rm_littlefs_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Macro Definition Documentation

◆ RM_LITTLEFS_API_VERSION_MAJOR

```
#define RM_LITTLEFS_API_VERSION_MAJOR
```

Register definitions, common services and error codes.

Typedef Documentation

◆ rm_littlefs_ctrl_t

```
typedef void rm_littlefs_ctrl_t
```

LittleFS Port API control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the LittleFS Port API calls.

Implemented as

- rm_littlefs_flash_instance_ctrl_t

5.3.44 Touch Middleware Interface

Interfaces

Detailed Description

Interface for Touch Middleware functions.

Summary

The TOUCH interface provides TOUCH functionality.

The TOUCH interface can be implemented by:

- Capacitive Touch Middleware (rm_touch)

Data Structures

struct	touch_button_cfg_t
struct	touch_slider_cfg_t
struct	touch_wheel_cfg_t
struct	touch_cfg_t
struct	touch_api_t
struct	touch_instance_t

Typedefs

typedef void	touch_ctrl_t
typedef struct st_ctsu_callback_args	touch_callback_args_t

Data Structure Documentation

◆ touch_button_cfg_t

struct touch_button_cfg_t

Configuration of each button

Data Fields		
uint8_t	elem_index	Element number used by this button.
uint16_t	threshold	Touch/non-touch judgment threshold.
uint16_t	hysteresis	Threshold hysteresis for chattering prevention.

◆ touch_slider_cfg_t

struct touch_slider_cfg_t

Configuration of each slider

Data Fields		
uint8_t const *	p_elem_index	Element number array used by this slider.
uint8_t	num_elements	Number of elements used by this slider.
uint16_t	threshold	Position calculation start threshold value.

◆ touch_wheel_cfg_t

struct touch_wheel_cfg_t		
Configuration of each wheel		
Data Fields		
uint8_t const *	p_elem_index	Element number array used by this wheel.
uint8_t	num_elements	Number of elements used by this wheel.
uint16_t	threshold	Position calculation start threshold value.

◆ touch_cfg_t

struct touch_cfg_t		
User configuration structure, used in open function		
Data Fields		
touch_button_cfg_t const *	p_buttons	Pointer to array of button configuration.
touch_slider_cfg_t const *	p_sliders	Pointer to array of slider configuration.
touch_wheel_cfg_t const *	p_wheels	Pointer to array of wheel configuration.
uint8_t	num_buttons	Number of buttons.
uint8_t	num_sliders	Number of sliders.
uint8_t	num_wheels	Number of wheels.
uint8_t	on_freq	The cumulative number of determinations of ON.
uint8_t	off_freq	The cumulative number of determinations of OFF.
uint16_t	drift_freq	Base value drift frequency. [0 : no use].
uint16_t	cancel_freq	Maximum continuous ON. [0 : no use].
uint8_t	number	Configuration number for QE monitor.
ctsu_instance_t const *	p_ctsu_instance	Pointer to CTSU instance.
uart_instance_t const *	p_uart_instance	Pointer to UART instance.
void const *	p_context	User defined context passed into callback function.
void const *	p_extend	Pointer to extended configuration by instance of interface.

◆ touch_api_t

struct touch_api_t

Functions implemented at the HAL layer will follow this API.

Data Fields

fsp_err_t(*	open)(touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, touch_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)
fsp_err_t(*	scanStart)(touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	dataGet)(touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint64_t *p_button_status, uint16_t *p_slider_position, uint16_t *p_wheel_position)
fsp_err_t(*	close)(touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)
fsp_err_t(*	versionGet)(fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Field Documentation

◆ open

fsp_err_t(* touch_api_t::open) (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, touch_cfg_t const *const p_cfg)

Open driver.

Implemented as

- RM_TOUCH_Open()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[in]	p_cfg	Pointer to pin configuration structure.

◆ scanStart

fsp_err_t(* touch_api_t::scanStart) (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Scan start.

Implemented as

- RM_TOUCH_ScanStart()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ dataGet

fsp_err_t(* touch_api_t::dataGet) (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl, uint64_t *p_button_status, uint16_t *p_slider_position, uint16_t *p_wheel_position)

Data get.

Implemented as

- RM_TOUCH_DataGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_buton_status	Pointer to get data bitmap.
[out]	p_slider_position	Pointer to get data array.
[out]	p_wheel_position	Pointer to get data array.

◆ close

fsp_err_t(* touch_api_t::close) (touch_ctrl_t *const p_ctrl)

Close driver.

Implemented as

- RM_TOUCH_Close()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.

◆ versionGet

fsp_err_t(* touch_api_t::versionGet) (fsp_version_t *const p_data)

Return the version of the driver.

Implemented as

- RM_TOUCH_VersionGet()

Parameters

[in]	p_ctrl	Pointer to control structure.
[out]	p_data	Memory address to return version information to.

◆ touch_instance_t

struct touch_instance_t

This structure encompasses everything that is needed to use an instance of this interface.

Data Fields

touch_ctrl_t *	p_ctrl	Pointer to the control structure for this instance.
touch_cfg_t const *	p_cfg	Pointer to the configuration structure for this instance.
touch_api_t const *	p_api	Pointer to the API structure for this instance.

Typedef Documentation

◆ touch_ctrl_t

typedef void touch_ctrl_t

Control block. Allocate an instance specific control block to pass into the API calls.

Implemented as

- touch_instance_ctrl_t

◆ touch_callback_args_t

typedef struct st_ctsu_callback_args touch_callback_args_t

Callback function parameter data

Renesas Flexible Software Package (FSP)

User’s Manual

Publication Date: Revision 1.00 Mar.25.20

Renesas FSP v1.0.0

User’s Manual

Renesas Electronics Corporation